



**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**  
**NEW ZEALAND**

---

# 2005 CALENDAR

---

Te Whare Wānanga o Tāmaki Makaurau

The University of Auckland



**INGENIO ET LABORE**

**Official Address:**

The correspondence of The University of Auckland is conducted by the Registrar, and all communications on University matters should be addressed as follows:

The Registrar  
The University of Auckland  
Private Bag 92019  
Auckland  
New Zealand

**Telegrams and Cables:** University Auckland

**Facsimile:** +64 9 373 7400

**Telephone:** +64 9 373 7999 (switchboard operators)  
+64 9 373 7599 and appropriate extension (automated attendant)

**Internet:** <http://www.auckland.ac.nz>

Information contained in this publication is correct at the time of going to press, but may be subject to change. While all reasonable efforts will be made to ensure listed courses are offered and regulations are up to date, the University reserves the right to change the content or method of presentation, or to withdraw any course of study, or impose limitations on enrolment should circumstances require this. For the latest information visit our website at [www.auckland.ac.nz/calendar](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/calendar).

Editor:	Andrew Kellett
Regulations Officers:	Neil Wright Thomas Teinakore
Desktop Publisher:	Rory O'Dea
Cover:	Lippincott's Tower from Princes Street. A painting by Sir Michael Fowler of the ClockTower from his book <i>University of Auckland</i> , Mallinson Rendell Publishers Ltd, 1993. Reproduced from an original sketch by Sir Michael Fowler, with his permission.
Cover design:	Susan Hogg
Printer:	Oliver Young

---

# Contents

---

Introduction	1
Calendar Year 2005	8
Academic Statutes and Regulations	12
General Statutes and Regulations	41
Regulations	51
Arts	51
Business and Economics	75
Creative Arts and Industries	98
Education	130
Engineering	143
Law	156
Medical and Health Sciences	163
Science	198
Theology	219
Interfaculty Degrees and Diplomas	223
Conjoint Degrees	236
Other Programmes	248
Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees	253
Course Prescriptions	267
Arts	270
Business and Economics	371
Creative Arts and Industries	408
Education	447
Engineering	466
Law	490
Medical and Health Sciences	506
Science	538
Theology	592
2005 Course Availability	604
Acts of Parliament and University Statutes	622
Scholarships and Prizes	637
Staff and Student Information	650
University Personnel	663
Glossary of Terminology	717
Directory	719
Maps	723
Tamaki	723
City	724
Grafton	726
Epsom	727
Index	728

The University of Auckland  
**Academic Year 2005**

**Summer School – 2005**

Orientation Day .....	Wednesday 5 January
Lectures Begin .....	Thursday 6 January
Auckland Anniversary Day .....	Monday 31 January
Waitangi (NZ) Day .....	Sunday 6 February
Lectures End .....	Thursday 10 February
Examinations .....	Monday 14 February – Wednesday 16 February
Semester Ends .....	Wednesday 16 February

**Semester 1 – 2005**

Semester 1 Begins .....	Monday 28 February
Easter Break .....	Friday 25 March – Tuesday 29 March
Mid Semester Break .....	Monday 18 April – Tuesday 26 April
ANZAC Day .....	Monday 25 April
Graduation .....	Monday 2 May – Friday 6 May
Lectures End .....	Saturday 4 June
Study Break/Exams .....	Saturday 4 June – Saturday 25 June
Queen's Birthday .....	Monday 6 June
Semester 1 Ends .....	Saturday 25 June

**Inter Semester Break** .....

Monday 27 June – Saturday 16 July
-----------------------------------

**Semester 2 – 2005**

Semester 2 Begins .....	Monday 18 July
Mid Semester Break .....	Monday 29 August – Saturday 10 September
Graduation .....	Thursday 29 September
Lectures End .....	Saturday 22 October
Study Break/Exams .....	Saturday 22 October – Saturday 12 November
Labour Day .....	Monday 24 October
Semester 2 Ends .....	Saturday 12 November

**Semester 1 – 2006**

Semester 1 Begins .....	Monday 27 February 2006
-------------------------	-------------------------

---

# INTRODUCTION

Welcome to The University of Auckland. This Calendar provides details of the University regulations and programmes, together with general information about the University and its staff, and the facilities and services which are available to staff and students.

## The Academic Year

The academic year at The University of Auckland is divided into two semesters. Each semester covers a period of about 15 weeks comprising approximately 12 teaching weeks followed by three weeks for study and examination. The first semester starts at the beginning of March and the second semester in mid-July. Each semester has a mid-semester break which lasts for one to two weeks. During the three weeks after the end of lectures, there is a period of study followed by the examinations for the courses studied during that semester. There is a three-week inter-semester break during which results will be published and any further admissions and enrolments processed. At the end of the second semester there is a 13-week break. A small number of specialist courses may be taught during the inter-semester break. A Summer School comprising six weeks operates from the beginning of January. A limited number of courses are available.

## The Points System

The value allocated to each course has been standardized and is given as a number of points; each degree, diploma or certificate being made up of a specified number of points. For instance, the programme for some Bachelor's degrees requires the completion of a total of 42 points, some Honours degrees 56 points and some Master's degrees 28 points. The points value for diplomas and certificates varies according to the discipline and content and full details are listed in the regulations.

## Planning a Programme

In this Calendar you will find the regulations and requirements for each faculty's degrees, diplomas and certificates. The details for each course are listed by faculty, in alphanumeric order in the Course Prescriptions, followed by a summary of course availability for 2005. In addition, there is a range of Interfaculty and Conjoint degrees which comprise planned programmes and are administered and supervised across the faculties. It is important to read the regulations for the programme you plan to take and to ensure that you will complete the prerequisites required for your subsequent study. Students planning a programme are also advised to consult faculty and departmental handbooks and seek advice where necessary through the faculty offices. Advice about programme and course options is available. Intending students should phone 0800 61 62 63 for general course advice and for information on how to access more specific course advice from faculties.

## Admission and Enrolment

The University of Auckland has an on-line system for admission and enrolment. All new students, and those not enrolled in 2004, who are intending to study at the University in 2005, should complete the on-line Application for Admission ([www.auckland.ac.nz/apply-now](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/apply-now)). If students do not have access to on-line facilities, Application for Admission forms are available by phone, by mail or in person from: ClockTower Student Information Centre, The University of Auckland, 22 Princes St, Private Bag 91346, Auckland, New Zealand, email [studentinfo@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:studentinfo@auckland.ac.nz), phone 0800 61 62 63.

# THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

## Arms of The University of Auckland



### Heraldic Description

Azure between three Mulletts Argent an open Book proper edged and bound Or with seven clasps on either side Gold on a Chief wavy also Argent three Kiwis proper. On a scroll set below the Arms appear the words 'Ingenio et Labore'.

### Symbolism

The open book together with the motto 'Ingenio et Labore', freely translated as 'by natural ability and hard work', indicate in a general way the aim of the institution, and combined with the three stars express the idea of learning pursued under the sky of the Southern Hemisphere. The kiwis are indicative of New Zealand as the bird is absolutely confined to its islands and the silver wavy chief upon which they are set directs attention to the fact that Auckland is on the sea coast.

The shield, minus the ribbon containing the Latin motto, is used in combination with the logotype 'The University of Auckland' and bar elements to form the University Mark. Guidelines for the Mark are prescribed in the University's Brandmark Manual.

## History of the University of Auckland

As early as 1862 an unknown writer, 'J.G.', proposed in Chapman's New Zealand Monthly Magazine that a university should be established in Auckland. No one took up the suggestion. In the South Island, where the inhabitants were wealthier and keener on education, a university was established in Otago in 1869 and a college in Canterbury in 1873. In 1870, Parliament passed legislation to create the University of New Zealand as an examining body with affiliated teaching colleges. An Auckland politician, later Speaker of the House of Representatives, Maurice O'Rorke, tried to induce Parliament to place the University in Auckland, but he failed. The University of New Zealand had no fixed abode; its Senate met in the main towns in turn.

The citizens of Auckland did nothing to establish a college, but some so-called 'university' instruction was provided at the Auckland Grammar School. One student, Kate Edger, in 1877 became the first woman to graduate BA at a British university.

In 1878, O'Rorke was appointed chairman of a Royal Commission to report on higher education. It recommended that university colleges should be established at Auckland and Wellington. In 1882, the Auckland University College was set up by Act of Parliament. Thus the College was a creation, not of the citizens and local government, like those in the south, but of the State.

The applicants for the first four chairs, of Classics and English, Mathematics, Natural Science, and Chemistry and Physics, were interviewed in England by the New Zealand Agent-General and some of the most famous scientists and scholars of the day, including the great Benjamin Jowett of Balliol College, Vice-Chancellor of Oxford University. The men appointed formed an impressive group. The chemist, F.D. Brown, had studied both in France and at Leipzig as well as London, and taught at Oxford and London. He had published a dozen papers. Algernon Phillips Thomas, the biologist, was a Balliol man who had discovered the life history of the liver fluke. The classicist, T.G. Tucker, was to become a famous scholar. When he left to go to Melbourne University in 1885, he was succeeded by Hutcheson Macaulay Posnett, an Irishman who had written several books, including one on comparative literature, what would now be called the sociology of literature, a subject which he is now credited with inventing. The first professor of Mathematics was drowned shortly after he reached Auckland and he was succeeded by W.S. Aldis, who had been the senior wrangler at Cambridge and was the author of several mathematical books.

The College was formally opened on 21 May 1883 in the Choral Hall, then the largest hall in Auckland. The Governor, Sir William Jervois, announced that the College was to be a thoroughly democratic institution, open to all, women as well as men, and to all classes. He remarked that the first College building was a barn. It was, in fact, a disused courthouse.

When O'Rorke had first tried to secure a university for Auckland, in 1872, he had suggested housing it in Government House, left empty when the capital was moved to Wellington in 1865. This immediately aroused opposition in the newspapers, for many Aucklanders hoped that the capital – and the governor – would eventually return to Auckland. These conflicting ambitions lay at the basis of a recurrent feature of the history of the College, the great 'site row' which raged with particular violence in the years 1909-12, with the College trying to get at least part of the grounds of Government House while numerous citizens strongly opposed it. One result was that for years the College had no permanent site or permanent buildings. Instead, it acquired the disused Admiralty House and a building which had been the original Parliament House. In 1907, the Choral Hall was purchased.

In 1917, the College occupied the deserted Grammar School. Not until 1926 did it acquire its first permanent building, now the Clock Tower Building, in Princes Street.

The College was poor: its statutory grant was for many years only £4,000 a year, while educational reserves were of such poor land that they brought in very little. It was small: there were 95 students in 1883; 156 by 1901. Many of the students had not passed the matriculation examination. Most of them were part-time, trainee teachers and law clerks, music students from 1888 onwards, commerce students by 1905. The College was dominated by the lay members of Council, especially by Sir Maurice O'Rorke, who was its chairman from 1883 to 1916. When Professor Aldis complained in 1892 that he had found the College stables occupied by O'Rorke's son's polo ponies he was dismissed! Despite a prolonged public controversy, Council would not reinstate him. Posnett also left, in 1891.

Some of the best professors departed. Most of the remainder grew increasingly out-of-date in their subjects. There was no system of sabbatical or study leave until the 1920s. The teachers simply handed on traditional knowledge: research was not expected and was rarely done. The staff lectured for very long hours. In some subjects research was impossible. For instance, the Library took no mathematical journals, so the mathematicians knew little about recent work. Some students, however, carried out good research, notably in Chemistry. In general, the students were given a good, traditional undergraduate education, but standards were not rigorous and had in some subjects declined by the 1920s.

In that decade and well into the 1930s the College was ruled by a Registrar, Roche O'Shea, and a new Chairman (President after 1924), another former Cabinet Minister, Sir George Fowlds. Under their not always benevolent dictatorship some improvements were made. The first New Zealand graduates with postgraduate education abroad were appointed to the staff, notably the very able economist, Horace Belshaw, the philosopher, R.P. Anschutz, and the physicist, P.W. Burbridge. An excellent researcher, W.F. Short, was appointed as a lecturer in Chemistry.

Some advances were made in providing professional education. The only such education offered at the College was in Law, which attracted large numbers of students. The only 'professional schools' recognized by the University of New Zealand were Medicine at Otago and Engineering at Canterbury. In 1906, the College established a School of Mining, which covertly by degrees was turned into a 'School of Engineering'. After fierce battles with Canterbury, fired by provincial rivalry, the Auckland School received University recognition for its teaching in the first two professional years. Students then had to go to Canterbury to complete their final year of education. In the course of this battle, in 1917, the College also began instruction in architecture.

During the depression of the early 1930s there were great disputation and rancour.

The temporary appointment of a lecturer in History, J.C. Beaglehole, later a world famous scholar, was terminated, his friends believed, because of a letter of liberal or radical tendency, to a newspaper, defending the right of communists to distribute their literature. This episode led to a Council election in which a liberal, Hollis Cocker, displaced a conservative. The College Council now adopted resolutions in favour of academic freedom and received the undeserved congratulations of the flower of the British academic establishment, including Lord Rutherford and Wittgenstein. At this time, in a modern terminology, the College 'came alive'. For instance, some students, led by James Bertram, established a new literary journal, Phoenix, which was the focus for the first literary movement in New Zealand history: Allen Curnow, A.R.D. Fairburn, R.A.K. Mason and other writers, later distinguished, wrote for it.

The College received a great intellectual stimulus in 1934 when four new professors arrived, H.G. Forder, a very able mathematician, Arthur Sewell, a brilliant lecturer in English, a classicist, C.G. Cooper, and a new historian, James Rutherford.

The College had never had academic leadership. Cocker came to dominate it before and during the Second World War as much as had O'Rorke and O'Shea. But Council now appointed the first Principal (later Vice-Chancellor) K.J. Maidment. He came in 1950 and remained for two decades. He was a Classics don from Merton College, Oxford.

The 1950s was a very difficult period in the history of the College - The University of Auckland, as it was called from 1958 onwards. There was a further, fierce 'site row'. Council wanted to move to a larger site out of town. The National Government in 1956 offered Government House to the College as a compensation for staying in Princes Street. Another 'save Government House' campaign followed. Both academic staff and the public were deeply divided over the issue, which was resolved in 1960: The University was to stay where it was.

The 'site row' held up the building programme for about six years, while student rolls rose rapidly, to 4,000 by 1959, with the result that there was bad overcrowding in quite inadequate buildings - army huts, for instance, were erected. Universities everywhere were expanding rapidly. New Zealand salaries were low and many able Auckland staff were recruited by Australian or other universities. Despite these problems, there was significant progress. New subjects were introduced: Geography, Anthropology, Maori Studies, Fine Arts. There was a new emphasis on staff research. Many of the new and younger academics became very active researchers, as could be seen in the growing lists of staff publications.

A general improvement in conditions was spearheaded by a committee, the Hughes Parry Committee, which reported on University conditions. Staff salaries were raised. For the first time the students were given fairly generous bursaries, which led to a rapid increase in the proportion of full-time students. The government grant to the University rose rapidly.

There was a massive university building programme, and over the next two decades the campus was transformed as one large building after another was erected: Fine Arts, Science, Engineering buildings, a Student Union, a new Library. A number of new subjects were introduced, including Political Studies, Art History, and Sociology. In 1968, teaching commenced in the new Medical School, which was the most important 'new development'. The period of intensive new construction ended with completion of the new School of Music in 1986 and the Marae complex in 1988. A new precinct to the north of Waterloo Quadrant houses Education, and the Law School which moved into its new premises in 1992.

By the end of the 1960s Auckland had the largest University Library in the country, whereas it had usually been the smallest. Most of the credit for this belonged to Kenneth Maidment. One other change must be mentioned. In 1962, the University at last became independent, when the University of New Zealand was abolished.

When Dr Kenneth Maidment departed in 1970, there were 9,300 students. His successor, Dr Colin Maiden, was an Auckland engineer who headed a research division of General Motors in Michigan. One of the first things that struck him in Auckland was the paucity of student facilities. He pushed ahead to get them a theatre, a splendid gymnasium and recreation centre, and a large playing field 'complex'. The entire administrative organization, from faculties and committees to deputy vice-chancellors, was reformed. The academic boom of the 1960s continued well into the 1970s and several new buildings, like Human Sciences, were built and new subjects, like Management Studies and Computer Science, were introduced.

The 1970s brought numerous social changes: an increase in the proportion of Maori and Polynesian students and in the proportion of women as well as in the proportion of older students. Only in the years 1975-81 were the first two women professors appointed, Marie Clay and Patricia Bergquist. At a time of high inflation, the government grant to the University rose rapidly, to \$95.2 million by 1989. Nevertheless there was a certain austerity by then, in a bleak economic climate, but after a century of growth the University seemed sufficiently strongly established in the community to withstand hard conditions.

Its position was indeed to be challenged in the following year. The wide-ranging restructuring of education undertaken by the Labour government encompassed the universities, and their autonomy and their identity were seen to be threatened. As a result of efforts by the universities, supported by alumni, some changes were secured in the Education Amendment Act 1990, but the University Grants Committee was abolished, the universities were placed directly under the Ministry of Education, and the composition of the Council was altered.

Anxious to respond to the demand for university education, the University offered courses at other tertiary institutions in Auckland and Northland. Acquiring buildings used for the 1990 Commonwealth

Games village, the University began to develop a campus at Tamaki, initially offering teaching in Commerce. It was obliged, like other universities, to introduce quotas for all first-year courses in 1992, breaking the historic policy of 'open entry'.

The Tamaki Campus is now developing into a research-led, thematic innovation campus specializing in the areas of health, environment, information technology, materials and manufacturing, food and biotechnology, and information management. A large School of Population Health complex – part of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences – opened there in 2004. A campus established on the North Shore in 2001 is making the University more accessible to people in this fast-growing region.

From the mid-1990s, the University introduced semesters, launched its first major fund-raising appeal and inaugurated its Summer School. It joined Universitas 21, an international network of research-intensive universities in Australasia, Asia, North America and Europe, as a foundation member.

Following the appointment of Dr John Hood as fourth Vice-Chancellor in 1999, alliances were forged with Auckland University of Technology and Manukau Institute of Technology (where Bachelor's degrees are now offered in Arts, Business and Information Management, Teaching and Visual Arts). Nursing, Pharmacy and Software Engineering degrees were introduced.

By 2003, the student roll had reached 33,200 and total research revenue totalled \$165 million. On-line enrolment, the first at a New Zealand university, began operating in 2001. In August 2001, the University hosted with the New Zealand Government a major international conference on 'Catching the Knowledge Wave'.

The University of Auckland is host to four of the seven Centres of Research Excellence funded by the Government. In 2004 it was designated the country's leading research university 'on virtually any measure' in the Performance Based Research Fund assessment carried out by the Tertiary Education Commission.

Major new buildings have greatly enhanced the City Campus: the impressive Kate Edger Information Commons and Student Commons, the Engineering Atrium, and a seven-floor extension to the Science Centre which houses Computer Science and Software Engineering. A Fale Pasifika opened in 2004 and a large new complex under construction for the Business School will be ready in 2006. Architecture, Fine and Visual Arts, Music and Performing Arts, and Planning have combined to form the National Institute of Creative Arts and Industries.

The University of Auckland and the Auckland College of Education amalgamated in September 2004 to form a Faculty of Education. The new faculty, based primarily at the College's campus in Epsom, aims to become New Zealand's leading provider of professional education.

Dr John Hood was appointed Vice-Chancellor of the University of Oxford in October 2004. He is the first person from outside the 900-year-old university to take up the position. Professor Stuart McCutcheon, currently Vice-Chancellor at Victoria University of Wellington, has been appointed as Vice-Chancellor at Auckland from January 2005.

---

## The University

The University now has four campuses with seven faculties representing each of its main disciplines: Arts and Education; Business and Economics; Creative Arts and Industries; Engineering; Law; Medical and Health Sciences; and Science. In addition, Theology is offered through a School of Theology. There is a growing number of teaching departments, ranging from Accounting and Finance to Surgery. Some departments are associated with more than one faculty.

Many courses and research activities reflect Auckland and New Zealand's place in the world. Pacific archaeology, ethnology and languages, for example, are stressed in the Anthropology Department. Geographers carry out fieldwork in the Pacific Islands while University scientists make frequent study trips to the Antarctic. Asian languages, including Chinese, Japanese and Korean, are taught and Pacific Island languages have been introduced since 1991. New Zealand's concerns and problems are addressed in subjects as diverse as Sociology, Medicine, Engineering and Architecture. The Geothermal Institute is one of four international centres which provide training in Geothermal Technology.

The University of Auckland recognises research and research-led teaching as a primary responsibility of its academic staff. As the leading research University in New Zealand, the University of Auckland is committed to the quality and excellence of its degree courses including its postgraduate and doctoral programmes. Over 8,000 students are enrolled in postgraduate studies, 1300 of these in doctoral programmes. While research is more often basic than applied, what is discovered may ultimately prove eminently practical. The Yacht Research Institute's contribution towards New Zealand's campaigns for the America's Cup is one notable example. A research laboratory at Leigh, east of Warkworth, carries out marine fieldwork. Various research centres cross disciplinary boundaries. The School of Medicine is one of the largest single research institutions in New Zealand.

## Structure of the University

### The Council

The University's governing body is the Council, a mixture of elected staff, students and graduates, and outside appointees. The Vice-Chancellor, the University's chief academic and administrative officer, is also a member. Council is chaired by the Chancellor who is a lay member of the Council.

### The Senate

On academic matters, Council is bound to consult the Senate which the Vice-Chancellor chairs.

This body includes all the professors, some non-professorial staff and student representatives. The Senate takes advice from the Education and Research Committees, and from specialist committees, dealing for example with the Library, Information Technology, and the Faculties.

### The Faculties

Each faculty is a subcommittee of Senate and is headed by a Dean who is usually supported by a Faculty Registrar, Administrative Officer and other administrative staff. The Dean is responsible for coordinating the academic and research activities of individual departments and liaises with both the Registry and the Senate committees on regulations, staff appointments, buildings, research funding, library facilities, timetabling etc. The faculty and departmental offices provide assistance to students who are encouraged to contact the relevant staff for information and advice. Handbooks are available from both faculty and departmental offices. Most departments also provide handouts giving specific information about their courses of study; for example, lists of prescribed and recommended texts.

### Central Administration

Day-to-day central administration is performed by the Registry. It is divided into Information Technology Systems and Services, Finance, Human Resources, Student Administration and Property Services sections.

---

## The City Campus

The City Campus, established in 1883, is in the heart of Auckland City, separated from the tower blocks of the central business district by historic Albert Park on its western flank. To the southeast lie the trees and open spaces of the Auckland Domain. Its proximity to the cultural and commercial amenities of the country's largest city, attractive green setting and harbour views bestow advantages enjoyed by few inner city campuses anywhere.

The City Campus has developed extensively over the last 121 years. Among the number of building projects completed in the last year were the Fale Pasifika, International Student Lounge, 70 Symonds St fitout for BioEngineering and Engineering Science, exterior maintenance work on the Clocktower building, Science building refit for Electrical and Computer Engineering, and the Arts Faculty Student Centre together with security improvements across the campus.

Major project work in 2005 includes the Engineering Library extension; however, key in the building programme is the ongoing development of the Wynyard Mall (including Business School, lecture theatres, data centre and carpark). The building of a new Law School and Library within Sector 100 will follow this project.

---

## The Tamaki Campus

The Tamaki Campus, established in 1991 as an undergraduate teaching campus, is located on a 32 hectare site in Glen Innes, 12 kilometres from the

City Campus. In 1999, a new vision for the near 'green fields' Tamaki campus was developed that is seeing the campus evolve as a unique national project with facilities and programmes designed to contribute to New Zealand's development as a knowledge society and economy. The campus aims to be research-led, postgraduate-intensive, creative, interdisciplinary, and entrepreneurial.

To achieve this vision, the Tamaki Campus is being developed around six major interdisciplinary themes related to international foresight and to export growth areas for New Zealand. These themes are:

- Health, Sports and Community
- Environment, Energy and Resources
- Information Technology, Communications and Electronics
- Materials and Manufacturing
- Food and Biotechnology
- Information Management

The vision for Tamaki includes the development of a Research Integration Campus enabling research institutions and businesses to co-locate with the University. This concept recognizes the significant opportunities that co-location delivers in terms of creating wealth from knowledge for the benefit of New Zealand's economy and society. For students, this development provides practical examples of problem solving from a commercial environment, work opportunities, and an insight into the business ethos of our allied partners. Tamaki is the perfect location for the knowledge economy and to develop the skills required by employers in today's business environment.

Established science-based courses at Tamaki include Computer Science, Environmental Science, Ergonomics, Industrial Mathematics, Mathematics, Psychology, Speech Science, Sport and Exercise Science, Statistics and Wine Science. The campus is also one of the sites where the Faculty of Business and Economics is offering its exciting new Bachelor of Business and Information Management (BBIM) degree.

In 2004, the School of Population Health was established on the Campus offering programmes, in conjunction with the Faculty of Science, relating to population and community health. The Faculty of Engineering also commenced postgraduate programmes in materials engineering from the new Ray Meyer Research Centre. Overall, the campus saw significant growth in 2004.

The Campus is proud of its student lounge and staff cafe, its high-quality teaching and computing facilities and its excellent playing fields and spacious clubrooms on Colin Maiden Park. The Tamaki Library has a growing collection of books, serials and videos covering the courses taught on the campus and is linked to the computerized catalogue (Voyager) on the City Campus. The audio-visual area of the Library has a direct feed of 12 international television stations from the Satellite Receiving Station at Tamaki (UniSat) that receives and records international television programming for education and research at The University of Auckland.

Tamaki offers a broad range of student services and a regular bus service operates between the City and

Tamaki Campuses. Lectures at Tamaki begin 30 minutes past the hour to allow both staff and students to teach and to attend classes on both campuses. There is extensive parking available on the Tamaki Campus for staff and students.

---

## The Grafton Campus

In 1968, the School of Medicine was established on the 2.2 hectare Grafton Campus on Park Road. In 1995, this site was recognised as a separate Medical and Health Sciences Campus. It is located opposite Auckland City Hospital and is the base for the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences. It also houses the Faculty of Science's Department of Optometry. A new Student and Staff Amenities facility was opened during 2004. This includes an information commons, cafeteria, common rooms and study space. Medical and Health Sciences occupies further space in leased buildings in Grafton Road.

During 2005 the Auckland Hospital Academic Centre will be completed to provide facilities for clinical staff.

The Population Health Complex at Tamaki Campus was completed during 2004. This provides a base for the Faculty's School of Population Health, and allows integration of Medical and Health Sciences and Science programmes.

The Clinical Schools have a presence at Auckland City, Greenlane, Middlemore, North Shore, Rotorua, Waikato and Waitakere Hospitals. The Liggins Institute, a multidisciplinary medical research institute, is located across the road from the Grafton Campus at 2-6 Park Avenue.

---

## The North Shore Campus

The North Shore Campus was established in 2001 at 132 Hurstmere Road, Takapuna in the heart of the Takapuna business centre close to cafes, the beach and on the main bus route.

The Campus features a congenial corporate environment with modern facilities for students and staff. The latest technology is used in the teaching rooms and computer laboratories. The Campus has a working relationship with the Berkeley Cinema where some lectures may be held in the morning.

A number of courses are offered on the North Shore with the Bachelor of Business and Information Management (BBIM) degree being the core programme. Other courses include the Diploma in Business Administration offered through Executive Programmes, business related short courses and corporate events. Continuing Education also offers selected programmes.

---

## The University of Auckland Trusts and Foundations

There are four independent Trusts and Foundations associated with The University of Auckland. These have been set up, with separate Boards of Trustees to be responsible for the management and appropriate distribution of philanthropic funds, including bequests, given as financial support for the University. Donations can be made for specific

purposes, either as an endowment or as an amount that can be used for a specific period of time.

Support is generally for four key purposes:

- Student scholarships and prizes (for both academic excellence and for financial hardship)
- Academic positions
- Facilities and equipment
- Capital works

The four bodies have registered charitable status in their jurisdictions. This allows for donors who are registered for tax purposes in these countries to take advantage of the tax deductibility available when making a gift. The four Trusts are:

1. The University of Auckland Charitable Trust (established in 2002) and based in Auckland
2. The School of Medicine Foundation (established in 1995) and based in Auckland primarily for the benefit of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences
3. The Friends of The University of Auckland (established in 2000) and based in the United States
4. The UK Friends of The University of Auckland (established in 2001) and based in the United Kingdom

Income from The University of Auckland Foundation, which was established to mark the commemoration of the Centenary of the University, is used to further international and national exchange of knowledge and experience amongst scholars and the dissemination of knowledge to the wider community. The University of Auckland Foundation funds and objectives will be administered as part of the Hood Fund established to mark the contribution of John Hood to the University.

Interest in The University of Auckland Foundation and Hood Fund should be directed to the University Registrar.

Information on making a donation, including a bequest to any of the four Trusts above should be directed in the first instance to:

The Director of Development  
The Office of External Relations and Development

---

## Auckland UniServices Ltd.

Auckland UniServices Ltd is a company legally separate from The University of Auckland but its shares are held in trust by the University. All profits made by UniServices will be returned to The University of Auckland.

The objectives of UniServices are to:

- Commercialize University-sourced technology and innovations.
- Provide specialist consulting, testing and teaching services on a commercial basis.

- Carry out research contract work for outside organizations.
- Undertake any other commercial work considered to be advantageous.
- UniServices owns the intellectual property of the University which arises from research activities.
- UniServices will evaluate the commercial potential of new ideas, innovations and inventions produced by University staff and students and, where there is judged to be a good possibility of commercialization, will arrange patent protection or advise on copyright and/or confidentiality agreements.

The main office of UniServices is located in UniServices House, 70 Symonds Street, and is open during normal working hours, phone 09 373 7522.

---

## Alliances with Other Tertiary Institutions

The University has a number of alliances with other tertiary institutions in the Auckland region. In some cases these alliances involve joint teaching arrangements.

### Auckland College of Education

The University of Auckland and the Auckland College of Education formed the Institute of Education in 2002 as a vehicle for joint teaching and research. An Institute Policy Board oversees the relationship. In 2003 the University and the College proposed a merger to Government. The merger was approved and will be implemented in time for the 2005 academic year.

### Auckland University of Technology

The University of Auckland and the Auckland University of Technology entered an alliance in 1999. The alliance provides for the development of complementary teaching programmes and co-operative activities in administration, research and procurement. A Joint Board between the two institutions oversees the development of the alliance.

### Manukau Institute of Technology

In 1999 The University of Auckland and the Manukau Institute of Technology signed a Deed of Cooperation with the aim of enhancing the availability of University qualifications to students in the greater Manukau region. The University of Auckland Programme at Manukau offers programmes in Teacher Education and Arts and the degrees of Bachelor of Business and Information Management and Bachelor of Visual Arts. These programmes are all taught at the Manukau Institute of Technology Campus. For further information on these programmes and on admission and enrolment, contact the Course Information Centre at Manukau Institute of Technology, or the ClockTower Student Information Centre at The University of Auckland.

# THE CALENDAR YEAR 2005

## Academic/Calendar Dates

## Meeting Dates

### January 2005

**Sat 1 New Year's Day**  
 Wed 5 Summer School Orientation Day  
 Thu 6 Summer School begins  
**Mon 31 Auckland/Northland Anniversary Day**

### February 2005

**Sun 6 Waitangi Day**  
 Thu 10 Summer School Lectures end  
 Summer School Examinations 14-16  
 February  
 Wed 16 Summer School ends  
 Sat 26 Executive Programmes Examination  
 Mon 28 Trimester 1 Lectures begin  
 Semester 1 Lectures begin

Tue 1 8:30am International  
 9:30am Biological Safety  
 Wed 2 9:00am Equal Opportunities  
 2:00pm Occupational Health & Safety  
 Tue 8 9:00am Academic Programmes  
 Wed 9 9:00am Schools Liaison  
 1:00pm Human Participants Ethics  
 Fri 11 1:00pm Runanga  
 Mon 14 9:00am Board of Graduate Studies  
 Tue 15 9:00am Research  
 9:00am Teaching and Learning Quality  
 Wed 16 9:00am Information Technology  
 Strategy & Policy  
 2:00pm A.U. Press  
 Mon 21 9:00am Education  
 Tue 22 3:00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting  
 Fri 25 8:45am Animal Ethics  
 Mon 28 3:00pm Staff Advisory

### March 2005

**Fri 25 Good Friday**  
**Mon 28 Easter Monday**  
**Tue 29 University Holiday**

Tue 1 8:30am International  
 9:30am Biological Safety  
 3:00pm Staff Professional Development  
 Mon 7 4:00pm Senate  
 Tue 8 9:00am Academic Programmes  
 Wed 9 1:00pm Human Participants Ethics  
 Thu 10 4:00pm Finance  
 Fri 11 8:00am Audit  
 Mon 14 9:00am Board of Graduate Studies  
 Tue 15 9:00am Library  
 9:00am Research  
 Wed 16 9:00am Information Technology  
 Strategy & Policy  
 Mon 21 9:00am Education  
 4:00pm Council  
 Tue 22 3:00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting

---

**April 2005**


---

Mid Semester Break 18-26 April  
**Mon 25 ANZAC Day**

Fri 1	8:45am	Animal Ethics
Mon 4	10:00am	Student Affairs
	4:00pm	Senate
Tue 5	8:30am	International
	9:30am	Biological Safety
Wed 6	9:00am	Equal Opportunities
	2:00pm	A.U. Press
	2:00pm	Occupational Health & Safety
Mon 11	9:00am	Board of Graduate Studies
Wed 13	9:00am	Schools Liaison
	1:00pm	Human Participants Ethics
Mon 18	9:00am	Education
	4:00pm	Council
Tue 19	9:00am	Research
	9:00am	Teaching & Learning Quality
Wed 20	9:00am	Information Technology
		Strategy & Policy
Tue 26	9:00am	Academic Programmes
	3:00pm	Capital Planning & Budgeting
Fri 29	8:45am	Animal Ethics

---

**May 2005**


---

Sat 21 Trimester 1 Lectures end  
 Sat 28 Trimester 1 Examinations  
 Graduation 2-6 May

Tue 3	8:30am	International
	9:30am	Biological Safety
	3:00pm	Staff Professional Development
Mon 9	9:00am	Board of Graduate Studies
	4:00pm	Senate
Wed 11	1:00pm	Human Participants Ethics
	3:00pm	Tamaki Strategic Advisory Board
Fri 13	1:00pm	Runanga
Mon 16	9:00am	Education
Tue 17	9:00am	Research
Wed 18	9:00am	Information Technology
		Strategy & Policy
Fri 27	8:45am	Animal Ethics
Mon 30	10:00am	Student Affairs
	3:00pm	Staff Advisory
Tue 31	9:00am	Academic Programmes
	3:00pm	Capital Planning & Budgeting

---

**June 2005**


---

**Mon 6 Queen's Birthday**  
 Mon 6 Trimester 2 Lectures begin  
 Sat 4 Lectures end  
 Study Break/Exams 4 June-25 June  
 Sat 25 Semester 1 ends  
 Inter-Semester Break 27 June-16 July

Wed 1	9:00am	Equal Opportunities
	2:00pm	A.U. Press
	2:00pm	Occupational Health & Safety
Tue 7	8:30am	International
	9:30am	Biological Safety
Wed 8	9:00am	Schools Liaison
	1:00pm	Human Participants Ethics
Mon 13	9:00am	Board of Graduate Studies
	4:00pm	Senate
Tue 14	9:00am	Teaching and Learning Quality
Thu 16	4:00pm	Finance
Fri 17	9:00am	Audit
Mon 20	9:00am	Education
Tue 21	9:00am	Library
	9:00am	Research
Fri 24	8:45am	Animal Ethics
Mon 27	4:00pm	Council
Tue 28	9:00am	Academic Programmes
	3:00pm	Capital Planning & Budgeting

---

**July 2005**


---

Mon 18 Semester 2 begins

Tue 5 8:30am International  
 9:30am Biological Safety  
 3:00pm Staff Professional Development  
 Mon 11 9:00am Board of Graduate Studies  
 Wed 13 1:00pm Human Participants Ethics  
 Mon 18 9:00am Education  
 Tue 19 9:00am Research  
 Wed 20 9:00am Information Technology  
 Strategy & Policy  
 Mon 25 10:00am Student Affairs  
 4:00pm Senate  
 Tue 26 9:00am Academic Programmes  
 3:00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting  
 Wed 27 2:00pm A.U. Press  
 Fri 29 8:45am Animal Ethics

---

**August 2005**


---

Sat 26 Trimester 2 Lectures end  
 Mid Semester Break 29 August-10  
 September

Tue 2 8:30am International  
 9:30am Biological Safety  
 Wed 3 9:00am Equal Opportunities  
 2:00pm Occupational Health & Safety  
 Mon 8 9:00am Board of Graduate Studies  
 Tue 9 9:00am Teaching & Learning Quality  
 Wed 10 9:00am Schools Liaison  
 1:00pm Human Participants Ethics  
 Fri 12 1:00pm Runanga  
 Mon 15 9:00am Education  
 4:00pm Council  
 Tue 16 9:00am Research  
 Mon 22 3:00pm Staff Advisory  
 Fri 26 8:45am Animal Ethics  
 Mon 29 4:00pm Senate  
 Tue 30 9:00am Academic Programmes  
 3:00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting

---

**September 2005**


---

Sat 3 Trimester 2 Examinations  
 Mon 12 Trimester 3 Lectures begin  
 Thu 29 Graduation

Tue 6 8:30am International  
 9:30am Biological Safety  
 3:00pm Staff Professional Development  
 Mon 12 9:00am Board of Graduate Studies  
 Wed 14 1:00pm Human Participants Ethics  
 Thu 15 4:00pm Finance  
 Fri 16 8:00am Audit  
 Mon 19 9:00am Education  
 Tue 20 9:00am Library  
 9:00am Research  
 Wed 21 9:00am Information Technology  
 Strategy & Policy  
 Mon 26 10:00am Student Affairs  
 Tue 27 9:00am Academic Programmes  
 3:00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting  
 Fri 30 8:45am Animal Ethics

---

**October 2005**


---

Sat 22 Lectures end  
Study Break/Exams 22 October–12  
November

**Mon 24 Labour Day**

Mon 3 4:00pm Senate  
Tue 4 8:30am International  
9:30am Biological Safety  
Wed 5 9:00am Equal Opportunities  
2:00pm A.U. Press  
2:00pm Occupational Health & Safety  
Mon 10 9:00am Board of Graduate Studies  
Tue 11 9:00am Teaching & Learning Quality  
Wed 12 9:00am Schools Liaison  
1:00pm Human Participants Ethics  
3:00pm Tamaki Strategic  
Advisory Board  
Mon 17 9:00am Education  
4:00pm Council  
Tue 18 9:00am Academic Programmes  
9:00am Research  
Wed 19 9:00am Information Technology  
Strategy & Policy  
Tue 25 3:00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting  
Fri 28 8:45am Animal Ethics

---

**November 2005**


---

Sat 12 Semester 2 ends

Tue 1 8:30am International  
9:30am Biological Safety  
3:00pm Staff Professional Development  
Mon 7 4:00pm Senate  
Wed 9 1:00pm Human Participants Ethics  
Fri 11 1:00pm Runanga  
Mon 14 9:00am Board of Graduate Studies  
Tue 15 9:00am Library  
9:00am Research  
Wed 16 9:00am Information Technology  
Strategy & Policy  
Mon 21 9:00am Education  
Fri 25 8:45am Animal Ethics  
Mon 28 10:00am Student Affairs  
3:00pm Staff Advisory  
Tue 29 9:00am Academic Programmes  
3:00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting

---

**December 2005**


---

Sat 3 Trimester 3 Lectures end  
Sat 10 Trimester 3 Examinations  
**Sun 25 Christmas Day**  
**Mon 26 Boxing Day**

Thu 1 4:00pm Finance  
Fri 2 8:00am Audit  
Mon 5 9:00am Board of Graduate Studies  
4:00pm Senate  
Thu 6 9:00am Teaching and Learning Quality  
9:30am Biological Safety  
Wed 7 9:00am Equal Opportunities  
10:00am A.U. Press  
1:00pm Human Participants Ethics  
2:00pm Occupational Health & Safety  
Mon 12 9:00am Education  
4:00pm Council  
Tue 13 9:00am Research  
Wed 14 9:00am Schools Liaison  
Fri 16 8:45am Animal Ethics

---

## Academic Statutes and Regulations

- 13 Admission and Enrolment 2005
- 14 Admission Regulations
- 16 Enrolment and Programme Regulations
- 21 General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates
- 21 General Regulations – Master's Degrees
- 23 General Regulations for Named Doctorates
- 24 Credit Regulations
- 26 The Limitation of Entry Statute 1991
- 26 Enrolment Limitations 2005
- 27 Limitations Schedule
- 29 Fees Statute 2001
- 32 International Students
- 33 Examination Regulations

## ADMISSION AND ENROLMENT 2005

The University of Auckland has an on-line system for admission and enrolment.

### Admission to The University of Auckland

All new students, and those not enrolled in 2004 who are intending to study at the University in 2005, are required to complete an Application for Admission form. The form may be completed on-line at [www.auckland.ac.nz/apply\\_now](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/apply_now) or be obtained by telephoning 0800 61 62 63. For students who do not have access to Internet facilities, a Help Lab is available in:

ClockTower Student Information Centre  
The University of Auckland  
22 Princes St  
Auckland  
New Zealand  
Email: [studentinfo@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:studentinfo@auckland.ac.nz)

All Applications for Admission by new students will be acknowledged. Students will receive an offer of a place in programmes (diploma, degree or certificate) for which their admission is approved. This **offer of a place must be accepted on-line before the student proceeds to enrol** in the course/s of their choice.

### Enrolment at The University of Auckland

Students must enrol in courses on-line from a remote site, or from one of the Help Labs at the University.

### Admission and Enrolment Timetable

Applications for Admission can be submitted at any time throughout the year, but must be received by published deadlines.

Students must enrol as soon as possible after acceptance of an offer of place, as many University of Auckland courses are very popular and have a limited number of places available.

### 2005 Closing Dates for Admission and Enrolment

The following dates apply, except where different dates are set out in the Limitations Schedule of this Calendar.

Summer School	Admission	1 December 2004
Semester One and Two	Admission	8 December 2004
Semester Two	Admission	4 July 2005
Summer School	Enrolment	22 December 2004
Semester One and Two	Enrolment	14 February 2005
Semester Two	Enrolment	18 July 2005

## ADMISSION REGULATIONS

### Application for Admission

All students intending to study at The University of Auckland for the first time, and those students not enrolled at The University of Auckland in the previous calendar year, must submit an Application for Admission. Students whose admission is approved will receive an offer of a place and on acceptance of this offer may proceed to enrol on-line in courses.

### Prerequisites and Conditions

- 1 Subject to the Council's statutory powers to decline admission and enrolment (whether for insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers or for other cause) and to Regulation 2, a person is eligible to be admitted to the University and to be admitted as a student if that person:
  - a has satisfied the requirements for entrance to a university in New Zealand  
or
  - b is granted Special Admission  
or
  - c is granted Provisional Entrance or Discretionary Entrance  
or
  - d is granted admission ad eundem statum, based upon study at a secondary school or another tertiary institution:
    - (i) at entrance level,  
or
    - (ii) with credit,  
or
    - (iii) with graduate status.
- 2 Unless the Senate approves otherwise, a person who has not reached the age of 16 years by 31 December in the year preceding that in which admission is sought will not be eligible to be admitted to this University.
- 3 A person seeking to be admitted to the University must:
  - a comply with these regulations  
and
  - b sign the declaration on the Application for Admission form which includes the words:  
*'I promise to abide by the Statutes and Regulations, and comply with the reasonable requirements of The University of Auckland'*.

### Requirements for Entrance to a University in New Zealand

- 4 a **National Certificate of Educational Achievement**  
From 2005: a minimum of 42 credits at level 3 or higher on the National Qualifications Framework, including a minimum of 14 credits at level 3 or higher in each of two subjects from an approved subject list, with a further 14 credits at level 3 or higher taken from no more than two additional domains on the National Qualifications Framework or approved subjects; plus, a minimum of 14 credits at level 1 or higher in Mathematics or Pangarau; plus, a minimum of 8 credits at level 2 or higher in English or Te Reo Maori;

4 credits must be in Reading and 4 credits must be in Writing.

### b Bursaries examination

Up to and including 1986: an aggregate total of 160 marks in four subjects.

From 1987 to 1992: four individual subjects with D grades or higher. (Practical Art up to 1988 counts as two subjects for this purpose.)  
From 1993 to 2003: three individual subjects with C grades or higher plus Higher School Certificate, or an 'A' or 'B' Bursary.

### c UE gained before 1986.

d Up to and including 1992: a combination of credits, in a minimum of four subjects, gained from UE before 1986 and/or Bursaries Examinations since. A credit required a mark of at least 40 per cent in 1986 or a D grade or higher from 1987 on. (Practical Art up to 1988 counts as two subjects for this purpose.)

From 1993 to 2003: a combination of credits in three individual subjects in the Bursaries Examination plus Higher School Certificate.

e Up to and including 2003: 13 credits in three different subjects at Level 3 or above on the National Qualifications Framework and Higher School Certificate.

*Note: Credits in approved subjects from the National Qualifications Framework, and grades C or better in NZUEBS or equivalent, may be combined to make up the equivalent of three C passes.*

### Special Admission

- 5 a A person who does not hold a university entrance qualification but who is a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident and has attained the age of 20 years on or before the first day of the semester in which a proposed programme is offered is eligible to be granted Special Admission.
- b A person seeking Special Admission to the University has to apply for it in accordance with the Admission Regulations and submit evidence of age and educational qualifications.
- c The Senate may waive the age requirement where an applicant is in its opinion otherwise fit to be admitted and, in particular, has satisfied any qualification for admission specified in the regulations for that programme of study.
- d A person seeking to be admitted to The University of Auckland who wishes to be granted credit for any prior learning must apply under Regulation 8 (Admission at Entrance Level or with Credit).

### Provisional Entrance

- 6 a It is possible for a person who is a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident but who does not hold a university entrance qualification to be granted university entrance to a specified programme if that person:
  - (i) does not qualify for Special Admission

and

- (ii) has received secondary schooling to at least New Zealand Year 12 level, or its equivalent overseas, and been awarded Sixth Form Certificate in at least one subject, or its equivalent

and

- (iii) has not, in the year of application, entered examinations in more than two subjects of the NZUEBS qualification except as provided in 6b.

- b A student at a New Zealand secondary school, who has entered examinations in more than two subjects of the NZUEBS qualification, may apply for provisional entrance in the same year for the purpose of enrolling in a programme offered in a Summer School by the University. Any person admitted under this regulation who does not in the following January gain an entrance qualification based on NZUEBS will be required to withdraw from the University and may apply for admission at mid-year. Students required to withdraw may complete their Summer School programme before doing so but any courses passed will not be credited to a programme until a University Entrance qualification is gained.
- c The entrance qualification shall cease to be provisional when the student has passed courses totalling not fewer than 12 points.
- (i) While the entrance qualification remains provisional a student may enrol only in courses of the programme for which permission is granted.
- (ii) When the entrance qualification ceases to be provisional the student may enrol for any other programme subject to any requirement for enrolment for that programme.
- d A person seeking Provisional Entrance to the University must apply by completing the requirements prescribed on the *Provisional Entrance* form.

#### Discretionary Entrance

- 7 a A person under the age of 20 years who
- (i) is a citizen or permanent resident of New Zealand;
- and
- (ii) does not meet the university entrance standard;
- and
- (iii) has received secondary schooling to at least New Zealand Year 12 level, (or its equivalent overseas), and earned at least 14 credits in an approved subject at Level 2 towards NCEA (or its equivalent);
- and
- (iv) has met the literacy and numeracy standards required for University Entrance, or their equivalents;
- and
- (v) (a) has not completed Year 13 at a New Zealand secondary school  
or

- (b) has undertaken study in Year 13 at a New Zealand secondary school, but has not attempted to qualify for University Entrance;

may apply for Discretionary Entrance.

- b Persons who attempt to qualify for University Entrance in Year 13, but who fail to do so, may be considered for mid-year admission in the year following their NCEA assessment. Admission will be at the discretion of the University.
- c In special circumstances the Convener of the New Zealand Vice-Chancellors' Committee's Sub-Committee on University Entrance may permit persons who do not fulfill regulation 7a(iii) or regulation 7a(iv) or regulation 7a(v) above to apply for Discretionary Entrance.
- d A person studying at a New Zealand secondary school, who is attempting to qualify for entrance to the University, may apply for Discretionary Entrance in the same year for the purpose of enrolling in papers offered in Summer School. Any person admitted under this regulation who does not, in the following January, meet the University Entrance standard will be required to withdraw from the University and may re-apply for admission at mid-year. Students required to withdraw may complete their Summer School programme before doing so, but any courses passed will not be credited to a qualification until a University Entrance qualification is gained.
- e A person seeking Discretionary Entrance to the University must apply by completing the requirements prescribed on the Discretionary Entrance form.

#### Admission *ad eundem statum* (Admission at Entrance Level or with Credit)

##### 8 a From a New Zealand university

A student from another university in New Zealand, including a student who had enrolled at The University of Auckland previously, who wishes to reapply to The University of Auckland must submit an Application for Admission form and may apply for credit under the provisions of the Credit Regulations.

##### b From another tertiary institution in New Zealand or overseas

A person who wishes to be admitted to the University and who has gained appropriate qualifications validated by the New Zealand Qualifications Authority or from an overseas institution may be granted admission by this University:

- (i) at entrance level
- (ii) with credit towards a certificate, diploma or a Bachelor's degree for work which in the opinion of the Senate is substantially equivalent and is in accordance with the credit regulations
- (iii) with graduate status.
- c **From a New Zealand secondary school**  
New Zealand citizens, permanent residents or international students who have gained

from a New Zealand secondary school an entrance qualification approved by the New Zealand Vice-Chancellor's Committee for the purpose of admission ad eundem statum, may be granted admission ad eundem statum to this University.

**d From an overseas secondary school**

New Zealand citizens, permanent residents or international students who have gained an appropriate overseas qualification may apply to have that qualification recognised as being equivalent to a university entrance qualification set out in Regulations 4a-c above. A New Zealand citizen who has completed a year of academic study overseas, which is deemed to be at the equivalent of Year 13 in New Zealand, whether or not a formal academic qualification has been obtained, may apply for Provisional or Discretionary Entrance, if appropriate, or may apply for ad eundem statum entrance under this clause.

**e** A person seeking admission under this regulation has to apply by completing the requirements on the Application for Admission form.

- 9 a** Credits may be specified or unspecified and the grant of admission may include permission to advance in specified subjects or courses.
- b** Prerequisite courses or programmes may be prescribed as a condition of the approval to proceed to a higher degree or other qualification.

**Students Enrolled at Another Educational Institution**

- 10 a** When they enrol, students are required to declare if they are intending to enrol concurrently during the year in question at any other educational institution.

**b** A student at a New Zealand secondary school who satisfies the admission requirements and who has the specific written approval of the institution's principal may, with the approval of Senate or its representative, enrol in up to 2 points per semester.

**English Language Competence**

**11 a** Applicants for admission to The University of Auckland must provide evidence acceptable to the University of their competence in both written and spoken English.

**b** For admission purposes, the University will be satisfied of an applicant's competence in English:

- (i) If English is the applicant's first language; or
- (ii) If the applicant has a New Zealand university entrance qualification; or
- (iii) If the applicant has an overseas university entrance qualification from a country where the main language is English and the main language of instruction and assessment for that qualification was English; or
- (iv) If the applicant performs to a satisfactory standard, as set down by the University Senate from time to time, in an approved English Language test; or
- (v) If the applicant provides other evidence acceptable to the University of competence in both written and spoken English.

**c** If the applicant is age 20 years or over, and is a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident, this regulation does not apply.

*Note: Under the provisions of the Education Act 1989, The University of Auckland may require students over the age of 20 applying for admission to any restricted entry programme to provide evidence of English language competency.*

## ENROLMENT AND PROGRAMME REGULATIONS

**Academic Calendar**

- 1 a** The academic year will begin on the first day of January of the calendar year and will end on the last day of December of that same calendar year.
- b** There will be a Summer School and two semesters in each year.
- c** The Summer School will begin on the second working day after the New Year break and will end with examinations held over three days commencing the second or third Monday in February.
- d** The first semester will begin on the ninth or tenth Monday of the calendar year and end on the Saturday preceding the 26th Monday of the calendar year, the final three weeks of which will be a study and examination period.
- e** The second semester will begin on the 29th or 30th Monday of the calendar year and end on the Saturday preceding the 46th Monday of the calendar year, the final three weeks again being a study and examination period.

**f** Each semester will include a break of at least one week after about six weeks of teaching.

**Definitions of Full-time Study**

- 2** Full-time study is defined as a student workload of:
- a** not fewer than 12 points over two semesters in one year  
or
  - b** not fewer than 6 points in one semester  
or
  - c** not fewer than 2 points in Summer School.
- 3** Part-time study is defined as a student workload of:
- a** fewer than 12 points over two semesters in one year  
or
  - b** fewer than 6 points in one semester  
or
  - c** fewer than 2 points in Summer School.

**Points**

- 4 a (i) A student may enrol in up to 20 points in an academic year for a Bachelor's degree, diploma or certificate, subject to the provisions of the Academic Progress regulations.
- (ii) Provided the 20 point limit is not exceeded, a student may enrol in:
- (a) up to 9 points in each of Semesters 1 and 2
- (b) up to 4 points in a Summer School.

*Note: A recommended full-time programme in Semesters 1 and 2 would normally comprise a total of 14 points.*

- b (i) For a Master's degree, PhD or other doctorate, where another programme is included in the enrolment, a limit on points may be determined by the Dean of Faculty or delegated representative in any particular case provided that the Master's, PhD or doctoral programme will always comprise more than half of the total points for which the student has enrolled.
- (ii) Students who are eligible to claim student allowances and/or an additional student loan entitlement and wish to enrol during the summer vacation period in order to work on their thesis, dissertation or research topic are required to complete a Course Alteration Form.

*Note:*

- a *This regulation provides the opportunity for Master's students to include their thesis, dissertation or research topic in their enrolment together with the required courses in any academic year.*
- b *Before completing a Master's degree or submitting a thesis, a student needs to have enrolled in, and paid the specified fees for at least the minimum number of points as set out in the relevant degree/course regulations.*

**General Programme Provisions**

- 5 a For the purposes of this section of the Regulations a representative of the Senate includes a Dean, and the Deputy, or Associate of a Dean; and a Head of Department and the Deputy or Associate of a Head of Department.
- b Subject to the Admission Regulations and to the express provisions of any other statute or regulation, every student for a certificate, diploma or degree programme must:
- (i) be admitted to the University;
- and*
- (ii) follow the prescribed programme in the order prescribed or indicated in accordance with the regulations governing that programme;
- and*
- (iii) comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations.
- c Each student must ensure that, before confirming their enrolment, their proposed programme and enrolment:
- (i) complies with the regulations of the qualification to which they have been admitted;
- and*

- (ii) does not involve lecture or examination clashes.

- d The Senate or its representative may in exceptional circumstances approve:

- (i) a proposed enrolment which does not in every particular satisfy the regulations for the programme for which the student is intending to enrol;

*or*

- (ii) a variation in the programme to avoid lecture or examination clashes.

- e Where an approval of a proposed programme as a whole is declined by a representative of the Senate the student may appeal to the Senate whose decision shall be final.

- f Where electives are prescribed for a programme, the Senate may at its discretion determine which of them shall be available in any semester provided that sufficient electives are available to enable students to complete their programme.

- g A student who has enrolled for the second semester in a course or courses that have a first semester prerequisite or corequisite and who fails the prerequisite/corequisite course(s) may not proceed with the second semester enrolment unless a concession is granted by the relevant Dean.

- h Where in the opinion of a Head of Department an insufficient number of students has enrolled in a course taught in the Department or where there are insufficient staff to teach it, that Head of Department may, with the approval of the Dean of Faculty, cancel that course not later than one week after the beginning of the semester in which it would have been taught, if the essential prerequisites for any student's enrolment are not thereby affected. A student is not to be charged a fee for any alteration to enrolment required because of the cancellation of a course.

**Restrictions**

- 6 a A student may not normally enrol in the same semester for more than two different programmes.
- b (i) A student may not enrol in the same semester for courses the content of which is substantially similar.
- (ii) A student may not enrol for any course the content of which is the same as, or substantially similar to, any course for which credit has been received, provided that in exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit such enrolment for a Certificate of Proficiency.
- (iii) Work submitted for credit towards the result in any course may not be resubmitted in respect of any other course.
- c A student who has twice enrolled in, but has failed to be credited with a pass in a course is not entitled to enrol again in that course other than in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate or its representative.
- d A student may not be admitted to a programme for a qualification for which the requirements have been completed or which

has already been awarded or conferred, unless specific provision is made in the regulations for the relevant programme or special approval is given by the Senate or its representative.

### Enrolment

- 7 a Following acceptance in a programme of their choice, students can enrol in courses on-line. For late enrolment see the Late Enrolment provisions in this section.
- b Students whose dissertations or theses for a diploma or degree are incomplete are required to be enrolled until the dissertation or thesis is presented.
- c Students for Part VI of the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery must complete a formal enrolment not later than 15 November or such date as approved by the Senate or its representative for the commencement of Part VI, and pay the prescribed fees in accordance with the University's enrolment requirements.

### Late Enrolment

- 8 a An enrolment may be accepted after the day prescribed, subject to the availability of courses.
- b The choice of courses for students who enrol after the closing date for enrolment will be determined by the Senate or its representative and will not necessarily be those proposed by the students concerned. In determining such courses, the Senate is to have regard to the prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of those students who have enrolled at or before the prescribed time.

### Not-for-Credit Courses

- 9 a Subject to the Admission and Fees Regulations, a student who has a personal interest in a course and for whom enrolment for a Certificate of Proficiency is deemed inappropriate, may apply for enrolment in a Not-for-Credit course.
- b Enrolment is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

### Changes to Current Enrolment

#### Deadlines for Additions and Deletions

- 10 The last dates for additions and deletions under Regulations 11 and 12 are set out below:

Semester courses enrolled in	Deadline for additions/deletions
First Semester courses	2nd Friday of semester
Second Semester courses	2nd Friday of semester
Double-semester courses	4th Friday of first semester for the course
Summer School courses	End of first week after start of Summer School
Trimester courses	2nd Friday of trimester

#### Note:

- a It is not sufficient for a student to notify an addition or deletion solely to the Department – it must be done on-line.

- b Amended fees invoices (including credits) for any changes to enrolment will be issued after the close of the official alteration period.
- c Where special circumstances apply, a student may apply for an exemption from additional fees from the Director, Student Administration or delegated authority.
- d Deadline dates are calculated from the start of the semester, trimester or Summer School. For courses that start on other dates, the deadline will be calculated from the start of the course.

### Additions

- 11 Students wishing to add a course to their current enrolment may do so on-line, where the approved limit has not been reached or where the available resources have not reached capacity.

### Deletions

- 12 a A student wishing to delete a course may do so on-line.
- b The course will be deleted from the student's academic record.

### Late Deletion

- 13 a Late applications to delete will be considered by the Director, Student Administration (or delegated authority) only in exceptional circumstances (such as illness, injury or events beyond the control of the student) and upon submission by the student of appropriate evidence.
- b Applications must be made on the Late Application to Delete a Course form and must be received by the last day of lectures of the semester or trimester for the course.
- c Following the decision on an application for late deletion of a course, the student may apply for reconsideration of that decision. An application for reconsideration must be made:
- in writing to the Director, Student Administration no later than four weeks after the student is notified of the decision
- and
- must be accompanied by further evidence in support of the application.

### Substitutions

- 14 a Where a Department directs a student to substitute one course for another in the same subject, the student may do so on the appropriate form and with the approval of the Dean of the appropriate Faculty.
- b Courses may be substituted up until three weeks before the end of lectures for the semester in which the course is taught.
- c A course may only be substituted with a course which is of the same duration, same points value and taught in the same semester.
- Note: Where students are directed to take a more/less advanced Second Semester course in place of a First Semester course, they will be permitted, if necessary, to make a late deletion.
- d The substituted course will be removed from the student's academic record.
- e There will be no adjustment to the student's

tuition fees. If there is a variation between charges payable in respect of the substitute and the substituted course, the student will be required to pay only the difference in those charges.

- f There will be no refund of any fees or charges for the substituted course.

### Withdrawals

- 15 a Any student wishing to cease attendance in a programme or course after the period specified for deletion may apply to do so by obtaining the approval of the relevant Head of Department and the Dean of the Faculty for that programme. Application must be made on the Course Alteration Form.
- b The last dates for withdrawals are set out below:

Semester courses enrolled in	Deadline for withdrawals
Semester courses	3 weeks before the end of lectures
Double-semester courses	3 weeks before the end of lectures in the 2nd Semester
Trimester courses	3 weeks before the end of lectures
Summer School courses	1 week before the end of lectures

- c The course will remain on the academic record and show as a withdrawal.
- d All fees will remain owing.
- e For calculation of Satisfactory Progress (under Regulation 18 of these regulations) withdrawal will be counted as a failure.
- f For selection in a limited-entry course, a withdrawal is counted as a failure.
- g Where withdrawal from a course will not reduce the student's enrolment to less than 12 points over the academic year, the withdrawal from that course will not affect selection in limited-entry courses.
- h For student allowances the course will count as a failure and automatically reduce the number of points in which the student is deemed to be enrolled.
- i If a student who ceases to attend lectures fails to complete the Course Alteration Form, the course(s) will be recorded as 'Did not sit' and will count as a failure for all purposes.
- j Applications to withdraw submitted after the dates in Regulation 15b and before the end of the semester or trimester will be considered by the Director, Student Administration (or delegated authority) only in exceptional circumstances (such as illness, injury or events beyond the control of the student) and upon submission of the appropriate evidence.

### Refund of Fees

- 16 a Where a student applies, before the dates specified in Regulation 10, to delete all courses of the current enrolment, a full refund of all tuition fees and the Student Services Fee will be made.

*Note: A student who has deleted all courses is no longer deemed to be enrolled.*

- b Where a student applies, before the dates specified in Regulation 10, to delete one or more but not all courses of the current enrolment, a refund of the fees for the course(s) deleted will be made.
- c Where a student has been permitted by the Director, Student Administration, under Regulation 13c, to delete a course after the prescribed date because of illness, injury or exceptional circumstances beyond the student's control, a refund of tuition fees will be granted in accordance with the Tuition Fees Refund Guidelines below, provided that the Senate may in its discretion increase this percentage, but there will be no refund of the Student Services Fee.

*Note: Tuition Fees Refund Guidelines:*

- a For single-semester courses which are deleted:
- (i) before the commencement of the mid-semester break for that semester: 50 per cent
- (ii) thereafter no refunds will be granted.
- b For double-semester courses which are deleted:
- (i) before the commencement of the mid-semester break for the First Semester: 75 per cent
- (ii) before the end of the First Semester: 50 per cent
- (iii) before the commencement of the mid-semester break for the Second Semester: 25 per cent
- (iv) thereafter no refunds will be granted.
- c For Summer School courses which are deleted:
- (i) before the end of the second week from the start of Summer School: 50 per cent
- (ii) thereafter no refunds will be granted.
- d For trimester courses which are deleted:
- (i) before the end of the sixth week of the trimester: 50 per cent
- (ii) thereafter no refunds will be granted.

### Academic Progress

- 17 a Regulations concerning academic progress apply to all programmes at The University of Auckland unless otherwise specified in the particular regulations for certificates, diplomas and degrees printed elsewhere in this *Calendar*.
- b The application of these regulations includes students intending to transfer to The University of Auckland from any other New Zealand university and those students applying for admission having previously studied at another tertiary institution.

### Requirements for Satisfactory Progress

- 18 A student is required to have passed, in the last two semesters of study, courses worth half or more of the points in which they were enrolled. If a student has enrolled in Summer School, courses taken in Summer School will also be taken into consideration for assessing satisfactory progress.

**Unsatisfactory Progress**

- 19 a A student who fails to meet the requirement of satisfactory progress will, in the next two semesters of enrolment and any related Summer School enrolment, be automatically restricted to a minimum full-time load, ie, a maximum of six points in each full semester and not more than three points in Summer School.
- b A student whose enrolment is restricted under the provisions of Regulation 19a, and who fails to pass half the points enrolled for in the next two semesters of enrolment or any related Summer School enrolment, will be suspended from enrolment at The University of Auckland for the next two semesters and the related Summer School.
- c Students suspended from enrolment under these provisions may apply to the Senate for reconsideration of the suspension where they consider that medical or other exceptional circumstances should be taken into account. Where such reconsideration is given, the Senate or its representative (the Dean of the Faculty concerned) may:
- (i) confirm the suspension
  - or
  - (ii) permit a student to enrol under specific conditions.
- d A student permitted to re-enrol under conditions specified by the Senate or its representative, but who fails to satisfy those conditions during their next two semesters of enrolment and the related Summer School, will be automatically suspended from enrolment at The University of Auckland for the next two semesters and the related Summer School.
- e A student is entitled to re-enrol without any restriction that might be imposed under these regulations where any condition(s) imposed in a previous year have been satisfied.
- f A student who fails on a second or subsequent occasion to meet the requirements for satisfactory progress, will be excluded from enrolment at The University of Auckland for the next six semesters and the related Summer School sessions.
- g A student excluded under Regulation 19f must apply for readmission to a programme.
- h Students excluded from enrolment under these provisions may apply to the Senate for reconsideration of the exclusion where they consider that medical or other exceptional circumstances should be taken into account. Where such reconsideration is given, the Senate or its representative may:
- (i) confirm the exclusion
  - or
  - (ii) permit a student to be readmitted under specific conditions.
- i Where a student has not been enrolled at a tertiary institution for a period of five or more years, any conditions previously applicable in respect of that student's failure to make satisfactory academic progress will be cancelled.
- Note: Any specific conditions applied by Senate or its representative are to take precedence over the requirements set down in Regulations 19a, b and f.*
- 20 Applications to Senate must:
- a be made on the appropriate Unsatisfactory Progress form
  - and
  - b if special consideration is sought for medical or other exceptional reasons, include evidence
  - and
  - c state the programme for which the student intends to apply, should the application for readmission be successful
  - and
  - d reach the Director, Student Administration by the closing date for admission applications for that semester.
- 21 Any student declined readmission at this University under the Unsatisfactory Progress Regulation may within 14 days appeal to the Council against the decision of the Senate.
- 22 Provided that the student is enrolled in no other course, Regulations 17-21 do not apply to a student enrolling in any one of: case study, dissertation, original investigation, practicum, thesis or the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

**Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers**

- 23 a The Vice-Chancellor may give such direction, or make such provision as he or she thinks fit, for the relief of undue hardship where it is shown to his or her satisfaction:
- (i) that an alteration or amendment to statutes or regulations involving a change in a programme or in examination requirements has caused a student hardship
  - or
  - (ii) that official advice has been given in writing and acted upon, and it is later found that the courses the student has taken do not accord with the programme regulations and that hardship would be caused if the student were to be compelled to comply with the full requirements of the regulations.
- b A student may appeal against any decision of the Vice-Chancellor under this Regulation to the Council by giving notice in writing to the Registrar within 14 days of being notified of the decision. The Council shall have the power to make such provision as it may think fit. The decision of the Council on any appeal under this Regulation shall be final.

## GENERAL REGULATIONS – DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

### Deadlines for Completion

- Diplomas and certificates are to be completed following the Deadlines for Completion unless the individual regulations specify otherwise.
- Enrolment in diplomas and certificates not completed by these deadlines will require approval by the Senate or its representative.

Points Value	Deadlines for Completion
7 points:	within two semesters of initial enrolment
14 points:	within four semesters of initial enrolment
21 points:	within six semesters of initial enrolment
28 points:	within eight semesters of initial enrolment

## GENERAL REGULATIONS – MASTER'S DEGREES

The following regulations take precedence over the specific regulations for each Master's degree published elsewhere in this Calendar. They are to be read in conjunction with the specific degree regulations for each Master's degree. Students first enrolled in a Master's degree in 1998 or earlier will finish their programme under the regulations applicable at the time of first enrolment or as otherwise specified prior to the coming into force of these regulations.

### Note:

For the purposes of these regulations:

- a thesis is worth 10 points or more
- a dissertation or Research Project is worth up to 9 points.

### General Requirements

- A student enrolled for a Master's degree at this University must:
  - Pass the full points value specified in the degree regulations, but the total enrolment may not exceed the minimum points requirement for the degree by more than 4 points.
  - Complete the requirements for the degree as follows:

### 2 Deadlines for Completion

Degree Points	Initial Enrolment	Final Semester		Submission of thesis	Short Extensions
		Full-time	Part-time		
28	1st Semester	4th	8th	15 December 1 May	28 February 15 July
	2nd Semester	4th	8th		
14	1st Semester	2nd	4th	15 December 1 May	28 February 15 July
	2nd Semester	2nd	4th		
21	1st Semester	3rd	6th	1 July 15 December 15 December 15 July	30 September 28 February 28 February 30 September
	2nd Semester	3rd	6th		

### Notes:

- For these purposes, a nominal starting date for the First Semester is **1 March** and for the Second Semester **15 July**.
- In all cases for the calculation of due date, the semester of initial enrolment is deemed to be the first semester in which the student enrolled for the programme.
- Graduation:** students should note that where they submit by 15 December or 1 May

respectively, it is expected that they should be able to graduate in the next scheduled graduation ceremony.

- Part-time study is defined as a student workload of fewer than 12 points over two semesters in one year or fewer than 6 points in one semester.
- Where the enrolment in the programme is partially full-time and partially part-time, the maximum time for completion is to be based on the period for completion for part-time study provided that one semester of full-time study counts as two semesters of part-time study for the purposes of calculation of the completion date.

### Completion of Requirements

#### 3 a Thesis

- A student whose programme includes a thesis must complete the requirements in accordance with the schedule in Regulation 2. However, the Head of the Department concerned may approve a short extension of time as shown in the schedule.
- If, in exceptional circumstances beyond the student's control, the thesis has not been able to be completed by the specified deadline (including any approved extensions given under Regulation 3a(i) above), the Senate or its representative, acting upon the recommendation of the Head of Department, may approve a limited extension of time, not normally exceeding one semester, for the work to be completed.

#### b Dissertation or Research Topic

- A student whose programme includes a dissertation or research topic needs to complete the requirements by the last day of the final semester calculated in the schedule above.
- If, in exceptional circumstances beyond the student's control, the dissertation or research topic has not been able to be completed by the above deadline,

the Senate or its representative, acting upon the recommendation of the Head of Department, may approve a limited extension of time, not exceeding three months.

#### c Courses Only

- (i) A student whose programme does not include a thesis, dissertation or research topic must complete the requirements by the end of the final semester shown in the schedule above.
- (ii) Extensions of time to complete work in examined courses or 100 per cent coursework courses will not be granted beyond the end of the semester(s) in which the course is offered.

#### Tuition Fees for Extensions of Time

- 4 Where an extension of time for the submission of a thesis, dissertation or research topic is approved under Regulation 3a(ii) or 3b(ii), students will be required to be enrolled and pay tuition fees at the rate of one point for each two-month period or part thereof. This will only apply when the student's current enrolment period in the course has ended.

#### Honours

- 5 Where the regulations provide for the award of Honours, a Master's degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### Eligibility for Honours

- 6 Where the requirements for the degree have not been completed in accordance with Regulations 3a(i) and 3b(i), a student's eligibility for Honours will lapse. However, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, the Senate or its representative may approve the retention of eligibility for Honours.

#### Submissions of Theses and Dissertations

- 7
  - a The student is to submit two hard-bound copies of the thesis to the Graduate Centre by the date indicated for completion in the Schedule. A short abstract not exceeding 350 words, together with a library thesis consent form, are to be bound into each copy.
  - b Dissertations are to be bound as specified by the Faculty and submitted to the supervisor in accordance with Regulation 3b.
  - c The Head of Department is to transmit the submitted copies to the examiners.
  - d On completion of the examination the supervisor of the thesis will be responsible through the Head of Department for the deposit of two copies with the University Library.

#### Substitutions and Failed Courses

- 8 Master's students may not change their enrolment in a course after the last date approved for deletions, except in exceptional circumstances as provided for in the Enrolment and Programme Regulations under Changes to Current Enrolment.
- 9 A Master's student may not normally re-enrol in a failed course except as provided for in the regulations relating to aegrotat and compassionate passes. In exceptional circumstances, the student may apply to Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Head of Department for permission to re-enrol in the course and where approval is granted, the result achieved in the first attempt will not be considered in arriving at the overall grade for the programme.

- 10 Except as provided in Regulation 9, calculation of the overall grade will include the grades given for all courses attempted in the degree. For the purposes of grade or mark calculation, Withdrawal, Did Not Sit and Did Not Complete will count as zero.

#### Suspension

- 11 Enrolment for a Master's degree will normally be continuous. In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Head of Department may grant a period of suspension from enrolment not normally exceeding two consecutive semesters. In such cases the period of suspension will not count towards the time limits for the degree.

#### Cross-Credits and Reassignments

- 12 Courses may not be cross-credited into a Master's degree, but may with the approval of the Head of Department be reassigned as specified in the Credit Regulations. Any credit must be awarded in accordance with the Credit Regulations.

#### Certificate of Proficiency

- 13 The Certificate of Proficiency regulations under 'Other Programmes' apply.

#### Transitional Certificate

- 14 The Transitional Certificate regulations under 'Other Programmes' apply. A Transitional Certificate course may not be reassigned to a Master's degree.

#### Variations

- 15 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to the regulations for a Master's degree.

# GENERAL REGULATIONS FOR NAMED DOCTORATES

*These Regulations apply to all doctoral degrees except the Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees, and should be read in conjunction with the regulations for those degrees.*

*The 'Department' is the Department or School or other academic unit in which the candidate is registered, and the 'Head of Department' is the head of that academic unit.*

## Registration

- 1 a The recommendation for registration by the Head of Department is to include
  - (i) the proposed date of registration, and
  - (ii) nominations for supervisors, and
  - (iii) satisfactory evidence that the candidate meets the admission criteria and has the ability to follow the proposed program of study, and
  - (iv) confirmation that the School/Department accepts responsibility for making satisfactory supervision arrangements and providing research resources and facilities over the whole course of the degree.
- b The Board of Graduate Studies will appoint two supervisors for each candidate, or one supervisor and one advisor, the main supervisor being a staff member of the Department. The supervisor(s) must be actively involved in research in the candidate's general field, and must either hold a doctoral degree or be appropriately qualified and experienced.
- c Candidates wishing to present and defend a thesis in Maori must, before applying to the Head of Department to be registered, obtain the permission of the Pro Vice-Chancellor (Maori). When such permission is granted, the Pro Vice-Chancellor (Maori) will make a recommendation in writing to the Board of Graduate Studies as to;
  - (i) whether the candidate has adequate fluency and literacy in Te Reo Maori in the subject area of the thesis, and
  - (ii) the likelihood of being able to find appropriately qualified examiners for the thesis.

## Reviews of Progress

- 2 a At the end of each year of study the main supervisor, the candidate and the Head of Department are to submit, through the Associate Dean (Postgraduate) of the Faculty, a joint report to the Board of Graduate Studies on the candidate's progress. As part of this report the main supervisor and the Head of Department are to make one of the following recommendations:
  - (i) that the candidate's registration be continued;
  - or
  - (ii) that the candidate's registration be continued subject to specified conditions;
  - or
  - (iii) that the candidate's registration be terminated.

The candidate shall be given an opportunity to make written submissions to the Board of Graduate Studies on the above annual report.

- b Where a recommendation is made under Clause 2a(ii), the Head of Department will also recommend to the Board of Graduate Studies any specific goals and/or conditions to be met by the candidate and the time in which these are to be completed. At the end of this period the Head of Department and main supervisor will advise the Board of Graduate Studies whether or not these requirements have been met. Registration will terminate if the specified conditions have not been fulfilled to the satisfaction of the Board of Graduate Studies.

## Enrolment and Fees

- 3 a Candidates for the degree must be enrolled and pay all prescribed fees including tuition fees in each academic year for which they are registered. Candidates need not pay tuition fees for any period during which their registration is suspended.
- b On enrolment in each academic year every candidate must pay the prescribed fees for that academic year.
- c A candidate who submits a thesis or terminates their registration will receive a refund of one-twelfth of the tuition fee paid for each complete month of the period between the date of submission of the thesis or termination of registration and the end of the academic year for which fees have been paid.
- d Unless otherwise exempted under the relevant regulations, all candidates must pay the prescribed Building Levy and Student Services fees and any other fees as may be prescribed from time to time. There is no refund of these fees.
- e No thesis will be accepted for examination unless all outstanding prescribed fees including tuition fees have been paid for the academic year in which a candidate is registered.

## Changes to the Conditions of Registration

- 4 a The Head of Department may, after consultation with the candidate, make a written recommendation to the Board of Graduate Studies via the Faculty Associate Dean (Postgraduate) for changes in the conditions of registration for the candidate. After considering a recommendation from the Head of Department, the Board of Graduate Studies may, after considering any submissions made by the candidate, change the conditions of registration for any candidate.

- b When necessary, the Head of Department is to recommend changes to the supervision of the candidate for approval by the Board of Graduate Studies. This will normally be required when a supervisor is granted leave, resigns or retires.
- c When the Board of Graduate Studies is satisfied that there is sufficient reason, it may extend a candidate's submission date. Before approving an extension of submission time the Board of Graduate Studies will require the candidate, the supervisor(s) and Head of Department to agree on the programme of supervision and schedule of research considered necessary for submission by the new date proposed.
- d Where a candidate is unable to continue with their research programme because of circumstances beyond their control, the Board of Graduate Studies may suspend their registration for a specified period of time. The conditions of Clause 7f of the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy 2003 will apply.
- e The Board of Graduate Studies may terminate the registration of any candidate who fails to make payment of any prescribed fees including tuition fees, or for an other reason specified in Clause 7g of the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy 2003. Before making a decision to terminate a candidate's registration pursuant to this

clause or otherwise, the Board of Graduate Studies will allow the candidate a reasonable opportunity to respond.

### Appeals

- 5 a If a doctoral candidate believes that he or she has been significantly disadvantaged by the examination process, or by any part of the examination process, then a written appeal may be made to the Board of Graduate Studies, setting out the grounds of the appeal. All relevant documents relied upon must be submitted with the appeal. Clauses 10d and 10e of the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy 2003 shall then apply.
- b Candidates, Supervisors or Heads of Department may appeal against any decision of the Board of Graduate Studies concerning matters other than examination normally within three months of the making of the decision, on the grounds that:
  - (i) relevant information which was not available to the Board of Graduate Studies at the time of its making the decision has since become available,
 and/or
  - (ii) the procedure adopted in arriving at the decision was unfair.

The appeal must state clearly all grounds relied on by the candidate and attach all relevant documentation. Clause 10b of the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy 2003 shall then apply.

---

## CREDIT REGULATIONS

---

### Credits

- 1 a A student may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative and on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Statute, be granted credit towards a programme approved by the Dean of Faculty concerned under the provisions of these regulations.
- b A student may not be granted further credit for work already credited under this regulation.

### Credit from Another Tertiary Institution: Transfer Credit

- 2 a A student who applies for admission to The University of Auckland and has undertaken a programme at another tertiary institution in New Zealand may be granted appropriate credit towards a degree or other qualification of The University of Auckland on the basis of work successfully completed in the previous programme.
- b A student who has gained from an overseas institution an appropriate qualification, or credit towards a qualification, validated by the New Zealand Qualifications Authority, and who is granted admission by this University, may be granted appropriate credit towards a qualification of the University of Auckland on the basis of work successfully completed in the previous programme.

- c To be awarded an undergraduate degree of The University of Auckland, a student must complete at least the equivalent of a full time year of study as an enrolled student at The University of Auckland.
- d Credit granted under 2a or 2b above may be specified or unspecified and the grant of admission may restrict advancement in specified subjects or programmes.
- e (i) Credit granted under 2a or 2b above will normally be granted only for courses at Stage I and Stage II. Only where prior approval for exchange or study abroad enrolment has been granted, or in exceptional circumstances, will the grant of credit be considered at Stage III for courses taken at Stage III at another tertiary institution.
  - (ii) Where Parts are specified for a Bachelor's degree, credit may be awarded within a Part according to suitability of course content and professional requirements and irrespective of the Stage of the course passed.
  - (iii) Only where prior approval for exchange or study abroad enrolment has been granted, or in exceptional circumstances, will the grant of credit be considered for courses taken at another tertiary institution at postgraduate level or for a postgraduate degree, diploma, or certificate.

- f Credit will not be available for any course passed at another tertiary institution with a conceded or restricted pass.
- g Credit may be refused for courses passed more than five years previously.

### Approved Study at Another Institution

- 3 a A student who is enrolled at The University of Auckland and who concurrently enrolls and completes courses at another tertiary institution, which they wish to credit to their University of Auckland qualification must:
    - (i) Seek from the Dean of the relevant faculty prior approval of the proposed concurrent enrolment and confirmation that the courses will satisfy the regulations and requirements for the qualification for which the student is enrolled at this University and that appropriate credit may be granted.
    - (ii) Apply for credit in accordance with these regulations when the official results are known.
  - b Any credit granted from study at a Summer School will be added to the current year of study at this University.
- Note: (i) Where prior approval has not been sought, credit will not normally be granted.*
- (ii) This regulation applies to Summer School study at an institution other than The University of Auckland with the intention of requesting credit for a University of Auckland qualification.*
- 4 Where study at another institution is approved as part of a study abroad or exchange arrangement, credit may be approved for Stage III or Masters level courses if the successfully completed study is deemed appropriate for such credit by the Dean of the relevant faculty.

### Cross-credits

- 5 a In this Regulation 'cross-credit' means a course which is common to two University of Auckland undergraduate diplomas or Bachelor's degrees and is credited to both.
  - b A student taking two programmes may be permitted to designate as cross-credits no more than the maximum allowed for one programme or the other but not for both.
  - c A course which is designated a cross-credit may not be credited to more than two qualifications.
- 6 a When calculating cross-credits between a second and third qualification, points from previously granted cross-credits may not be used. The maximum number of cross-credit points that may be granted is based on one third of the points not previously designated for cross-credits.
  - b A Stage III course that fulfils the Stage III requirements of one qualification may not be designated as a cross-credit to meet the Stage III requirement of another qualification.
  - c A student may not designate as a cross-credit any course passed with a conceded pass or a

- restricted pass. If that course is compulsory, another course may be substituted for it as the Senate or its representative may approve.
- d Designation of courses as cross-credits, as permitted by these regulations, is subject to the approval of the Dean of the relevant faculty or their nominee.

### Limits

- 7 Subject to any other provisions of these regulations or the relevant Programme Regulations:
  - a In the case of a Bachelor's degree, cross-credits are limited to one third of the total points value of the degree.
  - b In the case of an undergraduate diploma, cross-credits are limited to one third of the total points value of the qualification of lesser value.
  - c Where the qualifications concerned are of different value, cross-credits may not exceed the limit applying to the qualification of lesser value.
  - d Other than under the provisions of regulations 2e(iii) and 4, cross-credits and transfer credits are not available for Master's degrees, Bachelor's Honours degrees of one-year duration, doctorates, postgraduate certificates and postgraduate diplomas.

### Limits on Cross-credits for Conjoint Degrees

- 8 a A conjoint degrees combination is considered to be two degrees for the purpose of calculating cross-credits.
- b (i) A maximum of 10 points may be cross-credited from a completed conjoint degree component to another qualification.
- (ii) A maximum of 10 points may be cross-credited from a completed qualification to a conjoint degree component.
- (iii) The apportionment of the points to the components of the conjoint degrees combination is subject to the approval of the relevant Deans or their representatives.

### Reassigned Courses

- 9 a A student may apply, by submitting an Application to Reassign Courses form, to reassign courses passed for, and assigned to, one qualification to another qualification for which the courses are available.
- b A student may not reassign courses passed for one qualification to another once the qualification for which the courses were passed has been awarded.
- c A student may not reassign to another qualification any course passed with a conceded pass or a restricted pass. If that course is compulsory, another course may be substituted for it as the Senate or its representative may approve.
- d Courses passed for a Certificate of Proficiency may not be reassigned to a postgraduate Honours or Masters degree.
- e Courses which are reassigned cease to be credited to the former qualification.

**Review and Appeal Procedure**

- 10 a A student may make a complaint about a decision under these Regulations to the Admissions Office or Student Records Office, as appropriate.
- b If the complaint is unable to be resolved by the Admissions or Student Records Offices, it will be referred to the Faculty concerned for reconsideration.
- c If a student remains dissatisfied following Faculty reconsideration, a written appeal for a review of the credit decision may be submitted to the Director of Student Administration.
- d The Credit Review Board will consider all appeals for review of credit decisions on behalf of the Senate.
- e Students who are submitting an appeal have the right to be heard in person.
- f The decision of the Credit Review Board must be recorded and the appellant informed of the decision in writing.
- g The decision of the Credit Review Board is final.

## THE LIMITATION OF ENTRY STATUTE 1991

*At The University of Auckland this 18th day of February 1991. Pursuant to Section 224 of the Education Act 1989, as amended by the Education Amendment Act 1990, the Council of The University of Auckland hereby makes the following Statute:*

- 1 a This statute may be cited as The Limitation of Entry Statute 1991.
- b This Statute came into force on 1 January 1991.
- 2 Where the Council is satisfied that it is necessary to do so because:
  - a students cannot be allocated places in appropriate lecture rooms or laboratories at times when they can reasonably be expected to attend
  - or
  - b the number of teaching staff does not ensure all students expected to seek a place in a particular programme or course can be adequately taught, there shall be deemed to be an insufficiency of accommodation or of staff.
- 3 The maximum number of students that may be enrolled for any such programme or course shall be determined by the Council from time to time after considering any recommendations from the Senate and be published in a schedule to this Statute.
- 4 In determining such maximum number of students the Council may, after securing a recommendation from the Senate:
  - a prescribe academic standards to be achieved as a prerequisite for enrolment for any such programme or course
  - and
  - b prescribe other criteria for selection of students to be permitted enrolment for any such programme or course.
- 5 The Limitation of Entry Statute 1985 is hereby repealed.

**Approved Limitations**

- 1 Students must apply for a place in any limited entry programme. Unless otherwise specified in the notes column below, **the closing date for Application for Admission is 8 December 2004 and for Enrolment is 14 February 2005. The closing date for Summer School is 1 December 2004.**
- 2 Application for places in any limited-entry programmes and/or courses will be made on-line, or in person.
- 3 Applications received after the specified closing dates will be given reduced priority in consideration for a place in a limited-entry programme and/or course.
- 4 All those applying for open-entry programmes and who are eligible for admission will be accepted, although they may not be selected into all courses of their choice as some Arts and Science courses have a limit on the number of students that can be accepted.
- 5 Where the number of applicants for a place in a limited-entry programme or course exceeds the approved number of available places, the faculty or department concerned will select students in accordance with criteria that have been approved by the University Council.
- 6 Where a course is taught in both semesters, the Selection Committee will allocate students to the First or Second Semester where numbers of applications for one semester exceed places available.
- 7 Selection criteria will be available from the faculty or department concerned for the information of students. In general, selection will be based upon academic merit. In those cases where the scholastic record is insufficient, eg, Provisional Entrance, Discretionary Entrance and Special Admission, other criteria such as the recommendation of the School Principal or Advisor, or employment history, will be taken into account. Account will also be taken of the University's Equal Educational Opportunity objectives. Limitations on programmes and courses are listed below.

**Enrolment Limitations 2005****Limited-entry Programmes and Courses**

Because of insufficient accommodation and restrictions on staffing there will be a limitation on the number of students who can be enrolled for certain programmes or courses at the University in 2005.

## Limitations Schedule

Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit
<b>A. LIMITED ENTRY PROGRAMMES</b> (admission by selection)					
<b>ARTS</b>					
<b>Education</b>					
BEd(Tchg)		Engineering Science	35	FTVMS 753	15
-Primary Option	120	Mechanical and Mechatronics	115	FTVMS 754	25
BEd(Tchg) conjoint degrees		(including a maximum of 40 in the Mechatronics specialization)		FTVMS 758	15
-Primary Option	50	Software Engineering	120	FTVMS 759	15
-Secondary Option	30			FTVMS 763	15
Apply by 1 July for the following year:				FTVMS 764	15
GradDipMus		<b>LAW</b>		FTVMS 765	15
Apply by 1 November for the following year:		LLB Part I	500	FTVMS 769	15
GradDipTchg (Primary)	140	Entry to LAW 101 is limited to students enrolled in LLB Part I or LLB Part II		FTVMS 776	15
GradDipTchg (Secondary)	135	Apply by 1 December for the following:			
GradDipCouns, GradDipEd		LLB Part II	300	<b>Japanese</b>	
(Counselling Theory), MEd (Couns)				JAPANESE 130	150
PostgradDipEdCouns (combined approved limit for 4 programmes)	21			JAPANESE 131 (Semester 2)	150
<b>BUSINESS &amp; ECONOMICS</b>					
BCom (for the first time)		<b>MEDICAL &amp; HEALTH SCIENCES</b>		<b>Language Teaching and Learning</b>	
BBIM (for the first time)	2700	DipPaed	40	LANGTCHG 704	60
BProp (for the first time)	120	BHSc	250	LANGTCHG 714	60
BCom(Hons), PGDipCom, MCom/MA (for the first time)		BNurs	80	LANGTCHG 720	60
Economics	35	MPH	25	LANGTCHG 721	60
Management & Employment Relations	35	CertHSc	100	LANGTCHG 722	60
BCom(Hons), PGDipCom, MCom (for the first time)		Apply by 1 October for the following year:		LANGTCHG 723	60
Accounting & Finance	35	BPharm	100	LANGTCHG 724 (Semester 2)	60
International Business	20	Apply by 1 November for the following year:		LANGTCHG 724 (Summer School)	40
Information Systems & Operations Management & Operations Research	45	MEChB II	135 Domestic 10 International		
Marketing	20	MAud	12	<b>Psychology</b>	
MTaxS	20			See listing under Faculty of Science	
MBA	25	<b>SCIENCE</b>		<b>Statistics</b>	
Master of International Business	30	BSc (Biomedical Science)	450	See listing under Faculty of Science	
<b>CREATIVE ARTS AND INDUSTRIES</b>					
For selection and limited entry information, please consult the Head of Department.					
BAS (for the first time)	115	MSc Food Science	30	<b>Theatre Studies</b>	
BPlan (for the first time)	38	Forensic Science	20	THEATRE 202	30
MCPA in Dance	10	Optometry	45	THEATRE 203	30
MCPA in Sound Recording & Design major	10	MSc Polymers and Coatings	25	THEATRE 301	20
Apply by 1 September for the following year:		MSc Forensic Science	10	<b>BUSINESS &amp; ECONOMICS</b>	
BMus (Performance)		Apply by 1 October for the following year:		See Business & Economics in Part A of this Schedule for BCom limits.	
BPerfArts (Dance)	20	Doctor ClinPsych	11	For BCom, GradDipCom	
BPerfArts (Jazz)	30	Apply by 1 November for the following year:		ACCTG 211	200
BPerfArts (Maori Performing Arts)		BSc(Hons) (Psychology)	combined limit of 50	ACCTG 221	200
BPerfArts (PopMus)	30	BA(Hons) (Psychology)		INFOSYS 222	200
Apply by 1 October for the following year:		MA (Psychology)		INFOSYS 323	30
BFA - Studio I	130	MSc (Psychology)		INFOSYS 338	20
BVA	70	Apply by 1 December for following year:		INFOSYS 340	50
Apply by 1 November for the following year:		BSc (Sport & Exercise Science)	100	INFOSYS 341	100
MFA (for the first time)	30	BOptom		INFOSYS 720-751	25 per course
PGDipFA	10	<b>B. LIMITED ENTRY COURSES</b> (admission by selection)			
MFA (Distance)	20	<b>ARTS</b>		MGMT 336	20
MPlanPrac	25	See Arts in Part A of this Schedule		MGMT 338	45
Doctor of Fine Arts	20	<b>Anthropology</b>		MKTG 302	60
<b>ENGINEERING</b>					
BE Part I	550	ANTHRO 317	10	OPSMGT 258	82
Apply by 1 November for the following year:		ANTHRO 328	25	OPSMGT 375	20
MEMgt	20	ANTHRO 737	5	OPSMGT 740-783	25 per course
BE Part II		<b>Art History</b>		OPSRES 784-786	25 per course
BioMedical	25	ARTHIST 327	21	PROPERTY 102-384	5
Chemical and Materials	55	<b>Arts: General</b>		(available to BProp students only)	
Civil and Environmental	125	ARTSGEN 750 (Summer School)	30	For courses other than BCom:	
Computer Systems	55	ARTSGEN 751 (Summer School)	30	<b>Accounting &amp; Finance</b>	
Electrical and Computer	95	<b>Drama</b>		ACCTG 101	300
		DRAMA 704	12	(non-Business students)	
		DRAMA 705	10	ACCTG 191	5
		<b>English</b>		(non-Business students)	
		ENGLISH 255	120	<b>Commercial Law</b>	
		ENGLISH 343	32	COMLAW 101	150
		ENGLISH 344	32	(non-Business students)	
		<b>Film, Television &amp; Media Studies</b>		COMLAW 191	5
		FTVMS 201	24	(non-Business students)	
		FTVMS 301	15	<b>Economics</b>	
		FTVMS 303	15	ECON 101	300
		FTVMS 311	15	(non-Business students)	
		FTVMS 737	12	ECON 111	300
		FTVMS 750	15	(non-Business students)	
		FTVMS 752	15	ECON 191	5
				(non-Business students)	
				<b>Information Systems &amp; Operations Management</b>	
				INFOSYS 110	200

Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit
(non-Business students)		LAWGENRL 701-715,		FOODSCI 707	30
INFOMGMT 191	5	LAWPUBL 701-745	25 per course	FOODSCI 708	20
(non-Business students)				FOODSCI 796	20
<b>Management &amp; Employment Relations</b>		<b>MEDICAL &amp; HEALTH SCIENCES</b>		<b>Forensic Science</b>	
MGMT 101	400	<i>See Medical and Health Sciences in Part A of this Schedule</i>		FORENSIC 703	30
(non-Business students)		<b>Anatomy</b>		FORENSIC 704	20
MGMT 191	5	ANATOMY 201	130	FORENSIC 705	30
(non-Business students)				FORENSIC 706	30
<i>For courses other than BBIM:</i>		<b>Community Health</b>		<b>Geology</b>	
		COMHLTH 102	350	GEOLOGY 201	50
		COMHLTH 710	25	GEOLOGY 301 (Summer School)	28
<b>Accounting &amp; Finance</b>		<b>Health Psychology</b>		<b>Mathematics</b>	
ACCTG 101	300	HLTHPSYC 714	15	MATHS 202	20
(non-Business students)		HLTHPSYC 715	15		
<b>Commercial Law</b>		HLTHPSYC 716	15	<b>Optometry</b>	
COMLAW 191	5			OPTOM 161	55
(non-Business students)		<b>Human Biology</b>		OPTOM 165	55
<b>Economics</b>		HUMANBIO 111	780	OPTOM 170	55
ECON 191	5	HUMANBIO 122	500	OPTOM 681	60
(non-Business students)		HUMANBIO 142	1100		
<b>Information Systems &amp; Operations Management</b>		<b>Molecular Medicine</b>		<b>Pharmacology</b>	
INFOMGMT 191	5	MOLMED 201	240	PHARMCOL 201	230
(non-Business students)				PHARMCOL 301	140
<b>Management &amp; Employment Relations</b>		<b>Pathology</b>		PHARMCOL 302	72
MGMT 191	5	PATHOL 251	360	PHARMCOL 303	72
(non-Business students)		PATHOL 301	80	PHARMCOL 304	140
		PATHOL 302	80	PHARMCOL 305	48
<b>Statistics</b>				PHARMCOL 306	72
STATS 191	5	<b>SCIENCE</b>		<b>Physiology</b>	
(non-Business students)		<b>Biological Sciences</b>		PHYSIOL 210	350
<b>CREATIVE ARTS AND INDUSTRIES</b>		BIOSCI 101	1050	PHYSIOL 220	350
<i>For selection and limited entry information, please consult the Head of Department.</i>		BIOSCI 106	1050	PHYSIOL 301	120
<i>See Creative Arts and Industries in Part A of this Schedule</i>		BIOSCI 107	1100	PHYSIOL 302	54
ARCHDRC 300	30	BIOSCI 201	350	PHYSIOL 303	70
ARCHDRC 302	40	BIOSCI 202	300	PHYSIOL 304	64
ARCHDRC 303	30	BIOSCI 203	300	PHYSIOL 305	64
ARCHDRC 307	30	BIOSCI 204	300	PHYSIOL 701	24
ARCHDRC 401	20	BIOSCI 209	180	PHYSIOL 702	24
ARCHHTC 100-400	20	BIOSCI 349	100		
ARCHTECH 306	30	BIOSCI 350	100	<b>Psychology</b>	
ARCHTECH 401	12	BIOSCI 351	100	PSYCH 108	791
ARCHTECH 416	20	BIOSCI 352	100	PSYCH 109	791
ARCHTECH 419	30	BIOSCI 353	100	PSYCH 108 (Tamaki)	240
		BIOSCI 354	100	PSYCH 109 (Tamaki)	240
<b>Dance</b>		BIOSCI 357	100	PSYCH 201	250
DANCE 101	30	BIOSCI 742	50	PSYCH 202	300
DANCE 201	30	BIOSCI 745 (Summer School)	50	PSYCH 203	350
		BIOSCI 750	20	PSYCH 204	300
<b>Music</b>		<b>Chemistry</b>		PSYCH 206	320
MUSIC 206	20	CHEM 100	100	PSYCH 301	100
MUSIC 210/211	15	CHEM 110	1050	PSYCH 303	80
MUSIC 214	25	CHEM 230	230	PSYCH 305	80
MUSIC 216	20	CHEM 240	210	PSYCH 306	180
MUSIC 306	10	CHEM 290	140	PSYCH 309	40
MUSIC 316	8			PSYCH 310	260
<b>LAW</b>		<b>Computer Science</b>		PSYCH 311	160
<i>See Law in Part A of this Schedule</i>		COMPSCI 101 (Summer School)	225	PSYCH 312	95
LAW 410	40 per stream	COMPSCI 101 (Tamaki Campus)	225	PSYCH 314	40
LAW 201	300	COMPSCI 101 (Semester 1)	700	PSYCH 316	60
LAW 211	300	COMPSCI 101 (Semester 2)	550	PSYCH 317	45
LAW 231	300	COMPSCI 105 (Summer School)	120	PSYCH 319	45
LAW 241	300	COMPSCI 111 (Semester 1)	260	PSYCH 321	50
LAW 447	52 per stream	COMPSCI 111 (Semester 2)	260	PSYCH 364	45
LAW 401-409	100 per stream	COMPSCI 280 (Semester 1)	275	<i>Apply by 1 November for the following year:</i>	
LAW 411-446	100 per stream	COMPSCI 280 (Semester 2)	275	PSYCH 701	16
LAW 448-498	100 per stream	COMPSCI 314 (City Campus)	350	PSYCH 702	16
<b>LLB (Hons) Seminar courses</b>		COMPSCI 314 (Tamaki Campus)	240	PSYCH 704	10
LAW 341-399	18 per course	COMPSCI 334 (Semester 1)	240	PSYCH 705	10
<b>LLM Seminar courses</b>		COMPSCI 335 (Semester 2)	240	PSYCH 707	16
LAWCOMM 701-766,		COMPSCI 340	275	PSYCH 708	14
LAWENVIR 701-725,		COMPSCI 345	150	PSYCH 709	14
		COMPSCI 372	280	PSYCH 711	10
		COMPSCI 766	20	PSYCH 714	16
		COMPSCI 7xx (except 766)	40	PSYCH 716	16
		<b>Food Science</b>		PSYCH 717	12
		FOODSCI 703	30	PSYCH 721	14
		FOODSCI 704	20	PSYCH 731	12
				PSYCH 735	15

Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit
PSYCH 737	15	PSYCH 894	11	SPCHSCI 742	16
PSYCH 738	15	PSYCH 895	11	SPCHSCI 744	16
PSYCH 741	12	PSYCH 896	11		
PSYCH 743	12			<b>Statistics</b>	
PSYCH 744	20	<b>Speech Science</b>		STATS 150	100
PSYCH 745	12	SPCHSCI 711	16	STATS 210 (Semester 1)	75
PSYCH 750	14	SPCHSCI 712	16	STATS 210 (Semester 2)	75
PSYCH 751	14	SPCHSCI 713	16	STATS 220	80
PSYCH 752	14	SPCHSCI 714	16	STATS 301 (Semester 1)	100
PSYCH 753	14	SPCHSCI 721	16	STATS 301 (Semester 2)	100
PSYCH 755	12	SPCHSCI 722	16	STATS 301 (Tamaki Campus)	100
PSYCH 772	10	SPCHSCI 724	16	STATS 302	100
PSYCH 811	11	SPCHSCI 731	16	STATS 330	100
PSYCH 812	11	SPCHSCI 732A	16	STATS 340 (City Campus)	100
PSYCH 813	11	SPCHSCI 732B	16	STATS 340 (Tamaki Campus)	100
PSYCH 814	11	SPCHSCI 734	16	STATS 390 (Semester 1)	20
PSYCH 821	11	SPCHSCI 741	16	STATS 390 (Semester 2)	20

## FEES STATUTE 2001

*Subject to Council approval*

### 1 Title and Commencement

This statute may be cited as the Fees Statute 2001 and came into force on 1 January 2001.

### 2 Interpretation

In this statute unless the context otherwise requires:

'**Act**' means the Education Act 1989.

'**Building Levy**' means the levy to be paid by each enrolled student towards the provision of University buildings and facilities which provide student support services.

'**Council**' means the Council of The University of Auckland.

'**Domestic Student**' has the meaning given in the Act.

'**Due Date**' is the date specified on the Fees invoice.

'**Enrolment**' means enrolment in a programme or course at the University.

'**Enrol**' has a corresponding meaning.

'**Fees Invoice**' means an invoice or an invoice/statement, or online invoice/statement for the fees and charges payable by a student as a condition of enrolment.

'**Foreign Student**' has the meaning given in the Act.

'**Staff Member**' means a member of the staff of the University.

'**Student**' includes a Domestic Student and a Foreign Student who is:

a Duly enrolled as a student of the University;

or

b Applying to enrol as a student of the University.

'**Student Loan**' has the same meaning as it has in section 2 of the Student Loan Scheme Act 1992.

'**Student Services Fee**' means the fee paid by an enrolled student for student support services provided by the University.

'**University**' means The University of Auckland constituted under The University of Auckland Act 1961.

'**University Services**' means those services provided by the University that can be accessed

by a student on request or application, such as enrolment or the provision of an official academic transcript.

### 3 Tuition Fees

3.1 The Council may prescribe from time to time Tuition Fees payable by:

a Domestic Students; in compliance with section 227 of the Act;

and

b Foreign Students or any categories of Foreign Students; in compliance with section 228 of the Act.

3.2 Tuition Fees may be prescribed either by resolution of the Council or by a schedule to this statute.

3.3 The Tuition Fees prescribed by the Council at the date when this statute comes into force apply until other Tuition Fees are prescribed in place or in addition to them.

### 4 General Fees

4.1 The Council hereby prescribes the General Fees specified in the schedule.

4.2 The Council may from time to time by resolution vary the amount of, or delete, any General Fee specified in the schedule or prescribe any additional General Fee.

4.3 Any such variation, deletion, or addition shall apply from the date specified in the amending resolution.

### 5 Additional Fees/Charges

5.1 Faculties and Departments of the University may impose charges to recover costs in providing Students with:

a Copies of study material and other material relevant to a course or a programme or the means of access to that material;

b Services incidental to courses or programmes as, for example, field trips and site visits.

### 6 Payment of Fees and Charges

6.1 Tuition Fees, General Fees and any charges imposed pursuant to section 5.1 that are included on the Fees Invoice rendered to a Student shall be paid by the student forthwith on receipt of that Fees Invoice.

- 6.2 All Students must pay the full amount on their Fees Invoice by the due date.
- 6.3 Charges imposed on a Student pursuant to section 5.1 that are not included in a Fees Invoice shall be paid by the Student on demand.
- 6.4 Any instalment of a Student Loan (within the meaning of the Student Loan Scheme Act 1992) that is available to a Student and received by the University in respect of his or her enrolment shall be applied toward payment of the Fees Invoice rendered to that Student on the occasion of that enrolment.
- 7 Refunds**
- 7.1 The Council may by resolution prescribe from time to time in accordance with sections 227 and 228 of the Act;
- a The circumstances in which Domestic Students and Foreign Students are or may be entitled to a refund of all or any part of the Tuition Fees and General Fees paid or payable to the Council;
- and
- b The quantum of those refunds.
- 7.2 The circumstances in which a refund may be made and the quantum of that refund that pertains when this statute comes into force, continues until a change is prescribed by resolution.
- 7.3 The Council will take all reasonable steps to ensure that both Domestic Students and Foreign Students are given written notice of the circumstances in which they are or may be entitled to a refund of all or any part of the fees that have been paid or are payable by them to the Council.
- 7.4 The refund of all or any part of a Tuition Fee or a General Fee that was paid by an outstanding Student Loan shall be applied in reduction of that loan.
- 8 Non-payment of Fees and Charges**
- 8.1 Where a Student does not pay;
- a The Fees Invoice rendered to that Student;
- or
- b A charge for that Student imposed under section 5 on demand;
- then, until those fees and charges are paid in full and without prejudice to the right to recover the unpaid fees or charges at law; the Council may:
- (i) Delete the enrolment of that Student from a course or courses;
- (ii) Withhold the formal notification of the results of any examination of the Student;
- (iii) Decline to re-enrol the Student;
- (iv) Decline to release the Student's academic record;
- (v) Exclude that Student from the University;
- (vi) Withhold any Degree or Diploma certificate from that Student.
- (vii) Restrict that student's access to University Services.
- 8.2 Application for Reinstatement**
- a A student upon whom a penalty is imposed under section 8.1(i) may apply to have his/her enrolment reinstated upon payment of the outstanding amount owing and the Course reinstatement fee as outlined in Schedule - Part A.
- b To be eligible to complete course requirements, a student must apply for course reinstatement two weeks before the beginning of the examination period within the year which enrolment in the course(s) took place.
- 8.3 A Student upon whom a penalty is imposed under section 8.1 may by giving written notice to the Director, Student Administration within eight days of the penalty having been imposed, apply to the Council or duly constituted Committee of the Council to review the imposition of that penalty. The notice must set out the reasons for the review. The decision of the Council or its Committee is final.
- 9 Non-attendance**
- 9.1 A Student who stops attending lectures or classes in a course or courses remains liable for the fees prescribed for that course or courses.
- 10 Revocation**
- 10.1 The Fees Regulations are hereby revoked.
- 10.2 Notwithstanding the revocation of the Fees Regulations, the Council may recover any unpaid fees or charges levied under those Regulations and impose any of the penalties prescribed in section 8.1 until those fees or charges are paid in full.

---

### Schedule – Part A

**Admission and Entrance Fees**

Graduate status or with credit from an overseas institution	\$125
Entrance based on an overseas qualification. Ad Eundem Status	\$75
Provisional Entrance, Discretionary Entrance, Special Admission	\$50

**Applications for Credit**

Each application from any study undertaken at another institution (e.g. Summer School, concurrent enrolment at another institution)	\$75
---	------

**Enrolment Fees**

Application to enrol after addition/delete dates, per course	\$50
Course re-instatement fee, per course (after an enrolment in a course has been cancelled or deleted)	\$25

Refund processing fee	\$50
Instalment payment, deferred or delayed payment surcharge	\$50

**Student Administration**

ID card replacement	\$10
Academic transcripts and letters	\$25
Each additional copy	\$10
Special statements (e.g. admission to the Bar)	\$25
Unsatisfactory progress reconsideration	\$50

**Replacement of a Degree or Diploma Certificate**

Lost or damaged	\$50
Change of name	\$75
Courier and handling charges within New Zealand	\$10
Courier and handling charges to Australia	\$25
Courier and handling charges all other countries	\$50

**Examinations**

Recount of marks, each course (Refundable if successful)	\$50
Aegrotat and Special Consideration: Each application	\$25
Maximum	\$100

**Examinations sat in New Zealand but out of Auckland**

Single examination per venue	\$100
Each additional Examination at the same venue	\$25

**Examinations outside New Zealand**

Single examination per venue	\$125
Each additional Examination at the same venue	\$25

**Student Services Fee**

Student Services Fee	tba
----------------------	-----

**Student Services Fee Exceptions**

1 On application to the Director, Student Administration the following students may be exempted the requirements to pay the Student Services Fee to use Student Services if they are:

- Students living outside Auckland and not using University facilities other than the Library.
- Students enrolled in programmes/courses taught by distance learning or other such programmes/courses as advised by the Director, Student Administration from time to time.
- Students enrolled under approved University exchange schemes.
- Students enrolled in Tertiary Foundation Studies programme.

*Note: Full-time Staff Members who are enrolled for programmes may not use Student Services except on payment of standard charges for non-student users.*

**International Health and Travel Insurance Fees (for Foreign Students)**

Each year	tba
-----------	-----

**Schedule – Part B**

*The 2005 schedule of fees for New Zealand citizens and Permanent Residents of Australia and New Zealand was unavailable at time of going to print. The approved 2005 schedule of fees can be viewed on the web at: [www.auckland.ac.nz/calendar](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/calendar).*

**Schedule – Part C****Tuition, Examination and Research Fees (inclusive of GST) For International Students.****Arts (including Education)**

Undergraduate Arts courses	\$1,175 per point
Undergraduate Science-based courses	\$1,411 per point
Bachelor of Education (Teaching)	\$1,215 per point
Graduate Arts courses (incl Masters)	\$1,344 per point
Graduate Arts courses (incl Masters) – Distance Education	\$1,045 per point
Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Primary and Secondary)	\$1,286 per point
Graduate Science-based courses	\$1,642 per point
Other Diplomas	\$1,344 per point
Postgraduate Diploma in Education	\$1,344 per point

**Business and Economics**

Undergraduate courses	\$1,352 per point
Postgraduate Information Systems	\$1,493 per point
700-level courses	\$1,344 per point
Property undergraduate courses	\$1,137 per point
Property 700-level courses	\$1,232 per point
Master of Business Administration	\$3,925 per point
Master of International Business (programme fee per year)	\$24,140
Master of Management	\$3,925 per point
Master of Taxation Studies	tba
Postgraduate Diploma in Business	\$1,941 per point
Postgraduate Certificate in Business	tba

**Creative Arts and Industries**

Bachelor of Architectural Studies – except Studio and Design courses	\$1,175 per point
Bachelor of Architectural Studies – Studio and Design courses	\$1,509 per point
Bachelor of Architecture – except Studio and Design courses	\$1,175 per point
Bachelor of Architecture – Studio and Design courses	\$1,509 per point
Master of Architecture	\$1,642 per point
Master of Architectural Studies	\$1,642 per point
Master of Building Science	\$1,642 per point
Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science	\$1,642 per point
Bachelor of Fine Arts – Undergraduate Arts courses	\$1,175 per point
Bachelor of Fine Arts – FINEARTS 100-399	\$1,332 per point
– FINEARTS 400-499	\$1,332 per point
Master of Fine Arts – Graduate Arts courses	\$1,642 per point
Master of Fine Arts – Studio and	

Studio Distance	\$1,642 per point
Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts – Studio	\$1,642 per point
– FINEARTS 690 Fine Arts	\$1,642 per point
Undergraduate Performance courses	\$1,411 per point
Bachelor of Music, Music Education	\$1,372 per point
Graduate Performance courses	\$1,642 per point
Diplomas in Music	\$1,437 per point
Bachelor of Planning – except Studio and Design courses and Secondary	\$1,352 per point
Bachelor of Planning – Studio and Design courses	\$1,352 per point
Master of Planning Practice – except Studio and Design courses	\$1,437 per point
Master of Planning Practice – Studio and Design courses	\$1,437 per point
Master of Planning	\$1,437 per point
Bachelor of Visual Arts (Year 1)	\$1,332 per point
Bachelor of Visual Arts (Years 2 to 4)	\$1,332 per point

**Engineering**

Undergraduate courses	\$1,685 per point
700-level courses	\$1,642 per point

**Law**

Undergraduate courses	\$1,332 per point
700-level courses	\$1,465 per point
Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies (programme fee)	\$5,761

**Medical and Health Sciences**

Bachelor of Health Science	\$1,352 per point
Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours)	\$1,866 per point
Bachelor of Medicine/Bachelor of Surgery	\$2,613 per point
Bachelor of Nursing	\$1,411 per point
Bachelor of Nursing (Honours)	\$1,866 per point
Bachelor of Pharmacy	\$1,568 per point
Masters 700-level courses	\$1,866 per point
Diplomas 600-level courses	\$1,866 per point
Diplomas 700-level courses	\$1,866 per point
Diploma in Paediatrics	\$1,344 per point

**Science**

Undergraduate courses – Maths and Statistics	\$1,411 per point
All other undergraduate Science courses	\$1,411 per point
700-level courses – Maths and Statistics	\$1,642 per point
All other 700-level courses	\$1,642 per point
OPTOM 110-470	\$2,242 per point
OPTOM 680	\$2,135 per point

**Theology**

Undergraduate courses	\$940 per point
700-level courses	\$1,232 per point

**Doctorates**

Doctor of Education, Literature, Philosophy	\$18,810 per year
Doctor of Laws	\$20,900 per year
Doctor of Medicine, Pharmacy	\$26,125 per year
All other Doctorates	\$22,990 per year

**Interfaculty**

Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management	
- Management courses	\$1,724 per point
Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management	
- Creative Arts and Industries courses	\$1,344 per point

All other Interfaculty programmes per point fee charged at the respective rate for the subject

**Study Abroad Programme**

Programme fee per semester	\$8,880
----------------------------	---------

**Other fees for all courses**

Building Levy	\$4 per point
Student Services	tba
Material and Resource Fee	\$10 per point

**Exceptions to Material and Resource Fee**

All Law courses	\$20 per point
Business & Economics 700-level courses	\$20 per point
Postgraduate Information Systems	\$20 per point
Bachelor of Optometry	\$20 per point
Master of Fine Arts (Studio - Distance)	\$20 per point
Bachelor of Visual Arts	\$50 per point

**No Material and Resource Fee charged for:**

Master of International Business, Master of Management, MBA, Postgraduate Diploma in Business, Postgraduate Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology and Doctorates.

**Notes:**

- The programme fees listed in this schedule are based on an enrolment in a standard full-time course load of 14 points per year. Fees will be adjusted on a pro-rata basis where the enrolment is in more or less than a standard full-time load.

2 Fees for inter-faculty programmes, programmes combining undergraduate and postgraduate courses, or courses selected from more than one listed programme, are calculated by deriving a fee for each course from the programme fees listed in the schedule above.

3 The Building Levy, Course & Materials Fee and Student Services Fee are payable by international students at the same rates applying to all students.

4 The fees for the PhD and other doctorates are the same as the postgraduate fee in the area concerned.

5 BA(Hons), BCom(Hons), BHB(Hons), LLB(Hons), BMus(Hons), BNurs(Hons), BProp(Hons) and BSc(Hons) are charged as postgraduate programmes.

6 Returning undergraduate students first enrolled in 2004 will pay fees according to the 2004 fees schedule, adjusted upwards by 4.5 per cent for 2005. This applies to the stated minimum duration of their offer in 2004 only. Returning postgraduate students will pay fees according to the 2004 fees schedule with a 4.5 per cent increase for 2005.

7 Returning undergraduate students first enrolled in 2003 will pay fees according to the 2003 fees schedule, adjusted upwards by five per cent for 2004 and 4.5 per cent for 2005. This applies to the stated minimum duration of their offer in 2003 only. Returning postgraduate students will pay fees according to the 2003 fees schedule with a 4.5 per cent increase for 2005.

8 Returning undergraduate students first enrolled in 2002 will pay fees according to the 2002 fees schedule, adjusted upwards by three per cent in 2003, five per cent in 2004 and a further 4.5 per cent in 2005. This applies to the stated minimum duration of their offer in 2002 only. Returning postgraduate students will pay fees according to the 2002 fees schedule adjusted upwards by three per cent in 2003, no increase in 2004, and 4.5 per cent for 2005.

9 Returning undergraduate students first enrolled in 2001 or earlier will pay fees according to the 2001 fees schedule, adjusted upwards by five per cent in 2003, five per cent in 2004, and a further 4.5 per cent in 2005. This applies to the stated minimum duration of their offer in 2001 or earlier only. Returning postgraduate students will pay fees according to the 2001 fees schedule, adjusted upwards by five per cent in 2004 and 4.5 per cent in 2005.

---

## INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS

---

The following notes are intended to be a general guide for international students wishing to be admitted to The University of Auckland. Further information and application forms are available from the International Office.

**Admission**

International students should apply for admission using the nDeva on-line application. Intending applicants should note the following general points:

- All international students enrolling in an undergraduate programme must hold, as a minimum requirement, an acceptable university entrance qualification.
- All international students seeking admission to graduate or postgraduate programmes must hold a recognized first degree in a relevant discipline.
- Applicants whose first language is not English are required to provide satisfactory evidence of their proficiency in English through a specified score in IELTS or TOEFL, or an approved alternative. The minimum score required in IELTS for admission to the University is an overall score of 6.0 with no less than 5.5 on an

individual band. The minimum score required in TOEFL is 550 (paper-based test), or 213 (computer-based test); with a TWE (essay) of 4.5. Higher requirements may be imposed by faculties for entry to specified undergraduate and postgraduate degree programmes. Detailed minimum English language proficiency requirements are available on request from the International Office.

- All international students are required to have appropriate and current health and travel insurance for their period of study in New Zealand. Health and travel insurance is a condition of enrolment. Further information and application forms are available from the International Office.
- The majority of international students must have a student visa before entering New Zealand, although students from some countries may enter New Zealand without a visa. All students must have a valid student permit for the duration of their studies. Further information regarding the various requirements of the New Zealand Immigration Service can be obtained from the nearest New Zealand diplomatic office.

- 6 An offer of a place at the University does not guarantee that the student will be issued with a student visa.
- 7 Permanent residents of Australia and New Zealand, Australian citizens, and students from the Cook Islands, Tokelau or Niue who are New Zealand citizens, are eligible for enrolment on the same basis as New Zealand students and do not need to apply for admission as international students.

#### International Student Fees

- 8 The above fees (refer to Schedule – Part C) apply to students who:
- (i) are not New Zealand Citizens  
or
  - (ii) do not hold permanent residence status in New Zealand  
or
  - (iii) have been granted a New Zealand Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade Fees Scholarship  
or
  - (iv) are being fully funded under the New Zealand Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade Official Development Assistance programme.

Current fees can be obtained from the International Office of the University.

#### Scholarships and Financial Assistance

The Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade awards a limited number of study awards and fees scholarships to students from identified developing countries. For information about undergraduate awards, please enquire at your nearest New Zealand diplomatic office. Graduate students should write directly to the University and ask for a NZ ODA *Postgraduate Scholarship Application Form*.

Inquiries regarding courses, fees or scholarships should be made to the International Office: email [international@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:international@auckland.ac.nz), phone +64 (9) 373 7513, fax +64 (9) 373 7405.

#### Code of Practice

The University of Auckland has agreed to observe and be bound by the *Code of Practice for the Pastoral Care of International Students* published by the Minister of Education. Copies of the Code are available on request from this institution or from the New Zealand Ministry of Education website at [www.minedu.govt.nz](http://www.minedu.govt.nz)

## EXAMINATION REGULATIONS

*These regulations should be read in conjunction with other examination publications which contain more detail and particular instructions. The publications are:*

*For staff:* Instructions to Examiners and Assessors.

*For students:* Examination Instructions – Regulations and General Information. *(These are mailed to all examination candidates before each examination period.)*

#### Requirements

- 1 In order to be credited with a course, a candidate needs to have:
- a enrolled in accordance with the Enrolment Regulations  
and
  - b attended classes to the satisfaction of the Senate  
and
  - c completed to the satisfaction of the examiners such oral, practical, written or other tests or assignments as have been prescribed for completion during the course  
and
  - d completed to the satisfaction of the examiners and in accordance with these regulations any examination prescribed by the Senate  
and
  - e made any payment due by that candidate to the University.

*Note: Candidates are to be informed by each department of the specific requirements for courses in that department and the extent to which coursework will be taken into consideration in assessing final results. In some cases candidates may not be permitted to sit the examination, as a result of unsatisfactory or incomplete coursework.*

#### Work Other than Examinations

- 2 a It is the responsibility of each candidate to ascertain the nature of the requirements for each course from the department or faculty concerned.
- b Provided that candidates have met deadlines set for this work, examiners should normally have determined and returned interim or definitive grades for this work before sitting of the examination, if one is prescribed.
- c Unacknowledged copying or plagiarism in completing this work is treated as an examination offence.

#### Time of Examinations

- 3 a The examination will be held at the times specified in the timetable each year.
- b A candidate may not be examined in any course or part of a course at any time other than that set down for them in the timetable, except when, with the approval of Senate, a different time may be approved because of special circumstances.

#### Place of Examinations

- 4 All students have to sit their examinations at Auckland except when, with the approval of the Senate, a different examination centre may be established because of special circumstances, provided that there is the payment of the extra fee prescribed in the Fees Regulations.

**Special Examination Conditions**

- 5 A candidate who is permanently or temporarily disabled in a manner which affects their ability to undertake examinations under the prescribed examination conditions may, upon production of the appropriate evidence, obtain from one of the following bodies a recommendation which, subject to the approval of the Senate or its representative, will enable that candidate to be examined under conditions which take account of the particular impairment: Student Health; Student Counselling or Student Learning Centre.

**Direction of Examinations**

- 6 a The examinations will comprise such written, oral and practical examinations as the examiners may determine.
- b Where degree regulations or prescriptions permit, or the Senate, upon such conditions as it thinks fit, approves, the examiners may in respect of any examination release to the candidates the whole or part of the examination paper in advance of the sitting of the examination.
- c Candidates will write out answers to the questions in the presence of a supervisor, who is to be appointed or approved by the Coordinator, Examinations Office in accordance with detailed instructions furnished by the Examinations Office.

**Materials Permitted in the Examination Room**

- 7 a A candidate must not bring to an examination any written or printed matter or any blank paper except by direction of the examiner.
- Note: Candidates are to be informed by each department of the specific books or materials allowed for particular examinations. Details are also explained in the Examination Instructions – Regulations and General Information.*
- b (i) All books and papers not approved for use in the examination, along with any spare personal belongings brought to the examination must be left in such part of the room as the supervisor directs.
- (ii) The University does not guarantee safekeeping of students' possessions in any circumstances, inside or outside examination rooms. Students concerned about the security of valuable possessions, briefcases etc during examinations will need to make alternative arrangements for their care, or ensure that they do not bring these possessions to campus on days when they are required to attend examinations.
- c A candidate may not bring into an examination an electronic calculator except by direction of the examiner. A calculator is defined as an electronic device capable of processing, storing or retrieving information, which has the primary purpose of mathematical calculation. Any calculator permitted to be taken into an examination must be hand-held, self-powered and noiseless. It must not make use of an audible alarm or facilities for 'wireless' transmission or reception of information.

*General Conditions:*

(i) other than spare batteries and calculator, supplementary material (eg, operating manuals) related to the use and operation of the calculator will not be permitted in the examination room

and

(ii) in all cases it is the responsibility of the candidate to maintain the operation and operating power of the calculator.

*Note: Candidates are to be informed by each Department of the specific types of calculators allowed for particular examinations. Details are also explained in the Examination Instructions – Regulations and General Information.*

- d No other electronic device is allowed in the examination room unless specified by the examiner.
- e Cellular telephones are not permitted in an examination room.
- f Audible alarms may not be used on any devices permitted in the examination room.
- g Where specified material or calculators are permitted under items 7a and 7c above, examiners are required to be present at the commencement of the examination to check material brought into the examination room.
- h Candidates will be asked to show their student identity cards on entry for verification purposes and must display them on their desk for the duration of the examination.

**Timekeeping of Examinations and Conduct**

- 8 a (i) A candidate will not be allowed to enter the room later than exactly halfway through the period specified for writing the examination.
- (ii) Latecomers will not be given any extra time for the examination.
- b Candidates will be allowed to read their examination papers for a period of not more than 10 minutes before the examination commences but may not use any writing materials until the room supervisor announces that they may do so. During this time and during permitted resting periods, no reference is to be made to any book in an examination where books are allowed.
- c Candidates must write out answers to examination questions in the official script book that is provided by the University unless otherwise directed by examiners in the exam instructions. No part of the script book may be torn out or removed from the examination room.
- d A candidate must not communicate with an examiner in regard to an examination either in the script book or otherwise, except through the Director, Student Administration.
- e A candidate must not communicate with another candidate in the examination room or copy from another candidate's answers.
- f Candidates will not be readmitted to the examination room after they have left it unless, during the full period of their absence, they have been under approved supervision.
- g All paper used during the examination must be handed to the supervisor before the candidate leaves the examination room.

- h A candidate will not be permitted to leave the examination before 15 minutes after half of the period specified for writing the examination has elapsed and then only with the permission of the supervisor and upon handing in the script.
- i No candidate will be permitted to leave the examination room during the last 15 minutes of the examination.
- j A candidate must not continue writing an answer after the supervisor has announced the expiration of time. In no circumstances is any time over and above the time allotted to any examination to be allowed to candidates for reading over their scripts or making any amendment or addition to scripts.
- (iii) a suspension from attendance at the University or any Class or Classes for such a period as it thinks fit
- (iv) cancellation of Enrolment of a student at the University or in a programme or training at the University
- (v) a penalty in the form of requiring the offender to remove any defacement to University Premises or property or to render services to the benefit of the University or its students
- (vi) any one or more of these penalties.
- e A candidate upon whom a penalty is imposed under these regulations may apply for a review pursuant to section 11 of the Disciplinary Statute.

### Misconduct

- 9 a Any complaint that a candidate has committed an examination offence will be referred to the Senate to determine whether the complaint should be investigated. For the purposes of this Regulation an 'examination offence' includes any breach of rules relating to the conduct of examinations and any dishonest practice occurring in the preparation or submission of any work (whether in the course of an examination or not) which counts towards the attainment of a pass in any subject, or otherwise occurs in connection with any examination.
- b If the Senate determines that a complaint against a candidate should be investigated, it will refer that complaint to the Discipline Committee.
- c Where the Discipline Committee is satisfied that a Candidate:
  - (i) has committed a breach of these regulations
  - or
  - (ii) has been notified that he or she has failed to comply with any Statute or any other Regulation of the University and (where the failure is capable of remedy) has been given a reasonable time to remedy the failure without having done so;
 then the Discipline Committee may:
  - (iii) suspend for such time as it may prescribe the release to the candidate of the results of any examination
  - (iv) decline to credit to the candidate's programme any course or courses
  - (v) cancel any pass with which that candidate may have been credited in the course or examination in respect of which the breach occurred
  - (vi) disqualify the candidate from sitting any examination for such period as it may prescribe
  - (vii) impose any one or more of these penalties.
- d The Discipline Committee may also impose, in the circumstances stated in clause 9b of this Regulation, the following penalties prescribed in clause 9d of the Disciplinary Statute, that is to say:
  - (i) a fine not exceeding \$1,000
  - (ii) a limitation or prohibition on attendance at any Class or Classes or the use and enjoyment of any of the Facilities

### Missed Examinations

- 10 a A candidate who has missed an examination by reporting for it at the wrong time cannot sit that examination at another time except for candidates enrolled for Master's or Bachelor's Honours degrees for whom special arrangements may be made.
- b Candidates other than those enrolled for Master's or Bachelor's Honours degrees may apply for a special pass in the missed examination by completing the appropriate form and submitting it to the Director, Student Administration not later than one week after the missed examination.
- c In considering a special pass application, the Senate or its representative may take into account the candidate's work in that course or in that subject or a particular element of hardship as it sees fit.

### Aegrotat and Compassionate Consideration

- 11 a An application for Aegrotat or Compassionate Consideration may be made by candidates who have been prevented from being present at an examination or who consider that their preparation for or performance in an examination has been seriously impaired by temporary illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond their control, if the following conditions are satisfied:
  - (i) They must be enrolled for the course.
  - (ii) The application form must be submitted to the University Health and Counselling Service within one week of the date that the examination affected took place, or if more than one examination has been affected, then within one week of the last of those examinations.
  - (iii) The medical certificate or statement of exceptional circumstances on the application form must be completed in accordance with Regulations 11b and 11c below.
- b In the case of illness or injury, a registered medical practitioner must:
  - (i) State when the practitioner saw the candidate. This should be on the day of the examination, or if this is not possible, on the day before or the day after. For impaired preparation, the medical certificate should cover a period within the fortnight immediately preceding the examination, unless special circumstances apply.

- (ii) Give sufficient detail of the illness or injury to show clearly that the candidate was not responsible for the illness or injury.
  - (iii) State whether, in the practitioner's opinion, the illness or injury of the candidate at the time either prevented the candidate from taking the examination, or was likely to have seriously impaired the candidate's preparation for it or performance in it.
- c In the case of exceptional circumstances beyond the candidate's control, the statement of circumstances must be supported by suitable evidence.
- d The application will be considered by the Senate or its representative only if the medical or counselling adviser to the University reviews the evidence submitted and confirms that:
- (i) the candidate was not responsible for the illness or injury or exceptional circumstances
- and
- (ii) because of the illness or injury or exceptional circumstances the candidate was either prevented from being present at the examination or the candidate's preparation for or performance in the examination was likely to have been seriously impaired.
- e The candidate may be granted an aegrotat or compassionate grade by the Senate or its representative if the above conditions are satisfied and there is a recommendation for an aegrotat or compassionate grade from the appropriate Head of Department or Dean.
- f To make a recommendation for an aegrotat or compassionate grade, the Head of Department or Dean must certify that:
- (i) the candidate's coursework in the course was well above the minimum pass standard or, where relevant, the minimum standard for a class of Honours
- and
- (ii) for a candidate who sat the examination, the mark attained in the examination was lower than expected taking into account the candidate's coursework in that course
- and
- (iii) the candidate is in their opinion clearly worthy of a pass in the course or, where relevant, to be awarded First or Second Class Honours.
- g If a recommendation is required for a course with no coursework, the Head of Department or Dean may take into account the coursework and examination performance in any other courses for the same degree, where this is available to them.
- h When considering the application, the Senate or its representative may take into account the candidate's work in other courses, or approve an aegrotat or compassionate grade other than that recommended, as it sees fit.
- i. The above is subject to the restrictions that:
- (i) Honours may not be awarded to a candidate who has been granted an aegrotat or compassionate grade under this Regulation in respect of more than one third of the total points value of the degree or diploma.
- (ii) A candidate for a Master's degree in which Honours is available may:
    - (a) instead of applying for aegrotat or compassionate consideration, apply to re-enrol in all of the courses affected
- or
- (b) apply for aegrotat or compassionate consideration in courses worth up to the points limit specified above, and to re-enrol in any other affected courses in order to retain eligibility for Honours.
- j A candidate who applied for Aegrotat or Compassionate Consideration in any course may, in exceptional circumstances and on a recommendation from the Head of the Department, be granted permission by Senate or its representative to take another examination, either written or oral, in that course.
- k The provisions of Regulation 11 apply to:
- (i) Any final written examination presented for a course for a degree, diploma, or certificate.
  - (ii) Any final practical examination presented for a course for a degree, diploma, or certificate, other than a Music Performance examination.
- l The provisions of Regulation 11 apply (with necessary changes) to:
- (i) The final submission in each year of work for the practical subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, or the Degree of Master of Fine Arts.
  - (ii) The final submission in each semester of studio work for the Degrees of Bachelor of Architectural Studies and Bachelor of Architecture as if such final submission were an examination and as if the date upon which such final submission was due were the date of examination.
- Note: The fees for Aegrotat and Compassionate Consideration are listed under the Fees Regulations in this Calendar.*

### Reconsideration

- 12 a Following the decision of the Senate on an application for Aegrotat or Compassionate Consideration, the candidate may apply to the Director, Student Administration for reconsideration of that decision.
- b An application for reconsideration must be made:
- (i) in writing to the Director, Student Administration no later than four weeks after the student is notified of the Senate's decision
- and
- (ii) must be accompanied by further evidence in support of the application for aegrotat or compassionate consideration.
- c Where the application seeks reconsideration

of the effect of any medical evidence previously supplied or consideration of any additional medical evidence or both then:

- (i) If the medical or counselling advisor who reviewed the medical evidence previously submitted did not confirm that the requirements of Regulation 11d(i) and 11d(ii) had both been met then all the medical evidence shall be referred to a medically qualified independent person ('Referee') to determine that question. The Referee's decision will be final and conclusive.
- (ii) If the requirements of Regulation 11d(i) and 11d(ii) have been found (either on the first application or by a Referee on reconsideration):
  - (a) not to have been met, then the application shall be declined;
  - (b) to have been met, then Senate or its representative shall consider the other factors to be taken into account in terms of Regulation 11 and determine whether or not to grant the application and that decision shall be final and conclusive.

### Written Tests

- 13 Where a percentage of the marks awarded for a course is allocated to a prior written test, and candidates are prevented by temporary illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond their control from sitting the test, or consider that their performance in the test has been seriously impaired by any of those causes, then, if the conditions in Regulations 11c to 11f (with the necessary changes) are complied with, the candidates may on application and at the discretion of the Senate:
- a be permitted to sit another written test
  - or
  - b receive a mark for the test based on the average of marks awarded for other coursework
  - or
  - c take a viva voce examination
  - or
  - d have the percentage of marks allocated to the test reallocated to the examination.

### Results Determination

- 14 In determining a candidate's result the examiners:
- a may take into consideration the work done by the candidate during the course
  - b are to give due weight to reports on practical work done by the candidate wherever these are required
  - c are to include marks obtained by the candidate where the Senate has allotted a percentage of marks for on-course assessment in that course.

### Grades and Marks

- 15 **Pass Marks**
- a Bachelor's Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates a pass mark is 50 per cent or over.
  - b Master's Degrees a pass mark is 50 per cent or over. A pass is to be obtained in each of the components of the degree.

### 16 Pass Grades

There are 10 pass grades:

- A+ high first
- A clear first
- A- bare first
- B+ high second
- B clear second
- B- bare second
- C+ sound pass
- C pass
- C- marginal pass
- Conceded pass

### 17 Fail Grades

There are three fail grades:

- D+ Marginal Fail
- D Clear Fail
- D- Poor Fail

### 18 Conceded Passes

- a Conceded passes apply only to courses taken towards a Bachelor's degree (other than a Bachelor's (Honours) degree) or toward a diploma comprising not fewer than 28 points.
- b A candidate may, at the discretion of the relevant Faculty, be considered for a conceded pass. No application by the candidate is required.
- c A conceded pass, if granted, may not be declined by the candidate.
- d A conceded pass will apply only to the programme for which it is awarded and may not be transferred or credited to any other programme.
- e A candidate granted a conceded pass in a course who wishes to take that course again may do so only for Certificate of Proficiency.
- f **For the degrees of:**

BA	BMusEd
BBIM	BPerArts
BCom	BProp
BEd	BSc
BEd(Tchg)	BTheol
BHSc	BMus

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Examiners for the Faculty concerned, provided that the Dean of the Faculty has the power to award where such power is authorized by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions.

One course to a maximum value of four points may be conceded provided:

- (i) the concession will allow the student to complete the degree
- (ii) the course conceded is not a course counting towards the student's major requirements
- (iii) the student obtained a grade of D+ in the course
- (iv) the result was achieved in the last two semesters of enrolment, one of which may be a Summer School.

*Note: a conceded pass will not be given for a course failed at another university.*

### g **For the degree of LLB**

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Examiners of the Faculty, provided that the Dean of the Faculty has the power to award where such power is authorized by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

- (i) one course to a maximum value of two points may be conceded
- (ii) the concession will allow the student to complete the degree
- (iii) the course is not one of the core law subjects prescribed by the New Zealand Council of Legal Education
- (iv) the student obtained a grade of D+ in the course
- (v) the result was achieved in the last two semesters of enrolment, one of which may be a Summer School.

**h For the degrees of:**

BArch	BOptom
BAS	BPlan
BE	BTech
BFA	BVA

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Examiners for the Faculty concerned, provided that the Dean of the Faculty has the power to award where such power is authorized by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

- (i) that by the award of a conceded pass the student will complete a Part or all courses enrolled for in that year

and

- (ii) a maximum of three points per Part and a maximum of three points in any one academic year may be conceded

and

- (iii) that to be eligible for the award of a conceded pass in any course the student must have achieved a grade of D+ and an overall GPA of 2.5 or better in that year.

**i For the degree of BED(TESOL)**

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Committee of BEd(TESOL) Examiners, provided that the Dean has the power to award where such power is authorized by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

- (i) that by award of a conceded pass the student will complete that Part

and

- (ii) a maximum of two points in any one Part be conceded

and

- (iii) that to be eligible for the award of a conceded pass the student must have achieved a grade of D+ in that course (or courses) and an overall GPA of 2.5 or better in that Part.

Where a candidate has a fail grade of D+ in a course (or courses) and the Examiners deem that the failure(s) may be redeemable by satisfactory completion of additional work, then a pass in that Part may be awarded under the following provisions;

- (iv) that the award of a grade for that course (or courses) be deferred until a prescribed course of additional study and/or examination be completed to the satisfaction of the Examiners;

and

- (v) deferred results be limited to a maximum of two points in any Part;

and

- (vi) that to be eligible for a deferred result a student must achieve an overall GPA of 2.5 or better

and

- (viii) that the reassessed grade in that course (or courses) be no greater than a grade of C+.

**j Medical and Health Sciences**

**(i) For the degree of MBChB, Parts II and III:**

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Committee of MBChB Examiners, provided that the Dean has the power to award where such power is authorized by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

- (a) that by award of a conceded pass the student will complete that Part

and

- (b) a maximum of three points in any one Part be conceded

and

- (c) that to be eligible for the award of a conceded pass the student must have achieved a grade of D+ in that course (or courses) and an overall GPA of 2.5 or better in that Part.

Where a candidate has a fail grade of D or D+ in a course (or courses) and the Examiners deem that the failure(s) may be redeemable by satisfactory completion of additional work then a pass in that Part may be awarded under the following provisions:

- (d) that the award of a grade for that course (or courses) be deferred until a prescribed course of additional study and/or examination be completed to the satisfaction of the Examiners

and

- (e) deferred results be limited to a maximum of four points in any Part

and

- (f) that to be eligible for a deferred result a student must achieve an overall GPA of 2.5 or better

and

- (g) that the reassessed grade in that course (or courses) be no greater than a grade of C+.

**(ii) For the degree of MBChB, Parts IV, V and VI**

Conceded passes in components of the Part will be awarded by a meeting of the MBChB Examiners, provided that the Dean of the Faculty has the power to award where such power is authorized by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

**Parts IV and V**

Where a student has not achieved a pass in a particular component or components of a Part the Examiners may:

- (a) withhold the result pending the completion of specified additional work and/or examination to the satisfaction of the Examiners

and/or

- (b) grant a conceded pass for a single component of the Part.

If in the opinion of the Examiners for MBChB a particular weakness in a component or components is such that it cannot be addressed by the setting of additional work and/or examination, the student will fail that Part.

**Part VI**

Where a student has not achieved a pass in a particular component or components of this Part, the Examiners may withhold the result and require a further period of assignment to a department. This will involve postponement of qualification. If in the opinion of the Examiners for MBChB a particular weakness in a component or components is such that it cannot be, or has not been, addressed by this additional work, the student will fail that Part.

(iii) **For the degree of BNurs, Part I:**

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Committee of BNurs Examiners, provided that the Dean has the power to award where such power is authorized by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

(a) that by award of a conceded pass the student will complete that Part

and

(b) a maximum of four points in the Part be conceded

and

(c) that to be eligible for the award of a conceded pass the student must have achieved a grade of D+ in that course (or courses) and an overall GPA of 2.5 or better in the Part.

Where a candidate has a fail grade of D or D+ in a course (or courses) and the Examiners deem that the failure(s) may be redeemable by satisfactory completion of additional work then a pass in that Part may be awarded under the following provisions:

(d) that the award of a grade for that course (or courses) be deferred until a prescribed course of additional study and/or examination be completed to the satisfaction of the Examiners

and

(e) deferred results be limited to a maximum of four points in any Part

and

(f) that to be eligible for a deferred result a student must achieve an overall GPA of 2.5 or better

and

(g) that the reassessed grade in that course (or courses) be no greater than a grade of C+.

(iv) **For the degree of BPharm:**

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Committee of BPharm Examiners, provided that the Dean has the power to award where such power is authorized by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

(a) that by award of a conceded pass the student will complete that Part

and

(b) a maximum of two points in any one Part be conceded

and

(c) that to be eligible for the award of a conceded pass the student must have achieved a grade of D+ in that course (or courses) and an overall GPA of 2.5 or better in that Part

(d) a maximum of two conceded passes are awarded for the degree.

Where a candidate has a fail grade of D or D+ in a course (or courses) and the Examiners deem that the failure(s) may be redeemable by satisfactory completion of additional work then a pass in that Part may be awarded under the following provisions:

(e) that the award of a grade for that course (or courses) be deferred until a prescribed course of additional study and/or examination be completed to the satisfaction of the Examiners

and

(f) deferred results be limited to a maximum of four points in any Part

and

(g) that to be eligible for a deferred result a student must achieve an overall GPA of 2.5 or better

and

(h) that the reassessed grade in that course (or courses) be no greater than a grade of C+.

**k Diplomas**

For all diplomas comprising 28 points or more a conceded pass may be awarded by a meeting of the Examiners for the Faculty concerned, provided that the Dean of the Faculty has power to award where such power is authorized by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions.

One course to a maximum value of 3 points may be conceded provided:

(i) that the conceded pass may only be awarded where it would permit the student to complete his/her diploma

and

(ii) that the student has obtained a grade of D+ in that course.

**1 Conjoint Degrees**

For all conjoint degrees consideration for the award of conceded passes will be in accordance with the provisions for the particular degree as set out in (f), (g) and (h) of this section.

**Deferred Results**

**19 Bachelor of Optometry**

Where a weakness occurs in the clinical practice component in certain double-semester Stage III and Stage IV courses, the result of the course or courses will be deferred. In these circumstances, the candidate will be required to complete additional work to the satisfaction of the examiners. The work will be examined in the following February.

**Recount of Marks**

- 20 By making application within four weeks from the date of the mailing of their official result of the examinations, any candidate sitting an examination may have the marks awarded for their examination script recounted. A recount of marks covers a careful rechecking of the marks recorded by the examiner and ensures that no answer, or any portion of an answer, submitted by a candidate has been overlooked. No information relative to the application will be placed before the examiner. Candidates may apply for a recount of marks for written examinations only.

*Note: For the prescribed fee for an Application for Recount of Marks see the Fees Schedule in this Calendar.*

**Availability of Scripts**

- 21 By making application not later than three months after the date of the examination, a candidate may obtain a photocopy of their examination script.

*Note: Examination scripts will normally be retained only for approximately four months after the examination period and thereafter be destroyed.*

**Theses and dissertations**

- 22 Where a thesis or dissertation is required as part of an examination the following conditions apply.

a **Diplomas, Bachelor's and Honours Degrees**  
Binding requirements for Diplomas, Bachelor's and Honours Degrees will be defined by the Faculty.

**b Master's Degrees**

Details of the submission and binding requirements for a thesis or dissertation for a Master's degree are listed in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**c Degree of Doctor of Philosophy**

(i) Details of the submission and binding requirements for PhD theses are contained in the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy – PhD.

(ii) On completion of the examination, the candidate is to submit three hard-bound copies of the thesis to the Graduate Centre. A short abstract not exceeding 350 words is to be bound into each copy of the thesis. The Graduate Centre is to deposit two copies with the University Library. The disposal of the third copy shall be at the discretion of the Head of the relevant Department.

- 23 In any thesis or dissertation, unacknowledged copying or plagiarism is not acceptable and is treated as an examination offence.

**Notes:**

a *In the case of PhD theses, once the degree has been awarded a further unbound copy of the thesis and abstract may be supplied to the University Library if the candidate wishes to have the thesis published by University Microfilms International. Information regarding this will be forwarded to the candidate when the degree is awarded.*

b *Candidates are recommended to obtain the booklet Guide to the Presentation of Theses from the Library before proceeding with the typing and binding of the thesis or dissertation. A clear, legible type style is to be used.*

c *Authors of theses or dissertations have a right to impose conditions restricting the reproduction of their work for such a period as they may stipulate without however curtailing the University Librarian's right to make and supply copies thereof in terms of Section 56 of the Copyright Act (1994).*

d *Where a thesis contains commercially sensitive material the author may request from the Senate or its representative a restriction of access to the thesis for a limited period. Such a period shall normally be for one year but may be renewed for a further year.*

e *Where it is suspected that a thesis or dissertation contains defamatory material the University Librarian may restrict access to the thesis or dissertation subject to confirmation by the Library Committee.*

f *Supervisors are requested to notify the University Library when a thesis or dissertation is submitted if it is believed to contain material which could be considered defamatory.*

g *Where a thesis or dissertation has been presented as part of a degree which:*

(i) *has been awarded but the thesis or dissertation itself is failed, that thesis or dissertation is not to be deposited in the University Library*

(ii) *has not been awarded, the thesis or dissertation is not to be deposited in the University Library irrespective of whether the thesis or dissertation itself has been given a pass or fail grade.*

**References to the Senate**

- 24 For the purposes of these regulations 'Senate' indicates any duly empowered delegate of the Senate.

---

## General Statutes and Regulations

Conferment of Academic Qualifications and Academic Dress Statute 1992	42
Availability of Academic Dress	44
The Degrees and Diplomas Statute 1991	44
The Honorary Degrees and Awards Statute 1998	46
Guidelines for the Award of Honorary Degrees and Fellowships	46
Information Technology Systems and Services	47
Computer System Statute	47
Library Regulations	48

# GENERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

## Conferment of Academic Qualifications and Academic Dress Statute 1992

- 1 Every degree and every diploma of the University shall be conferred or awarded in pursuance of a resolution of the Council and at a meeting of the Council.
- 2 Every degree and every diploma of the University shall be conferred or awarded by the Chancellor, or if they are absent from the meeting or incapacitated by sickness or otherwise, by the Vice-Chancellor or Pro-Chancellor. The Council may also authorize another person to confer degrees or award diplomas at a particular ceremony.
- 3 Every recipient of a degree shall receive a certificate in appropriate form, under the Common Seal of the University, that their degree has been conferred and stating the class of honours (if any awarded).
- 4 Every diploma shall be in appropriate form under the Common Seal of the University.
- 5 At a specified time or times each year the Council shall meet in convocation of the University to confer degrees and award diplomas. Persons wishing to have their degree conferred or diploma awarded (whether in person or in absentia) at such a ceremony shall make application to the Registrar not later than the date specified in the Calendar for this purpose.
- 6 The form of words to be used by the Chancellor, the Vice-Chancellor, Pro-Chancellor or such other person as may have been appointed by the Council to confer degrees shall be as follows: *'By the authority vested in me by resolution of The University of Auckland Council I [NAME] confer the degrees stated upon those who, within their several faculties, have satisfied the requirements of this University.'*
- 7 The form of words to be used by the Chancellor, the Vice-Chancellor, Pro-Chancellor or such other person as may have been appointed by the Council to award diplomas shall be as follows: *'By the authority vested in me by resolution of The University of Auckland Council I [NAME] award the diplomas stated upon those who, within their several faculties, have satisfied the requirements of this University.'*
- 8 The academic dress worn by members of the University at any public ceremony of the University shall be the costume appropriate to their degree, but doctors may on special occasions wear a scarlet gown and graduates admitted ad eundem statum may wear the academic costume of their own university. Unless the holder of a diploma is also a graduate the only academic dress they may wear is an undergraduate gown and the scarf appropriate to their diploma.
- 9 The academic costumes of The University of Auckland shall be as follows:
- a The robe for the Chancellor of the University is a blue damask gown with facings of gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms of the University. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold lace and tassel. The robe for the Pro-Chancellor is a black gown with facings of blue silk and gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold tassel. The robe for the Vice-Chancellor is a blue silk gown with facings of silver lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with silver lace and tassel. The robe for the Registrar is a gown of black silk with facings of blue silk, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with a black silk tassel. The robe for the Kaumatua and the Kuia is the Fellows gown of the colour University blue to be worn with a black scarf lined with the colour University blue bearing on each lapel the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with a black silk tassel.
- b The gown for a Bachelor's degree is as for the Cambridge Bachelor of Arts. The gown for a Master's degree is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for every degree is the size and shape as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for a Bachelor's degree is lined with coloured satin and bordered with white fur. The hood for a Master's degree is lined with coloured satin only. The hoods for the Bachelor's and Master's degrees are as follows:
- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <b>Arts</b>                         |   |
| BA, MA                              | pink lining   |
| BA(Hons)                            | pink lining; 25mm pink band on the outside edge of the hood                     |
| MLitt                               | pink lining; 75mm pink band on the outside edge of the hood                     |
| MTESOL                              | pink lining; 25mm light brown band on the edge of the satin                     |
| <b>Business and Economics</b>       |   |
| BBIM                                | apricot lining  |
| BCom, MCom                          | orange lining   |
| BCom(Hons)                          | orange lining; 25mm orange band on the outside edge of the hood                 |
| BProp, MProp                        | silver grey lining  |
| BProp(Hons)                         | silver grey lining; 25mm silver grey band on the outside edge of the hood       |
| MBA                                 | burgundy lining   |
| MComLaw                             | orange lining; 25mm light blue band on the edge of the satin                    |
| MIntBus                             | orange lining; 25mm light brown band on the edge of the satin                   |
| MMgt                                | orange lining; 25mm tan band on the edge of the satin                           |
| MTaxS                               | orange lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin                    |
| <b>Creative Arts and Industries</b> |   |
| BAS, MAS                            | lemon lining  |
| BArch, MArch                        | lemon lining; two 25mm lemon bands, 25mm apart, on the outside edge of the hood |

BFA, MFA	gold lining
BMus, MMus	white lining
BMus(Hons)	white lining; 25mm white band on the outside edge of the hood
BMusEd	emerald green lining; 25mm white band on the edge of the satin
BPerfArts	pink lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
BPlan, MPlan	chartreuse green lining
EVA	gold lining; 25mm jade green band on the edge of the satin
MBldgSc	lemon lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
MCPA	pink lining; 25mm white band on the edge of the satin
MPlanPrac	chartreuse green lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin

**Education**

BED, MEd	emerald green lining
BEd(Tchg)	emerald green lining
BEd(TESOL)	emerald green lining; 25mm light brown band on the edge of the satin

**Engineering**

BE, ME	dark violet lining
MEngSt	dark violet lining; 25mm light brown band on the edge of the satin
MEMgt	dark violet lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin

**Interfaculty**

ETech	dark blue lining; 25mm taupe band on the edge of the satin
MEdMgt	emerald green lining; 25mm orange band on the edge of the satin
MHealthMgt	lilac lining; 25mm orange band on the edge of the satin
MOR	dark violet lining; 25mm taupe band on the edge of the satin
MProfStuds	pink lining; 25mm taupe band on the edge of the satin

**Law**

LLB, LLM	light blue lining
LLB(Hons)	light blue lining; 25mm light blue band on the outside edge of the hood
LLM(Envir)	light blue lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
MEnvLS	light blue lining; 25mm light brown band on the edge of the satin

**Medical and Health Sciences**

BHB, MMedSc	crimson lining
BHB(Hons)	crimson lining; 25 mm crimson band on the outside edge of the hood
BHSc, MHSc	lilac lining
BNurs, MNurs	navy blue lining
BNurs(Hons)	navy blue lining; 25mm navy blue band on the outside edge of the hood
BPharm	grey-green lining
MAud	lilac lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
MBChB	crimson lining; two 25mm crimson bands, 25mm apart, on the outside edge of the hood
MPH	lilac lining; 25mm crimson band on the edge of the satin
MPharmPrac	grey-green lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin

**Science**

BSc, MSc	dark blue lining
BSc(Hons)	dark blue lining; 25mm dark blue band on the outside edge of the hood
BOptom	blue-green lining
MSLTPrac	dark blue lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin

**Theology**

BTheol, MTheol	forest green lining
----------------	---------------------

- c The hood for a Bachelor with Honours degree is as for the relevant Bachelor's degree, with the addition of a 25mm ribbon band on the outside of the hood, alongside the fur. The colour of the ribbon band is the same colour as the lining.

The hood for a Bachelor's degree for which the prerequisite is another Bachelor's degree within the same Faculty, is as for a Bachelor with Honours degree, with the addition of a second 25mm band at a distance of 25mm from the first band. Both bands are the same colour as the lining.

Where there is more than one Master's or Bachelor's degree within a Faculty, the hoods for such degrees are lined with satin in the colour approved by Council. The first such degree will have no ribbon band, but subsequent degrees of this nature will be distinguished by the addition of a 25mm band on the edge of the satin. The colour of the ribbon band for the first subsequent degree within a Faculty will be dark brown, and any further subsequent degrees of this nature within the Faculty will be in another colour which is not taupe, nor unless otherwise approved, the colour used to line the hoods for any other degree.

The hood for an Interfaculty Bachelor's degree or Master's degree is lined with the colour of the Faculty primarily responsible for the degree, with the addition of a 25mm ribbon band on the edge of the satin. Where there are two Faculties involved, the colour of the ribbon band is the colour of the hood lining of the second Faculty. Where more than two Faculties are involved, the colour of the ribbon band is taupe.

- d The gown for the degrees of Doctor of Clinical Psychology, Doctor of Education, Doctor of Fine Arts, Doctor of Medicine, Doctor of Music and Doctor of Pharmacy is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts with the addition of facings of 50mm wide satin. The hood is made wholly of satin and this and the facings of the gown are of the following colours for the different degrees:

<i>Clinical Psychology</i>	<i>dark blue</i>
<i>Education</i>	<i>emerald green</i>
<i>Fine Arts</i>	<i>gold</i>
<i>Medicine</i>	<i>crimson</i>
<i>Music</i>	<i>white</i>
<i>Pharmacy</i>	<i>grey-green</i>

- e The gown for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts, with the addition of 100mm satin facings, made up of 75mm of scarlet edged with 25mm of gold. The hood is made wholly of scarlet satin.

- f The gown for the degrees of Doctor of Engineering, Doctor of Laws, Doctor of Literature, and Doctor of Science is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts, but is made of black silk, or scarlet silk or cloth. The hood is made wholly of satin, and are of the following colours for the different degrees:

<i>Engineering</i>	<i>dark violet</i>
<i>Laws</i>	<i>light blue</i>
<i>Literature</i>	<i>pink</i>
<i>Science</i>	<i>dark blue</i>

- g The cap for all graduates other than Doctors and the officers of the University is a black trencher with a tassel. The cap for all Doctors other than officers of the University is as for the full dress Cambridge Doctor of Philosophy, namely a round black velvet bonnet with a gold cord around the crown ending in tassels.
- h The scarf for a diploma is to be made of the same black material as the gown with a band of colour in plain satin as in existing hoods down the centre edge. The colour is to match the degree cluster most closely associated with the diploma. The lining is to be the same colour as the band. The width of the scarf at the base is to be 140mm in total, the black being 100mm and the colour 40mm, and narrowing behind the neck. A band of the lining colour is to be stepped down from the inside edge to the outside edge of the black material at the base of each side of the scarf. The diploma scarves are as follows:

<i>Architecture</i>	lemon band and lining
<i>Arts</i>	pink band and lining
<i>Business &amp; Economics</i>	burgundy band and lining
<i>Education</i>	emerald green band and lining
<i>Engineering</i>	dark violet band and lining
<i>Fine Arts</i>	gold band and lining
<i>Laws</i>	light blue band and lining
<i>Medical &amp; Health Sciences</i>	crimson band and lining
<i>Music</i>	white band and lining
<i>Planning</i>	chartreuse green band and lining
<i>Property</i>	silver grey band and lining
<i>Science</i>	dark blue band and lining
<i>Theology</i>	forest green band and lining

- i The gown for the honorary degrees of Doctor of Engineering, Doctor of Laws, Doctor of Literature, Doctor of Music, Doctor of Science and Doctor of The University of Auckland is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts, but is made of scarlet satin. The hood is made wholly of satin, and is one of the following colours for the different degrees:

<i>Engineering</i>	dark violet
<i>Laws</i>	light blue
<i>Literature</i>	pink
<i>Music</i>	white
<i>Science</i>	dark blue
<i>The University of Auckland</i>	University blue

- 10 The gown for a Fellow of The University of Auckland will be an Undergraduate Gown of the colour University Blue bearing on the left front lapel the coat of arms of the University. No hood or cap shall be worn.

### Availability of Academic Dress

The Auckland Branch of the New Zealand Federation of Graduate Women owns a stock of Academic Gowns, Hoods, Scarves, Trenchers and Tudor Bonnets. These are available for hire and sale Monday to Friday from 9.00am until 3.30pm throughout the year. Details may be obtained from the Academic Dress Hire, 35 The Strand, Parnell, phone 379 6108. A student completing the requirements for a degree or diploma will receive information regarding the hire of academic dress for the graduation ceremony with their invitation to apply to graduate.

## The Degrees and Diplomas Statute 1991

At The University of Auckland this 18th day of February 1991.

Pursuant to section 194(1)(g) of the Education Act 1989, as amended by the Education Amendment Act 1990, the Council of The University of Auckland, after consulting the Senate, hereby makes the following statute:

- This Statute may be cited as the Degrees and Diplomas Statute 1991.
- The Council shall have power to confer the following degrees on any person who completes a course of study in accordance with the provisions of the regulations for that qualification.

Bachelor of Adult and Higher Education	BAHEd
Bachelor of Architectural Studies	BAS
Bachelor of Architecture	BArch
Bachelor of Arts	BA
Bachelor of Arts (Honours)	BA(Hons)
Bachelor of Business and Information Management	BBIM
Bachelor of Commerce	BCom
Bachelor of Commerce (Honours)	BCom(Hons)
Bachelor of Education (Teaching)	BEEd(Tchg)
Bachelor of Education (Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages)	BEEd(TESOL)
Bachelor of Engineering	BE
Bachelor of Fine Arts	BFA
Bachelor of Health Sciences	BHSc
Bachelor of Human Biology	BHB
Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours)	BHB(Hons)
Bachelor of Laws	LLB
Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	LLB(Hons)

Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery	MBChB
Bachelor of Music	BMus
Bachelor of Music (Honours)	BMus(Hons)
Bachelor of Music Education	BMusEd
Bachelor of Nursing	BNurs
Bachelor of Nursing (Honours)	BNurs(Hons)
Bachelor of Optometry	BOptom
Bachelor of Performing Arts	BPerfArts
Bachelor of Pharmacy	BPharm
Bachelor of Planning	BPlan
Bachelor of Property	BProp
Bachelor of Property (Honours)	BProp(Hons)
Bachelor of Science	BSc
Bachelor of Science Education	BScEd
Bachelor of Science (Honours)	BSc(Hons)
Bachelor of Technology	BTech
Bachelor of Theology	BTheol
Bachelor of Visual Arts	BVA
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Commerce	BA/BCom
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Education (Teaching)	BA/BEEd(Tchg)
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Engineering	BA/BE
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Fine Arts	BA/BFA
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Health Sciences	BA/BHSc
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Music	BA/BMus
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Property	BA/BProp
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Science	BA/BSc
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Theology	BA/BTheol
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Laws	BA/LLB
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BA/LLB(Hons)
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Education (Teaching)	BCom/BEEd(Tchg)
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Engineering	BCom/BE
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Health Sciences	BCom/BHSc

Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Music	BCom/BMus
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Property	BCom/BProp
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Science	BCom/BPsc
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Laws	BCom/LLB
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BCom/LLB(Hons)
Bachelor of Education (Teaching)/Bachelor of Science	BE/LLB
Bachelor of Engineering/Bachelor of Laws	BE/LLB
Bachelor of Engineering/Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BE/LLB(Hons)
Bachelor of Engineering/Bachelor of Property	BE/BProp
Bachelor of Engineering/Bachelor of Science	BE/BSc
Bachelor of Health Sciences/Bachelor of Laws	BHSc/LLB
Bachelor of Health Sciences/Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BHSc/LLB(Hons)
Bachelor of Music/Bachelor of Science	BMus/BSc
Bachelor of Music/Bachelor of Theology	BMus/BTheol
Bachelor of Property/Bachelor of Science	BProp/BSc
Bachelor of Property/Bachelor of Laws	BProp/LLB
Bachelor of Property/Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BProp/LLB(Hons)
Bachelor of Science/Bachelor of Theology	BSc/BTheol
Bachelor of Science/Bachelor of Laws	BSc/LLB
Bachelor of Science/Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BSc/LLB(Hons)
Master of Architectural Studies	MAS
Master of Architecture	MArch
Master of Arts	MA
Master of Audiology	MAud
Master of Building Science	MBlgdSc
Master of Business Administration	MBA
Master of Commerce	MCom
Master of Commercial Law	MComLaw
Master of Creative and Performing Arts	MCPA
Master of Education	MEd
Master of Educational Management	MEdMgt
Master of Engineering	ME
Master of Engineering Management	MEMgt
Master of Engineering Studies	MEngSt
Master of Environmental Legal Studies	MEnvLS
Master of Fine Arts	MFA
Master of Health Management	MHealthMgt
Master of Health Sciences	MHSc
Master of International Business	MIntBus
Master of Laws	LLM
Master of Laws in Environmental Laws	LLM(Envir)
Master of Literature	MLitt
Master of Management	MMgt
Master of Medical Science	MMedSc
Master of Music	MMus
Master of Nursing	MNurs
Master of Operations Research	MOR
Master of Pharmacy Practice	MPharmPrac
Master of Planning	MPlan
Master of Planning Practice	MPlanPrac
Master of Professional Studies	MProfStuds
Master of Property	MProp
Master of Public Health	MPH
Master of Science	MSc
Master of Speech Language Therapy Practice	MSLTPrac
Master of Taxation Studies	MTaxS
Master of Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages	MTESOL
Master of Theology	MTheol
Doctor of Clinical Psychology	DClinPsy
Doctor of Education	EdD
Doctor of Engineering	DEng
Doctor of Fine Arts	DocFA
Doctor of Laws	LLD
Doctor of Literature	LittD
Doctor of Medicine	MD
Doctor of Music	DMus
Doctor of Musical Arts	DMA
Doctor of Pharmacy	DPharm
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Science	DSc

and to award the following diplomas:

Diploma in Environmental Management	DipEnvirMgt
Diploma in Mathematics Education	DipMathsEd
Diploma of Music	DipMus
Diploma in Occupational Medicine	DipOccupMed

Diploma in Paediatrics	DipPaed
Diploma in Professional Ethics	DipProfEthics
Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology	DipPulpPaper
Diploma in Science Education	DipSciEd
Diploma in Technology Education	DipTechEd
Graduate Diploma in Arts	GradDipArts
Graduate Diploma in Commerce	GradDipCom
Graduate Diploma in Counselling	GradDipCouns
Graduate Diploma in Education	GradDipEd
Graduate Diploma in Engineering	GradDipEng
Graduate Diploma in Engineering (Transportation)	GradDipEng(Transp)
Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences	GradDipHSc
Graduate Diploma in Music	GradDipMus
Graduate Diploma in Operations Research	GradDipOR
Graduate Diploma in Performing Arts	GradDipPerformArts
Graduate Diploma in Science	GradDipSci
Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Primary)	GradDipTchg(Primary)
Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Secondary)	GradDipTchg(Sec)
Graduate Diploma in Theology	GradDipTheol

and to award the following Postgraduate diplomas:

Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology	PGDipAppPsych
Postgraduate Diploma in Arts	PGDipArts
Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management	PGDipArtsMgt
Postgraduate Diploma in Business	PGDipBus
Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science	PGDipBldgSc
Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology	PGDipClinPsych
Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce	PGDipCom
Postgraduate Diploma in Community Emergency Medicine	PGDipComEmMed
Postgraduate Diploma in Education	PGDipEd
Postgraduate Diploma in Educational Psychology	PGDipEdPsych
Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts	PGDipFA
Postgraduate Diploma in Forensic Science	PGDipForensic
Postgraduate Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology	PGDipGeothermTech
Postgraduate Diploma in Geriatric Medicine	PGDipGeriatricMed
Postgraduate Diploma in Health Psychology	PGDipHealthPsych
Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences	PGDipHSc
Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching	PGDipLT
Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies	PGDipLS
Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science	PGDipMedSc
Postgraduate Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology	PGDipObstMedGyn
Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice	PGDipPharmPrac
Postgraduate Diploma in Property	PGDipProp
Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health	PGDipPH
Postgraduate Diploma in Science	PGDipSci
Postgraduate Diploma in Sports Medicine	PGDipSportMed
Postgraduate Diploma in Translation Studies	PGDipTranslationStud

3 The Council shall have the power to confer the following honorary degrees in accordance with the provisions of the Honorary Degrees Regulations 1998.

Doctor of Engineering
Doctor of Literature
Doctor of Laws
Doctor of Music
Doctor of Science
Doctor of The University of Auckland
A Master's degree in any Faculty of the University

4 The Degrees Statute 1990 is hereby repealed.

## The Honorary Degrees and Awards Statute 1998

Pursuant to sections 192 and 194 of the Education Act 1989 and section 20 of The University of Auckland Act 1961 the Council of The University makes the following statute:

- 1 This Statute may be cited as the Honorary Degrees and Awards Statute 1998 and shall come into force on the 16 March 1998.
- 2 The Council may at its discretion:
  - a Confer the following honorary degrees:
    - Doctor of Laws
    - Doctor of Science
    - Doctor of Literature
    - Doctor of Music
    - Doctor of Engineering
    - Doctor of The University of Auckland
    - A Master's degree in any Faculty of the University; and
  - b Award the title 'Fellow of the University' ('Fellowship').
- 3 The University Honours Committee of the Council shall consider nominations and make recommendations to the Council for the conferring of any honorary degree or fellowship under this Statute.
- 4 The University Honours Committee shall henceforth consist of:
  - a the Chancellor who shall be the Chair of the Committee
  - b the Vice-Chancellor
  - c the Pro-Chancellor
  - d one member appointed by the Council
  - e two members of Senate elected by the Senate
  - f a student member of the Council.
- 5 The Council may, from time to time, approve guidelines for the award of honorary degrees and fellowships and, in making its recommendations, the University Honours Committee shall ensure that it complies with all those guidelines.
- 6 The Council may also, in its discretion and on the recommendation of the University Honours Committee:
  - a award the title 'Professor Emeritus' to a retired member of the academic staff who held the office of a Professor of the University immediately before his or her retirement
  - b award the title 'University Librarian Emeritus' to a retired member of staff who held the office of University Librarian immediately before his or her retirement and who has a record of long and distinguished service to the University as the University Librarian.

7.1 The University Honours Committee may recommend to the Council, for the conferment of an Honorary Doctor's Degree:

- a Any person who:
  - (i) is academically distinguished, or has made a distinguished contribution in creative or artistic fields, and has, or has had, some intimate connection with the University
  - or*
  - (ii) has shown strong interest in the well-being of the University by benefactions, or in other appropriate ways
  - or*
  - (iii) is of international repute and is visiting, or has visited the University in an official capacity
- or*
- b Any other person approved for the purpose after consultation with Education Committee on behalf of the Senate.

7.2 The University Honours Committee may recommend to the Council, for the conferment of an Honorary Master's degree:

- a any member of the general staff who has given long and distinguished service to the University
- or*
- b any member of the academic staff who does not hold a degree
- or*
- c any other person approved for the purpose after consultation with Education Committee on behalf of the Senate.

7.3 The University Honours Committee may recommend to the Council, for the conferment of a Fellowship, a person who:

- a has made a unique and valuable contribution to the University
- and*
- b is not a permanent member of staff.

8 A nomination for the conferment of an honorary degree or a fellowship may be made by any three persons each of whom is a member of the Council or of the Senate or of both these bodies; and shall be made confidentially to the Vice-Chancellor in accordance with the relevant provisions of the guidelines in force under clause 5 of this Statute.

9 The Honorary Degrees Regulations 1978 and The Fellow of The University of Auckland Statute 1992 are both hereby repealed.

## Guidelines for the Award of Honorary Degrees and Fellowships

- 1 A nomination for an honorary degree or for the award of a fellowship shall be made confidentially in writing to the Vice-Chancellor and signed by three persons each of whom shall be a member of the Council or of the Senate or of both these bodies.
- 2 Each nomination shall be accompanied by a statement outlining in sufficient detail the career, standing and qualifications of the nominee and the grounds under clauses 7.1, 7.2 or 7.3 for conferring the degree or awarding the fellowship.

- 3 The Vice-Chancellor shall refer each nomination and the accompanying statement to the University Honours Committee of Council.
- 4 If Council approves a recommendation that an honorary degree be conferred or a fellowship be awarded the Vice-Chancellor shall invite the nominee to accept the award.
- 5 The conferring of honorary doctorate degrees shall not be confined to a graduation ceremony but shall be arranged at the discretion of the Council.
- 6 The conferring of an honorary Master's degree will, except in very exceptional circumstances, take place at a graduation ceremony.
- 7 The award of a Fellowship shall be arranged at the discretion of the Council.

## Information Technology Systems and Services

Information Technology Systems and Services (ITSS) provides core information technology services to the University. ITSS develops and manages the data, telephone networks and web environment throughout the University. It operates computer systems providing appropriate access to academic, e-learning, financial, human resources, library, and administration services. These services operate

continuously and may be accessed by authorized persons from computers attached to the University network.

In addition ITSS provides Internet access and email services, as well as working in partnership with the Library and the Faculties to provide computer systems and facilities for use by staff and students, including HelpDesk services.

## Computer System Statute

### *Under Review*

Pursuant to section 194 of the Education Act 1989, the Council of the University makes the following statute:

- 1 This Statute may be cited as the Computer System Statute 2000. The Statute came into force on 1 January 2000.
- 2 In this Statute, unless the context otherwise requires:
 

**'System'** means any computer, computer systems, other information systems, telecommunication equipment or device controlled and operated by the University, whether on the premises of the University or elsewhere.

**'Director'** means the Director Information Technology Systems and Services and includes, in relation to any system, the person authorized by the University to control that System.

**'Duly Authorized Person'** means a member of the University staff with the authority to approve expenditure incurred in the use of the System.

**'Guideline'** means a rule of conduct on the use of any System or on the care of any equipment forming part of a System of which notice has been given:

  - a by publication in the *University Calendar*
  - or
  - b by other means
  - or
  - c to the person charged with misuse of a System before the alleged misuse has occurred.
- 3 A student, or any other member of the University, may not:
  - a without authority of the Director gain access or attempt to gain access to the System
  - or
  - b obtain or attempt to obtain from the System

any information which they have not been authorized to access

or

c use the System to make unauthorized use of any other system, whether in the University or outside it

or

d wilfully impede or attempt to impede the operation or activity of any other authorized user of that System or of any other system, whether in the University or outside it

or

e use or attempt to use the System so as to cause costs to be incurred

(i) by the University, without the consent of a Duly authorized Person

(ii) by any person or organization other than the University, without the consent of that other person or organization

f use the System to display, to transmit or to make available for transmission through computer networks, any work or publication, including files containing any text, image, sound or multimedia, that:

(i) is abusive or defamatory; is likely to threaten the safety of any person, or causes racial disharmony, sexual harassment or racial harassment in terms of the Human Rights Act 1993

(ii) contravenes the rights of any person under the Privacy Act 1993

(iii) reproduces all or part of any electronic or other publication in breach of copyright

(iv) has been composed knowingly so as to appear to have been produced by another person

(v) knowingly misquotes, abridges or alters the publication of any other person so as to alter the meaning of that publication without either the prior approval of that

person or a clear statement as to the identity of the author of the altered publication

or

g breach any Guideline that may, from time to time, be issued by the Director.

- 4 a Any breach of clause 3 is also an offence under the Disciplinary Statute 1998. In addition to the penalties that may be imposed under that Statute, the Discipline Committee may:

(i) terminate access to the System by a person in breach of clause 3

and

(ii) require any such person to make restitution for any loss or damage for improper use of the system.

- b Where the Director excludes any person from use of the System:

(i) the Director shall report the exclusion immediately to the Vice-Chancellor or to any person the Vice-Chancellor has nominated to receive such a report

(ii) on receiving such a report the Vice-Chancellor (or the nominee) may refer the matter reported on to the Disciplinary Committee to be dealt with under the Disciplinary Statute

(iii) any person so excluded may appeal to the Council against the exclusion.

*Note: The 'Guidelines' referred to in this statute are available from Information Technology Systems and Services.*

## Library Regulations

*The name of the Library is The University of Auckland Library. It may also be described by its Maori name: Te Tumu Herenga. Variants of this name may be used to describe the individual libraries in the library system.*

- 1 These regulations may be cited as the Library Regulations 1970 and came into force on 1 January, 1971.

- 2 Except where otherwise stated:

a These regulations apply to all sections of the University Library, and 'Library' where used in these regulations refers to all sections of The University of Auckland Library, including such other areas as may be under the control of the Library.

b In these regulations, 'books' includes all types of printed, written, photographic, audio-visual and machine-readable material.

c In these regulations an 'authorized librarian' is a member of the Library staff who at a particular time is acting under the delegated authority of the University Librarian and is responsible for a section of the University Library, or a service provided by the Library (*subject to confirmation by Council*).

that no person shall be deemed an undergraduate member of the University unless they are currently enrolled as such.

- b By special permission of the University Librarian any person not included among those authorized by clause a of this regulation may be a reader and accorded full or partial use of Library facilities.

c Persons admitted as readers under clause b of this regulation may be charged fees according to a schedule which will be determined by Council on the recommendation of Library Committee from time to time. No fee will be charged to retired members of the University staff or such categories of persons as the University Librarian may be permitted to exempt.

d The University Librarian may at any time require from any reader as a condition of that reader's use of the Library and borrowing facilities that they pay to the University a sum of not more than \$500 as a deposit to be applied in payment or part payment of any sum for which they may become liable under Regulation 6c. Any balance of the deposit shall be refunded on the termination of their use of the Library.

### Hours of Opening

- 3 The hours of opening are posted in each Library and are to be found for all libraries on the Library's website:

<http://www.library.auckland.ac.nz/contacts/hours.asp> or by using the telephone services offered. These hours may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian and any variation will be appropriately notified.

### Readers

- 4 a All members of the University Council, all University staff and all enrolled students of the University are deemed readers for the purpose of these regulations and may:

(i) use all sections of the Library

and

(ii) on completion of such registration formalities as the University Librarian requires, borrow books from it, provided

### Borrowing

- 5 a No reader may borrow any book otherwise than in accordance with these regulations.

b The hours during which books may be borrowed may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian. Borrowers must present each book at the exit for issuing, along with their University identity card. The due date is set at the time of issue, renewal, or recall. Borrowing ceases 15 minutes before closing.

c Any person on leaving the Library must on demand present all books and personal property for inspection.

d Unless a book on the open shelves is marked 'Not to be borrowed' or is otherwise restricted, it may be borrowed for 60 days by staff and postgraduate students, and for 28

days by other borrowers or for such shorter periods as the University Librarian may decide. Restricted collection items without 'Not to be borrowed' labels may be borrowed for not longer than seven days non-renewable. All other materials are to be used only in the Library except that periodicals which are borrowable may be issued for three days non-renewable. Borrowers are required to return or renew books by the due date. Limits apply to the number of books that may be borrowed.

- e All books are subject to recall within 24 hours at any time during the year, including study breaks and summer vacation. Borrowers who fail to respond to a recall notice within 24 hours incur a fine (including GST) of \$3.00 plus \$3.00 for each further 24 hours that the book is overdue. Borrowers who retain other books beyond the due date for return incur a fine (including GST) of 25¢ per day (with a minimum fine of \$2.00 per volume) whether a notice has been sent or not.
- f The University Librarian is under no obligation to notify borrowers when books are overdue; a fine may still be charged when books are returned after the due date, even though no notice has been received.
- g Books may be renewed at the expiry of a loan period at loans desks, or by using the renewal facility available via Voyager (the on-line catalogue). Renewal will be refused if the book has been requested and may be refused at the discretion of an authorized librarian.
- h Readers may request books which are on loan. The length of loan allowed depends on the number of other readers who are waiting for the book. Borrowers who return limited loan requested books late incur a fine (including GST) of \$3.00 per volume for each 24 hours the book is overdue. Excessive numbers of requests may be refused at the discretion of an authorized librarian.
- i Books which are in heavy demand may be available in short loan collections. These books will be issued for a specified period and normally may not be removed from the Library except in the case of overnight or 3 day loans. Failure to return short loan books on time incurs a fine (including GST) of 5¢ per volume for each minute for which the book is not returned. Failure to return 3 day loans on time incurs a fine (including GST) of \$3.00 per volume for each 24 hours the book is overdue.
- j When the Library is closed, books may be returned through after-hours slots where provided (eg, the Alfred Street side of the General Library building).
- k Staff and students may apply to borrow books from the library of another institution through the Interlibrary Loan and Document Delivery Service. Such books are subject to the conditions imposed by the owning library.
- l Library books may be taken out of New Zealand only with the prior permission of the University Librarian.

- m Authorized librarians may refuse to issue excessive numbers of books to any one reader.
- n Identity cards are not transferable; any loss must be immediately reported to the Library in order to block unauthorized use.

#### Discipline

- 6 a Under no circumstances may a book be passed on to another reader without being reissued in that reader's name. Where this regulation is broken the reader in whose name the book is issued remains liable for all fines or fees payable by reason of failure to return a book which is overdue, recalled, or lost.
- b Every reader must inform the Library at once of any change of their address or make changes via nDeva (*subject to confirmation by Council*).
- c
  - (i) Readers are responsible for, and are to make good, any loss of or damage to books on loan to them or being used by them in the Library. In addition to the cost of replacement or repair, readers may be charged an administration fee of \$15 (including GST) whether or not the book, if lost, is subsequently found and returned in good order.
  - (ii) The loss of a book must be reported immediately to an authorized librarian.
  - (iii) A lost book remains the property of the University, notwithstanding payment of the bill for its replacement, and must, if found, be returned. A refund (in whole or part, according to the condition of the book on return) will be made for it but the administration fee may be retained.
- d A reader must not deface or mark any book or any piece of library furniture or property.
- e The reservation of seats in the Library is not permitted. Books and any other articles left for any length of time on chairs or tables may be removed by any of the Library staff. No responsibility is accepted for personal belongings left in the Library.
- f There is to be no noisy or disruptive behaviour in public reading areas. Such behaviour includes conversation that disturbs other readers and the audible use of noise-generating equipment, including cell phones.
- g Readers may not smoke or consume food or drink, other than water in approved non-spillable containers, in any part of the Library open to readers. Any authorized librarian may confiscate food and unapproved drink brought in a consumable state into the Library.
- h A warning signal will be given 15 minutes before closing time; all readers must vacate the Library by closing time.
- i Library fines or bills should be paid at the loans desk of the Library concerned.
- j Where a fine or charge is not paid within 14 days of becoming due:
  - (i) the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from the reader in

- default for such period as the University Librarian thinks fit
- (ii) the Discipline Committee may impose on the reader any of the following penalties: prohibition of the sitting of examinations; withholding of examination scripts; refusal of re-enrolment for the next academic year; disqualification from graduation.
- k A reader can not borrow from the Library while fines or charges are outstanding in excess of specified sums (currently \$10 for students and \$50 for staff).
- l In the case of any reader who acts or behaves in the Library in a disorderly or improper manner or otherwise in breach of these regulations.
- (i) an authorized librarian may require that person to withdraw from the Library and, if that person is a staff member or student, may impose a fine, not exceeding \$10, on that person
- and
- (ii) the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from that person for such period as the University Librarian thinks fit.
- m A reader must not knowingly fail to identify themselves if required to do so, or to comply with such directions as may be reasonably made, by any authorized librarian in order to maintain good order and discipline.
- n Where a penalty is imposed on any reader under these regulations, the Council, if requested by that reader, is to arrange for a review of the amount of the penalty.
- o Nothing in these regulations limits the application to the Library (where relevant) of the Disciplinary Statute 1998.

*Note: The unauthorized borrowing, removal or defacement of books is regarded as a serious disciplinary offence.*

### Copyright

- 7 Every reader using copying facilities in the Library must duly comply with the laws on copyright.

*Note: A copyright owner is entitled to take legal action against a person who infringes their copyright. Unless otherwise permitted by the Copyright Act 1994, unauthorized copying of a work in which copyright subsists may infringe the copyright in that work.*

*Where making one copy of a work or part of a work is fair dealing under Section 43 of the Copyright Act 1994 making that copy is not an infringement of the copyright in that work.*

*To determine whether copying for research or private study is fair dealing it is necessary to have regard to the following matters:*

- a the purpose of the copying*
- b the nature of the work copied*
- c whether the work could have been obtained within a reasonable time at an ordinary commercial price*
- d the effect of the copying on the potential market for, or value of, the work*
- e where part of a work is copied the amount and substantiality of the part copied taken in relation to the whole work.*

*Nothing in this Section of the Copyright Act 1994 authorizes the making of more than one copy of the same work or the same part of a work on any one occasion.*

*Staff wishing to make multiple copies of copyright material from printed books for use in a course of instruction must ensure such copying complies with the guidelines set out in the brochure 'Copyright on Campus' distributed to all staff (subject to confirmation by Council).*

## Regulations – Arts

The Degree of Bachelor of Arts – BA	52
Bachelor of Arts (BA) Schedule	52
The Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) – BA(Hons)	58
Bachelor of Arts (Honours) (BA(Hons)) Schedule	59
The Degree of Master of Arts – MA	62
Master of Arts (MA) Schedule	63
The Degree of Master of Literature – MLitt	68
The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds	69
The Degree of Master of Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages – MTESOL	69
Diploma in Professional Ethics – DipProfEthics	70
Graduate Diploma in Arts – GradDipArts	71
Postgraduate Diploma in Arts – PGDipArts	71
Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching – PGDipLT	72
Postgraduate Diploma in Translation Studies – PGDipTranslationStud	73
Postgraduate Certificate in Advanced Interpreting – PGCertAdvInterp	74
Certificate in Arts – CertArts	74

---

## REGULATIONS – ARTS

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Arts – BA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 Of the 42 points required for this degree, a student must pass:
  - a at least 34 points in subjects listed in the BA Schedule
  - b at least 22 points in courses above Stage I
  - c courses in a minimum of three subjects
  - d one or more majors, including at least 6 points at Stage III in each major, selected from the majors listed in the BA Schedule
  - e
    - (i) a minor of at least 12 points, including at least 8 points above Stage I from one of the subjects in the BA Schedule
    - or*
    - (ii) a second major of at least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III from another of the subjects in the BA Schedule.
- 3 A student may include up to 8 points from other programmes offered at this University.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Special Cases

- 5 For language courses, a student with previous knowledge of the language may be required:
 

*either*

  - a to enrol directly in a Stage II course(s)
  - or*
  - b to take advanced course(s) where both beginner's and advanced level courses are offered at Stage I.

In such cases, if the student fails the Stage II or advanced course(s), they may be credited with the appropriate Stage I or beginner's level courses if they are certified by the examiner as having reached the standard of a pass for such courses.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 2000 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts were thereby repealed.

---

### Bachelor of Arts (BA) Schedule

---

Subjects available for majors and minors:

#### Ancient History

- Stage I courses:** ANCHIST 100–103  
**Stage II courses:** ANCHIST 200–255, CLASSICS 270, 280  
**Stage III courses:** ANCHIST 300–377, CLASSICS 370, 380  
**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III  
**Major must include:**
- at least 4 points from ANCHIST 100, 102, 103
- Minor must include:**
- at least 4 points from ANCHIST 100, 102, 103

#### Anthropology

- Stage I courses:** ANTHRO 100–104, MAORI 130  
**Stage II courses:** ANTHRO 200–246, MAORI 230  
**Stage III courses:** ANTHRO 300–350, MAORI 330, WOMEN 303  
**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III  
**Major must include:**
- at least two of: ANTHRO 100, 101, 102, 103, 104; and
  - at least one of: ANTHRO 200, 201, 203
- Minor must include:**
- at least one of: ANTHRO 100, 101, 102, 103, 104

## Art History

**Stage I courses:** ARTHIST 101–112

**Stage II courses:** ARTHIST 201–224, MAORI 240, WOMEN 202

**Stage III courses:** ARTHIST 301–327

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

## Asian Studies

**Stage I courses:** ASIAN 100, 101, CHINESE 124, 125, 130, FTVMS 111, HISTORY 103, JAPANESE 150, KOREAN 120, 121

**Stage II courses:** ASIAN 200

• History and Politics: HISTORY 221, 222, 226, KOREAN 240, POLITICS 226, 228

• Literature and Cultural Studies: ASIAN 201, 202, ANTHRO 232, 233, ARCHHTC 207, 214, CHINESE 220, 221, 222, FTVMS 205, JAPANESE 240, 270, KOREAN 230, PHIL 214

**Stage III courses:**

• History and Politics: ASIAN 302, ECON 343, GEOG 322, HISTORY 312, 313, 346, 347, 348, INTBUS 312, KOREAN 340, POLITICS 318, 331, 339, SOCIO 313, WOMEN 305

• Literature and Cultural Studies: ANTHRO 305, 332, 333, CHINESE 304, 305, FTVMS 302, JAPANESE 307, 324, 341, 381, 385, 390, WOMEN 305

**Major:** At least 16 points, including 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- ASIAN 100
- ASIAN 200
- and at least 8 points from either History and Politics or Literature and Cultural Studies courses listed above

**Minor must include:**

- ASIAN 100 and ASIAN 200

## Chinese

**Stage I courses:** CHINESE 100–130, ASIAN 100

**Stage II courses:** CHINESE 200–278, HISTORY 222

**Stage III courses:** CHINESE 300–378

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- CHINESE 130, ASIAN 100; and
  - either CHINESE 300, 301, 304 and 305; or CHINESE 310
- Native speakers of Chinese should consult Department about content of major

## Classical Studies

**Stage I courses:** CLASSICS 110–140, ANCHIST 102, 103

**Stage II courses:** CLASSICS 210–285, ANCHIST 202, 203, 213, 222, 250, 252–254, PHIL 204

**Stage III courses:** CLASSICS 310–385, ANCHIST 302, 303, 313, 314, 322, 324, 350, 352–354

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 10 points with a CLASSICS course code

## Economics

**Stage I courses:** ECON 101, 111

**Stage II courses:** ECON 201–273

**Stage III courses:** ECON 301–381

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- ECON 101 and 111; and
- ECON 201 and 211

Students must also pass MATHS 108 (or equivalent) to take a major in Economics

**Minor must include:**

- ECON 101 and 111

Students must also pass MATHS 108 (or equivalent) to take a minor in Economics

## Education

**Stage I courses:** EDUC 111–116

**Stage II courses:** EDUC 201–283

**Stage III courses:** EDUC 302–384, MATHS 302

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 4 points at Stage I
- at least 4 points at Stage II

**Minor must include:**

- at least 4 points at Stage I

## Employment Relations and Organization Studies

**Stage I course:** MGMT 101

**Stage II courses:** MGMT 211, 212, 223–232

**Stage III courses:** MGMT 311–322, 324–338, PSYCH 312, ECON 302

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- MGMT 101

**Minor must include:**

- MGMT 101

*Note: some Management and Employment Relations courses are not available for BA major or minor*

## English

**Stage I courses:** ENGLISH 100–156, LINGUIST 100 or 103

**Stage II courses:** ENGLISH 200–261, LINGUIST 200–202

**Stage III courses:** ENGLISH 302–352, LINGUIST 300–305, 310

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 4 points at Stage I
- at least 4 points from ENGLISH 200–261
- at least 4 points from ENGLISH 200, 202, 210, 213, 219, 302, 307, 308, 310, 314, 315, 320, 336–342

**Minor must include:**

- at least 4 points at Stage I
- at least 4 points from ENGLISH 200–261
- at least 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 202, 210, 213, 219, 302, 307, 308, 310, 314, 315, 320, 336–342

## English Language Acquisition and Linguistics

*Note: this major requires courses ESOL 200 or 202, and ESOL 201. It is therefore only available to students from a non-English speaking background, who must attain a sufficient competence in English to gain admission to these courses*

**Stage I courses:** LINGUIST 100, 101, 103

**Stage II courses:** ESOL 200–202, LINGUIST 203

**Stage III courses:** LANGTCHG 300, 303; LINGUIST 302, 307, 310

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- LINGUIST 100 or 103, and 101
- ESOL 200 or 202, and 201
- LINGUIST 302
- 2 points from: LINGUIST 307, 310, LANGTCHG 300, 303

## English Language Acquisition and Literature in English

*Note: this major requires courses ESOL 200 or 202, and 201. It is therefore only available to students with a non-English speaking background, who must attain a sufficient competence in English to gain admission to these courses*

**Stage I courses:** ENGLISH 101, 107, 111, 121

**Stage II courses:** ENGLISH 200–256, ESOL 200–202

**Stage III courses:** ENGLISH 302–352, LANGTCHG 300

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- 2 points from: ENGLISH 101, 107, 111, 121
- ESOL 200 or 202, and 201
- 4 points from: ENGLISH 200–256

## Ethics

**Stage I courses:** PHIL 102, 103, 152, PSYCHIAT 102

**Stage II courses:** PHIL 205, 210, 211, 217, 250, MGMT 232

**Stage III courses:** PHIL 304, 310, 317, 318, 337, 350, POLITICS 320, 325; MGMT 331, LAW 440

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least one of PHIL 102, 103, 152; and
- at least two of PHIL 205, 210, 211; and
- at least two of PHIL 304, 310, 318, POLITICS 320

**Minor must include:**

- at least one of PHIL 102, 103, 152; and
- at least one of PHIL 205, 210, 211

## European Studies

**Stage I courses:** EUROPEAN 100

• Literature and Cultural Studies: CLASSICS 110, 130, GERMAN 120, FRENCH 129, 159, ITALIAN 111, POLISH 101, RUSSIAN 112, SPANISH 103

• History: ANCHIST 102, 103, HISTORY 101, 102, 109, 110, 140, 150

• Political Studies and Philosophy: CLASSICS 120, PHIL 152, POLITICS 109

• Art History and Music: ARTHIST 101, 104, 105, 111, MUSIC 144

**Stage II courses:**

• Literature and Cultural Studies: CLASSICS 210, 220, 230, EUROPEAN 200, 201, 205, 211, 221, FRENCH 231, 239, ITALIAN 203, 210, 232, POLISH 210, RUSSIAN 250, SPANISH 202, 222

• History: ANCHIST 203, HISTORY 215, 219, 235, 240, 265, 266

• Political Studies and Philosophy: CLASSICS 240, 250, 260, PHIL 209, 215, 221, POLITICS 209, 215, 220

• Art History and Music: ARTHIST 201, 203, 207, 210, 211, 224, CLASSICS 270, 280, MUSIC 240-244, 247

**Stage III courses:**

• Literature and Cultural Studies: EUROPEAN 302, 303, 304, 311, FRENCH 306, 339, RUSSIAN 350, 390, SPANISH 301

History: ANCHIST 314, 324, HISTORY 317, 324, 336, 337, 343, 365

• Political Studies and Philosophy: PHIL 329, 335, 340, 341, POLITICS 335

• Art History and Music: ARTHIST 301, 302, 306, 311, 315, 324, MUSIC 341-347

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

• **at Stage I:** EUROPEAN 100 and one of the following: ANCHIST 103, HISTORY 101, 102; or 109, 110, 140, 150. Students who have taken EUROPEAN 100 for their School of European Languages and Literatures (SELL) major will have to substitute another Stage I Literature and Cultural Studies course for EUROPEAN 100

• **at Stage II:** POLITICS 220 and 4 points from two of Literature and Cultural Studies, History, Political Studies and Philosophy, Art History and Music; or HISTORY 219 and 4 points from two of Literature and Cultural Studies, Political Studies and Philosophy, Art History and Music

• **at Stage III:** at least 6 points from subjects studied at Stage II

• majoring students must have passed at least 8 points in a European language other than English, or have equivalent competence in such a language

**Minor must include:**

- EUROPEAN 100
- POLITICS 220 or HISTORY 219
- at least 2 points from each of at least 3 of the 4 areas (Literature and Cultural Studies, History, Political Studies and Philosophy, Art History and Music)
- for a minor in European Studies, students must have passed at least 4 points in a European language other than English, or have equivalent competence in such a language.

## Film, Television and Media Studies

**Stage I courses:** FTVMS 100, 101, 110-113, CHINESE 124, 125, ENGLISH 109, GERMAN 120, ITALIAN 111, POLITICS 113, POPMUS 106, WOMEN 101

**Stage II courses:** FTVMS 200-206, 210-212, ARTHIST 204, ENGLISH 230, EUROPEAN 200, FRENCH 239, ITALIAN 232, LATINAM 201, POLITICS 231, 233, SOCIOL 211, WOMEN 203

**Stage III courses:** FTVMS 300-322, ANTHRO 320, ARTHIST 320, ENGLISH 321, 331, FRENCH 339, 349, HISTORY 364, MAORI 332, POLITICS 328, SOCIOL 318, WOMEN 304, 305

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- FTVMS 100 and 101; and
- FTVMS 204; and
- at least one of FTVMS 300, 302, 310, 312, 313

**Minor must include:**

- FTVMS 100 and 101; and
- FTVMS 204

## French

**Stage I courses:** FRENCH 101-162, EUROPEAN 100

**Stage II courses:** FRENCH 200-278

**Stage III courses:** FRENCH 300-378

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- EUROPEAN 100
- FRENCH 200
- FRENCH 300 or 301
- FRENCH 101, 151, 161 may not be included in major

**Minor must include:**

- FRENCH 103 or 200

## Geography

**Stage I courses:** GEOG 101-103

**Stage II courses:** GEOG 201-209

**Stage III courses:** GEOG 302-352

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 6 points from: GEOG 101, 102, 201, 202
- GEOG 204; and
- at least one course from: GEOG 315, 330

**Minor must include:**

- at least 6 points from: GEOG 101, 102, 201, 202

## German

**Stage I courses:** GERMAN 101-120, EUROPEAN 100

**Stage II courses:** GERMAN 201-290, EUROPEAN 205

**Stage III courses:** GERMAN 301-393

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- EUROPEAN 100 and GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120; and
- GERMAN 201 and 301

**Minor must include:**

- GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120; and
- GERMAN 201

## Greek

**Stage I courses:** GREEK 100, 101

**Stage II courses:** GREEK 200-204

**Stage III courses:** GREEK 300-305

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- GREEK 100 and 101; and
- GREEK 200 and 201 and 202; and
- GREEK 300 and 301 and 302

**Minor must include:**

- GREEK 100 and 101

## History

**Stage I courses:** HISTORY 101-150, ASIAN 100

**Stage II courses:** HISTORY 210-266, ANTHRO 204, FRENCH 231, POLITICS 229

**Stage III courses:** HISTORY 300–367, ANTHRO 304, WOMEN 303  
**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

### History and Philosophy of Science and Technology

**Stage I courses:** HPST 100, BIOSCI 100, HISTORY 150, PACIFIC 103, PHIL 152, SCIGEN 101

**Stage II courses:** HPST 200, HISTORY 210, 240, PHIL 200, 250, 260, 261, 263, 264, GEOG 205, 255, SCIGEN 201

**Stage III courses:** HPST 300, ANTHRO 300, HISTORY 361, 367, PHIL 317, 320, 360, 361, 363, 364, SOCIOL 311, GEOG 320, 352

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- 4 points from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201

**Minor must include:**

- 4 points chosen from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201

### Indonesian

**Stage I courses:** INDO 101–130

**Stage II courses:** INDO 201–299

**Stage III courses:** INDO 301–399

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- INDO 230 or 231

### Italian

**Stage I courses:** ITALIAN 106–167, EUROPEAN 100

**Stage II courses:** ITALIAN 200–278

**Stage III courses:** ITALIAN 300–378

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- ITALIAN 107 and EUROPEAN 100; and
- ITALIAN 200 and 201; and
- ITALIAN 300

ITALIAN 106 and 166 may not be included in major

**Minor must include:**

- ITALIAN 107

### Japanese

**Stage I courses:** JAPANESE 130–150, ASIAN 100

**Stage II courses:** JAPANESE 222–278

**Stage III courses:** JAPANESE 307–390

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III.

**Major must include:**

- JAPANESE 150, ASIAN 100; and
- JAPANESE 332 or 339

**Minor must include:**

- JAPANESE 232

### Korean

**Stage I courses:** KOREAN 110–121, ASIAN 100

**Stage II courses:** KOREAN 200–278

**Stage III courses:** KOREAN 300–378, ASIAN 302

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- ASIAN 100
- KOREAN 300 and 301

**Minor must include:**

- KOREAN 100, or 110 and 111

### Latin

**Stage I courses:** LATIN 100, 101

**Stage II courses:** LATIN 200–205

**Stage III courses:** LATIN 300–305

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- LATIN 200, and either 201 or 202; and
- LATIN 300

**Minor must include:**

- LATIN 200

### Latin American Studies

**Stage I courses:** SPANISH 103, 105

**Stage II courses:** LATINAM 200, 201, HISTORY 231, POLITICS 234, SOCIOL 210, SPANISH 205, 211, 213, 216

**Stage III courses:** LATINAM 301, HISTORY 310, POLITICS 332, 334, SPANISH 305, 306, 311–314, ECON 342

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- SPANISH 103
- At least one of LATINAM 201, SPANISH 211, 216 or 306
- At least one of HISTORY 231 or POLITICS 234
- No more than 4 courses in any one discipline, except by permission of the Programme Coordinator

**Minor must include:**

- SPANISH 103
- At least one of LATINAM 201, SPANISH 211, 216 or 306
- At least one of HISTORY 231 or POLITICS 234
- No more than 3 courses in any one discipline, except by permission of the Programme Coordinator

### Linguistics

**Stage I courses:** LINGUIST 100–103

**Stage II courses:** LINGUIST 200–205, ENGLISH 202, EUROPEAN 201

**Stage III courses:** LINGUIST 300–320, ENGLISH 337, EUROPEAN 301

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- LINGUIST 100 or 103; and
- LINGUIST 200 and 201; and
- LINGUIST 300

**Minor must include:**

- LINGUIST 100 or 103

### Linguistics and English Language Teaching

**Stage I courses:** LINGUIST 100, 101, 103

**Stage II courses:** LINGUIST 200–203, 205, LANGTCHG 202

**Stage III courses:** LINGUIST 302–305, 307, LANGTCHG 300–303, 310

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- LINGUIST 100 or 103, and 101; and
- LANGTCHG 202; and
- LANGTCHG 300, 301, and either 302 or 303

### Logic and Computation

**Stage I courses:** COMPSCI 101, 105, LINGUIST 100, 103, MATHS 152, PHIL 101, 105

**Stage II courses:** COMPSCI 220, 225, 230, LINGUIST 200, MATHS 255, PHIL 222, 216 or 223

**Stage III courses:** COMPSCI 320, 350, 360, 366, LINGUIST 300, 302, MATHS 315, 326, 328, PHIL 305, 315, 316 or 323

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- COMPSCI 101, PHIL 101
- COMPSCI 225, PHIL 222

**Minor must include:**

- COMPSCI 101, PHIL 101
- COMPSCI 225, PHIL 222

### Maori Studies

**Stage I courses:** MAORI 101–191, COOKIS 101, 102, POLITICS 107

**Stage II courses:** MAORI 201–292, ANTHRO 207, ARTHIST 205, COOKIS 201, 202, ENGLISH 231, HISTORY 227, POLITICS 221, 229, MGMT 232

**Stage III courses:** MAORI 301–394, ANTHRO 311, COOKIS 301, 302, LINGUIST 306, POLITICS 325, GEOG 321, MGMT 303

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 6 points from Maori language courses

## Mathematics

**Stage I courses:** MATHS 101, 102, 108–162

**Stage II courses:** MATHS 202–270, COMPSCI 225, STATS 210

**Stage III courses:** MATHS 302–320, 326, 328, 332, 333, 340, 347–367, 381–389, STATS 310, 325, 370, 391

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III.

**Major must include:** at least 4 points from MATHS 302–367, 381–389

*Note: some Mathematics courses are NOT available for BA major or minor*

## Music

**Stage I:** MUSIC 100, 102, 103, 109, 144–154, MUSED 160, ANTHRO 103

**Stage II:** MUSIC 201–203, 241–251, 272, MUSED 260, 264, 267, ANTHRO 214, 219, 232, 233, 238, POPMUS 206

**Stage III:** MUSIC 301, 302, 341–358, MUSED 360, 366, 367, ANTHRO 308, 323, 332–334, 343

*(Note: some Music courses are NOT available for BA major or minor)*

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- MUSIC 102, 103, 144; and
- MUSIC 201

Majoring students must participate in School of Music choir or orchestra (points from Orchestra and Choral Ensemble courses may be counted as non-Arts points towards the BA, provided that there are not more than 8 points altogether from non-Arts courses).

**Minor must include:**

- MUSIC 102 or 103; and MUSIC 144

## Pacific Studies

**Stage I courses:** COOKIS 101, 102, PACIFIC 101, 103, 110, SAMOAN 101–103, TONGAN 101–103, ANTHRO 104, HISTORY 104, LINGUIST 102

**Stage II courses:** COOKIS 201, 202, 203, PACIFIC 201, 202, 203, 204, SAMOAN 201, 202, TONGAN 201, 202, ANTHRO 204, 234, 238, ARTHIST 213, 217, EDUC 207, ENGLISH 231, HISTORY 230, MUSIC 273, WOMEN 202

**Stage III courses:** COOKIS 301, 302, PACIFIC 300, SAMOAN 301, 302, TONGAN 301, 302, ANTHRO 304, 306, 308, 316, 325, 326, ARTHIST 307, 317, EDUC 309, ENGLISH 335, GEOG 312, HISTORY 315, LINGUIST 306, WOMEN 303

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least one of ANTHRO 104, LINGUIST 102; and
- at least one language course at Stage I from Cook Islands Maori, Samoan, Tongan

**Minor must include:**

- at least one of ANTHRO 104, LINGUIST 102; and
- at least one language course at Stage I from Cook Islands Maori, Samoan, Tongan

## Philosophy

**Stage I courses:** PHIL 100–152

**Stage II courses:** PHIL 200–266, CLASSICS 240, 250, 260

**Stage III courses:** PHIL 302–365, POLITICS 320, 325, HPST 300

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

## Political Studies

**Stage I courses:** POLITICS 106–121

**Stage II courses:** POLITICS 209–241, PHIL 205, HISTORY 227

**Stage III courses:** POLITICS 312–344, MAORI 330, 335

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

## Psychology

**Stage I courses:** PSYCH 108, 109

**Stage II courses:** PSYCH 201–263

**Stage III courses:** PSYCH 301–364, SPORTSCI 304

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

Students must pass a Stage I Statistics course to major in Psychology

## Russian

**Stage I courses:** RUSSIAN 100–112, EUROPEAN 100

**Stage II courses:** RUSSIAN 200–278

**Stage III courses:** RUSSIAN 310–390

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- EUROPEAN 100
- RUSSIAN 214 or 250
- RUSSIAN 310
- RUSSIAN 311 or 312

RUSSIAN 100 may not be included in major

**Minor must include:**

- RUSSIAN 201

## Social Science for Public Health

**Stage I courses:** COMHLTH 101, 102

**Stage II courses:** COMHLTH 205, SOCSICIPH 200, MPHEALTH 201, ANTHRO 215, 222, GEOG 202, HISTORY 210, POLITICS 221, 222, SOCIOL 201, 220

**Stage III courses:** SOCSICIPH 300, ANTHRO 316, 324, GEOG 305, HISTORY 329, 367, MAORI 335, PHIL 317, POLITICS 336, SOCIOL 310, 317, 320, 321, 333

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- COMHLTH 101, 102; and
- SOCSICIPH 200, COMHLTH 205, MPHEALTH 201; and
- SOCSICIPH 300 and 4 points from ANTHRO 316, 324, GEOG 305, HISTORY 329, 367, PHIL 317, SOCIOL 333

**Minor must include:**

- COMHLTH 101, 102
- SOCSICIPH 200; and
- SOCSICIPH 300

## Sociology

**Stage I courses:** SOCIOL 100–106

**Stage II courses:** SOCIOL 200–225, WOMEN 200

**Stage III courses:** SOCIOL 303–335, SPORTSCI 307

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

## Spanish

**Stage I courses:** SPANISH 103–110, EUROPEAN 100

**Stage II courses:** SPANISH 200–278, LATINAM 201

**Stage III courses:** SPANISH 300–378

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- SPANISH 105 or 110; and EUROPEAN 100; and
- SPANISH 200 and 201; and
- SPANISH 300; and
- At least two of: SPANISH 202–205, 211, 213–216, 222, 301–306, 310–313, 315–318, 350, LATINAM 201

SPANISH 104, 109, 221 may not be included in major

**Minor must include:**

- SPANISH 105 or 110

## Statistics

**Stage I courses:** STATS 101–150, MATHS 162

**Stage II courses:** STATS 201–255

**Stage III courses:** STATS 301–391, MATHS 340

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

*Note: 2 points from Mathematics courses may be included for a BA major or minor in Statistics*

## Theatre Studies

**Stage I courses:** THEATRE 101, CLASSICS 110, DANCE 101, ENGLISH 109, MAORI 190, PACIFIC 110

**Stage II courses:** THEATRE 202, 203, CLASSICS 220, ENGLISH 213,

EUROPEAN 205, FRENCH 243, ITALIAN 231, 234, MAORI 292, MUSIC 240

**Stage III courses:** THEATRE 301, CLASSICS 320, ENGLISH 310, 315, 331, 332, FRENCH 342, 343, MAORI 393

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- At least one of CLASSICS 110, ENGLISH 109, THEATRE 101
- THEATRE 202, 203, 301

**Minor:** At least 12 points including at least 8 points above Stage I

**Minor must include:**

- At least one of CLASSICS 110, ENGLISH 109, THEATRE 101
- THEATRE 202 and 203

## Women's Studies

**Stage I courses:** WOMEN 100, 101, HISTORY 102

**Stage II courses:** WOMEN 200–206, ANTHRO 211, ARTHIST 207, ITALIAN 202, 203, PHIL 213, POLITICS 213, SOCIOL 214, 222

**Stage III courses:** WOMEN 300–307, EDUC 305, ENGLISH 326, FRENCH 329, HISTORY 320, 337, 343, MAORI 360, SOCIOL 314, 324, MGMT 313, 324

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 10 points from courses with the prefix WOMEN, of which 4 points must be at Stage III

**Minor must include:**

- at least 6 points from courses with the prefix WOMEN

Subjects available for minors but not for majors:

## Comparative Literature

**Stage I courses:** COMPLIT 100, CHINESE 124, 125, CLASSICS 110, 130, WOMEN 101

**Stage II courses:** COMPLIT 200–204, CHINESE 221, 222, CLASSICS 230, 220, 220, 230, ENGLISH 230, EUROPEAN 205, 211, 221, ITALIAN 232, KOREAN 230, SOCIOL 211, THEATRE 202, 203, WOMEN 201, 203

**Stage III courses:** COMPLIT 300

**Minor must include:**

- at least 4 points from COMPLIT courses
  - no more than 4 points from other courses with the same subject
- Minor is available only to students taking at least 4 points in courses with a literary content with texts in a language other than English

## Cook Islands Maori

**Stage I courses:** COOKIS 101, 102

**Stage II courses:** COOKIS 201–203

**Stage III courses:** COOKIS 301, 302

## Dance

**Stage I courses:** DANCE 101, 107, POPMUS 106

**Stage II courses:** DANCE 201, 204, 212

**Stage III courses:** DANCE 301, 302, 304, 307

**Minor must include:**

- DANCE 107, 212

## Ethnomusicology

**Stage I courses:** ANTHRO 103, POPMUS 106

**Stage II courses:** ANTHRO 214, 219, 232, 233, 234, 238, 239, POPMUS 206, MUSIC 272, 273

**Stage III courses:** ANTHRO 308, 323, 332–334 and 343–344

**Minor must include:**

- ANTHRO 103 and 219

## Medieval and Early Modern European Studies

**Schedule A Language Acquisition Courses:**

**Stage I courses:** FRENCH 101, 102, 103, GERMAN 101, 102, 104,

GREEK 100, 101, ITALIAN 106, 107, 166, 167, LATIN 100, 101, RUSSIAN 100, 101, SPANISH 104, 105

**Stage II courses:** FRENCH 200, 277, 278, GERMAN 201, 277, 278, GREEK 200, ITALIAN 200, 201, 277, 278, LATIN 200, RUSSIAN 210, 277, 278, SPANISH 200, 201, 277, 278

**Stage III courses:** ENGLISH 342, FRENCH 300, 377, 378, GERMAN 301, 302, 377, 378, 390, GREEK 300, ITALIAN 300, 377, 378, LATIN 300, RUSSIAN 310, 377, 378, SPANISH 300, 377, 378

**Schedule B:**

**Stage I courses:** ARTHIST 101, ENGLISH 100, HISTORY 140

**Stage II courses:** ARTHIST 203, 224, CTHTHEO 250, EUROPEAN 205, ENGLISH 200, 202, 210, 213, HISTORY 215, 219, ITALIAN 209, 210, MUSIC 241, 242, 246, PHIL 204, SPANISH 202

**Stage III courses:** ARTHIST 301, 304, 306, 315, ENGLISH 302, 310, 314, 315, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, EUROPEAN 311, FRENCH 306, GERMAN 330, HISTORY 336, 343, ITALIAN 302, 303, PHIL 302, SPANISH 301, 302

**Minor must include:**

- 4 points from Schedule A
- 8 points from Schedule B, including at least one of: ARTHIST 203, 224, HISTORY 215, 219

## Music Education

**Stage I course:** MUSED 160

**Stage II courses:** MUSED 260, 264, 267

**Stage III courses:** MUSED 360, 366, 367

**Minor must include:**

- MUSED 160 and MUSED 264

## Samoan

**Stage I courses:** SAMOAN 101–103

**Stage II courses:** SAMOAN 201, 202

**Stage III courses:** SAMOAN 301, 302

Courses from the following subjects are also available for the BA, although no major or minor can be taken in these subjects:

## Biological Sciences

**Stage I course:** BIOSCI 100

## Computer Science

**Stage I courses:** COMPSCI 101, 105, 111

## Croatian

**Stage I courses:** CROATIAN 100, 101

## English as a Second Language

**Stage I courses:** ESOL 101, 102

**Stage II courses:** ESOL 200–202, 210

*(Note: available only to students from non-English speaking backgrounds)*

## English Writing

**Stage I courses:** ENGWRIT 101, 111

**European Languages and Literatures**

Stage I course: EUROPEAN 100

Stage II courses: EUROPEAN 200, 201, 205, 211, 221

Stage III courses: EUROPEAN 301, 302, 303, 304, 311

**Hebrew**

Stage I course: BSTHEO 135

**Language Teaching and Learning**

Stage II course: LANGTCHG 202

Stage III courses: LANGTCHG 300–302, 310

**Physics**

Stage I courses: PHYSICS 102, 107

**Polish**

Stage I courses: POLISH 100, 101, 102

Stage II course: POLISH 210

**Tongan**

Stage I courses: TONGAN 101–103

Stage II courses: TONGAN 201, 202

Stage III courses: TONGAN 301, 302

**The Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) – BA(Hons)**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or any other equivalent qualification as approved by Senate or its representative  
*and*
  - b passed the specified prerequisite courses for one of the subjects listed in the schedule below with an average of B– or higher in the 6 points at Stage III  
*and*
  - c approval from the relevant Head of Department or Programme Coordinator.
- 2 A student who has not completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts but who has:
  - a passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points for that degree  
*and*
  - b passed the specified prerequisite courses for one of the subjects listed in the schedule below with an average of B– or higher in the 6 points at Stage III

may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department, enrol for this degree. The remaining courses for the Bachelor of Arts degree must be passed within the first semester of enrolment for the Bachelor of Arts (Honours). The Bachelor of Arts (Honours) degree will not be awarded until the requirements for the Bachelor of Arts have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3
  - a A student enrolling for this degree has to follow a programme for one full-time year or two consecutive part-time years and pass courses with a value of 14 points.
  - b The total enrolment for this degree may not exceed 18 points.
- 4 The requirements for this degree must normally be completed within two years of initial enrolment for the degree.

**Structure and Content**

- 5 In consultation with the relevant Head of Department or Programme Coordinator, a student is to choose at least 14 points as specified for one of the subjects listed in the schedule. With the approval of the Heads of all Departments concerned, up to 6 points from appropriate Master's level courses from other subjects may be included in these 14 points.

**Research Component/Dissertation**

- 6 Where a dissertation is included in the programme:
  - a the dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by Senate or its representative
  - b the dissertation topic must be approved by the relevant Head of Department or Programme Coordinator before enrolment for it
  - c the dissertation must be submitted by:
    - (i) the last day of semester of the second semester following initial enrolment for this degree, if the student is enrolled on a full-time basis  
*or*
    - (ii) the last day of semester of the fourth semester following initial enrolment for this degree, if the student is enrolled on a part-time basis.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First or Second Division.
- b Honours are normally awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999.

---

**Bachelor of Arts (Honours) (BA(Hons)) Schedule**


---

**Ancient History**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Ancient History or Classical Studies, or a major in Greek or Latin plus 12 points in Ancient History or Classical Studies. Students must have passed at least one of ANCHIST 310, 340, GREEK 101, LATIN 101

**Requirement:**

- At least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, and
- Up to 10 points from ANCHIST 700–780

**Anthropology**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Anthropology

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: ANTHRO 700 or 710 or 727 or 731
- 10 points from ANTHRO 700–743, MAORI 731

*or*

- 4 points: ANTHRO 700 or 710 or 727 or 731
- 6 points from ANTHRO 700–743, MAORI 731
- 4 points: ANTHRO 780 Honours Dissertation

**Art History**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Art History

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from ARTHIST 702–722, 793

*or*

- 10 points from ARTHIST 702–722, 793
- 4 points: ARTHIST 790 Honours Dissertation

**Chinese**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Chinese, including CHINESE 301, or 310 and 311

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from CHINESE 700–732

*or*

- 10 points from CHINESE 700–732
- 4 points: CHINESE 780 Honours Dissertation

**Comparative Literature**

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of: Chinese, French, German, Greek, Italian, Japanese, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, or Spanish, and a minor in another of these or Korean. Students will need to satisfy the Head of any Department in which they wish to take Master's level literature courses that they have an adequate language ability for studying such courses

**Requirement:**

At least 14 points from Master's level courses as follows:

- at least 4 points from COMPLIT 701–705, any student who has not taken at least two COMPLIT undergraduate courses will be required to take COMPLIT 705

- at least 4 points from Master's level literature courses in the subject of the student's BA major
- at least 4 points from Master's level literature courses in a subject other than the student's BA major from: Chinese, French, German, Greek, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori, Russian, Spanish

**Drama Studies**

**Prerequisite:** A Bachelor's degree containing advanced level courses in Drama or Theatre

**Requirement:**

14 points from Master's level courses including:

- 4 points: DRAMA 701
- at least 6 points from DRAMA 702–707, 720–721, ENGLISH 706, 709 as approved by the Coordinator of Drama Studies and the Head of the Department of English

**Economics**

**Prerequisite:** 16 points in Economics including at least 6 points at Stage III. Students must have passed the following courses with a grade of at least B– in each: ECON 201, 211, 381 and either 321 or 322

**Requirement:**

- 6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723
- 6 points from ECON 702–783
- 2 points: ECON 789 Research Essay

**Education**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Education

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from EDUC 701–789, PHIL 605, EDPROF 772

*or*

- 8 points from EDUC 701–789, PHIL 605, EDPROF 772
- 6 points: EDUC 785 Honours Dissertation

**Employment Relations and Organization Studies**

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Employment Relations and Organization Studies

**Requirement:**

- 2 points: MGMT 789 Research Essay
  - 2 points from MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
  - 8 points from Organizational Change and Innovation: MGMT 721–724
- or*
- Organization, Culture and Business: MGMT 731–736
  - 2 points from MGMT 714–736

**English**

**Prerequisite:** A major in English

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from ENGLISH 700–768, FTVMS 721

### Film, Television and Media Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Film, Television and Media Studies

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from FTVMS 702–738, 767, ITALIAN 733, POLITICS 732

### French

**Prerequisite:** A major in French

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from FRENCH 700–750

*or*

- 8 points from FRENCH 700–750, EUROPEAN 700
- 6 points: FRENCH 785 Honours Dissertation

### Geography

**Prerequisite:** A major in Geography

**Requirement:**

- 2 points: GEOG 701
- 8 points from GEOG 711–779
- 4 points: GEOG 789 Dissertation

### German

**Prerequisite:** A major in German

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: GERMAN 701
- 10 points from GERMAN 702–727

*or*

- 4 points: GERMAN 701
- 6 points from GERMAN 702–740, EUROPEAN 700
- 4 points: GERMAN 780 Honours Dissertation

### Greek

**Prerequisite:** A major in Greek

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: GREEK 700
- 10 points from GREEK 701–713

### History

**Prerequisite:** A major in History

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 2 points: HISTORY 710
- 12 points from HISTORY 701–761

*or*

- 2 points: HISTORY 710
- 8 points from HISTORY 701–761
- 4 points: HISTORY 780 Honours Dissertation

### Italian

**Prerequisite:** A major in Italian

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: ITALIAN 700
- 10 points from ITALIAN 701–734, EUROPEAN 700

*or*

- 4 points: ITALIAN 700
- 6 points from ITALIAN 701–734, EUROPEAN 700
- 4 points: ITALIAN 780 Honours Dissertation

### Japanese

**Prerequisite:** A major in Japanese

**Requirement:**

- 14 points: JAPANESE 704–751

### Latin

**Prerequisite:** A major in Latin together with GREEK 100 and 101

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: LATIN 700
- 10 points from LATIN 701–713

### Linguistics

**Prerequisite:** A major in Linguistics

**Requirement:**

- 12 points from LINGUIST 707, 720–734, 740–741
- 2 points: LINGUIST 709

### Logic and Computation

**Prerequisite:** A BA major in Logic and Computation

**Requirement:**

- At least 14 points from the following courses, including at least 2 points from COMPSCI courses and at least 2 points from either LOGICOMP or PHIL:
  - COMPSCI 720, 750, 755, 765
  - LINGUIST 721, 724, 725
  - MATHS 713
  - PHIL 736, 737, 738
  - LOGICOMP 701, 702
  - LOGICOMP 780 Honours Dissertation (4 points)

### Maori Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Maori Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from MAORI 700–745

*or*

- 8 points from MAORI 700–745
- 6 points: MAORI 785 Honours Dissertation

### Mathematics

**Prerequisite:** Mathematics 445.231 or 445.252 or (MATHS 253 and 255) or equivalent courses approved by the Head of Department plus at least two of COMPSCI 225, MATHS 260, 270, STATS 201, 210, 255, and at least 8 points in courses at Stage III or higher approved by the Head of Department including at least 6 points at Stage III or higher in Mathematics

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from MATHS 701–794

### Medieval and Early Modern European Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of Art History, Christian Thought and History, Dutch Studies, English, European Studies, French, German, History, Italian, Music, Philosophy, Political Studies, Russian, Spanish

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 2 points: MEDEMS 700; plus
- 12 points from ARTHIST 709, ENGLISH 700, 706, 719, 741, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 754, 765, 768, FRENCH 701, 706, GERMAN 718, 719, HISTORY 736, ITALIAN 706, 710, 711, 720, PHIL 752, 753, RUSSIAN 719, SPANISH 703, 730

*or*

- 2 points: MEDEMS 700; plus
- 8 points from ARTHIST 709, ENGLISH 700, 706, 719, 737, 741, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 754, 765, 768, FRENCH 701, 706, GERMAN 718, 719, HISTORY 736, ITALIAN 706, 710, 711, 720, PHIL 752, 753, RUSSIAN 719, SPANISH 703, 730; plus
- 4 points: MEDEMS 780 Honours Dissertation

### Museums and Cultural Heritage

**Prerequisite:** A major in Museums and Cultural Heritage or in one of Anthropology, Art History, History, Maori Studies or Sociology or, in exceptional cases, such other subject as approved by the Coordinator of Museums and Cultural Heritage

**Requirement:**

- at least 4 points from MUSEUMS 700, ARTHIST 721; plus
- up to 10 points from ANTHRO 715, 716, 723, ARTHIST 703, 707, 712, 713, 719, HISTORY 705, 735, MAORI 741, 745, MUSEUMS 750, 751, 760, 761, SOCIOL 722, 732
- up to 4 points in other courses in one of Anthropology, Art History, History, Maori Studies, or Sociology, if the student's BA major was in that subject.

**Music**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Music including MUSIC 301, at least one of MUSIC 341–344, 346, 347 and at least one of ANTHRO 308 and MUSIC 350

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: MUSIC 750 or ANTHRO 727; and
- 10 points from MUSIC 701, 702, 744–748, 750–753, 757–759, 789, MUSED 701, 702, ANTHRO 727

**Pacific Studies****Prerequisite:***either*

- a a major in Pacific Studies and a minor in one of: Anthropology, Art History, Comparative Literature, Cook Islands Maori, Education, English, History, Linguistics, Maori Studies, Samoan, Sociology, Tongan, Women's Studies;

*or*

- b a major in one of these subjects and a minor in Pacific Studies or its equivalent (ie, at least 12 points, including at least 8 points above Stage I, from courses with a substantial Pacific content).

Competency in a Pacific language equivalent to passes in SAMOAN 102, COOKIS 102, TONGAN 102, or equivalent will be required or may be acquired while the student is enrolled for this programme.

**Requirement:***either*

- 4 points: PACIFIC 700; plus
- 10 points: from PACIFIC 701–704 and other 700-level courses with a Pacific focus from courses listed and approved by the Director, Centre for Pacific Studies and Heads of Departments concerned;

*or*

- 4 points: PACIFIC 700; plus
- 6 points: from PACIFIC 701–704 and other 700-level courses with a Pacific focus from courses listed and approved by the Director, Centre for Pacific Studies and Heads of Departments concerned; plus
- 4 points: PACIFIC 785 Honours Dissertation.

**Courses available:** ANTHRO 706, 716, 720; ARTHIST 707, EDUC 705–707, 710, 712, 719, 722, 724; ENGLISH 717, 736; GEOG 721; HISTORY 701, 731; MAORI 700, 710, 711, SOCIOL 715

**Philosophy**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Philosophy

**Requirement:***either*

- 14 points from PHIL 720–769, POLITICS 723

*or*

- 10 points from PHIL 720–769, POLITICS 723
- 4 points: PHIL 780 Honours Dissertation

**Political Studies**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Political Studies

**Requirement:***either*

- 14 points from POLITICS 703–760

*or*

- 10 points from POLITICS 703–760
- 4 points: POLITICS 780 Honours Dissertation

**Psychology****Prerequisite:***either*

- a 18 points in Psychology including PSYCH 306 and 6 further points at Stage III,

*or*

- b in special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department, 16 points in Psychology, including PSYCH 306 and 4 further points at Stage III

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from PSYCH 701–755
- 4 points: PSYCH 789 Honours Dissertation in Psychology

**Russian**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Russian including RUSSIAN 310, 311, 312 and 313

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from RUSSIAN 710–727

**Sociology**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Sociology including one of 315.312, SOCIOL 320, 321

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from SOCIOL 700–740

**Spanish**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Spanish including at least two advanced literature courses, one of which must be at Stage III

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: SPANISH 700
- 10 points from SPANISH 703–750

**Statistics**

**Prerequisite:** STATS 210 and one of 445.252, MATHS 208, 230, 253 plus 8 points at Stage III or above approved by the Head of Department of Statistics. At least 6 of these 8 points should be from courses in Statistics

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: STATS 730, 782
- 8 points from STATS 708–787, 792–795
- 2 points: STATS 789

**Women's Studies**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Women's Studies

**Requirement:***either*

- 14 points from WOMEN 700–706, ARTHIST 720, COMPLIT 705, DEVELOP 702, ENGLISH 730, 733, 737, 739, 748, 759, FTVMS 735, HISTORY 736, ITALIAN 708, SOCIOL 728, 735; including at least 6 points from courses with the prefix WOMEN

*or*

- 8 points from WOMEN 700–706, ARTHIST 720, COMPLIT 705, DEVELOP 702, ENGLISH 730, 733, 737, 739, 748, 759, FTVMS 735, HISTORY 736, ITALIAN 708, SOCIOL 728, 735; including at least 4 points from courses with the prefix WOMEN; plus
- 6 points: WOMEN 785 Honours Dissertation

## The Degree of Master of Arts – MA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or any other equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate  
and
  - (ii) passed the prerequisite courses for the intended subject as specified in the schedule to these regulations with an average grade of B- or higher in the 6 points at Stage III
 or
  - b completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) in the intended subject, with at least Second Class Honours, First Division, or any other equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate.
- 2 A student who has not completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts but who has:
  - a passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for that degree  
and
  - b passed all the prerequisite courses for the intended subject as specified in the schedule to these regulations  
and
  - c achieved an average grade of B- or higher in the Stage III prerequisite courses
 may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department, enrol for this degree. The remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts must be passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for the Degree of Master of Arts. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Master of Arts will be suspended until they have been completed.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of:
  - a two consecutive full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts or equivalent  
or
  - b one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) or equivalent.
- 4 A student whose application to enrol for this degree on a part-time basis is accepted normally has to follow a programme of:
  - a four consecutive part-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts or equivalent  
or
  - b two consecutive part-time years and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) or equivalent.

### Structure and Content

- 5
  - a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree must choose, in consultation with the relevant Head of Department, courses totalling at least 28 points and meeting the requirements for a subject listed in the schedule to these regulations.
  - b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree must choose, in consultation with the relevant Head of Department, either a thesis or a research portfolio with a value of 14 points, or a thesis with a value of 10 points and courses which total at least 4 points, from Master's level courses listed for a subject in the schedule to these regulations.
  - c The approval of the relevant Head of Department or Programme Coordinator is required for each student's personal programme. Where courses from other subjects are included, these must be approved also by the Head of the other Department.
- 6 Unless otherwise stated in requirements for a subject as listed in the schedule to these regulations:
  - a a student who has to complete 28 points for this degree may include, with the approval of the Heads of all Departments concerned, Master's level courses from other subjects listed in the schedule to these regulations or for other Master's degrees, or courses at Stage III level available for the Bachelor of Arts, provided that:

- (i) the overall programme contains no more than 8 points from courses in other subjects  
and  
(ii) the overall programme contains no more than 4 points from courses at Stage III
- b a student who has to complete 14 points for this degree may include, with the approval of the Heads of all Departments concerned, up to 4 points from Master's level courses from other subjects listed in the schedule or for other Master's degrees.

### Thesis/Dissertation

- 7 a A thesis or dissertation, when included in the programme, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis or dissertation topic has to be approved by the relevant Head of Department before enrolment for it.
- c The thesis or dissertation is to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours as specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Master of Arts were thereby repealed.

---

## Master of Arts (MA) Schedule

---

Subjects available for this degree are:

### Ancient History

**Prerequisite:** A major in Ancient History or Classical Studies, or a major in Greek or Latin plus 12 points in Ancient History or Classical Studies. Students must have passed at least one of ANCHIST 310, 340, GREEK 101, LATIN 101

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 18 points from ANCHIST 700–780, including at least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, 710–713, 730–733, 772, 773; plus
- 10 points: ANCHIST 794 Thesis

*or*

- 22 points from ANCHIST 700–780, including at least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, 710–713, 730–733, 772, 773; plus
- 6 points: ANCHIST 792 Dissertation

*or*

- 24 points from ANCHIST 700–780, including at least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, 710–713, 730–733, 772, 773; plus
- 4 points: ANCHIST 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 14 points from ANCHIST 700–780, including at least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, 710–713, 730–733, 772, 773; plus
- 14 points: ANCHIST 796 Thesis, or
- 14 points: ANCHIST 797 Research Portfolio

### Anthropology

**Prerequisite:** A major in Anthropology

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: ANTHRO 700 or 710 or 727 or 731; plus
- 10 points from ANTHRO 700–743, MAORI 731; plus
- 14 points: ANTHRO 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: ANTHRO 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 4 points: ANTHRO 700 or 710 or 727 or 731; plus
- 18 points from ANTHRO 700–743, MAORI 731; plus
- 6 points: ANTHRO 792 Dissertation

### Art History

**Prerequisite:** A major in Art History

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from ARTHIST 702–722, 793; plus
- 14 points: ARTHIST 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: ARTHIST 795 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 22 points from ARTHIST 702–722, 793; plus
- 6 points: ARTHIST 792 Dissertation

*or*

- 28 points from ARTHIST 702–722, 793

### Asian Studies

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in an Asian language and a minor in Asian Studies, or such Stage II and III courses in Asian or Asia-related fields in other subjects as the respective Heads of Department approve.

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 18 points from courses; plus
- 10 points: ASIAN 794 Thesis

*or*

- 24 points from courses; plus
- 4 points: ASIAN 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 14 points from courses available for the subject; plus
- 14 points: ASIAN 797 Research Portfolio

Courses are to be chosen from those available for the MA in two or three different subjects and should include at least 12 points from courses listed for Chinese, Japanese, or Korean

### Chinese

**Prerequisite:** A major in Chinese, including either CHINESE 301 and 305, or 310 and 311

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: CHINESE 719; plus
- another 14 points from CHINESE 700–732; plus
- 10 points: CHINESE 794 Thesis

or

- 4 points: CHINESE 719; plus
- another 20 points from CHINESE 700–732; plus
- 4 points: CHINESE 790 Dissertation

or

- 4 points: CHINESE 719; plus
- another 10 points from CHINESE 700–732; plus
- 14 points: CHINESE 797 Research Portfolio

### Comparative Literature

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of: Chinese, English, French, German, Greek, Italian, Japanese, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian or Spanish and a minor in another of these or Korean, except that, where English is the major, the second language and literature must also be a major. Students will need to satisfy the Head of any Department in which they wish to take Master's level language or literature courses that they have an adequate language ability for studying such courses

**Requirement:**

At least 28 points from Master's level courses as follows:

- at least 8 points from Master's level courses in the subject of the student's BA major; plus
- at least 6 points from Master's level courses in the subject of the student's second major or minor from: Chinese, English, French, German, Greek, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, Spanish; plus
- at least 10 points from COMPLIT 701–794 including either 792 Dissertation (6 points) or 794 Thesis (10 points)

or

- at least 6 points from Master's level courses in the subject of the student's BA major; plus
- at least 4 points from Master's level courses in the subject of the student's second major or minor from: Chinese, English, French, German, Greek, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, Spanish; plus
- 2 points in Comparative Literature
- 14 points: COMPLIT 797 Research Portfolio

Any student who has not passed at least two COMPLIT undergraduate courses will be required to take COMPLIT 705

### Development Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of the subjects available for the MA in Development Studies or a major with a social science emphasis in Health Social Sciences, Latin American Studies or Women's Studies, or as approved by the Director of Development Studies.

**Requirement:**

either

- 6 points: DEVELOP 700, 701; plus
  - up to 4 points in research methods courses approved by the Director
- plus
- up to 6 points from DEVELOP 702–708 and courses available for Master's degrees in two (or exceptionally, three) of the subjects listed below, including 4 points from the subject of the BA major; plus
  - 14 points: DEVELOP 796 Thesis; or
  - 14 points: DEVELOP 797 Research Portfolio

or

- 6 points: DEVELOP 700, 701; plus
  - up to 4 points in research methods courses approved by the Director
- plus
- up to 14 points from DEVELOP 702–708 and courses available for Master's degrees in two (or exceptionally, three) of the subjects listed below, including 8 points from the subject of the BA major; plus
  - 6 points: DEVELOP 792 Dissertation

**Subjects available:** Anthropology, Asian Studies, Economics, Education, Geography, History, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Maori Studies, Pacific Studies, Political Studies, Sociology. No more than 2 points from Stage III courses, and no more than 8 points from courses in Management and Employment Relations and International Business, may be included for the MA in Development Studies

### Drama Studies

**Prerequisite:** A Bachelor's degree containing advanced level courses in Drama or Theatre

**Requirement:**

28 points approved by the Coordinator of Drama Studies and the Head of Department of English:

either

- 4 points: DRAMA 701
  - at least 16 points from DRAMA 702–707, 720–721, ENGLISH 706, 709
- or
- 4 points: DRAMA 701
  - a minimum of 12 points from DRAMA 702–707, 720–721, ENGLISH 706, 709; plus

- 4 points: DRAMA 790 Dissertation in Drama

or

- 4 points: DRAMA 701
- a minimum of 6 points from DRAMA 702–707, 720, 721, ENGLISH 706, 709; plus
- 10 points: DRAMA 794 Thesis

or

- 14 points from courses available for the major; plus
- 14 points: DRAMA 797 Research Portfolio

### Economics

**Prerequisite:** 16 points in Economics including at least 6 points at Stage III. Students must have passed the following courses with a grade of at least B– in each: ECON 201, 211, 381 and either 321 or 322

**Requirement:**

either

- 6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723; plus
- 8 points from ECON 702–783; plus
- 14 points: ECON 796 Thesis

or

- 6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723; plus
- 18 points from ECON 702–783; plus
- 4 points: ECON 790 Dissertation

### Education

**Prerequisite:** A major in Education

**Requirement:**

either

- 14 points from EDUC 701–789, PHIL 605, EDPROF 772; plus
- 14 points: EDUC 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: EDUC 797 Research Portfolio

or

- 24 points from EDUC 701–789, PHIL 605, EDPROF 772; plus
- 4 points: EDUC 790 Dissertation

### Employment Relations and Organization Studies

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Employment Relations and Organization Studies

**Requirement:**

- 4 points from MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 8 points from:  
Organizational Change and Innovation: MGMT 721–724

or

- Organization, Culture and Business: MGMT 731–737
- 2 points from MGMT 714–736
- 14 points: MGMT 796 Thesis

### English

**Prerequisite:** A major in English

**Requirement:**

either

- 14 points from ENGLISH 700–768, FTVMS 721; plus
- 14 points: ENGLISH 796 Thesis

or

- 14 points from ENGLISH 700–768, FTVMS 721; plus
  - 14 points: ENGLISH 797 Research Portfolio
- or
- 18 points from ENGLISH 700–768, FTVMS 721; plus
  - 10 points: ENGLISH 794 Thesis
- or
- 22 points from ENGLISH 700–768, FTVMS 721; plus
  - 6 points: ENGLISH 792 Dissertation
- or
- 28 points from ENGLISH 700–768, FTVMS 721

### Film, Television and Media Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Film, Television and Media Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from FTVMS 702–738, 767, ITALIAN 733, POLITICS 732; plus
  - 14 points: FTVMS 796 Thesis
- or
- 22 points from FTVMS 702–738, 767, ITALIAN 733, POLITICS 732; plus
  - 6 points: FTVMS 792 Dissertation
- or
- 4 points: FTVMS 703; plus
  - 24 points from FTVMS 702–738, 767, ITALIAN 733, POLITICS 732
- or
- 14 points from courses available for the subject; plus
  - 14 points: FTVMS 797 Research Portfolio

### French

**Prerequisite:** A major in French

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from FRENCH 700–750, EUROPEAN 700; plus
  - 14 points: FRENCH 796 Thesis; or
  - 14 points: FRENCH 797 Research Portfolio
- or
- 22 points from FRENCH 700–750, EUROPEAN 700; plus
  - 6 points: FRENCH 792 Dissertation
- or
- 24 points from FRENCH 700–750, EUROPEAN 700; plus
  - 4 points: FRENCH 790 Dissertation
- or
- 18 points from FRENCH 700–750, EUROPEAN 700; plus
  - 10 points: FRENCH 794 Thesis

### Geography

**Prerequisite:** A major in Geography

**Requirement:**

- 2 points: GEOG 701; plus
  - 12 points from GEOG 711–779; plus
  - 14 points: GEOG 796 Thesis
- Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Geography

### German

**Prerequisite:** A major in German

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 6 points: GERMAN 701, EUROPEAN 700; plus
  - 8 points from GERMAN 702–741; plus
  - 14 points: GERMAN 796 Thesis 2; or
  - 14 points: GERMAN 797 Research Portfolio
- or
- 6 points: GERMAN 701, EUROPEAN 700; plus
  - 12 points from GERMAN 702–741; plus
  - 10 points: GERMAN 794 Thesis 1
- or
- 6 points: GERMAN 701, EUROPEAN 700; plus

- 16 points from GERMAN 702–741; plus
- 6 points: GERMAN 792 Dissertation

### Greek

**Prerequisite:** A major in Greek

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: GREEK 700; plus
  - 20 points from GREEK 701–713, including either 701 or 704; plus
  - 4 points: GREEK 790 Dissertation
- or
- 14 points from GREEK 700–713, including GREEK 700 and 701 or 704
  - 14 points: GREEK 797 Research Portfolio
- Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Greek

### History

**Prerequisite:** A major in History

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 2 points: HISTORY 710; plus
  - 12 points from HISTORY 701–761; plus
  - 14 points: HISTORY 796 Thesis; or
  - 14 points: HISTORY 797 Research Portfolio
- or
- 2 points: HISTORY 710; plus
  - 20 points from HISTORY 701–761; plus
  - 6 points: HISTORY 792 Dissertation
- Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in History

### Italian

**Prerequisite:** A major in Italian

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 6 points: ITALIAN 700, EUROPEAN 700; plus
  - 8 points from ITALIAN 701–734; plus
  - 14 points: ITALIAN 796 Thesis 2; or
  - 14 points: ITALIAN 797 Research Portfolio
- or
- 6 points: ITALIAN 700, EUROPEAN 700; plus
  - 12 points from ITALIAN 701–734; plus
  - 10 points: ITALIAN 794 Thesis 1
- or
- 6 points: ITALIAN 700, EUROPEAN 700; plus
  - 16 points from ITALIAN 701–734; plus
  - 6 points: ITALIAN 792 Dissertation

### Japanese

**Prerequisite:** A major in Japanese

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 2 points: JAPANESE 710 or 720; plus
  - 16 points from JAPANESE 704–751; plus
  - 10 points: JAPANESE 794 Thesis
- or
- 2 points: JAPANESE 710 or 720; plus
  - 22 points from JAPANESE 704–751; plus
  - 4 points: JAPANESE 790 Dissertation
- or
- 14 points from JAPANESE 704–751; plus
  - 14 points: JAPANESE 797 Research Portfolio
- Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Japanese

### Korean

It is not possible to take an MA in Korean alone. However, KOREAN 700, 701, 708, 709, 710, 730 may be taken, with the permission of the relevant Head of Department, as part of an MA in another subject.

## Language Teaching and Learning

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of the following:

- Linguistics and English Language Teaching
- English Language Acquisition and Linguistics
- Linguistics
- A language

Students who are not native speakers of English and who have not had at least two years of secondary or tertiary education with English as the language of instruction will also need a minimum score of 580 TOEFL (paper) or 235 TOEFL (computer), or 6.5 IELTS (academic) or equivalent.

**Requirement:**

For students entering with a BA or equivalent and taking the 28 point MA: *either*

- 24 points from taught courses; plus
- 4 points: LANGTCHG 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 18 points from taught courses; plus
- 10 points LANGTCHG 794 Thesis

*or*

- 11 points: LANGTCHG 796 Thesis

*or*

- 14 points from taught courses; plus
- 14 points: LANGTCHG 797 Research Portfolio

All students taking the 28 point MA must pass 10 points from the following courses before they undertake a thesis, dissertation or research portfolio: LANGTCHG 704, 720, 721 or 714, 722 or 723, and 724

For students entering with a BA(Hons) or equivalent and taking the 14 point MA:

- 2 points: LINGUIST 709
- 2 points: LANGTCHG 720, or alternatively CHINESE 707 or 708, JAPANESE 750 or 751
- 2 points: LANGTCHG 721 or 714
- 2 points: LANGTCHG 722 or 723
- 2 points: LANGTCHG 724
- 4 points: LANGTCHG 790 Dissertation

For students entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching or equivalent and taking the 14 point MA:

*either*

- 10 points from taught courses; plus
- 4 points: LANGTCHG 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 4 points from taught courses; plus
- 10 points: LANGTCHG 794 Thesis

*or*

- 14 points: LANGTCHG 796 Thesis

Taught courses are to be chosen with the approval of the Head of Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics from Master's level courses in Language Teaching, and Master's level courses from a language subject or Linguistics or another relevant subject

## Languages and Literature

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of the subjects listed below, and at least 12 points in another of these including a Stage III language acquisition course (or equivalent language competence)

**Requirement:**

- 14 points in courses available for the MA in one of the subjects listed below; plus
- 14 points in courses available for the MA in a second one of these subjects, or in such courses in combination with COMPLIT 701–794

*or*

- 14 points from courses available for the subject; plus
- 14 points: LANGLIT 797 Research Portfolio

The 28 points for the MA in Languages and Literature may include a Thesis or Dissertation in one of the component subjects. Where a language other than the student's first language is a component of their programme, the appropriate language acquisition course will normally need to be included

**Subjects available:** Chinese, English, French, German, Greek, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, Spanish

## Latin

**Prerequisite:** A major in Latin, together with GREEK 100 and 101

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: LATIN 700; plus
- 20 points from LATIN 701–713, including 701 or 704; plus
- 4 points: LATIN 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 14 points from LATIN 700–713, including LATIN 700 and 701 or 704; plus

- 14 points: LATIN 797 Research Portfolio

Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Latin

## Linguistics

**Prerequisite:** A major in Linguistics

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 12 points from LINGUIST 707, 708, 720–734; plus
- 2 points: LINGUIST 709; plus
- 14 points LINGUIST 796 Thesis

*or*

- 22 points from LINGUIST 707, 708, 720–734
- 2 points LINGUIST 709; plus
- 4 points LINGUIST 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 12 points from courses available for the MA; plus
- 2 points: LINGUIST 709; plus
- 14 points: LINGUIST 797 Research Portfolio

Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Linguistics

## Logic and Computation

**Prerequisite:** A major in Logic and Computation

**Requirement:**

At least 14 points from the following courses, including at least 2 points from COMPSCI courses and at least 2 points from either LOGICOMP or PHIL:

- COMPSCI 720, 750, 755, 765
- LINGUIST 721, 724, 725
- MATHS 713
- PHIL 736, 737, 738
- LOGICOMP 701, 702

*and*

- 14 points: LOGICOMP 796 Thesis

## Maori Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Maori Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from MAORI 700–745, MGMT 771; plus
- 14 points: MAORI 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: MAORI 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 22 points from MAORI 700–745, MGMT 771; plus
- 6 points: MAORI 792 Dissertation

## Mathematics

**Prerequisite:** 445.231; or MATHS 253 and 255; or 445.252; or equivalent courses approved by the Head of Department plus at least two of COMPSCI 225, MATHS 260, 270, STATS 201, 210, 255, and at least 8 points in courses at Stage III or higher approved by the Head of Department, including at least 6 points at Stage III or higher in Mathematics.

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from MATHS 701–794; plus
- 14 points: MATHS 796 Thesis

*or*

- 14 points from MATHS 701–794; plus

- 14 points: MATHS 797 Advanced Studies in Mathematics  
or
- 6 points from project courses MATHS 791–794; plus
- 22 points from MATHS 701–794

### Medieval and Early Modern European Studies

**Prerequisite:** BA(Hons) in Medieval and Early Modern European Studies, or equivalent qualification

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points: MEDEMS 796 Thesis  
or
- 14 points: MEDEMS 797 Research Portfolio

### Museums and Cultural Heritage

**Prerequisite:** A major in Museums and Cultural Heritage or in one of Anthropology, Art History, History, Maori Studies or Sociology or, in exceptional cases, such other subject as approved by the Coordinator of Museums and Cultural Heritage

**Requirement:**

*either*

- at least 4 points from MUSEUMS 700, ARTHIST 721; plus
- up to 10 points from ANTHRO 715, 716, 723, ARTHIST 703, 707, 712, 713, 719, HISTORY 705, 735, MAORI 741, 745, MUSEUMS 750, 751, 760, 761, SOCIOL 722, 732; plus
- up to 4 points in other courses in one of Anthropology, Art History, History, Maori Studies, or Sociology, if the student's BA major was in that subject; plus
- 14 points: MUSEUMS 796 Thesis, or
- 14 points: MUSEUMS 797 Research Portfolio  
or
- at least 4 points from MUSEUMS 700, ARTHIST 721; plus
- up to 18 points from ANTHRO 715, 716, 723, ARTHIST 703, 707, 712, 713, 719, HISTORY 705, 735, MAORI 741, 745, MUSEUMS 750, 751, 760, 761, SOCIOL 722, 732; plus
- up to 4 points in other courses in one of Anthropology, Art History, History, Maori Studies, or Sociology, if the student's BA major was in that subject; plus
- 6 points: MUSEUMS 792 Dissertation

### Music

**Prerequisite:** A major in Music including MUSIC 301, at least one of MUSIC 341–344, 346, 347 and at least one of ANTHRO 308 and MUSIC 350. A pass in ANTHRO 103 is also required. Where necessary a student may be required to satisfy the Head of School of Music of ability to read an approved language other than English

**Requirement:**

- 4 points from MUSIC 750 or ANTHRO 727; plus
- 10 points from MUSIC 701, 702, 744–748, 750–753, 757–759, 789, MUSED 701, 702, ANTHRO 727; plus
- 14 points from MUSIC 796 Thesis or MUSIC 797 Research Portfolio

### Pacific Studies

**Prerequisite:**

*either*

a a major in Pacific Studies in the BA and a minor in one of: Anthropology, Art History, Comparative Literature, Cook Islands Maori, Education, English, History, Linguistics, Maori Studies, Samoan, Sociology, Tongan, Women's Studies;

*or*

b a major in one of these subjects and a minor in Pacific Studies or its equivalent (i.e. at least 12 points, including at least 8 points above Stage I, from courses with a substantial Pacific content)

Competence in a Pacific language is also a prerequisite (e.g. a pass in SAMOAN 102, COOKIS 102, TONGAN 102, or equivalent). Language courses may be taken concurrently with the MA programme to meet this requirement

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: PACIFIC 700; plus
  - at least 4 points from Master's level courses in the subject of the student's BA major, or in the subject of the BA minor if the major was Pacific Studies; plus
  - up to 6 points from PACIFIC 701–704, and appropriate Master's level courses in one of the subjects listed below; plus
  - 14 points: PACIFIC 796 Thesis; or
  - 14 points: PACIFIC 797 Research Portfolio  
or
  - 4 points: PACIFIC 700; plus
  - at least 4 points from Master's level courses in the subject of the student's BA major, or in the subject of the BA minor if the major was Pacific Studies; plus
  - up to 14 points from PACIFIC 701–704, and appropriate Master's level courses in one of the subjects listed below; plus
  - 6 points: PACIFIC 792 Dissertation
- Subjects available:** Anthropology, Art History, Comparative Literature, Development Studies, Education, English, French, Geography, History, Language Teaching, Linguistics, Maori Studies, Sociology, Women's Studies

### Philosophy

**Prerequisite:** A major in Philosophy

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from PHIL 720–769, POLITICS 723; plus
- 14 points: PHIL 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: PHIL 797 Research Portfolio  
or
- 22 points from PHIL 720–769, POLITICS 723; plus
- 6 points: PHIL 792 Dissertation  
or
- 28 points from PHIL 720–769, POLITICS 723

### Political Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Political Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from POLITICS 703–760; plus
- 14 points: POLITICS 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: POLITICS 797 Research Portfolio  
or
- 24 points from POLITICS 703–760; plus
- 4 points: POLITICS 790 Dissertation  
or
- 28 points from POLITICS 703–760

### Psychology

**Prerequisite:** Either (a) 18 points in Psychology including PSYCH 306 and 6 further points at Stage III, or (b) in special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department, 16 points in Psychology, including PSYCH 306 and 4 further points at Stage III

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from PSYCH 701–755
- 14 points: PSYCH 796 Thesis

### Russian

**Prerequisite:** A major in Russian including RUSSIAN 310, 311, and 312 or 313

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: RUSSIAN 710; plus
- 2 points: EUROPEAN 700
- 4 points from RUSSIAN 711–715; plus
- 4 points from RUSSIAN 719–727; plus
- 14 points: RUSSIAN 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: RUSSIAN 797 Research Portfolio  
or
- 4 points: RUSSIAN 710; plus

- 2 points: EUROPEAN 700
- 18 points from RUSSIAN 711–727, including at least 4 points from 711–715 and at least 4 points from 719–727; plus
- 4 points: RUSSIAN 790 Dissertation
- or
- 4 points: RUSSIAN 710; plus
- 2 points: EUROPEAN 700
- 22 points from RUSSIAN 711–727, including at least 4 points from 711–715 and at least 4 points from 719–727

### Sociology

**Prerequisite:** A major in Sociology including one of 315.312, SOCIOL 320, 321

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from SOCIOL 700–740; plus
- 14 points: SOCIOL 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: SOCIOL 797 Research Portfolio
- or
- 22 points from SOCIOL 700–740; plus
- 6 points: SOCIOL 792 Dissertation
- or
- 28 points from SOCIOL 700–740

### Spanish

**Prerequisite:** A major in Spanish including at least two advanced literature courses, one of which must be at Stage III

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 6 points: SPANISH 700, EUROPEAN 700; plus
- 8 points from SPANISH 703–735; plus
- 14 points: SPANISH 796 Thesis 1; or
- 14 points: SPANISH 797 Research Portfolio
- or
- 6 points: SPANISH 700, EUROPEAN 700; plus
- 12 points from SPANISH 703–735; plus
- 10 points: SPANISH 794 Thesis 2
- or
- 6 points: SPANISH 700, EUROPEAN 700; plus

- 16 points from SPANISH 703–735; plus
- 6 points: SPANISH 792 Dissertation

### Statistics

**Prerequisite:** STATS 210 and one of 445.252, MATHS 208, 230, 253 plus 8 points at Stage III or above approved by the Head of Department of Statistics. At least 6 of these 8 points should be from courses in Statistics

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: STATS 730, 782; plus
- 10 points from STATS 708–787, 792–795; plus
- 14 points: STATS 796 Thesis
- or
- 4 points: STATS 730, 782; plus
- 24 points from STATS 708–787, 790–795 including at least one of STATS 790 Master's Dissertation 1 (4 points) or STATS 791 Master's Dissertation 2 (6 points)

### Translation Studies

It is not possible to take an MA in Translation Studies alone. However, courses TRANSLAT 702, 703 may be taken, with the permission of the relevant Head of Department, as part of an MA in a language subject

### Women's Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Women's Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from WOMEN 700–706, ARTHIST 720, COMPLIT 705, DEVELOP 702, ENGLISH 730, 733, 737, 739, 748, 759, FTVMS 735, HISTORY 736, ITALIAN 708, SOCIOL 728, 735; including at least 6 points from courses with the prefix WOMEN; plus
- 14 points: WOMEN 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: WOMEN 797 Research Portfolio
- or
- 22 points from WOMEN 700–706, ARTHIST 720, COMPLIT 705, DEVELOP 702, ENGLISH 730, 733, 737, 739, 748, 759, FTVMS 735, HISTORY 736, ITALIAN 708, SOCIOL 728, 735; including at least 8 points from courses with the prefix WOMEN; plus
- 6 points: WOMEN 792 Dissertation

## The Degree of Master of Literature – MLitt

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 A student for the Degree of Master of Literature needs to have completed the requirements for a Master's degree with First or Second Class Honours, or, in exceptional cases, one of the other preliminary qualifications that would be required for enrolment for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and prepare and present a thesis (14 points).
- b The requirements for this degree are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment for a full-time student, and such period as may be approved by the Senate or its representative for a part-time student, unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme for this degree consists of the preparation and presentation of a thesis, based on original research in one of the subjects available in the Faculty of Arts.

### Thesis

- 4 a The research topic is to be approved by the relevant Head of Department and by the Senate or its representative.
- b The Senate or its representative is to appoint a supervisor or supervisors for the thesis, on the recommendation of the Head of Department.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Distinction**

- 6 This degree may be awarded with or without Distinction, according to the standard of each student's work, on the recommendation of the Senate or its representative.

**Reassignment of Thesis**

- 7 Regardless of any regulation providing otherwise, a thesis rejected for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy may not be submitted for this degree.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1988 regulations for the Degree of Master of Literature were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds**

*The Master of Professional Studies is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**The Degree of Master of Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages – MTESOL**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for
    - (i) a degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) or equivalent in a relevant subject
    - or
    - (ii) a degree of Bachelor of Arts with a major in a relevant subject and a DipTESOL
  - and
  - b passed a course in the description of the English language such as is available in LANGTCHG 740
  - and
  - c had two years of relevant teaching experience
  - and
  - d achieved the standard of IELTS (Academic) 6.5 or equivalent; students who have not completed two years of full-time study in an English medium institution will be required to provide an IELTS score.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two consecutive full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- 3 The requirements for this degree are to be completed within 12 months for a student enrolled full-time or 24 months if enrolled part-time, unless the Senate or its representative extends these periods.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 A student enrolled for this degree must complete the following programme:
  - a For candidates without a DipTESOL or equivalent postgraduate qualification:
    - 8 points from LANGTCHG 741–744
    - 6 additional points from LANGTCHG 745–753
  - or
  - b For candidates with a DipTESOL or equivalent postgraduate qualification:
    - 6 points from LANGTCHG 742–744
    - 8 additional points from LANGTCHG 745–753
  - c Permission to prepare and present a dissertation LANGTCHG 753 must be given by the Head of Department.
  - d The Head of Department may approve the substitution of any other graduate level courses, or their equivalent, for up to 6 points from equivalent courses offered at Victoria University of Wellington.

**Honours**

- 5 This degree may be awarded with Honours as specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003.

**Diploma in Professional Ethics – DipProfEthics**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this diploma a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for a degree in New Zealand
  - or
  - b acquired at least five years of experience in professional practice deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 36 months of the initial enrolment, unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of four parts, Part I, Part II, Part III and Part IV, as follows:
- a **Part I**
    - (i) 2 points: PHIL 102 Introduction to Ethics
    - (ii) A student who has already passed PHIL 102 or an equivalent course may be credited with Part I of the programme for this diploma.
  - b **Part II** consists of at least 6 points:
    - (i) at least 4 points from:
      - PHIL 250 Environmental Ethics
      - PHIL 317 Ethical Issues in Biotechnology
      - PHIL 602 Business Ethics
      - PHIL 603 Environmental Ethics
      - PHIL 605 Ethics and Education
      - PHIL 606 Special Topic
      - PHIL 607 Special Topic
      - PHIL 764 Medical Ethics
      - LAW 440 Advanced Legal Ethics
      - MGMT 331 Business Ethics
    - (ii) no more than 2 points from: PHIL 205, 210, 211, 213, 217, 304, 310, 318, POLITICS 320
    - (iii) A student who has already passed a course the same as or equivalent to any course listed for Regulation 3b(ii) may be credited with up to 2 points towards Part II for this diploma.
    - (iv) With the specific approval of the Diploma Coordinator and the Dean of Arts a student may be permitted to substitute for one of the courses required for this part any other course offered by this University and deemed relevant.
  - c **Part III**  
2 points: PHIL 610 Professional Ethics Seminar
  - d **Part IV**
    - (i) 4 points: PHIL 620 Professional Ethics Project
    - (ii) The project shall be on a topic concerning a particular ethical problem (or set of problems) as related to some professional context.
    - (iii) The student shall submit the project to the Coordinator no later than 12 weeks after the last day of classes of their final semester for this Diploma.
- 4 The programme of each student will require the specific approval of the Diploma Coordinator and the Dean of Faculty of Arts.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1992 regulations for the Diploma in Professional Ethics were thereby repealed.

**Graduate Diploma in Arts – GradDipArts**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a Bachelor of Arts  
*or*
  - b completed the requirements for any other degree approved by the Senate or its representative  
*or*
  - c attained a level of competence approved by Senate or its representative as:
    - (i) equivalent to that specified in a or b above, and
    - (ii) appropriate for the proposed programme for this diploma.
- 2 a With the approval of the Senate or its representative, a student who needs only 2 points to complete the Bachelor of Arts may enrol concurrently for this diploma and those remaining points  
*and*
- b the diploma will not be awarded until such qualifying degree is completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme for this diploma must include:
  - a 14 points at Stage II or above, including at least 10 points at Stage III or above from courses listed in the schedule to either the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Master of Arts.
  - b The programme for this diploma may include a Dissertation in a subject for which the student is approved by the Head of Department as suitably qualified.
- 5 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Departments and also of the Dean of Faculty of Arts.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000. The 1999 regulations for the Graduate Diploma in Arts were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Arts – PGDipArts**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree at a university in New Zealand  
*and*
  - (ii) passed the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject for the postgraduate diploma  
*or*
  - b attained a level of competence recognized by Senate or its representative as
    - (i) equivalent to that specified in Regulation 1a above, and
    - (ii) appropriate for the proposed programme for this diploma.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 a A student's programme for this diploma must include:
  - 14 points in a subject available for the Master of Arts for which the student has passed the prerequisite courses.
  - b The programme for this diploma may include a dissertation in the major subject.
- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Departments and also the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies) of Faculty of Arts.

**Distinction**

- 5 a This diploma may be awarded with Distinction or Merit, where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b Distinction or Merit is normally awarded only if the requirements for this diploma are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000. The 1999 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Arts were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching – PGDipLT**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - both
    - a (i) completed the requirements for any degree
    - or
    - (ii) produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative of adequate training and/or experience to undertake the proposed programme
  - and
    - b had at least two years of teaching experience.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma must pass courses to the value of 14 points, as follows:
  - a **Core courses** (10 points):
    - LANGTCHG 720 Language Analysis for Teachers
    - LANGTCHG 721 Discourse Analysis for Teachers
    - LANGTCHG 722 Learner Language
    - LANGTCHG 724 Curriculum Development for Language Teaching
    - LANGTCHG 727 Action Research for Language Teachers
  - b 4 points selected from master's level courses in Language Teaching and Learning, or from other relevant subjects with the approval of the Head of the Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics and of the Head of the other Department(s) concerned.

**Distinction**

- 4 a This diploma may be awarded with Distinction or Merit, where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b Distinction or Merit is normally awarded only if the requirements for this diploma are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000. The 1996 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Translation Studies – PGDipTranslationStud**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree as approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - (ii) produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative of appropriate academic or professional preparation, equivalent to a degree, to undertake the proposed programme
- and
- b competence in one of the languages offered for the Diploma equivalent to at least the level of a B+ grade in a language course at Stage III or above
- and
- c for students from non-English speaking backgrounds, proficiency in English to at least the standard of 7 IELTS or equivalent.
- 2 Admission to the programme for this diploma requires the approval of the Coordinating Committee and is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative. An interview and written aptitude test may be required.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma must follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- 4 The requirements are to be completed within 12 months for a student enrolled full-time or 24 months otherwise, unless the Senate or its representative extends these periods.

**Structure and Content**

- 5 The programme for this diploma consists of:
- a **Core courses** (6 points):
    - 2 points: TRANSLAT 702 Theory and Methodology of Translation
    - 2 points: TRANSLAT 703 Issues in Translation
    - 2 points: TRANSLAT 710 Research Tools and Professional Issues
  - and
  - b **Elective courses** (8 points):
    - At least 4 points from Master's level language acquisition courses in one of the following subjects: Chinese, French, German, Greek, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, Spanish.

*Note: With the approval of the Coordinating Committee, Special Language Studies Master's level courses (for language study overseas) may be substituted for points from language acquisition courses.*

and at least 4 points from:

- CHINESE 725 Advanced Translation Practice
- FRENCH 720 Advanced French Translation
- GERMAN 740 Advanced German Translation Practice
- GREEK 700 Unprepared Greek Translation
- ITALIAN 702 Advanced Italian Translation Practice
- JAPANESE 705 Advanced Japanese Translation Practice
- LATIN 700 Unprepared Latin Translation
- MAORI 712 Whakareo Ke: Translation of Maori Literature
- RUSSIAN 732 Advanced Russian Translation Practice
- SPANISH 723 Advanced Spanish Translation Practice
- SPANISH 726 Advanced Literary Translation
- TRANSLAT 704 Contextual Studies in Law, Medicine and Business
- TRANSLAT 707 Advanced (Language) Translation Practice
- TRANSLAT 721 Special Topic in Translation
- TRANSLAT 722 Special Topic in Translation

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2000 regulations for the Graduate Diploma in Translation Studies were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Certificate in Advanced Interpreting – PGCertAdvInterp**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree or equivalent combination of tertiary study and professional qualifications and/or experience as approved by the Senate or its representative.
  - b competence in English and one of the languages available for study for this postgraduate certificate, to at least the following levels:
    - (i) IELTS score of 7.5 in the oral band for non-native speakers of English
    - (ii) for languages other than English, oral and written competency equivalent to at least the level of advanced undergraduate courses.
- 2 Admission to this postgraduate certificate is at the discretion of Senate or its representative and will require an interview in both languages and an aptitude test.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 a A student enrolled for this postgraduate certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.
- b The requirements for this postgraduate certificate are to be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends the period.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 a The programme consists of:  
TRANSLAT 601 Theory, Ethics and Techniques of Interpreting  
TRANSLAT 602 Contextual Studies in Law, Medicine and Business  
TRANSLAT 605 Advanced Interpreting Practice
- b The languages available for study for this postgraduate certificate are:  
French, German, Italian.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

**Certificate in Arts – CertArts**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for the Certificate in Arts has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points from subjects available for the BA.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 The programme is to consist of 8 points from courses in no more than two subjects listed in the Bachelor of Arts Schedule at Stage I or Stages I and II.

**Credit**

- 3 All points passed for the Undergraduate Certificate in Arts may be credited to the BA.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

## Regulations – Business and Economics

The Degree of Bachelor of Commerce – BCom	76
Bachelor of Commerce (BCom) Schedule	77
The Degree of Bachelor of Business and Information Management – BBIM	78
Bachelor of Business and Information Management (BBIM) Schedule	79
The Degree of Bachelor of Property – BProp	79
The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech	80
The Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) – BCom(Hons)	80
Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) (BCom(Hons)) Schedule	81
The Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours) – BProp(Hons)	82
The Degree of Master of Commerce – MCom	83
Master of Commerce (MCom) Schedule	84
The Degree of Master of Business Administration – MBA	85
The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt	86
The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt	86
The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt	86
The Degree of Master of Management – MMgt	86
The Degree of Master of Commercial Law – MComLaw	87
The Degree of Master of International Business – MintBus	87
The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR	88
The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds	88
The Degree of Master of Property – MProp	88
The Degree of Master of Taxation Studies – MTaxS	90
Graduate Diploma in Commerce – GradDipCom	91
Graduate Diploma in Operations Research – GradDipOR	92
Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management – PGDipArtsMgt	92
Postgraduate Diploma in Business – PGDipBus	92
Postgraduate Diploma in Business (PGDipBus) Schedule	93
Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce – PGDipCom	95
Postgraduate Diploma in Property – PGDipProp	95
Postgraduate Certificate in Business – PGCertBus	96
Postgraduate Certificate in Business (PGCertBus) Schedule	97

# REGULATIONS – BUSINESS AND ECONOMICS

## The Degree of Bachelor of Commerce – BCom

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 2 Of the 42 points required for this degree, a student must pass:
  - a at least 34 points in subjects listed in the BCom Schedule
  - b at least 22 points in courses above Stage I
  - c courses in a minimum of three subjects
  - d one or more majors, including at least 6 points at Stage III in each major, selected from the majors listed in the BCom Schedule.
- 3 A student may include up to 8 points from other programmes offered at this University.
- 4 The BCom programme consists of Part I and Part II. Students must pass or be concurrently enrolled in Part I courses before taking Part II courses for this degree.
  - a **Part I**
    - (i) At least 14 points from the following courses unless direct entry has been granted:
      - 2 points: ACCTG 101 Accounting Information
      - 2 points: COMLAW 101 Law, Commerce and Government
      - 2 points: ECON 101 Microeconomics
      - 2 points: ECON 111 Macroeconomics
      - 2 points: MGMT 101 Organization and Management
      - 4 points from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
    - (ii) A student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of those courses listed above in regulation 4a(i) with the permission of the Senate or its representative.
  - b **Part II**  
A further 28 points comprising:
    - (i) at least 22 points above Stage I
    - (ii) at least one major as specified in the BCom Schedule.

### Conjoint Degrees

- 5 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

### Special Cases

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit a suitably qualified student to enrol directly in a Stage II course(s). If the student fails the Stage II course(s) but is certified by the examiner as having reached the standard of a pass at Stage I, the student may be credited with the appropriate Stage I course(s).

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce were thereby repealed.

---

**Bachelor of Commerce (BCom) Schedule**


---

**Courses available for BCom:**
**Accounting**

ACCTG 101-102  
 ACCTG 211-222  
 ACCTG 311-331, 371, 381, 382

**Commercial Law**

COMLAW 101  
 COMLAW 201-208  
 COMLAW 301-321

**Computer Science**

COMPSCI 101, 105  
 COMPSCI 280  
 COMPSCI 340

**Economics**

ECON 101-111  
 ECON 201-273  
 ECON 301-381

**Finance**

FINANCE 251-261  
 FINANCE 351-362, 383, 384

**Information Systems**

INFOSYS 110  
 INFOSYS 220-226, COMPSCI 280  
 INFOSYS 320-332, 338-341

**International Business**

INTBUS 202-211  
 INTBUS 301-312

**Management and Employment Relations**

MGMT 101  
 MGMT 201-232  
 MGMT 301-340, PSYCH 312

**Marketing**

MKTG 201-202  
 MKTG 301-314

**Mathematics**

MATHS 108, 208  
 plus any other 2 point Mathematics course at Stage I, II and III

**Operations Management**

OPSMGT 255-258, STATS 255  
 INFOSYS 321, OPSMGT 370-383

**Operations Research**

OPSRES 385-393, STATS 320, 391

**Psychology**

PSYCH 312

**Statistics**

STATS 108, 208, 255, 320, 391  
 plus any other 2 point Statistics course at Stage I, II and III

---

**BCom Majors:**
**Accounting**

- 2 points: ACCTG 102
- at least 4 points from ACCTG 211, 212, 221, 222
- at least 6 points from ACCTG 311, 312, 321, 323, 331, 371, 382, COMLAW 301

**Asian Business Studies**

- 4 points from CHINESE 100 and 101; or JAPANESE 130 and 131; or INDO 101 and 102; or KOREAN 111 or alternatives approved by the Senate or its representative
- 4 points: ECON 343, INTBUS 312
- at least 2 points from COMLAW 307, ECON 341, 352, GEOG 312, INTBUS 304

**Commercial Law**

- at least 4 points from COMLAW 201-208
- at least 6 points from COMLAW 301-321, LAW 419

**Economics**

- 4 points: ECON 201, 211
- at least 8 points including at least 6 points at Stage III from ECON 202, 204, 205, 212, 221-273, 301-381

**Electronic Commerce**

- 2 points: OPSMGT 258
- 4 points from ECON 204, INFOSYS 225, 226
- at least 6 points from COMLAW 313 or 320, MGMT 340, MKTG 314, OPSMGT 373

**Finance**

- 2 points: ACCTG 102
- 6 points: FINANCE 251, 261, MATHS 208
- at least 6 points from ACCTG 371, ECON 352, FINANCE 351, 361, 362, 383, 384

**Information Systems**

- 2 points COMPSCI 101
- 8 points COMPSCI 280, INFOSYS 220, 222, 320
- At least 4 points (or 6 points if INFOSYS 340 is selected) from COMLAW 302, INFOSYS 321, 323, 327-330, 338-341

**International Business**

- 6 points: INTBUS 202, 210, 211
- at least 4 points from INTBUS 301-304
- at least 2 points from INTBUS 310-312

**International Trade**

- 8 points: ECON 201, INTBUS 202, 210, 211
- 4 points: ECON 341, INTBUS 304
- at least 2 points from ECON 342, 343, 352, COMLAW 307, 312

**Law and Economics**

- 8 points: COMLAW 203, ECON 201, 303, LAW 419
- at least 2 points from ECON 301, 304, COMLAW 305, 310

### Management and Employment Relations

- at least 4 points from MGMT 201–232
- at least 6 points (or 8 points if MGMT 310 selected) from ECON 302, INTBUS 303, MGMT 301–340, PSYCH 312

### Marketing

- 10 points: MKTG 201, 202, 301, 303, STATS 208
- at least 2 points from MKTG 302, 305–307, 311–314

### Operations Management

- 6 points STATS 255, OPSMGT 255, 258
- 2 points OPSMGT 370
- at least 4 points (or 6 points if OPSMGT 375 is selected) from INFOSYS 321, OPSMGT 371–373, 375, 382, 383, OPSRES 385, 392

### Operations Research

- 2 points: COMPSCI 101
- 2 points: INFOSYS 222
- 4 points: OPSMGT 255, STATS 255
- 2 points from STATS 391, OPSRES 392
- 2 points from STATS 320, OPSRES 385
- at least 2 points (or 4 points if OPSMGT 375 selected) from OPSMGT 370, 371, 375, 382, 383

### Taxation

- 8 points: COMLAW 202, 203, 301, 311
- at least 2 points from ACCTG 311, ECON 361

## The Degree of Bachelor of Business and Information Management – BBIM

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Duration and Total Points Value

- I A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 2 The programme consists of Part I and Part II. Students must pass or be concurrently enrolled in Part I courses before taking Part II courses for this degree.

#### a Part I

16 points from the following courses unless direct entry has been granted:

- 2 points: ACCTG 191
- 2 points: COMLAW 191
- 2 points: ECON 191
- 4 points: INFOMGMT 191, 192
- 4 points: MGMT 191, 192
- 2 points: STATS 191

#### b Part II

26 points from one of the following options:

*either*

- 12 points: Information Management major
- 12 points: Accounting major or Marketing major or Human Resource Management major
- 2 points: MGMT 291

*or*

- 12 points: Accounting major or Marketing major or Human Resource Management major
- 6 points: INFOMGMT 291, 292, 391
- 2 points from INFOMGMT 293–295
- 2 points: MGMT 291
- 4 points: Electives (chosen from other courses in the BBIM schedule)

### Special Cases

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit a suitably qualified student to enrol directly in a Stage II course(s). If the student fails the Stage II course(s) but is certified by the examiner as having reached the standard of a pass at Stage I, the student may be credited with the appropriate Stage I course(s).

### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

---

**Bachelor of Business and Information Management (BBIM) Schedule**


---

**Courses available for BBIM:**

<b>Accounting</b> ACCTG 191–192 ACCTG 291–292 ACCTG 391–394	INFOMGMT 291–295 INFOMGMT 391–393
<b>Commercial Law</b> COMLAW 191 COMLAW 291, 292 COMLAW 391	<b>Management and Employment Relations</b> MGMT 191 MGMT 291–294 MGMT 391–395
<b>Economics</b> ECON 191	<b>Marketing</b> MKTG 291–293 MKTG 391–395
<b>Information Management</b> INFOMGMT 191–192	<b>Statistics</b> STATS 191

**BBIM Majors:**

<b>Accounting</b> 2 points: ACCTG 192 4 points: ACCTG 291, 292 6 points: ACCTG 391–393	<b>Marketing</b> 6 points: MKTG 291–293 6 points: MKTG 391–393
<b>Information Management</b> 4 points: INFOMGMT 291, 292 2 points: INFOMGMT 293–295 6 points: INFOMGMT 391–393	<b>Management and Employment Relations</b> 6 points: MGMT 292–294 6 points: MGMT 391–393

---

**The Degree of Bachelor of Property – BProp**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a A student must pass each of Parts I, II and III as follows:

**Part I**

PROPERTY 102 Introduction to Property  
PROPERTY 141 Construction  
STATS 108 Statistics for Commerce  
ACCTG 101 Accounting Information  
COMLAW 101 Law, Commerce and Government  
ECON 101 Microeconomics  
ECON 111 Macroeconomics

**Part II**

PROPERTY 211 Valuation  
PROPERTY 221 Property Marketing  
PROPERTY 231 Property Management  
PROPERTY 241 Land Use Planning and Controls  
PROPERTY 251 Property Finance  
PROPERTY 261 Property Economics  
PROPERTY 271 Property Law

**Part III**

14 points to be selected from the following:  
PROPERTY 311 Advanced Valuation  
PROPERTY 312 Plant and Machinery Valuation

PROPERTY 321 Advanced Property Marketing  
 PROPERTY 331 Advanced Property Management  
 PROPERTY 333 Facilities Management  
 PROPERTY 342 Property Development  
 PROPERTY 344 Advanced Construction  
 PROPERTY 351 Advanced Property Finance and Investment  
 PROPERTY 363 Property Research Methods  
 PROPERTY 371 Property Project  
 PROPERTY 372 Applied Valuation Project  
 PROPERTY 373 Advanced Property Law  
 PROPERTY 381 Building Economics  
 PROPERTY 382 Maori Land Issues  
 PROPERTY 383 Special Topic  
 PROPERTY 384 Special Topic

- b A student will not normally be permitted to enrol for Part II unless Part I has been completed, or to enrol for Part III unless Part II has been completed. However, a student who has failed to pass one of those Parts in its entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that Part together with a course or courses towards the next Part.

#### Practical Requirements

- 3 A student for this degree must participate in skills workshops as required by, and to the satisfaction of, the Head of Department of Property. A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Head of Department of Property confirmation that the student has complied with this requirement.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1993 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Property were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech

*The Degree of Bachelor of Technology is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## The Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) – BCom(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 a In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or an equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate or its representative.  
 b A student is to have passed the prerequisites for one of the subjects listed in Regulation 4 below.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolling for this degree has to follow a programme of one full-time year or two consecutive part-time years and pass courses to a value of 14 points.  
 b The total enrolment for this degree may not exceed 18 points.  
 3 The requirements for this degree must normally be completed within two years of initial enrolment for the degree.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 a A student for this degree needs to pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points from the subjects listed in the schedule to these regulations.

- b On the recommendation of the relevant Heads of Departments and with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Business and Economics, a student for this degree may take courses with a total value of up to 4 points from courses prescribed for another subject for a Master's degree provided that such courses are related to the student's research interests.

### Dissertation

- 5 A dissertation must be submitted within four weeks after the end of the final semester in which the student is enrolled for this degree.

### Enrolment for Two Programmes

- 6 This degree may not be studied at the same time as another programme, unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Award of Honours

- 8 a This degree may be awarded only where a student's average grade for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours), is sufficiently high to deserve Honours.
- b Should a student fail to qualify for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours), the Senate or its representative may recommend the reassignment of points towards the Degree of Master of Commerce, Graduate Diploma in Commerce or the Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce.

### Classes of Honours

- 9 Where the standard specified in Regulation 8a is achieved, Honours will be awarded in either of two classes: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

### Withdrawal

- 10 A student may withdraw from enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) and apply to have points reassigned to the Master of Commerce, Graduate Diploma in Commerce or the Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce. Such points may be reassigned at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

### Commencement

- 11 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 2000 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) were thereby repealed.

---

## Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) (BCom(Hons)) Schedule

---

### Accounting

**Prerequisite:** MATHS 208 or STATS 208 or equivalent courses as approved by the Head of Department and a major in Accounting  
6 points: ACCTG 701, 702, 789 Research Essay  
at least 4 points from ACCTG 711-784  
up to 4 points from FINANCE 751-785

4 points: INFOSYS 750, 789 Research Essay  
4 points: INFOSYS 720, 751  
at least 6 points from INFOSYS 722, 724-740

### Economics

**Prerequisite:** 16 points in Economics including at least 6 points at Stage III and with a pass of at least B in ECON 201, 211, 221, 381, and either 321 or 322  
2 points: ECON 789 Research Essay  
6 points: ECON 701, 711, and either 721 or 723  
6 points from ECON 702-783

### International Business

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in International Business or equivalent  
4 points: INTBUS 707, 789 Research Essay  
10 points from INTBUS 701-706, 711, 712

### Finance

**Prerequisite:** MATHS 208 or STATS 208 or equivalent courses as approved by the Head of Department and a major in Finance  
6 points: FINANCE 701, 702, 789 Research Essay  
at least 4 points from FINANCE 751-785  
up to 4 points from ACCTG 711-784

### Management and Employment Relations

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Management and Employment Relations or its equivalent. Students in the Human Resource Management concentration must have passed MGMT 323 or equivalent.

#### Human Resource Management

- 2 points: MGMT 789 Research Essay
- 2 points: MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 8 points from MGMT 711-716
- 2 points from MGMT 711-736

#### Organization, Culture and Business

- 2 points: MGMT 789 Research Essay
- 2 points: MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 6 points from MGMT 731-736
- 4 points from MGMT 711-736

### Information Systems

**Prerequisite:** STATS 208 and a major in Information Systems or its equivalent

#### Organizational Change and Innovation

- 2 points: MGMT 789 Research Essay

- 2 points: MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 8 points MGMT 721–724
- 2 points from MGMT 711–736

### Marketing

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Marketing and STATS 208  
4 points: MKTG 703, 789 Research Essay  
at least 10 points from MKTG 701, 702, 704–720

### Operations Management

**Prerequisite:** STATS 208 and a major in Operations Management or its equivalent

- 4 points: INFOSYS 750, OPSMGT 789 Research Essay
- 4 points: INFOSYS 751 or OPSMGT 752 and 760
- at least 6 points from INFOSYS 740, OPSMGT 740, 761–764, 780–783

### Operations Research

**Prerequisite:** STATS 208 and a major in Operations Research or its equivalent  
4 points: INFOSYS 750, OPSRES 789 Research Essay  
4 points from INFOSYS 751 or OPSMGT 752, and ENGSCI 460  
at least 6 points from OPSRES 784–786, ENGSCI 461–464, 720, 751, 752, 791–795

## The Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours) – BProp(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student must have completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property and in addition have achieved an average grade of B– or higher in the courses taken for Part III of that degree.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years (inclusive of the three years, or equivalent, required for the Degree of Bachelor of Property) and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points (inclusive of the 42 points required for the Degree of Bachelor of Property), unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 3 A student for this degree needs to satisfy all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property and in addition pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points as follows:
  - a at least 4 points from the Degree of Master of Property
  - b up to 4 points from courses offered for any other Honours or Master's degree, provided they are related to the study of Property and approved by the Head of Department of Property
  - c PROPERTY 788 Honours Research Project
  - d PROPERTY 789 Honours Dissertation

### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Award of Honours

- 5 This degree will be awarded only where a student's average grade in the additional courses required under Regulation 3b is B or higher.
- 6
  - a A student has normally to complete the requirements for this degree within 12 months of the initial enrolment following the completion of the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property. In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
  - b A student may be enrolled for this degree on a part-time basis only if approval is given by the Head of Department of Property. Such a part-time student has normally to complete the requirements for this degree within 24 months of initial enrolment, following the completion of the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property. In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may further extend this period.
- 7 A student who chooses not to complete this degree, or who does not complete the requirements for this degree within the period specified in Regulation 6, or whose work does not satisfy the standard specified in Regulation 5, may apply to have the Degree of Bachelor of Property conferred.

### Classes of Honours

- 8 This degree will be awarded with Honours where the student's average grade is sufficiently high, as specified in Regulation 5, and the requirements for this degree are completed within the period specified in Regulation 6. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Property were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Master of Commerce – MCom**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- either*
- a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or any other equivalent qualification  
*and*  
(ii) passed the specified prerequisite courses as listed in the regulations for the intended subject  
*and*  
(iii) achieved an average grade of B or higher in the Stage III prerequisite courses
- or*
- b (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) or any other equivalent qualification  
*and*  
(ii) passed the Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) in the subject intended for this degree with an average grade of B or higher.
- or*
- c (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Business Administration  
*and*  
(ii) passed at least 12 points above Stage I from courses listed in the Bachelor of Commerce Regulations including at least 6 points above Stage II in the intended subject for this degree  
*and*  
(iii) achieved an average grade of B or higher in the Stage III courses.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce but who has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for that degree  
*and*  
b passed all of the specified prerequisite courses as listed in the regulations for the intended subject  
*and*  
c achieved an average grade of B or better in the Stage II and Stage III prerequisite courses
- may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department or Director of Programme, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce must be taken and passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree and the resulting total duration of this programme must not be extended. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce not be completed within these 12 months, enrolment for the Degree of Master of Commerce will be suspended until the requirements for the Bachelor's degree are completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of:
- a the equivalent of two full-time years and pass a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce, or equivalent, or a Degree of Master of Business Administration  
*or*  
b one full-time year and pass a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) or equivalent.
- 4 A student whose application to enrol for this degree on a part-time basis is accepted normally has to follow a programme of:
- a four consecutive part-time years and pass a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or equivalent, or Degree of Master of Business Administration  
*or*  
b two consecutive part-time years and pass a total value of 14 points, if entering with the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) or equivalent.

**Structure and Content**

- 5 a A student for this degree must complete the requirements for one of the subjects as listed in the schedule to these regulations.
- b The relevant Heads of Departments may allow a student for this degree to take courses with a total value of up to 6 points from courses prescribed for another subject for a Master's degree provided that such courses are related to the student's research interests.

**Thesis and Dissertation**

- 6 a A thesis, advanced research studies, or dissertation, when included in the course of study, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis or dissertation topic must be approved by the relevant Head of Department before enrolment for it.
- c (i) A student must normally submit the thesis or dissertation in compliance with the deadlines specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
- (ii) A student enrolled in advanced research studies must complete all requirements in compliance with the deadlines specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
- (iii) A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree and whose course of study includes a thesis, advanced research studies or dissertation must, before enrolment for the thesis, advanced research studies or dissertation, obtain an average grade of at least B in the courses component of the degree. In this case, the thesis, advanced research studies or dissertation is to be submitted in compliance with the deadlines specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
- (iv) A student enrolled on a part-time basis under the provisions of Regulation 4 must normally submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
- (v) In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend the periods indicated above.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 21 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1975 regulations for the Degree of Master of Commerce were thereby repealed.

---

**Master of Commerce (MCom) Schedule**


---

A student who has to complete 14 points must satisfy the requirements for one of the following subjects:

**Accounting**

14 points: ACCTG 796 Thesis

**Economics**

14 points: ECON 796 Thesis  
or  
4 points: ECON 790 Dissertation  
10 points from: ECON 701–783

**Finance**

14 points: FINANCE 796 Thesis

**Information Systems**

14 points: INFOSYS 796 Thesis

**International Business**

14 points: INTBUS 796 Thesis

**Management and Employment Relations**

14 points: MGMT 796 Thesis

**Marketing**

14 points: MKTG 796 Thesis  
or  
14 points: MKTG 794 Advanced Research Studies in Marketing

**Operations Management**

14 points: OPSMGT 796 Thesis

**Operations Research**

14 points: OPSRES 796 Thesis

A student who has to complete 28 points must satisfy the requirements for one of the following subjects:

### Accounting

**Prerequisite:** MATHS 208 or STATS 208 or equivalent courses as approved by the Head of Department and a major in Accounting.

**Requirement:**

4 points: ACCTG 701, 702  
at least 6 points from ACCTG 711–784  
up to 4 points from FINANCE 751–785  
14 points: ACCTG 796 Thesis

### Economics

**Prerequisite:** 16 points in Economics, including at least 6 points at Stage III and with a pass of at least B– in ECON 201, 211, 381 and either 321 or 322

**Requirement:**

6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723  
18 additional points from ECON 702–783  
4 points: ECON 790 Dissertation  
*or*  
6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723  
8 additional points from ECON 702–783  
14 points: ECON 796 Thesis

### Finance

**Prerequisite:** MATHS 208 or STATS 208 or equivalent courses as approved by the Head of Department and a major in Finance.

**Requirement:**

4 points: FINANCE 701, 702  
at least 6 points from FINANCE 751–785  
up to 4 points from ACCTG 711–784  
14 points: FINANCE 796 Thesis

### Information Systems

**Prerequisite:** BCom or equivalent with a major in Information Systems

**Requirement:**

6 points: INFOSYS 720, 750, 751  
8 points from INFOSYS 722, 724–740  
14 points: INFOSYS 796 Thesis

### International Business

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in International Business

**Requirement:**

14 points from INTBUS 701–712  
14 points: INTBUS 796 Thesis

### Management and Employment Relations

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Management and Employment Relations or its equivalent. Students in the Human Resource Management concentration must have passed MGMT 323 or equivalent.

### Human Resource Management

- 4 points: MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 8 points from MGMT 711–716
- 2 points from MGMT 711–736
- 14 points: MGMT 796 Thesis

### Organization, Culture and Business

- 4 points: MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 6 points from MGMT 731–736
- 4 points from MGMT 711–736
- 14 points: MGMT 796 Thesis

### Organizational Change and Innovation

- 4 points: MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 8 points: MGMT 721–724
- 2 points from MGMT 711–736
- 14 points: MGMT 796 Thesis

### Marketing

**Prerequisite:** STATS 208 and at least 6 points selected from MKTG 301–307

**Requirement:**

6 points: MKTG 701, 703, 704  
8 points from MKTG 702, 705–720  
14 points: MKTG 796 Thesis or MKTG 794 Advanced Research Studies in Marketing  
*or*  
6 points: MKTG 701, 703, 704  
18 points from MKTG 702, 705–720  
4 points: MKTG 790 Dissertation

### Operations Management

**Prerequisite:** BCom or equivalent with a major in Operations Management

**Requirement:**

4 points: INFOSYS 750, OPSMGT 760  
2 points from INFOSYS 751 or OPSMGT 752  
8 points from INFOSYS 722, 734, 737, 740, OPSMGT 740, 761–764, 780–783, MGMT 731, ACCTG 722  
14 points: OPSMGT 796 Thesis

### Operations Research

**Prerequisite:** BCom or equivalent with a major in Operations Research

**Requirement:**

6 points from INFOSYS 750, ENGSCI 460, (INFOSYS 751 or OPSMGT 752)  
8 points from OPSRES 784–786, ENGSCI 461–464, 720, 751, 752, 791–795  
14 points: OPSRES 796 Thesis

## The Degree of Master of Business Administration – MBA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for The University of Auckland Postgraduate Diploma in Business with an average grade of at least B
  - or*
  - (ii) completed the requirements for an equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and*
- b an acceptable mark in the GMAT or performed acceptably in tests of academic aptitude prescribed by the Senate or its representative

and

c had at least five years of relevant work experience.

- 2 Admission to this degree is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and achieve a pass in 14 points.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of:
- a 8 points:
    - BUSADMIN 729 Integrating Strategy
    - BUSADMIN 730 Managing Organizational Change
  - b 6 points selected from the following courses:
    - BUSADMIN 704 International Economics
    - BUSADMIN 724 Financial Analysis
    - BUSADMIN 726 Business Ethics
    - BUSADMIN 728 Public Policy and the Corporation
    - BUSADMIN 731 International Business Management
    - BUSADMIN 732 Strategic Human Resource Management
    - BUSADMIN 733 Creativity and Management
    - BUSADMIN 734 Quality Management
    - BUSADMIN 750 Executive-in-residence Course
    - BUSADMIN 751 Decision, Risk and Value
    - BUSADMIN 752 Knowledge Management
    - BUSADMIN 753 Special Topic 1
    - BUSADMIN 754 Special Topic 2
    - BUSADMIN 755 Special Topic 3
    - BUSADMIN 756 Special Topic 4
    - BUSADMIN 757 Special Topic 5
    - BUSADMIN 758 Special Topic 6
- 5 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same as or similar to those listed above for this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 6 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Business and Economics.

#### **Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000. The 1998 regulations for the Degree of Master of Business Administration were thereby repealed.

### **The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt**

*The Master of Educational Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

### **The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt**

*Regulations for the Master of Engineering Management are listed in the Faculty of Engineering.*

### **The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt**

*The Master of Health Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

### **The Degree of Master of Management – MMgt**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for The University of Auckland Diploma in Management, Diploma in Arts Management or a Postgraduate Diploma in Business from The University of Auckland with an average grade of at least B+
 

*or*

 completed the requirements for an equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - and*
  - b performed acceptably in tests of academic aptitude prescribed by the Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - c had at least five years of relevant work experience.
- 2 Admission to this degree is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3
  - a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year with a total value of 14 points.
  - b The requirements of this degree are to be completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. The Senate or its representative may extend this period in exceptional circumstances.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 A student must complete:
 

MANAGEMENT 712 Applied Research in Organizations (14 points).
- 5 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Business and Economics.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002. The 2000 regulations for the Degree of Master of Management were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Master of Commercial Law – MComLaw**

*This degree has been discontinued. Transitional arrangements are in place to provide for currently enrolled students. Refer to LLM Schedule.*

**The Degree of Master of International Business – MIntBus**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for any Bachelor's or Master's degree
  - and*
  - b acquired basic knowledge in micro and macro economics, accounting, management and quantitative methods as demonstrated by having passed degree courses or their equivalents approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - c completed the Graduate Management Admission Test at a level deemed acceptable by the Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - d passed the pre-entry language preparation required for each student's proposed language study from one of the following options:
    - (i) **Second Language for Business**  
For students whose first language is English, who intend to conduct most business in English, and for whom basic familiarity with a second language and culture will be an advantage.

(ii) **Business English**

For students from foreign countries who have already studied English as a second language and who desire further education in English and experience in business conducted in English.

*Prerequisite:* Test of English as a Foreign Language (TOEFL) with a score of at least 600, or equivalent.

(iii) **Asian Language**

For students with prior knowledge of an Asian language and who wish to progress towards proficiency in conducting business in this language.

*Prerequisite:* Completion of 4 points from Stage II courses in an Asian language as approved by the Director of the Programme, as listed in the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or their equivalents as approved by the Senate or its representative.

(iv) **European Language**

For students with prior knowledge of a European language and who wish to progress towards proficiency in conducting business in this language.

*Prerequisite:* Completion of 4 points from Stage II courses in European language as approved by the Director of the Programme, as listed in the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or their equivalents as approved by the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.
- b In exceptional circumstances the Director of the Programme may approve a part-time programme for this degree.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of Part I, and Part II as follows:
  - a **Part I**
    - (i) Core courses (8 points):  
INTBUS 751-754
    - and
    - (ii) Regional Specialization  
4 points from INTBUS 755-760
    - and
    - (iii) 4 points from INTBUS 767, 770
  - b **Part II**  
10 points: INTBUS 765 Applied Research Project in International Business  
2 points: INTBUS 766 Research Seminar in International Business

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

**The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR**

*The Master of Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds**

*The Master of Professional Studies is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**The Degree of Master of Property – MProp**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:

- a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property and achieved an average of B- or higher in the courses taken for Part III of that degree
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Property and achieved an average of B- or higher
  - or
  - c completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours)
  - or
  - d completed the requirements for any other appropriate Bachelor's degree or equivalent qualification, as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, provided that the average grade in the final year of study was equivalent to B- or higher.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property but who, for that degree, has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for Part III
- may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Property must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Property enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.
- 3 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours) but who, for that degree, has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 54 points
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at Master's level
- may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Property (Honours) must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours) not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Property enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.
- 4 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Property but who, for that diploma, has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 12 points
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for that diploma
- may, with the approval of the Head of Department enrol for this degree.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 5 A student enrolled for this degree has to:
- a follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points, if entering with the Degree of Bachelor of Property or its equivalent
  - or
  - b follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass a thesis having a value of 14 points, if entering:
    - (i) with the Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours)
    - or
    - (ii) having completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Property and having reassigned courses from PGDipProp under Regulation 8.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 6 For a student who needs to complete 28 points for this degree, the programme consists of:
- a PROPERTY 793 Thesis (14 points)
  - b 14 points from:
    - (i) PROPERTY 713 Seminar in Valuation
    - PROPERTY 714 Plant and Machinery Valuation
    - PROPERTY 723 Seminar in Property Marketing
    - PROPERTY 733 Seminar in Property Management
    - PROPERTY 734 Seminar in Facilities Management
    - PROPERTY 743 Seminar in Property Development
    - PROPERTY 753 Seminar in Property Finance and Investment
    - PROPERTY 763 Seminar in Property Economics

PROPERTY 764 Seminar in Building Economics  
 PROPERTY 783 Special Topic  
 PROPERTY 784 Special Topic  
 PROPERTY 785 Special Topic  
 PROPERTY 792 Thesis Proposal

- (ii) Up to 4 points may be taken from courses for any other Master's degree with the approval of the Head of Department of Property
  - (iii) An appropriate research methods course (or courses) approved by the Head of Department is to be taken as part of this degree unless it or an equivalent has already been passed.
- 7 A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree needs to pass PROPERTY 793 Thesis.

#### **Transfer from Postgraduate Diploma in Property**

- 8 A student who has completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Property and has not been awarded the Postgraduate Diploma in Property and is eligible to be admitted to this course of study under Regulation 1b may reassign to this degree the Honours or Master's courses passed for that Postgraduate Diploma.

#### **Thesis**

- 9 a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b Before enrolment in the thesis, the thesis proposal needs to be approved by the Head of Department of Property.
- c A student is to submit the thesis in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
- d In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may extend the periods indicated above.

#### **Variations**

- 10 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Honours**

- 11 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### **Commencement**

- 12 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1998. The 1997 regulations for the Degree of Master of Property were thereby repealed.

## **The Degree of Master of Taxation Studies – MTaxS**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for one of the following:
    - (i) the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce
    - (ii) the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours)
    - (iii) the Degree of Bachelor of Laws
    - (iv) the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)
    - (v) the Postgraduate Diploma in Business (Taxation) and an undergraduate degree approved by the Senate or its representative
    - (vi) an alternative degree approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and
- b passed the specified prerequisite courses or such other alternative courses approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.
  - c achieved an average grade of B- or higher in their last equivalent full-time year of study.
- 2 Admission to this degree is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of:
- a the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points
- or
- b the equivalent of one full year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with:
    - (i) a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) in Taxation
    - (ii) a Graduate Diploma in Business (Taxation)
    - (iii) a Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) including COMLAW 311 and LAW 789 Dissertation on a topic including taxation.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 a A student must select courses as follows:  
8 points from COMLAW 740-742  
4 points from ACCTG 776, 786, COMLAW 740-756, 765  
9 points from ACCTG 792 Dissertation, or COMLAW 792 Dissertation, or ECON 792 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points must satisfy the requirements by completing COMLAW 798 Thesis.
  - c On the recommendation of the relevant Heads of Department and with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Business and Economics, a student for this degree may take courses with a total value of up to 4 points from courses prescribed for another Master's degree at this University provided that such courses are related to the student's research interests.

**Dissertation**

- 5 a The dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The dissertation topic needs to be approved by the relevant Head of Department prior to enrolment in the dissertation.
  - c
    - (i) The dissertation may not be presented prior to the third semester of enrolment.
    - (ii) The dissertation is to be submitted within 16 months of initial enrolment for this degree for a student taking this degree full-time, and within 36 months of initial enrolment for this degree otherwise.
    - (iii) In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may extend these periods.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 7 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
- b Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 16 months of initial enrolment for a student taking this degree full-time, and within 36 months of initial enrolment otherwise. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period for up to 12 months.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1989 regulations for the Degree of Master of Taxation Studies were thereby repealed.

---

**Graduate Diploma in Commerce – GradDipCom**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce
- or
- b completed the requirements for any other degree approved by the Senate or its representative
- or

- c completed the requirements for a professional qualification in Commerce approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 2 a With the approval of the Senate or its representative, a student may enrol for this diploma after gaining at least 40 points for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or, in any particular case, the equivalent in other such degrees.  
and
- b The diploma will not be awarded until such qualifying degree is completed.
- 3 Admission to the diploma is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 4 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.
- b Cross-credit will not be granted towards the Graduate Diploma in Commerce.

**Structure and Content**

- 5 The programme for this diploma consists of 14 points as follows:
  - a at least 6 points from courses above Stage II in one subject or major from the Regulations to the Degrees of Bachelor of Commerce or Master of Commerce.
  - b at least 2 points from courses above Stage II from the subjects or majors listed in the Regulations to the Degrees of Bachelor of Commerce and Master of Commerce.
  - c up to 6 points from Stage II courses from the subjects or majors listed in the Regulations to the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce.
  - d up to 4 points from courses from the regulations of any other degree of this University may be chosen with the permission of Senate or its representative.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000. The 1996 regulations for the Graduate Diploma in Commerce were thereby repealed.

**Graduate Diploma in Operations Research – GradDipOR**

*The Graduate Diploma in Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management – PGDipArtsMgt**

*The Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Postgraduate Diploma in Business – PGDipBus**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
    - either
      - a (i) completed the requirements for any Bachelor's degree  
and
      - (ii) acquired at least two years of employment experience deemed relevant to this diploma by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
    - or
      - b (i) completed the requirements for a professional qualification in Accountancy, Engineering, Medicine or a related healthcare subject. Science or other discipline deemed relevant to the programme of study by the Senate or its representative  
and
      - (ii) acquired at least two years of employment experience deemed relevant to this diploma by the Senate or its representative
- or

- c had at least five years of employment experience deemed relevant to this diploma by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.
- 2 Admission to the programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.
  - 3 A student who has completed the requirements for the diploma in one subject may, with the permission of the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Director of Postgraduate Diploma in Business Programme, enrol for the diploma in another subject.
  - 4 A student who has completed the requirements for a Postgraduate Diploma in Business at The University of Auckland may be allowed to cross credit up to a maximum of 4 points to a second Postgraduate Diploma in Business, with the approval of the Senate or its representative.
  - 5 A student who has completed the requirements for a Postgraduate Certificate in Business, may on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department, and with the approval of the Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to a Postgraduate Diploma in Business the courses passed for the associated Postgraduate Certificate in Business.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 6 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses and workshops with a total value of 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 7 A student is to complete the requirements for one of the subjects listed in the schedule to these regulations.
- 8 A student who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any course or workshop the same as or similar to those required in the schedule to these regulations will be required to substitute for each course or workshop so credited such additional course(s) or workshop(s) as the Director may approve.

#### Variations

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2002 regulations for the Graduate Diploma in Business were thereby repealed.

---

### Postgraduate Diploma in Business (PGDipBus) Schedule

---

#### Administration

- (i) 14 points from: BUSADMIN 701 Accounting and Finance  
or  
BUSADMIN 702 Accounting for Decision-makers  
BUSADMIN 705 Business Law  
BUSADMIN 710 Economics  
BUSADMIN 711 e-Commerce Strategies  
BUSADMIN 712 Leadership in Organizations  
or  
BUSADMIN 713 Managing People  
MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers  
OPSMAN 703 Operations Management

#### Business Taxation

- (i) 12 points from:  
COMLAW 601 Taxation Structures and Processes 1  
COMLAW 602 Taxation Structures and Processes 2  
COMLAW 603 Principles of Income Taxation  
COMLAW 604 Principles of Indirect Taxation  
COMLAW 605 Advanced Studies in Taxation 1  
COMLAW 606 Advanced Studies in Taxation 2
- (ii) Either 2 points from:  
COMLAW 607 Special Topic in Taxation  
COMLAW 608 Special Topic in Taxation  
or  
2 points from other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

#### Engineering Management

- (i) 1 point:  
ENGMGMT 711 Project in Engineering Management
- (ii) 9 points from:  
ENGMGMT 702 Resource Management  
ENGMGMT 703 Technology Management  
ENGMGMT 705 Quality Management for Engineers  
OPSMAN 705 Project Management
- (iii) 4 points from other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the programme coordinator

#### Finance

- (i) 9 points:  
FINMGMT 701 Financial Management  
FINMGMT 702 Investments  
FINMGMT 703 Case Studies in Business and Finance
- (ii) 2 points from:  
FINMGMT 713 Special Topic  
FINMGMT 714 Special Topic  
FINMGMT 715 Special Topic
- (iii) 3 points from:  
BUSADMIN 701 Accounting and Finance  
FINMGMT 711 Managerial Economics  
FINMGMT 712 Finance Law  
Other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

## Health Informatics

- (i) 2 points from:  
 COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
 COMHLTH 733 Clinical Practice Guidelines Development and Implementation  
*and*  
 12 points from:  
 HLTHINFO 713 Information Systems Technology  
 HLTHINFO 716 Health Information Systems  
 HLTHINFO 721 Special Topic in Health Informatics  
 COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care  
 COMHLTH 723 Quality in Health Care  
 COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics  
*or*  
 (ii) 14 points from:  
 HLTHINFO 713 Information Systems Technology  
 HLTHINFO 716 Health Information Systems  
 HLTHINFO 718 Electronic Health Records  
 HLTHINFO 720 Telemedicine and Telecare  
 HLTHINFO 721 Special Topic in Health Informatics  
 COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics  
 COMHLTH 747 Healthcare Decision Support Systems  
*or*  
 (iii) 2 points from:  
 COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
 COMHLTH 733 Clinical Practice Guidelines Development and Implementation  
*and*  
 12 points from:  
 HLTHINFO 718 Electronic Health Records  
 HLTHINFO 720 Telemedicine and Telecare  
 HLTHINFO 721 Special Topic in Health Informatics  
 COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care  
 COMHLTH 723 Quality in Healthcare  
 COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics  
 COMHLTH 747 Healthcare Decision Support Systems

## Health Management

- (i) 6 points from:  
 BUSADMIN 701 Accounting and Finance  
 BUSADMIN 713 Managing People  
 OPSMAN 703 Operations Management  
 (ii) 6 points from:  
 COMHLTH 707 Health Economics  
 COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
 COMHLTH 716 Healthcare Organization  
*or*  
 GENPRAC 610 Primary Healthcare Management 1  
 (iii) 2 points from:  
 COMHLTH 711 Maori Health – Introduction  
 COMHLTH 723 Quality in Healthcare  
 COMHLTH 730 Pacific Health: An Introduction  
 GENPRAC 611 Primary Healthcare Management 2

## Human Resource Management

- (i) 12 points:  
 HRMGMT 701 Organization and Society  
 HRMGMT 702 Employment Relations  
 HRMGMT 703 Human Resource Policies and Practice  
 HRMGMT 704 Managing Change in Organizations  
 (ii) 2 points from:  
 HRMGMT 709 Occupational Health and Safety  
 HRMGMT 712 Special Topic  
 HRMGMT 713 Special Topic  
 HRMGMT 714 Professional Development in HRM  
 Other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

## Information Systems

- (i) 11 points from:  
 BUSADMIN 711 e-Commerce Strategies  
 INFORM 703 Information Systems Management  
 INFORM 710 Electronic Commerce Applications  
 INFORM 711 Enterprise Systems  
 INFORM 712 Project in Information Systems  
 INFORM 713 Information Systems Technology  
 INFORM 714 Electronic Commerce Strategies  
 INFORM 717 Electronic Commerce Technology  
 OPSMAN 705 Project Management  
 (ii) Up to 3 points from other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

## International Strategy and Leadership

- (i) 9 points from:  
 BUSADMIN 710 Economics  
 INTSTRAT 751 Strategy and Planning for International Competitiveness  
 INTSTRAT 750 International Business  
 INTSTRAT 756 Cross-cultural Dimension of Business  
 (ii) 2 points from:  
 BUSADMIN 712 Leadership in Organizations  
 INTSTRAT 757 Strategic Leadership  
 (iii) 3 points from:  
 INTSTRAT 755 Business Environment of Asia  
 INTSTRAT 760 Special Topic  
 INTSTRAT 761 Special Topic  
 INTSTRAT 762 Special Topic: International Business  
*and/or*  
 Other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

## Maori Development

- (i) 12 points:  
 MAORIDEV 701 Maori Society: History and Resources  
 MAORIDEV 704 Maori Business Development  
 MAORIDEV 710 Accounting for Maori Business  
 MAORIDEV 711 Legal Studies for Maori Business  
 MAORIDEV 712 Management of Maori Organizations  
 (ii) 2 points from:  
 MAORIDEV 713 Special Topic  
 MAORIDEV 714 Special Topic  
 Other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

## Marketing

- (i) 2 points:  
 MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers  
 (ii) 10 points from:  
 BUSADMIN 716 Special Topic  
 MARKET 701 Marketing Strategy  
 MARKET 702 Understanding Customers and Markets  
 MARKET 703 Marketing Communications  
 MARKET 705 Special Project in Marketing  
 MARKET 708 Special Topic: Advanced Strategy  
 MARKET 720 Special Topic: Services Marketing  
 MARKET 714 e-Commerce and Interactive Marketing  
 MARKET 715 Creating and Managing Brands  
 MARKET 721 Sales Management  
 (iii) 2 points from:  
 Other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

## New Ventures

- (i) 8 points:  
 NEWVENT 703 New Ventures  
 NEWVENT 704 Corporate Venturing  
 NEWVENT 709 Managing a Small Business

- (ii) 6 points from:  
 NEWVENT 705 Franchising  
 NEWVENT 706 Special Topic in New Ventures  
 Other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

### Operations Management

- (i) 7 points:  
 OPSMAN 703 Operations Management  
 OPSMAN 713 Quantitative Methods for Managers  
 OPSMAN 715 Performance Frameworks  
 OPSMAN 716 Strategic Operations
- (ii) 5 points from:  
 INFORM 703 Information Systems Management  
 INFORM 710 Electronic Commerce Applications  
 INFORM 711 Enterprise Systems  
 OPSMAN 705 Project Management  
 OPSMAN 714 Logistics and Supply Chain Management  
 QUALITY 713 Quality Management  
 BUSADMIN 712 Leadership in Organizations
- or  
 BUSADMIN 713 Managing People

- (iii) 2 points from:  
 Other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

### Quality Management

- (i) 7 points from:  
 INFORM 710 Electronic Commerce Applications  
 INFORM 711 Enterprise Systems  
 OPSMAN 713 Quantitative Methods for Managers  
 OPSMAN 715 Performance Frameworks  
 QUALITY 703 Quality Strategy and Implementation  
 QUALITY 713 Quality Management
- (ii) 5 points from:  
 OPSMAN 703 Operations Management  
 OPSMAN 705 Project Management  
 QUALITY 702 Statistical Thinking in Quality Management  
 BUSADMIN 712 Leadership in Organizations
- or  
 BUSADMIN 713 Managing People
- (iii) 2 points from:  
 other courses listed in the Postgraduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

## Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce – PGDipCom

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - (a) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or an equivalent qualification approved by Senate or its representative  
and
  - (b) passed the specified prerequisites as listed in the Regulations for the intended subject  
and
  - (c) achieved an average grade of B or higher in the Stage III prerequisite courses.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma on a part-time basis has to normally follow a programme of two consecutive part time years and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 A student has to pass courses worth 14 points in a particular subject at the Master's level from the schedule to the Degree of Master of Commerce. Up to 4 points may be taken from a related subject with approval of the relevant Heads of Department.
- 5 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Departments and also the Associate Dean (Postgraduate Studies) of Faculty of Business and Economics.

### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Property – PGDipProp

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property
 or

- b gained any other qualification approved by the Senate or its representative that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Property.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property but who, for that degree, has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points  
and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for Part III
- may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this diploma. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Property must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this diploma. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property not be completed in this time, the Postgraduate Diploma in Property enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are normally to be completed within 36 months of the initial enrolment, but this period may be extended to 48 months at the discretion of the Head of Department of Property.
- c In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may grant a further extension of the period specified in Regulation 3b above.
- d A student who has commenced study for this diploma may suspend that study for a period of up to 12 months.
- e A student may be enrolled for this diploma on a part-time basis with the approval of the Head of Department of Property. Such a part-time student has normally to complete the requirements for this diploma within 48 months of the initial enrolment.
- f In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may grant a further extension of the period specified in Regulation 3e above.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 4 Of the 14 points required for this diploma:
- a at least 8 points must be from courses for the Degree of Master of Property and for this diploma
  - b up to 6 points may be from courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Property and not already taken for that degree
  - c PROPERTY 691 Dissertation (4 points), may be included, on a topic approved by the Head of Department of Property
  - d PROPERTY 671 Research Project (2 points), may be included, on a topic approved by the Head of Department of Property
  - e up to 4 points may be taken from courses listed for any other diploma or for any Master's degree provided they are deemed by the Head of Department of Property to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken as part of this diploma.

#### **Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997. The 1996 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Property were thereby repealed.

## **Postgraduate Certificate in Business – PGCertBus**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- either*
- a completed the requirements for a degree deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
- or*

- b (i) completed the requirements for a professional qualification in Accountancy, Engineering, Medicine or a related healthcare subject, Science or other discipline deemed relevant to the programme of study by the Senate or its representative  
and  
(ii) had at least two years of relevant work experience approved as appropriate by the relevant Head of Department  
or  
c had at least five years of employment experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.

**Course Structure and Content**

- 3 A student is to complete the requirements for one of the subjects listed in the schedule to these regulations.
- 4 A student who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any course or workshop the same or similar to those required in the schedule to these regulations will be required to substitute for each course or workshop so credited such additional course(s) or workshop(s) as the Senate or its representative may approve.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme that does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2002 regulations for the Graduate Certificate in Business were thereby repealed.

---

**Postgraduate Certificate in Business (PGCertBus) Schedule**

---

**Health Informatics**

COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics  
HLTHINFO 713 Information Systems Technology  
HLTHINFO 716 Health Information Systems

## Regulations – Creative Arts and Industries

### Architecture

- 99 The Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies – BAS
- 100 The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture – BArch
- 101 The Degree of Master of Architectural Studies – MAS
- 102 The Degree of Master of Architecture – MArch
- 104 The Degree of Master of Building Science – MBldgSc
- 105 Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science – PGDipBldgSc

### Arts Management

- 106 Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management – PGDipArtsMgt

### Fine Arts

- 106 The Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts – BFA
- 107 The Degree of Bachelor of Visual Arts – BVA
- 108 The Degree of Master of Fine Arts – MFA
- 109 The Degree of Doctor of Fine Arts – DocFA
- 111 Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts – PGDipFA

### Music

- 112 The Degree of Bachelor of Music – BMus
- 113 The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) – BMus(Hons)
- 114 The Degree of Bachelor of Music Education – BMusEd
- 116 The Degree of Master of Music – MMus
- 117 The Degree of Doctor of Music – DMus
- 119 The Degree of Doctor of Musical Arts – DMA
- 121 Graduate Diploma in Music – GradDipMus

### Performing Arts

- 122 The Degree of Bachelor of Performing Arts – BPerfArts
- 123 Bachelor of Performing Arts (BPerfArts) Schedule
- 123 The Degree of Master of Creative and Performing Arts – MCPA

### Planning

- 125 The Degree of Bachelor of Planning – BPlan
- 126 The Degree of Master of Planning Practice – MPlanPrac
- 128 The Degree of Master of Planning – MPlan

## REGULATIONS – ARCHITECTURE

### The Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies – BAS

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree needs to pass courses chosen from each of Parts I, II and III as follows:

##### Part I

##### Core courses (14 points):

ARCHDES 100 Design 1  
 ARCHDES 101 Design 2  
 ARCHDRC 100 Introduction to Architectural Computing  
 ARCHDRC 101 Architectural Drawing 1  
 ARCHHTC 100 Introduction to Modern Architecture  
 ARCHHTC 101 Introduction to Architectural Theory  
 ARCHTECH 102 Introduction to Architectural Science 1  
 ARCHTECH 103 Introduction to Architectural Science 2  
 ARCHTECH 104 Construction and Structure 1  
 ARCHTECH 105 Construction and Structure 2

##### Part II

##### Core courses (12 points):

ARCHDES 200 Design 3  
 ARCHDES 201 Design 4  
 ARCHDRC 200 Computer-aided Design  
 ARCHDRC 201 Architectural Drawing 2  
 ARCHTECH 202 Environment and Services 1  
 ARCHTECH 203 Environment and Services 2  
 ARCHTECH 204 Construction and Structure 3  
 ARCHTECH 205 Construction and Structure 4  
 and at least 2 points from ARCHHTC 200–229

##### Part III

##### Core courses (7 points):

ARCHDES 300 Design 5  
 ARCHDES 301 Design 6  
 ARCHTECH 311 Construction and Structure 5  
 and 2 points from ARCHHTC 300–329  
 and 1 point from ARCHTECH 308 or 309  
 and 4 points from ARCHDES 374–377  
                             ARCHDRC 300–378  
                             ARCHHTC 300–377  
                             ARCHPRM 301–377  
                             ARCHTECH 300–378

or from courses listed for other programmes as approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

#### Variations

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 4 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies were thereby repealed.

*Note: The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture was previously a five-year degree, recognized by the Architects Education and Registration Board and the New Zealand Institute of Architects for registration and professional membership. It has been subdivided into the three-year Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies followed by the two-year Degree of Bachelor of Architecture. A student wishing to qualify for registration and professional membership must satisfy the requirements for both the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies and the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture.*

## The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture – BArch

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies at this University
  - or
  - b gained an equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of School of Architecture.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies but who, for that degree, has:
  - a passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for Part III

may, with the approval of the Head of School, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Architectural Studies must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies not be completed in this time, the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 4 a A student needs to pass courses from each of Parts I and II as follows:

#### Part I

##### Core courses (10 points):

ARCHDES 400 Design 7  
 ARCHDES 401 Design 8  
 ARCHPRM 401 Project Management 1  
 ARCHPRM 402 Project Management 2  
 ARCHPRM 423 Contract Documentation  
 ARCHTECH 420 Construction and Structure 6

##### Electives (at least 4 points from):

ARCHDES 474-477  
 ARCHDRC 400-477  
 ARCHGEN 400  
 ARCHHTC 400-479  
 ARCHPRM 401-477  
 ARCHTECH 401-477

#### Part II

##### Core courses (10 points):

ARCHDES 502 Design 9  
 ARCHDES 503 Design 10  
 ARCHPRM 501 Practice Management 1  
 ARCHPRM 502 Practice Management 2

##### Electives (at least 4 points from):

ARCHDES 574-577  
 ARCHDRC 570-577  
 ARCHGEN 590-595  
 ARCHHTC 570-579  
 ARCHPRM 570-577  
 ARCHTECH 500-577

- b Of the electives:
  - (i) 2 points must be from the electives ARCHHTC 400-417
  - (ii) 1 point must be from ARCHTECH 401, 404, 419, 500
  - (iii) with the approval of the Head of School of Architecture, up to 4 points may be from courses listed for Part III in the Schedule to the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies, but not already passed for that degree, and/or courses in other programmes as approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 6 Where a student's average grade is sufficiently high, this degree may be awarded with Honours. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture were thereby repealed.

*Note: The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture was previously a five-year programme which has been subdivided into the three-year Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies followed by the two-year Degree of Bachelor of Architecture.*

**The Degree of Master of Architectural Studies – MAS**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
- a the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies
  - or
  - b the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
  - or
  - c any equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of School of Architecture.

- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for one of the qualifications listed in Regulation 1 but who, for that qualification, has:
- a no more than 4 points left to complete
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at the highest level of that qualification

may, with the approval of the Head of School, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the qualification must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should this requirement not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Master of Architectural Studies will be suspended until they have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of:
- a
    - (i) ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods
    - (ii) **Electives:**  
4 points approved by the Head of School of Architecture as relevant to the topic of the Thesis or Research Report from:  
ARCHDES 770-777  
ARCHDRC 770-777  
ARCHHTC 770-777  
ARCHPRM 770-777  
ARCHTECH 770-777
    - (iii) (a) ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)
    - and
    - 8 points from electives listed in Regulation 4a(ii) above
    - or
    - (b) ARCHGEN 701 Research Methods 2 (2 points)  
ARCHGEN 792 Research Report (8 points)  
12 points from elective courses listed in Regulation 4a(ii)

or

**b Sustainability:**

- (i) ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods
  - (ii) 12 points from:
    - ARCHTECH 704 Sustainability of the Built Environment (4 points)
    - and/or
    - ARCHTECH 705 Energy and the Built Environment (4 points)
    - and
    - Electives approved by the Head of School of Architecture as relevant to the topic of the thesis from:
      - ARCHTECH 770-777 (up to 8 points)
  - (iii) ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)
- c In place of the electives required under Regulations 4a(iii) or 4b(ii) above, a student may substitute appropriate courses from those listed in the schedule
- (i) for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture but not already passed for that degree
  - or
  - (ii) for the Degree of Master of Planning Practice but not already passed for that degree
  - or
  - (iii) with the approval of the Head of School of Architecture, for any other courses provided such courses are deemed to be related to the student's programme and appropriate for this degree.

**Thesis**

- 5 a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic needs to be approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- c The thesis is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of School of Architecture.

**Research Report**

- 6 a The research report is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The topic of the research report needs to be approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- c The research report is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of School of Architecture.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 Where a student's average grade is sufficiently high, this degree may be awarded with Honours. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002. The 1997 regulations for the Degree of Master of Architectural Studies were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Master of Architecture – MArch**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
  - or
  - b gained any other equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Architecture and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of School of Architecture.

- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for one of the qualifications listed in Regulation 1 but who, for that qualification, has:
- a no more than 2 points left to complete
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at the highest level of that qualification

may, with the approval of the Head of School, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the qualification must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should this requirement not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Master of Architecture will be suspended until they have been completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of:

*either*

- a (i) ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)

*or*

- (ii) ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods (2 points)

ARCHGEN 790 Research Report (8 points)

4 points from courses approved by the Head of School of Architecture for the Degree of Master of Architectural Studies or the Degree of Master of Building Science or the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, but not already passed for that degree, or any other programme as approved by the Senate or its representative

*or*

- b **Sustainability**

- (i) ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)

*or*

- (ii) ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods (2 points)

ARCHGEN 790 Research Report (8 points)

*and either*

ARCHTECH 704 Sustainability of the Built Environment (4 points)

*or*

ARCHTECH 705 Energy and the Built Environment (4 points)

*or*

- c **Urban Design**

- (i) ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)

*or*

- (ii) ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods (2 points)

ARCHGEN 790 Research Report (8 points)

ARCHHTC 700 Advanced Urban Design Studies (2 points)

2 points taken from courses approved by the Head of School of Architecture for the Degree of Master of Planning Practice or the Degree of Master of Architectural Studies or the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, but not already passed that degree.

#### Thesis

- 5 a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic needs to be approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- c The thesis is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of School of Architecture.

#### Research Report

- 6 a The research report is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The topic of the research report needs to be approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- c The research report is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of School of Architecture.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003. The 2002 regulations for the Degree of Master of Architecture were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Master of Building Science – MBldgSc**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
- a the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies
  - or
  - b the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
  - or
  - c the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
  - or
  - d any equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of School of Architecture.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for one of the qualifications listed in Regulation 1 but who, for that qualification, has:
- a no more than 4 points left to complete
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at the highest level of that qualification
- may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the qualification must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should this requirement not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Master of Building Science will be suspended until they have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of:
- a ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods
  - b **Electives:**  
8 points approved by the Head of Department from:  
ARCHTECH 700 Fire Protection  
ARCHTECH 701 Building Health  
ARCHTECH 702 Building Intelligence  
ARCHTECH 703 Facilities Management  
and ARCHTECH 770–777
  - c ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)  
and  
4 points from electives listed in Regulation 4b above.
  - d In place of the electives required under Regulation 4c above, a student may substitute electives from those listed in the schedule:
    - (i) for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, but not already passed for that degree
    - or

- (ii) with the approval of the Head of School of Architecture, for any other programme provided such courses are deemed to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken for this degree.

### Thesis

- 5 a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic needs to be approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- c The thesis is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of School of Architecture.

### Research Report

- 6 a The research report is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The topic of the research report needs to be approved by Head of School of Architecture.
- c The research report is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of School of Architecture.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Master of Building Science were thereby repealed.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science – PGDipBldgSc

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
- a the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies  
or
- b the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture  
or
- c the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering  
or
- d any equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of School of Architecture.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for one of the qualifications listed in Regulation 1 but who, for that qualification, has:
- a no more than 2 points left to complete  
and
- b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at the highest level of that qualification

may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the qualification must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should this requirement not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science will be suspended until they have been completed.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 A student for this diploma needs to pass:
  - a ARCHGEN 600 Research Methods 1A
  - b 8 points from ARCHPRM 670-677, ARCHTECH 670-677
  - c 4 points from:
    - (i) ARCHPRM 670-677  
ARCHTECH 670-677
    - or
    - (ii) from courses for the Degree of Master of Architecture
    - or
    - (iii) from courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture but not already passed for that degree
    - or
    - (iv) with the approval of the Head of Department of Architecture, for any Master's degree provided such courses are relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken for this diploma and have not already been taken for any other programme.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997. The 1996 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science were thereby repealed.

## REGULATIONS – ARTS MANAGEMENT

### Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management – PGDipArtsMgt

*The Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## REGULATIONS – FINE ARTS

### The Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts – BFA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a A student must pass courses for each of Parts I, II, III and IV as follows:

**Part I****Core course:**

10 points: FINEARTS 100 Studio 1

**Elective courses:**

at least 4 points from Stage I Art History courses

**Part II****Core course:**

10 points: FINEARTS 200 Studio 2

**Elective courses:**

at least 4 points from courses offered for other programmes at this University, as approved by the Head of Fine Arts.

**Part III****Core course:**

10 points: FINEARTS 300 Studio 3

**Elective courses:**

at least 4 points from courses offered for this or other programmes at this University, as approved by the Head of School.

**Part IV***either*

(i) 14 points FINEARTS 400 Studio 4A

or

(ii) **Core course:**

6 points: FINEARTS 401 Studio 4B

**Elective courses:**

- at least 2 points from Art History courses above Stage I
- at least 2 points from Art History courses above Stage II
- at least 4 points from courses offered for other programmes at this University, as approved by the Head of Fine Arts.

- b (i) Each Part must normally be completed before the next Part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass Parts I and II in their entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that Part together with a course or courses towards the next successive Part.
- (ii) A student may not enrol in Part IV until Parts I, II and III have been completed in their entirety.

**Variations**

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 4 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1994 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Bachelor of Visual Arts – BVA**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a A student must pass courses for each of Parts I, II, III and IV as follows:

**Part I**

VISARTS 150 Contextual Studies 1

VISARTS 160 Drawing 1

VISARTS 170 Studio 1

**Part II**

VISARTS 250 Contextual Studies 2

VISARTS 260 Drawing 2

VISARTS 270 Major Studio 2

VISARTS 271 Minor Studio 2A

VISARTS 272 Minor Studio 2B

**Part III**

VISARTS 350 Contextual Studies 3

VISARTS 360 Drawing 3

VISARTS 370 Major Studio 3

**Part IV**

VISARTS 470 Studio Practice

- b Each Part must normally be completed before the next Part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass Parts I, II and III in their entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to resubmit work for a course or courses needed to complete that Part prior to enrolment in the subsequent Part.

**Variations**

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 4 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

**The Degree of Master of Fine Arts – MFA**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts  
*and*
  - b passed the specified prerequisite courses listed in the Course Prescriptions for one of the options for these regulations  
*and*
  - c achieved an average grade of B+ or higher in the prerequisite courses.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the relevant Head of School, approve the admission of a student whose average grade in the prerequisite courses is B-.
- 3 A student who has gained any other equivalent qualification may be admitted, provided that the Senate or its representative is satisfied that the prior degree or other equivalent qualification is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Fine Arts.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 4 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of two consecutive full-time years and achieve an overall pass in 28 points.
- 5 A student whose application to enrol for this degree on a part-time basis is accepted has normally to follow a programme of three consecutive part-time years and achieve an overall pass in 28 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 6 A student must select courses for one of the following options:
  - a **Option A:**  
14 points: FINEARTS 754 Studio 5D  
14 points: FINEARTS 763 Studio 6C
  - b **Option B:**  
14 points: FINEARTS 754 Studio 5D  
8 points: FINEARTS 762 Studio 6B  
6 points: FINEARTS 791 Dissertation
  - c **Option C:**  
8 points: FINEARTS 753 Studio 5C  
6 points from Master's level courses approved by the Head of School of Fine Arts  
14 points: ARTHIST 796 Art History Thesis
  - d **Option D:**  
8 points: FINEARTS 753 Studio 5C  
6 points from Master's level courses approved by the Head of School of Fine Arts  
14 points: FINEARTS 797 Fine Arts Thesis

**Thesis or Dissertation**

- 7 a Where a thesis or dissertation forms part of the requirements, it is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic needs to be approved by the Head of Fine Arts.
- c A student who is required to include a thesis or dissertation in the course of study must:
  - (i) if enrolled on a full-time basis, normally submit the thesis or dissertation by the last day of classes of the fourth semester following initial enrolment for this degree  
*or*
  - (ii) if enrolled on a part-time basis, normally submit the thesis or dissertation within 36 months of initial enrolment for this degree provided that in exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.

**Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 9
  - a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
  - b A student whose examination performance is seriously impaired by circumstances which fall within the Aegrotat Pass or Compassionate Pass provisions may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to sit a subsequent written examination in order to remain eligible for the award of Honours.
  - c Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 36 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1994 regulations for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Doctor of Fine Arts – DocFA**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

*Note: The regulations governing The Degree of Doctor of Fine Arts are under review. Potential students should check the status of the Regulations with The Graduate Centre prior to registration.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a candidate needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts of this University unless an alternative qualification is approved by the Senate under the Admission Regulations
  - and
  - b demonstrate, to the satisfaction of the Head of School of Fine Arts, adequate training and ability to follow a course of advanced study in studio practice.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2
  - a A candidate enrolled for this degree normally has to follow a programme of 24 full-time months and pass a course of advanced study in Studio.
  - b After the initial two years of enrolment, a candidate must apply through the Dean of Creative Arts and Industries to the Senate for permission to continue for up to a further 36 months part-time.
  - c In exceptional circumstances, the Senate may permit a candidate, who has held the accepted prerequisite qualification for over five years, to proceed directly to apply to be examined.

**Structure and Content**

- 3
  - a Each candidate is to complete the advanced course FINEARTS 894 Studio, unless approval is given to proceed directly to examination.
  - b The work undertaken during this degree must be to the satisfaction of the Head of School of Fine Arts and the supervisor or supervisors.
  - c The supervisor or supervisors shall submit a brief report to the Senate on the progress of each candidate at the end of each year of study.
  - d Should such a report be unfavourable, the Senate may terminate a candidate's enrolment for this degree.

**Content of Examination**

- 4
  - a The work submitted by the candidate for examination is to be clearly original and substantial in the chosen specialized studio area.
  - b The format for submission will normally be an exhibition, performance or publication of creative work in the chosen area of specialization. This is to be supported by written documentation focusing on such aspects as origins of the work, structures and techniques used and artistic theories underpinning the work. Written documentation may be supported by other media such as photographic, audio and video recordings if this is deemed appropriate by the supervisor or supervisors.
- 5 No work shall be considered for this degree if the work, or a major part of it, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university or tertiary institution.

- 6 With the application to be examined, each candidate must also submit:
- a three copies of the written and other documentation  
*and*
  - b a statement of availability of the studio work for assessment by exhibition, performance or publication  
*and*
  - c a statutory declaration which is to:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own and, in the case of joint work, identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own  
*and*
    - (ii) state what portion, if any, of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of this or any other tertiary institution  
*and*
    - (iii) declare that the work, in substantially its present form, has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other tertiary institution nor is it being submitted for a degree or diploma in any other tertiary institution.

#### Examination Following Full and Part-time Study

- 7 A candidate is to apply in writing to the Registrar to be examined for the Degree within five years of initial enrolment.
- 8 After the candidate's application to be examined has been accepted, the Senate is, on the recommendation of the Head of School, to appoint as examiners:
- a the supervisor or supervisors  
*and*
  - b one person, other than the supervisor, as oral examiner, who is usually to be a member of staff of another university in New Zealand  
*and*
  - c one person who is usually resident outside New Zealand provided that the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of School, appoint a further examiner and, in exceptional circumstances, two further examiners.
- 9 Each examiner is to:
- a assess the submitted work  
*and*
  - b report independently to the Senate on the quality of the work  
*and*
  - c recommend to the Senate whether or not the Degree of Doctor of Fine Arts should be awarded.
- 10 The supervising examiner and the oral examiner together are to examine the candidate orally on the submitted studio work and supporting documentation and on the general field to which the work belongs.
- The oral examination is to be held after the reports from all examiners have been received and will not normally be sooner than six weeks after the submission by the candidate. The oral examiners are to make a joint report to the Senate on the whole examination.
- 11 Where the recommendation is that the degree is not to be awarded, the Examiners may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date.

#### Direct Examination

- 12 Candidates who are eligible under Regulation 2c to apply to be examined directly, must comply with the requirements set out in Regulations 4, 5 and 6.
- 13 As soon as possible after the application is lodged, the Senate is to appoint a Moderator who is to:
- a consider the work and submit to the Senate, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which indicates whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application  
*and*
  - b state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners.
- 14 The Senate is to consider the Moderator's report and decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination is not to proceed or that the degree is not to be awarded, the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree before five or more years have elapsed since the date of the Senate's decision. Should the Senate decide not to proceed with an examination, a candidate is entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid on application to be examined.

- 15 For a candidate who is eligible under Regulation 2c to apply to be examined directly and where it is agreed that the examination is to proceed:
- a the Senate is to appoint two independent external examiners of whom at least one is normally resident outside New Zealand
  - and
  - b the Senate may appoint an additional examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of The University of Auckland
  - and
  - c the contents of the Moderator's report are not to be communicated to the examiners.
- 16 In this case, the duties of each examiner are:
- a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to the discipline
  - and
  - b to recommend whether or not the degree is to be awarded provided that where the recommendation is that the degree is not to be awarded, the examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date. A resubmission has to be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
- 17 The reports are to be sent to the Registrar who is to refer them to the Moderator.
- 18 The Moderator is to consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report which, together with the reports of the examiners, is to be placed before the Senate which is to determine whether or not the degree may be awarded.

#### Conflicting Examiners' Reports

- 19 Where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, the Moderator or the Head of School, as appropriate, is to submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner. The Senate is then to appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner who is to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 9 or Regulation 15. This report is to be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

#### Commencement

- 20 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts – PGDipFA

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- either*
- a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts
  - and
  - (ii) achieved a grade of B+ or higher in FINEARTS 400 or 401 of the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts
- or*
- b had not less than five years of experience and practice deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the relevant Head of School, approve the admission of a student whose grade in FINEARTS 400 or 401 of the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts is B or lower, if that student is otherwise qualified for admission.
- 3 A student on whom the Degree of Master of Fine Arts of this University has already been conferred may not be awarded the Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts.
- 4 A student who has completed some or all of the requirements for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts but on whom that degree has not yet been conferred may enrol for this diploma and apply to the Senate to have courses taken for that degree reassigned to this diploma.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 5 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 6 A student must select courses from one of the following options:
- either*

- a **Option A:**  
FINEARTS 651 Studio (14 points)
- or
- b **Option B:**  
FINEARTS 652 Practical (6 points) and FINEARTS 690 Dissertation (8 points).
- 7 a A student has to carry out work to the satisfaction of the Dean of Creative Arts and Industries within an individually-planned personal programme approved by the Head of School of Fine Arts, including the presentation of an exhibition of his or her work and printed catalogue deemed adequate by the Head of Fine Arts.
- b This personal programme is to be completed not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or by such other date as may be approved by the Head of Fine Arts.

#### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1994 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts were thereby repealed.

## REGULATIONS – MUSIC

### The Degree of Bachelor of Music – BMus

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

*Note: To specialize in Performance, a student must demonstrate at an audition the musical and performing skills required for the course as well as meeting University entry criteria.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points as specified below unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations, and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 A student's programme must consist of:
- a 14 points: MUSIC 102, 103, 144, 201, 202, 203 and 2 points from MUSIC 241-244, 246-247
- b 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III from one of the following majors:

##### **Composition**

MUSIC 110, 210, 211, 214, 301, 310, 311

##### **History and Literature of Music**

MUSIC 301; 2 points from MUSIC 132-135; at least 6 points from MUSIC 241-244, 246, 247, 341-344, 346, 347 not taken under Regulation 3a; up to 6 points from MUSIC 109, 250, 251, 350, 351, ANTHRO 103, POPMUS 206; up to 4 points in a European language other than English

##### **Performance**

MUSIC 128, 228, 328

and either

- c 12 points, including 8 points above Stage I, from one of the following minors:

##### **Composition**

MUSIC 109, 110, 210, 211, 214, 216, 310, 316

##### **History and Literature of Music**

MUSIC 109, 132-135, 241-244, 246, 247, 250, 251, 301, 341-344, 346, 347, 350, 351

##### **Performance**

MUSIC 129, 229, 329 and 3 points from MUSIC 132, 133, 232, 233.

**Choral Studies**

MUSIC 106, 134, 135, 206, 234, 235, 306, 334, 335

**Early Music Studies**

MUSIC 122, 222, 238, 239, 251, 322, 338, 339

**Ethnomusicology**

ANTHRO 103, 219, 232 or 332, 233 or 333, 238 or 308, 214 or 334, MUSIC 272

**Music Education**4 points MUSED 160 and 264, and 8 points from MUSED 260, 267, 360, 366, 367  
or

- d 12 points: at least 4 points from courses in the Course Prescriptions for Music, and may include up to 8 points from non-Music courses offered at this University.

**Practical Requirements**

- 4 a In any course that includes performance work of a practical nature, a student needs to comply with the requirements for that course as specified by the Head of School of Music.
- b A student enrolled under Regulation 3 above needs to participate in an approved School of Music performance ensemble throughout enrolment for this degree.

**Conjoint Degrees**

- 5 Special arrangements apply where the BMus is taken as a component degree. These are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002. The 2000 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) – BMus(Hons)**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music or any other equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate or its representative  
and
- b passed the specified prerequisites for one of the options listed in Regulation 5 below with an average of B- in at least 6 points at Stage III  
and
- c approval from the Head of School of Music.
- 2 A student who has not completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music but who has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points for that degree  
and
- b passed the specified prerequisite courses for one of the areas of study listed in Regulation 5 below with an average of B- or higher in at least 6 points at Stage III, may, with the written approval of the Head of School of Music, enrol for this degree concurrently with the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Music. The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) will not be awarded until the requirements for the Bachelor of Music have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year, and achieve a pass in at least 14 points.
- 4 The total enrolment for this degree may not exceed 18 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 5 The programme consists of one of the following subjects:
- a **Composition**
- (i) 4 points: MUSIC 710 Composition
- (ii) 4 points from MUSIC 701 and 702, 714, 715
- (iii) 4 points from ANTHRO 727, MUSIC 744, 745, 789 or any courses under Regulation 5 a (ii) which have not already been selected

- (iv) 2 points from MUSIC 746, 747, 752, 753, 757-759 or any courses offered under Regulation 5a(ii) or 5a(iii) which have not already been selected

or

**b Musicology**

- (i) 4 points: ANTHRO 727 or MUSIC 750  
 (ii) 10 points from ANTHRO 727, MUSED 701, 702, MUSIC 701, 702, 744-748, 750-753, 757-759, 789

or

**c Performance**

- (i) 6 points: MUSIC 728  
 (ii) 8 points from ANTHRO 727, MUSIC 714, 715, 738, 739, 744-748, 751-753, 757-759, 789

- 6 Of the points required under Regulation 5a(iv), 5b(ii) or 5c(ii), a student may, with the approval of the Head of the School of Music and of the Head of other Department concerned, include up to 2 points at Master's level in one subject other than Music.

### Practical Requirements

- 7 In any course that includes performance work of a practical nature a student must comply with the requirements for that course as specified by the Head of School of Music.

### Dissertation

- 8 Where a dissertation is included in the degree:
- the dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
  - the dissertation topic must be approved by the Head of School of Music before enrolment for it.

### Enrolment for Two Programmes

- 9 This degree may not be studied at the same time as another degree, unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

### Variations

- 10 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 11
  - The degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First or Second Division.
  - Honours are normally awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

### Commencement

- 12 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Bachelor of Music Education – BMusEd

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.  
*Note: To be admitted, a student must meet University entry criteria and have personal qualities suitable for becoming a teacher. Personal references and an interview will normally be required.*

### Termination of Enrolment

- 2
  - If the behaviour of a student in a teaching environment is found, after due and fair inquiry, to be offensive, disruptive or likely to give rise to a risk of harm to the welfare of any pupil, the enrolment of the student in the programme may be terminated by the Senate or its representative and any application to re-enrol may likewise be declined.
  - A student who is subject to any such inquiry may be suspended by the Senate or its representative from lectures, classes and any teaching placement pending the outcome of the inquiry.

- c A student whose enrolment is terminated under Regulation 2a may appeal from that decision to the Council or its duly appointed delegate.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 4 a The programme consists of:  
12 points from courses in Education:  
(i) EDUC 111, 112  
(ii) EDUC 225, 283  
(iii) 2 points from EDUC 302-384  
(iv) 2 points from: EDCURR 675-677, EDUC 302-384
- b At least 44 points from one of the following specializations:
- (i) **Primary Music**  
(a) 18 points from the following EDCURR courses:  
EDCURR 102, 103, 104, 107, 108, 202, 203, 209  
and one of EDCURR 106, 204, 206, MAORI 107  
(b) 6 points from Professional Practice courses: EDPROF 100, 210, 310  
(c) 14 points from the following courses:  
MUSIC 103, MUSED 160, 164, 260, 264, 366 and 466  
(d) 6 points from BMus or BPerfArts courses as approved by the appropriate Head of School of Music or Creative and Performing Arts.
- (ii) **Secondary Music**  
(a) 8 points, including at least 4 points above Stage I, in another subject from courses available for a Bachelor's degree  
(b) 4 points EDCURR 661  
(c) 2 points from EDCURR 675-677 for the second teaching subject  
(d) 8 points EDPROF 101, 211, 622, 625  
(e) 14 points from the following courses:  
MUSIC 103, MUSED 160, 164, 260, 264, 366 and 466  
(f) 8 points from BMus or BPerfArts courses as approved by the appropriate Head of Department, including 2 points at Stage III Music.
- (iii) **Community Music**  
(a) 8 points, including at least 4 points above Stage I, in another subject from courses available for a Bachelor's degree  
(b) 4 points from EDCURR 661 or 662  
(c) 6 points from EDCURR or EDPROF courses as approved by the Head of School of Education  
(d) 14 points from the following courses:  
MUSIC 103, MUSED 160, 164, 260, 264, 366 and 466  
(e) 12 points from BMus or BPerfArts courses as approved by the appropriate Head of School of Music or Creative and Performing Arts.

### Practical Requirements

- 5 a Students enrolled in EDPROF 100, 101, 210, 211, 310, 622, 625 must pass both the reflective assignments and the practical teaching components of the course.
- b Re-enrolment in any of EDPROF 100, 101, 210, 211, 310, 622, 625 after failing that course requires the permission of the Head of School of Education.
- c At the discretion of the Senate or its representative, a student who does not pass a Professional Practice course (EDPROF 100, 101, 210, 211, 310, 622, 625) may be declined permission to re-enrol for this degree.

### Enrolment for Two Programmes

- 6 This degree may not be studied at the same time as any other programme unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003. The 1999 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music Education were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Master of Music – MMus

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

### Admission

- 1 a In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) in the same area of study as the intended option in Regulation 4 below, with at least Second Class Honours First Division.
- b In exceptional circumstances a student who has completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music may be admitted to this degree with the approval of the Head of School of Music.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student who has completed the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) has to follow a programme of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b A student who has completed the Degree of Bachelor of Music has to follow a programme of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.
- 3 A student whose application to enrol for this degree on a part-time basis is accepted normally has to follow a programme of:
 

*either*

  - a two consecutive years and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, under one of the options set out in Regulation 4, if entering with a Bachelor of Music (Honours)
  - or*
  - b four consecutive years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Bachelor of Music.

### Structure and Content

- 4 A student who has to pass courses with a total value of 14 points for this degree must satisfy the requirements for one of the following options:
 

*either*

  - a MUSIC 795 Composition (14 points):
    - (i) A portfolio of compositions is to be prepared under the supervision of a university teacher.
    - (ii) A student is to submit to the Registrar two copies of the portfolio, together with a certificate from the Supervisor stating that the work has been carried out under supervision:
      - (a) within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree if required to complete 14 points and enrolled on a full-time basis
      - or*
      - (b) within 24 months of initial enrolment for this degree if required to complete 14 points and enrolled on a part-time basis
      - or*
      - (c) by the last day of classes of the fourth semester since first enrolment for this degree if required to complete 28 points and enrolled on a full time basis
      - or*
      - (d) by the last day of classes of the eighth semester since first enrolment for this degree if required to complete 28 points and enrolled on a part-time basis.
    - (iii) In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may extend these periods.
  - or*
  - b MUSIC 796 Musicology (14 points):
    - (i) A student is to present a thesis prepared under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative, which embodies the results obtained by the student in an investigation relating to some branch of music. The thesis topic must be approved by the Head of School of Music before enrolment for the thesis.
    - (ii) A student is to submit two bound copies of the thesis to the Registrar:
      - (a) within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree if required to complete 14 points and enrolled on a full-time basis
      - or*
      - (b) within 24 months of initial enrolment for this degree if required to complete 14 points and enrolled on a part-time basis

- (c) by the last day of classes of the fourth semester since first enrolment for this degree if required to complete 28 points and enrolled on a full-time basis
- or
- (d) by the last day of classes of the eighth semester since first enrolment for this degree if required to complete 28 points and enrolled on a part-time basis.
- (iii) In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may extend these periods.
- or
- c MUSIC 792 Performance (14 points)
  - (i) A student is to present one of the following:
    - (a) a concerto or similar work with orchestra
    - (b) a lecture recital
    - (c) a chamber work or works
    - (d) such other work as has been approved by the Head of School of Music and a concert recital of one to one-and-a-half hours duration, the programme to be approved by the Head of School of Music.
- 5 A student entering this degree with the Degree of Bachelor of Music and required to pass a degree with a total value of 28 points is to complete:
  - a the courses and practical requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) of 14 points
  - and
  - b 14 points from one of the options outlined in Regulation 4 above.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 7 This degree may be awarded with Honours in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1993 regulations for the Degree of Master of Music were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Doctor of Music – DMus

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 A candidate for this degree needs to apply through the Head of School of Music for registration and to:
  - both
  - a have completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Music at The University of Auckland or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b demonstrate adequate training and ability to follow a course of advanced study in musical composition.
- 2 a The Senate or its representative, having received a recommendation from the Head of School of Music, is to determine whether the candidate is to be registered and the date and the conditions of registration.
- b A recommendation is to include:
  - (i) the proposed date of the registration
  - (ii) the name of the supervisor or supervisors from the members of the academic staff
  - (iii) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to follow the proposed programme.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A candidate for this degree has normally to follow a programme of two full-time years from the date of registration and pass a course of advanced study in musical composition.
- b After completing the initial two years of full-time study, a candidate may apply to the Senate or its representative for permission to continue as a part-time student.
- c In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may permit a student, who

has held the accepted prerequisite qualification for over five years, to proceed directly to apply to be examined.

### Structure and Content

- 4 a Each candidate is to complete a course of advanced study MUSIC 894 Composition, to the satisfaction of the supervisor or supervisors and the Head of School of Music.
- b The supervisor is to submit a brief report to the Senate or its representative on the progress of each candidate at the end of each year of study.
- c Should such a report be unfavourable, the Senate or its representative may terminate a candidate's enrolment in this degree.

### Content of Examination

- 5 a A candidate is to submit for examination original and substantial work, consisting of not more than three pieces, each of which may be within any of the following classes:
  - (i) orchestral work
  - (ii) opera
  - (iii) work using vocal, keyboard or ensemble resources
  - (iv) presentation of Music Theatre
  - (v) electronic music.
- b Electronic resources may be included in work within classes (i), (ii), (iii), or (iv) in Regulation 5a.
- 6 With the application to be examined, each candidate is also to submit:
  - a three copies of the work or works to be examined
  - and
  - b a statutory declaration which:
    - (i) states the extent to which the work is the candidate's own and, in the case of joint work, identifies as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own
    - and
    - (ii) states what portion, if any, of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of this or any other tertiary institution
    - and
    - (iii) declares that the work, in substantially its present form, has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other tertiary institution and is not being submitted for a degree or diploma in any other tertiary institution.

### Examination

- 7 A candidate is to apply in writing to the Registrar to be examined for the Degree within five years of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
- 8 After the candidate's application to be examined has been accepted, the Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of School of Music, is to appoint as examiners:
  - a the supervisor or supervisors
  - and
  - b one person who is to be a member of staff of another university in New Zealand
  - and
  - c one person who is resident outside New Zealand provided that the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of School, appoint a further examiner and, in exceptional circumstances, two further examiners.
- 9 Each examiner is to:
  - a assess the submitted work
  - and
  - b report independently to the Senate on the quality of the work
  - and
  - c recommend to the Senate whether the Degree of Doctor of Music should be awarded.
- 10 Where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded, the Examiners may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date.

### Direct Examination

- 11 For a candidate who is eligible under Regulation 3c to apply to be examined directly, the Senate, as soon as possible after the application is lodged, is to appoint a Moderator who is to:
  - a consider the work and submit to the Senate, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which is to indicate whether, in their opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application
  - and

- b state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners.
- 12 The Senate is to consider the Moderator's report and decide whether to proceed with the examination.
- 13 Where it is agreed that the examination is to proceed:
  - a the Senate is to appoint two independent external examiners of whom at least one is normally resident outside New Zealand, without being restricted to the persons recommended under Regulation 11b.
  - b the Senate may appoint an additional examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of The University of Auckland.
  - c the contents of the Moderator's report are not to be communicated to the examiners.
- 14 The duties of each examiner appointed under Regulation 13 are:
  - a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning  
and
  - b to recommend whether or not the degree is to be awarded provided that, where the recommendation is that the degree is not to be awarded, the examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work with further published work at a later date. A resubmission has to be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
- 15 The reports are to be sent to the Registrar who is to refer them to the Moderator.
- 16 The Moderator is to consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report which, together with the reports of the Examiners, is to be placed before the Senate which is to determine whether the Degree may be awarded.
- 17 If the Senate has determined that the examination should not proceed or that the degree should not be awarded (under Regulation 14b), the student may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree before five years or more has elapsed from the date of the Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate is entitled to a refund of half of the fees paid.

#### **Conflicting Examiners' Reports**

- 18 Where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, the Moderator or the Head of School of Music, as appropriate, is to submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner. The Senate is then to appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner who is to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 9 or Regulation 14. This report is to be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

#### **Commencement**

- 19 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1986 regulations for the Degree of Doctor of Music were thereby repealed.

---

## **The Degree of Doctor of Musical Arts – DMA**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

*Note: The regulations governing The Degree of Doctor of Musical Arts are under review. Potential students should check the status of the Regulations with The Graduate Centre prior to registration.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a candidate needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Music of this University with First Class Honours or Second Class Honours Division One, unless an alternative qualification is approved by the Senate under the Admission Regulations  
and
  - b demonstrate, to the satisfaction of the Head of School of Music, adequate training and ability to follow a programme of advanced study in music performance and research.
- 2 a The Senate or its representative, having received a recommendation from the Head of School of Music, is to determine whether the candidate is to be registered and the date and conditions of such registration.
- b A recommendation is to include:
  - (i) the proposed date of registration
  - (ii) the name of the supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff

- (iii) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to follow the proposed programme.

### Duration

- 3 A candidate enrolled for this degree normally has to follow a programme of 36 full-time months (or the part-time equivalent) and pass a programme of advanced study in music performance and research.

### Structure and Content

#### 4 Part I

- a In the first year of registration the candidate will undertake a programme of research in performance, including repertoire and pedagogy relating to the candidate's instrument or performance medium, the presentation of a chamber music recital, and a solo recital.
- b The Head of School of Music may require candidates to undertake and pass courses that are considered necessary for the successful completion of the research.
- c At the end of the first year, the candidate will propose a thesis topic, which must be approved by the Senate, and present a seminar or lecture recital related to the proposed topic.
- d The candidate's registration will be confirmed upon completion of the first year to the satisfaction of the Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of School of Music.

#### 5 Part II

- a In the second year of registration the candidate will continue to undertake supervised research in performance, and on the approved thesis topic.
- b In the course of the year the candidate will present:
  - (i) a public recital of approximately 90 minutes duration
  - (ii) a public chamber music performance of approximately 40 minutes duration
  - (iii) a seminar presentation on the thesis research, in consultation with the thesis supervisor.

#### 6 Part III

- a During the third year of registration the candidate will complete and submit the thesis, which will be related to the candidate's performance interests or specialization.
- b The candidate will give a public performance of a major concerto (or a work of equivalent significance).
- c The candidate will present a final public recital (of approximately 90 minutes of music). The programme must be approved by the Head of School of Music at least two months in advance.

- 7 a The standard of work undertaken during this programme must be to the satisfaction of the Head of School of Music and the supervisor or supervisors.

- b The supervisor or supervisors shall submit an annual report to the Senate on the progress of each candidate at the end of each year of study.

- c Should such a report be unfavourable, the Senate may terminate a candidate's enrolment in this programme, or impose conditions on continuation of registration.

- 8 All public performances except the final public recital will be assessed by panels appointed by the Head of School of Music. The panels will consist of the Head of School of Music or nominee, an internal moderator and one external examiner of international expertise and distinction.

### Examination

- 9 The final examination will consist of two sections, both of which must be passed:

#### Section I

- a Two bound copies of the thesis are to be submitted to the Registrar, embodying the results of the candidate's research.

- b The thesis will be examined by two external examiners, one of which will usually be resident overseas, appointed by the Board of Graduate Studies on the recommendation of the Head of School of Music.

- c Each examiner will report independently to the Board of Graduate Studies on the quality of the thesis and indicate whether the thesis is of an acceptable standard, either as it stands or subject to minor corrections.

- d Where the recommendation is that the thesis is not of an acceptable standard, the examiners may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the thesis at a date to be agreed, but no longer than 12 months from notification of permission to resubmit.
- e Where the examiners' recommendations are conflicting, the Head of School of Music is to submit to the Board of Graduate Studies the name of a further person qualified to act as an examiner.  
  
The Board of Graduate Studies is then to appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional examiner who is to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 9c and 9d. This report is to be considered by the Board of Graduate Studies together with the other reports.
- f On completion of the examination the supervisor of the thesis will be responsible through the Head of School of Music for the deposit of two copies with the University Library.

#### **Section II**

- g The final public recital will be examined by a panel appointed by the Board of Graduate Studies on the recommendation of the Head of School of Music. The panel will consist of an internal moderator who is not the performance supervisor and two external examiners of international expertise and distinction. The recital is to be recorded on audio and/or video tape.
- h The panel will report to the Board of Graduate Studies on the quality of the final recital and whether it meets the standard required for the degree. Where some aspect of the recital is not entirely satisfactory the panel may recommend that the performance be repeated within a period of not less than six months and not more than 12 months.
- i Where there is a dispute among the examiners, the Head of School of Music is to submit to the Board of Graduate Studies the name of a further person qualified to act as an examiner. The Board of Graduate Studies is then to appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional examiner who is to furnish an independent report based on the recording of the recital in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 9h. This report is to be considered by the Board of Graduate Studies together with the other reports. All such performances are to be recorded on audio and/or video tape, which may be used at the discretion of the Head of School of Music in the event of a dispute among the examiners.

#### **Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003.

---

## **Graduate Diploma in Music – GradDipMus**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a Bachelor of Music
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for any other degree deemed relevant and approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - c attained a level of competence approved by the Senate or its representative as:
    - (i) equivalent to that specified in a or b above, and
    - (ii) appropriate for the proposed programme for this diploma.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 3 Each student's programme consists of:
  - a MUSIC 625–627
  - b 4 points from courses offered for the degree of Bachelor of Music.

#### **Practical Requirements**

- 4 a In any course that includes performance work of a practical nature instead of, or as well

as, written work, a student must comply with the requirements for that course as specified by the Head of Department.

- b A student must participate in an approved School of Music performance ensemble throughout enrolment for this degree.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 1996 regulations for the Diploma in Music (Advanced) were thereby repealed.

## REGULATIONS – PERFORMING ARTS

### The Degree of Bachelor of Performing Arts – BPerfArts

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of Senate or its representative. To be admitted a student must meet University entry criteria and have performance skills as required by the chosen major area of study.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a course of study of the equivalent of six full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 Of the 42 points required for this degree a student must pass:
  - a the courses specified for one of the majors listed in the BPerfArts Schedule
  - b up to 12 points in elective courses, of which at least 4 points must be above Stage I. Elective courses are to be selected from:
    - (i) any single subject or programme available for the BA or the BMus
    - or
    - (ii) courses from any one or more majors listed in the BPerfArts Schedule
  - c up to 8 points from courses for any other Bachelor's degree offered at this University.

#### Special Cases

- 4 Students entering this degree with prior learning in areas of languages or performing arts skills may be required:
  - either*
  - a to enrol directly in a corresponding Stage II or Stage III course
  - or*
  - b to take an alternative course approved by the Director of the major. In such cases where a student is required to enrol in an advanced or alternative course (due to prior learning), should the student then fail the advanced or alternative course, the student will be credited with the course originally specified in the Regulations for that major if they are certified by the examiner as having reached the standard of a pass for that course.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002.

## Bachelor of Performing Arts (BPerArts) Schedule

### Subjects available for majors

#### Dance

Major: 36 points from  
**Stage I courses:** DANCE 105, 106, 107, 110, 111, 112  
**Stage II courses:** DANCE 202, 204, 205, 206, 210, 212  
**Stage III courses:** DANCE 307, 308, 309, 310, 312, 314

#### Jazz

Major: 34 points from  
**Stage I courses:** JAZZ 101, 103, 105, 107, 109, 113  
**Stage II courses:** JAZZ 201, 203, 205, 206, 207, 209  
**Stage III courses:** JAZZ 301, 306, 307, 309, 313  
*and*  
 • 4 points from: JAZZ 111, 211, 311 or MUSIC 134 and 135, 234 and 235, 334 and 335

#### Maori Performing Arts

Major: 20 points from  
**Stage I courses:** MAORI 101, 103, 106, 130, 190, ANTHRO 103, JAZZ 103  
**Stage II courses:** MAORI 230, 292, POPMUS 210

**Stage III courses:** MAORI 393, PACIFIC 320, and MAORI 301 or 302 and 4 points from: MAORI 101, 103, 106, 201, 203, 206

#### Pacific Performing Arts

Major: 16 points from  
**Stage I courses:** PACIFIC 110, ANTHRO 103, 104, JAZZ 103  
**Stage II courses:** PACIFIC 201, 211, POPMUS 210  
**Stage III courses:** PACIFIC 310, 311, 320  
*and*  
 • 6 points from a Pacific Language Stream: COOKIS 102, 202, 302; SAMOAN 101, 201, 301; TONGAN 101, 201, 301  
 • 4 points: PACIFIC 210, 301  
 • 4 points from ANTHRO 219, 234, 308, COOKIS 203

#### Popular Music

Major: 34 points from  
**Stage I courses:** POPMUS 101–103, POPMUS 105 or 106, JAZZ 103  
**Stage II courses:** POPMUS 201–203, 207, 210, POPMUS 206 or ANTHRO 234  
**Stage III courses:** POPMUS 301–305, ANTHRO 343

## The Degree of Master of Creative and Performing Arts – MCPA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree or equivalent qualification, including advanced level study and/or extensive practical and professional experience in a subject area deemed appropriate by the Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - b met any specified requirements or prerequisites for admission to one of the majors listed below.
- 2 Admission to this degree requires acceptance for admission to one of the majors available and is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of two years if enrolled full-time or four years if enrolled part-time, and pass at least 28 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 A student for this degree must complete one of the following majors:
  - a **Arts Management**  
 To be admitted for enrolment for Arts Management, a student must have had at least two years of relevant work experience.
    - **2 points:**  
PERFORM 701 Business of Arts
    - **6 points:**  
BUSADMIN 702 Accounting for Decision-makers  
BUSADMIN 712 Leadership in Organizations  
MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers
    - **10 points:**  
ARTSMGT 702 The Arts Milieu  
ARTSMGT 703 The Economics of the Arts  
ARTSMGT 704 Special Issues in Arts Administration  
ARTSMGT 705 Special Project  
ARTSMGT 706 Internship in Arts Management
    - **4 points:** ARTSMGT 791 Dissertation in Arts Management
    - At least 6 points, chosen with the approval of the Arts Management Coordinator, from other approved Master's level courses.

b **Dance Studies**

- **6 points:**  
PERFORM 701 Business of Arts  
DANCE 733 Choreographic Language
- **At least 14 points from:**  
DANCE 730 Dance Intensive  
DANCE 731 Analysis of Movement  
DANCE 732 Directing for Dance  
DANCE 751 Research Methodologies  
DANCE 753 Dance in the 20th Century  
DANCE 765 Special Topic in Dance  
DANCE 766 Special Topic in Dance  
DANCE 767 Special Topic in Dance  
DANCE 768 Special Topic in Dance  
DANCE 769 Special Topic in Dance
- **At least 8 points from:**  
DANCE 770 Dance Project  
DANCE 771 Dance Project  
DANCE 791 Dissertation in Dance  
DANCE 793 Dissertation in Dance

c **Film and Television Production**

- **6 points from:**  
PERFORM 701 Business of Arts  
FTVMS 750 Film and Video Making  
FTVMS 754 Production Management  
FTVMS 758 Scriptwriting
- **2 points from:**  
FTVMS 759 Advanced Scriptwriting: Drama  
FTVMS 769 Advanced Writing: Documentary
- **2 points from:**  
FTVMS 752 Film and Video Making: Drama  
FTVMS 753 Film and Video Making: Documentary
- **4 points from:**  
FTVMS 710 The NZ Television Industry  
FTVMS 721 Film Theory  
FTVMS 722 Film Theory 1  
FTVMS 723 Film Theory 2  
FTVMS 732 Reality TV  
FTVMS 733 Special Topic: Seeing Sex  
FTVMS 736 Special Topic: Visualizing Difference  
FTVMS 737 Digital Media  
FTVMS 738 Media, Sound and Music  
FTVMS 765 Industry Internship  
*or*  
Up to 4 points may be taken from alternative approved Master's level courses in subjects available in the Faculty of Arts, with the approval of the Coordinator of the Programme and of the Heads of Department concerned.
- **14 points:** FTVMS 776 Film or Television Project

d **Sound Recording and Design**

- **14 points from:**  
PERFORM 701 Business of Arts  
SOUND 701-706  
*and*
- **14 points**  
*either*  
6 points from SOUND 707-715  
*and*  
8 points from SOUND 791 Professional Practice and Research or  
SOUND 793 Dissertation in Sound Recording and Design  
*or*  
**14 points:** SOUND 796 Thesis

e **Theatre**

- **2 points:**  
PERFORM 701 Business of Arts
- At least 18 points from:

DRAMA 702 Performance Skills  
 DRAMA 703 Production Practice  
 DRAMA 704 Directing for Live Performance  
 DRAMA 705 Writing for Live Performance  
 THEATRE 701 Directed Study in Theatre  
 THEATRE 720 Special Topic in Theatre  
 THEATRE 721 Special Topic in Theatre  
 THEATRE 722 Special Topic in Theatre  
 and including one of:  
 THEATRE 710 Studio: Special Topic in Practical Theatre  
 THEATRE 770 Studio/Project in Theatre  
 THEATRE 791 Dissertation in Theatre  
 THEATRE 793 Dissertation in Theatre

Additional points may be taken, with the approval of the Theatre and Drama Studies Coordinator, from other approved Master's level courses.

#### Honours

- 5 This degree may be awarded with Honours in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

## REGULATIONS – PLANNING

### The Degree of Bachelor of Planning – BPlan

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student must pass courses from each of Parts I, II, III and IV, as follows:

##### Part I

##### **Core Planning Context courses** (8 points):

PLANNING 100 Introduction to Planning  
 PLANNING 101 Institutional Framework  
 PLANNING 102 Society and Economics  
 PLANNING 103 Environmental Context of Planning

##### **Core Technical Skills courses** (4 points):

PLANNING 110 Fundamental Skills  
 PLANNING 111 Foundations for Policy Analysis

##### **Core Planning studios** (2 points):

PLANNING 120 Studio 1A  
 PLANNING 121 Studio 1B

##### Part II

##### **Core Planning Context courses** (8 points):

PLANNING 200 Settlement Planning  
 PLANNING 201 Introduction to Planning Legislation  
 PLANNING 202 Planning Physical and Social Infrastructure  
 PLANNING 203 Design and the Built Environment

##### **Core Technical Skills course** (2 points):

PLANNING 210 Research and Methods for Policy Analysis

##### **Core Planning studio** (2 points):

PLANNING 220 Studio 2

**Elective courses:**

2 points from PLANNING 230–239 or any courses from other programmes as approved by the Head of Department of Planning

**Part III****Core Planning Context courses (8 points):**

PLANNING 300 Maori and Resource Management  
 PLANNING 301 Planning and Resource Management Law  
 PLANNING 302 Environmental Issues  
 PLANNING 303 Planning and Design

**Core Technical Skills course (2 points):**

PLANNING 310 Methods for Policy Analysis

**Core Planning studios (2 points):**

PLANNING 320 Studio 3A  
 PLANNING 321 Studio 3B

**Elective courses:**

2 points from PLANNING 330–339 or any courses from other programmes as approved by the Head of Department of Planning

**Part IV****Core Planning courses (5 points):**

PLANNING 400 Planning Theories and Professional Practice  
 PLANNING 401 Sustainable Futures  
 PLANNING 402 Gender and Equity in Planning  
 PLANNING 403 Housing

**Core Research course (2 points):**

PLANNING 410 Research Project

**Core Planning studio (2 points):**

PLANNING 420 Studio 4

**Elective courses:**

5 points from PLANNING 430–439, or any courses from BPlan Part III, or any other programmes as approved by the Head of Department of Planning.

- b Each Part must normally be completed before the next Part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass one of those Parts in its entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that Part together with a course or courses towards the next Part.
- c A student who has previously passed courses for another programme that are substantially similar to any of the Part I core courses required under Regulation 2a above may, with the approval of the Head of Department of Planning, take other courses in lieu of those core courses.

**Variations**

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve an application from a student for a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 4 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1993 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning were thereby repealed.

---

## The Degree of Master of Planning Practice – MPlanPrac

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 a In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - either
    - (i) completed the requirements for any Bachelor's or Master's degree of this University other than the Degree of Bachelor of Planning

or

- (ii) gained any other equivalent qualification, provided that the Senate or its representative is satisfied that the prior degree or other equivalent qualification is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Planning.
- b The Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department of Planning, require a student with insufficient background in Planning to take additional courses as a condition of enrolment for Part I of this degree, as under Regulation 4d below.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for a Bachelor's or Master's degree of this University (other than the Bachelor of Planning) but who, for that degree, has:
- a no more than 4 points left to complete  
and
- b for a Bachelor's degree achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 6 points for Stage III or in the final Part for the degree  
or
- c for a Master's degree achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 6 points for the degree

may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree.

However, the remaining points required for the prior degree must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the prior degree not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Planning Practice enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 a A student for this degree needs to pass courses for each of Parts I and II as follows:

##### **Part I**

##### **Core Planning Context courses (8 points):**

PLANNING 700 Planning Theory and Method  
PLANNING 701 Advanced Planning and Design  
PLANNING 702 Legal and Institutional Context of Planning  
PLANNING 704 Resource Management and Maori

##### **Core Technical Skills courses (4 points):**

PLANNING 710 Methods and Practices for Policy Development  
PLANNING 711 Methods for Policy Assessment in Planning

##### **Core Planning studio (2 points):**

PLANNING 720 Studio 1  
PLANNING 721 Studio 2

##### **Part II**

##### **Core Planning courses (9 points):**

PLANNING 703 Infrastructure and Planning  
PLANNING 705 Theories and Practice for the Planning Professional  
PLANNING 706 Futures in the Context of Sustainability  
PLANNING 707 Planning's Response to Gender and Equity Issues  
PLANNING 708 Shelter, Housing and Society  
PLANNING 709 Resource Management and Planning Law

##### **Research course (2 points):**

PLANNING 712 Research Project

##### **Planning studio (2 points):**

PLANNING 722 Studio 3

##### **Elective courses:**

1 point from courses PLANNING 730-741, or Stage III or equivalent from another programme as approved by the Head of Department of Planning.

- b A student may not enrol for Part II until Part I has been completed, unless special approval is given by the Head of Department of Planning.
- c A student who has previously passed courses for another programme that are substantially similar to any of the core courses required under Regulation 4a above may, with the approval of the Head of Department of Planning, take:

- (i) in place of core courses for Part I, courses chosen from:
    - PLANNING 732 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 733 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 734 Special Topic
  - (ii) in place of core courses for Part II, courses chosen from:
    - PLANNING 730 Designing Settlements
    - PLANNING 731 Community and Economic Development
    - PLANNING 735 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 736 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 737 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 738 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 739 Special Topic
- d Where a student is required to take additional courses as a condition of enrolment for Part I, under Regulation 1b above, those courses
- (i) are to be taken for Certificates of Proficiency
- and
- (ii) will include Case Studies seminars PLANNING 740 and PLANNING 741 and any other courses specified by the Head of Department of Planning
- and
- (iii) are to be passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree.

*Note: A student taking PLANNING 740 (2 points) and PLANNING 741 (2 points) will be unable to take the whole of Part I at the same time. The Head of Department of Planning will specify which Part I course is to be deferred and taken with Part II.*

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 6 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Master of Planning Practice were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Master of Planning – MPlan

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning
 or
  - b gained any other equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Planning.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning but who, for that degree, has:
  - a passed courses with a total value of at least 54 points
 and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for Part IV

may, with the approval of the Head of Department enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Planning must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Planning enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The course of study consists of:
  - a PLANNING 797 Thesis (14 points)
 or

- b PLANNING 780 Research Project (8 points)  
and  
6 points in the following Planning courses:  
PLANNING 750 Advanced Planning Theory  
PLANNING 751 Equity Issues and Planning  
PLANNING 752 Advanced Planning Techniques  
PLANNING 753 Planning Issues  
PLANNING 754 Environmental Issues and Planning  
PLANNING 755 Advanced Planning and Resource Management Law  
PLANNING 756 Urban Design and Planning  
PLANNING 757 Heritage Conservation Planning  
PLANNING 758 Development and Planning for Small Economies  
PLANNING 759 Tourism Planning  
PLANNING 760 Special Topic: Urban Sustainability  
PLANNING 761 Special Topic  
PLANNING 762 Special Topic: Development Planning  
PLANNING 763 Special Topic  
PLANNING 764 Special Topic  
PLANNING 765 Special Topic  
PLANNING 766 Special Topic  
PLANNING 767 Special Topic  
PLANNING 768 Special Topic  
PLANNING 769 Special Topic  
PLANNING 770 Case Study Report

### Thesis

- 5 a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The topic of the thesis has to be approved by the Head of Department of Planning prior to initial enrolment for the degree.
- c (i) The thesis is normally to be submitted within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree.  
(ii) For a part-time student the Head of Department of Planning may extend the period for submission to a maximum of 24 months following initial enrolment for this degree.  
(iii) In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a further extension of the period for submission.

### Research Project

- 6 a The research project is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The area of study of the research project has to be approved by the Head of Department of Planning before initial enrolment for the degree.
- c (i) The research project is normally to be submitted within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree.  
(ii) For a part-time student the Head of Department of Planning may extend the period for submission to a maximum of 24 months following initial enrolment for this degree.  
(iii) In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a further extension of the period for submission.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations - Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Master of Planning were thereby repealed.

---

## Regulations – Education

- 131 The Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching) – BEd(Tchg)
- 132 The Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages) – BEd(TESOL)
- 133 The Degree of Master of Education – MEd
- 135 The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt
- 135 The Degree of Doctor of Education – EdD
- 136 Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd
- 136 Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd
- 136 Graduate Diploma in Counselling – GradDipCouns
- 138 Graduate Diploma in Education – GradDipEd
- 139 Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Primary) – GradDipTchg(Primary)
- 140 Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Secondary) – GradDipTchg(Sec)
- 141 Postgraduate Diploma in Education – PGDipEd
- 142 Postgraduate Diploma in Educational Psychology – PGDipEdPsych

### **AMALGAMATION BETWEEN THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND AND THE AUCKLAND COLLEGE OF EDUCATION**

An amalgamation between the Auckland College of Education and the University of Auckland became effective on 1 September 2004. The amalgamation is the culmination of a long association between the two institutions and follows the submission of a Councils-approved case to the Tertiary Education Commission and the Tertiary Action Monitoring Unit, a period of public consultation, and approval by the Minister of Education. The amalgamation offers significant educational benefits including enhanced choice and diversity for students, a centre for excellence in research, and greater breadth and depth in qualifications.

The amalgamation brings the Auckland College of Education and the University's School of Education together as a new Faculty of Education based primarily on the College's Epsom campus. Regional presences such as the Tai Tokerau campus in Whangarei are retained. The Principal of the College, Dr John Langley, has been appointed Dean of the new faculty. A Faculty Advisory Board with members from the former College Council and other key stakeholders advises the Dean on faculty issues. The former College Council has a presence on the University of Auckland Council for a transitional 4 year period.

The programmes of students joining the faculty from the former College continue as part of the University of Auckland's suite of qualifications. A programme of qualification review and development has commenced to achieve an integrated and aligned set of Faculty qualifications from 2006.

Programme regulations for ex-College of Education qualifications can be found in the Faculty of Education Supplementary Regulations Handbook.

Information for students about transition arrangements, faculty services and facilities will be issued in Programme Handbooks and can also be found on the University website ([www.auckland.ac.nz](http://www.auckland.ac.nz)).

Admission and enrolment enquiries should be directed to Admissions. Phone 09 373 7599 ext. 85013/82867.

General inquiries phone 0800 61 62 63.

## REGULATIONS – EDUCATION

### The Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching) – BEd(Tchg)

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

Note: City Campus enrolments in The Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching) are suspended for 2005. Prospective students should contact the Faculty of Education for further advice.

#### Admission

- 1 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of Senate or its representative.  
Note: To be admitted, a student must meet University entry criteria and have personal qualities suitable for becoming a teacher. Personal references and an interview will normally be required.

#### Termination of Enrolment

- 2
  - a If the behaviour of a student in a teaching environment is found, after due and fair inquiry, to be offensive, disruptive or likely to give rise to a risk of harm to the welfare of any pupil, the enrolment of the student in the programme may be terminated by the Senate or its representative and any application to re-enrol may likewise be declined.
  - b A student who is subject to any such inquiry may be suspended by the Senate or its representative from lectures, classes and any teaching placement pending the outcome of the inquiry.
  - c A student whose enrolment is terminated under Regulation 2a may appeal from that decision to the Council or its duly appointed delegate.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 4
  - a The programme consists of:
    - (i) **Part I** (14 points)
      - (a) 2 points: EDPROF 100
      - (b) 6 points: EDCURR 102–104
      - (c) 4 points: EDUC 111, 112
      - (d) 2 points: MAORI 107
    - (ii) **Part II** (14 points)
      - (a) 2 points: EDPROF 200
      - (b) 8 points: EDCURR 106, 202, 203, 204
      - (c) 4 points: EDUC 225, 283
    - (iii) **Part III** (14 points)
      - (a) 2 points: EDPROF 300
      - (b) 8 points: EDCURR 107, 108, 206, 209
      - (c) 2 points from: EDUC 302–384
      - (d) 2 points from: EDUC 302–384, EDCURR 675–677
  - b In exceptional circumstances students may seek the permission of the Senate or its representative to enrol for courses in different combinations from those listed in the parts above.

#### Practical Requirements

- 5
  - a Students must pass both the reflective assignments and the practical teaching components of EDPROF 100, 200 and 300.
  - b Re-enrolment in any of EDPROF 100, 200, or 300 after failing that course requires the permission of the Head of School of Education.
  - c At the discretion of the Senate or its representative, a student who does not pass a Professional Practice course (EDPROF 100, 200, 300) may be declined permission to re-enrol for this degree.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003. The 2000 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching) were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages) – BEd(TESOL)

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student must:
  - a meet University entry criteria for international students, and have personal qualities suitable for becoming a teacher  
and
  - b have completed the specified requirements for selection as approved by The University of Auckland and other participating overseas institutions  
and
  - c
    - (i) if from Institut Perguruan Bahasa-Bahasa Antarabangsa, have successfully completed the Institut Perguruan Bahasa-Bahasa Antarabangsa Foundation Programme  
or
    - (ii) if from another participating overseas institution, have successfully completed a relevant Foundation Programme.

*Note: Personal references and an interview will normally be required.*

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2
  - a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.
  - b In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit a suitably qualified student to enrol directly into a Part II course(s).

### Structure and Content

- 3
  - a Students must pass each of Parts I, II, III and IV as follows:

#### Part I

##### Discipline Studies

- LANGTCHG 100 Linguistics for the Language Teacher
- LANGTCHG 101 Introduction to ELT
- LANGTCHG 102 Classroom Management and School Experience

##### Education Studies

- EDUC 130 Philosophy of Education
- EDUC 131 Human Development
- EDUC 132 Learning and the Learner

##### Cultural Studies

- LANGTCHG 103 Competency in the Mother Tongue
- LANGTCHG 104 Ethics and Civilisation

*Note: All courses as specified in Part I are taught at IPBA, or at other participating overseas institutions.*

#### Part II

##### Discipline Studies

- LINGUIST 203 Applied English Grammar
- LANGTCHG 300 Introduction to English Language Teaching
- ESOL 201 Advanced Academic Written English

##### Education Studies

- EDUC 223 Educational Psychology
- EDUC 225 Curriculum, Assessment and Evaluation
- EDUC 283 Pedagogy – Beyond Skills and Methods

##### One Elective course from the following:

- ENGLISH 111 Literature: An Introduction: From Sonnets to Comics
- ESOL 200 Advanced Academic Spoken English
- ESOL 202 Practical English Phonology
- FTVMS 100 Media Studies
- FTVMS 101 Film Studies

#### Part III

##### Discipline Studies

- LANGTCHG 301 Introduction to TEFL Curriculum

LANGTCHG 303 Instructed Language Learning  
LINGUIST 307 The English Language Worldwide

**Education Studies**

EDUC 348 The Reading Process  
EDUC 384 Information Technology in Education

**Two Elective courses from the following:**

EDUC 312 Learning and Reading Disabilities  
EDUC 345 Special Education  
EDUC 349 Psychology of Learning and Motivation in the Classroom  
EDUC 352 Developmental Psychology: Childhood and Adolescence  
ENGLISH 101 Modern to Post-modern: An Introduction  
LANGTCHG 202 Introductory English Language Analysis for TEFL  
LANGTCHG 302 Practical Language Teaching  
LINGUIST 103 Introduction to English Linguistics  
LINGUIST 200 Syntax and Semantics  
LINGUIST 302 Semantics and Pragmatics  
LINGUIST 305 Acquisition of Language

*Note: All courses as specified in Parts II and III are taught at The University of Auckland.*

**Part IV**

**Discipline Studies**

LANGTCHG 400 Language Curriculum Studies  
LANGTCHG 401 Language Assessment in Schools  
LANGTCHG 402 Linking Theory and Practice in the Language Classroom

**Education Studies**

EDUC 400 Professional Development

**Professional Practice**

LANGTCHG 403 Teaching Practice

*Note: All courses as specified in Part IV are taught at IPBA, or at other participating overseas institutions.*

- b (i) A student may not enrol in Part II until Part I has been completed in its entirety.  
(ii) A student may not enrol in Part IV until Part III has been completed in its entirety.
- c A student who fails one or more courses will fail that Part. A student who has failed any Part shall be permitted to re-enrol for the degree only with approval of the Programme Coordinator.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004.

**The Degree of Master of Education – MEd**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a Postgraduate Diploma in Education or an equivalent postgraduate diploma in Education as approved by the Senate or its representative with an average grade of B- or higher
  - or
  - b if enrolling for the Counselling programme, completed the requirements for a Postgraduate Diploma in Education (Counselling) or an equivalent postgraduate diploma in Education (Counselling) as approved by the Senate or its representative with an average grade of B- or higher.
  - c An interview supported by referees' statements and evidence of practical experience is required for students enrolling in the counselling specialization in this degree. Agencies where counsellors in training are placed wish to ensure that client safety is not compromised. For this reason, the application form for the Counselling programme asks applicants to indicate whether they have any criminal convictions. Furthermore, before any candidate can be accepted into the programme, an official police statement concerning absence or otherwise of criminal convictions will be required.

*Note: The New Zealand Association of Counsellors requires all potential members to give consent to disclosure of criminal convictions before the applicant can seek admission to the profession and practise as a counsellor.*

- 2 A student who has not gained an average of a B- or better as specified in Regulation 1 must have otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Head of School of Education capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the courses proposed to be taken for this degree in order to be admitted to this programme.
- 3 No student on whom the Degree of Master of Arts in Education has already been conferred by The University of Auckland may enrol for this degree unless specific approval is given by the Senate or its representative.
- 4 Admission to the programme requires the approval of the Senate or its representative.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 5 a A student enrolled on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of two consecutive full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points or the equivalent.
- b (i) A student enrolled under Regulations 6a(i) and (ii) on a part-time basis has to follow a programme of four consecutive semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points or the equivalent  
or  
(ii) A student enrolled under Regulation 6a(iii) on a part-time basis has to follow a programme of up to eight consecutive semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points or the equivalent.

*Note: During the transition to new values for University of Auckland courses, 4 points will be credited for each 30 credit module passed at the Auckland College of Education under Regulation 6.*

#### Structure and Content

- 6 a A student enrolled for this degree must choose, in consultation with the School of Education, courses totalling 14 points or the equivalent as follows:
  - (i) **Thesis**  
14 points or the equivalent from: EDPROF 796 Thesis  
or  
ACE 830.803 Thesis  
*Note: Students wishing to enrol for a thesis must have previously passed 4 points or the equivalent in research methodology courses as approved by the School of Education.*  
or
  - (ii) **Research Portfolio**  
14 points or the equivalent from:  
EDUC 797 Research Portfolio  
or  
EDPROF 790, 794, 750  
or  
ACE 830.802, ACE 830.804, ACE 830.801  
*Note: Students wishing to complete a research portfolio must have passed at least 4 points or the equivalent in research methodology courses as approved by the School of Education. Students who have not passed these courses may be permitted to substitute them for courses listed under 6a(ii).*  
or
  - (iii) 14 points or the equivalent from EDUC 702-787, PHIL 605, EDPROF 651, 652, 723-776, MUSED 701, 702, 710, 711, 780; ACE 802.801-830.801, ACE 830.805-866.804
- b Subject to the requirements in Regulation 6a, courses may be selected from the following specialization:  
**Counselling:**  
14 points: EDPROF 790, 794, 750
- c On successful completion of the degree a student may apply to receive a letter from the Head of School of Education acknowledging completion of an area of specialist study as approved by the joint programme board.
- d With the approval of the Head of School of Education, a student may include up to 6 points or the equivalent from master's level courses in a subject other than Education in addition to those listed in Regulation 6a.

**Thesis/Research Portfolio**

- 7 a The thesis or research portfolio is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation relating to an area of Education.
- b (i) The thesis or research portfolio must be submitted as specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
- (ii) The folio of casework must be completed within 12 months of the completion and passing of courses for this degree.

**Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours as specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. A student must complete all requirements for the degree within four consecutive semesters in order to be eligible for Honours.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2003 regulations for the Degree of Master of Education were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt**

*The Master of Educational Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**The Degree of Doctor of Education – EdD**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

*Note: The regulations governing The Degree of Doctor of Education are under review. Potential students should check the status of the Regulations with The Graduate Centre prior to registration.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Education of this University with First Class Honours or Second Class Honours Division One, or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
- or
- (ii) completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Arts in Education of this University with First Class Honours or Second Class Honours Division One or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
- or
- (iii) completed the requirements for the award of a Bachelor's degree in Education of this University with First Class Honours, or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
- or
- (iv) completed a full year's work, at the equivalent of First Class Honours or Second Class Honours Division One level, towards a Master's degree in Education of this University
- and
- b demonstrated an ability to pursue doctoral level research
- and
- c following the completion of a first degree, had at least five years of experience in education or in a comparable and related area as approved by the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years from the date of registration and pass courses and thesis with a total value of 42 points.
- 3 The requirements for this degree are to be completed within not less than three years and not more than seven years of initial registration.

**Registration**

- 4 a The Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Head of School of Education, is to determine whether the student may be registered and the date and conditions of registration.

- b The recommendation for registration is to include:
  - (i) the proposed date of registration
  - (ii) the name of a supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff of The University of Auckland
  - (iii) satisfactory evidence of the student's training and ability to follow the proposed programme
  - (iv) a submission by the student, with the recommendation of the Head of School of Education, comprising a description of the coursework requirement of the degree, and a nominated area of specialization which indicates the thesis topic area in sufficient detail to enable the coursework to be structured.
- c The Senate or its representative may be unable to accept an application for registration from a qualified student if appropriate supervision and resources are not available.

### Structure and Content

- 5 The programme consists of Part I and Part II as follows:
  - a **Part I**
    - (i) EDPROF 841 Research Portfolio (14 points)
  - b **Part II**
    - (i) Before taking Part II a student must complete Part I
    - (ii) An original contribution to the field of study comprising: EDPROF 897 Thesis (28 points).
- 6 a At the end of each year of study for Part II the supervisor is to submit a brief report to the Senate or its representative on the progress of each student.
- b Should such a report be unfavourable, the Senate or its representative may terminate a student's registration in this programme.

### Thesis

- 7 A student is to submit three bound copies of the thesis embodying the results of the research.
- 8 On the recommendation of the Head of School of Education, the Senate is to appoint as examiners:
  - a the supervisor or supervisors
  - and
  - b one person who is a member of the staff of another university, normally within New Zealand, and who is to be the convener
  - and
  - c one other person resident outside New Zealand.

### Examination

- 9 a For Examination procedures and regulations refer to Regulation 9 of the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.
- b Examiners will be requested to include in their report comment on the original contribution of the thesis to professional practice in the candidate's field; and the extent to which it demonstrates the candidate's knowledge in the professional field or fields to which the research subject belongs.

### Variation

- 10 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform with these regulations.

### Commencement

- 11 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Doctor of Education were thereby repealed.

## Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd

## Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd

*Detailed regulations for the above diplomas are listed in the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## Graduate Diploma in Counselling – GradDipCouns

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree  
or  
(ii) completed the requirements for a university diploma  
or  
(iii) completed a qualification in teaching, counselling, nursing, social work or equivalent professional qualification approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and

  - b had not less than three years of practical experience in that profession or a related profession.
  - c Agencies where counsellors in training are placed wish to ensure that client safety is not compromised. For this reason, the application form for this programme asks applicants to indicate whether they have any criminal convictions. Furthermore, before any candidate can be accepted into the programme an official police statement concerning absence or otherwise of criminal convictions will be required.  
*Note: The New Zealand Association of Counsellors requires all potential members to give consent to disclosure of criminal convictions before the applicant can seek admission to the profession and practice as a counsellor.*  
  
*Note: Normally an interview supported by referees' statements and evidence of training and experience in relevant work such as teaching, evidence of personnel work or community counselling is required under Regulation 1b.*
- 2 Admission to the programme for this diploma is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points.
- b A student whose application to enrol for this diploma on a part-time basis is accepted, is to complete the requirements within 36 months of the initial enrolment.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of Part I and Part II as follows:
  - a **Part I**  
**Core courses:**
    - (i) 8 points from EDPROF 744, 746, 747, 749**Elective courses:**
    - (ii) at least 6 points from EDPROF 742, 743, 745, 748, 750 and other courses at Master's level in the subject Education as listed in the schedules to the Degrees of Master of Education and Master of Arts and courses at Stage III or Master's level in a subject other than Education.
  - b **Part II**  
EDPROF 691 Folio of Casework (Counselling) (7 points):
    - (i) comprises 500 hours of counselling related activities which involve face to face counselling work in an approved setting under supervision
    - (ii) is to be completed and submitted to the Registrar in one semester of full-time study or not more than two semesters of part-time study.
- 5 Part I must be completed before Part II may be taken.

**Reassignment of Points**

- 6 A student who has passed courses for a Diploma in Counselling Theory that are available for this diploma and has not been awarded the Diploma in Counselling Theory and is eligible to be admitted to this programme may, at the discretion of the Head of School of Education, reassign those courses to this diploma.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Distinction**

- 8 At the discretion of the Senate this diploma may be awarded with Distinction if the student's overall grade is sufficiently high and the requirements for the diploma are completed within 18 months of initial enrolment for a student enrolled on a full-time basis, and 36 months otherwise.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 1996 regulations for the Diploma in Counselling were thereby repealed.

**Graduate Diploma in Education – GradDipEd**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree  
or
  - (ii) completed the requirements for a university diploma approved by the Senate in any particular case  
or
  - (iii) completed a professional qualification in teaching, counselling, or relevant other profession approved by the Senate in any particular case
- and
- b not less than three years' teaching experience or other professional experience
- and
- c satisfied the Head of the School of Education that they have appropriate training and experience to undertake the programme.
- Note: Normally an interview supported by referees' statements and evidence of training and experience in relevant work is required.*
- 2 Admission to the programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this graduate diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses as specified for one of the programmes in Regulation 4 below.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 a **Adult Education**
- Core courses:**  
8 points: EDUC 753, 601, 381
- Elective courses:**  
At least 6 points from EDUC 789, 602, and/or any other courses at Master's and Stage III levels in the subject Education as approved by the Head of School of Education.
- b **Counselling Theory**
- Core courses:**  
8 points: EDPROF 744, 746, 747, 749
- Elective courses:**  
At least 6 points from EDPROF 742, 743, 745, 748, 750 and other courses at Master's level in the subject Education and courses at Stage III or above in a subject other than Education.
- c **Educational Studies**  
At least 10 points from courses in Education approved by the Head of School of Education, including at least 6 points at Stage III or above.  
Up to 4 points, of which no more than 2 points may be below Stage III, from courses at Stage II or above in appropriate other subjects approved by the Head of School of Education.
- d **Special Education**  
10 points: EDUC 342, 345, EDPROF 630–632 and 4 points from courses in Education approved by the Head of School of Education.
- e **Special Needs Resource Teaching**
- Part I**  
(i) 6 points: EDPROF 633, 634
- Part II**  
(ii) 8 points: EDPROF 735, 736  
(iii) Admission to Part II requires prior successful completion of Part I.

f **Teacher Education**

**Core courses:**

8 points: EDPROF 730, 731

**Elective courses:**

At least 6 points from courses at Stage III and above in Education as approved by the Head of School of Education.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal course of study which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 2000 regulations for the Graduate Diploma in Education were thereby repealed.

## Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Primary) – GradDipTchg(Primary)

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- either*
- a a university degree or a university diploma as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- or*
- b a qualification recognized by the Teacher Registration Board as acceptable for provisional registration as a teacher
- and*
- c have met the approved criteria required as suitable for pre-service teacher education. Personal references and an interview will normally be required.

**Termination of Enrolment**

- 2 a If the behaviour of a student in a teaching environment is found, after due and fair inquiry, to be offensive, disruptive or likely to give rise to a risk of harm to the welfare of any pupil, the enrolment of the student in the programme may be terminated by the Senate or its representative and any application to re-enrol may likewise be declined.
- b A student who is subject to any such inquiry may be suspended by the Senate or its representative from lectures, classes and any teaching placement pending the outcome of the inquiry.
- c A student whose enrolment is terminated under Regulation 2a may appeal from that decision to the Council or its duly appointed delegate.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of 18 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 a The programme for this diploma consists of three parts as follows:
- Part I** (8 points):  
EDPROF 601 Educational Studies  
EDPROF 602 Learning and Teaching 1  
EDPROF 603 Professional Practice in Language and Languages (including Te Reo)  
EDPROF 604 Professional Practice in Mathematics
- Part II** (6 points):  
EDPROF 609 Learning and Teaching 2  
EDPROF 610 Professional Practice in Science and Technology  
EDPROF 611 Professional Practice in Social Studies, the Arts, and Health and Physical Education
- Part III** (4 points):  
EDPROF 612 The Practicum  
EDPROF 614 Reflective Professional Practice
- b With the permission of the Senate or its representative some points within Parts I, II, and III may be taken concurrently.

**Practical Requirements**

- 5 In any course that includes the on-course requirements of planning, practical teaching, and content knowledge and resources, a student must obtain passes in each of the three components in order to have passed that course as a whole.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 1997 regulations for the Diploma in Teaching (Primary) were thereby repealed.

**Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Secondary) – GradDipTchg(Sec)**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:  
*either*  
 a a university degree or a university diploma as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
*or*  
 b a qualification recognized by the Teacher Registration Board as acceptable for provisional registration as a teacher  
*and*  
 c have met the approved criteria required as suitable for pre-service teacher education. Personal references and an interview will normally be required.

**Termination of Enrolment**

- 2 a If the behaviour of a student in a teaching environment is found, after due and fair inquiry, to be offensive, disruptive or likely to give rise to a risk of harm to the welfare of any pupil, the enrolment of the student in the programme may be terminated by the Senate or its representative and any application to re-enrol may likewise be declined.  
 b A student who is subject to any such inquiry may be suspended by the Senate or its representative from lectures, classes and any teaching placement pending the outcome of the inquiry.  
 c A student whose enrolment is terminated under Regulation 2a may appeal from that decision to the Council or its duly appointed delegate.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year (two semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme for this diploma consists of two sections, Teaching Subjects and Professional and Educational Studies, as follows:

**Professional and Educational Studies (7 points):**

EDPROF 622 Professional Practice (2 points)

EDPROF 624 Educational Studies (3 points)

EDPROF 625 Classroom Teaching (2 points)

**Teaching Subjects 7 Points from:**

**Schedule A:** courses for teaching across 3-5 levels of Secondary School, EDCURR 601-608, 611-613, 619, 620, 661-668

**Schedule B:** courses for teaching across 1-2 levels of Secondary School, EDCURR 621-677

**Schedule C:** EDCURR 690

**Practical Requirements**

- 5 In any course that includes the on-course requirements of planning, practical teaching, and content knowledge and resources, a student must obtain passes in each of the three components in order to have passed that course as a whole.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 1997 regulations for the Diploma in Teaching (Secondary) were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Education – PGDipEd**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree in Education from The University of Auckland or an equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for an Advanced Diploma in Teaching as approved by the Senate or its representative and have three years' teaching experience
  - or
  - c completed the requirements for a Graduate Diploma in Education from The University of Auckland or an equivalent graduate diploma as approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - d if enrolling for the Special Needs Resource Teaching programme, completed the requirements for an Advanced Diploma of Teaching, or a Diploma of Teaching and a Diploma in the Education of Students with Special Teaching Needs, as approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - e if enrolling in the Counselling programme, completed the requirements for a Graduate Diploma in Education from The University of Auckland or an equivalent graduate diploma as approved by the Senate or its representative and had not less than three years practical experience in teaching, counselling, nursing, social work or equivalent profession as approved by the Senate or its representative. An interview supported by referees' statements and evidence of practical experience is required. Agencies where counsellors in training are placed wish to ensure that client safety is not compromised. For this reason, the application form for the Counselling programme asks applicants to indicate whether they have any criminal convictions. Furthermore, before any candidate can be accepted into the programme, an official police statement concerning absence or otherwise of criminal convictions will be required.  
*Note: The New Zealand Association of Counsellors requires all potential members to give consent to disclosure of criminal convictions before the applicant can seek admission to the profession and practise as a counsellor.*
- 2 No student on whom the Degree of Master of Arts in Education has already been conferred by The University of Auckland may enrol for this diploma unless specific approval is given by the Senate or its representative.
- 3 Admission to the programme requires the approval of the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 4 a A student enrolled for this diploma on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of two consecutive full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points or the equivalent.
- b A student enrolled for this diploma on a part-time basis has to follow a programme of up to eight consecutive semesters and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points or the equivalent.
- c Up to 4 points or the equivalent may be credited from a completed Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Primary) or Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Secondary) from The University of Auckland, a Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Primary) or Graduate Diploma in Teaching (Secondary) from the Auckland College of Education, or the equivalent into this qualification.  
*Note: During the transition to new values for University of Auckland courses, 4 points will be credited for each 30 credit module passed at the Auckland College of Education under Regulation 5.*

**Structure and Content**

- 5 a A student for this diploma must choose, in consultation with the School of Education, courses totalling at least 14 points or the equivalent as follows:  
14 points from EDUC 702-787, PHIL 605, EDPROF 651, 652, 723-776, MUSED 701, 702, 710, 711, 780; ACE 802.801-830.801, ACE 830.805-866.804

- or
- b A student wishing to enrol in one of the following two subject areas must receive approval for study from the School of Education.
- (i) **Special Needs Resource Teaching**  
Students enrolled for this option need to pass at least 14 points from:  
6 points: EDPROF 733, 734  
8 points: EDPROF 735, 736  
or
- (ii) **Counselling**  
Students enrolled for this option need to pass at least 14 points or the equivalent from:  
8 points: EDPROF 744, 746, 747, 749  
6 points from: EDUC 702-787, PHIL 605, EDPROF 651, 652, 723-776, MUSED 701, 702, 710, 711, 780; ACE 802.801-830.801, ACE 830.805-866.804
- c With the approval of the Head of the School of Education, a student may include up to 6 points or the equivalent from master's level courses in a subject other than Education in addition to those listed in Regulation 5a.

*Note: A student wishing to enrol in a thesis within the Master of Education degree following the award of this diploma should note that completion of 4 points or the equivalent of research methodology courses or modules as approved by the School of Education is required.*

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2003 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Education were thereby repealed.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Educational Psychology – PGDipEdPsych

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for a Master's degree approved by the Senate or its representative  
and
- b passed the following courses, or others deemed equivalent by the Senate or its representative:
- (i) at least 10 points in courses in Education having a substantial content in Educational Psychology  
and
- (ii) 8 points: EDUC 757, EDPROF 651, 652  
and
- (iii) undergraduate courses in Psychology having a total value of at least 10 points.

#### Duration and Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this postgraduate diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this postgraduate diploma are to be completed within 24 months for a student enrolled part-time unless the Senate or its representative extends this period.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme for this postgraduate diploma is EDPROF 697 Internship consisting of:
- a satisfactory participation in, and completion of, approved work in psychological, special educational, and social work services
- b seminars in casework, projects and professional practice
- c a pass in a comprehensive oral examination covering the work of the whole course.

#### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999.

---

## Regulations – Engineering

The Degree of Bachelor of Engineering – BE	144
Bachelor of Engineering (BE) Schedule	144
The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech	148
The Degree of Master of Engineering – ME	148
Master of Engineering (ME) Schedule	149
The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt	150
The Degree of Master of Engineering Studies – MEngSt	151
The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR	153
Graduate Diploma in Engineering – GradDipEng	153
Graduate Diploma in Engineering (Transportation) – GradDipEng(Transp)	154
Graduate Diploma in Operations Research – GradDipOR	155
Postgraduate Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology – PGCertGeothermTech	155
PostGraduate Certificate in Light Metals Reduction Technology – PGCertLMRTech	155

## REGULATIONS – ENGINEERING

### The Degree of Bachelor of Engineering – BE

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student needs to pass Part I, and each of Parts II, III and IV for one of the areas of specialization listed in the Bachelor of Engineering Schedule:
  - b (i) A student will not normally be permitted to enrol for Part II unless Part I has been completed, or to enrol for Part III unless Part II has been completed, or to enrol for Part IV unless Part III has been completed.
  - (ii) However, a student who has failed to pass one of those Parts in its entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that Part together with a course or courses towards the next Part.
  - (iii) In no case will a student be permitted to enrol for Part III unless Part I has been completed, or to enrol for Part IV unless Part II has been completed.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 3 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Practical Requirements

- 4 a A student enrolled for this degree must satisfactorily carry out such practical work in ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice and ENGGEN 499 Practical Work, and laboratory requirements, as prescribed by the Faculty of Engineering.
  - b A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of Faculty of Engineering confirmation that the student has complied with the requirements of Regulation 4a.

#### Honours

- 5 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's average grade over the entire course is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering were thereby repealed.

### Bachelor of Engineering (BE) Schedule

Part I – for all BE students	Points	Biomedical Engineering	Points
CHEMMAT 121 Materials Science	2	<b>Part II</b>	
ELECTENG 101 Electrical Engineering Systems	2	BIOSCI 201 Cellular and Molecular Biology	2
ENGGEN 104 Professional Development 1	1	ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 110 Engineering Design 1A	1	ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 111 Engineering Design 1B	1	ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGGEN 121 Engineering Mechanics	2	ENGSCI 212 Mathematical Modelling 2ES	2
ENGSCI 111 Mathematical Modelling 1	2	ENGSCI 231 Computational Techniques 1	1
ENGSCI 131 Engineering Computing	1	ENGSCI 271 Modelling in Bioengineering	1
2 points approved elective from another faculty		ENGSCI 272 Bioinstrumentation 1	2
		ENGSCI 274 Mechanics of Biomaterials	2
		PHYSIOL 210 Human Physiology: The Survival Machine	2

**Part III**

ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 312 Mathematical Modelling 3ES	1
ENGSCI 321 Probability and Statistics	1
ENGSCI 331 Computational Techniques 2	2
ENGSCI 332 Computer Systems and Control	2
ENGSCI 341 Foundations of Continuum Mechanics	1
ENGSCI 371 Continuum Modelling in Bioengineering	2
ENGSCI 372 Bioinstrumentation 2	1
PHYSIOL 302 Biophysics of Nerve and Muscle	2

**Part IV**

ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
ENGSCI 400 Project	3
ENGSCI 471 Computational Methods for Bioengineering	2
ENGSCI 472 Whole Organ Modelling	2

**Elective Courses: 6 points selected from the following:**

ANATOMY 751 Advanced Biomedical Imaging	2
BIOSCI 350 Protein Structure and Function	2
CHEMMAT 423 Materials Engineering	2
ENGSCI 414 Mathematical Modelling 4A	2
PHYSIOL 301 Molecular Physiology	2
PHYSIOL 304 Cardiovascular Physiology	2
SPORTSCI 303 Physical Ergonomics and Rehabilitation	2
SPORTSCI 306 Technique Assessment in Sport	2
Up to 4 points approved from other programmes	

**Chemical and Materials Engineering**

Points

**Part II**

CHEMMAT 211 Introduction to Process Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 212 Energy and Processing	2
CHEMMAT 213 Transfer Processes 1	2
CHEMMAT 221 Materials	2
CHEMMAT 231 Process Design 1	1
CHEMMAT 241 Applied Chemistry 1	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2

**Part III**

CHEMMAT 311 Process Dynamics and Control	1
CHEMMAT 312 Transfer Processes 2	2
CHEMMAT 315 Chemical Reactor Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 316 Particulate Technology	1
CHEMMAT 321 Materials Performance	1
CHEMMAT 331 Process Design 2	2
CHEMMAT 341 Applied Chemistry 2	1
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2

**Part IV**

CHEMMAT 411 Advanced Process Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 421 Materials Processing	1
CHEMMAT 431 Design Project	3
CHEMMAT 441 Project	3
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0

**Elective courses: 4 points approved by the Head of Department or selected from the following:**

CHEMMAT 361 Engineering Biotechnology	2
CHEMMAT 422 Non-metallic Materials	2
CHEMMAT 423 Materials Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 424 Electronic Materials and their Applications	2
CHEMMAT 461 Air Quality Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 462 Technology for Sustainability	2
CHEMMAT 463 Food Process Engineering	2

**Civil Engineering**

Points

**Part II**

CIVIL 201 Land Information Systems	1
CIVIL 210 Structural Mechanics 1	2
CIVIL 211 Structural Mechanics 2	2
CIVIL 220 Introductory Engineering Geology	1
CIVIL 221 Geomechanics 1	1
CIVIL 230 Fluid Mechanics 1	1
CIVIL 250 Civil Engineering Materials	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENVENG 243 Introduction to Environmental Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2

**Part III**

CIVIL 312 Structural Design 1	2
CIVIL 313 Structural Design 2	2
CIVIL 322 Geomechanics 2	1
CIVIL 323 Foundation Engineering	1
CIVIL 331 Hydraulic Engineering	1
CIVIL 332 Fluid Mechanics 2	1
CIVIL 360 Transportation Engineering 1	1
CIVIL 361 Transportation Engineering 2	1
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2

**Part IV**

CIVIL 401 Civil and Resource Administration	1
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0

**Elective courses: 12 points selected from Environmental Engineering Part IV electives and/or the following:**

CIVIL 403 Special Topic in Civil Engineering 1	2
CIVIL 404 Special Topic in Civil Engineering 2	2
CIVIL 405 History of Engineering	1
CIVIL 408 Project	4
CIVIL 409 Construction Management	2
CIVIL 411 Structural Design 3	2
CIVIL 416 Structural Mechanics 3	2
CIVIL 420 Geomechanics 3	2
CIVIL 451 Timber Engineering	2
CIVIL 460 Traffic Systems Design	1
CIVIL 461 Highway and Transportation Design	2
CIVIL 482 Water Resources Engineering	2
ENVENG 324 Slope Engineering	1
ENVENG 333 Engineering Hydrology	2
ENVENG 405 Environmental Engineering Process Design	1
GEOLOGY 372 Case Histories in Engineering Geology	2
Up to 4 points approved from other programmes	

**Computer Systems Engineering**

Points

**Part II**

CHEMMAT 201 Materials for Electrical Engineering	1
ELECTENG 202 Circuits and Systems	2
ELECTENG 203 Software Design 1E	1
ELECTENG 204 Engineering Electromagnetics 1	2
ELECTENG 205 Computer Systems 1E	2
ELECTENG 206 Engineering Design 2E	1
ELECTENG 207 Microelectronic Circuits	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2

**Part III**

COMPSCI 313 Computer Organization	2
COMPSYS 301 Engineering Design 3CS	2
COMPSYS 302 Software Design 2CS	2
ELECTENG 303 Systems and Control	2

ELECTENG 304 Computer Systems 2E	2
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2
<b>Part IV</b>	
COMPSYS 401 Project	3
ELECTENG 423 Computer Systems 3E	2
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
<b>Elective courses: 4 points selected from the following:</b>	
COMPSCI 314 Data Communications Fundamentals	2
COMPSCI 340 Operating Systems	2
COMPSYS 402 Embedded Real-time Systems	2
2 points approved from Computer Science Stage III courses	2
<b>4 points selected from the following:</b>	
ELECTENG 302 Engineering Electromagnetics 2	2
ELECTENG 305 Electronic Devices and Technology	2
ELECTENG 412 Communication Systems	2
ELECTENG 413 Signal Processing	2
ELECTENG 422 Control Systems	2
2 points approved from other programmes	

**Electrical and Electronic Engineering****Points**

<b>Part II</b>	
CHEMMAT 201 Materials for Electrical Engineering	1
ELECTENG 202 Circuits and Systems	2
ELECTENG 203 Software Design 1E	1
ELECTENG 204 Engineering Electromagnetics 1	2
ELECTENG 205 Computer Systems 1E	2
ELECTENG 206 Engineering Design 2E	1
ELECTENG 207 Microelectronic Circuits	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2
<b>Part III</b>	
ELECTENG 301 Engineering Design 3E	2
ELECTENG 302 Engineering Electromagnetics 2	2
ELECTENG 303 Systems and Control	2
ELECTENG 304 Computer Systems 2E	2
ELECTENG 305 Electronic Devices and Technology	2
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2
<b>Part IV</b>	
ELECTENG 401 Project	3
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
<b>Elective courses: 10 points selected from the following:</b>	
ELECTENG 411 Power Systems	2
ELECTENG 412 Communication Systems	2
ELECTENG 413 Signal Processing	2
ELECTENG 414 Power Electronics	2
ELECTENG 415 Special Topics 1	2
ELECTENG 421 Radio Systems	2
ELECTENG 422 Control Systems	2
ELECTENG 423 Computer Systems 3E	2
ELECTENG 424 Special Topics 2	2
2 points approved from other programmes	

**Engineering Science****Points**

<b>Part II</b>	
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 212 Mathematical Modelling 2ES	2
ENGSCI 231 Computational Techniques 1	1
ENGSCI 232 Computer Systems	1
ENGSCI 255 Modelling in Operations Research	2
ENGSCI 261 Engineering Design 2ES	1
ENGSCI 262 Modelling in Engineering	1

MECHENG 211 Thermofluids	2
MECHENG 242 Mechanics of Materials	2

**Part III**

ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 312 Mathematical Modelling 3ES	1
ENGSCI 321 Probability and Statistics	1
ENGSCI 331 Computational Techniques 2	2
ENGSCI 332 Computer Systems and Control	2
ENGSCI 341 Foundations of Continuum Mechanics	1
ENGSCI 342 Modelling in Continuum Mechanics	2
ENGSCI 361 Engineering Design 3ES	1
ENGSCI 391 Optimization in Operations Research	2

**Part IV**

ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
ENGSCI 400 Project	3

**Elective courses: 10 points selected from the following:**

ENGSCI 401 Special Topic in Engineering Science 1	2
ENGSCI 402 Special Topic in Engineering Science 2	1
ENGSCI 403 Special Topic in Engineering Science 3	2
ENGSCI 404 Special Topic in Engineering Science 4	1
ENGSCI 414 Mathematical Modelling 4A	2
ENGSCI 415 Mathematical Modelling 4B	1
ENGSCI 416 Mathematical Modelling 4C	1
ENGSCI 440 Continuum Mechanics	2
ENGSCI 441 Bioengineering	1
ENGSCI 442 Fluid Mechanics	1
ENGSCI 443 Solid Mechanics	1
ENGSCI 450 Computational Techniques 3A	2
ENGSCI 451 Computational Techniques 3B	1
ENGSCI 452 Computational Techniques 3C	1
ENGSCI 453 Advanced Computer Systems	1
ENGSCI 460 Operations Research	2
ENGSCI 461 Advanced Simulation	1
ENGSCI 462 Applied Statistics	1
ENGSCI 463 Scheduling	1
ENGSCI 464 Stochastic Programming	1
Up to 3 points approved from other programmes	

**Environmental Engineering****Points**

<b>Part II</b>	
CIVIL 201 Land Information Systems	1
CIVIL 220 Introductory Engineering Geology	1
CIVIL 221 Geomechanics 1	1
CIVIL 230 Fluid Mechanics 1	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2
ENVENG 201 Resource Engineering	2
ENVENG 210 Solid Mechanics and Materials	2
ENVENG 244 Environmental Engineering 1	2

**Part III**

CIVIL 322 Geomechanics 2	1
CIVIL 331 Hydraulic Engineering	1
CIVIL 332 Fluid Mechanics 2	1
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2
ENVENG 324 Slope Engineering	1
ENVENG 333 Engineering Hydrology	2
ENVENG 341 Environmental Engineering 2	2
ENVENG 342 Environmental Engineering Design	2

**Part IV**

CIVIL 401 Civil and Resource Administration	1
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
ENVENG 406 Project	4

**Elective courses: 8 points selected from Civil Engineering Part IV electives and/or the following:**

CHEMMAT 316 Particulate Technology	1
CIVIL 323 Foundation Engineering	1
CIVIL 460 Traffic Systems Design	1
CIVIL 461 Highway and Transportation Design	2
CIVIL 482 Water Resources Engineering	2
ENVENG 402 Special Topic in Environmental Engineering 1	2
ENVENG 403 Special Topic in Environmental Engineering 2	2
ENVENG 405 Environmental Engineering Process Design	1
ENVENG 407 Special Topic in Environmental Engineering 3	1
ENVENG 419 Design Project	2
ENVENG 441 Water and Wastewater Engineering	2
ENVENG 443 Integrated Solid Waste Management	2
GEOLOGY 372 Case Histories in Engineering Geology	2
LAW 457 Environmental Law for Non-lawyers	2
Up to 4 points approved from other programmes	

MECHENG 446 Management for Wood Products Manufacturing (not available before 2006)	2
MECHENG 451 Technology Management	2

**Mechanical Engineering**

Points

**Part II**

ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2
MECHENG 211 Thermofluids	2
MECHENG 222 Dynamics	2
MECHENG 232 Engineering Design II M1	1
MECHENG 233 Engineering Design II M2	1
MECHENG 242 Mechanics of Materials	2
2 points approved elective from other programmes or	
MECHENG 223 Machines and Mechanisms	2

**Part III**

ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2
MECHENG 311 Thermal Engineering	2
MECHENG 322 Control Systems	2
MECHENG 324 Machine Dynamics	1
MECHENG 332 Engineering Design III M1	1
MECHENG 333 Engineering Design III M2	1

and

either

MECHENG 341 Strength of Materials	1
MECHENG 342 Manufacturing Processes	1
MECHENG 351 Manufacturing Systems	1

or

MECHENG 343 Wood Physics and Mechanics	1
MECHENG 344 Mechanical Wood Processing	2

**Part IV**

ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
MECHENG 431 Engineering Design 4M	2
MECHENG 461 Project	3

**Elective courses: 8 points approved by the Head of Department or selected from the following:**

MECHENG 401 Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering 1	2
MECHENG 402 Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering 2	2
MECHENG 403 Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering 3	1
MECHENG 404 Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering 4	1
MECHENG 411 Building Services	2
MECHENG 412 Aerohydrodynamics	2
MECHENG 413 Industrial Process and Energy Technology	2
MECHENG 421 Dynamics, Vibrations and Spectral Analysis	2
MECHENG 423 Digital and Computer Control	2
MECHENG 425 Acoustics for Engineers	2
MECHENG 441 Composite Materials	2
MECHENG 443 Manufacturing Technology	2
MECHENG 444 Chemical Wood Processing (not available before 2006)	2
MECHENG 445 Woodfibre Composites (not available before 2006)	2

**Mechatronics**

Points

**Part II**

ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2
MECHENG 211 Thermofluids	2
MECHENG 222 Dynamics	2
MECHENG 232 Engineering Design II M1	1
MECHENG 233 Engineering Design II M2	1
MECHENG 242 Mechanics of Materials	2
ELECTENG 208 Electric Circuit Analysis or 2 points from an approved elective	2

**Part III**

ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2
MECHENG 312 Mechatronics 1	2
MECHENG 313 Real Time Software Design	2
MECHENG 322 Control Systems	2
MECHENG 324 Machine Dynamics	1
MECHENG 332 Engineering Design III M1	1
MECHENG 341 Strength of Materials	1
MECHENG 351 Manufacturing Systems	1

**Part IV**

ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
MECHENG 405 Mechatronics 2	2
MECHENG 406 Mechatronics Design	2
MECHENG 407 Mechatronics Project 1	1
MECHENG 408 Mechatronics Project 2	2
MECHENG 423 Digital and Computer Control	2
Elective courses: 4 points approved by the Head of Department	

**Software Engineering**

Points

**Part II**

ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
SOFTENG 206 Engineering Design 2	2
SOFTENG 211 Software Engineering Theory	2
SOFTENG 250 Introduction to Software Engineering	2
SOFTENG 251 Software Engineering 1	2
SOFTENG 252 Computer Organization	2
SOFTENG 253 Algorithms	2

**Part III**

ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
SOFTENG 306 Engineering Design 3	2
SOFTENG 325 Software Architecture	2
SOFTENG 350 Software Engineering 2	2
SOFTENG 363 Computer Architecture	2
SOFTENG 364 Computer Networks	2
SOFTENG 370 Operating Systems	2

**Part IV**

ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
SOFTENG 401 Project in Software Engineering	3
SOFTENG 450 Software Engineering 3	2

**Elective courses: 8 points approved by the Director of Software Engineering or selected from the following:**

SOFTENG 461 Special Topic in Software Engineering 1	2
SOFTENG 462 Special Topic in Software Engineering 2	2
COMPSYS 402 Embedded Real-time Systems	2
Up to 4 points selected from approved Computer Science Stage 3 courses	

## The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech

*The Degree of Bachelor of Technology is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## The Degree of Master of Engineering – ME

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering at a level deemed satisfactory by the Dean of Faculty of Engineering
  - or
  - b
    - (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
    - and
    - (ii) passed the courses required for the Degree of Master of Engineering Studies with an average grade of B or higher in 6 points (including at least 4 points at graduate level) at the completion of one semester.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of Faculty of Engineering, approve admission of a student whose average grade is less than B, or waive any other prerequisites, as it thinks fit.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 Each student's programme must consist of:
  - a
    - (i) 14 points from:
      - CHEMMAT 796 ME Thesis (Chemical and Materials)
      - CIVIL 796 ME Thesis (Civil)
      - COMPSYS 796 ME Thesis (Computer Systems)
      - ELECTENG 796 ME Thesis (Electrical and Electronic)
      - ENGGEN 796 ME Thesis (Engineering)
      - ENGSCI 796 ME Thesis (Engineering Science)
      - ENVENG 796 ME Thesis (Environmental)
      - MECHENG 796 ME Thesis (Mechanical)
      - SOFTENG 796 ME Thesis (Software Engineering)
    - (ii) 1 point: ME Research Proposal in the relevant thesis subject as listed in the Master of Engineering Schedule.
  - and
  - b
    - (i) 6 points from courses listed in the schedule to these regulations.
    - (ii) These courses are to be chosen in consultation with the relevant Head of Department.
    - (iii) The relevant Heads of Departments may approve a course or courses from any offered:
      - (a) for Part IV of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering with a total value of not more than 2 points
      - or
      - (b) in any other faculty at Stage III or for Part IV or Part V or equivalent with a total value of not more than 2 points
      - or
      - (c) in any other faculty at Master's level with a total value of not more than 4 points.

### Thesis

- 5
  - a The thesis is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation on a topic approved by the Head of Department.
  - b The investigation is to be carried out by the student at the University under the direct supervision of a member of the academic staff, provided that:
    - (i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as the Senate or its representative may determine
    - (ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate or its representative may determine.

- c The supervisor is to be the principal examiner.
- d At the discretion of the Head of Department the candidate may be required to attend an oral examination.
- e The thesis is to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 7 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where the student's average grade is sufficiently high.
- b Honours may normally only be awarded if the requirements for this degree are completed by the end of classes for the third semester following initial enrolment, or such longer period as the Senate or its representative approves in exceptional circumstances.
- c Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Master of Engineering were thereby repealed.

## Master of Engineering (ME) Schedule

	Points		Points
		CIVIL 768 Studies in Transportation 1	2
		CIVIL 769 Studies in Transportation 2	2
CHEMMAT 712 Chemical Engineering Seminar	2	CIVIL 780 Advanced Water Resources	2
CHEMMAT 713 Studies in Chemical Engineering	2	CIVIL 787 Project X (Civil)	2
CHEMMAT 716 Advanced High Temperature Processing	2	CIVIL 788 Project Y (Civil)	4
CHEMMAT 717 Electrochemical Engineering	2	CIVIL 789 Project Z (Civil)	4
CHEMMAT 718 Aluminium Reduction Process Operations	2	CIVIL 790 ME Research Proposal (Civil)	1
CHEMMAT 721 Advanced Materials	2	CIVIL 796 ME Thesis (Civil)	14
CHEMMAT 722 Materials Seminar	2	COMPSYS 701 Advanced Digital Systems Design	2
CHEMMAT 724 Advanced Materials Characterization	2	COMPSYS 702 Advanced Microcomputing for Embedded Systems	2
CHEMMAT 726 The Light Metals Industry	2	COMPSYS 710 Studies in Computer Systems Engineering 1	2
CHEMMAT 727 Materials Performance and Selection for Light Metals Processing	2	COMPSYS 711 Studies in Computer Systems Engineering 2	2
CHEMMAT 787 Project X	2	COMPSYS 787 Project X (Computer Systems)	2
CHEMMAT 788 Project Y	4	COMPSYS 788 Project Y (Computer Systems)	4
CHEMMAT 789 Project Z	4	COMPSYS 789 Project Z (Computer Systems)	4
CHEMMAT 790 ME Research Proposal (Chemical and Materials)	1	COMPSYS 790 ME Research Proposal (Computer Systems)	1
CHEMMAT 796 ME Thesis (Chemical and Materials)	14	COMPSYS 796 ME Thesis (Computer Systems)	14
CIVIL 701 Studies in Civil Engineering 1	2	ELECTENG 701 Wireless Communication	2
CIVIL 702 Studies in Civil Engineering 2	2	ELECTENG 702 Applied Electromagnetics	2
CIVIL 703 Project Management 1	2	ELECTENG 703 Advanced Power Systems	2
CIVIL 704 Project Management 2	2	ELECTENG 704 Advanced Control Systems	2
CIVIL 710 Structural Dynamics	2	ELECTENG 705 Heavy Current Electronics	2
CIVIL 711 Structures Seminar	2	ELECTENG 706 Digital Signal Processing	2
CIVIL 712 Structural Analysis	2	ELECTENG 707 Topics in Information Engineering	2
CIVIL 714 Aseismic Structural Design	2	ELECTENG 709 Image Processing	2
CIVIL 715 Advanced Concrete Theory	2	ELECTENG 710 Embedded Systems	2
CIVIL 720 Earthquake Engineering	2	ELECTENG 711 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering D	2
CIVIL 723 Rock Mechanics and Excavation Engineering	2	ELECTENG 712 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering E	2
CIVIL 724 Soil Behaviour	2	ELECTENG 713 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering F	2
CIVIL 730 Fluid Mechanics Seminar	2	ELECTENG 714 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering G	2
CIVIL 731 Advanced Fluid Mechanics	2	ELECTENG 715 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering H	2
CIVIL 732 Coastal Engineering 2	2	ELECTENG 716 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering I	2
CIVIL 733 Coastal Engineering 1	2	ELECTENG 787 Project X (Electrical & Electronic)	2
CIVIL 754 Geotechnical Modelling	2	ELECTENG 788 Project Y (Electrical & Electronic)	4
CIVIL 755 Advanced Mechanics of Materials	2	ELECTENG 789 Project Z (Electrical & Electronic)	4
CIVIL 760 Traffic Engineering	2	ELECTENG 790 ME Research Proposal (Electrical and Electronic)	1
CIVIL 761 Transportation Engineering Seminar	2	ELECTENG 796 ME Thesis (Electrical and Electronic)	14
CIVIL 762 Transportation Planning	2	ENGGEN 701 Special Topic in Engineering A	1
CIVIL 763 Transportation Systems Analysis	2	ENGGEN 702 Special Topic in Engineering B	1
CIVIL 764 Highway Safety and Operations	2	ENGGEN 703 Special Topic in Engineering C	1
CIVIL 765 Infrastructure Asset Management	2	ENGGEN 704 Special Topic in Engineering D	1
CIVIL 766 Road Management Systems	2	ENGGEN 705 Special Topic in Engineering E	1
CIVIL 767 Advanced Pavement Engineering	2	ENGGEN 706 Special Topic in Engineering F	1
		ENGGEN 707 Special Topic in Engineering G	1

ENGGEN 708 Special Topic in Engineering H	1	ENVENG 790 ME Thesis Proposal (Environmental)	1
ENGGEN 790 ME Research Proposal (Engineering)	1	ENVENG 796 ME Thesis (Environmental)	14
ENGGEN 796 ME Thesis (Engineering)	14	GEO THERM 601 Geothermal Resources and Their Use	2
ENGSCI 701 Studies in Engineering Science	2	GEO THERM 621 Geothermal Reservoir Engineering	2
ENGSCI 711 Studies in Engineering Mathematics	2	GEO THERM 622 Geothermal Production Engineering	2
ENGSCI 720 Seminar in Stochastic Operations Research	2	GEO THERM 623 Geothermal Utilization Engineering	2
ENGSCI 721 Advanced Numerical Methods	2	LAW 450 Resource Management Law	2
ENGSCI 741 Studies in Continuum Mechanics 1	2	MECHENG 701 Studies in Mechanical Engineering 1	2
ENGSCI 742 Studies in Continuum Mechanics 2	2	MECHENG 702 Studies in Mechanical Engineering 2	2
ENGSCI 743 Geothermal Modelling	2	MECHENG 703 Studies in Mechanical Engineering 3	1
ENGSCI 744 Bioengineering	2	MECHENG 704 Studies in Mechanical Engineering 4	1
ENGSCI 751 Studies in Operations Research 1	2	MECHENG 711 Computational Fluid Dynamics	2
ENGSCI 752 Studies in Operations Research 2	2	MECHENG 714 Wind Engineering	2
ENGSCI 787 Project X (Engineering Science)	2	MECHENG 716 Internal Combustion Engines	2
ENGSCI 788 Project Y (Engineering Science)	4	MECHENG 718 Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer	2
ENGSCI 789 Project Z (Engineering Science)	4	MECHENG 721 Mechanical Control Systems	2
ENGSCI 790 ME Research Proposal (Engineering Science)	1	MECHENG 723 Simulation of Mechanical Systems	2
ENGSCI 791 Advanced Linear Optimization	2	MECHENG 725 Structural Acoustics	2
ENGSCI 792 Non-linear Optimization	2	MECHENG 727 Active Noise and Vibration Control	2
ENGSCI 793 Structural Optimization	2	MECHENG 729 Machine Learning and Fuzzy Systems	2
ENGSCI 795 Combinatorial Optimization	2	MECHENG 732 Computer Graphics and Visualization	2
ENGSCI 796 ME Thesis (Engineering Science)	14	MECHENG 741 Advanced Mechanics of Materials	2
ENVENG 701 Studies in Environmental Engineering 1	2	MECHENG 742 Advanced Materials Manufacturing	2
ENVENG 702 Studies in Environmental Engineering 2	2	MECHENG 751 Advanced Manufacturing Technology	2
ENVENG 704 Sustainable Resource Management	2	MECHENG 753 Manufacturing Information Systems	2
ENVENG 741 Hazardous Substance Management	2	MECHENG 787 Project X (Mechanical)	2
ENVENG 744 Environmental Engineering Processes Laboratory	2	MECHENG 788 Project Y (Mechanical)	4
ENVENG 745 Modelling of Groundwater Flow and Pollutant Transport	2	MECHENG 789 Project Z (Mechanical)	4
ENVENG 746 Surface Water Quality Modelling	2	MECHENG 790 ME Research Proposal (Mechanical)	1
ENVENG 750 Sustainability Engineering 2	2	MECHENG 796 ME Thesis (Mechanical)	14
ENVENG 751 Sustainable Technologies and Processes	2	SOFTENG 701 Advanced Software Engineering Development Methods	2
ENVENG 752 Sustainability and Risk Assessment	2	SOFTENG 702 Advanced Systems Design	2
ENVENG 753 Sustainable Engineering Design	2	SOFTENG 710 Studies in Software Engineering 1	2
ENVENG 754 Sustainability Engineering Seminar	2	SOFTENG 711 Studies in Software Engineering 2	2
ENVENG 787 Project X (Environmental)	2	SOFTENG 790 ME Research Proposal (Software Engineering)	1
ENVENG 788 Project Y (Environmental)	4	SOFTENG 796 ME Thesis (Software Engineering)	14
ENVENG 789 Project Z (Environmental)	4		

## The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for an equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - and
  - c achieved grades deemed satisfactory by the Dean of Faculty of Engineering.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 3 Each student's programme is to be chosen in consultation with the relevant Heads of Departments or their representative, and consists of the following:
  - a 4 points: ENGGEN 757 Project M
  - and
  - b courses with a total points value of either 4 or 6 points from:
    - CIVIL 703 Project Management 1 (2 points)
    - CIVIL 704 Project Management 2 (2 points)
    - CIVIL 765 Infrastructure Asset Management (2 points)
    - MECHENG 751 Advanced Manufacturing Technology (2 points)
    - MECHENG 753 Manufacturing Information Systems (2 points)
    - MECHENG 758 Special Topic in Engineering Management 1 (2 points)
    - MECHENG 759 Special Topic in Engineering Management 2 (2 points)

MECHENG 760 Special Topic in Technology Management 1 (2 Points)  
 MECHENG 761 Special Topic in Technology Management 2 (2 Points)

and

- c courses with a total points value of either 4 or 6 points from:
  - BUSADMIN 701 Accounting and Finance (2 points), or
  - BUSADMIN 702 Accounting for Decision-makers (2 points)
  - BUSADMIN 705 Business Law (2 points)
  - BUSADMIN 711 e-Commerce Strategies (2 points)
  - BUSADMIN 713 Managing People (2 points)
  - MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers (2 points)

#### Project Work

- 4 a A student has normally to submit the Project M report no later than 12 months after initial enrolment in the programme.
- b In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may extend this period.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 6 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where the student's average grade is sufficiently high.
- b Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 12 months of initial enrolment, or such longer period as the Senate or its representative approves in exceptional circumstances.
- c Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations - Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Master of Engineering Management were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Master of Engineering Studies – MEngSt

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering at a level deemed satisfactory by the Dean of Faculty of Engineering
  - or
  - b (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
  - and
  - (ii) passed the courses required for the Graduate Diploma in Engineering or for the Graduate Diploma in Engineering (Transportation) with an average grade of B or higher in 6 points (including at least 2 points at graduate level) at the completion of one semester
  - or
  - c for admission to one of the specializations
    - (i) completed the requirements for an approved Bachelor's degree at a level deemed satisfactory to the Dean of Faculty of Engineering
    - and
    - (ii) have at least three years' relevant work experience.
- 2 For entry to the Geotechnical Engineering specialization a student is required to have passed CIVIL 420 Geomechanics 3 or its equivalent.
- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of Faculty of Engineering, approve admission of a student whose average grade is less than B, or waive any other prerequisites, as it thinks fit.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 4 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one year full-time or two years part-time, and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points as specified.

**Structure and Content**

- 5 A student enrolled for this degree must pass at least 14 points from one of the following programmes:
- a **General**
- Of the 14 points required for this degree:
- (i) at least 10 points are to be from courses for the Degree of Master of Engineering and may include up to 6 points from the following:
- Project X (CHEMMAT 787 or CIVIL 787 or COMPSYS 787 or ELECTENG 787 or ENGSCI 787 or ENVENG 787 or MECHENG 787)
  - Project Y (CHEMMAT 788 or CIVIL 788 or COMPSYS 788 or ELECTENG 788 or ENGSCI 788 or ENVENG 788 or MECHENG 788)
  - Project Z (CHEMMAT 789 or CIVIL 789 or COMPSYS 789 or ELECTENG 789 or ENGSCI 789 or ENVENG 789 or MECHENG 789)
- (ii) up to 4 points may be from courses, other than projects and theses, approved by the relevant Heads of Departments from:
- (a) those offered for Part IV of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
- or
- (b) those offered in any other Faculty at Stage III or for Part IV or for Part V or equivalent or at Master's level.
- b **Geotechnical Engineering**
- Of the 14 points required for this degree at least 10 points are to be at the Master's level:
- (i) 4 points from:
- CIVIL 751 Experimental Geotechnical Engineering
  - CIVIL 752 Computational Geotechnical Engineering
- (ii) Up to 8 points from:
- CIVIL 720 Earthquake Engineering
  - CIVIL 723 Rock Mechanics and Excavation Engineering
  - CIVIL 724 Soil Behaviour
  - CIVIL 753 Groundwater and Pollutant Modelling
  - CIVIL 754 Geotechnical Modelling
  - ENGSCI 450 Computational Techniques 3A
- (iii) At least 2 points, but not more than 4 points, from:
- GEOLOGY 361 Applied Geophysics
  - GEOLOGY 372 Case Histories in Engineering Geology
  - GEOLOGY 701 Engineering Geological Mapping
  - GEOLOGY 705 Geological Hazards
  - GEOLOGY 771 Engineering Geology
  - GEOLOGY 772 Hydrogeology and Ground Water Resources
- (iv) With approval of the Dean of Faculty of Engineering, up to 6 points credit may be granted from appropriate courses offered at this or another university.
- c **Sustainability Engineering**
- (i) 10 points from:
- ENVENG 750 Sustainability Engineering 2
  - ENVENG 751 Sustainable Technologies and Processes
  - ENVENG 752 Sustainability and Risk Assessment
  - ENVENG 753 Sustainable Engineering Design
  - BUSADMIN 712 Leadership in Organizations
- (ii) 2 points ENVENG 787 Project X
- (iii) 2 points from:
- ENVENG 754 Sustainability Engineering Seminar
  - COMHLTH 717 Environmental Health
  - LAWENVIR 708 Environmental Law Concepts
- or
- courses approved by the relevant Head of Department
- d **Transportation**
- Of the 14 points required for this degree:
- (i) At least 6 points from the following core courses:
- CIVIL 760 Traffic Engineering
  - CIVIL 761 Transportation Engineering Seminar
  - CIVIL 762 Transportation Planning
  - CIVIL 763 Transportation Systems Analysis
  - CIVIL 764 Highway Safety and Operations
  - CIVIL 765 Infrastructure Asset Management
  - CIVIL 766 Road Management Systems

CIVIL 767 Advanced Pavement Engineering  
 CIVIL 768 Studies in Transportation 1  
 CIVIL 769 Studies in Transportation 2

- (ii) With approval, up to 6 points credit may be granted from appropriate courses offered at another university
- (iii) **Research Project**  
 Up to 4 points may be chosen from the following projects:  
 Project X (CIVIL 787) (2 points)  
 Project Y (CIVIL 788) (4 points)  
 Project Z (CIVIL 789) (4 points)
- (iv) **Elective Course(s)**  
 Up to 2 points (and with the specific approval of the Dean of Faculty of Engineering, up to 6 points) may be chosen from courses, other than projects, from:
- (a) those offered for Part IV of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering or from a relevant Diploma in Engineering  
 or  
 (b) subject to specific approval, those relevant courses offered at The University of Auckland in another department/faculty at Stage III or for Part IV or for Part V or equivalent or at Master's level.
- 6 The courses required under Regulation 4 are to be chosen in consultation with the relevant Head of Department.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 8 Honours may be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003. The 2002 regulations for the Degree of Master of Engineering Studies were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR

*The Master of Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## Graduate Diploma in Engineering – GradDipEng

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for any Bachelor's degree approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
 or  
 (ii) received a professional qualification in engineering approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
 or  
 (iii) attained an equivalent level of practical experience in the engineering profession as approved by the Senate or its representative
- or
- b attained a level of technical competence in Engineering equivalent to at least Parts I and II of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, as may be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Engineering.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment unless the Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Dean of Faculty of Engineering, extends that period.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of the following:

- a at least 6 points from elective courses for the Degree of Master of Engineering other than project work or thesis.
  - b up to 8 points from:
    - (i) either ENGGEN 601 Case Studies in Engineering 1 or ENGGEN 602 Case Studies in Engineering 2
    - (ii) courses listed for Parts III and IV for the Bachelor of Engineering other than project work
    - (iii) ENGGEN 622, 623.
- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the Dean of Faculty of Engineering.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 1996 regulations for the Diploma in Engineering were thereby repealed.

## Graduate Diploma in Engineering (Transportation) – GradDipEng(Transp)

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a
    - (i) completed the requirements for any Bachelor's degree approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
    - or
    - (ii) received a professional qualification in engineering as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
    - or
    - (iii) attained an equivalent level of practical experience in the engineering profession as approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - b attained a level of technical competence in engineering equivalent to at least Parts I and II of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, as may be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Engineering.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment unless the Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Dean of Faculty of Engineering, extends that period.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of the following:
- a At least 6 points from the core courses listed for the Master of Engineering Studies in Transportation.
  - b **Up to 8 points from:**
    - (i) either ENGGEN 601 Case Studies in Engineering 1 or ENGGEN 602 Case Studies in Engineering 2
    - (ii) courses listed for Parts III and IV for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering other than project work.
  - c **4 points from:**
    - CIVIL 360 Transportation Engineering 1
    - CIVIL 361 Transportation Engineering 2
    - CIVIL 460 Traffic Systems Design
    - CIVIL 461 Highway and Transportation Design

or

    - 4 points:**
    - CIVIL 660 Traffic Engineering and Planning
    - CIVIL 661 Highway and Pavement Engineering

- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the Dean of Faculty of Engineering.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2003 regulations for the Diploma in Engineering (Transportation) were thereby repealed.

## Graduate Diploma in Operations Research – GradDipOR

*The Graduate Diploma in Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## Postgraduate Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology – PGCertGeothermTech

#### Requirements

- 1 A student wishing to qualify for this certificate needs to have enrolled for the Postgraduate Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology.
- 2 The Certificate may be issued to a student who has passed courses totalling at least 10 points chosen from one or other of the areas of specialization available for the Postgraduate Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology.
- 3 No student may be awarded both the Postgraduate Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology and the Postgraduate Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology.
- 4 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004.

## PostGraduate Certificate in Light Metals Reduction Technology – PGCertLMRTech

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for an approved Bachelor's degree at a level deemed satisfactory by the Dean of Faculty of Engineering
  - or
  - b in exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of Faculty of Engineering, approve admission of a student not having met the above requirement, but having attained an equivalent qualification or professional experience in the engineering profession.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of:  
8 points: CHEMMAT 717, 718, 726, 727

#### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004.

## Regulations – Law

- 157 The Degree of Bachelor of Laws – LLB
- 158 The Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) – LLB(Hons)
- 159 The Degree of Master of Laws – LLM
- 160 Master of Laws (LLM) Schedule
- 160 The Degree of Master of Environmental Legal Studies – MEnvLS
- 161 The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds
- 161 Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies – PGDipLS

---

## REGULATIONS – LAW

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Laws – LLB

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student must pass each of Parts I, II, III and IV as follows:
  - Part I**  
LAW 101 The Legal System  
12 points from courses prescribed for any other programme at The University of Auckland
  - Part II**  
LAW 201 Criminal Law  
LAW 211 Public Law  
LAW 221 Legal Research and Writing 1A  
LAW 231 Law of Torts  
LAW 241 Law of Contract  
LAW 251 Legal Research and Writing 1B
  - Part III**  
LAW 301 Land Law  
LAW 306 Equity  
LAW 311 Law of Personal Property  
LAW 316 Jurisprudence  
7 points from LAW 402–456, 458–498, COMLAW 311
  - Part IV**  
14 points from LAW 402–456, 458–498, COMLAW 311
- b Except as permitted under Regulation 5, a student may not enrol for Part II unless Part I has been completed.
- c Each student must pass Parts II, III and IV in the order provided in Regulation 2a above unless approval to vary the order is given by the Dean of Faculty of Law.

#### Written Work and Practical Requirements

- 3 a A student enrolled for this degree must also complete the requirements of LAW 499, carrying out such work and undergoing such experience in the detailed application of the law and in relation to the provision of legal services, as the Faculty of Law may require.
- b A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of Faculty of Law confirmation that the student has complied with the requirements of this regulation.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Graduate Admission

- 5 A student who is a graduate or graduand of any university in New Zealand, or who is granted admission ad eundem statum with graduate status, may be selected for admission to Part II and credited with the Part I courses other than LAW 101 The Legal System. Such a student will be required to take LAW 101 The Legal System for Part II in addition to the other Part II courses, and will follow a programme of three full-time years, or equivalent.

#### Courses in other Faculties

- 6 a In place of elective Law courses totalling not more than 6 points for the degree, a student may take courses at Stage II or above offered for other programmes at this University, if they are related to the student's Law studies and approved by the Dean of Faculty of Law.
- b While approval of such courses is normally given before enrolment, the Dean of Faculty of Law may in special cases apply this provision to courses previously passed for another

programme. Where the Dean approves such courses, they are to be reassigned from that other programme to this degree.

#### Research Papers

- 7 a With the prior approval of the Dean of Faculty of Law, a student for this degree may elect to present a research paper in lieu of the examination in not more than one elective course taken for the degree, if the teacher in that course has certified that the research paper is relevant to the subject matter of the elective course.
- b This regulation applies also to a student taking any elective Law course or courses for any degree other than this, or for any diploma or for a Certificate or Certificates of Proficiency.

#### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1988 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) – LLB(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 a No student on whom the Degree of Bachelor of Laws has already been conferred may enrol for this degree.
- b At the discretion of Faculty of Law, a student who has completed Parts I and II for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws may be permitted to enrol for this degree.
- c Where the Faculty of Law approves enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) the courses previously passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws will be reassigned to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours), without payment of a fee.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and one part-time year, and pass courses with a total value of at least 62 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 a All the provisions and requirements of the Degree of Bachelor of Laws apply also to a student enrolled for this degree, including the provisions concerning written work and practical requirements, courses in other faculties and research papers.
- b Each student for this degree needs to satisfy all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws and in addition pass:
  - (i) one seminar course (2 points) from LAW 341-399
  - and
  - (ii) LAW 789 Dissertation (4 points).

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Dissertation

- 5 a LAW 789 Dissertation specified in Regulation 3b(ii) is to embody the results of research carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Dean of Faculty of Law. It is to be submitted by the last day of classes of the next semester following completion of the Part IV year, or by the last day of classes of the semester of initial enrolment for the dissertation, whichever is the earlier. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Dean of Faculty of Law may extend the time for the submission of the dissertation.
- b The topic of the dissertation must be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Law.

#### Award of Honours

- 6 This degree will be awarded only where a student's work throughout the programme is of a sufficiently high standard, as determined by the Faculty of Law. In assessing the standard of a student's work in this programme, the Faculty will take into account the student's

performance in all law courses inclusive of those required for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws; the courses taught by other faculties that are taken as part of Part I will not be taken into account.

#### Withdrawal from Honours

- 7 A student whose work does not satisfy the standard specified in Regulation 6, or who at any time chooses to withdraw from Honours, may transfer from the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, without payment of a fee. In that case the courses already passed for, or credited to, the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) may be reassigned to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, except for any dissertation taken under Regulation 3b.

#### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1973 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) were thereby repealed.

## The Degree of Master of Laws – LL.M

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)
  - and
    - a have gained an average of B or better in all the courses taken for that degree
    - or
    - b have gained an average grade of B or higher in courses taken for a Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies, provided that a minimum of 8 points has been completed in Master's courses, or LAW 690 Dissertation and 4 points in Master's courses, offered by the Faculty of Law and that a grade of B or higher has been achieved in each such course and/or dissertation
    - or
    - c have otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Dean of Faculty of Law capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the courses proposed to be taken for this degree.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2
  - a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points.
  - b The requirements for this degree are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 This programme consists of:
  - a LAW 788 Legal Research Methodology
  - and
  - b at least 20 points from courses listed in the schedule to these regulations.
  - c Where courses totalling at least 12 points (including, where appropriate, LAW 790 Dissertation or LAW 796 Thesis 1 or LAW 797 Thesis 2 on a relevant topic) are passed from one of the areas of specialization listed in the schedule to these regulations, this degree may be conferred with an endorsement as to that area of specialization.
- 4 A student may not enrol for LAW 797 Thesis B under Regulation 3b without the prior approval of the Dean of Faculty of Law.
 

*Note: Approval is normally given only where the student has completed the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) or is otherwise considered adequately qualified to undertake a thesis-only degree.*
- 5 In place of courses listed in the schedule to these regulations, a student may substitute up to 8 points, as follows:
  - a up to 8 points from courses listed in the regulations for the Degree of Master of Commercial Law, provided such courses are not determined by the Dean of Faculty of Law to be the same as or substantially similar to courses offered for this degree.

- b up to 4 points from elective courses offered for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or from courses offered at Stage III or above for any other programme other than the Degree of Master of Commercial Law, provided such courses are deemed by the Dean of Faculty of Law to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken as part of this degree.

#### Transfer from Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies

- 6 A student who has passed courses for a Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies that are available for this degree and is eligible to be admitted to this programme may reassign those courses to this degree. With the approval of the Dean of Faculty of Law, LAW 690 Dissertation may also be reassigned.

*Note: A student who is not a law graduate will not be eligible to transfer to this degree.*

#### Dissertation and Thesis

- 7 a LAW 790 Dissertation, LAW 796 Thesis 1 or LAW 797 Thesis 2 is to be researched and written under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Dean of Faculty of Law.
- b The topic of the Dissertation, Thesis 1 or Thesis 2 needs to be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Law.
- c A student is to submit the dissertation or thesis in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Master of Laws were thereby repealed.

---

### Master of Laws (LLM) Schedule

---

#### Courses available for LLM:

LAWCOMM 701-766 LAWENVIR 701-725 LAWGENRL 701-715 LAWPUBL 701-745	LAW 790 Dissertation LAW 796 Thesis 1 LAW 797 Thesis 2
--	--

#### LLM Specializations:

##### Commercial Law

LAWCOMM 701-766  
LAWPUBL 702, 707, 715, 728  
LAW 790 Dissertation  
LAW 796 Thesis 1  
LAW 797 Thesis 2

LAW 790 Dissertation  
LAW 796 Thesis 1  
LAW 797 Thesis 2

##### Public Law

LAWCOMM 703  
LAWGENRL 702, 704  
LAWPUBL 701-745  
LAW 790 Dissertation  
LAW 796 Thesis 1  
LAW 797 Thesis 2

##### Environmental Law

LAWCOMM 701  
LAWENVIR 701-725

---

## The Degree of Master of Environmental Legal Studies – MEnvLS

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
- a (i) a four-year Bachelor's degree, or equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

- or  
 (ii) a Bachelor's (Honours) degree, or equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
 or  
 (iii) a Bachelor's degree, or equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and

- (a) a professional qualification equivalent to one year's advanced study  
 or  
 (b) at least three years' professional experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative

and

- b (i) gained an average of B or better in all the courses taken for that prior degree  
 or  
 (ii) have otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Dean of the Faculty of Law capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the courses proposed to be taken for this degree.

- 2 As a condition of admission to this programme, the Dean of the Faculty of Law may require a student to take LAW 788 Legal Research Methodology for a Certificate of Proficiency in addition to the courses specified in Regulation 4.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two consecutive full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.  
 b The requirements for this degree are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of:  
 LAWENVIR 731 Foundations of Environmental Law (2 points),  
 at least 12 points from:  
 LAWENVIR 701–725  
 LAWENVIR 790 Dissertation on a relevant topic approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.  
 5 In place of courses listed in Regulation 4 above, a student may take up to 4 points from Master's level courses for any other programme provided such courses are considered by the Dean of the Faculty of Law to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken as part of this degree.

#### Transfer from Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies

- 6 A student who has passed courses for a Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies that are available for this degree who has not yet had the PGDipLS conferred and who is eligible to be admitted to this programme may reassign those courses to this degree. With the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, LAW 690 Dissertation may also be reassigned.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours as specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004.

## The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds

*The Master of Professional Studies is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies – PGDipLS

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)
  - or
  - b gained any other qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study and research in Law.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.
- c In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of Faculty of Law, extend the period specified in Regulation 2b above.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 a Of the 14 points required for this diploma, at least 10 points must be composed of LAW 690 Dissertation (4 points) and/or courses from the regulations for the Degree of Master of Laws.
- b In the case of a student admitted under Regulation 1b above, the student's choice of courses in Regulation 3a is subject to the approval of the Dean of Faculty of Law. As a condition of approval, the student may be required to take LAW 101 The Legal System for a Certificate of Proficiency.
- 4 A student may, with the approval of the Dean of Faculty of Law, take courses towards this diploma up to a limit of 4 points from any of:
  - a courses prescribed for Parts III and IV for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, as listed in the regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws
  - b courses offered at an advanced level for any programme not taught in the Faculty of Law that are deemed by the Dean of Faculty of Law to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken as part of this diploma.

**Dissertation**

- 5 a LAW 690 Dissertation is to be researched and written under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Dean of Faculty of Law.
- b The topic of the dissertation needs to be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Law.

**Research Paper**

- 6 With the prior approval of the Dean of Faculty of Law, a student for this diploma may elect to present a research paper in lieu of the examination in not more than one undergraduate course taken for the diploma, if the teacher in that course has certified that the research paper is relevant.

**Reassignment**

- 7 A student who has passed for a Certificate of Proficiency any courses which meet the requirements of Regulation 3 or 4 may, with the approval of the Dean of Faculty of Law, reassign those courses to this diploma.

**Areas of Specialization**

- 8 a The courses for this diploma may be selected from the general lists or from such areas of specialization as may be shown in the schedule to the regulations for the Degree of Master of Laws.
- b Where courses are passed from one area of specialization which (together with the dissertation on a related topic, if appropriate) total at least 10 points, this diploma may be conferred with an endorsement as to the area of specialization.

**Variations**

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1988 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies were thereby repealed.

## Regulations – Medical and Health Sciences

The Degree of Bachelor of Health Sciences – BHSc	164
The Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery – MBChB	164
MBChB Schedule	166
The Degree of Bachelor of Nursing – BNurs	166
The Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours) – BHB(Hons)	167
The Degree of Bachelor of Nursing (Honours) – BNurs(Hons)	168
The Degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy – BPharm	168
The Degree of Master of Audiology – MAud	169
The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt	171
The Degree of Master of Health Sciences – MHSc	171
Master of Health Sciences (MHSc) Schedule	172
The Degree of Master of Medical Science – MMedSc	174
Master of Medical Science (MMedSc) Schedule	176
The Degree of Master of Nursing – MNurs	177
Master of Nursing (MNurs) Schedule	179
The Degree of Master of Pharmacy Practice – MPharmPrac	179
Master of Pharmacy Practice (MPharmPrac) Schedule	180
The Degree of Master of Public Health – MPH	180
Master of Public Health (MPH) Schedule	182
The Degree of Master of Science in Health Psychology – MSc	182
The Degree of Doctor of Medicine – MD	182
The Degree of Doctor of Pharmacy – DPharm	183
Diploma in Paediatrics – DipPaed	184
Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences – GradDipHSc	185
Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences (GradDipHSc) Schedule	186
Postgraduate Diploma in Community Emergency Medicine – PGDipComEmMed	186
Postgraduate Diploma in Geriatric Medicine – PGDipGeriatricMed	187
Postgraduate Diploma in Health Psychology – PGDipHealthPsych	187
Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences – PGDipHSc	188
Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science – PGDipMedSc	189
Postgraduate Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology – PGDipObstMedGyn	190
Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice – PGDipPharmPrac	191
Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health – PGDipPH	192
Postgraduate Diploma in Sports Medicine – PGDipSportMed	193
Postgraduate Certificate in Health Sciences – PGCertHSc	193
Postgraduate Certificate in Medical Science – PGCertMedSc	195
Postgraduate Certificate in Pharmacy Practice – PGCertPharmPrac	195
Postgraduate Certificate in Public Health – PGCertPH	196
Certificate in Health Sciences – CertHSc	197

---

## REGULATIONS – MEDICAL AND HEALTH SCIENCES

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Health Sciences – BHSc

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

*Note: The regulations governing the Degree of Bachelor of Health Sciences are under review.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 A student must pass the core courses and 18 points from one of the three options, with at least 6 points at Stage III.

- 3 The programme consists of:

##### a **Section 1**

###### (i) **Core Courses:**

20 points: COMHLTH 101, 102, 203, 204, 205, HUMANBIO 111, 122, 142, MPHEALTH 201, STATS 102

and

###### (ii) 4 points from one of the following elective areas:

Anthropology: ANTHRO 100, and 102 or 104; Economics: ECON 101 and 111; Geography: GEOG 101 and 102; History: HISTORY 122 and 123; Law and Politics: LAW 101 and POLITICS 107; Maori and Gender: MAORI 130 and WOMEN 100; Medical: BIOSCI 107 and CHEM 110; Philosophy: PHIL 102 and 103; Psychology: PSYCH 108 and 109; Sociology: SOCIOLOGY 100 or 101, and 103.

and

##### b **Section 2**

18 points from one of the following options:

###### (i) **Public Health**

10 points: SOCSCIPH 200, 300, POLITICS 222, OPSMGT 257, COMHLTH 302

and

8 points from the following, with at least 2 points above Stage II:

ANTHRO 324, BEHAVSCI 301, COMHLTH 206, 207, 301, 303, 304, 305, GEOG 305, HISTORY 210, LAW 448, PHIL 317, SOCIOLOGY 333

or

###### (ii) **Coordinated Care**

18 points from: BEHAVSCI 203, COMHLTH 206, 207, 301, 302, 303, 305, MGCARE 201, 301, 302, OPSMGT 257

or

###### (iii) **Community Health Development**

10 points: BEHAVSCI 202, 203, 301, 302, SOCSCIPH 200

and

8 points from the following, with at least 2 points above Stage II:

ANTHRO 324, COMHLTH 206, 207, 302, 303, 305 EDUC 352, 381, OPSMGT 257, PACIFIC 201, POLITICS 113, 231

- 4 Each student's programme requires the approval of the Course Coordinator.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2001 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Health Sciences were thereby repealed.

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery – MBChB

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for the courses listed in Part I of the MBChB schedule, with a minimum of a B+ average over the courses specified

- or
  - (ii) successfully completed, with at least a B+ average, a New Zealand undergraduate degree, or have been working in allied health professions
  - or
  - (iii) met the requirements of a special entry scheme
- and
- b demonstrated in accordance with approved selection criteria the personal qualities determined by the Faculty as appropriate for a person seeking a qualification as a doctor. This will normally include an interview.
- 2
- a Students selected for admission under clause 1a(i) will be admitted to MBChB Part II.
  - b Students selected for admission under clause 1a(ii) or clause 1a(iii) may be required to successfully complete some or all of the courses listed in Part I in the schedule to these regulations before proceeding to Part II.

#### Termination of Enrolment

- 3
- a If the attitudes or behaviour of a student in a medical environment are found, after due and fair inquiry, to be offensive, disruptive or likely to give rise to a risk of harm to the welfare of any party, the enrolment of the student in the programme may be terminated by the Senate or its representative and any application to re-enrol may likewise be declined.
  - b A student who is subject to any such inquiry may be suspended by the Senate or its representative from lectures, classes and any clinical attachments pending the outcome of the inquiry.
  - c A student whose enrolment is terminated or application to re-enrol is declined under Regulation 3a may appeal from that decision to the Council or its duly appointed delegate.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 4
- a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of six full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 84 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.
  - b Each student is expected to successfully complete Parts IV, V and VI of this degree in successive years.
  - c A student who does not successfully complete Parts IV, V and VI of this degree in successive years may continue their study only with the approval of, and on conditions set by, the Senate or its representative.
  - d A student who interrupts their study towards this degree for more than one year may resume their study only with the approval of, and on conditions set by, the Senate or its representative.

#### Structure and Content

- 5
- a A student for this degree must pass each of Parts I, II, III, IV, V and VI, as set out in the MBChB Schedule.
  - b However, where a student has been granted admission with credit, or in exceptional circumstances which the Senate or its representative approves, a student may be directly admitted to Part II, Part III or Part IV.
  - c Each Part of the programme is to be completed to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative before a student is permitted to enrol for the next Part.
  - d For Parts II and III, a student is required to pass each Part in its entirety by gaining a pass in each course for that Part in the same year. A student who fails one or more courses will fail that Part. A student who fails a Part must repeat the Part in its entirety. However, when in the first attempt, a student passes individual courses with a B grade or higher, the Board of Examiners may recommend that the student be credited with these individual courses in the repeat year.
  - e At the discretion of the Senate or its representative, a student who fails any of Parts II-VI may be declined permission to re-enrol in the programme as a whole.
  - f A student who fails twice to pass the same Part will not be permitted to continue with this degree.

#### Practical Requirements

- 6
- a A student enrolled for this degree must satisfactorily carry out such practical or clinical work as the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences may require.

**Enrolment for Two Programmes**

- 7 This degree may not be taken at the same time as another programme, unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

**Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2005. The 1996 regulations for the Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery were thereby repealed.

**Transitional Regulation**

- 10 For the purposes of these regulations the following Parts are deemed by Senate to be equivalent:

Pre 2005	From 2005
BHB Part I	MBChB Part I
BHB Part II	MBChB Part II
BHB Part III	MBChB Part III
MBChB Part I	MBChB Part IV
MBChB Part II	MBChB Part V
MBChB Part III	MBChB Part VI

**MBChB Schedule****Part I**

14 points from:

BHSc: BIOSCI 107, CHEM 110, COM HLTH 101, 102, HUMANBIO 111, 122, 142

or

BSc in Biomedical Science: BIOSCI 101, 106, 107, CHEM 110, HUMANBIO 111, 142, PHYSICS 160.

**Part II**

14 points: MBChB 201 – 208

**Part III**

14 points: MBChB 301 – 310

**Part IV**

14 points: MBChB 401

**Part V**

14 points: MBChB 501

**Part VI**

14 points: MBChB 551

**The Degree of Bachelor of Nursing – BNurs**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a The programme consists of:

**Part I**

14 points from BIOSCI 107, HUMANBIO 111, 122, 142, NURSING 101, 102, 104

**Part II**

7 points: NURSING 201

7 points: NURSING 202

**Part III**

7 points: NURSING 301

7 points: NURSING 302

- b Each Part must normally be completed before the next Part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass Parts I and II in their entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that Part together with a course or courses towards the next successive Part.

**Variations**

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 4 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

**The Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours) – BHB(Hons)**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a satisfactorily completed at least the first three years of the programme for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology or an equivalent degree approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - c passed the courses for MBChB Part III, or its equivalent, with an average of B or higher
  - and
  - d approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass in each of the courses with a total value of 14 points.
- 3 The requirements for this degree are normally to be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for the degree. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 A student's programme is to consist of:
  - a 6 points from courses offered at Master's level in the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences
  - and
  - b 8 points: HUMANBIO 790 Dissertation
- 5 A student is to choose courses in consultation with the relevant Heads of Department and with the approval of the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.
- 6 The Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the relevant Heads of Department, allow a student for this degree to take courses with a total value of 2 points from those offered by any other faculty at Master's level.

**Dissertation**

- 7 a The dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.
- b The dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an area of the subject.
- c A student is to submit the dissertation within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.

**Honours**

- 8 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two grades of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First or Second Division.
- b Honours are normally awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

**Variations**

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999.

---

## The Degree of Bachelor of Nursing (Honours) – BNurs(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
  - a The Degree of Bachelor of Nursing from this University or any equivalent degree approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b passed the courses for Nursing Part III with an average grade of B or higher
  - and
  - c have the approval of the Head of School of Nursing.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of one full-time year of study and pass courses with a total value of 14 points as specified in Regulation 3 below, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 3 Each student must pass courses with a total value of 14 points:
  - 6 points: NURSING 795
  - 4 points: NURSING 702, 753 or approved speciality practice course
  - 2 points from an approved research course: COMHLTH 710, 744, GENPRAC 704, ARTSGEN 750, 751
  - 2 points from courses listed in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule or the Master of Nursing Schedule

### Dissertation

- 4
  - a The dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by Senate or its representative.
  - b The dissertation topic must be approved by the Head of School of Nursing before enrolment for it.
  - c The dissertation must be submitted by:
    - (i) the last day of classes of the second semester following initial enrolment for this degree, if the student is enrolled on a full-time basis
    - or
    - (ii) the last day of classes of the fourth semester following initial enrolment for this degree, if the student is enrolled on a part-time basis.

### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 6
  - a The degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
  - b Honours are normally awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003.
- 

## The Degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy – BPharm

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1
  - a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.
  - b In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit a suitably qualified student to enrol directly into a Stage II course(s).

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a A student must pass each of Parts I, II, III and IV as follows:

**Part I**

BIOSCI 106 Foundations of Biochemistry  
 BIOSCI 107 Biology for Biomedical Science: Cellular Processes and Development  
 CHEM 110 The Chemistry of the Living World  
 HUMANBIO 111 Population Health  
 HUMANBIO 122 Behaviour, Health and Development  
 HUMANBIO 142 Biology for Biomedical Science: Organ Systems  
 PHARMACY 101 Pharmacy Practice 1

**Part II**

CHEM 230 Molecules for Life: Synthesis and Reactivity  
 CHEM 240 Measurement and Analysis in Chemistry and Health Sciences  
 MOLMED 201 Microbiology and Immunology  
 PATHOL 251 Mechanisms of Disease  
 PHARMCOL 201 Introduction to Pharmacology  
 PHARMACY 201 Pharmacy Practice 2  
 PHARMACY 202 Pharmaceutics 1

**Part III**

CHEM 390 Medicinal Chemistry  
 PHARMCOL 301 Principles of Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 304 Systematic Pharmacology  
 PHARMACY 301 Pharmacy Practice 3  
 PHARMACY 302 Pharmacotherapy  
 PHARMACY 303 Pharmaceutics 2

**Part IV**

PHARMACY 401 Applied Pharmacotherapy/Pharmaceutical Care  
 PHARMACY 404 Pharmaceutics 3  
 PHARMACY 405 Research Dissertation  
 PHARMACY 406 Pharmacy Practice 4

- b (i) Each Part must normally be completed before the next Part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass Parts I and II in their entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that Part together with a course or courses towards the next successive Part.
- (ii) A student may not enrol in Part IV until Parts I, II and III have been completed in their entirety.

**Honours**

- 3 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's average grade over the entire course is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme that does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

**The Degree of Master of Audiology – MAud**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours)  
 or  
 the Degree of Bachelor of Science  
 or  
 the Degree of Bachelor of Arts  
 or  
 an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and

- b passed at Stage III:
  - (i) at least 6 points in Physiology, with an average grade of C+ or higher, and at least 2 points in Psychology
  - or
  - (ii) at least 6 points in Psychology, with an average grade of C+ or higher, and at least 2 points in Physiology

and

- c passed at least 2 points with an average grade of C+ or higher in each of:
    - Chemistry
    - Biology or Zoology
    - Physics or Acoustics
- 2 In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences:
- either*
- a vary the admission requirements in any way
- or*
- b exempt a student wholly or partly from any of the prerequisite courses and/or accept a lower average grade than C+ in the prerequisite courses required under Regulations 1b and c.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass in each of the courses which have a total value of 28 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of Part I and Part II as follows:

#### Part I (14 points):

- a
  - (i) AUDIOL 701 Auditory Neuroscience
  - AUDIOL 702 Basic Diagnostic Audiology
  - AUDIOL 703 Basic Clinical Audiology
  - PHYSIOL 702 Measurement in Biomedical Science
  - AUDIOL 704 Central Auditory Function
  - AUDIOL 705 Acoustics for Audiology
  - (ii) The Senate or its representative may, with the approval of the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences, the Dean of Faculty of Science and the relevant Heads of Department, permit a student to enrol in a course offered for the Degree of Master of Science instead of PHYSIOL 702 required under Regulation 4a(i).

#### Part II (14 points):

- b AUDIOL 711 Physiological Measures of Auditory Function
- AUDIOL 712 Advanced Clinical Audiology
- AUDIOL 790 Dissertation

### Practical and Clinical Requirements

- 5
  - a Each student must pass the clinical and practical requirements of the required courses to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative.
  - b A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences a certificate stating that the requirements set out in Regulation 5a have been met.

### Dissertation

- 6
  - a The dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.
  - b The dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into an area of the subject.
  - c Any laboratory work in connection with the dissertation must be carried out within the University. However, the Senate or its representative may permit a student to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for any period or periods considered necessary.
  - d A student is to submit the dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1990 regulations for the Degree of Master of Audiology were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt**

*The Master of Health Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**The Degree of Master of Health Sciences – MHSc**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:  
*either*  
 a completed the requirements for a degree in a discipline deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative  
*or*  
 b completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences with an average of B or higher, or its equivalent.
- 2 A student wishing to enrol in the nursing courses listed in the schedule must hold current registration as a nurse in New Zealand.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:  
 a four consecutive full-time semesters and pass in each of the courses with a total value of 28 points  
*or*  
 b two consecutive full-time semesters and pass a thesis or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences, or its equivalent, as approved by the Senate or its representative.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree is to select one of the following:  
 14 points from the Master of Health Sciences Schedule  
 14 points: HLTHSCI 796 Thesis  
*or*  
 22 points from the Master of Health Sciences Schedule  
 6 points: HLTHSCI 790 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:  
 14 points: HLTHSCI 796 Thesis  
*or*  
 8 points from the Master of Health Sciences Schedule  
 6 points: HLTHSCI 790 Dissertation
- 5 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same as or similar to those listed in the schedule to this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Course Coordinator.

**Thesis and Dissertation**

- 6 a The thesis or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.
- b The thesis or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into an area of the subject.
- c Any laboratory work in connection with the thesis or dissertation must be carried out within the University. However, the Senate or its representative may permit a student to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for any period or periods considered necessary.

- d A student is to submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 8 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where the student's overall grade is sufficiently high.  
b Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002. The 2001 regulations for the Degree of Master of Health Sciences were thereby repealed.

## Master of Health Sciences (MHSc) Schedule

### Anatomy with Radiology

ANATOMY 702 Biology of Connective Tissue  
ANATOMY 703 Biology of Connective Tissue Diseases  
ANATOMY 704 Current Topics in Anatomical Research 1  
ANATOMY 705 Current Topics in Anatomical Research 2  
ANATOMY 751 Advanced Biomedical Imaging

### Audiology

AUDIOL 701 Auditory Neuroscience  
AUDIOL 702 Basic Diagnostic Audiology  
AUDIOL 704 Central Auditory Function  
AUDIOL 705 Acoustics for Audiology  
AUDIOL 711 Physiological Measures of Auditory Function

### Behavioural Science

BEHAVSCI 700 Interventions for Mental Health  
BEHAVSCI 710 Effective Counselling in Mental Health  
BEHAVSCI 717 Mental Health Development: Theory and Principles  
BEHAVSCI 721 Alcohol, Tobacco and Other Drug Studies  
BEHAVSCI 722 Interventions for Lifestyle Change  
BEHAVSCI 729 Mental Health Promotion  
BEHAVSCI 730 Spirituality and Health  
BEHAVSCI 736 Assessment and Intervention with Addiction  
BEHAVSCI 737 Dual Diagnosis 1  
BEHAVSCI 738 Interventions in Problem Gambling  
BEHAVSCI 739 Dual Diagnosis 2  
BEHAVSCI 758 Foundations of Social Research in Health  
BEHAVSCI 759 Qualitative Research in Health  
BEHAVSCI 770 Special Topic  
BEHAVSCI 771 Special Topic

### Biological Sciences

BIOSCI 742 Bioinformatics and Computational Biology  
BIOSCI 745 Biotechnology and Bioentrepreneurship  
BIOSCI 750 Techniques in Microbial Discovery  
BIOSCI 755 Genomics and Gene Expression  
BIOSCI 756 Proteomics and Protein Interactions  
BIOSCI 757 Structural Biology  
BIOSCI 758 Development, Differentiation and Disease  
BIOSCI 759 Molecular Cell Biology and Biomedicine

### Community Health

COMHLTH 701 Statistics in Health Science  
COMHLTH 703 Epidemiology  
COMHLTH 705 Health and Public Policy  
COMHLTH 707 Health Economics  
COMHLTH 708 Economic Evaluation  
COMHLTH 710 Evaluation Research Methods  
COMHLTH 713 Health Promotion – Theory and Models  
COMHLTH 714 Health Promotion Strategies

COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
COMHLTH 716 Health Care Organization  
COMHLTH 717 Environmental Health  
COMHLTH 718 Health Protection  
COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care  
COMHLTH 722 Statistics in Health Science 2  
COMHLTH 723 Quality in Health Care  
COMHLTH 724 Health Information  
COMHLTH 725 Foundations of Public Health  
COMHLTH 731 Clinical Economics  
COMHLTH 732 Clinical Trials Design, Analysis and Management  
COMHLTH 733 Clinical Practice Guidelines Development & Implementation  
COMHLTH 734 Management with Health Professionals  
COMHLTH 735 Risk Assessment and Management  
COMHLTH 736 Traditional Medicine in New Zealand  
COMHLTH 738 Research Project in Public Health  
COMHLTH 739 Systematic Reviews and Meta-analysis  
COMHLTH 741 Special Topic in Public Health  
COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics  
COMHLTH 743 Health Promotion – Practicum  
COMHLTH 744 Research Methods for Health Professionals  
COMHLTH 745 Child Health  
COMHLTH 746 Youth Health  
COMHLTH 748 Special Topic in Public Health  
COMHLTH 749 Special Topic in Public Health  
COMHLTH 750 Special Topic in Public Health

### Education

EDUC 741 Educational Psychology  
EDUC 742 Developmental Psychology  
EDUC 748 Methods of Psychological Inquiry  
EDUC 752 Teaching and Learning in Adult and Higher Education  
EDUC 753 Principles and Practice of Lifelong Learning

### General Practice and Primary Health Care

GENPRAC 701 Special Topics in General Practice  
GENPRAC 703 Communication Skills for Health Professionals  
GENPRAC 704 Research Methods in General Practice  
GENPRAC 705 Clinical Teaching and Learning  
GENPRAC 706 Health Educational Programme Planning and Evaluation  
GENPRAC 708 Quality and Health Outcomes  
GENPRAC 710 Principles of Dermatological Practice  
GENPRAC 712 Paediatric Dermatology  
GENPRAC 730 Management of Opioid Dependency  
GENPRAC 735 Health and Lifestyle  
GENPRAC 736 Health Promotion and Education  
GENPRAC 739 Managing Lifestyle Change  
GENPRAC 740 Travel Medicine  
GENPRAC 741 Tropical Medicine  
GENPRAC 742 International Mobility and the Control of Diseases  
GENPRAC 743 Current Topics in Travel and Tropical Medicine  
GENPRAC 749 Acute Orthopaedics

GENPRAC 750 Acute Plastics  
 GENPRAC 753 Practical Orthopaedics and Plastics  
 GENPRAC 754 Acute Medical  
 GENPRAC 755 Acute Surgical  
 GENPRAC 756 Immediate Care  
 GENPRAC 760 Ethics, Culture and Societal Approaches to Death  
 GENPRAC 761 Psychosocial Issues in Palliative Care  
 GENPRAC 762 Clinical Symptom Management in Palliative Care 1  
 GENPRAC 763 Reflective Practice in Palliative Care  
 GENPRAC 770 Principles of Gerontology  
 GENPRAC 771 Health Services for Elderly People  
 GENPRAC 772 Mental Health in Old Age  
 GENPRAC 773 Rehabilitation in Later Life  
 GENPRAC 777 Sociology and Psychology of Ageing  
 GENPRAC 778 Biology of Ageing  
 GENPRAC 780 Upper Limb and Spine  
 GENPRAC 781 Lower Limb and Physiotherapy  
 GENPRAC 782 Sports Medicine in the Community  
 GENPRAC 783 Medical Issues in Sport  
 GENPRAC 785 Clinical Symptom Management in Palliative Care  
 GENPRAC 786 Child and Adolescent Palliative Care  
 GENPRAC 787 Special Topic in Palliative Care

### Health Psychology

HLTHPSYC 714 Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 715 Research Methods in Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 716 Psychoneuroimmunology  
 HLTHPSYC 743 Psychopathology and Clinical Interviewing  
 HLTHPSYC 744 Research Topic in Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 756 Self-organizing Systems in Biology and Health  
 HLTHPSYC 757 Psychosomatic Processes  
 HLTHPSYC 758 Special Topic in Health Psychology

### Managed Care

MGCARE 701 Legislation and Managed Care  
 MGCARE 702 Principles of Case Management  
 MGCARE 703 Assessment and Management of Disability  
 MGCARE 704 Rehabilitation Practice  
 MGCARE 705 Health Systems in New Zealand  
 MGCARE 706 Rehabilitation Case Studies

### Maori and Pacific Health

MPHEALTH 710 Maori Concepts of Health and Mental Illness  
 MPHEALTH 711 Maori Mental Health Development  
 MPHEALTH 712 Maori Models of Health Practice  
 MPHEALTH 713 Case Studies in Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 714 Practicum: Non-clinical Placement  
 MPHEALTH 715 Special Topic in Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 716 Special Topic  
 MPHEALTH 717 Special Topic  
 MPHEALTH 718 Introduction to Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 719 Maori Health: Policies and Outcomes  
 MPHEALTH 720 Pacific Islands: Environment, Health and Society  
 MPHEALTH 721 Clinical Practicum in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 722 Non-clinical Practicum in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 723 Food, Nutrition and Development  
 MPHEALTH 724 Special Topic  
 MPHEALTH 725 Pacific Health Research Practicum  
 MPHEALTH 726 Health Promotion in Pacific Community Development  
 MPHEALTH 727 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 728 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 729 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 730 Introduction to Pacific Health

### Medicine

MEDICINE 703 Special Topics in Medicine  
 MEDICINE 709 Project: A Rehabilitation Programme  
 MEDICINE 710 Project: A Health Surveillance System  
 MEDICINE 711 Project: A Hazard Control System  
 MEDICINE 712 Project: A Reactive Health Service

MEDICINE 713 Cardiovascular Medicine  
 MEDICINE 720 Work Shifts, Fatigue and Performance  
 MEDICINE 730 Project: A Comprehensive Workplace Assessment  
 MEDICINE 731 Special Topic in Occupational Health  
 MEDICINE 732 Special Topic in Occupational Health  
 MEDICINE 733 Research Project in Occupational Health  
 MEDICINE 734 Research Project in Occupational Health

### Molecular Medicine

MOLMED 701 Developmental Biology  
 MOLMED 707 Special Topic in Molecular Medicine  
 MOLMED 708 Infection, Immunity and Disease  
 MOLMED 710 Genetic Disease  
 MOLMED 711 Advanced Medical Microbiology  
 MOLMED 712 Advanced Immunology

### Nursing

NURSING 701 Dissertation  
 NURSING 702 Developing Nursing Practice  
 NURSING 704 Applied Science for Registered Nurses  
 NURSING 705 Health Assessment and Diagnostic Reasoning  
 NURSING 706 Principles of Pharmacology and Pharmacokinetics  
 NURSING 707 Adult Acute Care Nursing  
 NURSING 708 Community and Primary Health Care Nursing  
 NURSING 709 Clinical Teaching  
 NURSING 710 Special Studies in Nursing  
 NURSING 711 Occupational Health Nursing at an Advanced Level  
 NURSING 712 Clinical Occupational Health Nursing 1  
 NURSING 713 Clinical Occupational Health Nursing 2  
 NURSING 714 Nursing Practicum 1  
 NURSING 716 Primary Health Care of Children  
 NURSING 718 Context of Advanced Nursing Practice  
 NURSING 719 Specialty Nursing Knowledge and Practice  
 NURSING 720 Evidence-based Nursing  
 NURSING 721 Nurse Prescribing Practicum  
 NURSING 722 Principles of Therapeutics for Advanced Nursing  
 NURSING 724 Occupational Health Nursing Project  
 NURSING 725 New Graduate Practice  
 NURSING 726 Special Topic in Nursing  
 NURSING 727 Partnerships in Chronic Care  
 NURSING 728 Nursing Practicum 2  
 NURSING 729 Nurse Leadership in Health Services  
 NURSING 730 Knowledge and Science in Specialty Nursing  
 NURSING 731 Nursing the Hospitalized Child  
 NURSING 732 Nursing Leadership Practicum  
 NURSING 733 Special Studies in Nursing  
 NURSING 734 Special Topic in Nursing  
 NURSING 735 Clinical Education Practicum  
 NURSING 736 Health Policy and Nursing  
 NURSING 750 Social Context: Mental Health Nursing Practice  
 NURSING 751 Advanced Practice in Mental Health Nursing  
 NURSING 752 Narrative Case Studies  
 NURSING 753 Specialty Practice in Mental Health Nursing  
 NURSING 754 Legal Issues in Mental Health Nursing  
 NURSING 755 Mental Health Nursing Assessment  
 NURSING 756 Mental Health Nursing Concepts  
 NURSING 757 Evidence-based Case Studies  
 NURSING 758 Special Topic in Mental Health Nursing  
 NURSING 759 Service Delivery in Mental Health Nursing  
 NURSING 760 Cognitive and Behavioural Therapy in Nursing Practice  
 NURSING 761 Special Topic in Mental Health Nursing  
 NURSING 762 Special Topic  
 NURSING 795 Dissertation  
 NURSING 796 Thesis  
 NURSING 797 Research Portfolio

### Nutrition

NUTRN 700 Nutrition in Health and Disease  
 NUTRN 701 Nutrition Mechanisms  
 NUTRN 702 Clinical Nutrition  
 NUTRN 703 Critical Evaluation of Nutritional Therapies  
 NUTRN 704 Special Studies in Nutrition

### Obstetrics and Gynaecology

OBSTGYN 705 Special Topic in Obstetrics and Gynaecology  
 OBSTGYN 706 Reproductive Science  
 OBSTGYN 707 Reproductive Medicine  
 OBSTGYN 712 Contraception and Pre- and Early Pregnancy Care  
 OBSTGYN 713 Pregnancy and Postnatal care  
 OBSTGYN 715 Medical Gynaecology  
 OBSTGYN 716 Special Topics in Gynaecology

### Paediatrics

PAEDS 704 Special Topics in Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 711 Paediatrics in Child Health  
 PAEDS 712 Youth Health 1  
 PAEDS 713 Respiratory Disease in Childhood  
 PAEDS 715 Childhood Communicable Diseases  
 PAEDS 716 Behavioural Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 717 Child Protection and Injury  
 PAEDS 718 Paediatric Disability and Chronic Diseases  
 PAEDS 720 Youth Health 2

### Pathology

PATHOL 703 Special Topics in Pathology  
 PATHOL 704 Principles of Cancer Therapy  
 PATHOL 705 Cancer Biology 2

### Pharmaceutical Science

PHARMACY 750 Pharmaceutical Formulation  
 PHARMACY 751 Pharmaceutical Techniques  
 PHARMACY 752 Pharmaceutical Quality Assurance  
 PHARMACY 753 Regulatory Affairs  
 PHARMACY 754 Pharmaceutical Science Thesis Proposal

### Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology

PHARMCOL 710 Special Topics  
 PHARMCOL 711 Toxicology  
 PHARMCOL 712 Drug Disposition and Action  
 PHARMCOL 713 Neurobiology and Neuropharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 714 Cardiovascular Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 715 Pharmacology of Anaesthetics and Analgesics  
 PHARMCOL 716 Pharmacometrics  
 PHARMCOL 717 Biochemical Endocrinology  
 PHARMCOL 719 Biomedical Research Techniques  
 PHARMCOL 721 Advanced Toxicology

PHARMCOL 722 Clinical Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 723 Advanced Molecular Neuropharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 724 Special Topics in Cardiovascular Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 725 Special Topics in Anaesthetics and Analgesics  
 PHARMCOL 726 Advanced Pharmacometrics  
 PHARMCOL 727 Topics in Reproduction  
 PHARMCOL 728 Cancer Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 729 Pharmacoeconomics and Clinical Economics

### Pharmacy

PHARMACY 700 Critical Evaluation of Complementary Medicinal Products

### Physiology

PHYSIOL 701 Experimental Design  
 PHYSIOL 702 Measurement in Biomedical Science  
 PHYSIOL 703 Neurobiology: Sensory and Motor Systems  
 PHYSIOL 705 Contractile Function  
 PHYSIOL 706 Physiology of Rest and Exercise  
 PHYSIOL 707 Topics in Current Physiology Research  
 PHYSIOL 708 Current Research in Fetal and Postnatal Growth Biology

### Psychiatry

PSYCHIAT 713 Special Topic in Mental Health  
 PSYCHIAT 718 Clinical Academic Psychiatry 1  
 PSYCHIAT 720 Liaison Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 731 Evidence-based Mental Health Care 1  
 PSYCHIAT 732 Evidence-based Mental Health Care 2  
 PSYCHIAT 733 Psychosocial Aspects of Aging  
 PSYCHIAT 734 Old Age Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 740 Child and Adolescent Psychopathology  
 PSYCHIAT 741 Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Theory  
 PSYCHIAT 742 Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Practice  
 PSYCHIAT 745 Suicide Studies  
 PSYCHIAT 746 Research Topic in Forensic Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 747 Child and Adolescent Development  
 PSYCHIAT 748 Child, Adolescent and Family Assessment  
 PSYCHIAT 749 Case Studies in Child and Adolescent Mental Health  
 PSYCHIAT 760 Legal Issues in Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 761 Clinical Forensic Psychiatry 1  
 PSYCHIAT 762 Clinical Forensic Psychiatry 2  
 PSYCHIAT 763 Psychiatric Epidemiology and Social Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 764 Clinical Academic Psychiatry 2  
 PSYCHIAT 766 Special Topic  
 PSYCHIAT 767 Special Topic

## The Degree of Master of Medical Science – MMedSc

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative  
and
  - b if seeking admission to a 14 point MMedSc, have completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science, or its equivalent, with an average grade of B or higher  
and
  - c hold current registration with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile  
and
  - d satisfy the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences or its representative that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by The University of Auckland.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:

- a four full-time semesters and pass in each of the courses with a total value of 28 points, if entering the degree with a Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery or equivalent
  - or
  - b two full-time semesters and pass a thesis or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours) or its equivalent or a Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science or its equivalent as approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 3 A student enrolled for this degree on a part-time basis has to follow a programme of:
- a the equivalent of four consecutive full-time semesters and pass in 28 points if entering with a Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery or equivalent
  - or
  - b the equivalent of two consecutive full-time semesters and a pass in 14 points if entering with a Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours) or equivalent or with a Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science or equivalent as approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 4 In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend the period of full-time or part-time study.

### Structure and Content

- 5 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
- (i) 12 points from the schedule to these regulations  
2 points: GENPRAC 704 or an equivalent course as approved by the Head of Department  
14 points: MEDSCI 796 Thesis
  - or
  - (ii) 18 points from the schedule to these regulations  
2 points: GENPRAC 704 or an equivalent course as approved by the Head of Department  
8 points: MEDSCI 790 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
- (i) 14 points: MEDSCI 796 Thesis, providing the student has passed GENPRAC 704 or an equivalent course as approved by the Head of Department
  - or
  - (ii) 6 points from the schedule to these regulations, providing the student has passed GENPRAC 704 or an equivalent course as approved by the Head of Department  
8 points: MEDSCI 790 Dissertation
  - or
  - (iii) 4 points from the schedule to these regulations  
2 points: GENPRAC 704 or an equivalent course as approved by the Head of Department  
8 points: MEDSCI 790 Dissertation
- 6 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same as or similar to those listed in the schedule to this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Course Coordinator.

### Thesis or Dissertation

- 7 a The thesis or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on recommendation of the relevant Head of Department.
- b The thesis or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by an investigation into an area of medical science.
- c A student is to submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 1999 regulations for the Degree of Master of Medical Science were thereby repealed.

---

**Master of Medical Science (MMedSc) Schedule**


---

**Anatomy with Radiology**

ANATOMY 702 Biology of Connective Tissue  
 ANATOMY 703 Biology of Connective Tissue Diseases  
 ANATOMY 704 Current Topics in Anatomical Research 1  
 ANATOMY 705 Current Topics in Anatomical Research 2

**Behavioural Science**

BEHAVSCI 700 Interventions for Mental Health  
 BEHAVSCI 710 Effective Counselling in Mental Health  
 BEHAVSCI 717 Mental Health Development: Theory and Principles  
 BEHAVSCI 721 Alcohol, Tobacco and Other Drug Studies  
 BEHAVSCI 722 Interventions for Lifestyle Change  
 BEHAVSCI 729 Mental Health Promotion  
 BEHAVSCI 730 Spirituality and Health  
 BEHAVSCI 736 Assessment and Intervention with Addiction  
 BEHAVSCI 737 Dual Diagnosis 1  
 BEHAVSCI 738 Interventions in Problem Gambling  
 BEHAVSCI 739 Dual Diagnosis 2  
 BEHAVSCI 758 Foundations of Social Research in Health  
 BEHAVSCI 759 Qualitative Research in Health

**Biological Sciences**

BIOSCI 742 Bioinformatics and Computational Biology  
 BIOSCI 745 Biotechnology and Biopreneurship  
 BIOSCI 750 Techniques in Microbial Discovery  
 BIOSCI 755 Genomics and Gene Expression  
 BIOSCI 756 Proteomics and Protein Interactions  
 BIOSCI 757 Structural Biology  
 BIOSCI 758 Development, Differentiation and Disease  
 BIOSCI 759 Molecular Cell Biology and Biomedicine

**Community Health**

COMHLTH 701 Statistics in Health Science 1  
 COMHLTH 703 Epidemiology  
 COMHLTH 710 Evaluation Research Methods  
 COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care

**General Practice and Primary Health Care**

GENPRAC 701 Special Topic in General Practice  
 GENPRAC 702 Philosophy of General Practice  
 GENPRAC 703 Communication Skills for Health Professionals  
 GENPRAC 704 Research Methods in General Practice  
 GENPRAC 705 Clinical Teaching and Learning  
 GENPRAC 706 Health Educational Programme Planning and Evaluation  
 GENPRAC 707 Guideline Theory and Practice  
 GENPRAC 708 Quality and Health Outcomes  
 GENPRAC 709 Practice Management and Organization  
 GENPRAC 710 Principles of Dermatological Practice  
 GENPRAC 712 Paediatric Dermatology  
 GENPRAC 721 Primary Mental Health 1  
 GENPRAC 722 Primary Mental Health 2  
 GENPRAC 723 Mental Health Therapeutics  
 GENPRAC 730 Management of Opioid Dependency  
 GENPRAC 735 Health and Lifestyle  
 GENPRAC 736 Health Promotion and Education  
 GENPRAC 737 Special Topic  
 GENPRAC 738 Special Topic  
 GENPRAC 739 Managing Lifestyle Change  
 GENPRAC 740 Travel Medicine  
 GENPRAC 741 Tropical Medicine  
 GENPRAC 742 International Mobility and the Control of Diseases  
 GENPRAC 743 Current Topics in Travel and Tropical Medicine  
 GENPRAC 749 Acute Orthopaedics  
 GENPRAC 750 Acute Plastics  
 GENPRAC 753 Practical Orthopaedics and Plastics  
 GENPRAC 754 Acute Medical

GENPRAC 755 Acute Surgical  
 GENPRAC 756 Immediate Care  
 GENPRAC 760 Ethics, Culture and Societal Approaches to Death  
 GENPRAC 761 Psychosocial Issues in Palliative Care  
 GENPRAC 762 Clinical Symptom Management in Palliative Care 1  
 GENPRAC 763 Reflective Practice in Palliative Care  
 GENPRAC 770 Principles of Gerontology  
 GENPRAC 771 Health Services for Elderly People  
 GENPRAC 772 Mental Health in Old Age  
 GENPRAC 773 Rehabilitation in Later Life  
 GENPRAC 774 Medical Care of the Elderly 1  
 GENPRAC 775 Medical Care of the Elderly 2  
 GENPRAC 776 Medical Care of the Elderly 3  
 GENPRAC 777 Sociology and Psychology of Ageing  
 GENPRAC 778 Biology of Ageing  
 GENPRAC 780 Upper Limb and Spine  
 GENPRAC 781 Lower Limb and Physiotherapy  
 GENPRAC 782 Sports Medicine in the Community  
 GENPRAC 783 Medical Issues in Sport  
 GENPRAC 784 Practical Sports Medicine  
 GENPRAC 785 Clinical Symptom Management in Palliative Care 2  
 GENPRAC 786 Child and Adolescent Palliative Care  
 GENPRAC 787 Special Topic in Palliative Care

**Health Psychology**

HLTHPSYC 714 Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 715 Research Methods in Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 716 Psychoneuroimmunology  
 HLTHPSYC 743 Psychopathology and Clinical Interviewing  
 HLTHPSYC 744 Research Topic in Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 756 Self-organizing Systems in Biology and Health  
 HLTHPSYC 757 Psychosomatic Processes  
 HLTHPSYC 758 Special Topic in Health Psychology

**Maori and Pacific Health**

MPHEALTH 710 Maori Concepts of Health and Mental Illness  
 MPHEALTH 711 Maori Mental Health Development  
 MPHEALTH 718 Introduction to Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 719 Maori Health: Policies and Outcomes

**Medicine**

MEDICINE 703 Special Topics in Medicine  
 MEDICINE 706 Occupational Medicine  
 MEDICINE 707 Clinical Occupational Medicine 1  
 MEDICINE 708 Clinical Occupational Medicine 2  
 MEDICINE 709 Project: A Rehabilitation Programme  
 MEDICINE 710 Project: A Health Surveillance System  
 MEDICINE 711 Project: A Hazard Control System  
 MEDICINE 712 Project: A Reactive Health Service  
 MEDICINE 713 Cardiovascular Medicine  
 MEDICINE 714 Health Surveillance of Divers and Hyperbaric Workers  
 MEDICINE 715 Physiology and Medicine of Diving  
 MEDICINE 716 Hyperbaric Medicine  
 MEDICINE 717 Clinical Diving and Hyperbaric Practice  
 MEDICINE 718 Research Essay in Diving and Hyperbaric Medicine  
 MEDICINE 719 Research Project in Diving and Hyperbaric Medicine  
 MEDICINE 720 Work Shifts, Fatigue and Performance  
 MEDICINE 730 Project: A Comprehensive Workplace Assessment  
 MEDICINE 731 Special Topic in Occupational Health  
 MEDICINE 732 Special Topic in Occupational Health  
 MEDICINE 733 Research Project in Occupational Health  
 MEDICINE 734 Research Project in Occupational Health  
 MEDICINE 737 Aviation Medicine

**Molecular Medicine**

MOLMED 701 Developmental Biology

MOLMED 707 Special Topic in Molecular Medicine  
 MOLMED 708 Infection, Immunity and Disease  
 MOLMED 710 Genetic Disease  
 MOLMED 711 Advanced Medical Microbiology  
 MOLMED 712 Advanced Immunology

### Nutrition

NUTRN 700 Nutrition in Health and Disease  
 NUTRN 701 Nutrition Mechanisms  
 NUTRN 702 Clinical Nutrition  
 NUTRN 703 Critical Evaluation of Nutritional Therapies  
 NUTRN 704 Special Studies in Nutrition

### Obstetrics and Gynaecology

OBSTGYN 705 Special Topic in Obstetrics and Gynaecology  
 OBSTGYN 706 Reproductive Science  
 OBSTGYN 707 Reproductive Medicine  
 OBSTGYN 712 Contraception and Pre- and Early Pregnancy Care  
 OBSTGYN 713 Pregnancy and Postnatal care  
 OBSTGYN 715 Medical Gynaecology  
 OBSTGYN 716 Special Topics in Gynaecology

### Paediatrics

PAEDS 704 Special Topics in Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 711 Paediatrics and Child Health  
 PAEDS 712 Youth Health 1  
 PAEDS 713 Respiratory Disease in Childhood  
 PAEDS 714 Emergency Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 715 Childhood Communicable Diseases  
 PAEDS 716 Behavioural Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 717 Child Protection and Injury  
 PAEDS 718 Paediatric Disability and Chronic Diseases  
 PAEDS 719 Special Topic  
 PAEDS 720 Youth Health 2

### Pathology

PATHOL 703 Special Topics in Pathology  
 PATHOL 704 Principles of Cancer Therapy  
 PATHOL 705 Cancer Biology 2

### Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology

PHARMCOL 710 Special Topics  
 PHARMCOL 711 Toxicology  
 PHARMCOL 712 Drug Disposition and Action  
 PHARMCOL 713 Neurobiology and Neuropharmacology

PHARMCOL 714 Cardiovascular Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 715 Pharmacology of Anaesthetics and Analgesics  
 PHARMCOL 716 Pharmacometrics  
 PHARMCOL 717 Biochemical Endocrinology  
 PHARMCOL 719 Biomedical Research Techniques  
 PHARMCOL 721 Advanced Toxicology  
 PHARMCOL 722 Clinical Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 723 Advanced Molecular Neuropharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 724 Special Topics in Cardiovascular Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 725 Special Topics in Anaesthetics and Analgesics  
 PHARMCOL 726 Advanced Pharmacometrics  
 PHARMCOL 727 Topics in Reproduction  
 PHARMCOL 728 Cancer Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 729 Pharmacoeconomics and Clinical Economics

### Physiology

PHYSIOL 701 Experimental Design  
 PHYSIOL 702 Measurement in Biomedical Science  
 PHYSIOL 703 Neurobiology: Sensory and Motor Systems  
 PHYSIOL 705 Contractile Function  
 PHYSIOL 706 Physiology of Rest and Exercise  
 PHYSIOL 707 Topics in Current Physiology Research  
 PHYSIOL 708 Current Research in Fetal and Postnatal Growth Biology

### Psychiatry

PSYCHIAT 713 Special Topic in Mental Health  
 PSYCHIAT 718 Clinical Academic Psychiatry 1  
 PSYCHIAT 720 Liaison Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 731 Evidence-based Mental Health Care 1  
 PSYCHIAT 732 Evidence-based Mental Health Care 2  
 PSYCHIAT 733 Psychosocial Aspects of Aging  
 PSYCHIAT 734 Old Age Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 740 Child and Adolescent Psychopathology  
 PSYCHIAT 741 Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Theory  
 PSYCHIAT 742 Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Practice  
 PSYCHIAT 745 Suicide Studies  
 PSYCHIAT 746 Research Topic in Forensic Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 747 Child and Adolescent Development  
 PSYCHIAT 748 Child, Adolescent and Family Assessment  
 PSYCHIAT 749 Case Studies in Child and Adolescent Mental Health  
 PSYCHIAT 760 Legal Issues in Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 761 Clinical Forensic Psychiatry 1  
 PSYCHIAT 762 Clinical Forensic Psychiatry 2  
 PSYCHIAT 763 Psychiatric Epidemiology and Social Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 764 Clinical Academic Psychiatry 2  
 PSYCHIAT 766 Special Topic  
 PSYCHIAT 767 Special Topic

## The Degree of Master of Nursing – MNurs

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:
  - either*
  - a have completed the requirements for a degree in nursing
  - or*
  - b have completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences in Advanced Nursing, or its equivalent, with an overall average of B or higher
  - and*
  - c hold current registration as a nurse in New Zealand.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:
  - a four consecutive full-time semesters and pass in each of the courses with a total value of 28 points
  - or*

- b two consecutive full-time semesters and pass a thesis, research portfolio or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences, or its equivalent, as approved by the Senate or its representative.

### Structure and Content

- 3 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree must complete:
- (i) 2 points: NURSING 714
  - (ii) 2 points from an approved research methods course: BEHAVSCI 758, COMHLTH 701, 703, 709, 710, 720, 728, 744, 732, 739
  - (iii) 10 points from:
    - (a) 2 points from courses approved by the Head of School of Nursing  
*and*  
NURSING 704, 705, 720, 719 or 708  
*or*  
NURSING 711, 712, 713, 724  
*or*  
GENPRAC 778, 770 or 772 or 773, NURSING 705, 720
    - or*  
GENPRAC 762, 761 or 760 or 763, NURSING 705, 720  
*or*  
(b) NURSING 750-759  
*or*  
(c) other courses approved by the Head of School of Nursing
  - (iv) *either*  
14 points: NURSING 796 Thesis; or NURSING 797 Research Portfolio  
*or*  
6 points: NURSING 795 Dissertation; plus 8 points from Master's courses listed in the Master of Health Sciences or Master of Nursing Schedules or other courses approved by the Head of School of Nursing  
*or*  
4 points: NURSING 701 Dissertation; plus 10 points from Master of Nursing or Master of Health Sciences Schedules or other courses approved by the Head of School of Nursing.
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:  
*either*  
NURSING 796 Thesis  
*or*  
NURSING 797 Research Portfolio  
*or*  
10 points from the Master of Nursing or the Master of Health Sciences Schedules  
4 points: NURSING 701 Dissertation.

### Thesis or Dissertation

- 4 a The thesis, research portfolio or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on recommendation of the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.
- b The thesis, research portfolio or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into an area of the subject.
- c Any laboratory work in connection with the thesis, research portfolio or dissertation must be carried out within the University. However, the Senate or its representative may permit a student to carry out the work in an approved institution outside the University for any period or periods considered necessary.
- d A student is to submit the thesis, research portfolio or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations - Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 6 Honours may be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations - Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

### Master of Nursing (MNurs) Schedule

NURSING 701 Dissertation	NURSING 733 Special Studies in Nursing
NURSING 702 Developing Nursing Practice	NURSING 734 Special Topic in Nursing
NURSING 704 Applied Science for Registered Nurses	NURSING 735 Clinical Education Practicum
NURSING 705 Health Assessment and Diagnostic Reasoning	NURSING 736 Health Policy and Nursing
NURSING 706 Pharmacology and Pharmacokinetics for Nurses	NURSING 750 Social Context: Mental Health Nursing Practice
NURSING 707 Adult Acute Care Nursing	NURSING 751 Advanced Practice in Mental Health Nursing
NURSING 708 Community and Primary Health Care Nursing	NURSING 752 Narrative Case Studies
NURSING 709 Clinical Teaching	NURSING 753 Specialty Practice in Mental Health Nursing
NURSING 710 Special Studies in Nursing	NURSING 754 Legal Issues in Mental Health Nursing
NURSING 711 Occupational Health Nursing at an Advanced Level	NURSING 755 Mental Health Nursing Assessment
NURSING 712 Clinical Occupational Health Nursing 1	NURSING 756 Mental Health Nursing Concepts
NURSING 713 Clinical Occupational Health Nursing 2	NURSING 757 Evidence-based Case Studies
NURSING 714 Nursing Practicum 1	NURSING 758 Special Topic in Mental Health Nursing
NURSING 715 Long-term Nursing Care	NURSING 759 Service Delivery in Mental Health Nursing
NURSING 716 Primary Healthcare of Children	NURSING 760 Cognitive and Behavioural Therapy in Nursing Practice
NURSING 718 Context of Advanced Nursing Practice	NURSING 761 Special Topic in Mental Health Nursing
NURSING 719 Specialty Nursing Knowledge and Practice	NURSING 762 Special Topic
NURSING 720 Evidence-based Nursing	NURSING 795 Dissertation
NURSING 721 Nurse Prescribing Practicum	NURSING 796 Thesis
NURSING 722 Principles of Therapeutics for Advanced Nursing	NURSING 797 Research Portfolio
NURSING 723 Clinical Scholarship	GENPRAC 760 Ethics, Culture and Societal Approaches to Death
NURSING 724 Occupational Health Nursing Project	GENPRAC 761 Psychosocial Issues in Palliative Care
NURSING 725 New Graduate Practice	GENPRAC 762 Clinical Symptom Management in Palliative Care 1
NURSING 726 Special Topic in Nursing	GENPRAC 763 Reflective Practice in Palliative Care
NURSING 727 Partnerships in Chronic Care	GENPRAC 770 Principles of Gerontology
NURSING 728 Nursing Practicum 2	GENPRAC 771 Health Services for Elderly People
NURSING 729 Nurse Leadership in Health Services	GENPRAC 772 Mental Health in Old Age
NURSING 730 Knowledge and Science in Specialty Nursing	GENPRAC 773 Rehabilitation in Later Life
NURSING 731 Nursing the Hospitalized Child	GENPRAC 777 Sociology and Psychology of Ageing
NURSING 732 Nursing Leadership Practicum	GENPRAC 778 Biology of Ageing

### The Degree of Master of Pharmacy Practice – MPharmPrac

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - either*
    - a have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy or an equivalent pharmacy qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
    - or*
    - b have completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice, or its equivalent
  - and*
  - c hold current registration as a pharmacist in New Zealand or as a pharmacist in the country of domicile.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:
  - a four consecutive full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 28 points
  - or*
  - b two consecutive full-time semesters and pass a thesis or courses with a value of 14 points if entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice, or its equivalent, as approved by the Senate or its representative.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
  - (i) 6 points: PHARMACY 712, COMHLTH 744
  - (ii) 8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Pharmacy Practice Schedule. With the approval of the Head of School of Pharmacy, up to 4 points may be taken from: COMHLTH 715, 716, 723, 724
  - (iii) 14 points: PHARMACY 796 Thesis
  - or*
  - (iv) 4 points: PHARMACY 712
  - (v) 18 points from other courses listed in the Master of Pharmacy Practice Schedule. With the approval of the Head of School of Pharmacy, up to 4 points may be taken from:

COMHLTH 715, 716, 723, 724 and up to 4 points from COMHLTH 713, 714, 731, 732, 733, 744, NURSING 709

- (vi) 6 points: PHARMACY 792 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
- (i) 14 points: PHARMACY 796 Thesis  
or
- (ii) 8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Pharmacy Practice Schedule that have not already been taken in the Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice programme. With the approval of the Head of the School of Pharmacy, up to 4 points may be taken from the following courses: COMHLTH 715, 716, 723, 724
- (iii) 6 points: PHARMACY 792 Dissertation
- 4 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same as or similar to those listed for this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Head of School of Pharmacy.

#### Thesis and Dissertation

- 5 a The thesis or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Head of School of Pharmacy.
- b The thesis or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into an area of the subject.
- c Any practical work in connection with the thesis or dissertation must be carried out within the University. However the Senate or its representative may permit a student to carry out the work at an approved site outside the University for any periods or period considered necessary.
- d A student is to submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Practical Requirements

- 6 Students enrolled for this degree must satisfactorily carry out such practice activities as the Head of School of Pharmacy may require.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 8 Honours may be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2002 regulations for the Degree of Master of Pharmacy Practice were thereby repealed.

---

#### Master of Pharmacy Practice (MPharmPrac) Schedule

---

PHARMACY 700 Critical Evaluation of Complementary Medicinal Products  
PHARMACY 712 Clinical Pharmacy Practice  
PHARMACY 720 Issues in Concordance  
PHARMACY 730 Cardiovascular Pharmacotherapy  
PHARMACY 731 Respiratory Pharmacotherapy  
PHARMACY 732 Endocrine Pharmacotherapy  
PHARMACY 733 GI/Rheumatology Pharmacotherapy  
PHARMACY 734 Pharmacotherapy of Infections  
PHARMACY 735 Pharmacotherapy in Psychiatry

PHARMACY 736 Pharmacotherapy in Dermatology  
PHARMACY 737 Pharmacotherapy in Oncology  
PHARMACY 740 Evidence-based OTC Prescribing  
PHARMACY 741 Pharmacotherapy in the Elderly  
PHARMACY 742 Paediatric Pharmacotherapy  
PHARMACY 743 Nutrition for Pharmacists  
PHARMACY 792 Dissertation  
PHARMACY 796 Thesis

---

### The Degree of Master of Public Health – MPH

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- either*
- a completed the requirements for a degree in a discipline deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative with an average of B or higher in the last equivalent full-time year of study

- or
- b completed the requirements for a Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health or its equivalent with an average of B or higher
- and
- c satisfied the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have the appropriate training and experience to undertake the programme.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:
- a four consecutive full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 28 points
- or
- b two consecutive full-time semesters and pass a thesis, or courses and a dissertation, with a total value of 14 points if entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health, or its equivalent as approved by the Senate or its representative.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
- 4 points: COMHLTH 725  
2 points from COMHLTH 701, 703, 710, 722, 744  
8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule  
14 points: COMHLTH 796 Thesis
- or
- 4 points: COMHLTH 725  
2 points from COMHLTH 701, 703, 710, 722, 744  
16 points from other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule  
6 points: COMHLTH 790 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
- 14 points: COMHLTH 796 Thesis
- or
- 8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule  
6 points: COMHLTH 790 Dissertation
- c Of the points available from other courses in Regulations 3a and 3b, up to 4 points can be accumulated from other courses offered at the Master's level within the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences or in any other faculty with the approval of the relevant Heads of Department.
- 4 A student is to choose courses in consultation with the Head of Department of Community Health.

#### Thesis and Dissertation

- 5 a The thesis or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Division.
- b The thesis or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into a branch of public health.
- c A student is to submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 7 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where the student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 2000 regulations for the Degree of Master of Public Health were thereby repealed.

---

**Master of Public Health (MPH) Schedule**


---

**Behavioural Science**

BEHAVSCI 721 Alcohol, Tobacco and Other Drug Studies  
 BEHAVSCI 722 Interventions for Lifestyle Change  
 BEHAVSCI 729 Mental Health Promotion

**Community Health**

COMHLTH 701 Statistics in Health Science  
 COMHLTH 703 Epidemiology  
 COMHLTH 705 Health and Public Policy  
 COMHLTH 707 Health Economics  
 COMHLTH 708 Economic Evaluation  
 COMHLTH 710 Evaluation Research Methods  
 COMHLTH 713 Health Promotion – Theory and Models  
 COMHLTH 714 Health Promotion Strategies  
 COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
 COMHLTH 716 Health Care Organization  
 COMHLTH 717 Environmental Health  
 COMHLTH 718 Health Protection  
 COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Healthcare  
 COMHLTH 722 Statistics in Health Science 2  
 COMHLTH 723 Quality in Healthcare  
 COMHLTH 724 Health Information  
 COMHLTH 725 Foundations of Public Health  
 COMHLTH 731 Clinical Economics  
 COMHLTH 732 Clinical Trials Design, Analysis and Management  
 COMHLTH 733 Clinical Practice Guidelines Development & Implementation  
 COMHLTH 734 Management with Health Professionals  
 COMHLTH 735 Risk Assessment and Management  
 COMHLTH 736 Traditional Medicine in New Zealand  
 COMHLTH 738 Research Project in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 739 Systematic Reviews and Meta-analysis  
 COMHLTH 741 Special Topic in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics  
 COMHLTH 743 Health Promotion – Practicum  
 COMHLTH 744 Research Methods for Health Professionals  
 COMHLTH 745 Child Health

COMHLTH 746 Youth Health  
 COMHLTH 747 Healthcare Decision Support Systems  
 COMHLTH 748 Special Topic in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 749 Special Topic in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 750 Special Topic in Public Health

**Maori and Pacific Health**

MPHEALTH 710 Maori Concepts of Health and Mental Illness  
 MPHEALTH 711 Maori Mental Health Development  
 MPHEALTH 712 Maori Models of Health Practice  
 MPHEALTH 713 Case Studies in Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 714 Practicum: Non-clinical Placement  
 MPHEALTH 715 Special Topic: Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 716 Special Topic: Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 717 Special Topic: Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 718 Introduction to Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 719 Maori Health: Policies and Outcomes  
 MPHEALTH 720 Pacific Islands: Environment, Health and Society  
 MPHEALTH 721 Clinical Practicum in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 722 Non-clinical Practicum in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 723 Food, Nutrition and Development  
 MPHEALTH 724 Special Topic  
 MPHEALTH 725 Pacific Health Research Practicum  
 MPHEALTH 726 Health Promotion in Pacific Community Development  
 MPHEALTH 727 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 728 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 729 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 730 Introduction to Pacific Health

**Nutrition**

NUTRN 700 Nutrition in Health and Disease  
 NUTRN 701 Nutrition Mechanisms  
 NUTRN 702 Clinical Nutrition  
 NUTRN 703 Critical Evaluation of Nutritional Therapies  
 NUTRN 704 Special Studies in Nutrition

---

**The Degree of Master of Science in Health Psychology – MSc**

*Health Psychology is an interfaculty subject for the degree of Master of Science. For detailed regulations refer to the Faculty of Science.*

---

**The Degree of Doctor of Medicine – MD**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a candidate needs normally to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery at The University of Auckland.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances, admission ad eundem statum may be granted only to medical graduates of other universities who are members of the academic staff of The University of Auckland, or who are conducting research in a department of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 A candidate is to present the MEDSCI 896 Thesis in any branch of medicine or medical science. The thesis is to embody a critical account of original studies carried out by the candidate which may include previously published work.
- 4 No candidate is to submit the thesis for this degree until at least five years after completing the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery.

**Application to be Examined**

- 5 A candidate is to apply in writing to be examined for the degree. The application is to state the title of the thesis and provide an outline of the proposed or actual scope of the work and the methods involved.
- 6 The Senate or its representative is to determine, on the recommendation of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences whether the application, including the title and the outline of the thesis, should be approved.

**Submission of the Thesis**

- 7 The candidate is to submit the thesis within five years of the date on which the Senate or its representative approves the title and the outline of the thesis. In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
- 8 Each candidate is to submit to the Registrar:
  - a three copies of the thesis
  - and
  - b a statutory declaration which:
    - (i) states the extent to which the work is the candidate's own and, in the case of joint work, identifies as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own
    - (ii) states what portion, if any, of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of this or any other tertiary institution
    - (iii) declares that the work, in substantially its present form, has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other tertiary institution and is not being submitted for a degree or diploma in any other tertiary institution.

**Examination**

- 9 On receipt of the thesis and statutory declaration, the Director, Student Administration will notify the Graduate Studies and Lifelong Learning Committee of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences, which will act as a Moderator of the examination. On the recommendation of the Graduate Studies and Lifelong Learning Committee, the Senate or its representative is to appoint two external examiners, at least one of whom is resident outside New Zealand, and one examiner who is a member of the teaching staff of The University of Auckland.
- 10 The duties of each examiner are to:
  - a report independently on the quality of the thesis and its value as a significant contribution to learning
  - and
  - b recommend to the Senate whether the Degree of Doctor of Medicine should be awarded provided that where the recommendation is that the degree is not to be awarded, the Examiners may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date. Such a resubmission is to be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
- 11 The reports and recommendations are to be sent to the Director, Student Administration who is to forward them to the Graduate Studies and Lifelong Learning Committee for consideration and an overall recommendation.
- 12 a The reports and recommendations of the examiners, along with the recommendation of the Graduate Studies and Lifelong Learning Committee, are to be placed before the Senate which is to determine whether the degree is to be awarded.
  - b The candidate may be required to take an oral or written examination, or both, in the field of knowledge relating to the thesis.

**Commencement**

- 13 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The previous regulations for the Degree of Doctor of Medicine were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Doctor of Pharmacy – DPharm**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

*Note: The regulations governing The Degree of Doctor of Pharmacy are under review. Potential students should check the status of the Regulations with The Graduate Centre prior to registration.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Pharmacy Practice of this University with First Class Honours or Second Class Honours First Division, or an equivalent qualification approved by Senate or its representative
  - and

- b had at least five years of experience in pharmacy practice following completion of a first degree
- and
- c current registration as a pharmacist in New Zealand or as a pharmacist in the country of domicile
- and
- d provided, to the satisfaction of the Head of School of Pharmacy, evidence of the student's experience and ability to follow the proposed courses and thesis.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student for this degree has to follow a programme equivalent to three full-time years from the date of registration and pass courses and a thesis with a total value of 42 points.
- 3 The requirements for this degree are to be completed within not more than four years of initial registration for full-time students and not more than eight years of initial registration for part-time students.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of:
  - a 14 points from:
    - PHARMACY 801 Evidence-based Pharmacotherapy
    - PHARMACY 802 Applied Pharmacoeconomics
    - PHARMACY 803 Management of Pharmaceuticals
    - PHARMACY 804 Philosophical Basis of Pharmacy Practice
  - and
  - b 28 points:
    - PHARMACY 896 Practice Research Thesis
- 5 At the end of each year of study for PHARMACY 896 the student and research supervisors are to submit a brief progress report to the Graduate Centre. Should the progress report be unfavourable the Board of Graduate Studies may terminate a student's registration in this programme.

#### **Thesis and Examination**

- 6 a The thesis is to be submitted as specified in Regulation 8 of the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.
- b For examination procedures and regulations refer to Regulation 9 of the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

#### **Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003.

## **Diploma in Paediatrics – DipPaed**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - either
  - a (i) have held, for at least one year, a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - (ii) hold current registration with the Medical Council of New Zealand
  - or
  - b have graduated from the Central Medical School of Fiji and have satisfied the Head of Division of Paediatrics that the student has appropriate training and experience to undertake this diploma.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of PAEDS 601, comprising:

- a submission of a logbook of the student's experience in community aspects of child care  
*and*
- b a dissertation in a child health problem or service  
*and*
- c a clinical examination and an oral examination held in conjunction with a written examination.

#### Practical Requirements

- 4 Each student must have completed six months of paediatric training in a hospital approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 5 A student enrolled for this diploma has to carry out satisfactorily such practical or clinical work as the Head of Division of Paediatrics may require, including:
  - a performance of clinical duties  
*and*
  - b participation during the course in, and report on, community aspects of child care.

#### Distinction

- 6 This diploma may be awarded with or without Distinction, according to the standard of each student's work, as approved by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Head of Division of Paediatrics.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1991 regulations for the Diploma in Paediatrics were thereby repealed.

## Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences – GradDipHSc

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - either*
  - a completed the requirements for any Bachelor's degree  
*or*
  - b
    - (i) completed the requirements for a professional qualification equivalent to a degree in Health Sciences or other discipline approved by the Senate or its representative  
*and*
    - (ii) acquired at least two years of employment experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative
  - or*
  - c had at least five years of employment experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative.
- 2 Admission to the programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.
- 3 A student who has completed the requirements for the diploma in one subject may, with the permission of the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Director of the Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences Programme, enrol for the diploma in another subject.
- 4 A student who has completed the requirements for a Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences at The University of Auckland may be allowed to cross credit up to a maximum of 4 points to a second Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences, with the approval of the Senate or its representative.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 5
  - a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme equivalent to two full-time semesters and pass with a total value of 14 points.
  - b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

#### Structure and Content

- 6 A student for this diploma has to pass at least 14 points from courses available under the regulations for the degrees of Bachelor of Health Sciences, Master of Health Sciences,

Master of Public Health, or other courses offered within the Faculty with the approval of the relevant Head of School. The 14 points must include:

either

- a (i) at least 8 points from courses at Stage III or above
- (ii) no more than 4 points at Master's level
- b a student may include up to 6 points from degrees offered at this University other than those listed above

or

- c one of the specializations listed in the Schedule to the Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences.

- 7 A student who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any course the same as or similar to those required under Regulation 6 of this diploma will be required to substitute for each course so credited such additional course(s) as the Director may approve.

#### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme of study that does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002.

---

### Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences (GradDipHSc) Schedule

---

#### Managed Care

- (i) 12 points:  
MGCARE 611-614, 706
- (ii) 2 points from:  
HLTHSCI 600, MGCARE 615  
or other courses selected in agreement with the Course Coordinator.

#### Health Promotion

- (i) 6 points from:  
COMHLTH 204, 601, 602

- (ii) 8 points from: BEHAVSCI 602, 606, 729, 730, COMHLTH 203, MPHEALTH 201, PHIL 210  
or other courses selected in agreement with the Course Coordinator.

#### Alcohol and Drug Studies

- (i) 10 points from:  
BEHAVSCI 601, 602, 605, 606, 621
  - (ii) 4 points from:  
BEHAVSCI 603, COMHLTH 204, SOCSCIPH 300, MPHEALTH 201
- 

## Postgraduate Diploma in Community Emergency Medicine – PGDipComEmMed

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b hold current registration either with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile
  - and
  - c satisfy the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by The University of Auckland.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of:
  - a 12 points from: GENPRAC 749, 750, 753-755, PAEDS 714
  - and
  - b 2 points from: GENPRAC 704, 756, COMHLTH 715 or, with the approval of the Head of Division, any other course from the Master of Medical Science Schedule.

- 4 A student enrolled for this diploma who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any course the same as or similar to those required under Regulation 3 above, is to substitute for each course so credited such other course or courses as the Head of Department of General Practice and Primary Health Care may require or approve.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003. The 2001 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Community Emergency Medicine were thereby repealed.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Geriatric Medicine – PGDipGeriatricMed

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
- a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b hold current registration either with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile
  - and
  - c satisfy the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by The University of Auckland.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within seven consecutive semesters of initial enrolment.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of:
- GENPRAC 770 Principles of Gerontology
  - GENPRAC 771 Health Services for Elderly People
  - GENPRAC 772 Mental Health in Old Age
  - GENPRAC 773 Rehabilitation in Later Life
  - GENPRAC 774 Medical Care of the Elderly 1
  - GENPRAC 775 Medical Care of the Elderly 2
  - GENPRAC 776 Medical Care of the Elderly 3
- 4 A student enrolled for this diploma who has passed any course the same as, or similar to those listed under Regulation 3 is to substitute an alternative course as approved by the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 1996 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Geriatric Medicine were thereby repealed.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Health Psychology – PGDipHealthPsych

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Health Psychology or its equivalent.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for the diploma consists of:
  - a HLTHPSYC 742 Professional Practice in Health Psychology (4 points).
  - b HLTHPSYC 745 Practicum in Health Psychology (10 points). This practicum involves supervised experience in applied settings approved by the Head of Health Psychology, Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences – PGDipHSc**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
 

*either*

  - a completed the requirements for a degree deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
  - or*
  - b (i) completed the requirements for a qualification in a health profession deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative

*and*

  - (ii) had at least two years' relevant work experience approved as appropriate by the relevant Head of Department.
- 2 A student who has completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Health Sciences may on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department, and with the approval of the Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to this diploma, the courses passed for the Postgraduate Certificate.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of 14 points from courses listed in the schedule for the Degree of Master of Health Sciences or from one of the following areas of specialization:
  - a **Advanced Nursing**  
8 points from:
 

*either*

    - (i) NURSING 704, 705, 719 or 708, 720, or other courses approved by the Head of School of Nursing
    - or*
    - (ii) NURSING 711, 712, 713, 724
    - or*
    - (iii) GENPRAC 778, 770 or 772 or 773, NURSING 705, 720
    - or*
    - (iv) GENPRAC 762, 761 or 760 or 763, NURSING 705, 720

*and*

    - 6 points from: Master's courses listed in the Master of Health Sciences or Master of Nursing Schedules, or other courses approved by the Head of School of Nursing

*or*

    - (v) 14 points from NURSING 750–759 and any other courses listed in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
  - b **Alcohol and Drug Studies**  
6 points: BEHAVSCI 721, 736  
2 points: BEHAVSCI 758 or COMHLTH 710  
6 points from BEHAVSCI 710, 722, 737, 738, 739, 759, GENPRAC 730, MPHEALTH 710, 711, 730, PAEDS 712

- c **Child and Adolescent Mental Health**  
12 points: PSYCHIAT 740–742, 747–749  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 758, PSYCHIAT 731
- d **Forensic Psychiatry**  
8 points: PSYCHIAT 746, 760, 761, 762  
*and*  
6 points from courses listed under Psychiatry or Behavioural Science in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
- e **Health Education**  
6 points from EDUC 747 or 753, and GENPRAC 705  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 722, COMHLTH 713, GENPRAC 706, 735  
*and*  
6 points from courses listed in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule including at least one of the following courses: BEHAVSCI 758, 759, COMHLTH 710, 719, 744, EDUC 748, GENPRAC 704
- f **Managed Care**  
14 points: MGCARE 701–706
- g **Mental Health**  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 758, PSYCHIAT 731  
8 points: BEHAVSCI 700, 717, 729  
4 points: BEHAVSCI 710, 721, 737, 738, 759, COMHLTH 713, 714, MPHEALTH 710, 711 or other courses listed in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule as approved by the Head of Applied Behavioural Science
- h **Mental Health Nursing**  
14 points from NURSING 750–759 and other courses listed in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
- i **Occupational Health**  
6 points: NURSING 711, 712 and 713  
*and either*  
8 points: MEDICINE 709, 710, 711 and 712  
*or*  
8 points: MEDICINE 730 and 4 points from the Master of Health Sciences Schedule or Master of Public Health Schedule approved by the Head of Discipline
- j **Pharmaceutical Science**  
8 points: PHARMACY 750, 751  
6 points from PHARMACY 752, 753, 754  
With the approval of the Head of School of Pharmacy, one or two of PHARMACY 752, 753, 754 may be substituted by one or two of CHEM 730, 731, 740, PHARMCOL 711, 712, 716, 728
- k **Youth Health**  
6 points: PAEDS 712, 720, COMHLTH 746  
2 points from: COMHLTH 720, NURSING 720, PSYCHIAT 731  
2 points from: BEHAVSCI 721, 722, COMHLTH 714, MPHEALTH 718, 730, NURSING 705, PSYCHIAT 740, 745  
2 points from: COMHLTH 701, 703, 710, 744, PSYCHIAT 732  
*and*  
2 points from: COMHLTH 743, PAEDS 719, NURSING 714

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2003 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences were thereby repealed.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science – PGDipMedSc

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:

- a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative  
*and*
  - b hold current registration with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile  
*and*
  - c satisfy the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by The University of Auckland.
- 2 A student who has completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Medical Science may on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department, and with the approval of the Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to this diploma, the courses passed for the Postgraduate Certificate.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and achieve an overall pass in 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations - Diplomas and Certificates.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of 12 points from the schedule to the Degree of Master of Medical Science plus 2 points from GENPRAC 704 or an equivalent course approved by the Head of Department, or 14 points from one of the following areas of specialization:
  - a **Diving and Hyperbaric Medicine**  
6 points: MEDICINE 714, 715, 716  
8 points: MEDICINE 717 and 718 or 719
  - b **General Practice and Primary Health Care**  
4 points: GENPRAC 702, 703  
2 points: GENPRAC 704  
8 points from courses listed in the Master of Medical Science Schedule
  - c **Occupational Medicine**  
6 points: MEDICINE 706, 707 and 708  
*and either*  
8 points: MEDICINE 709, 710, 711 and 712  
*or*  
8 points: MEDICINE 730 and 4 points from the Master of Medical Science Schedule or other courses approved by the Head of Department
  - d **Paediatrics**  
10 points: PAEDS 711-718  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 758, COMHLTH 710, 719, 720, GENPRAC 704  
2 points from courses listed in the Master of Medical Science Schedule
  - e **Palliative Care**  
8 points: GENPRAC 760-763  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 758, COMHLTH 710, 719, 720, GENPRAC 704  
4 points from courses listed in the Master of Medical Science Schedule as approved by the Head of Division.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003. The 2001 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science were thereby repealed.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology – PGDipObstMedGyn

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:

- a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative  
*and*
- b hold current registration either with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a Medical Practitioner in the country of domicile  
*and*
- c satisfy the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by The University of Auckland.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma shall normally follow a programme of the equivalent of two full time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma should normally be completed within four consecutive semesters of initial enrolment, unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of: OBSTGYN 712, 713, 715, 716, 717, 721, 722.

#### Practical Requirements

- 4 Each student must have completed OBSTGYN 717 within 24 months of initial enrolment for the diploma, unless in exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative extends that period.
- 5 A student enrolled for this diploma has to carry out satisfactorily the practical or clinical work as required in the logbook as part of OBSTGYN 717. The logbook is to be approved by the Clinical Supervisor and the Head of Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology as a prerequisite for completing OBSTGYN 717.
- 6 The student is required to complete the residential courses OBSTGYN 721 and 722 before sitting the diploma examinations. The clinical examination in the form of an objective structured clinical examination will be held in conjunction with the written examination.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice – PGDipPharmPrac

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a pharmacy qualification equivalent to a degree approved by the Senate or its representative  
*and*
  - b hold current registration as a pharmacist in New Zealand or as a pharmacist in the country of domicile.
- 2 A student who has completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Pharmacy Practice may on the recommendation of the Head of School of Pharmacy, and with the approval of Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to this diploma, the courses passed for the Postgraduate Certificate.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
- c The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of:
  - a 4 points: PHARMACY 712
  - and
  - b 10 points from other courses listed in the Master of Pharmacy Practice Schedule. With the approval of the Head of School of Pharmacy, up to 4 points may be taken from COMHLTH 713, 714, 731, 732, 733, 744, NURSING 709

**Practical Requirements**

- 5 Students enrolled for this diploma must satisfactorily carry out such practice activities as the Head of School of Pharmacy may require.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health – PGDipPH**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a degree or a professional qualification equivalent to a degree, deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b satisfied the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have appropriate training and experience to undertake the programme.
- 2 A student who has completed the requirements of the Postgraduate Certificate in Public Health with an average of B or higher, or its equivalent, may on the recommendation of the Head of Department of Community Health, and with the approval of the Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to this diploma the courses passed for the Postgraduate Certificate.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of:
  - either
  - a 4 points: COMHLTH 725  
2 points from COMHLTH 701, 703, 710, 722, 744  
8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule, of which up to 2 points may be from courses offered at Master's level within the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences or in any other faculty with the approval of the relevant Heads of Department
  - or
  - b **Maori Health**  
4 points: COMHLTH 725  
2 points: MPHEALTH 718  
2 points from COMHLTH 701, 703, 710, 722  
6 points from courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule with the approval of the Head of Department of Maori and Pacific Health
  - or
  - c **Pacific Health**  
4 points: COMHLTH 725  
2 points: MPHEALTH 730  
2 points from COMHLTH 701, 703, 710, 722  
6 points from courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule with the approval of the Head of Department of Maori and Pacific Health.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 1996 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Sports Medicine – PGDipSportMed**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:
- a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b hold current registration with either the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile
  - and
  - c satisfy the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by The University of Auckland.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of:
- GENPRAC 780 Upper Limb and Spine
  - GENPRAC 781 Lower Limb and Physiotherapy
  - GENPRAC 782 Sports Medicine in the Community
  - GENPRAC 783 Medical Issues in Sport
  - GENPRAC 784 Practical Sports Medicine

**Practical Requirements**

- 4 a A student enrolled for this diploma must satisfactorily carry out such practical or clinical work as the Head of Department of General Practice may require.
- b A student must pass both the written work and the practical or clinical work in order to complete the requirements for the diploma. However, a student who passes the practical or clinical work but fails the written work may, at the discretion of the Head of the Department of General Practice and Primary Health Care, re-sit the written examinations in order to complete the requirements for this diploma, without having to repeat the practical or clinical work.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2003. The 2002 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Sports Medicine were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Certificate in Health Sciences – PGCertHSc**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- either
  - a completed the requirements for a degree deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - b (i) completed the requirements for a qualification in a health profession deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - (ii) had at least two years of relevant work experience approved as appropriate by the relevant Head of Department.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of 8 points from courses listed in the schedule for the Degree of Master of Health Sciences or from one of the following areas of specialization:
- a **Advanced Nursing**  
8 points from:  
*either*
    - (i) NURSING 704, 705, 708, 719, 720  
*or*
    - (ii) NURSING 711, 712, 713, 724  
*or*
    - (iii) GENPRAC 778, 770 or 722 or 773, NURSING 705, 720  
*or*
    - (iv) GENPRAC 762, 761 or 760 or 763, NURSING 705, 720
  - b **Alcohol and Drug Studies**  
6 points: BEHAVSCI 721, 736  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 710, 722, 737, GENPRAC 730, MPHEALTH 711, 718, 730, PAEDS 712
  - c **Child and Adolescent Mental Health**  
2 points: PSYCHIAT 740  
6 points: PSYCHIAT 747, 748, 749  
*or*  
at least one of these courses plus up to 4 points from related courses, as approved by the Head of Department of Psychiatry.
  - d **Forensic Psychiatry**  
8 points: PSYCHIAT 746, 760, 761, 762
  - e **Health Education**  
6 points from EDUC 747 or 753, and GENPRAC 705  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 722, COMHLTH 713, GENPRAC 706, 735
  - f **Managed Care**  
8 points: MGCARE 701, 702, 703, 704
  - g **Mental Health**  
8 points: BEHAVSCI 700, 717, 729
  - h **Mental Health Nursing**  
8 points from:  
*either*
    - (i) NURSING 750, 751, 752, 757  
*or*
    - (ii) NURSING 753, 756
  - i **Pharmaceutical Science**  
8 points PHARMACY 750, 751
  - j **Primary Health Lifestyle Management**  
8 points: GENPRAC 735, 736, 739
  - k **Sports Medicine**  
8 points: GENPRAC 780, 781, 782, 783
  - l **Youth Health**  
4 points: PAEDS 712, COMHLTH 746  
2 points from: COMHLTH 720, NURSING 720, PSYCHIAT 731  
*and*  
2 points from: BEHAVSCI 721, 722, COMHLTH 714, MPHEALTH 718, 730, NURSING 705, PSYCHIAT 740, 745

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2002 regulations for the Postgraduate Certificate in Health Sciences were thereby repealed.

---

## Postgraduate Certificate in Medical Science – PGCertMedSc

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b hold current registration either with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile
  - and
  - c satisfy the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by The University of Auckland.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme equivalent to one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.

### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of 8 points from the Master of Medical Science Schedule or 8 points from one of the following areas of specialization:
  - a **General Practice and Primary Health Care**  
4 points: GENPRAC 702, 703  
4 points from courses listed in the Master of Medical Science Schedule
  - b **Paediatrics**  
8 points from PAEDS 711-718
  - c **Palliative Care**  
8 points: GENPRAC 760-763
  - d **Primary Mental Health**  
8 points: GENPRAC 721-723

### Practical Requirements

- 4 Students enrolled for this certificate must satisfactorily carry out such practical clinical work as the relevant Head of Department may require.

### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

---

## Postgraduate Certificate in Pharmacy Practice – PGCertPharmPrac

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a pharmacy qualification equivalent to a degree, approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b hold current registration as a pharmacist in New Zealand or as a pharmacist in the country of domicile.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2
  - a A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.
  - b The requirements for this certificate are to be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
  - c The requirements for this certificate are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of:
  - a 4 points: PHARMACY 712
  - and
  - b 4 points from PHARMACY 730, 731, 732, 740

**Practical Requirements**

- 4 Students enrolled for this certificate must satisfactorily carry out such practice activities as the Head of School of Pharmacy may require.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002.

**Postgraduate Certificate in Public Health – PGCertPH**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
 

*either*

  - a completed the requirements for a degree deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - b (i) completed the requirements for a qualification equivalent to a degree in a health profession deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative

*and*

  - (ii) had at least two years of relevant work experience approved as appropriate by the relevant Head of Department.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of:
 

*either*

  - a 4 points: COMHLTH 725
  - 4 points from courses from the Master of Public Health Schedule
  - or
  - b 8 points from courses from one of the following areas of specialization:
    - (i) **Effective Practice**  
8 points from COMHLTH 720, 731-733, 739
    - (ii) **Environmental Health**  
At least 4 points from COMHLTH 717, 718, 735  
*plus*  
up to 4 points from any other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule as approved by the Head of Department
    - (iii) **Health Promotion**  
6 points: COMHLTH 713, 714, 743  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 721, 729, COMHLTH 711, 730 or another course listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule as approved by the Head of Department.
    - (iv) **Health Services**  
4 points: COMHLTH 707, 715  
4 points from: COMHLTH 705, 708, 716, 742 or another course listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule as approved by the Head of Department
    - (v) **Maori Health**  
4 points: COMHLTH 725  
2 points: MPHEALTH 718  
2 points from courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule with the approval of the Head of Department of Maori and Pacific Health
    - (vi) **Pacific Health**  
4 points: COMHLTH 725

2 points: MPHEALTH 730

2 points from courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule with the approval of the Head of Department of Maori and Pacific Health.

#### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

### Certificate in Health Sciences – CertHSc

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student must have completed Year 13 in a New Zealand secondary school or its equivalent.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2
  - a The student must follow a programme equivalent to two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points. A student enrolled in this programme must enrol in either Option 1 or Option 2 as specified in Regulation 3.
  - b The requirements of the Certificate in Health Sciences are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of one of the following options:

##### Option 1

MPHEALTH 10H Introduction to Human Biology  
 MPHEALTH 12H Introduction to Social Sciences in Health  
 MPHEALTH 15H Introduction to Chemistry  
 MPHEALTH 16H Introduction to Physics  
 MPHEALTH 17H Personal and Professional Development  
*and either*  
 MPHEALTH 13H Introduction to Maori Health  
*or*  
 MPHEALTH 14H Introduction to Pacific Health  
*and*

in the second semester at least 2 points in an approved elective course drawn from the schedules to the BA, BSc, BCom or BHSc regulations and selected in agreement with the Programme Co-ordinator of the Certificate in Health Sciences.

##### Option 2

MPHEALTH 10H Introduction to Human Biology  
 MPHEALTH 11H Introduction to Physical Sciences for Health  
 MPHEALTH 12H Introduction to Social Sciences in Health  
 MPHEALTH 13H Introduction to Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 14H Introduction to Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 17H Personal and Professional Development  
*and*

in the second semester at least 2 points in an approved elective course drawn from the schedules to the BA, BSc, BCom or BHSc regulations and selected in agreement with the Programme Co-ordinator of the Certificate in Health Sciences.

#### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 1999 regulations for the Certificate in Health Sciences were thereby repealed.

---

## Regulations – Science

- 199 The Degree of Bachelor of Science – BSc
- 199 Bachelor of Science (BSc) Schedule
- 202 The Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) – BSc(Hons)
- 204 Bachelor of Science (Honours) (BSc(Hons)) Schedule
- 205 The Degree of Bachelor of Optometry – BOptom
- 206 Bachelor of Optometry (BOptom) Schedule
- 206 The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech
- 206 The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR
- 206 The Degree of Master of Science – MSc
- 208 Master of Science (MSc) Schedule
- 210 The Degree of Master of Speech Language Therapy Practice – MSLTPrac
- 211 Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd
- 211 Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd
- 211 Graduate Diploma in Operations Research – GradDipOR
- 211 Graduate Diploma in Science – GradDipSci
- 213 Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology – PGDipAppPsych
- 213 Postgraduate Diploma in Forensic Science – PGDipForensic
- 214 Postgraduate Diploma in Science – PGDipSci
- 215 The Degree of Doctor of Clinical Psychology – DCLinPsy
- 217 Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology – PGDipClinPsych
- 218 Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology – CertOcPharm

## REGULATIONS – SCIENCE

### The Degree of Bachelor of Science – BSc

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 Of the 42 points for this degree a student must pass:
  - a at least 34 points in subjects listed in the BSc Schedule
  - b at least 22 points in courses above Stage I
  - c courses in a minimum of three subjects
  - d one or more majors or specializations, including at least 6 points at Stage III in each major or specialization, selected from the majors or specializations listed in the BSc Schedule
  - e at least 8 points at Stage III level in subjects listed in the BSc Schedule.
- 3 A student may include up to 8 points from other programmes offered at this University.

#### Practical Requirements

- 4 In any course that includes practical work as well as written work, a student must obtain passes in both the practical and written work in order to pass that course as a whole. A student who passes the practical work but who fails the written work may, at the discretion of the Head of Department, have the result for the practical work for that failed course carried forward when the course is retaken.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 5 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Special Cases

- 6
  - a In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit a suitably qualified student to enrol directly in a Stage II course(s). If the student fails the Stage II course(s) but is certified by the examiner as having reached a pass in an equivalent Stage I course(s), the student may be credited with the appropriate Stage I course(s).
  - b If a student who is enrolled in and fails an advanced or accelerated Stage I course but is certified by the examiner as having reached a pass in a Stage I course in the same subject having a lower entry requirement, the student may be credited with the latter course. The relevant Head(s) of Department shall certify to the Senate or its representative that the failed course is an advanced or accelerated course.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 2000 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Science were thereby repealed.

---

### Bachelor of Science (BSc) Schedule

---

#### Courses available for the BSc:

##### Anatomy

ANATOMY 201

##### Anthropology

ANTHRO 102  
ANTHRO 201, 222  
ANTHRO 328

##### Applied Mathematics

MATHS 162  
MATHS 260, 267, 270, STATS 210  
MATHS 340, 361–372, 386–389, STATS 310, 325, 370, 391

##### Biological Sciences

BIOSCI 100–107  
BIOSCI 200–209  
BIOSCI 320–396

**Chemistry**

CHEM 100–150  
CHEM 210–240, 270  
CHEM 310–350, 370–392

**Civil and Environmental Engineering**

CIVIL 220, 221, ENVENG 201  
CIVIL 322, 323, 420, ENVENG 324, 333

**Computer Science**

COMPSCI 101–111, INFOSYS 110  
COMPSCI 210–280, INFOSYS 222, 224  
COMPSCI 313–393, INFOSYS 329, 332

**Environmental Science**

ENVSCI 101  
ENVSCI 201  
ENVSCI 301, 310

**General Science**

SCIGEN 101  
SCIGEN 201

**Geography**

GEOG 101–103  
GEOG 201–209  
GEOG 302–352

**Geology**

GEOLOGY 101–110  
GEOLOGY 201–205  
GEOLOGY 301–382, GEOPHYS 330

**Geophysics**

GEOPHYS 330–333

**History**

HISTORY 150  
HISTORY 240

**History and Philosophy of Science and Technology**

HPST 100  
HPST 200

**Human Biology**

HUMANBIO 142

**Information Systems**

Stage II – all INFOSYS courses listed in the BCom Schedule  
Stage III – all INFOSYS courses listed in the BCom Schedule  
Note that either 636.324, INFOSYS 329 or 332 may count towards a major in Computer Science

**Law**

LAW 457

**Linguistics**

LINGUIST 100, 101, 103  
LINGUIST 200, 201  
LINGUIST 300, 301, 302, 305

**Logic and Computation**

COMPSCI 101, 105, LINGUIST 100, 103, MATHS 152, PHIL 101, 105

COMPSCI 220, 225, 230, LINGUIST 200, MATHS 255, PHIL 222, 216, 223  
COMPSCI 320, 350, 360, 366, LINGUIST 300, 302, MATHS 315, 326,  
381, PHIL 305, 315, 316 or 323

**Marine Science**

MARINE 202  
MARINE 302

**Mathematics**

MATHS 101–162  
MATHS 202–270, COMPSCI 225, STATS 210  
MATHS 302–384, STATS 310, 325, 370, 391

**Molecular Medicine**

MOLMED 201

**Optometry and Vision Science**

OPTOM 161  
OPTOM 165  
OPTOM 170

**Pacific Studies**

PACIFIC 103

**Pathology**

PATHOL 251  
PATHOL 301–303

**Pharmacology**

PHARMCOL 201  
PHARMCOL 301–306

**Philosophy**

PHIL 101, 102, 152  
PHIL 200, 210, 216, 222, 250, 260, 261, 263  
PHIL 305, 315

**Physics**

PHYSICS 102–160  
PHYSICS 211–270  
PHYSICS 315–396, GEOPHYS 330–333

**Physiology**

PHYSIOL 210, 220  
PHYSIOL 301–305

**Psychology**

PSYCH 108, 109  
PSYCH 201–263  
PSYCH 301–364, SPORTSCI 304

**Science Education**

EDUC 201  
EDUC 382

**Sport and Exercise Science**

SPORTSCI 102–105  
SPORTSCI 201–206  
SPORTSCI 301–309

**Statistics**

STATS 101–150, MATHS 162  
STATS 201–255  
STATS 301–391, MATHS 340

**BSc Majors:****Biological Sciences**

BIOSCI 101  
 at least 6 points from BIOSCI 100, 102–107  
 at least 2 points from BIOSCI 201–204  
 at least 2 points from BIOSCI 205–208  
 at least 6 points from BIOSCI 320–396

**Chemistry**

CHEM 110 and 120  
 at least 6 points from CHEM 210–240  
 at least 4 points from CHEM 310–340  
 at least 2 additional points from CHEM 310–392

**Computer Science**

4 points from COMPSCI 313–393  
 at least 2 additional points from COMPSCI 313–393, INFOSYS 329, 332

**Food Science**

12 points: BIOSCI 101, 106, 107, CHEM 110, 120, PHYSICS 160  
 2 points: elective  
 14 points: BIOSCI 203, 204, CHEM 230, FOODSCI 201, STATS 101, CHEMMAT 211, ENGSCI 111  
 8 points: BIOSCI 352, FOODSCI 301, 302, CHEMMAT 463  
 6 points from BIOSCI 358, CHEM 240, FOODSCI 303, 304, SCIGEN 201

**Geography**

at least 6 points from GEOG 101, 102, 201, 202, GEOG 204  
 at least 6 points from GEOG 302–352, including at least 2 points from GEOG 315, 330

**Geology**

GEOLOGY 101 and 2 points from GEOLOGY 102, 110  
 GEOLOGY 201 and 4 points from GEOLOGY 202–204  
 GEOLOGY 301 and 4 points from GEOLOGY 302–305

**Mathematics**

- (i) **Applied Mathematics**  
 MATHS 361  
 at least 2 points from MATHS 340, 347, 362–372, 386–389  
 at least 2 further points from MATHS 340, 347, 362–372, 386–389, STATS 310, 325, 370, 391
- (ii) **Mathematics**  
 At least 6 points from MATHS 302–384, STATS 310, 325, 370, 391 including no more than 4 points from MATHS 361–372, STATS 310, 325, 370, 391

**Pharmacology**

at least 6 points from PHARMCOL 301–306

**Physics**

6 points at Stage III in Physics or Geophysics, including:  
 2 points from PHYSICS 315–355  
 a further 2 points from PHYSICS 315–355, GEOPHYS 330–333  
 at least 1 point from PHYSICS 390–396

**Physiology**

at least 6 points from PHYSIOL 301–305

**Psychology**

at least 6 points from PSYCH 301–364, SPORTSCI 304

**Sport and Exercise Science**

10 points: BIOSCI 107, SPORTSCI 102–104, HUMANBIO 142  
 2 points from PSYCH 108 or 109  
 10 points: SPORTSCI 201–204, PHYSIOL 210  
 8 points: SPORTSCI 301, 303, 304, 305

**Statistics**

at least 6 points from STATS 301–391, MATHS 340

**BSc Specializations:****Bioinformatics**

**Part I**  
 BIOSCI 101, 107, CHEM 110, COMPSCI 101, 105, MATHS 108, and STATS 101 or 108 or 125

**Part II**  
 BIOSCI 201, 202, COMPSCI 220, MATHS 208, STATS 210  
 at least 2 points from COMPSCI 225, 230  
 at least 2 points from BIOSCI 106, MATHS 162, 267, STATS 201 or 208

**Part III**  
 BIOSCI 359 Bioinformatics  
 At least 4 points from BIOSCI 322, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 356, 357  
 At least 2 points from COMPSCI 320, 330, 334, 335, 366, 367, 372  
 At least 2 points from STATS 301, 310, 320, 325, 340  
 At least 2 points from BIOSCI 203, MATHS 326, 328, 347, 361, 363, 367

**Biomedical Science**

**Core courses**

- 12 points: BIOSCI 101, 106, 107, CHEM 110, PHYSICS 160, HUMANBIO 142
- 8 points: BIOSCI 201–203, PHYSIOL 210
- 6 points from ANATOMY 201, BIOSCI 204 or MOLMED 201, PATHOL 251, PHARMCOL 201, PHYSIOL 220 or PSYCH 202
- 2 points from an approved Statistics course

**Options**  
**Cancer Biology and Therapeutics**

- PATHOL 302

- 6 points from BIOSCI 351, 353, 354, 356, 357, 358, CHEM 390, 392, PHARMCOL 301, 303, 305
  - at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule
- Cardiovascular Biology**
- PHYSIOL 301, 304
  - 2 points from PATHOL 301, PHARMCOL 304, PHYSIOL 302
  - 2 points from BIOSCI 350, 351, 353 or 354
  - at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule
- Cellular and Molecular Biomedicine**
- BIOSCI 350, 351, 353
  - 2 points from PHARMCOL 302, PHYSIOL 301, 302
  - at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule
- Genetics and Development**
- BIOSCI 351, 354, 356
  - 2 points from BIOSCI 350 or 353
  - at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule
- Microbiology and Immunology**
- BIOSCI 349, 352, 357
  - 2 points from BIOSCI 350, 351 or 353
  - at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule
- Neurobiology**
- PHARMCOL 306, PHYSIOL 301, 303
  - 2 points from BIOSCI 350, 351, 354, PHYSIOL 302, PSYCH 305
  - at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule
- Reproduction, Growth and Metabolism**
- OBSTGYN 351, PHYSIOL 305, BIOSCI 353
  - 2 points from BIOSCI 350, 351, 357
  - at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule

---

### Electronics and Computing

- 4 points: PHYSICS 326, 340
  - 2 points from PHYSICS 390–396
  - 6 points at Stage II in Mathematics or Computer Science
  - 2 points at Stage III in Computer Science
- 

### Environmental Science

Environmental Science is designed to be taken in conjunction with a Science subject major. Any other programme must be approved by the Coordinator of the Programme

- 2 points: ENVSCI 101
  - 2 points: ENVSCI 201
  - 2 points from STATS 201, BIOSCI 209 or GEOG 204
  - 2 points: GEOG 205
  - 2 points: ENVSCI 301
  - 2 points: ENVSCI 310
  - 4 points of approved Stage III BSc courses
- 

### Geophysics

- 8 points: GEOLOGY 101, MATHS 150, 250, PHYSICS 120
  - 2 points from GEOLOGY 102, 110
  - 2 points from PHYSICS 130 or 150
  - 6 points: MATHS 253, PHYSICS 213, 230
  - at least 4 points from GEOLOGY 201, 204, MATHS 260, PHYSICS 220, 240
  - at least 4 points from GEOLOGY 361, GEOPHYS 330–333
  - at least 2 additional points from GEOLOGY 301–372, GEOPHYS 330–333, MATHS 302–384, PHYSICS 315–396
- 

### Industrial Mathematics

- MATHS 208 and 267, or MATHS 260 and 270
  - STATS 255
  - STATS 201 or 208
  - 2 points from STATS 320 or 391
  - 2 points from MATHS 361–372
  - 2 points from STATS 301, 302, 330, 340
  - a further 2 points from MATHS 347, 361–372, 386–389, STATS 301, 302, 320, 330, 340, 350, 370, 391
- 

### Information Systems

- 2 points: ACCTG 101 or MGMT 101
- 

- 6 points: COMPSCI 210, 220, 230
  - 6 points: INFOSYS 220, 222, 224
  - 4 points from COMPSCI 313–393
  - 4 points from INFOSYS 320–341 (except for 636.326)
- 

### Logic and Computation

- at least 16 points from courses listed under Logic and Computation in the BSc Schedule, including:
  - 4 points: COMPSCI 101, PHIL 101
  - 4 points: COMPSCI 225, PHIL 201 or 222
  - at least 6 points from COMPSCI 320, 350, 360, 366, LINGUIST 300, 302, MATHS 315, 326, 328, PHIL 305, 315, 316 or 323
- 

### Marine Science

- Marine Science is designed to be taken in conjunction with a Science subject major. Any other subject must be approved by the Coordinator of the Programme
  - 4 points: MARINE 202, 302
  - 2 points from STATS 201, BIOSCI 209 or GEOG 204
  - 6 points from approved Stage III BSc courses
- 

### Medicinal Chemistry

- Part I**
  - 12 points: BIOSCI 101, 106, 107, CHEM 110, 120, HUMANBIO 142
  - at least 2 points from COMPSCI 111, STATS 101, PHYSICS 160
  - Part II**
  - 12 points: BIOSCI 201, 203, CHEM 230, 240, PHARMCOL 201, PHYSIOL 210
  - at least 2 points from BIOSCI 202, 204, CHEM 210, 220, MOLMED 201, PATHOL 251, PHARMACY 202
  - Part III**
  - CHEM 330, 390, 392, PHARMACOL 301
  - At least 6 points from CHEM 320, 340, 350, BIOSCI 350, PHARMACOL 304, 305, PHYSIOL 220
- 

### Operations Research

- 2 points: STATS 255
  - 2 further points at Stage II in Statistics
  - 4 points: STATS 320, 391
  - 2 points from STATS 301–310, 325–390, OPSMGT 371, 382, COMPSCI 320, MATHS 326, 328, 361 or an alternative approved by the Coordinator of the Programme
- 

## The Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) – BSc(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1
  - a In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science or any other equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate or its representative.
  - b A student who enrolls for this degree with 42 points towards a Bachelor of Science degree must have passed 10 points at Stage III or above with an average grade of at least B, and completed the requirements for one of the subjects specified in the regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Science and available for this degree.
  - c Admission to this degree can be considered after a student has passed between 28 and 42 points towards the Degree of Bachelor of Science and is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department or Coordinator of Programme.
  - d A student who enrolls for this degree having gained between 28 and 40 points may be required to withdraw from the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) if the requirement of Regulation 1b above is not met by a period determined by the Dean of Faculty of Science on initial enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours).

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years (inclusive of the three years, or equivalent, required for the Degree of Bachelor of Science) and pass courses with a total value of 56 points (inclusive of the 42 points required for the Degree of Bachelor of Science), as specified in the schedule to these regulations, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations or unless the student is enrolled in an approved conjoint degrees combination.
- b A student enrolled for this degree must complete the requirements as set out in the schedule to these regulations within:
- (i) eight semesters of first enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Science
  - or
  - (ii) 10 semesters of first enrolment for the BA/BSc, BCom/BSc, BHSc/BSc, BMus/BSc, BProp/BSc, BSc/BTheol
  - or
  - (iii) 12 semesters of first enrolment for the BE/BSc, BSc/LLB
  - or
  - (iv) 13 semesters of first enrolment for the BSc/LLB(Hons)
- unless the Senate or its representative approves an extension of that period for up to a further two semesters.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 In addition, each student must pass courses in one of the following subjects or programmes with a total value of at least 14 points. At least 12 points must be taken from courses at Master's level as listed in the schedule to these regulations or in the Master of Science Schedule.

**Dissertations**

- 4 a Where a student includes, or is required to include, a dissertation in this programme, its value may be of no more than 6 points.
- b A dissertation must be submitted within four weeks after the end of the final semester in which the student is enrolled for the degree.

**Practical Requirements**

- 5 In any course that includes practical work as well as written work, a student must obtain passes in both the practical and written work in order to pass that course as a whole.

**Enrolment for Two Programmes**

- 6 This degree may not be taken at the same time as another programme.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 a This degree may only be awarded where the standard of a student's work in the 14 points required under Regulation 3, is deserving of Honours. Honours may be in one of two classes: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
- b Should a student fail to qualify for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours), the Senate or its representative may recommend the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science or if appropriate the reassignment of additional points towards either the Graduate Diploma in Science or the Postgraduate Diploma in Science.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1993 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) were thereby repealed.

## Bachelor of Science (Honours) (BSc(Hons)) Schedule

### Applied Geology

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Geology

**Requirement:**

- 8 points from GEOLOGY 701, 705, 712, 771-773, GEOPHYS 761-763
- 2 points from approved courses within Part IV of the BE Schedule or the ME Schedule
- 4 points GEOLOGY 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation

### Applied Mathematics

**Prerequisite:** At least 8 points in Mathematics courses at Stage III or higher, including MATHS 361 and 362, approved by the Head of Department of Mathematics

**Requirement:**

- at least 8 points from MATHS 761-775, 786-789, PHYSICS 701, 707, ENGSCI 792
- up to 6 points from MSc level courses in Mathematics or related subjects with approval of the Head of Department of Mathematics

### Bioinformatics

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc Major in Bioinformatics

**Requirement:**

- BIOSCI 743, 744
- BIOINF 789
- 6 points from BIOSCI 733, 734, 745, 752, 755-758, COMPSCI 715, 716, 720, 732, 760, 765, 767, STATS 720, 730, 731, 792

### Biological Sciences

**Prerequisite:** At least 10 points in Stage III Biological Sciences courses. With the permission of the Director, up to 4 points at Stage III in related courses may be substituted

**Requirement:**

- BIOSCI 762 (2 points)
- 8 points from BIOSCI 724-745, 749-759. With the approval of the Director a student may substitute one course for an MSc level course or courses having the same points value in another related subject
- BIOSCI 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Biomedical Science

**Prerequisite:** At least 10 points at Stage III or higher, including a BSc major in Biomedical Science

**Requirement:**

- BIOMED 790 (14 points)

### Chemistry

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Chemistry

**Requirement:**

- 8 points from CHEM 710-780
- CHEM 792 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (6 points)

### Computer Science

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Computer Science

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from COMPSCI 701-790

### Food Science

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Food Science

**Requirement:**

- 6 points: FOODSCI 789
- 8 points from FOODSCI 703, 706-710

### Geography

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Geography

**Requirement:**

- GEOG 701 (2 points)
- 8 points from GEOG 711-779
- GEOG 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Geology

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Geology

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from GEOLOGY 701, 703-773, GEOPHYS 761-763
- GEOLOGY 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Logic and Computation

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III, including a BSc specialization in Logic and Computation

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from the following courses, including at least 2 points from COMPSCI courses and at least 2 points from either LOGICOMP or PHIL:
- COMPSCI 720, 750, 755, 765
  - LINGUIST 721, 724, 725
  - MATHS 713
  - PHIL 736, 737, 738
  - LOGICOMP 701, 702
  - LOGICOMP 780 Honours Dissertation (4 points)

### Mathematics

**Prerequisite:**

- (445.231 or 445.252) or (MATHS 253 and 255) or equivalent approved courses
- at least two of COMPSCI 225, MATHS 260, 270, STATS 210, 255
- 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Mathematics

**Requirement:**

- courses totalling 14 points with at least 12 points in courses above Stage III. At least 8 points must be in Mathematics courses and up to 6 points may be from approved Master's level courses in related subjects

### Medicinal Chemistry

**Prerequisite:** At least 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Medicinal Chemistry or equivalent

**Requirement:**

- CHEM 735
- at least 6 points from CHEM 730, 750, 751, BIOSCI 756, 757, 759
- CHEM 792 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (6 points)

### Pharmacology

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including at least 8 points from Pharmacology courses

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from PHARMCOL 710-729
- PHARMCOL 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Physiology

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Physiology

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from PHYSIOL 701-708
- PHYSIOL 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Psychology

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III, including 8 points from Psychology, including PSYCH 306

**Requirement:**

- PSYCH 701-755 (10 points)
- PSYCH 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Sport and Exercise Science

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including SPORTSCI 301, 303, 304, 305

**Requirement:**

- SPORTSCI 705 (2 points)
- at least 6 points from SPORTSCI 701–704, 706–711
- up to 2 points from approved MSc level courses
- SPORTSCI 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Statistics

**Prerequisite:**

- STATS 210, and MATHS 208 or 253
- 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Statistics

**Requirement:**

14 points including:

- STATS 730, 782, and at least 2 points from STATS 708–787
- up to 6 points from approved MSc level courses in related subjects
- STATS 789 BSc(Hons) Project in Statistics (2 points)

## The Degree of Bachelor of Optometry – BOptom

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this programme has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student has to pass each of Parts I, II, III and IV as set out in the schedule to these regulations.
  - b Each Part must normally be completed before the next Part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass one of those Parts in its entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that Part together with a course or courses towards the next Part.
- 3 Study for this degree must be pursued in consecutive semesters. Interrupted study may be resumed only with the approval of, and on conditions set by, the Senate or its representative.

### Enrolment for Two Programmes

- 4 This degree may not be studied at the same time as another programme unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

### Practical Requirements

- 5 a A student enrolled for this degree must satisfactorily carry out such practical or clinical work as the Faculty of Science may require.
  - b In any course that includes both a final written examination and practical or clinical work, a student must pass both the final written examination and the practical or clinical work to pass that course as a whole. However, a student who passes the practical or clinical work but fails the final written examination may, at the discretion of the Head of Department, have the result for the practical or clinical work for that failed course carried forward when the course is repeated.
  - c A student who repeats any course may also be required to undertake such additional practical or clinical work as the Head of Department of Optometry and Vision Science determines.

### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 7 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
  - b Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within eight semesters of initial enrolment for the degree. In exceptional circumstances however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period for not more than two further semesters.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1995 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry were thereby repealed.

---

### Bachelor of Optometry (BOptom) Schedule

---

**Part I**

OPTOM 110 Optics of the Eye  
 OPTOM 151 Anatomy and Physiology of Vision  
 OPTOM 161 Optics of Lenses and Lens Systems  
 OPTOM 165 Physical Optics  
 OPTOM 170 Visual Science 1  
 PATHOL 251 Mechanisms of Disease

**Part II**

OPTOM 211 Optometry  
 OPTOM 245 Principles of Ocular Pharmacology  
 OPTOM 251 Ocular Pathology  
 OPTOM 260 Applied Optics and Dispensing  
 OPTOM 270 Visual Science 2  
 MOLMED 201 Microbiology and Immunology

**Part III**

OPTOM 311 Clinical Optometry  
 OPTOM 330 Contact Lens Practice  
 OPTOM 340 Paediatric and Geriatric Optometry  
 OPTOM 350 Diseases of the Eye  
 OPTOM 355 Management of Eye Disease  
 OPTOM 372 Visual Science 3

**Part IV**

OPTOM 410 Advanced Clinical Optometry 1  
 OPTOM 420 Advanced Clinical Optometry 2  
 OPTOM 461 Specialist Optometry  
 OPTOM 470 Project  
 OPTOM 480 Advanced Optometric Science

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech

*The Bachelor of Technology is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

---

### The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR

*The Master of Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

---

### The Degree of Master of Science – MSc

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - both
  - a completed the requirements for:
    - (i) the Degree of Bachelor of Science
    - or
    - (ii) the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours)
    - or
    - (iii) the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry
    - or
    - (iv) the Postgraduate Diploma in Science
    - or
    - (v) any other equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b (i) passed at least 8 points at Stage III level, which must include courses in majors specified in the schedule to these regulations, and achieved in these an average grade of B- or higher. If entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Science, an average grade of B- or higher must have been achieved in 10 points taken for the diploma
  - and
  - (ii) had their proposed enrolment approved by the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or equivalent.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science but who, for that degree, has:
  - a passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points
  - and
  - b passed all the Stage III courses or major specified in the schedule to these regulations and achieved in them an average grade of B- or higher

may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or equivalent, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining courses required for the Bachelor of Science must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the

requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Science enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis normally has to follow a programme of:
  - a four consecutive semesters as defined in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees and pass courses or courses plus thesis with total value of 28 points, if entering with the degree of Bachelor of Science or equivalent
  - or
  - b two consecutive semesters as defined in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees and pass a thesis or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) or its equivalent or with a degree of Bachelor of Science and a Postgraduate Diploma in Science.
- 4 A student enrolled for this degree on a part-time basis normally has to follow a programme of:
  - a no more than eight consecutive semesters as defined in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees and pass courses or courses plus thesis with a total value of 28 points, if entering with the Degree of Bachelor of Science or equivalent
  - or
  - b no more than four consecutive semesters as defined in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees and pass a thesis or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) or its equivalent or with a Degree of Bachelor of Science and a Postgraduate Diploma in Science or equivalent.

### Structure and Content

- 5 a A student who has to complete 14 or 28 points for this degree must include 14 points from:
  - (i) a thesis in one of the subjects listed in the schedule to these regulations
  - or
  - (ii) Advanced Studies for the subjects Applied Mathematics, Mathematics and Statistics only, as listed in the schedule to these regulations
  - or
  - (iii) for the subject Statistics, Master's courses in Statistics which must include at least one of STATS 790, 791
  - or
  - (iv) for the subject Medical Statistics, Master's courses in Medical Statistics and Statistics which must include STATS 788 A and B.
- b A student who has to complete 28 points must, in addition, include a total of 14 points from the following:
  - (i) At least 10 points from courses at Master's level as listed in the schedule to these regulations.
  - (ii) Up to 4 points from courses at Stage III and above, in any subject or area of specialization as listed in the schedule to the Degree of Bachelor of Science or those courses listed for Bachelor of Science (Honours) or for Master of Science.
- c Each student's programme must be approved by the relevant Heads of Departments, Directors of Schools, or equivalent. As a condition of approval, students being admitted under Regulation 1a(iv) may be asked to fulfil specific requirements.

### Thesis

- 6 a A thesis, when included in the programme, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic has to be approved by the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or equivalent before enrolment for the thesis.
- 7 a A student enrolled for this degree who is including a thesis must normally submit the thesis within the time specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
- b In exceptional circumstances and on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department, Director of School, or equivalent the Senate or its representative may extend the submission dates. The extension may be granted with or without continued eligibility for Honours.

### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1985 regulations for the Degree of Master of Science were thereby repealed.

---

**Master of Science (MSc) Schedule**


---

**Applied Geology**

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Geology

**Requirement:**

- at least 8 points from Geology 701, 705, 712, 771-773, GEOPHYS 761-763
- at least 4 points from approved courses within Part IV of the BE Schedule or the ME Schedule

**Applied Mathematics**

**Prerequisite:** At least 8 points in Mathematics courses at Stage III or higher, including MATHS 361 and 362, approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics

**Requirement:**

- at least 8 points from MATHS 761-775, 786-789, PHYSICS 701, 707, ENGSCI 792
- up to 6 points from approved Master's level courses in related subjects, or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

**Biological Sciences**

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Biological Sciences

**Requirement:** BIOSCI 761 (2 points) and a further 12 points selected from BIOSCI 724-745, 749-759, or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

**Chemistry**

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Chemistry

**Requirement:** CHEM 790 (2 points) plus 12 points from 710-780

**Computer Science**

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Computer Science

**Requirement:** 14 points from COMPSCI 701-790, or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

**Environmental Management**

**Prerequisite:** A BSc, BE, BA, BPlan, BCom, LLB, or equivalent degree, with a major or specialization in a relevant area

**Requirement:**

- 2 points: ENVSCI 701 or GEOG 701, or equivalent
- 6 points: ENVMG 741, 742, 743

**Plus 6 points from:** ENVMG 745, ENVSCI 711, 715, 716, 733, 736, 737, GEOG 727, 731, 748, 751, 753, 773, BIOSCI 724, 726, 727, 730, 735; PLANNING 754-760, ECON 775, CIVIL 750-753, COMHLTH 717, 735, SOCIOL 726, 730, LAWENVIR 701-725

**Environmental Science**

**Prerequisite:** An approved BSc or equivalent degree

**Requirement:**

- ENVSCI 701, 710, 711
- at least 4 points from ENVSCI 702-737,
- up to 4 points from other approved Master's level courses in related subjects or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

**Ergonomics**

**Prerequisite:**

- a BSc major in either Psychology or Sport and Exercise Science or other equivalent relevant qualifications as approved by the Chair of the Board of Studies

**Requirement:**

- PSYCH 737 Human Factors 1
- at least 2 points from SPORTSCI 704, 706-8
- at least 2 points from PSYCH 702-3, 735, 738

- up to 8 points from approved courses

**Exercise Rehabilitation**

**Prerequisite:**

- a BSc major in Sport and Exercise Science or other equivalent relevant qualifications as approved by the Head of Department of Sport and Exercise Science
- SPORTSCI 302 or equivalent

**Requirement:**

- SPORTSCI 703, 705, 706, 710, 791
- with Head of Department permission, up to 4 points from approved MSc or MHS Schedules

**Food Science**

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Biological Sciences or in Chemistry, or other relevant areas as approved by the Programme Coordinator

**Requirement:**

- FOODSCI 703-708 (10 points)
- 4 points from approved MSc level courses

**Forensic Science**

**Prerequisite:** A Bachelor's degree in science, technology, medicine, engineering or other relevant areas as approved by the Programme Coordinator

**Requirement:**

- FORENSIC 701-706 (12 points)
- 2 points from an approved Master's level course

**Geography**

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Geography

**Requirement:**

- GEOG 701 (2 points)
- GEOG 711-779 (12 points)

**Geology**

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Geology

**Requirement:**

- GEOLOGY 708 and 709
- at least 8 points from GEOLOGY 701, 705-773, GEOPHYS 761-763, GEOTHERM 611-613
- up to 4 points from approved MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

**Geophysics**

**Prerequisite:** At least 6 points from GEOLOGY 361, GEOPHYS 330-333

**Requirement:**

- 2 points PHYSICS 731 or 732
- approved Master's level courses in Applied Mathematics, Geology, Geophysics, Physics, or other Science subjects (12 points)

**Health Psychology**

**Prerequisite:** 8 points in Stage III Psychology

**Requirement:**

- PSYCH 701, HLTHPSYC 714, 715 (8 points)
- approved Master's level courses in Psychology, Health Psychology, Sport and Exercise Science, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science (6 points)

**Logic and Computation**

**Prerequisite:** A BSc specialization in Logic and Computation or

equivalent qualification

**Requirement:**

At least 14 points from the following courses, including at least 2 points from COMPSCI courses and at least 2 points from either LOGICOMP or PHIL:

- COMPSCI 720, 750, 755, 765
- PHIL 736, 737, 738
- LOGICOMP 701, 702
- LINGUIST 721, 724, 725
- MATHS 713

and

- 14 points: LOGICOMP 796 Thesis

## Marine Science

**Prerequisite:** An approved BSc, BE, or equivalent degree

**Requirement:**

- MARINE 701; plus
- 2 point thesis proposal course (BIOSCI 761, CHEM 790, ENVSCI 701, GEOG 701 or equivalent)
- 10 points from the following Master's level courses including at least 2 of the following subject areas: Biology, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Geophysics, Physics, Statistics: BIOSCI 724-727, 732, ENVSCI 704, 714, 722, 726, 735, GEOG 746-748, GEOLOGY 721, 754, PHYSICS 731, 732, STATS 767, 775
- or other courses as may be approved by the Marine Sciences Board of Studies
- or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Mathematics

**Prerequisite:**

- 445.231 or 445.252 or (MATHS 253 and 255) or equivalent approved courses
- at least 4 points from COMPSCI 225, MATHS 260, 270, STATS 201, 210, 255
- a BSc major in Mathematics

**Requirement:** One of the following options:

- 14 points from MATHS 701-794 plus 14 points: Master's Thesis in Mathematics MATHS 796
- 14 points from MATHS 701-794 plus 14 points: Advanced Studies in Mathematics MATHS 797
- 28 points from approved courses MATHS 701-794 including at least 6 points from project courses MATHS 791-794, or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii). Up to 6 points from approved Master's level courses in related subjects may be included

## Medical Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Biological Sciences, Pharmacology, or Physiology, together with appropriate prerequisite courses and approval of the Associate Dean (Postgraduate), Faculty of Science

**Requirement:**

- MEDSCI 796 MSc Thesis in Medical Science (14 points) plus 14 points from:
  - Anatomy: ANATOMY 702, 703
  - Biological Sciences: BIOSCI 755-759
  - Community Health: COMHLTH 701
  - Molecular Medicine: MOLMED 701-712
  - Obstetrics and Gynaecology: OBSTGYN 706, 707
  - Paediatrics: PAEDS 701-703
  - Pathology: PATHOL 703-705
  - Pharmacology: PHARMCOL 710-729
  - Physiology: PHYSIOL 701-707

## Medical Statistics

**Prerequisite:** A major in statistics, or equivalent approved by the Head of Department of Statistics

**Requirement:**

- STATS 788 Dissertation in Medical Statistics (6 points)
- STATS 780, 782, one of COMHLTH 703, 720 (6 points)
- At least 8 points from STATS 740, 741, 760, 761, 764, 770-773

- Up to 8 points from other Master's level courses in Statistics or COMHLTH 707, 708, 710, 716, 717, 720 (if not taken above)

## Optometry

**Prerequisite:** A BOptom degree or an equivalent qualification approved by the Head of Department

**Requirement:** 14 points from OPTOM 711-770

## Pharmacology

**Prerequisite:** At least 8 points from PHARMCOL 301-306

**Requirement:** At least 8 points from PHARMCOL 710-729 and up to 6 points from MSc level courses as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Physics

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Physics

**Requirement:**

- at least 8 points from PHYSICS 701-792
- at least 2 additional points from PHYSICS 701-792; MATHS 761-763; GEOPHYS 761-763
- up to 4 points from approved MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Physiology

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Physiology

**Requirement:** At least 8 points from PHYSIOL 701-708 and up to 6 points from MSc level courses as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Polymers and Coatings Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Chemistry

**Requirement:**

- POLYMER 701, 702 and 711
- CHEM 790
- 6 points from CHEM 710-780

## Psychology

**Prerequisite:** 8 points in Stage III Psychology, including PSYCH 306

**Requirement:** PSYCH 701-755 (14 points) or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Speech Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc or other relevant degree as approved by the Board of Studies

**Requirement:**

- 6 points from SPCHSCI 711-713, 721, 722, 733, 743, 751
- 8 points: approved Master's level courses in Psychology, Physiology, Audiology, Speech Science, Computer Science, Engineering, Linguistics

## Sport and Exercise Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Sport and Exercise Science

**Requirement:**

- SPORTSCI 705 (2 points)
- at least 8 points from SPORTSCI 702-704, 706-711
- up to 4 points from MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Statistics

**Prerequisite:**

- a BSc major in Statistics
- STATS 210, and MATHS 208 or 253

**Requirement:**

- STATS 730 and 782 (4 points)
- at least 4 points from other MSc level courses in Statistics
- up to 6 points from approved MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

plus one of the following options:

- STATS 796 Masters Thesis in Statistics (14 points)
- STATS 797 Advanced Studies in Statistics (14 points)
- 14 points in further MSc level courses in Statistics which must include at least one of STATS 790, 791

### Wine Science

**Prerequisite:**

A BSc or other relevant degree as approved by the programme director

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from WINESCI 701–707
- 4 points from BIOSCI 352, 740, 741, CHEMMAT 361, 463, FOODSCI 703, 706, 707, 708, GEOG 332

## The Degree of Master of Speech Language Therapy Practice – MSLTPrac

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 a In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - (i) completed the requirements for any Bachelor's or Master's degree of this University other than a degree specializing in speech language therapy, or gained any other equivalent qualification, provided that the Senate or its representative is satisfied that the prior degree or other equivalent qualification is indicative of the ability to undertake advanced study in Speech Language Therapy Practice  
*and*
  - (ii) passed at least 8 points at Stage III or graduate level in approved subjects and achieved in these an average of B– or higher.
- b The Senate or its representative may, on the recommendations of the Dean of Science or representative, require a student with insufficient background in Psychology and Education to take additional courses as a condition of enrolment for Part I of this degree, as under Regulation 5d below.
- 2 A student who has not completed all of the requirements for their qualifying prior degree but who, for that degree, has:
  - a no more than 2 points left to complete  
*and*
  - b achieved an average grade of B– or higher in at least 6 points at the highest level for the prior degree may, with the approval of the Dean of Science, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the prior degree must be completed within 12 months of enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the required degree not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Speech Language Therapy Practice will be suspended until they have been completed.
- 3 Admission to the programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Director of the programme.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 4 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.

### Structure and Content

- 5 a A student for this degree needs to pass courses for each of Parts I and II as follows:

**Part I**

**Speech Language Therapy Core Courses (4 points):**

SPCHSCI 711 Speech Language Therapy 1

SPCHSCI 721 Speech Language Therapy 2

**Supporting Courses (6 points):**

SPCHSCI 712 Linguistics for Speech Language Therapy

SPCHSCI 713 Anatomy and Physiology of the Speech and Hearing Systems

SPCHSCI 722 Psychology and Education in Speech Language Therapy

**Speech Language Therapy Practica (4 points):**

SPCHSCI 714 Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum 1

SPCHSCI 724 Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum 2

**Part II**

**Speech Language Therapy Core Courses (4 points):**

SPCHSCI 731 Speech Language Therapy 3

SPCHSCI 741 Speech Language Therapy Professional Practice

**Supporting Course (4 points):**

SPCHSCI 733 Audiology for Speech Language Therapy

SPCHSCI 743 Phonological Processing and Communication

**Speech Language Therapy Practica (4 points):**

SPCHSCI 734 Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum 3

SPCHSCI 744 Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum 4

**Research Project (2 points):**

SPCHSCI 742 Speech Language Therapy Project

- b A student may not enrol for Part II until Part I has been completed, unless special approval is given by the Dean of Science or representative.
- c A student who has previously passed courses from another programme that are substantially similar to any one of the courses required under Regulation 4a above may, with the approval of the Dean of Science or representative, be required to take alternative graduate courses from the subject Speech Science or other approved graduate level courses.
- d Where a student is required to take additional courses as a condition of enrolment for Part I, under Regulation 1b above, those courses:
  - (i) are to be taken for Certificates of Proficiency
  - and
  - (ii) are to be passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree.

**Practical and Clinical Requirements**

- 6 A student is required to pass the clinical and practical requirements of the Speech Language Therapy Practica courses to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Termination of Enrolment**

- 9
  - a If the attitudes or behaviour of a student in a clinical environment are found, after due and fair inquiry, to be offensive, disruptive or likely to give rise to a risk of harm to the welfare of any party, the enrolment of the student in the programme may be terminated by the Senate or its representative and any application to re-enrol may likewise be declined.
  - b A student who is subject to any such inquiry may be suspended by the Senate or its representative from lectures, classes and clinical placements pending the outcome of the inquiry.
  - c A student whose enrolment is terminated or application to re-enrol is declined under Regulation 9a may appeal from that decision to the Council or its duly appointed delegate.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2005. The 2002 regulations for the Degree of Master of Speech Language Therapy Practice were thereby repealed.

**Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd**

*The Diploma in Mathematics Education is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd**

*The Diploma in Science Education is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Graduate Diploma in Operations Research – GradDipOR**

*The Graduate Diploma in Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Graduate Diploma in Science – GradDipSci**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - both*
  - a
    - (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science
    - or*
    - (ii) attained an equivalent level of professional practical experience as approved by the Senate or its representative
    - or*
    - (iii) completed the requirements for a professional qualification in Science, as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - and*
  - b
    - (i) passed the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject major or area of specialization for this diploma
    - or*
    - (ii) attained a level of competence equivalent to the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject major or area of specialization for this diploma.
- 2 A student may, if the Senate or its representative gives approval, enrol for this diploma without having fulfilled all the prerequisite requirements, provided that the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or Coordinator of the Programme may require any such student to enrol for any or all of the unfulfilled prerequisite courses in addition to the normal requirements of this programme.
- 3 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science but who has passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for that degree may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or Coordinator of the Programme, enrol for this diploma. However, the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Science must be taken and passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this diploma. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science not be completed within these 12 months, enrolment for the Graduate Diploma in Science will be suspended until the requirements for the Bachelor's degree are completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 4 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a coherent programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 5 A student for this diploma has to:
  - either*
  - a pass at least 14 points from courses chosen from the schedules for the Degree of Bachelor of Science or from the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) or from the Degree of Master of Science. The 14 points must include:
    - (i) at least 8 points from courses at Stage III or above including at least 6 points in a subject major as defined in the schedule to the Degree of Bachelor of Science
    - (ii) 6 points from courses above Stage I
    - (iii) a 2 point project or 4 point dissertation may be included
  - or*
  - b pass courses above Stage I with a total value of at least 14 points from one of the areas of specialization as set out below:
    - (i) **Electronics and Computing**
      - 4 points: PHYSICS 326, 340
      - 2 points from PHYSICS 390-396
      - at least 2 points from courses above Stage II in Computer Science or Mathematics
      - up to 6 points from courses above Stage I in Computer Science and Mathematics
    - (ii) **Environmental Science**
      - 8 points: ENVSCI 201, 301, 310 and either STATS 201 or an alternative approved by the Coordinator of the Programme
      - 6 points from the Stage III courses listed in one of the options for the BSc specialization in Environmental Science
    - (iii) **Geophysics**
      - 6 points from courses at Stage III in Geology, Geophysics, Mathematics or Physics, which must include at least 4 points from GEOLOGY 361, GEOPHYS 330-333
      - 8 additional points from courses above Stage I in Geology, Geophysics, Mathematics or Physics or in any other subject if approved by the Coordinator of the Programme.
    - (iv) **Marine Science**
      - 8 points: ENVSCI 202, 302, 310 and either STATS 201 or an alternative approved by the Coordinator of the Programme
      - 6 points from the Stage III courses listed in one of the options for the BSc specialization in Marine Science.

**(v) Operations Research**

- 2 points: STATS 255
  - 2 points at Stage II in Statistics
  - 4 points: STATS 320, 391
  - 2 points from STATS 301–310, 325–390, OPSMGT 371, 382, COMPSCI 320, MATHS 326, 328, 361, 388 or an alternative approved by the Coordinator of the Programme
  - 2 points at Stage III chosen from the Science Schedule.
- c The personal programme of each student requires the approval of the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or Coordinator of Programme.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Award of Diploma**

- 7 The diploma is awarded with an endorsement in the relevant subject major or programme.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000. The 1996 regulations for the Graduate Diploma in Science were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology – PGDipAppPsych**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 a The programme for the diploma consists of:
- (i) PSYCH 650 Practicum (6 points). This practicum involves supervised experience in applied settings approved by the Head of Department of Psychology
  - (ii) courses with a total value of 8 points chosen, with the approval of the Head of Department of Psychology, from those listed in the schedules to the Degrees of Master of Arts and of Master of Science.
- b Up to 4 points may be taken from Stage III courses listed in the schedules to the Degrees of Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Science, with the approval of the Senate or its representative.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1992 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Forensic Science – PGDipForensic**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- both*
- a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science or the Degree of Bachelor of Technology
  - or*
  - (ii) attained an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
- and*
- b (i) passed the prerequisites for the subject Forensic Science as specified for the Degree of Master of Science

- or*
- (ii) attained a level of technical competence equivalent to the prerequisites for the subject Forensic Science as approved by the Senate or its representative.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment unless the Senate or its representative extends that period in exceptional circumstances.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of:
- a 12 points from FORENSIC 701-706 as listed in the schedule to the Degree of Master of Science.
- b 2 points from courses chosen from the Schedule to the Degree of Master of Science or advanced courses from other programmes as approved by the Senate or its representative.

#### **Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

## **Postgraduate Diploma in Science – PGDipSci**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- both*
- a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science  
*or*  
(ii) attained an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative  
*and*
- b (i) passed the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject for this postgraduate diploma  
*or*  
(ii) attained a level of competence equivalent to the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject for this postgraduate diploma as approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 2 A student may, if the Senate or its representative gives approval, enrol for this postgraduate diploma without having fulfilled all the prerequisite requirements, provided that the relevant Head of Department or Director of School may require any such student to enrol for any or all of the prerequisite courses not already passed in addition to the normal requirements of this programme.
- 3 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science but who has passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points for that degree may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department or Director of School, enrol for this postgraduate diploma. However, the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Science must be taken and passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this postgraduate diploma. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science not be completed within these 12 months, enrolment for the Postgraduate Diploma in Science will be suspended until the requirements for the Bachelor's degree are completed.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 4 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a coherent programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 5 a In one of the subjects available for the Degree of Master of Science, other than Forensic Science and Wine Science or Marine Science which is not available for this diploma, a student has to pass at least 14 points at Stage III or above with at least 10 points being from courses at Master's level available for the Degree of Master of Science.

- b The personal programme of each student must have the approval of the relevant Head of Department or Director of School, who may impose requirements on the programme, such as the inclusion of a project or dissertation as listed in the Course Prescriptions for the subject.
- c A 2 point project or 4 point dissertation as listed in the Course Prescriptions for the subject may be included. A dissertation or project must be submitted within four weeks after the end of the semester in which the student is enrolled in the dissertation or project.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Award of Diploma

- 7 The postgraduate diploma is awarded with an endorsement in the relevant subject and may be awarded with Distinction at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1991 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Science were thereby repealed.

---

## The Degree of Doctor of Clinical Psychology – DCLinPsy

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Preamble

- 1 a Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Clinical Psychology (DCLinPsy) are required to pursue an approved programme of advanced study, research and clinical practice as enrolled students of the University.
- b It is expected that this programme will normally be completed within three years of full-time candidature.
- c The degree of Doctor of Clinical Psychology is awarded for a formal and systematic exposition of a coherent programme of advanced research work and supervised practice, carried out over the period of registration for the Degree which in the opinion of the examiners and the Board of Graduate Studies satisfies all of the following criteria:
  - (i) that the research thesis is an original contribution to knowledge, and is of direct relevance to the field of clinical psychology;
  - and
  - (ii) that the research components of the degree (thesis and clinical research projects) meet internationally recognised standards for such work;
  - and
  - (iii) that the candidate has demonstrated both the knowledge of the relevant literature, in both research and clinical practice, and the ability to exercise analytical and professional judgement.
- d All research is to be conducted in accordance with the University of Auckland Guidelines for the Conduct of Research.
- e Doctor of Clinical Psychology theses may not exceed 60,000 words or 150 pages in total without the permission of the Board of Graduate Studies.

#### Eligibility

- 2 Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Clinical Psychology are required to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for the award of a Bachelors Honours Degree in Psychology with at least B+ average at the University of Auckland,
  - or
  - (ii) completed the requirements for the award of a Masters Degree in Psychology with at least B+ average at the University of Auckland,
  - or
  - (iii) completed the requirements for the award of a qualification that the Board of Graduate Studies considers to be equivalent to one of the prerequisite qualifications specified in sections a(i) and a(ii) of this clause,
  - and
  - b passed PSYCH 708, 709 and 789 or their equivalents with a B+ average or better
  - and
  - c demonstrated to a Selection Panel the ability and personal qualities necessary to pursue a doctoral level research-oriented clinical programme in the field of psychology.

- d Every candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Clinical Psychology must have applied for admission and been admitted to the University of Auckland.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student for this degree has to follow a three-part programme consisting of three full-time years, and pass an approved programme with a total value of 42 points.
- b Candidates must pass each part and must normally complete the requirements for this degree within three years from the date of registration, unless permitted to do otherwise by the Board of Graduate Studies under Clause 8.

#### Registration

- 4 a The Board of Graduate Studies, on the recommendation of the Head of Psychology, is to determine whether the student may be registered and the date of registration.
- b Conditions of registration will be determined according to Clause 1 of the General Regulations for Named Doctorates (2004).

#### Structure and Content

- 5 a The programme consists of Part I, Part II and Part III as follows. Note that PSYCH 897 and 899 are awarded only on completion of the whole course.

##### Part I

PSYCH 801	Scientist-practitioner Model 1 (3 points)
PSYCH 897	Portfolio of Clinical Research (Part 1: 3 points)
PSYCH 899	Thesis (Part 1: 8 points)

##### Part II

PSYCH 802	Scientist-practitioner Model 2 (4 points)
PSYCH 897	Portfolio of Clinical Research (Part 2: 4 points)
PSYCH 899	Thesis (Part 2: 6 points)

##### Part III

PSYCH 803	Internship (6 points)
PSYCH 897	Portfolio of Clinical Research (Part 3: 4 points)
PSYCH 899	Thesis (Part 3: 4 points)

- b A student who fails any course or part of a course of the programme may be required to repeat that part or course or to sit a special examination before proceeding into the next year of the programme. A student who fails any year of the programme may be declined permission to enrol again in that year of the programme or, under Clause 4 of the General Regulations for Named Doctorates (2004), be declined permission to enrol in the programme as a whole.

#### Reviews of Progress

- 6 During the programme, reviews of progress and continuation of registration will be made in each year according to Clause 2 of the General Regulations for Named Doctorates (2004).

#### Enrolment and Fees

- 7 Enrolment and fees will be determined according to Clause 3 of the General Regulations for Named Doctorates (2004), except that clause 3c applies only to the thesis component of the Doctor of Clinical Psychology.

#### Changes to the Conditions of Registration

- 8 Changes to supervision, extensions of time, and suspension or termination of registration will be made according to Clause 4 of the General Regulations for Named Doctorates (2004).

#### Submission

- 9 a All candidates are initially required to submit three copies of the thesis to the Graduate Centre. The thesis should have a temporary binding and a statement to examiners as specified in the *Guide to Theses and Dissertations*.
- b All candidates are also required to submit with the thesis three copies of the Portfolio of Clinical Research.
- c One month prior to the expected date of submission, candidates should notify the Graduate Centre in writing of their intention to submit. If the candidate has reason to believe that any person would be unsuitable to serve as an examiner of the thesis on the grounds of conflict of interest, he or she may also submit at this time the name of this person and a statement in writing as to the nature of the conflict of interest to the Graduate Centre.
- d The thesis is to be accompanied by a statutory declaration, signed by the candidate, stating that the thesis is the candidate's own work and that neither the thesis nor any part of it has been submitted or accepted for any other degree or diploma.

- e The thesis is to be presented in English unless otherwise approved by the Board of Graduate Studies at the time of first registration of the candidate.

### Examination

- 10 a The examination process will follow that of Clause 9 of the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy 2003 except that;
- (i) examiners will be requested to examine the thesis according to the criteria of clause 1(c) of these regulations, and to provide an assessment of the grades assigned to the Portfolio of Clinical Research.
  - (ii) The Board of Graduate Studies will appoint one DCLinPsy Advisor who will take the part of the Head of Department Nominee, as described in the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy 2003, for all Doctor of Clinical Psychology examinations, except where that person is a research supervisor of the student concerned in which case a different staff member will be appointed DCLinPsy Advisor
  - (iii) both examiners may reside in New Zealand;
  - (iv) candidates may be asked to make specified minor corrections to or resubmit all or part of the Portfolio of Clinical Research.
- b In the event that a candidate is asked to resubmit all or part of the Portfolio of Clinical Research the same process of examination will be followed for the resubmitted work.

### Variations

- 11 In exceptional circumstances the Board of Graduate Studies may approve a personal programme which does not conform with these regulations.

### Appeals

- 12 Appeals regarding the examination process or decisions of the Board of Graduate Studies must be made according to Clause 5 of the General Regulations for Named Doctorates (2004).

### Dispute Resolution Procedures

- 13 Disputes are to be resolved according to the Policy for Resolution of Research Problems: Postgraduate Research Students.

### Transitional Arrangements

- 14 a These regulations came into force on 1 January 2005. The 2001 regulations for the Doctor of Clinical Psychology were thereby repealed.
- b For candidates initially registered under earlier regulations for this degree the Board of Graduate Studies may agree to vary the application of the provisions of this Statute to ensure consistency with the provisions of the statute under which the candidate was enrolled where it is satisfied that the candidate would otherwise be at a disadvantage.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology – PGDipClinPsych

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- either*
  - a completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology
  - or*
  - b completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology except for the thesis and passed, or been credited with a pass in one of: PSYCH 751, 708, or 709
  - or*
  - c completed the requirements for an Honours Degree in Psychology and passed, or been credited with a pass in one of: PSYCH 751, 708 or 709.
- 2 Admission to the programme for this diploma is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Head of Department of Psychology.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student for this diploma who has completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology which included a thesis or a Doctor of Philosophy degree in Psychology has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and two part-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.
- b Any other student for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 42 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 Each student's programme consists of three Parts, each of which must be passed to the satisfaction of the Head of Department of Psychology before the next Part may be taken.
- 5 A student who has completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology which included a thesis or Doctor of Philosophy in Psychology has to follow a programme which consists of:
  - a **Part I:** 6 points: PSYCH 771 Clinical Practice 1 and Professional Issues  
and
  - b **Part II:** 8 points: PSYCH 772 Clinical Practice 2  
and
  - c **Part III:** 14 points: PSYCH 773 Clinical Internship
- 6 A student who has not completed the thesis requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology or a Doctor of Philosophy in Psychology has to concurrently enrol in PSYCH 796 Master's Thesis in Psychology or a Doctor of Philosophy in Psychology, together with Parts I, II and III of the PGDipClinPsych degree or until such time as that thesis is completed.
- 7 A student who has not previously passed, or been credited with a pass in PSYCH 709, will be required to take PSYCH 709 before taking Part III.
- 8
  - a A student enrolled for this diploma has to satisfactorily carry out such practical or clinical work as the Head of Department of Psychology may require.
  - b A student has to pass both the written work and the practical or clinical work in order to pass each Part of the programme. However, a student who passes the practical or clinical work of Part III but fails the final examination, may at the discretion of the Head of the Department of Psychology, be required to pass a special examination in order to meet the requirements of the programme. A student who fails any year of the programme may, at the discretion of the Dean following a recommendation from the Head of Department of Psychology, be declined permission to enrol again in that year of the programme or in the programme as a whole.

**Variations**

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1988 regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology were thereby repealed.

**Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology – CertOcPharm**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry  
or
  - b gained any other equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative in a particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 The requirements for this certificate are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment for the programme unless in exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this certificate consists of OPTOM 681 Ocular Pharmacology.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1992 regulations for the Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology were thereby repealed.

---

## Regulations – Theology

The Degree of Bachelor of Theology – BTheol	220
The Degree of Master of Theology – MTheol	220
Graduate Diploma in Theology – GradDipTheol	222

---

## REGULATIONS – THEOLOGY

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Theology – BTheol

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 42 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 Of the 42 points required for this degree, at least 34 points must be chosen from courses as listed in the Course Prescriptions for this degree; up to 8 points may be included from courses offered for other programmes.
- 3 The programme consists of:
  - a **Biblical Studies** (6 points):
    - (i) either BSTHEO 101 or 102
    - (ii) BSTHEO 141
    - (iii) a Stage II course in Biblical Studies
  - b **Christian Thought and History** (6 points):
    - (i) either CHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
    - (ii) 2 points from CHTHEO 142, 145
    - (iii) a Stage II course in Christian Thought and History
  - c **Moral and Practical Theology** (6 points):
    - (i) 2 points at Stage I
    - (ii) 2 points from another course at any level in Moral and Practical Theology
    - (iii) a Stage II course in Moral and Practical Theology
  - d at least 2 points in Theology and Maori Experience or Theology and New Zealand Culture from CHTHEO 103, 208, 142, 245; MPTHEO 103, 172, 173, 206, 272, 273, 274, 275
  - e a major of at least 16 points in one subject, of which at least 6 points must be above Stage II  
*Note: a major in Biblical Studies must include:*  
 either BSTHEO 135 Introduction to Biblical Hebrew  
 or BSTHEO 175 Introduction to New Testament Greek  
 or BSTHEO 136 Linguistic Tools for Exegesis
  - f a second major or a minor of at least 10 points in a second subject, of which at least 6 points must be above Stage I
  - g at least 22 points above Stage I.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1994 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology were thereby repealed.

---

### The Degree of Master of Theology – MTheol

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology  
or

- (ii) gained an equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Theology
  - and
  - b passed the specified prerequisite courses for one of the subjects listed in the Course Prescriptions for this degree
  - and
  - c achieved an average grade of B or higher in the Stage III prerequisite courses.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Head of School of Theology, approve the admission of a student whose average grade in the prerequisite Stage III courses is less than B.
- 3 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology but who has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for that degree, including at least 22 points above Stage I
  - and
  - b passed all of the specified prerequisite courses listed in the Course Prescriptions for this degree
  - and
  - c achieved an average grade of B+ or higher in the Stage II and Stage III prerequisite courses

may enrol for this degree provided the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology are taken and passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology not be completed within those 12 months, enrolment for the Degree of Master of Theology will be suspended until the requirements for the Bachelor's degree are completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 4 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 5 The programme consists of one of the following subjects:
- a **Biblical Studies**
    - (i) at least 12 points from BSTHEO 701-703, 735, 741-745
    - (ii) 2 points: BSTHEO 781 Research Methods in Biblical Studies
    - (iii) 14 points: BSTHEO 798 Thesis
  - b **Christian Thought and History**
    - (i) at least 12 points from CHTHEO 701-707, 741-750
    - (ii) 2 points: CHTHEO 781 Research Methods in Christian Thought and History
    - (iii) 14 points: CHTHEO 798 Thesis
  - c **Moral and Practical Theology**
    - (i) at least 12 points from MPTHEO 701-704
    - (ii) 2 points: MPTHEO 781 Research Methods in Moral and Practical Theology
    - (iii) 14 points: MPTHEO 798 Thesis
- 6 a In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may allow a student to vary this pattern.
- b On the recommendation of the Head of School of Theology, the Senate or its representative may allow a student for this degree to take courses with a total value of up to 4 points from:
- (i) courses prescribed for another subject for this degree
  - (ii) courses for any other Master's degree at this University provided such courses are related to the student's research interests.

#### Thesis

- 7 a The required thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic must be approved by the Head of School of Theology on the recommendation of the relevant Subject Area Convenor.
- c The thesis is to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations - Master's Degrees.

**Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Master of Theology were thereby repealed.

---

**Graduate Diploma in Theology – GradDipTheol**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a Bachelor of Theology
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for any other degree or equivalent professional qualification approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - or
  - c obtained appropriate professional experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma normally consists of 14 points in courses listed in the Degree of Bachelor of Theology with at least 8 points at Stage III.
- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the Director of Postgraduate Studies and the Head of School.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

---

## Regulations – Interfaculty Degrees and Diplomas

The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech	224
The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt	227
The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt	227
The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt	228
The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR	229
The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds	230
The Degree of Master of Science in Health Psychology – MSc	232
Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd	232
Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd	233
Graduate Diploma in Operations Research – GradDipOR	234
Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management – PGDipArtsMgt	234
The University of Auckland Tertiary Foundation Certificate	235

# REGULATIONS – INTERFACULTY DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

## The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student must pass consecutively each of Parts I, II, III and IV for one of the programmes set out in the Bachelor of Technology Schedule.
- b A student who has failed to pass any Part in its entirety may, at the discretion of the Convener of the BTech Board of Studies, be allowed to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that Part together with a course or courses towards the next Part.
- c (i) For each subject, a student must choose further complementary courses as indicated in the Bachelor of Technology Schedule.  
(ii) Each student's choice of further complementary courses needs to be approved by the BTech Board of Studies.

### Practical Requirements

- 3 a A student enrolled in any course that includes both laboratory work and written work must pass both in order to pass the course as a whole.
- b A student who passes the laboratory work but fails the written work may, with the permission of the relevant Head of Department, have the result for the laboratory work carried forward when the failed course is retaken.

### Reassignment to Bachelor of Science

- 4 a Students who do not complete the programmes for Animal Technology, Biomedical Science, Biotechnology, Industrial Mathematics, Information Technology, Materials or Optoelectronics in the Bachelor of Technology degree may reassign to the Degree of Bachelor of Science any courses passed for Parts I and II. Courses passed for Parts III and IV may be reassigned only with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Science.
- b Students who do not complete the programme in Multimedia and the Arts in the Bachelor of Technology may reassign to the Bachelor of Arts, the Bachelor of Performing Arts or the Bachelor of Science courses passed for Parts I and II that are available for that degree in which they subsequently enrol.

### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 6 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
- b In order to be considered for the award of Honours a student must complete the requirements for this degree:
  - (i) within eight semesters
  - or
  - (ii) within a shorter period determined by the Convener of the BTech Board of Studies if the student has been granted credits
  - or
  - (iii) in exceptional circumstances approved by the Convener of the BTech Board of Studies, within not more than 10 semesters.

### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 1996 regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Technology were thereby repealed.

## Bachelor of Technology (BTech) Schedule

### Biotechnology

#### Part I

BIOSCI 101 Essential Biology: From Genomes to Organisms  
 BIOSCI 107 Biology for Biomedical Science: Cellular Processes and Development  
 BIOSCI 106 Foundations of Biochemistry  
 CHEM 110 Chemistry of the Living World  
 PHYSICS 160 Physics for the Life Sciences  
 HUMANBIO 142 Biology for Biomedical Science: Organ Systems  
 ENGSCI 111 Mathematical Modelling 1

#### Part II

BIOSCI 201 Cellular and Molecular Biology  
 BIOSCI 202 Genetics  
 BIOSCI 203 Biochemistry  
 BIOSCI 204 Applied and Environmental Microbiology  
 BIOSCI 209 Biometry  
 CHEMMAT 211 Introduction to Process Engineering  
 2 points from a further complementary course

#### Part III

BIOSCI 350 Protein Structure and Function  
 BIOSCI 351 Molecular Genetics  
 BIOSCI 352 Applied and Food Microbiology  
*either*  
 BIOSCI 357 Immunology  
*or* BIOSCI 354 Gene Expression and Gene Transfer  
*either*

PHYSIOL 301 Molecular Physiology  
*or* BIOSCI 353 Molecular and Cellular Regulation  
 CHEMMAT 361 Engineering Biotechnology  
 2 points from a further complementary course

#### Part IV

BIOSCI 741 Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology  
*and*  
*either*  
 BIOSCI 752 Plant Functional Genomics  
*or* BIOSCI 755 Genomics and Gene Expression  
*or* BIOSCI 756 Proteomics and Protein Interactions  
*or* BIOSCI 758 Development, Differentiation and Disease  
*or* BIOSCI 745 Biotechnology and Bioentrepreneurship  
*and*  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
 BTECH 430 Project in Biotechnology  
 BTECH 432 Biotechnology Research Proposal  
 CHEMMAT 463 Food Process Engineering

### Industrial Mathematics

#### Part I

COMPSCI 101 Principles of Programming  
 MATHS 108 Mathematics for Business and Technology 1  
 MATHS 162 Introduction to Applied and Computational Mathematics  
 PHYSICS 120 Physics of Energy  
 PHYSICS 150 Physics of Technology  
 STATS 107 Statistics for Science and Technology  
 INFOSYS 110 Business Computing

#### Part II

MATHS 208 Mathematics for Business and Technology 2  
 MATHS 267 Applied and Computational Mathematics  
*either*  
 STATS 201 Data Analysis  
*or* STATS 208 Data Analysis for Commerce  
 STATS 255 Introduction to Operations Research  
*either*  
 COMPSCI 105 Principles of Computer Science

*or* INFOSYS 222 Database Systems  
 STATS 210 Statistical Theory  
 2 points from a further complementary course

#### Part III

MATHS 347 Advanced Calculus  
 MATHS 367 Advanced Applied and Computational Mathematics  
 MATHS 372 Industrial Mathematics Clinic  
 STATS 301 Data Management and Analysis  
 STATS 391 Optimization in Operations Research  
 4 points from a further complementary course

#### Part IV

MATHS 788 Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics 3  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
 STATS 320 Applied Stochastic Modelling  
 BTECH 440 Project in Industrial Mathematics  
 4 points from:  
 MATHS 388 Special Topic in Applied Mathematics 3  
 STATS 330 Advanced Statistical Modelling  
 STATS 340 Design of Experiments and Surveys  
 ENGSCI 450 Computational Techniques 3A  
 ENGSCI 451 Computational Techniques 3B  
 ENGSCI 452 Computational Techniques 3C  
 ENGSCI 460 Operations Research  
 ENGSCI 463 Scheduling  
 ENGSCI 464 Stochastic Programming

### Information Technology

#### Part I

COMPSCI 101 Principles of Programming  
 COMPSCI 105 Principles of Computer Science  
 MATHS 108 Mathematics for Business and Technology 1  
 MATHS 162 Introduction to Applied and Computational Mathematics  
 PHYSICS 120 Physics of Energy  
 PHYSICS 150 Physics of Technology  
 2 points from:  
 STATS 101 Introduction to Statistics  
 STATS 102 Statistics for Social Science  
 STATS 107 Statistics for Science and Technology  
 STATS 108 Statistics for Commerce

#### Part II

MATHS 208 Mathematics for Business and Technology  
 COMPSCI 210 Computer Systems  
 COMPSCI 220 Algorithms and Data Structures  
 COMPSCI 230 Software Design and Construction  
 PHYSICS 243 Digital Electronics and Instrumentation  
 INFOSYS 220 Systems Analysis and Design 1  
 INFOSYS 222 Database Systems

#### Part III

COMPSCI 314 Data Communication Fundamentals  
*or* INFOSYS 224 Data Communications  
 COMPSCI 334 Internet Programming  
 COMPSCI 335 Distributed Objects and Algorithms  
 COMPSCI 375 Picture Processing and Analysis  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
 2 points from a complementary course  
 2 points from Stage III Computer Science, INFOSYS 328, 329, 339, 341

#### Part IV

BTECH 450 Project in Information Technology  
 2 points from an approved course  
 4 points at Master's level Computer Science  
 2 points at Master's level Computer Science or Information Systems  
 2 points from Stage III or Master's level Computer Science, INFOSYS 328, 329, 339, 341

**Materials****Part I**

CHEM 110 The Chemistry of the Living World  
 CHEM 120 The Chemistry of the Material World  
 COMPSCI 101 Principles of Programming  
 PHYSICS 111 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 1  
 PHYSICS 210 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 2  
 PHYSICS 150 Physics of Technology  
 CHEMMAT 121 Materials Science

**Part II**

CHEM 210 Physical and Materials Chemistry  
 CHEMMAT 221 Materials  
 PHYSICS 211 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 3

4 points from:

CHEM 220 Inorganic Compounds: Structure, Bonding and Reactivity  
 CHEM 230 Molecules for Life: Synthesis and Reactivity  
 CHEM 240 Measurement and Analysis in Chemistry and Health Sciences

2 points from:

PHYSICS 230 Materials and Waves  
 CHEMMAT 321 Materials Performance  
 CHEMMAT 231 Process Design 1

2 points from a further complementary course

**Part III**

CHEM 380 Materials Chemistry  
 OPSMGT 255 Introduction to Operations Management  
 STATS 255 Introduction to Operations Research  
 CHEMMAT 211 Introduction to Process Engineering

2 points from:

CHEM 310 Structural Chemistry and Spectroscopy  
 CHEM 320 Design and Reactivity of Inorganic Compounds  
 CHEM 330 Contemporary Organic Chemistry  
 CHEM 340 Advanced Analytical Chemistry

2 points from:

PHYSICS 354 Condensed Matter Physics  
 CHEMMAT 424 Electronic Materials and their Applications

2 points from a further complementary course

**Part IV**

CHEM 710 Structural and Computational Chemistry  
 CHEM 780 Advanced Materials Chemistry  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
 BTECH 460 Project in Materials  
 CHEMMAT 422 Non-metallic Materials  
 CHEMMAT 423 Materials Engineering

**Multimedia and the Arts****Part I**

COMPSCI 101 Principles of Programming  
 COMPSCI 105 Principles of Computer Science

2 points from:

FTVMS 100 Media Studies  
 MUSIC 154 Acoustics for Musicians

2 points from:

PHYSICS 130 Properties of Matter  
 MATHS 102 Mathematics 2  
 MATHS 151 Mathematics 3

2 points from:

MUSIC 100 Basic Musical Techniques  
 MUSIC 103 Musical Skills and Perception  
 JAZZ 103 Contemporary Theory and Ear Training

4 points from further complementary courses

**Part II**

COMPSCI 210 Computer Systems  
 COMPSCI 220 Algorithms and Data Structures  
 COMPSCI 230 Software Design and Construction

4 points from:

FTVMS 203 Techno-culture and New Media  
 MUSIC 216 Electronic Music  
 POPMUS 203 Music Technology and Production 2  
 POPMUS 206 From Jazz to Rock

4 points from further complementary courses

**Part III**

COMPSCI 378 Advanced Multimedia  
 FINEARTS 301 Working the Frame: New Painting Technologies

6 points from:

COMPSCI 334 Internet Programming  
 COMPSCI 335 Distributed Objects and Web Services  
 COMPSCI 372 Computer Graphics  
 COMPSCI 375 Picture Processing and Analysis

2 points from:

POPMUS 302 Popular Musicology  
 POPMUS 210 Practical Singing and Musicianship 2

2 points from:

MUSIC 316 Electronic Music  
 POPMUS 303 Music Technology and Production 3

**Part IV**

BTECH 480 Project in Multimedia and the Arts  
 4 points at Master's level Computer Science  
 4 points at Master's level Arts

**Optoelectronics****Part I**

PHYSICS 111 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 1  
 PHYSICS 210 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 2  
 PHYSICS 120 Physics of Energy  
 PHYSICS 130 Properties of Matter  
 PHYSICS 150 Physics of Technology  
 CHEM 120 The Chemistry of the Material World  
 COMPSCI 101 Introduction to Programming

**Part II**

PHYSICS 211 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 3  
 PHYSICS 219 Computer Electronics  
 PHYSICS 220 Electromagnetism and Thermal Physics  
 PHYSICS 240 Electronics and Optics  
 PHYSICS 250 Quantum Physics  
 CHEMMAT 201 Materials for Electrical Engineering  
 ELECTENG 207 Microelectronic Circuits  
 2 points from a further complementary course

**Part III**

PHYSICS 326 Laser Physics and Electronics  
 PHYSICS 340 Circuits, Systems and Signals  
 PHYSICS 390 or 391 Experimental Physics 1 or 2  
 PHYSICS 395 or 396 Experimental Physics 3 or 4  
 ELECTENG 303 Systems and Control  
 ELECTENG 305 Electronic Devices and Technology  
 ELECTENG 306 Transmission Lines and Systems  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology

**Part IV**

PHYSICS 726 Optoelectronics and Laser Physics  
 PHYSICS 727 Optoelectronics and Communications  
 BTECH 470 Project in Optoelectronics  
 ELECTENG 412 Communication Systems

2 points from:

ELECTENG 421 Radio Systems  
 ELECTENG 203 Software Design 1E and ELECTENG 206 Engineering Design 2E  
 PHYSICS 325 Electromagnetism and Optics  
 PHYSICS 350 Quantum Mechanics and Atomic Physics

2 points from a further complementary course

---

## The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for any university Bachelor's degree or university diploma, which has been approved by the Senate or its representative  
*and*
  - b completed the requirements for a professional qualification in teaching, counselling, nursing, social work or other profession approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
*and*
  - c had at least three years of practical experience in that or a related profession.
- 2 Any student who has completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Education (Educational Administration) at The University of Auckland may not enrol for or reassign courses to this degree.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full time years and pass each of the courses required under Regulation 4 with a total value of 28 points.
  - b This degree is to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of courses with a total value of 28 points as listed below:
  - a **Education** (16 points):
    - 8 points: EDPROF 771 and 772
    - 8 points from  
*either*
    - EDPROF 730 and 731  
*or*
    - EDPROF 770 and 4 points from Master's level courses listed for the subject Education  
*and*
    - b **Business and Economics** (8 points):
      - (i) 4 points: BUSADMIN 701 and BUSADMIN 713
      - (ii) at least 4 points from: BUSADMIN 712, MAORIDEV 612, MANAGEMENT 724 and HRMGMT 604  
*and*
      - c 4 points from  
*either*
      - EDPROF 790 Dissertation  
*or*
      - 4 points from Education or Business and Economics Masters courses as approved by the Head of the School of Education.
- 5 A student's personal programme is to be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Business and Economics and the Head of School of Education.

### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 7 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

---

## The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt

For detailed regulations refer to the Faculty of Engineering section of this Calendar.

## The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for any degree or diploma of a university which has been approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - b completed the requirements of the Postgraduate Diploma in Business in Health Management or Health Informatics with an average grade of B
  - c had at least three years of practical experience in the health sector.
- 2 Admission is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and achieve a pass in 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 a A student who has completed the Postgraduate Diploma in Business in Health Management must follow a programme consisting of:
 

*either*

**Option 1**  
 8 points: MANAGEMENT 724, 725, COMHLTH 705, 742  
 4 points from: BUSADMIN 705, INTSTRAT 757, OPSMAN 705, 715  
 2 points from: COMHLTH 708, 713, 720

*or*

**Option 2**  
 8 points: MANAGEMENT 724, 725, COMHLTH 705, 742  
 2 points: MANAGEMENT 704  
 4 points: HLTHMGT 790
- b A student who has completed the Postgraduate Diploma in Business in Health Informatics must follow a programme consisting of:
 

*either*

**Option 3**  
 8 points: MANAGEMENT 724, 725, COMHLTH 705, INFOSYS 734  
 4 points from: BUSADMIN 711, INTSTRAT 757, MARKET 713, HLTHINFO 713, 716, 718, 720, 721, COMHLTH 747  
 2 points from: COMHLTH 708, 713, 735, INFOSYS 727

*or*

**Option 4**  
 8 points: MANAGEMENT 724, 725, COMHLTH 705, INFOSYS 734  
 2 points: MANAGEMENT 704  
 4 points: HLTHMGT 790
- c A student who wishes to include a dissertation in the programme, must, before enrolment for the dissertation, obtain the approval of the Director, Master of Health Management.
  - (i) The dissertation, when included in the programme, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
  - (ii) The dissertation topic must be approved by the Director, Master of Health Management prior to enrolling in HLTHMGT 790.
- d
  - (i) A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree must normally submit the dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
  - (ii) In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend the periods listed in 4d(i).
- 5 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same as or similar to those listed above for this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Course Coordinator.
- 6 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Business and Economics and the Dean of Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000. The 1997 regulations for the Degree of Master of Health Management were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
- a (i) the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, Bachelor of Commerce, Bachelor of Commerce (Honours), Bachelor of Engineering in Engineering Science, Bachelor of Science or Bachelor of Science (Honours)
- or
- (ii) an equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and
- b passed at least 8 points with an average grade of B- or higher
- (i) at Stage III or above in subjects approved by the Senate or its representative
- or
- (ii) in Part III or above of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering in Engineering Science
- and
- c (i) passed either STATS 320 and 391 or ENGSCI 391 and 460 or equivalent courses with an average grade of B- or higher
- or
- (ii) passed OPSRES 385 and 392 with an average grade of B or higher.
- 2 A student who has passed all the prerequisite courses specified in Regulation 1, but has not completed all the requirements for:
- a the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, Bachelor of Commerce or Bachelor of Science but has passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for one of these degrees
- or
- b the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering in Engineering Science but has passed courses with a total value of at least 52 points for that degree

may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining courses for the Bachelor's degree must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Bachelor's degree not be completed within this time, the Degree of Master of Operations Research will be suspended until they have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of:
- either
- a the equivalent of two years full-time or four years part-time, and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Commerce or Bachelor of Science
- or
- b the equivalent of 18 months full-time or three years part-time, and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Engineering which includes at least 6 points from ENGSCI 460-464
- or
- c the equivalent of one year full-time or two years part-time, and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) or a Bachelor of Science (Honours) which includes at least 10 points from STATS 720-725, INFOSYS 750-751, OPSMGT 752-783, ENGSCI 460-464, 720, 751-795.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of:
- a ENGGEN 798 Master of Operations Research Thesis (14 points)
- or
- ENGGEN 760 Project in Operations Research (8 points)
- and
- b courses selected from the Regulations to the Degrees of Master of Commerce, Master of Engineering and Master of Science as approved by the Senate or its representative
- and

(i) if a student has to complete 21 points, up to 2 points

or

(ii) if a student has to complete 28 points, up to 4 points

may be taken from courses at Stage III or above as listed in the Regulations to the Degrees of Bachelor of Commerce and Bachelor of Science or at Part IV in the Regulations to the Bachelor of Engineering in Engineering Science.

- 5 Each student's programme needs to be approved by the Senate or its representative.

### Thesis

- 6 a A thesis, when included in the programme, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic has to be approved by the Senate or its representative before enrolment for the thesis.
- c Before enrolment for the thesis, a student who has to complete 28 points and who wishes to include a thesis in the programme, must achieve an average grade of at least B- in the taught courses' component of this degree.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997.

## The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
- a a four-year Bachelor's degree
- or
- b a Bachelor's (honours) degree
- or
- c a Bachelor's degree and
- (i) a professional qualification equivalent to one year's advanced study
- or
- (ii) at least three years of professional experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative
- and
- d completed any prerequisites specified for the programme in which they wish to enrol.
- 2 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one year and complete 14 points as specified.

### Structure and Content

- 4 A student enrolled for this programme must pass at least 14 points from one of the following programmes:
- a **International Relations and Human Rights**
- (i) Core courses (6 points):
- 4 points: POLITICS 750 International Relations and Human Rights
- 2 points: POLITICS 755 Research Essay
- (ii) 8 points from
- PHIL 726 Ethics 1
- PHIL 727 Ethics 2
- PHIL 728 Political Philosophy 1

PHIL 729 Political Philosophy 2  
 PHIL 730 Philosophy of Law  
 POLITICS 724 Identity Politics  
 POLITICS 725 States in the Global Political Economy  
 POLITICS 728 Security, Diplomacy and Conflict Resolution  
 POLITICS 730 China in World Politics  
 POLITICS 751 Politics, Statecraft, and Regional Order  
 POLITICS 752 Foreign and Defence Policies of Major Powers  
 LAWCOMM 729 Transnational Civil and Commercial Litigation  
 LAWCOMM 762 Regulation of International Trade  
 COMLAW 728 Travel and Immigration Law  
 ECON 743 Economic Integration in the Pacific Rim  
 ECON 744 Emerging Economies of East Asia  
 INTBUS 701 International Business  
 INTBUS 702 International Management  
 INTBUS 706 Political Economy of International Business  
 LAWENVIR 710 International Environmental Law  
 LAWPUBL 709 Global Legal Issues  
 LAWPUBL 726 Public International Law  
 LAWPUBL 731 Comparative Human Rights Law  
 LAWPUBL 735 Indigenous Sovereignty and Self-determination

- (iii) Other courses approved by the Coordinator of International Relations and Human Rights may be substituted for POLITICS 750 if they have been passed prior to enrolment for this degree.

**b Language Teaching**

- (i) 10 points from:  
 LANGTCHG 704, 720, 721 or 714, 722 or 723, and 724  
 (ii) 4 points from elective Language Teaching Master's level courses.  
 (iii) With the approval of the Head of Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics, up to four points of the programme may be taken in Master's level courses in a language subject or Linguistics or other relevant subject.  
 (iv) With the prior approval of the Head of Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics, and provided that the points so obtained do not exceed 50 per cent of the total points for the degree, a student may elect to study for any core and elective courses by taking equivalent courses at Victoria University of Wellington.

**c Maori Professional Studies**

**Prerequisite:** Maori at Stage III or equivalent Maori language competence

- (i) 4 points: MAORI 747 Organizational Structures for Maori  
 (ii) 6 points from:  
 EDUC 707 Kaupapa Kura: Maori Education Policy Development and Practice  
 EDUC 787 Tikanga Rangahau: Maori Perspectives on Research in Education  
 ENVSCI 735 Maori Resource Management  
 LAWPUBL 735 Indigenous Sovereignty and Self-determination  
 MAORI 743 The Politics of Maori and Public Policy  
 MGMT 735 Kaupapa Maori and Organizations  
 PLANNING 704 Resource Management and Maori  
 (iii) 4 points from any 700 level courses

*Note: Students will need to have passed appropriate prerequisites for LAW courses listed.*

**d Translation**

- (i) 4 points from COMPLIT 703, TRANSLAT 702, 703  
 (ii) 4 points from Master's level courses in Language Acquisition, Translation Practice or any other Master's level language courses approved by the Programme and Centre Director  
 (iii) 2 points from TRANSLAT 704, 706, 710  
 (iv) 4 points: Dissertation

**Honours**

- 5 This degree may be awarded with Honours as specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002. The 2001 regulations for the Degree of Master of Professional Studies were thereby repealed.

**The Degree of Master of Science in Health Psychology – MSc**

*Health Psychology is an interfaculty subject for the degree of Master of Science. For detailed regulations refer to the Faculty of Science section of this Calendar.*

**Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
- a (i) have completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - or
  - (ii) have completed an appropriate professional qualification in teaching approved by the Senate or its representative as equivalent in any particular case
  - or
  - (iii) have attained a high level of practical experience in the teaching profession approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and
- b (i) be currently teaching
  - or
  - (ii) have had three years of teaching experience
- and
- c attained a level of competence approved by the Senate or its representative as being sufficient to enable the student to perform satisfactorily in the programme.

*Note: An interview will normally be required under Regulation 1c.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 Each student's programme consists of Part I and Part II. A student must pass at least 8 points of Part I before taking Part II.
- 4 **Part I** consists of courses with a total value of 10 points, chosen with the approval of the Senate or its representative, as follows:
- a at least 2 points in courses related to classroom practice as approved by the Head of School of Education
  - b at least 2 points in courses taught by the Department of Mathematics or Statistics and approved by the Head of Mathematics Education Unit
  - c at least 2 points in courses taught by the School of Education and approved by the Head of School of Education
  - d up to 4 points in any courses as permitted under Regulations 4a, b and c or other courses as approved by the Head of School of Education.
- 5 **Part II** (4 points):
- a EDPROF 693 Investigation in Mathematics Education
  - or
  - b EDPROF 692 Research Project and 2 further points chosen from those listed in Part I.
- 6 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Head of School of Education.

**Investigation in Mathematics Education**

- 7
- a The Investigation must relate directly to some aspect of the practice of Mathematics Education.
  - b The topic is to be approved by the Senate or its representative.
  - c The Investigation is to be supervised by a member of the academic staff of The University of Auckland approved by the Senate or its representative.

- d The written report resulting from the Investigation is to be submitted within 12 months of its commencement, provided that this period may be extended by the Senate or its representative in exceptional circumstances.

#### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999. The 1996 regulations for the Diploma in Mathematics Education were thereby repealed.

---

## Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
- a (i) have completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - or
  - (ii) have completed a professional qualification in teaching approved by the Senate or its representative as equivalent in any particular case
  - or
  - (iii) have attained a high level of practical experience in the teaching profession approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and
- b (i) be currently teaching
  - or
  - (ii) have had three years of teaching experience
- and
- c have attained a level of competence approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case as being sufficient to enable the student to perform satisfactorily in the programme.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of Part I and Part II. A student must pass at least 8 points from Part I before taking Part II.
- 4 **Part I** consists of courses with a total value of 12 points chosen with the approval of the Senate or its representative, as follows:
- a 4 points from CHEM 110, 120, BIOSCI 101, 104, GEOLOGY 110, 111, PHYSICS 102, 120 and other courses listed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science with the approval of the relevant Heads of Departments
  - b 4 points from EDUC 382 or other courses in Education with the approval of the Head of School of Education
  - c 4 points from other courses in Science or Education as approved by the Head of School of Education.
- 5 **Part II** consists of EDPROF 694 Investigation in Science Education (2 points).
- a The investigation must relate directly to some aspect of the practice of Science Education.
  - b The topic must be approved by the Senate or its representative.
  - c The written report resulting from the investigation is to be submitted within 12 months of its commencement provided that this period may be extended by the Senate or its representative in exceptional circumstances.
- 6 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Head of School of Education.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996. The 1992 regulations for the Diploma in Science Education were thereby repealed.

**Graduate Diploma in Operations Research – GradDipOR**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for any Bachelor's degree  
or
  - (ii) attained an equivalent level of practical experience in the operations research profession as approved by the Senate or its representative
- and
- b attained a level of technical competence in Operations Research equivalent to at least Parts I and II of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering or Stage II Commerce or Science courses, to the approval of the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a coherent programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment, unless the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of the following:
- a at least 6 points from elective courses listed in the Regulations to the Degrees of Master of Engineering, Master of Science and Master of Commerce, excluding any project or thesis courses.
  - b up to 8 points from:
    - (i) ENGSCI 787 Project X
    - (ii) ENGGEN 611 Case Studies in Operations Research
    - (iii) courses in Operations Research listed for Parts III and IV listed in the Regulations to the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering or at Stage III in the Regulations to the Degrees of Bachelor of Science or Bachelor of Commerce, other than project work.
- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the Board of Studies or its representative.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 1996 regulations for the Diploma in Operations Research were thereby repealed.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Arts Management – PGDipArtsMgt**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for any Bachelor's degree, and have had at least two years of work experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - b had not less than five years' work experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of:

- a **Part I** (6 points):  
BUSADMIN 702 Accounting for Decision-makers  
BUSADMIN 712 Leadership and Organization
  - or  
BUSADMIN 713 Managing People  
MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers
  - b **Part II** (6 points):  
ARTSMGT 702 The Arts Milieu  
ARTSMGT 703 The Economics of the Arts  
ARTSMGT 704 Special Issues in Arts Administration
  - c **Part III** (2 points):  
ARTSMGT 705 Special Project
- 4 To be eligible for the award of the diploma a student must:
- a complete practical work to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative, and attend such workshops as required
  - and
  - b pass, or be credited with a pass in, each of the courses specified in Regulation 3.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2000 regulations for the Graduate Diploma in Arts Management were thereby repealed.

## The University of Auckland Tertiary Foundation Certificate

*(formerly Wellesley Programme)*

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:

- 1 a be a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident of New Zealand
- and
- b (i) have completed Year 12 at a New Zealand secondary school or its equivalent at least one calendar year prior to applying for entry
- or
- (ii) in special circumstances be eligible for Special Admission to the University
- and
- c completed a satisfactory interview with the Coordinator and tutors of the Foundation Programme or nominee.

#### Duration and Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled in the Certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and complete courses to the value of 14 points. In exceptional circumstances part-time enrolment may be approved.
- b The requirements of The University of Auckland Tertiary Foundation Certificate are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 At least 2 points and up to 4 points from: ENGLISH 91W, 92W, ESOL 10W, 20W  
At least 2 points from: MATHS 91W, 92W or 93W  
Up to 4 points from: BIOSCI 91W, CHEM 91W, GEOG 91W, HISTORY 91W, PHYSICS 91W  
Up to 8 points from: BIOSCI 92W, CHEM 92W, GEOG 92W, HISTORY 92W, MATHS 92W or 94W, PHYSICS 92W

#### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances students who have a University entrance qualification may be permitted to include one Stage I course in Semester 2 with the approval of the Director of the Foundation Programme or nominee.

#### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2002 regulations for The University of Auckland Tertiary Foundation Certificate were thereby repealed.

---

## Regulations – Conjoint Degrees

237 Conjoint Degrees

### Schedule of Requirements for Conjoint Degrees Combinations

238	BA/BCom
238	BA/BE
239	BA/BE d(Tchg)
239	BA/BFA
239	BA/BHSc
239	BA/BMus
240	BA/BProp
240	BA/BSc
240	BA/BTheol
241	BA/LLB
241	BA/LLB(Hons)
241	BCom/BE
241	BCom/BHSc
242	BCom/BMus
242	BCom/BProp
242	BCom/BSc
243	BCom/LLB
243	BCom/LLB(Hons)
244	BE/BProp
244	BE/BSc
244	BE/LLB
244	BE/LLB(Hons)
244	BE d(Tchg)/BSc
245	BHSc/LLB
245	BHSc/LLB(Hons)
245	BMus/BSc
245	BMus/BTheol
246	BProp/BSc
246	BProp/LLB
246	BProp/LLB(Hons)
247	BSc/BTheol
247	BSc/LLB
247	BSc/LLB(Hons)

# REGULATIONS – CONJOINT DEGREES

## Conjoint Degrees

*The regulations for these conjoint degrees combinations are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### General Provisions

- 1 A student whose academic record is of a sufficiently high standard may, with the permission of the Senate or its representative, be admitted to conjoint enrolment in any of the following combinations of degrees:
 

BA/BCom	BCom/LLB(Hons)
BA/BE	BE/BProp
BA/BEd(Tchg)	BE/BSc
BA/BFA	BE/LLB
BA/BHSc	BE/LLB(Hons)
BA/BMus	BEd(Tchg)/BSc
BA/BProp	BHSc/LLB
BA/BSc	BHSc/LLB(Hons)
BA/BTheol	BMus/BSc
BA/LLB	BMus/BTheol
BA/LLB(Hons)	BProp/BSc
BCom/BE	BProp/LLB
BCom/BHSc	BProp/LLB(Hons)
BCom/BMus	BSc/BTheol
BCom/BProp	BSc/LLB
BCom/BSc	BSc/LLB(Hons)
BCom/LLB	
- 2 Except as otherwise specified in these regulations, each student's programme is to be governed by the regulations for each of the component degrees.
- 3 Only when all the requirements for both component degrees have been satisfied may the two degrees be conferred upon the student.

### Admission

- 4 Admission to a conjoint degrees combination may be at initial enrolment, or after the student has passed or been credited with not more than 32 points for either component degree, but the student must not have graduated in either of the component degrees.
- 5
  - a A student for a conjoint degrees combination must gain admission to each of the component degrees
  - and
  - b achieve a standard equivalent to a Grade Point Equivalent (GPE) of at least 3.7, except for the Bachelor of Engineering which requires a GPE of at least 5.5, in the last year of full-time study.

### Continuation

- 6 In order to continue in a conjoint degrees combination, a student needs to achieve a Grade Point Average (GPA) of at least 3.5 each year, except for the Bachelor of Engineering which requires a GPA of 4.0 each year.

### Approval

- 7 As a condition of approval, the Senate or its representative may require that a student include in a conjoint programme:
  - a a specified major subject or specialization
  - b specified elective courses.

### Duration and Total Points Requirements

- 8 The duration of a conjoint degrees combination is determined by the sum of the points required for each of the component degrees as set out in the Schedule of Requirements in these regulations.

### Suspension

- 9 A student may in any year totally suspend study for both component degrees of a conjoint degrees combination.

**Additional Component Degrees/Diplomas**

- 10 a If a student has satisfied the requirements of one (but not both) of the component degrees and would be eligible to have that degree conferred, the relevant Dean may approve the suspension of enrolment for the conjoint degree to allow the student to enrol for a relevant honours or Master's degree or diploma. In that case the total number of points passed must satisfy the regulations specified for that programme.
- b With the approval of the relevant deans, a student who suspends conjoint study to pursue a graduate programme may complete the conjoint degrees combination provided they have not graduated with the completed component degree in the meantime.

**Graduation**

- 11 A student must graduate in all components of the conjoint degrees combination in one or more parts of the same ceremony.  
*Note: Graduation in one component of the conjoint degrees combination constitutes a discontinuation of the conjoint degrees.*

**Variations**

- 12 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 13 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004. The 2000 regulations for the Conjoint Degrees were thereby repealed.

**Schedule of Requirements for Conjoint Degrees Combinations**

*The following are the specific requirements for conjoint degrees combinations:*

**BA/BCom**

- 14 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BCom combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II. This subject is not to be the same as the major in the BCom.
- b The BCom component of the conjoint BA/BCom combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) 4 points selected from MATHS 108, INFOSYS 110, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.

**BA/BE**

- 15 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BE combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The BE component of the conjoint BA/BE combination consists of at least 48 points in a specialization taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the specialization for the BE except for:
- (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.

**BA/BEd(Tchg)**

*City campus enrolments in the BA/BEd(Tchg) are suspended for 2005. Prospective students should contact the Faculty of Education for further advice.*

- 16 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BEd(Tchg) combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 16 points in a subject other than Education, including 6 points above Stage II
  - (iii) at least 8 points in a second subject other than Education, including at least 4 points above Stage I
  - (iv) if accompanying the Primary Specialization for the BEd (Tchg),  
2 points: Maori 107
- b The BEd(Tchg) component of the conjoint BA/BEd(Tchg) combination consists of at least 32 points in either Primary Specialization or Secondary Specialization.
- (i) **Primary Specialization**
    - (a) 6 points: EDPROF 100, 210, 310
    - (b) 12 points: EDCURR 102-104, 106-108
    - (c) 10 points: EDCURR 202-204, 206, 209
    - (d) 4 points from: EDUC 302-384, EDCURR 675-678
  - (ii) **Secondary Specialization**
    - (a) 8 points: EDPROF 101, 211, 622, 625
    - (b) 10 points: MAORI 107, EDUC 111, 112, 225, 283
    - (c) 6 points from: EDUC 302-384
    - (d) at least 8 points from: EDCURR 601, 603-607, 611-613, 619, 620, 622, 623, 626-632, 634, 635, 639-641, 645, 647-652, 663-668, 670-672, 675-677, 679-682, 690

**BA/BFA**

- 17 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BFA combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in courses from Art History
  - (ii) at least 4 points in each of two other subjects
  - (iii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iv) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b At least 44 points in Fine Arts courses from the schedule to the BFA Regulations, as follows:
- (i) 10 points: FINEARTS 100 Studio 1
  - (ii) 10 points: FINEARTS 200 Studio 2
  - (iii) 10 points: FINEARTS 300 Studio 3
  - (iv) 14 points: FINEARTS 400 Studio 4A
- c Each Studio course for the Fine Arts component must normally be completed before enrolment in the following part.

**BA/BHSc**

- 18 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BHSc consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) 4 points: STATS 102, PHIL 102 or HLTHPSYC 102
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including at least 6 points above Stage II
  - (iv) at least 4 points in two subjects
- b The BHSc component of the conjoint BA/BHSc consists of at least 32 points from the following:
- (i) 12 points: COMHLTH 101, 102, HUMANBIO 111, 122, 142, STATS 102
  - (ii) 12 points: MPHEALTH 201, COMHLTH 203, 204, 205, SOCSCIPH 200, 300
  - (iii) 8 points from: COMHLTH 206, 207, 301-305, BEHAVSCI 202, 203, 301, 302

**BA/BMus**

- 19 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BMus combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of three subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.

- b The BA component of the conjoint BA/BMus combination is not to include more than 4 points from the subject Music.
- c The BMus component of the conjoint BA/BMus combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BMus Regulations and is to include:
  - (i) MUSIC 102, 103, 144, 201, 202, 203
  - (ii) at least 4 points from MUSIC 241–244, 246, 247
  - (iii) at least 6 points above Stage II in one subject listed in the BMus Regulations.

**BA/BProp**

- 20 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points, and is to include:
  - (i) ECON 101, 111
  - (ii) at least 4 points from 610.171 or COMLAW 101; 600.171, STATS 108
  - (iii) at least 20 points above Stage I, taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations
  - (iv) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II, taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations.
- b The BProp component of the conjoint BA/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) PROPERTY 102 or 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 12 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp. If an appropriate Statistics course is completed for the BA component, then an additional 2 points from Part III of the BProp is to be substituted for STATS 108.

**BA/BSc**

- 21 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BA/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialization in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc Regulations of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
  - (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialization as defined in the BSc Schedule. The subject major is not to be the same as the one forming the major in the BA. For the purpose of this regulation, Applied Mathematics, Mathematics and Statistics are to be considered as one subject.

**BA/BTheol**

- 22 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The BTheol component of the conjoint BA/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BTheol Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) at least 2 points from BSTHEO 101, 102
  - (ii) BSTHEO 141
  - (iii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies
  - (iv) CHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
  - (v) at least 2 points from CHTHEO 142, 145
  - (vi) at least 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History
  - (vii) 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (viii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (ix) at least 2 points in Theology and Maori Experience or Theology and New Zealand Culture
  - (x) at least 16 points in one subject, including at least 6 points above Stage II
  - (xi) at least 18 points above Stage I.

**BA/LLB**

- 23 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/LLB combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BA/LLB combination consists of at least 44 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV

**BA/LLB(Hons)**

- 24 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BA/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 341-399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation

**BCom/BE**

- 25 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BE combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, INFOSYS 110, MGMT 101, STATS 108
  - (ii) a student may substitute one or more courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iii) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom. This subject is not to be the same as the major in the BE.
- b The BE component of the conjoint BCom/BE combination consists of at least 48 points in a specialization taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the specialization for the BE except for:
- (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.

**BCom/BHSc**

- 26 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BHSc consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) 4 points selected from STATS 102 or 108, and INFOSYS 110
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major

- (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The BHSc component of the conjoint BCom/BHSc consists of at least 32 points from the following:
  - (i) 12 points: COMHLTH 101, 102, HUMANBIO 111, 122, 142, STATS 102
  - (ii) 12 points: MPHEALTH 201, COMHLTH 203-206, SOCSICIPH 200
  - (iii) 8 points from: COMHLTH 207, 301, 303, 304, 305, SOCSICIPH 300

**BCom/BMus**

- 27 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BMus combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available to the BCom.
- b The BMus component of the conjoint BCom/BMus combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BMus Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) MUSIC 102, 103, 144, 201, 202, 203
  - (ii) at least 4 points from MUSIC 241-244, 246-247
  - (iii) at least 6 points above Stage II in one subject listed in the BMus Regulations.

**BCom/BProp**

- 28 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The BProp component of the conjoint BCom/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) PROPERTY 102 or 111, and 141
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 14 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp.

**BCom/BSc**

- 29 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research,

- provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
- (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BCom/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialization in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc Regulations of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialization as defined in the BSc Schedule. The subject major is not to be the same as the one forming the major in the BCom
  - (iii) at least 2 points from courses in a majoring subject, whose courses are not listed in the schedule to the BCom.

**BCom/LLB**

- 30 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/LLB combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:30
- (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses including not more than 2 points in Commercial Law, from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BCom/LLB combination consists of at least 44 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV

**BCom/LLB(Hons)**

- 31 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses including not more than 2 points in Commercial Law, from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BCom/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 341-399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation

**BE/BProp**

- 32 a The BE component of the conjoint BE/BProp combination consists of at least 48 points in a specialization taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the specialization for the BE except for:
- (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.
- b The BProp component of the conjoint BE/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) ECON 101, PROPERTY 102 or 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 10 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp. If an appropriate Statistics course is completed for the BE component, then an additional 2 points from Part III of the BProp is to be substituted for STATS 108.

**BE/BSc**

- 33 a The BE component of the conjoint BE/BSc combination consists of at least 48 points in a specialization taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the specialization for the BE except for:
- (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BE/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialization in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialization as defined in the BSc Schedule.

**BE/LLB**

- 34 a The BE component of the conjoint BE/LLB combination consists of at least 48 points in a specialization taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the specialization for the BE except for:
- (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BE/LLB combination consists of at least 44 points in Law courses taken from the schedule to the LLB Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV

**BE/LLB(Hons)**

- 35 a The BE component of the conjoint BE/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 48 points in a specialization taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the specialization for the BE except for:
- (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.
- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BE/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses taken from the schedules to the LLB and LLB(Hons) Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 341-399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation

**BEd(Tchg)/BSc**

*City campus enrolments in the BEd(Tchg)/BSc are suspended for 2005. Prospective students should contact the Faculty of Education for further advice.*

- 36 a The BEd(Tchg) component of the conjoint BEd(Tchg)/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in a Secondary Specialization, and is to include:

**Secondary Specialization**

- (i) 8 points: EDPROF 101, 211, 622, 625
  - (ii) 10 points: MAORI 107, EDUC 111, 112, 225, 283
  - (iii) 2 points from: EDUC 302-384
  - (iv) at least 4 points from EDUC 302-384
  - (v) at least 8 points from: EDCURR 604, 607, 608, 625, 628, 631, 636-638, 645, 648, 652, 666-668, 671, 672, 675-677, 690
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BEd(Tchg)/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialization in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc Regulations of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I, including at least 6 points from the subjects Biological Sciences, Chemistry, Geography, Applied Mathematics, Mathematics, Physics, Sport and Exercise Science, Statistics
  - (ii) at least 6 points at Stage III in a subject major or a specialization as defined in the BSc Schedule.

**BHSc/LLB**

- 37 a The BHSc component of the conjoint BHSc/LLB consists of at least 32 points from the following:
- (i) 10 points: COMHLTH 101, 102, HUMANBIO 111, 122, 142
  - (ii) 12 points: MPHEALTH 201, COMHLTH 203, 204, 205, SOCSCIPH 200, 300
  - (iii) 10 points from: COMHLTH 206, 207, 301, 303, 305, BEHAVSCI 202, 203, 301, 302, MGCARE 201, 301, 302
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BHSc/LLB consists of at least 44 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV

**BHSc/LLB(Hons)**

- 38 a The BHSc component of the conjoint BHSc/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 32 points and is to include:
- (i) 10 points: COMHLTH 101,102, HUMANBIO 111, 122, 142
  - (ii) 12 points: MPHEALTH 201, COMHLTH 203, 204, 205, SOCSCIPH 200, 300
  - (iii) 10 points from: COMHLTH 206, 301, 303, BEHAVSCI 202, 203, 301, 302, MGCARE 201, 301, 302
- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BHSc/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 341-399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation

**BMus/BSc**

- 39 a The BMus component of the conjoint BMus/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BMus Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) MUSIC 102, 103, 144, 201, 202, 203
  - (ii) at least 4 points from MUSIC 241-244, 246, 247
  - (iii) at least 6 points above Stage II in one subject listed in the BMus Regulations.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BMus/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialization in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialization as defined in the BSc Schedule.

**BMus/BTheol**

- 40 a The BMus component of the conjoint BMus/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BMus Regulations, and is to include:

- (i) MUSIC 102, 103, 144, 201, 202, 203
  - (ii) at least 4 points from MUSIC 241–244, 246, 247
  - (iii) at least 6 points above Stage II in one subject listed in the BMus Regulations.
- b The BTheol component of the conjoint BMus/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BTheol Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 2 points from BSTHEO 101, 102
  - (ii) BSTHEO 141
  - (iii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies
  - (iv) CHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
  - (v) at least 2 points from CHTHEO 142, 145
  - (vi) at least 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History
  - (vii) 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (viii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (ix) at least 2 points in Theology and Maori Experience or Theology and New Zealand Culture
  - (x) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II
  - (xi) at least 18 points above Stage I.

**BProp/BSc**

- 41 a The BProp component of the conjoint BProp/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) ECON 101, PROPERTY 102 or 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 10 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp. If an appropriate Statistics course is completed for the BSc component, then an additional 2 points from Part III of the BProp is to be substituted for STATS 108.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BProp/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialization in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialization as defined in the BSc Schedule.

**BProp/LLB**

- 42 a The BProp component of the conjoint BProp/LLB combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp, and is to include:
- (i) ECON 101, PROPERTY 102 or 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 10 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BProp/LLB combination consists of at least 44 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV

**BProp/LLB(Hons)**

- 43 a The BProp component of the conjoint BProp/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp, and is to include:
- (i) ECON 101, PROPERTY 102 or 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 10 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp.
- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BProp/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 341–399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation

**BSc/BTheol**

- 44 a The BSc component of the conjoint BSc/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialization in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialization as defined in the BSc Schedule.
- b The BTheol component of the conjoint BSc/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BTheol Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 2 points from BSTHEO 101, 102
  - (ii) BSTHEO 141
  - (iii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies
  - (iv) CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
  - (v) at least 2 points from CTHTHEO 142, 145
  - (vi) at least 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History
  - (vii) 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (viii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (ix) at least 2 points in Theology and Maori Experience or Theology and New Zealand Culture
  - (x) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II
  - (xi) at least 18 points above Stage I.

**BSc/LLB**

- 45 a The BSc component of the conjoint BSc/LLB combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialization in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialization as defined in the BSc Schedule.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BSc/LLB combination consists of at least 44 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV

**BSc/LLB(Hons)**

- 46 a The BSc component of the conjoint BSc/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialization in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialization as defined in the BSc Schedule.
- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BSc/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 331-399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation

---

## Regulations – Other Programmes

249 Certificate of Proficiency – COP

249 Transitional Certificate – TransCert

### **Foundation Studies**

249 The Foundation Certificate in English for Academic Purposes – FCertEAP

250 New Start for Adults

251 The University of Auckland Certificate in Foundation Studies

251 English as a Second Language

252 **Continuing Education**

---

## REGULATIONS – OTHER PROGRAMMES

---

### Certificate of Proficiency – COP

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 Admission to the programme for this certificate is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

#### Structure and Content

- 2
  - a Any course that is available for any programme may be taken for a Certificate of Proficiency, provided any prerequisite, corequisite or other conditions are met or the Senate or its representative has, in approving the enrolment, waived those requirements.
  - b Provided any prerequisite, corequisite or other conditions for that diploma or degree are met, a course passed for the purpose of obtaining a Certificate of Proficiency may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, be subsequently reassigned to a diploma or degree other than a Master's degree, in conformity with the Credit Regulations.
  - c Where a course has already been credited to a programme a student may enrol again for that course, or for another course whose content is substantially similar, for a Certificate of Proficiency. Such a course, when passed for Certificate of Proficiency, may not be reassigned to any programme.

#### Commencement

- 3 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the previous regulations.
- 

### Transitional Certificate – TransCert

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for a degree of this University or other degree approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 The programme consists of such course or courses at undergraduate level in a subject or subjects as the Senate or its representative may require or approve.
- 3 The purpose of this programme is to fulfil the requirements for entry to a specific graduate degree, graduate or postgraduate diploma approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 4 To be eligible for the award of a Transitional Certificate a student has to enrol for the graduate qualification for which the prerequisites were met by taking this programme.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the previous regulations.
- 

## FOUNDATION STUDIES

---

### The Foundation Certificate in English for Academic Purposes – FCertEAP

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student must:
  - a be an international student permitted to study in New Zealand  
and
  - b have obtained an English language proficiency score of not less than 5.0 (Upper

Intermediate) in the International English Language Testing System (IELTS), or its equivalent in another such English Language test recognised by The University of Auckland

and

- c (i) have received a conditional offer of admission to The University of Auckland or another tertiary education institution in New Zealand
- or
- (ii) have obtained a recognized high school qualification in another country which entitles the student to qualify for ad eundem admission to a New Zealand University.

#### Duration

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow an approved full-time programme of the equivalent of one semester.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of two courses:  
Upper Intermediate Academic English  
Advanced Academic English
- 4 Progression to Advanced Academic English will be based on satisfactory participation and the achievement of a pass in assessment tasks in the Upper Intermediate Academic English course. Students who fail Upper Intermediate Academic English will be required to repeat this course.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Academic Board or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2004.

## New Start for Adults

This range of pre-degree courses prepares adults who are considering degree study. The courses are part-time and run for 10-12 weeks. Fees are kept as low as possible as part of the commitment of New Start to equal educational opportunity. No previous academic qualifications are required. Students must be Australian or New Zealand citizens or New Zealand permanent residents, and must have a good standard of English.

### New Start for Commerce

A 12-week modular, evening programme for adults, providing a comprehensive introduction to Mathematics, Accounting, and Economics. A grade of B or above on two of three modules guarantees adults entry into the Bachelor of Commerce degree. The course is also a good preparation for the GradDipBus or the BBIM programme. This course is offered on the City Campus only.

### New Start Arts for BA, BTheol, LLB, BEd(Tchg)

A 10-week programme (two hours per week) providing a realistic introduction to first-year degree study. All work is set and graded at The University of Auckland Stage I level.

New Start Arts includes study skills and 12 subject lectures (such as Political Studies, Sociology, Psychology, Philosophy), assignments with realistic feedback and a final exam. Students gain information on the structure of university degrees, and an insight into the standard of work expected.

The grade achieved on New Start provides the University with criteria to evaluate applications to limited entry courses. An overall pass of 'A' guarantees adults entry into the LLB degree. Educational guidance is an integral part of New Start and students are offered assistance in planning their ongoing programmes.

New Start Arts is offered at three venues: The University of Auckland City Campus, Manukau Institute of Technology and Avondale College, West Auckland.

### Takiri Te Ata

A pre-entry programme for Maori adults which prepares them for the BA or BEd(Tchg) degree.

### GroundWork

An in-depth preparation for New Start Arts, focusing on English grammar and sentence structure. GroundWork is designed to give men and women the confidence to study, as well as the skills.

### Study-skills Workshops

Alongside New Start are a wide range of study-skills workshops such as: Essay Writing, Reading Skills, Computer Skills for Essay Writing, and Statistics for Beginners. These workshops are offered in February and July. 'Study Skills for Summer School' – a one-day workshop – is offered in December.

### Further Information

Further information on New Start programmes can be obtained from the New Start Office, Room 220, The Clock Tower, City Campus, phone 09 373 7599 ext. 82981, e-mail: [newstart@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:newstart@auckland.ac.nz), or website: [www.auckland.ac.nz/newstart](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/newstart)

---

## The University of Auckland Certificate in Foundation Studies

The University of Auckland New Zealand Foundation Studies Programme is intended to prepare students whose first language is not English for admission to the University of Auckland in particular and to New Zealand universities in general. The programme will include courses in Accounting, Economics, Calculus, Statistics, Chemistry, Physics, English Language, Computer Skills and Study and Learning skills. Suitably qualified students who meet the minimum entrance requirements upon entry to the Programme may also include English Language Acquisition courses offered by the University of Auckland.

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:
  - a satisfy the Academic Board that they have completed secondary schooling to at least the equivalent of NCEA Level 2.
  - b have a level of English language proficiency equivalent to a score of 5.0 in the International English Language Testing System (IELTS).

### Duration

- 2 Students enrolled for this certificate have to follow an approved programme of at least one semester.

### Structure and Content

- 3 a The programme consists of: English Language, Computer Skills, Study and Learning Skills, and at least four courses chosen from the following list of subjects:
  - Accounting
  - Economics
  - Calculus
  - Statistics
  - Chemistry
  - Physics
  - or other approved NCEA Level 3 subjects
  - and
  - (i) pass at least four of these courses
  - and
  - (ii) pass or have passed an IELTS examination at a level approved by the Academic Board with an overall score of at least 6.0 in the academic module,
- b Students must complete all required class work and written examinations which will be similar in standard and content to NCEA Level 3.
- c Each student's personal programme must be approved by the Academic Board.

### Admission to University

- 4 a Students who satisfactorily complete the Certificate in Foundation Studies will satisfy the minimum requirements for entry to the University.
- b Students who complete up to four points in University courses may apply to have those points credited towards a degree or diploma at the University.

---

## English as a Second Language

The Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics offers courses for International students and New Zealand residents whose first language is not English, and who are studying at The University of Auckland. Courses offered include both credit and non-credit courses. The non-credit courses offered in 2005 are: ESOL 10E which is offered in the first semester, and ESOL 20E which is offered in the second semester. Students may take one or both of these courses to help strengthen their academic English proficiency.

At both levels, the courses offer students four hours per week, across the semester, of academic English language support without the added pressure of assignments and examinations. The aims of the courses are to help students to improve academic English skills appropriate to their requirements. These include listening and participating in small-group discussion and seminar presentations; note-taking, intensive, extensive and critical reading; writing essays and assignments, summaries, reading and writing research reports, as well as focusing on relevant grammar knowledge and vocabulary development.

Further information may be obtained from the Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics, Faculty of Arts. Phone 09 373 7599 ext. 86588, or email [ms.white@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:ms.white@auckland.ac.nz)

---

## CONTINUING EDUCATION

---

The Centre for Continuing Education, located within the Faculty of Arts, takes a leadership role in providing the public with access to the University's rich scholarship and research.

The Centre offers over 350 courses each year in humanities, sciences, music and the social sciences. The courses are open to all adults and are taught in various formats: day and evening lecture series, day and weekend seminars, and summer and winter workshops for writers and artists. In the Dual Enrolment programme Continuing Education students may join undergraduate students in some courses and there is an annual Winter Week on Campus which is a concentrated series of lectures covering a wide range of topics. There is a growing programme of short courses focussing on business and professional development.

The Centre also offers Educational Travel opportunities to New Zealanders travelling overseas and hosts residential short courses for groups of students from several countries.

A Conference and Seminar Administration Service is available to arrange and administer local, national and international conferences and seminars. This service is available to faculties and professional bodies for events held at a wide range of venues, as well as on campus.

For further information phone 0800 UNICONTED (0800 864 266), or email [conted@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:conted@auckland.ac.nz). Website: [www.cce.auckland.ac.nz](http://www.cce.auckland.ac.nz)

---

## Regulations – Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees

Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy – PhD	254
The Degree of Doctor of Literature – LittD	263
The Degree of Doctor of Science – DSc	263
The Degree of Doctor of Laws – LLD	264
The Degree of Doctor of Engineering – DEng	265
Procedure for the Examination of Higher Degrees	265

---

## DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND HIGHER DEGREES

---

In addition to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, the University offers higher doctorates in Literature, Science, Laws, and Engineering. As at other universities, these are primarily designed for graduates of the University who have subsequently published original work that has over a period given them authoritative international standing in their field. The higher doctorate is thus to be seen as a recognition of real distinction in one of these areas of study. It will be awarded rarely and after rigorous examination of a substantial and significant corpus of material. Candidates intending to submit for examination are advised to obtain the notes *Guidance for Candidates* from the Registrar, The University of Auckland, before submitting.

---

## REGULATIONS

---

### Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy – PhD

#### Preamble

- 1 a Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy are required to pursue an approved programme of advanced study and research as enrolled students of the University. The demands of PhD research require a significant commitment by candidates in terms of time and resources, and candidates are normally expected to be working full-time on their doctoral research.
- b It is expected that this programme will usually be completed within three to four years of full-time candidature. Part-time candidature may also be permitted.
- c Upon completion of an approved programme of research, the PhD will be awarded to a candidate who:
  - (i) submits a thesis which meets the requirements set out in Clause 1d
  - and
  - (ii) satisfies the examiners in an oral examination and any other examination that may be required on the subject of the thesis and on relevant matters in the field or fields to which the subject belongs.
- d The PhD degree is awarded for a formal and systematic exposition of a coherent programme of advanced research work carried out over the period of registration for the Degree which in the opinion of the examiners and the Board of Graduate Studies satisfies all of the following criteria:
  - (i) to be an original contribution to knowledge or understanding in its field
  - and
  - (ii) to meet internationally recognized standards for such work
  - and
  - (iii) to demonstrate a knowledge of the literature relevant to the subject and the field or fields to which the subject belongs, and the ability to exercise critical and analytical judgement of it
  - and
  - (iv) to be satisfactory in its methodology, in the quality and coherence of its written expression, and in its scholarly presentation and format.
- e PhD theses may not exceed 100,000 words or 250 pages in total without the permission of the Board of Graduate Studies.
- f Where a thesis includes published research papers and/or case studies, published or unpublished, these must be fully integrated into the subject matter and text of the thesis and be listed in the bibliography.
- g All research for the thesis is to be conducted in accordance with The University of Auckland Guidelines for the Conduct of Research.

#### Eligibility

- 2 Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy are required to have:
  - a (i) Completed the requirements for the award of a Master's degree with First Class or Second Class (Division I) Honours at The University of Auckland
  - or
  - (ii) completed the requirements for the award of a Bachelor's degree with First Class or Second Class (Division I) Honours at The University of Auckland
  - or

(iii) completed all the taught course work requirements for a Master's degree of The University of Auckland at the equivalent of First Class or Second Class (Division I) Honours level, and have made substantial progress towards completion of the Master's research thesis

or

(iv) completed the requirements for the award of a qualification that the Board of Graduate Studies considers to be equivalent to a Master's degree with First Class or Second Class (Division I) Honours or a Bachelor's degree with First Class or Second Class (Division I) Honours from The University of Auckland

and

b demonstrated an ability to pursue doctoral-level research.

c In exceptional circumstances, the Board of Graduate Studies may consider for registration a person whose qualifications do not meet the requirements of Clause 2a, if it is satisfied that the person's experience in research and the results of that experience are so outstanding that the person is likely to have the ability to complete the degree successfully.

## Admission

3

### Admission Essential

a Every candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy must have applied for admission and been admitted to The University of Auckland.

## Registration

4

### Registration Essential

Every candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy must be registered by the Board of Graduate Studies in accordance with this Clause 4.

### Provisional Registration

Registration is provisional for all candidates for the first 12 months following the Date of Registration as defined in Clause 4k of this Statute.

### Application for Registration

Application for registration must be made to the Head of Teaching Department, Division or School, Chair of the Board of Studies or Director of the Research Centre or Institute ('the Head of Department') in the discipline in which the candidate is to be primarily registered.

### Part-time Registration

Candidates who are in full-time employment in a research supportive environment at the time of first registration, and who expect to continue in that employment situation, may apply to register as part-time students.

e An applicant with demanding family responsibilities which prevent attending the University and participating in research activities on a full-time basis may apply to be registered as a part-time student.

### Non-resident Candidature

Where an intending candidate is not resident in Auckland, the Head of Department must provide the Board of Graduate Studies with evidence that the candidate will be provided with research resources and supervisory support at the location in which the research is to be carried out.

### Concurrent Registration

In exceptional cases a candidate may be permitted to enrol concurrently in a second degree in order to complete that degree, provided it is not the qualifying degree for entry into the PhD programme.

### Role of the Head of Department

The Head of Department will make a recommendation in writing to the Faculty Associate Dean (Postgraduate) as to

(i) whether the candidate:

(a) meets the eligibility requirements

and

(b) has a preliminary research proposal capable of meeting the requirements of Clause 1d of this Statute;

and

(c) has an appropriate set of goals for the provisional year of registration, agreed to by both the candidate and main supervisor.

and

if the Head of Department is of that opinion, then:

(ii) whether their Department (in conjunction with any other Department where the

field of study is interdisciplinary, or other university in the case of jointly awarded degrees) accepts the responsibility for:

(a) making satisfactory supervision arrangements over the whole course of the PhD

and

(b) providing adequate research resources and facilities

and

(iii) whether the field of study is interdisciplinary, and if so, which other Departments will be involved. In these cases, the Heads of any other Departments involved are required to endorse the recommendation

and

(iv) nominate suitably qualified supervisors and, where appropriate, advisers

and

(v) in the case of a candidate in a Department of Languages and Literatures, or a candidate for whom joint registration with another university in a non-English speaking country is proposed, a recommendation as to the language in which the thesis is to be submitted and examined.

**i Presentation in Te Reo Maori**

Candidates wishing to present and defend a thesis in Maori must, before applying to the Head of Department to be registered, obtain the permission of the Pro Vice-Chancellor (Maori). When such permission is granted, the Pro Vice-Chancellor (Maori) will make a recommendation in writing to the Board of Graduate Studies as to:

(i) whether the candidate has adequate fluency and literacy in te reo Maori in the subject area of the thesis

and

(ii) the likelihood of being able to find appropriately qualified examiners for the thesis.

**j Role of the Board of Graduate Studies**

On receipt of the recommendation of the Faculty Associate Dean (Postgraduate), the Board of Graduate Studies will decide whether or not to register the candidate and, if so, the conditions which will apply to the registration. The Committee may call for any further information it considers relevant before making its decision.

**k Date of Registration**

Registration takes effect on the date (the 'Date of Registration') approved by the Board of Graduate Studies. Where a candidate has already started supervised research on the PhD topic the Date of Registration may be backdated by not more than six months. For a candidate transferring from a Master's degree under Clause 2a(iii), the Date of Registration may be backdated not earlier than the date on which the course work component of the Master's degree was completed.

**l Supervision**

The Board of Graduate Studies will appoint the supervisors for each candidate. The supervisors must be actively involved in research in the candidate's general field, and must either hold a doctoral degree or be appropriately qualified and experienced. Persons who are themselves candidates for the degree of PhD may not be appointed as supervisors, although they may be appointed as advisers.

m For each candidate the Board of Graduate Studies will appoint a suitably qualified main supervisor who takes overall responsibility for the supervision of the candidate and for assistance in the provision of research resources. The main supervisor must be a staff member of The University of Auckland.

n In addition, the Board of Graduate Studies will appoint for each candidate:

(i) at least one suitably qualified co-supervisor

and/or

(ii) an advisory committee or adviser/s.

**o Course Work**

The Board of Graduate Studies may require the candidate to undertake coursework that is considered to be necessary for the successful completion of the programme of research. Such coursework must be completed as part of the provisional registration requirements, will not normally exceed eight points in total and should either be at the postgraduate level or, in special cases, at Stage III level. Candidates must normally pass any such coursework at the grade of at least B+ or its equivalent.

**Reviews of Registration**

5 a **Provisional Goals**

During provisional registration, a candidate must:

(i) achieve the goals prescribed by the Board of Graduate Studies at the commencement of the registration

and

(ii) complete a fully developed research proposal, including a provisional thesis title, a schedule of research, an outline of the thesis structure and a statement of the resources required to complete the research. The research proposal should be submitted for approval to the appropriate postgraduate committee of the Department and/or Faculty in which the candidate is registered. The committee may accept the proposal, or indicate changes needed to the candidate and supervisor(s) and request a resubmission, or it may decline to accept the proposal. It will inform the Head of Department of its decision.

**b Provisional Review**

At the end of the 12 months of provisional registration, the supervisor/s and the Head of Department are to submit a formal report to the Board of Graduate Studies on the progress of the candidate. The report should clearly state whether or not the progress of the candidate has been satisfactory, the goals laid down for the provisional year have been achieved and the candidate's research proposal has been approved according to Clause 5a(ii). The report should include a recommendation that the candidate's registration be:

(i) confirmed

or

(ii) terminated

or

(iii) continued on a provisional basis for no more than six months.

The candidate shall be given an opportunity to make written submissions to the Board of Graduate Studies on the above provisional report.

c Where the recommendation is to confirm the candidate's registration, the report to the Board of Graduate Studies must include a copy of the candidate's full research proposal and provisional thesis title.

**d Annual Review of Registration**

In each year of registration each candidate must pursue a programme of advanced study and research to the satisfaction of the Head of Department and the main supervisor. At the end of each year of registration following the provisional period, the main supervisor, the candidate and the Head of Department are to submit, through the Associate Dean (Postgraduate) of the Faculty, a joint report to the Board of Graduate Studies on the candidate's progress. As part of this report the main supervisor and the Head of Department are to make one of the following recommendations:

(i) that the candidate's registration be continued

or

(ii) that the candidate's registration be continued subject to specified conditions

or

(iii) that the candidate's registration be terminated.

The candidate shall be given an opportunity to make written submissions to the Board of Graduate Studies on the above annual report.

**e Specified Conditions for Registration**

Where a recommendation is made under Clauses 5b(iii) or 5d(ii), the Head of Department will also recommend to the Board of Graduate Studies the specific goals and/or conditions to be met by the candidate and the time in which these are to be completed. At the end of this period the Head of Department and main supervisor will advise the Board of Graduate Studies whether or not these requirements have been met. Registration will terminate if the specified conditions have not been fulfilled to the satisfaction of the Board of Graduate Studies.

**f Recommendation to Terminate**

No decision to terminate registration may be made by Board of Graduate Studies unless the candidate has been notified in writing and given reasonable opportunity to respond.

**Enrolment and Fees**

6 a **Enrolment**

Candidates for the PhD Degree must be enrolled and pay fees in each academic year for which they are registered. Candidates need not pay tuition fees for any period during which their registration is suspended under Clause 7f.

b On enrolment in each academic year every candidate must pay the fee prescribed for that academic year.

c **Refunds**

A candidate who submits a thesis or terminates their registration will receive a refund of one-twelfth of the tuition fee paid for each complete month of the period between the date of submission of the thesis or termination of registration and the end of the academic year for which fees have been paid.

d **Fees Other than Tuition Fees**

Unless otherwise exempted under the relevant regulations, all candidates must pay the prescribed Building Levy and Student Services fees and any other fees as may be prescribed from time to time. There is no refund of these fees.

e **Fees to be Paid before Thesis is Accepted**

No thesis will be accepted for examination unless outstanding fees have been paid for the academic year in which a candidate is registered.

f **Other Fees Payable**

Candidates who enrol for courses other than those required as part of their programme for the PhD Degree must pay the fees prescribed for those courses on enrolment.

**Changes to the Conditions of Registration**

- 7 a The Head of Department may, after consultation with the candidate, make a written recommendation to the Board of Graduate Studies for changes in the conditions of registration for the candidate. The candidate may express his or her written views on the recommendation to the Board of Graduate Studies if he or she wishes. After considering a recommendation from the Head of Department, the Board of Graduate Studies may, after considering any submissions made by the candidate, change the conditions of registration for that candidate.
- b **Absence from the University**  
Where a resident candidate intends to be absent from the University in pursuit of their research for more than two months, supervisors are to submit for approval by the Board of Graduate Studies, through the Head of Department and before the candidate's departure, suitable plans for the supervision of the candidate during their absence.
- c **Changes in Supervision**  
When necessary, the Head of Department is to recommend changes to the supervision of the candidate for approval by the Board of Graduate Studies. This will normally be required when a supervisor is granted leave, resigns or retires.
- d **Change to Part-time Registration**  
Candidates who have been registered full-time for a period of two years may apply to be registered part-time.
- e **Extension of Time for Submission**  
When the Board of Graduate Studies is satisfied that there is sufficient reason, it may extend a candidate's submission date. Before approving an extension of submission time the Board of Graduate Studies will require the candidate, the supervisor(s) and Head of Department to agree on the programme of supervision and schedule of research considered necessary for submission by the new date proposed.
- f **Suspension of Registration**  
Where a candidate is unable to continue with their research programme because of circumstances beyond their control, the Board of Graduate Studies may suspend their registration for a specified period of time. The following conditions apply:
  - (i) The length of time for which a candidate's registration may be suspended will be in multiples of whole calendar months.
  - (ii) The Board of Graduate Studies must be satisfied that any period of suspension will not adversely affect the viability of the candidate's research.
  - (iii) Any period of suspension will be excluded from the calculation of the final submission date.
  - (iv) While registration is suspended, a candidate is exempt from fees and enrolment, and is not entitled to any tuition or supervision, or to the use of any other research resources of the University.
- g **Termination of Registration**  
The Board of Graduate Studies may terminate the registration of any candidate who:
  - (i) fails to enrol for any academic year corresponding to a year of registration
  - or
  - (ii) fails to make payment of any Tuition and Research fees related to the PhD registration
  - or

- (iii) applies to cease being registered  
or
- (iv) has not made satisfactory progress while under provisional registration  
or
- (v) has received an unsatisfactory annual report  
or
- (vi) has not met any conditions specified under Clause 5e  
or
- (vii) has not submitted or re-submitted the thesis in time  
or
- (viii) has had the termination of their registration recommended by a decision of a Disputes Committee constituted pursuant to Clause 10 of this Statute  
or
- (ix) is prohibited under the Disciplinary Statute of the University from enrolling.

Before making a decision to terminate a candidate's registration pursuant to this clause or otherwise, the Board of Graduate Studies will allow the candidate a reasonable opportunity to respond.

## Submission

8

### a **Copies of Thesis**

All candidates are initially required to submit three copies of the thesis to the Graduate Centre. The thesis should have a temporary binding and a statement to examiners as specified in the Guide to Theses and Dissertations.  
(see [www.auckland.ac.nz/docs/sa/postgraduate/download/thesisguide.pdf](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/docs/sa/postgraduate/download/thesisguide.pdf))

### b **Time for Submission**

Unless permitted to do otherwise by the Board of Graduate Studies under Clause 7e, a candidate must normally submit the thesis in not less than three and not more than four years from the Date of Registration if they are full-time students, or not less than six and not more than eight years in the case of candidates who have been registered as part-time students for the whole period of their registration. In the case of candidates who have been permitted to change between full-time and part-time, the submission times will be calculated on a pro rata basis.

### c **Notification of Submission**

One month prior to the expected date of submission, candidates should notify the Graduate Centre in writing of their intention to submit. If the candidate has reason to believe that any person would be unsuitable to serve as an examiner of the thesis on the grounds of conflict of interest, he or she may also submit at this time the name of this person and a statement in writing as to the nature of the conflict of interest to the Graduate Centre.

### d **Declaration as to Originality**

The thesis is to be accompanied by a statutory declaration, signed by the candidate, stating that the thesis is the candidate's own work and that neither the thesis nor any part of it has been submitted or accepted for any other degree or diploma.

- e Where the thesis contains jointly authored research papers, case studies and/or any other work, published or unpublished, the declaration is to state the extent to which the jointly authored material is the candidate's own work. Evidence that all co-authors have approved the inclusion of the joint work must be supplied.

### f **Statement from Supervisors**

When the thesis is submitted, the Graduate Centre will invite a statement from the supervisor(s) regarding the context or outcome of the thesis research. This statement must be endorsed by the Head of Department and the candidate. The Graduate Centre will forward a copy of the statement to the Chair of the Examination Committee for its consideration.

### g **Language of Thesis**

The thesis is to be presented in English unless otherwise approved by the Board of Graduate Studies at the time of first registration of the candidate.

## Examination

9

### a **General provisions**

The Head of Department and/or the Associate Dean (Postgraduate) of the Faculty may nominate another person to the Board of Graduate Studies to be authorized to act in his or her place in all of the provisions of this Clause 9. If either the Head of Department or the Associate Dean (Postgraduate) is a supervisor of the candidate, an alternate must be nominated and appointed.

- b Neither the supervisors nor the candidate may communicate with the examiners regarding the examination at any stage of the examination process, except as specified in this Clause 9.
- c **Nomination of Examiners**  
On notification of submission or intent to submit under clause 8c, the Head of Department will nominate at least two suitably qualified persons to the Board of Graduate Studies for selection as examiners. The nominees should each hold a doctoral degree, or have equivalent expertise and experience, and be expert in the field of study which is the subject of the thesis. At least one nominee should be from outside New Zealand. The examiners may not be staff members of the University or have been involved in either the thesis research or the preparation of the thesis.
- d **Appointment of Examiners**  
The Board of Graduate Studies will consider the nominations provided by the Head of Department and any submissions made by the candidate under the provisions of Clause 8c and will appoint two suitably qualified persons who are available to act as examiners. One examiner (the Oral Examiner) must be able to attend the oral examination and will normally be resident in New Zealand or Australia.
- e **Appointment of Examination Committee**  
The Board of Graduate Studies will also appoint an Examination Committee which will normally be composed of:
- (i) the Head of Department
  - and
  - (ii) an Associate Dean (Postgraduate), who will Chair the Examination Committee
  - and
  - (iii) one other person ('the Head of Department Nominee') nominated by the Head of Department. This person will have thorough knowledge of the general field of the thesis, but not necessarily of the thesis topic, and will normally be a staff member of the University.
- No member of the Examination Committee may be a supervisor or have been involved in either the thesis research or the preparation of the thesis. The Associate Dean will normally be from the same Faculty as the candidate, but if that person is in the same Department as the candidate then an Associate Dean from another Faculty should be substituted.
- f **Examiners' Reports**  
As suppliers of evaluative material in terms of the Privacy Act 1993, all examiners will be informed that the information and reports they supply as such will be held in confidence to supervisors and to persons involved in the formal examination process. Candidates will not be informed of the names, or other identifying information, of their examiners, except that of the Oral Examiner.
- g Each examiner will be provided with a copy of the thesis and, acting independently, is required to provide the Graduate Centre, within two months of receipt of the thesis, with a written report in English on the quality of the thesis according to the criteria outlined in Clause 1d. One copy of the thesis will be provided to the Examination Committee.
- h The examiners will include with their reports one of the following recommendations:
- (i) to award the degree
  - or
  - (ii) to award the degree after specified minor corrections have been made to the thesis
  - or
  - (iii) to permit the candidate to revise the thesis and resubmit it for examination on one further occasion only
  - or
  - (iv) not to award the degree.
- i **Replacement of Examiners**  
If a report has not been received within two months, the Graduate Centre will send a reminder to the examiner and advise him or her that unless the report is received within two further months the appointment as examiner will lapse. If the report has not been received within two months of the date of the reminder, the Board of Graduate Studies may appoint a replacement examiner.
- j **Consideration of Examiners' Reports**  
Upon receipt of both of the examiners' reports, the Graduate Centre will provide copies for consideration by the Examination Committee. The examiners' reports will also be made available to the supervisor(s) on a confidential basis. Supervisor/s may comment on the reports in writing to the Examination Committee on a confidential basis.

The Examination Committee may also request clarification of issues raised in examiners' reports from the examiners and, if necessary, from supervisors. If the recommendations of the examiners are in conflict and the Examination Committee considers that the conflict may be resolved, the Chair may invite the two examiners to consult and to provide a written report or reports on the outcome of their consultations.

**k Recommendation of the Examination Committee**

The Examination Committee will then make a report to the Board of Graduate Studies which includes the nature and outcome of any communications with the examiners and/or supervisor(s) made under Clause 9j and which recommends one of the following:

- (i) to appoint one or more further independent Examiners to report on any areas of conflict
- or*
- (ii) to proceed to the Oral Examination
- or*
- (iii) to permit the candidate to revise the thesis and resubmit it for examination on one further occasion only
- or*
- (iv) not to award the degree.

**l Further Examiners**

In the event that the examiners' reports are in serious conflict the Board of Graduate Studies may appoint further independent external examiners to report on any matters which it may specify. In this event the candidate will be kept informed, and Clauses 9f to 9i will apply for the reports of the further examiners.

**m Oral Examination**

In the event that the Board of Graduate Studies accepts a recommendation to proceed to an oral examination, the following procedures will apply:

- (i) The Head of Department will arrange this examination.
- (ii) The Board of Graduate Studies, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, will appoint a person to act as an independent Chair of the oral examination. The Chair must be a member of the academic staff of the University, but will not normally be a member of a faculty in which the candidate is registered.
- (iii) The examination must be attended by the candidate, the Oral Examiner, the Chair and the Head of Department nominee on the Examination Committee.
- (iv) The Graduate Centre will forward copies of the examiners' reports to the supervisor(s). The main supervisor may attend the oral examination, but will not act as an examiner and may only participate to the extent requested by the Chair.
- (v) During the oral examination, the Oral Examiner and Head of Department nominee will discuss with the candidate the subject of the thesis and relevant matters in the field or fields to which the subject belongs. The Oral Examiner will discuss with the candidate issues raised in the examiners' reports and ask questions of the candidate on behalf of the other examiner.

**n Recommendation of the Oral Examination**

On completion of the oral examination, the Chair will provide a written report and recommendation, endorsed by the Head of Department nominee and the Oral Examiner, to the Board of Graduate Studies. The report will include one of the following recommendations:

*either*

- (i) to award the degree
- or*
- (ii) to award the degree after specified minor corrections have been made to the thesis to the satisfaction of the Oral Examiner or nominee, who may be the Main Supervisor, and by a specified date
- or*
- (iii) to permit the candidate to revise the thesis and resubmit it for examination on one further occasion only
- or*
- (iv) not to award the degree.

In the case of recommendation (iii), the report must also state clearly the nature of the revisions recommended.

**o When Revision and Resubmission are Permitted**

In the event that the Board of Graduate Studies requires the candidate to revise the thesis for resubmission, either prior to or following an oral examination, the following provisions apply:

- (i) If an oral examination has already been held, a copy of the report of the oral examination will be sent to the Examination Committee.

- (ii) The Examination Committee will agree on the date by which the thesis is to be resubmitted and the nature of the revisions recommended, and will convene a meeting with the candidate and supervisors to discuss these revisions. Both the revisions and the date are then to be reported in writing by the Chair of the Examination Committee to the Graduate Centre for approval by the Board of Graduate Studies and formal communication to the candidate. The date of resubmission may not be more than 12 months from the date of the oral examination or, in the case of a recommendation under Clause 9k(iii), not more than 12 months from the date the examiners' reports were forwarded to the Examination Committee by the Graduate Centre.
- (iii) The candidate is required to enrol and pay the prescribed tuition and research fees from the month in which the decision was made to the month by which the thesis is to be resubmitted. The registration of the candidate is to continue under the conditions applying at the first date of submission.
- (iv) If the thesis is not resubmitted by the prescribed date, the registration of the candidate will normally be terminated.
- (v) Upon resubmission, the revised thesis is to be examined as a whole by the same examiners in accordance with the provisions of this Clause, excepting that a further resubmission may not be recommended and that the Examination Committee may recommend that a second oral examination not be held. If one or both of the original examiners is unavailable to re-examine the thesis the Board of Graduate Studies will appoint alternative examiners.

**p Final Decision**

After considering all of the reports of the examiners and the Examination Committee the Board of Graduate Studies will make the final decision as to the award of the degree.

**q Copies for Deposit**

On successful completion of the examination three hardbound copies of the thesis, corrected as may be required, must be deposited with the Graduate Centre. The degree will not be conferred until the candidate has complied with this requirement.

## Appeals

### 10 As to Registration

- a Candidates, Supervisors or Heads of Department may appeal against any decision of the Board of Graduate Studies made under Clauses 4, 5, 7 or 8 of this statute, normally within three months of the making of the decision, on the grounds that:
  - (i) relevant information which was not available to the Board of Graduate Studies at the time of its making the decision has since become available,

*and/or*

  - (ii) the procedure adopted in arriving at the decision was unfair.  
The appeal must state clearly all grounds relied on by the candidate and attach all relevant documentation.
- b Any appeal made under Clause 10a will be considered by the Chair of the Board of Graduate Studies, or their nominee, who may seek further information relating to the grounds of the appeal and shall notify the candidate of such information before making any decision. The Chair shall give a written decision outlining the reason(s) for the decision. A decision:
  - (i) grounded on the lack of relevant information shall be final
  - or*
  - (ii) grounded on procedural unfairness, may be further appealed within six months after the decision is made, to the Vice-Chancellor (or nominee) whose decision shall be final.

### As to Examination

- c If a PhD candidate believes that he or she has been significantly disadvantaged by the examination process, or by any part of the examination process, then a written appeal may be made to the Board of Graduate Studies, setting out the grounds of the appeal. All relevant documents relied upon must be submitted with the appeal.
- d Any appeal as to examination process must be lodged within three months of the result of the examination being officially communicated to the candidate. The appeal document must state clearly all grounds relied on and include all relevant documents.
- e In the case of appeals as to examination process:
  - (i) The Chair of the Board of Graduate Studies will undertake a preliminary investigation and determine if there are grounds for the appeal to be taken to a further stage.

- (ii) If there are grounds for further consideration of an appeal, this will be undertaken by two members of the Board of Graduate Studies who have not been involved in the examination process who will make a recommendation to the Vice-Chancellor.
- (iii) The candidate will be provided with a copy of the recommendation to the Vice-Chancellor and will have the opportunity to respond to the recommendation.
- (iv) The decision of the Vice-Chancellor will be final and may involve a re-examination of the work.

#### Dispute Resolution Procedures

- 11 a Disputes are to be resolved according to the Policy for Resolution of Research Problems: Postgraduate Research Students.  
(see [www.auckland.ac.nz/docs/sa/postgraduate/download/dispute.pdf](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/docs/sa/postgraduate/download/dispute.pdf))

#### Transitional Arrangements

- 12 a This statute came into force on 1 March 2003 and revoked the previous Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.
- b For candidates initially registered under a previous statute, the Board of Graduate Studies may agree to vary the application of the provisions of this statute to ensure consistency with the provisions of the statute under which the candidate was enrolled, where it is satisfied that the candidate would otherwise be at a disadvantage.
- c Arrangements for payments of fees for candidates who were registered before 1 March 2003 may continue until the commencement of the 2004 academic year.

### The Degree of Doctor of Literature – LittD

- 1 Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be a graduate of The University of Auckland, or of a university of New Zealand.
- 2 No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Literature until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
- 3 The Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to linguistics, literary, philosophical, social or historical knowledge.
- 4 The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
- 5 No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university.
- 6 A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - a three copies of the work to be examined
  - b a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own
    - and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of The University of Auckland or any other university
    - and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other university and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.
- 7 The examination shall be carried out in accordance with the Procedure for the Examination of Higher Degrees, as determined by Council from time to time after considering any recommendations from Senate and published as a supplement to this Statute.

### The Degree of Doctor of Science – DSc

- 1 Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Science shall be a graduate of The University of Auckland, or of a university of New Zealand.
- 2 No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Science until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.

- 3 The Degree of Doctor of Science shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of pure or applied science.
- 4 The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
- 5 No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university.
- 6 A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - a three copies of the work to be examined
  - b a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own  
*and*
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work, submitted had been previously presented for a degree or diploma of The University of Auckland or any other university  
*and*
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other university and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.
- 7 The examination shall be carried out in accordance with the Procedure for the Examination for Higher Degrees, as determined by Council from time to time after considering any recommendations from Senate and published as a supplement to this Statute.

---

### The Degree of Doctor of Laws – LLD

- 1 Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be a graduate of The University of Auckland, or of a university of New Zealand.
- 2 No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Laws until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
- 3 The Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of law.
- 4 The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation, but in addition to the published work the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
- 5 No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work or a major portion of it has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university.
- 6 Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - a three copies of the work to be examined  
*and*
  - b a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own  
*and*
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of The University of Auckland or any other university  
*and*
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other university and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.
- 7 The examination shall be carried out in accordance with the Procedure for the Examination of Higher Degrees, as determined by Council from time to time after considering any recommendations from Senate and published as a supplement to this Statute.

---

## The Degree of Doctor of Engineering – DEng

- 1 Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Engineering shall be a graduate of The University of Auckland, or of a university of New Zealand.
- 2 No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Engineering until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
- 3 The Degree of Doctor of Engineering shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of engineering or technology.
- 4 The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation or as designs and inventions; but in addition to the published work the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
- 5 No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university.
- 6 Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - a three copies of the work to be examined
  - and*
  - b a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own
    - and*
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of The University of Auckland or any other university
    - and*
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other university and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.
- 7 The examination shall be carried out in accordance with the Procedure for the Examination of Higher Degrees, as determined by Council from time to time after considering any recommendations from Senate and published as a supplement to this Statute.

---

## Procedure for the Examination of Higher Degrees

- 1 This procedure applies to the examination of the Degrees of Doctor of Literature, Doctor of Laws, Doctor of Science and Doctor of Engineering.
- 2 As soon as possible after an application to be examined has been lodged, the Senate or its delegate shall appoint a subcommittee consisting of the Dean of the relevant Faculty (or nominee), one Professor from a Department appropriate to the application, and another Professor from the Faculty concerned to make recommendations as to not fewer than five persons in the field covered by the work, who are not members of staff of The University of Auckland, and who might be suitable as either the moderator or examiners for the work.
- 3 The Senate or its delegate shall appoint a Moderator from the persons recommended by the subcommittee constituted under Regulation 2 who will:
  - a consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed and, if so, *either*
  - b state which of the other persons recommended by the subcommittee are suitable examiners in the field covered by the work,
  - or*
  - c if other persons are more appropriate, provide their names to the Registrar.
- 4 Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the Degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 8) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid.

- 5 a If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of The University of Auckland.
- b The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
- 6 The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning
  - and*
  - b to recommend whether or not the Degree shall be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree shall not be awarded, the examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work with further published work at a later date. A resubmission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
- 7 All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
- 8 The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
- 9 Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 8 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 6 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with other reports.

## COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

The Course Prescriptions contain the full list of approved University of Auckland courses. Before selecting courses from this Calendar, students and potential students are advised to ascertain which courses are expected to be offered in 2005 and in which semester they are scheduled, together with the examination time for each course, by referring to the Class Schedule on The University of Auckland website at [www.auckland.ac.nz/rnDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/rnDeva) or contacting the Student Information Centre in the ClockTower. Course availability details (correct at the time of print) are also on page 604.

Where courses in the following Course Prescriptions are listed with an 'A' and a 'B' option, this means that, if they are offered, they will be taught over two semesters and students must enrol in both Part A and Part B to complete the course. In order to be credited with such a course, students must complete both Part A and Part B. Courses with no 'A' or 'B' designation are taught over one semester.

The Prescriptions are listed by faculty, in alpha-numeric order and should be read in conjunction with the relevant regulations.

### Course Prescriptions Index

Faculty of Arts	270
Faculty of Business and Economics	371
Faculty of Creative Arts and Industries	408
Faculty of Education	447
Faculty of Engineering	466
Faculty of Law	490
Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences	506
Faculty of Science	538
School of Theology	592

## Index of Subjects and Programmes

Subject Title	Alpha Code	Page	Subject Title	Alpha Code	Page
<b>Faculty of Arts</b>					
Ancient History	ANCHIST	270	Theatre Studies	THEATRE	367
Anthropology	ANTHRO	273	Tongan	TONGAN	368
Art History	ARTHIST	281	Translation Studies	TRANSLAT	368
Arts – General	ARTSGEN	285	Women's Studies	WOMEN	369
Asian Studies	ASIAN	285	<b>Faculty of Business &amp; Economics</b>		
Chinese	CHINESE	286	Accounting	ACCTG	371
Classical Studies	CLASSICS	290	Business Administration	BUSADMIN	374
Comparative Literature	COMPLIT	291	Commercial Law	COMLAW	375
Cook Islands Maori	COOKIS	292	Economics	ECON	379
Croatian	CROATIAN	293	Engineering Management	ENGMGMT	383
Development Studies	DEVELOP	293	Finance	FINANCE	384
Drama Studies	DRAMA	294	Finance – Executive Programmes	FINMGMT	385
Employment Relations and Organization Studies		294	Health Informatics	HLTHINFO	385
English	ENGLISH	294	Human Resource Management	HRMGMT	386
English as a Second Language	ESOL	302	Information Management	INFORMGMT	386
English Writing	ENGWRIT	303	Information Systems	IFORM	387
Ethics		303	Information Systems	INFOSYS	387
Ethnomusicology		303	International Business	INTBUS	390
European Languages and Literatures	EUROPEAN	303	International Strategy and Leadership	INTSTRAT	393
French	FRENCH	304	MMgt/GradDipBus	MANAGEMENT	393
Film, Television and Media Studies	FTVMS	307	Maori Development	MAORIDEV	395
German	GERMAN	312	Marketing	MARKET	395
Greek	GREEK	314	Management and Employment Relations	MGMT	396
History	HISTORY	315	Marketing	MKTG	400
History and Philosophy of Science and Technology			New Venture Management	NEWVENT	403
	HPST	322	Operations Management – Exec Prog	OPSMAN	403
Indonesian	INDO	322	Operations Management	OPSMGT	403
Italian	ITALIAN	323	Operations Research	OPSRES	405
Japanese	JAPANESE	326	Property	PROPERTY	405
Korean	KOREAN	329	<b>Faculty of Creative Arts and Industries</b>		
Language Study Abroad		330	Architectural Design	ARCHDES	408
Language Teaching and Learning	LANGTCHG	330	Architectural Drawing and Computing	ARCHDRC	409
Languages and Literature	LANGLIT	333	Architecture: General	ARCHGEN	411
Latin	LATIN	333	Architectural History, Theory and Criticism	ARCHHTC	413
Latin American Studies	LATINAM	335	Architectural Practice and Management	ARCHPRM	417
Linguistics	LINGUIST	335	Architectural Technology	ARCHTECH	419
Logic and Computation	LOGICOMP	337	Arts Management	ARTSMGT	423
Maori Studies	MAORI	337	Dance Studies	DANCE	423
Medieval and Early Modern European Studies	MEDEMS	340	Fine Arts	FINEARTS	426
Museums and Cultural Heritage	MUSEUMS	341	Jazz	JAZZ	428
Pacific Studies	PACIFIC	341	Music	MUSIC	430
Philosophy	PHIL	342	Music Education	MUSED	437
Polish	POLISH	349	Performing Arts	PERFORM	438
Political Studies	POLITICS	350	Planning	PLANNING	439
Russian	RUSSIAN	356	Master of Planning Practice	PLANNING	441
Samoan	SAMOAN	358	Master of Planning	PLANNING	442
Sociology	SOCIOL	358	Popular Music	POPMUS	443
Social Science for Public Health	SOCSCIPH	363	Sound Recording and Design	SOUND	445
Spanish	SPANISH	363	Visual Arts	VISARTS	446

Subject Title	Alpha Code	Page	Subject Title	Alpha Code	Page
<b>Faculty of Education</b>			Paediatrics	PAEDS	529
Education Curriculum	EDCURR	447	Pathology	PATHOL	530
Education (Professional)	EDPROF	455	Pharmacology	PHARMCOL	530
Education	EDUC	460	Pharmacy	PHARMACY	532
<b>Faculty of Engineering</b>		466	Physiology	PHYSIOL	535
Chemical and Materials Engineering	CHEMMAT	466	Psychiatry	PSYCHIAT	536
Civil Engineering	CIVIL	469	<b>Faculty of Science</b>		
Computer Systems Engineering	COMPSYS	473	Bioinformatics	BIOINF	538
Electrical and Electronic Engineering	ELECTENG	474	Biological Sciences	BIOSCI	538
Engineering, General	ENGGEN	477	Biomedical Science	BIOMED	544
Engineering Science	ENGSCI	478	BTech Projects	BTECH	545
Energy Technology	GEO THERM	482	Chemistry	CHEM	545
Environmental Engineering	ENVENG	483	Computer Science	COMPSCI	548
Mechanical Engineering	MECHENG	485	Electronics and Computing	ELECCOMP	552
Software Engineering	SOFTENG	489	Environmental Management	ENVMGT	553
<b>Faculty of Law</b>			Environmental Science	ENVSCI	553
Law	LAW	490	Ergonomics	ERGONOM	555
Commercial Law	LAWCOMM	499	Food Science	FOODSCI	555
Environmental Law	ENVLAW	502	Forensic Science	FORENSIC	556
General Law	LAWGENRL	503	Geography	GEOG	557
Public Law	LAWPUBL	504	Geology	GEOLOGY	561
<b>Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences</b>			Geophysics	GEOPHYS	563
Anatomy with Radiology	ANATOMY	506	Marine Science	MARINE	564
Audiology	AUDIOL	507	Mathematics	MATHS	565
Behavioural Science	BEHAVSCI	507	Optometry and Vision Science	OPTOM	571
Community Health	COMHLTH	509	Pharmacology		573
General Practice	GENPRAC	512	Physics	PHYSICS	573
Health Management	HLTHMGMT	516	Physiology		577
Health Psychology	HLTHPSYC	516	Polymers and Coatings Science	POLYMER	577
Health Sciences	HLTHSCI	516	Psychology	PSYCH	577
Human Biology	HUMANBIO	517	Science: General	SCIGEN	584
MBChB	MBCHB	517	Speech Science	SPCHSCI	584
Medicine	MEDICINE	519	Sport and Exercise Science	SPORTSCI	585
Medical Science	MEDSCI	520	Statistics	STATS	587
Managed Care	MGCARE	521	Wine Science	WINESCI	591
Molecular Medicine	MOLMED	522	<b>School of Theology</b>		
Maori and Pacific Health	MPHEALTH	523	Biblical Studies	BSTHEO	592
Nursing	NURSING	524	Christian Thought and History	CTHTHEO	596
Nutrition	NUTRN	527	Moral and Practical Theology	MPTHEO	601
Obstetrics and Gynaecology	OBSTGYN	528			

---

## Faculty of Arts

---

### Ancient History

---

#### Stage I

#### ANCHIST 100 (2 Points)

##### Ancient Egyptian History

An introduction to the history and civilization of ancient Egypt.

#### ANCHIST 102 (2 Points)

##### Ancient Greek History

An introduction to Greek history and civilization from the Archaic period to the death of Alexander the Great.

#### ANCHIST 103 (2 Points)

##### Roman History

An introduction to the civilization and history of Ancient Rome, with particular reference to the Republic and Early Empire.

#### Stage II

#### ANCHIST 200 (2 Points)

##### Egypt in Dynasty 18

The internal organization and foreign policy of the Kings of Dynasty 18 c.1570–1320BC.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 100

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 300

#### ANCHIST 202 (2 Points)

##### Greece and Persia

A study of the contacts and conflicts between Greece and Persia 560–323BC.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 302

#### ANCHIST 203 (2 Points)

##### Rome in the High Empire

A study of the Roman Empire AD69–235. Special attention will be paid to government, society and religion.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 103

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 303

#### ANCHIST 210 (2 Points)

##### Egyptian Language 1A

A study of the Egyptian language, hieroglyphic writing and selected documents up to Dynasty 18.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 100

#### ANCHIST 213 (2 Points)

##### Individuals and the State in the Roman Republic

A study of the growth of individual power in the Roman Republic and the consequent response by the Senate and Roman people.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 103

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 313

#### ANCHIST 220 (2 Points)

##### Egyptian Language 1B

Further study of the Egyptian language, hieroglyphic writing and selected documents up to Dynasty 18.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 210

#### ANCHIST 222 (2 Points)

##### Ancient Greek Tyranny

A study of the lives and achievements of individual tyrants in order to establish the causes and effects of

the phenomenon of tyranny, and an evaluation of Greek views of tyranny.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 322

#### ANCHIST 230 (2 Points)

##### Egypt in Dynasties 11–17

A study of the reunification of Egypt at the end of the First Intermediate Period, and of the Middle Kingdom – the collapse of Dynasty 12, loss of unity in Dynasty 13, the Hyksos rule, reunification at the start of Dynasty 18.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 100

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 330

#### ANCHIST 250 (2 Points)

##### The Greek East after Alexander

A history of the Seleucid, Greco-Bactrian and Pergamene kingdoms from 323 to 83 BC.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 350

#### ANCHIST 251 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 351

#### ANCHIST 252 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic: Egypt and the Hellenistic World 323–31 BC

An interdisciplinary approach focusing on the encounter between Egyptian and Greek cultures in the centuries after Alexander the Great, and extending into broader consideration of the characteristics of the Hellenistic period in the Mediterranean world as a whole. Art, literature and philosophy will be vital elements in the cultural features this course will consider.

*Prerequisite:* either ANCHIST 100 or 102 or 103

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 352

#### ANCHIST 253 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 100 or 102

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 353

#### ANCHIST 254 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic: The Roman Empire 31BCE –235CE

A study of the Roman Empire from the time of Octavian's victory over Antony and Cleopatra at Actium in 31 BCE to the death by assassination of Severus Alexander at Bretzeheim on the Rhine frontier in 235 CE.

*Prerequisite:* either ANCHIST 102 or 103

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 354

#### ANCHIST 255 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic: The Later Roman Empire

A study of the Roman empire from Diocletian to Justinian. Topics include the social, economic and political crises of the period, contacts and conflicts between Romans and barbarians, the impact of new religious movements, the persistence of pagan traditions, and the reinterpretation of the Roman past by those forging a new future in both the East and the West.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 103

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 355

#### Stage III

#### ANCHIST 300 (2 Points)

##### Egypt in Dynasty 18

A study of the internal organization and foreign

- policy of the kings of Dynasty 18 c.1570–1320BC.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 230 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 200
- ANCHIST 302 (2 Points)**  
**Greece and Persia**  
 A study of the contacts and conflicts between Greece and Persia 560–323BC.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 212 or 222, and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 202
- ANCHIST 303 (2 Points)**  
**Rome in the High Empire**  
 A study of the Roman Empire AD 69–235. Special attention will be paid to government, society and religion.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 213 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 203
- ANCHIST 310 (2 Points)**  
**Egyptian Language 2A**  
 Hieroglyphic writing and a study of texts of Dynasty 18.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 220 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History
- ANCHIST 313 (2 Points)**  
**Individuals and the State in the Roman Republic**  
 A study of the growth of individual power in the Roman Republic and the consequent response by the Senate and the Roman people.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 203 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 213
- ANCHIST 314 (2 Points)**  
**Historians of Rome**  
 A study of the Greek and Latin writers on Roman history in English translation; writers will include Livy, Sallust, Caesar and Tacitus.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 103 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 753
- ANCHIST 322 (2 Points)**  
**Ancient Greek Tyranny**  
 A study of the lives and achievements of individual Greek tyrants in order to establish the causes and effects of the phenomenon of tyranny, and an evaluation of Greek views of tyranny.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 202 or 212, and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 222
- ANCHIST 324 (2 Points)**  
**Historians of Greece**  
 A study of the Greek writers on Greek history in English translation; writers will include Herodotus, Thucydides and Xenophon.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 752
- ANCHIST 330 (2 Points)**  
**Egypt in Dynasties 11–17**  
 A study of the reunification of Egypt at the end of the First Intermediate Period, and of the Middle Kingdom – the collapse of Dynasty 12, loss of unity in the Dynasty 13, the Hyksos rule, reunification at the start of the Dynasty 18.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 230
- ANCHIST 340 (2 Points)**  
**Egyptian Language 2B**  
 This course will look at hieroglyphic writing and a study of texts of the Middle Kingdom.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 220 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History
- ANCHIST 350 (2 Points)**  
**The Greek East after Alexander**  
 A history of the Seleucid, Greco-Bactrian and Pergamene kingdoms from 323 to 83 BC.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 202 or 212 or 222, and 2 further points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 250
- ANCHIST 351 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 202 or 212 or 222, and 2 further points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 251
- ANCHIST 352 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Egypt and the Hellenistic World 323–31 BC**  
 An interdisciplinary approach focusing on the encounter between Egyptian and Greek cultures in the centuries after Alexander the Great, and extending into broader consideration of the characteristics of the Hellenistic period in the Mediterranean world as a whole. Art, literature and philosophy will be vital elements in the cultural features this course will consider.  
*Prerequisite:* either ANCHIST 100 or 102 or 103 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 252
- ANCHIST 353 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 100 or 102 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 253
- ANCHIST 354 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: The Roman Empire 31BCE–235CE**  
 A study of the Roman Empire from the time of Octavian's victory over Antony and Cleopatra at Actium in 31 BCE to the death by assassination of Severus Alexander at Bretzeheim on Rhine frontier in 235 CE.  
*Prerequisite:* either ANCHIST 102 or 103 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 254
- ANCHIST 355 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: The Later Roman Empire**  
 A study of the Roman empire from Diocletian to Justinian. Topics include the social, economic and political crises of the period, contacts and conflicts between Romans and barbarians, the impact of new religious movements, the persistence of pagan traditions, and the reinterpretation of the Roman past by those forging a new future in both the East and the West.  
*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 103 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 255
- ANCHIST 377 (2 Points)**  
**Ancient History Study Abroad**  
 Study abroad on archaeological sites in Greece, Italy and the Mediterranean area.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II ANCHIST and permission of the Head of Department  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 377

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ANCHIST 700A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 700B** (2 Points)

**Egypt in the Middle and New Kingdoms**

A study of aspects of the social and economic history of Egypt in the stated period.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 700 A and B*

**ANCHIST 702A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 702B** (2 Points)

**Graeco-Roman Egypt from Alexander to Augustus**

A study of Egypt from 331 to 31 BC, focusing on government, society and religion under the Ptolemies.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 702 A and B*

**ANCHIST 703A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 703B** (2 Points)

**Roman Imperialism: Motivation, Justification, Images of Empire**

A study of ideas which motivated and justified imperial expansion under the Roman Republic.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 703 A and B*

**ANCHIST 705** (4 Points)

**ANCHIST 705A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 705B** (2 Points)

**Documents/Texts in Ancient History 1**

Passages in the original ancient languages (Egyptian, Greek or Latin) will be set for translation, study and interpretation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 705 A and B, or ANCHIST 705*

**ANCHIST 706** (4 Points)  
**ANCHIST 706A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 706B** (2 Points)

**Documents/Texts in Ancient History 2**

Passages in the original ancient languages (Egyptian, Greek or Latin) will be set for translation, study and interpretation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 706 A and B, or ANCHIST 706*

**ANCHIST 707A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 707B** (2 Points)

**Art and Propaganda in Egypt**

A detailed study of the wall reliefs and accompanying inscriptions from Ancient Egypt, from Unification to the end of the Ptolemaic period.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 707 A and B*

**ANCHIST 715** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Athenian Revolutionaries**

A study of the personalities who revolutionized Athenian politics, society and culture at the end of the fifth century BC. Through close reading of contemporary texts the transformation in moral thinking linked to Sophists and Socrates, and expressed in the radically new forms of drama invented by Euripides and Aristophanes, will be considered as well as the crises of government in 411 and 404, and figures such as Alcibiades and Critias.

**ANCHIST 716** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Picturing Archaic Greece**

Examines a wide range of visual images from the archaic period in Greece, with particular reference to vase painting, in an attempt to gain a deeper understanding of the time from the seventh into the early fifth century for which there is little textual documentation. Will be of value to those interested in the history of art, archeology and the history of ideas, as well as ancient history and classical studies.

**ANCHIST 717** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Letter Writing in Ancient Rome**

The theory and practice of letter writing in the Roman period, with reference to the value of letters as historic sources, and their use as a medium for philosophical and literary expression.

**ANCHIST 718** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Late Roman Religions**

Examines the history, literature, art and cult practices of those late Roman religions which represented an alternative to 'mainstream' piety. Topics include Judaism, Christianity, Mithraism and other mystery cults.

**ANCHIST 719** (4 Points)

**ANCHIST 719A** (2 Points)

**ANCHIST 719B** (2 Points)

**Directed Study in Ancient History**

Special directed study in an approved area of Ancient History.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 719 A and B, or ANCHIST 719*

**ANCHIST 720** (4 Points)

**ANCHIST 720A** (2 Points)

**ANCHIST 720B** (2 Points)

**Political History of the Ramesseid Period**

An examination of the history of Egypt in Dynasties 19 and 20.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 720 A and B, or ANCHIST 720*

**ANCHIST 722** (4 Points)

**ANCHIST 722A** (2 Points)

**ANCHIST 722B** (2 Points)

**A Topic in Spartan History**

A study of a period of time or of selected topics in the history of Sparta 800-362 BC.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 722 A and B, or ANCHIST 722*

**ANCHIST 723A** (2 Points)

**ANCHIST 723B** (2 Points)

**Origins and Nature of Roman Imperial Cult**

An examination of the history of ruler cult in Greece and Rome, with special reference to developments of the Late Republic and Early Empire. The religious and philosophical backgrounds feature prominently.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 723 A and B*

**ANCHIST 740A** (1 Point)

**ANCHIST 740B** (1 Point)

**Egyptian Language Study**

Passages in the Egyptian language relating to the thesis topic will be set for translation and explanation.

*Corequisite: ANCHIST 794 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 740 A and B*

- ANCHIST 742A** (1 Point)  
**ANCHIST 742B** (1 Point)  
**Greek Language Study**  
 Passages in the Greek language relating to the thesis topic will be set for translation and explanation.  
*Corequisite: ANCHIST 794 A and B*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 742 A and B*
- ANCHIST 743A** (1 Point)  
**ANCHIST 743B** (1 Point)  
**Latin Language Study**  
 Passages in the Latin language relating to the thesis topic will be set for translation and explanation.  
*Corequisite: ANCHIST 794 A and B*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 743 A and B*
- ANCHIST 752** (4 Points)  
**ANCHIST 752A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 752B** (2 Points)  
**Historians of Greece**  
 A study of the Greek writers on Greek history. The authors will include Herodotus, Thucydides and Xenophon.  
*Restriction: ANCHIST 324*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 752 A and B, or ANCHIST 752*
- ANCHIST 753** (4 Points)  
**ANCHIST 753A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 753B** (2 Points)  
**Historians of Rome**  
 A study of the Greek and Latin writers on Roman History. The authors will include Livy, Sallust, Caesar and Tacitus.  
*Restriction: ANCHIST 314*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 753 A and B, or ANCHIST 753*
- ANCHIST 762A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 762B** (2 Points)  
**Women in Ancient Greece**  
 An historical study of women with reference to their treatment in law and literature (especially history), art and myth, and particular attention to the nature of the evidence.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 762 A and B*
- ANCHIST 774** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 774A** (1 Point)  
**ANCHIST 774B** (1 Point)  
**Research Essays in Ancient History**  
 Guided individual study leading to essays on subjects related to other courses being taken by the student in Ancient History for BA(Hons).  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 774 A and B, or ANCHIST 774*
- ANCHIST 775** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- ANCHIST 780A** (1 Point)  
**ANCHIST 780B** (1 Point)  
**Special Topic: Egypt in the Late New Kingdom**  
 A concentrated study of the socio-historical changes in Dynasties 19-20 with emphasis upon the new political and military stresses experienced in these Dynasties.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 780 A and B*
- ANCHIST 790A** (2 Points)  
**ANCHIST 790B** (2 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 790 A and B*
- ANCHIST 792** (6 Points)  
**ANCHIST 792A** (3 Points)  
**ANCHIST 792B** (3 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 792 A and B, or ANCHIST 792*
- ANCHIST 794A** (5 Points)  
**ANCHIST 794B** (5 Points)  
**Thesis**  
*Corequisite: ANCHIST 740 A and B, or ANCHIST 742 A and B, or ANCHIST 743 A and B*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 794 A and B*
- ANCHIST 796A** (7 Points)  
**ANCHIST 796B** (7 Points)  
**Thesis**  
*Prerequisite: at least an A average in the first 12 points of the MA and at least a B pass in a Stage II course in GREEK or LATIN or in ANCHIST 310 or 340.*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 796 A and B*
- ANCHIST 797A** (7 Points)  
**ANCHIST 797B** (7 Points)  
**Research Portfolio**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 797 A and B*
- 
- Anthropology**
- 
- Stage I**
- ANTHRO 100** (2 Points)  
**Human Cultures: Introduction to Social Anthropology**  
 Humans are social and cultural beings. This course provides an understanding of human lives. Basic concepts and approaches are covered.
- ANTHRO 101** (2 Points)  
**World Archaeology**  
 World archaeology from the emergence of culture to the first cities, including the Pacific region.
- ANTHRO 102** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Biological Anthropology**  
 Who was Lucy and what is a hominid? What can studying monkeys and apes tell us about our evolutionary past? An introduction to the range of topics addressed and approaches used in the biological study of the human species. Topics covered include: an introduction to evolutionary theory, the most recent evidence of the fossil remains of our ancestors, studies of primate evolution and behaviour, and understanding patterns of modern human variation.
- ANTHRO 103** (2 Points)  
**Musics of the World**  
 A broad survey of the world's music cultures covering North and South America; Africa; Europe; South, East, and South-East Asia; and the Pacific. Special attention will be given to the musics of the Pacific Islands, New Zealand and Australia.

**ANTHRO 104 (2 Points)****Peoples and Cultures of the Pacific**

A survey of the peoples of Pacific Islands through the perspectives of archaeology, biological anthropology, ethnomusicology, linguistics and social anthropology.

**Stage II****ANTHRO 200 (2 Points)****Archaeology: Understanding the Past**

An examination of current concepts in archaeological research and their place in the development of archaeological thought. How archaeology makes use of its methods and theories to understand the past. An introductory laboratory component. This course is essential for students who may wish to continue their study of Archaeology at Stage III.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 101 and ANTHRO 100 or 102 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 201 (2 Points)****Human Evolution**

The study of human evolution, including recent advances in fossil, molecular, primate and ecological approaches.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 102 and ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 103 or 104, or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 203 (2 Points)****Theoretical Approaches to Society and Culture**

A survey of some of the key anthropological theories used to analyse human social life, discussed by reference to cross-cultural studies. Also considers current debates/issues within the discipline.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 and 101 or 102 or 103 or 104, or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 204 (2 Points)****Ethnography of Island Polynesia**

What is distinctive about Polynesian culture and society? How and why are Polynesian cultures alike? How are they different? In what ways are Fiji, Samoa, Tikopia, Tokelau and Tonga different or similar to other Oceanic cultures? Anthropological studies of these questions will be explored through indigenous Polynesian, anthropological and historical accounts.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 104, or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 206 (2 Points)****Origins of Civilization**

This course investigates the rise of civilization in the Near-East, China, the Indus Valley and Mesoamerica. Topics include: recent research on the domestication of plants and animals, urbanization, social complexity and state-level societies.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 101 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 207 (2 Points)****Coming of the Maori**

An introduction to New Zealand's archaeological history, from early Maori origins to the initial period of Western contact. Tropical Polynesian adaptations to New Zealand's temperate climate, Maori's rich material culture and arts, resource use and environmental change, development of classic Maori society, and the emerging field of historic archaeology are covered.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 101 or 4 points at Stage I in Museums and Cultural Heritage or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 210 (2 Points)****Ethnographies of the Contemporary Maori**

The history of ethnographic and other accounts of contemporary Maori society, examining the

derivation of various social theories and their application to the Maori under changing political and economic circumstances in New Zealand since industrialization.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or MAORI 130 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 211 (2 Points)****Anthropological Perspectives on Gender**

Gender as a cultural construction has been a dynamic field of anthropological inquiry for the past three decades. How do various peoples exhibit and conceptualize gender differences? How have anthropologists studied them?

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 214 (2 Points)****Music of Africa**

The study of traditional and popular African musics south of Sahara.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103 or 8 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 334

**ANTHRO 215 (2 Points)****Human Sexuality**

Human sexuality and sexual behaviour explored from a variety of perspectives within anthropology. Topics include: the evolution of sex, cross-cultural variation in sexual behaviour, sex and the brain, sex through the life course, and the impact of sexually transmitted diseases.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 102 or 4 points passed at Stage I in Social Science for Public Health or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 219 (2 Points)****Contemporary Perspectives on Music and Culture**

Examines the multiple roles and meanings of music in human culture through consideration of specific musical instances and music-culture case studies. Views music as an independent creative art form and as a symbolic component of cultural expression, as well as a paradigm for cultural structures and behaviours. Considers the field of ethnomusicology from the perspectives of anthropology and musicology, among other disciplines.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 221 (2 Points)****European Prehistory: From Cave Art to the Celts**

An overview of major developments in the prehistory of Europe, including the British Isles, from Palaeolithic art to the Iron Age ending with the Vikings. Emphasis will be on significant, well-studied sites, archaeological treasures, population movements and interactions which help us to understand European heritage.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 101 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 222 (2 Points)****Human Biodiversity**

The study of modern human biology focusing on variation and adaptability at the molecular, individual and population levels. Topics include: nutrition, growth and development, environmental effects on human biology and concepts of genetic variation including race.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 102 or 4 points passed at Stage I in Social Science for Public Health or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 232 (2 Points)****The Music of Japan**

The study of the traditional narrative and dramatic music traditions in the context of their related theatre

genres (Noh, Bunraku, Kabuki, etc). Attention will also be paid to associated lyric musical styles.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103 or 8 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 332

**ANTHRO 233 (2 Points)**

**The Music of India**

The study of selected musics from the Indian sub-continent, including traditional, religious, and street musics, classical vocal and instrumental styles and the popular musics of the commercial cinema and music industries.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103 or 8 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 333

**ANTHRO 234 (2 Points)**

**Popular Musics of the Pacific**

From hip hop to reggae to pop, this course explores Pacific popular music genre, artists and songs as well as relevant musical techniques, modes of distribution and processes of fusion and change. It probes the positions and possibilities of Pasifika pop musics by discussing critical questions about culture, authenticity, modernisation, consumerism, identity and musical (ex)change.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103, 104, MUSIC 145 or POPMUS 106, or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 238 (2 Points)**

**Musics of the Pacific**

The study of traditional and popular musics in Oceania, with particular reference to Polynesia: Samoa, Tonga, Niue, Tokelau, Hawaii, Tahiti, Marquesas, Cook Islands and Aotearoa.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 308

**ANTHRO 239 (2 Points)**

**The Music of Aboriginal Australia**

A survey of traditional and popular musics of Aboriginal Australia, with particular reference to Central Desert and North Australian regions.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103 or 8 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 344

**ANTHRO 240 (2 Points)**

**Directed Studies in Anthropology**

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of anthropology under supervision of appropriate staff.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or permission of Head of Department

**ANTHRO 241 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Anthropology: Anthropology of the Body**

Examines cultural and historical variations in how societies understand and experience the human body. The focus will be primarily on social, historical, and political-economic approaches. Considering an array of topics such as labour, sport, health, illness, sexuality, gender, and religious ritual, the course explores how the human body is culturally constructed and socially experienced in a diverse range of settings.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or permission of Head of Department

**ANTHRO 242 (2 Points)**

**Cross-Cultural Economics**

Examines ways in which people throughout the world make a living, organize their productive activities, obtain goods and services from others

through exchange, and appropriate and consume objects. Covers division of labour, similarities and differences between gifts and commodities, concepts of property, types of money and exchange, spheres of exchange, and connections between power and material conditions of life.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 313

**ANTHRO 243 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Dance in Human Culture**

Selected dance traditions from around the world are used as case studies. The appropriate approach for dance study is expanded to include the context of dance and dance-connected behaviour, cultural and political references and related activities: music-making, oral narrative, graphic/iconic arts and body decoration. Special attention given to age-grade rituals, sex, indigenous perspectives, oral history, religion and censorship.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 244 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Anthropology Today: Debates in Culture**

Explores a range of topical and polemical issues in current anthropology, focusing on anthropological work aimed at a wider public audience. Possible topics include the 'culture of terrorism', cyberculture, sex and gender, tourism, the anthropological study of prisons, racism and xenophobia, indigeneity and the politics of representation.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 245 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Biological Anthropology**

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 102 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 246 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Anthropology: The Archaeology of Foods and Cuisines**

Describes archaeological methods used to reconstruct the development of six twentieth century food styles and their aesthetics. Four propositions are emphasised: archaeology is a creative field-based science capable of exquisite historical reconstructions; its methods are those of twenty-first century empirical science; its interpretations are based on anthropological insights; and all peoples have, and always have had, taste.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**Stage III**

**ANTHRO 300 (2 Points)**

**History of Anthropology**

A historically contextualized perspective on anthropology as an integrated discipline from its origins to the mid-twentieth century. Organized thematically around ongoing debates, important figures and events and changing research modes in the various subdisciplines in anthropology.

*Prerequisite:* 105.202 or ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203, or 4 points at Stage II in History and Philosophy of Science and Technology, or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 302 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Method and Theory in Archaeology**

Aspects of the history of archaeology and its influence upon current ideological and methodological issues. The origins of modern

archaeology, origins of excavation and public museums, various approaches and philosophical positions adopted by archaeologists and used in archaeological classification.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 303 (2 Points)**

**Evolution of Human Behaviour**

A critical look at evolutionary models for various human and non-human primate behaviours. Is there evidence of a biological basis for cooperation? How about dominance, infanticide, warfare, racism or sexism?

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 304 (2 Points)**

**Contemporary Oceania**

Critical issues in the islands of the Pacific: political, economic, social, environmental and ideological.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or PACIFIC 201 and ANTHRO 204, or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 305 (2 Points)**

**Ancient Civilizations of East and South-East Asia**

The study of recent archaeological discoveries and of theoretical frameworks with particular reference to China, Japan, Thailand and islands of South-East Asia.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*

*Restriction: ANTHRO 705*

**ANTHRO 306 (2 Points)**

**Pacific Archaeology**

Archaeology, migration, navigation, trade, settlement patterns, emergence of complex society and ethnohistory of the region. This course does not include New Zealand which is covered by a separate course.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*

*Restriction: ANTHRO 706*

**ANTHRO 307 (2 Points)**

**Australian Aboriginal Archaeology**

Understanding the past and present of Aboriginal Australia through the study of archaeology, including the origins of the Australians, colonization and adaptations to arid, temperate and tropical environments.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 203 or 16 points passed*

*Restriction: ANTHRO 707*

**ANTHRO 308 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in the Musics of the Pacific**

The study of selected musics from Oceania, highlighting issues of indigenous systems, colonization, nationalism, forms of authority and contemporary practice.

*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 219 or 16 points passed*

*Restriction: ANTHRO 238*

**ANTHRO 309 (2 Points)**

**Quantitative Methods in Anthropology**

Introduction to analytical approaches to anthropological data, providing professional skills of particular interest to students considering post-graduate work. Topics include: quantitative research design, basic statistical concepts and methods, use of the SPSS computer package and a brief introduction to GIS using MapInfo. This course assumes only a limited mathematical background.

*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 311 (2 Points)**

**New Zealand Archaeology**

Case studies in the archaeology of New Zealand, from its beginnings to the present day.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 312 (2 Points)**

**The Cultural Conservation of Places**

The philosophy and practical implications of conserving places and objects as part of an Aotearoa New Zealand identity.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or HERITAGE 200 or MUSEUMS 200 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 314 (2 Points)**

**Issues in New Zealand Ethnography**

Discusses contemporary anthropological theory and ethnography in relation to topics such as: culture, community, identity, inequality, gender, multiculturalism and biculturalism in Aotearoa New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 315 (2 Points)**

**Anthropology of Art**

Approaches to understanding artistic and aesthetic systems and symbolic meanings of arts within their sociocultural contexts. How are arts and museums used to create and maintain identity?

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 203 or HERITAGE 200 or MUSEUMS 200 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 316 (2 Points)**

**Biological Anthropology in the Pacific**

Where did Pacific people come from? How did they adapt to their new environment? How did European contact affect their health and lives? What have been the impacts of urbanization and westernization? The current theory and methods of biological anthropology as applied to the Pacific are discussed.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 317 (2 Points)**

**Field Methods in Archaeology**

Participation in a field school involving an intensive introduction to all aspects of excavation and subsequent laboratory analysis and report preparation.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*

*Restriction: ANTHRO 737*

**ANTHRO 318 (2 Points)**

**Approaches to Archaeological Science**

An introduction to the application of scientific techniques in archaeology. Topics covered will include: site location, dating, sourcing archaeological material, investigation of artefact manufacture and use, and study of archaeological sediments. Coursework will include a series of practical laboratories.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 319 (2 Points)**

**World-view and Religion**

Anthropological approaches to religion and world-view. Includes cross-cultural approaches to meaning, belief, religious experience, ritual and myth. Issues of religion, ideology, syncretism, symbolism in social conflict and change. Considers local and world religions.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 320 (2 Points)**

**Ethnographic Film and Photography**

Explores the uses of photography and film in the production and dissemination of anthropological knowledge. A goal of this course is to increase students' awareness of the choices that are made at all stages in the production of anthropological images. The course will also use ethnographic film and photography to consider issues of ethnographic representation more generally.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 219 or FTVMS 200 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 321 (2 Points)**

**Equality and Inequality**

Examines conceptualizations, realities and consequences of equality and inequality cross-culturally. Considers whether there are egalitarian societies and whether inequality is inevitable. Covers types and systems of inequality such as slavery, gender inequality, caste and class, as well as differences between economic and political inequality, and between equality of opportunity and equality of results.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 322 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Anthropology**

*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 323 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Ethnomusicology**

*Prerequisite: 105.202 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 324 (2 Points)**

**Medical Anthropology**

Biological and social anthropological approaches to health, employing cross-cultural perspectives and critical analysis of health, illness and disease, health systems and health policy.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 203 or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 325 (2 Points)**

**Aristocracy and Democracy in Tonga, Samoa and Fiji**

A critical survey of major structural tensions and political changes in Tonga, Samoa and Fiji.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or PACIFIC 201 and ANTHRO 204, or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 326 (2 Points)**

**Pacific Pathways**

Transformation of Pacific Island politics and economies, societies and ideologies as a consequence of migration. Emergence of Pacific Islander communities abroad. Links between homeland and overseas populations.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or PACIFIC 201 and ANTHRO 204, or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 328 (2 Points)**

**Bioarchaeology**

A practical introduction to the archaeological analysis and interpretation of biological remains, emphasizing faunal materials but also including macrobotanical remains and pollen.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 331 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Anthropology Today: Debates in Culture**

Explores a range of topical and polemical issues in current anthropology, focusing on anthropological work aimed at a wider public audience. Possible

topics include the 'culture of terrorism', cyberculture, sex and gender, tourism, the anthropological study of prisons, racism and xenophobia, indigeneity and the politics of representation.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 332 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in the Music of Japan**

The study of Japanese narrative and dramatic music traditions in the context of their related theatre genres (Noh, Bunraku, Kabuki, etc). Special emphasis is given to musical procedures, music-text relationships and the social and narrative contexts of production. Attention will also be paid to associated lyric musical styles.

*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 219 or 16 points passed*  
*Restriction: ANTHRO 232*

**ANTHRO 333 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in the Music of India**

The study of selected musics from the Indian sub-continent, including traditional, religious and street musics, classical, vocal and instrumental styles, and the popular musics of the commercial cinema and music industries. The relationship between Indian cultural practice in India and in New Zealand will be considered.

*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 219 or 16 points passed*  
*Restriction: ANTHRO 233*

**ANTHRO 334 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in the Music of Africa**

The study of traditional and popular African musics south of the Sahara. Issues of colonialism, nationalism/regionalism, and the music-media relationship will be highlighted.

*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 219 or 16 points passed*  
*Restriction: ANTHRO 214*

**ANTHRO 335 (2 Points)**

**Evolution of Human Physiology**

Discusses the evidence for interactions between human ecology, physiology, behaviour, health and reproduction. The evolutionary function of physiological responses to our physical and social ecology is addressed, as are the health risks encountered by people living at the extremes of natural or modern environments. The human evidence is complemented by studies of other extant primate species.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 336 (2 Points)**

**Race and Ethnicity**

Ideas and debates about racial and ethnic differences. How real are these differences? How are these cultural constructions related to economic, political and ideological forces? What are the relationships between race, ethnicity and identity?

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*

**ANTHRO 337 (2 Points)**

**Birth, Death and Sex: Evolutionary Life History**

How do biology and culture affect our reproduction? What factors underlie the patterns of death and ageing and how is personal survival balanced against future reproduction? Using evolutionary theory and demographic anthropology, critical questions about individual development, reproductive ecology, parental investment and population growth and decline are explored.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed*

- ANTHRO 338 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Archaeology: Modern Material Culture**  
 The interaction of material items and social life from an archaeological viewpoint.  
*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 339 (2 Points)**  
**Applied Anthropology and Development**  
 Anthropology of development and anthropology in development; anthropological critiques of the notion of 'development'; debates about anthropological praxis and ethics in development; case-based anthropological analyses of development interventions and methods and the applications of anthropological expertise.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 340 (2 Points)**  
**Heritage Conservation in Aotearoa**  
 Addresses the main principles of heritage conservation focusing on the rationale rather than treatment methods. Special emphasis is given to the fields of: conservation of place, archaeological, architectural, ethnographic and fine art conservation. Provides students with a cultural orientation to conservation where issues are examined through several contexts, including anthropological studies and conservation science.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 100 and 101, and ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or HERITAGE 200 or MUSEUMS 200, or 16 points passed*  
*Corequisite: With permission of Head of Department, students may enrol in ANTHRO 340 taking MUSEUMS 200 as a corequisite*
- ANTHRO 341 (2 Points)**  
**Anthropology of Tourism**  
 In what ways do cultural tourism and eco-tours impact host cultures, and what are the natures of cross-cultural exchanges between hosts and guests? This course investigates areas of cultural heritage; support for and transformations of artistic productions; host-guest interactions; the political economy of tourism; and ecological and environmental issues. Asian-Pacific and Maori case studies are emphasized within a global frame.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or HERITAGE 200 or MUSEUMS 200 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 342 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Anthropology**  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 343 (2 Points)**  
**Global Interactions in Popular Music**  
 Studies selected examples and genres within the range of musics labelled 'world beat' or 'world musics'. Focuses on popular music fusions of distinct musical traditions with trans-national marketing practices and 'mainstream' popular music styles. Theorizes these musical styles and trends in relation to constructions of local and global cultures, considering issues of representation, orientalism, exoticism, homogenisation, and exploitation, as well as questions of tradition and authenticity, commodification and control.  
*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 219 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 344 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Studies in the Music of Aboriginal Australia**  
 The study of selected musics from Aboriginal Australia, highlighting issues of indigenous systems, religious belief and practice, music and land rights, forms of authority, and contemporary practice.  
*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 219*  
*Restriction: ANTHRO 239*
- ANTHRO 345 (2 Points)**  
**Directed Studies in Anthropology**  
 A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of Anthropology under supervision of appropriate staff.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 219 or 203 or 105.202 and permission of Head of Department*
- ANTHRO 346 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Anthropology**  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 219 or 203 or 105.202 and permission of Head of Department*
- ANTHRO 347 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Anthropology**  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 219 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 348 (2 Points)**  
**Perspectives on Human Growth**  
 Adopts evolutionary and biocultural perspectives in examining patterns of human growth and maturation. Human developmental patterns are placed within an evolutionary framework using evidence from non-human primates and earlier hominid remains. Variability within and among human populations in growth and developmental timing is considered in terms of genetics interacting with physical, biotic and social factors.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 349 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Biological Anthropology**  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 350 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Social Anthropology**  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- ANTHRO 700A (2 Points)**  
**ANTHRO 700B (2 Points)**  
**Method and Theory in Archaeology**  
 A critical review of current themes and issues in archaeological method and theory.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 700 A and B*
- ANTHRO 701A (2 Points)**  
**ANTHRO 701B (2 Points)**  
**Human Palaeoecology**  
 Critical survey of methods, theories and problems in human palaeoecology, including issues of resource use, landscape change, island colonization and anthropogenic extinctions.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 701 A and B*
- ANTHRO 702 (2 Points)**  
**Research Design in Archaeology**  
 Designed to introduce students to procedures used in the definition of a research problem, development and implementation of research design and the presentation of results. The course is intended to help students in identifying topics for theses and dissertations.

<b>ANTHRO 703</b>	(4 Points)	<b>ANTHRO 715A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>ANTHRO 703A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>ANTHRO 715B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>ANTHRO 703B</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Critical Approaches to Development and Social and Cultural Change</b>	
<b>Landscape Archaeology</b>		An examination of selected theoretical issues arising in ethnography and policy with a view to the currently important relationship between culture, history and political economy.	
Uses geographic information systems (GIS) and other computer programmes to examine the spatial organization of data, and the relationship of archaeological sites both to other sites, and the environment. The social processes underlying these spatial configurations will be a particular focus.		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 715 A and B</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 703 A and B, or ANTHRO 703</i>		<b>ANTHRO 716</b>	(4 Points)
<b>ANTHRO 704A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Topics in the Anthropology of the Pacific</b>	
<b>ANTHRO 704B</b>	(2 Points)	Studies of Pacific peoples and cultures addressing current anthropological issues and debates.	
<b>Experimental and Ethnographic Archaeology</b>		<b>ANTHRO 717</b>	(4 Points)
The use of experimental and ethnographic approaches to archaeological interpretation.		<b>Symbolic Anthropology</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 704 A and B</i>		Survey of anthropological theories of symbolism and semiotics.	
<b>ANTHRO 705</b>	(4 Points)	<b>ANTHRO 720</b>	(4 Points)
<b>Ancient Civilizations of East and South-East Asia</b>		<b>ANTHRO 720A</b>	(2 Points)
The processes of early state formation in East and South-East Asia.		<b>ANTHRO 720B</b>	(2 Points)
<i>Restriction: ANTHRO 305</i>		<b>Anthropology and History</b>	
<b>ANTHRO 706</b>	(4 Points)	How is the past conceptualised and historical information transmitted in different cultures? In what ways do anthropology and history intersect?	
<b>Pacific Archaeology</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 720 A and B, or ANTHRO 720</i>	
Archaeology, colonization, trade, settlement patterns, emergence of complex society and ethnohistory of the region.		<b>ANTHRO 721A</b>	(2 Points)
<i>Restriction: ANTHRO 306</i>		<b>ANTHRO 721B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>ANTHRO 707</b>	(4 Points)	<b>Social Anthropology: Research Design and Methods</b>	
<b>Australian Aboriginal Archaeology and Society</b>		Critical approaches to research development and evaluation of research design in social anthropology, including application of theory to research questions and developing a proposal for research.	
The past and present of Aboriginal Australia seen through archaeological and anthropological studies.		<i>Restriction: ANTHRO 711</i>	
<i>Restriction: ANTHRO 307</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 721 A and B</i>	
<b>ANTHRO 708A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>ANTHRO 722</b>	(4 Points)
<b>ANTHRO 708B</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Topic in Social Anthropology</b>	
<b>Special Topic in Archaeology</b>		<b>ANTHRO 723A</b>	(2 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 708 A and B</i>		<b>ANTHRO 723B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>ANTHRO 710A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Global Cultures</b>	
<b>ANTHRO 710B</b>	(2 Points)	Relationships between global politico-economic forces and local cultures. The global movement of ideas and artefacts. Students will have the opportunity to concentrate on their preferred geographical or thematic areas.	
<b>Theory in Biological Anthropology</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 723 A and B</i>	
A critical review of theoretical issues in biological anthropology, including evolutionary theory, adaptation and adaptability, population biology and biocultural frameworks.		<b>ANTHRO 724</b>	(4 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 710 A and B</i>		<b>Special Topic in Social Anthropology</b>	
<b>ANTHRO 711A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>ANTHRO 725</b>	(4 Points)
<b>ANTHRO 711B</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Special Topic in Social Anthropology</b>	
<b>Biological Anthropology: Research Design and Methods</b>		<b>ANTHRO 727A</b>	(2 Points)
Critical approaches to research development and evaluation of research design in biological anthropology, including application of theory to research questions and developing a proposal for research.		<b>ANTHRO 727B</b>	(2 Points)
<i>Restriction: ANTHRO 721</i>		<b>Theory and Method in Ethnomusicology</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 711 A and B</i>		The theory and practice of ethnomusicology, including: issues of analysis, ethnography, religion, the media, popular music, status and identity, politics and control, organology, drama, narrative, gender and aesthetics. A variety of coursework assignments provides practical experience in fieldwork-based activities and written projects.	
<b>ANTHRO 712</b>	(4 Points)	<i>Prerequisite: ANTHRO 308 and one of ANTHRO 332 or 333 or 334</i>	
<b>Topic in Biological Anthropology</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 727 A and B</i>	
<b>ANTHRO 713</b>	(4 Points)		
<b>Special Topic in Biological Anthropology</b>			

- ANTHRO 728** (4 Points)  
Topic in Ethnomusicology
- ANTHRO 729** (2 Points)
- ANTHRO 729A** (1 Point)  
**ANTHRO 729B** (1 Point)  
**Special Studies in Anthropology**  
A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of Anthropology, under supervision of appropriate staff.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 729 A and B, or ANTHRO 729*
- ANTHRO 730A** (2 Points)  
**ANTHRO 730B** (2 Points)  
**Biological Anthropology Laboratory**  
A practical introduction to some of the methods currently used in biological anthropology, including behavioural observation, molecular anthropology, human osteology, growth and development and various analytical methods.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 730 A and B*
- ANTHRO 731A** (2 Points)  
**ANTHRO 731B** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Social Anthropology**  
Foundational and current works in social anthropological theory and practice.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 731 A and B*
- ANTHRO 732** (2 Points)  
**Reading Medical Ethnography**  
Examines the social anthropological practice of ethnography of health and illness in community and clinical settings, including 'non-Western' and 'Western' cultural contexts, through critical readings of recent ethnographies in medical anthropology. Considers ethnographic and anthropological theory, ethics, methodology and application.
- ANTHRO 735** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic in Anthropology**
- ANTHRO 736** (4 Points)
- ANTHRO 736A** (2 Points)  
**ANTHRO 736B** (2 Points)  
**Special Studies in Anthropology**  
A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of Anthropology, under supervision of appropriate staff.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 736 A and B, or ANTHRO 736*
- ANTHRO 737** (2 Points)  
**Graduate Field Methods in Archaeology**  
Participation in a field school involving an intensive introduction to all aspects of excavation and subsequent laboratory analysis and report preparation. This course consists of a two-week field trip prior to or during Semester 1, followed by laboratory sessions and seminars.  
*Restriction: ANTHRO 317*
- ANTHRO 738** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Anthropology**
- ANTHRO 739** (2 Points)  
**Special Studies in Anthropology**
- A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of Anthropology under supervision of appropriate staff.
- ANTHRO 740** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Anthropology: Selected Themes in the Anthropology of Europe**  
Explores key issues and debates in the anthropology of Europe, from ethnic violence, nationalism and racism, to urban youth cultures and the European Union. Provides close, critical reading and discussion of a number of recent ethnographies that deal with particular issues and controversies in modern European society.
- ANTHRO 741** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Critiquing Development**  
A critical analysis of theories of development in the context of the broader conflicting relationships between culture and social change.  
*Restriction: ANTHRO 715*
- ANTHRO 742** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Colonialism and Contact**  
A seminar focussed on critical understanding of the political, social and economic expansion of European countries around the world and its cultural consequences. Themes may include: cultural encounter, causes and effects of colonization, interpretations of the other by colonizers and colonized, Creole cultures, slavery, race, resistance and accommodation, gender, demography, environmental impacts.  
*Restriction: ANTHRO 720*
- ANTHRO 743** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Violence and Pain**  
An examination of the social and cultural meanings of violence and the ways in which violence impinges on notions of personhood, the body and community. Central questions will include how experiences of violence are communicated, the limits of such communication, and their implications for understanding self, culture and human agency.
- ANTHRO 780** (4 Points)
- ANTHRO 780A** (2 Points)  
**ANTHRO 780B** (2 Points)  
**Honours Dissertation**  
A topic in one of the sub-disciplines of Anthropology to be selected in consultation with staff.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 780 A and B, or ANTHRO 780*
- ANTHRO 792** (4 Points)
- ANTHRO 792A** (2 Points)  
**ANTHRO 792B** (2 Points)  
**Dissertation in Anthropology**  
A topic in one of the sub-disciplines of Anthropology to be selected in consultation with staff.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 792 A and B, or ANTHRO 792*
- ANTHRO 796A** (2 Points)  
**ANTHRO 796B** (2 Points)  
**Thesis in Anthropology**  
A topic in one of the sub-disciplines of Anthropology to be selected in consultation with staff.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 796 A and B*

**ANTHRO 797A** (7 Points)  
**ANTHRO 797B** (7 Points)  
**Research Portfolio**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 797 A and B*

---

## Art History

---

### Stage I

**ARTHIST 101** (2 Points)

#### Art and Society in Renaissance Italy

A study of the art and architecture of Renaissance Italy in their social context during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries.

**ARTHIST 102** (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Maori Art

An introduction to Maori and other Polynesian arts.

**ARTHIST 103** (2 Points)

#### Modern and Contemporary New Zealand Art

An introduction to art in New Zealand from the 1930s to the present day, covering a wide range of Maori, European and Pacific artists' work. Topics include: regionalism, abstraction, feminism, photography, installation, multimedia, sculpture, video, film and performance. Landscape representation and popular culture seen from Maori, Pakeha and more recent immigrant perspectives are also studied.

**ARTHIST 104** (2 Points)

#### Realism, Impressionism, Post-Impressionism

An introduction to the major art movements of mid to late nineteenth century European art, from realism to symbolism.

**ARTHIST 105** (2 Points)

#### Art of the 20th Century in Europe and the USA

An introduction to the major art movements of the twentieth century in Europe and America.

**ARTHIST 108** (2 Points)

#### Auckland Architecture since 1840

An introduction to architecture in Auckland from European settlement to the present, contextualized within the broader picture of New Zealand practice and outside influences. Teaching will include site visits.

**ARTHIST 111** (2 Points)

#### Ways of Seeing

An introduction to the skills of art history, such as visual and iconographical analysis, and to the variety of ways artworks can be read by different viewers and in different socio-historical contexts. The course draws on painting, sculptures, architecture and other visual forms from a variety of places and cultures, from ancient times to the present.

**ARTHIST 112** (2 Points)

#### Issues in Art History

Examines emerging questions and topical issues as an introduction to Art History in relation to a chosen subject area.

---

### Stage II

**ARTHIST 201** (2 Points)

#### Neo-Classicism and Romanticism

A study of topics in eighteenth and early nineteenth century art in Europe.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in Art History*

**ARTHIST 203** (2 Points)

#### Northern European Art 1400-1600

A survey of art in Northern Europe with the focus on developments in painting and sculpture. Artists include van Eyck, H. Bosch and Pieter Brueghel.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in Art History*

**ARTHIST 204** (2 Points)

#### Contemporary Art and Theory

Selected topics in late twentieth century art and theory, including film and video.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History or FTVMS 101*

**ARTHIST 205** (2 Points)

#### Contemporary Maori and Polynesian Art

Maori and other Polynesian art since 1950. In addition to study of individual artists and their works, issues such as appropriation and biculturalism will be discussed.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Art History or MAORI 130, or 4 points at Stage I in Museums and Cultural Heritage*

**ARTHIST 207** (2 Points)

#### Women, the Arts, Gender and Representation

Introduction to the situation and work of women artists from the medieval period to the present. Includes the issues of women, the art/craft dichotomy, and gender and representation.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in Art History*

**ARTHIST 209** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History*

**ARTHIST 210** (2 Points)

#### Modernism and Design

A study of the central role played by architecture and design within the Modern Period. The main focus will be on Europe and the United States.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in Art History*  
*Restriction: 114.106. ARTHIST 310*

**ARTHIST 211** (2 Points)

#### Reading Landscape Art

European landscape art emerged in in the seventeenth century, exploring aesthetic qualities associated with nature, but also representing social values. English gardens and paintings by such artists as Constable and Turner were signifiers of economic and political change in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, as were artworks in colonial New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in Art History*  
*Restriction: ARTHIST 311, 114.209 (in 1999 only)*

**ARTHIST 212** (2 Points)

#### Neo-Gothic to Art Nouveau

Focuses on nineteenth century architecture and design with introductory eighteenth century material.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points in Stage I Art History*  
*Restriction: ARTHIST 312*

- ARTHIST 213 (2 Points)**  
**Tradition and Change in Pacific Art**  
 An introduction to a wide range of Pacific Art, both object and performance, based on their origins, histories, interconnections and social functioning, including gender issues and cross-cultural encounters.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Art History or Pacific Studies, or 4 points at Stage I in Museums and Cultural Heritage  
*Restriction:* 114.107
- ARTHIST 217 (2 Points)**  
**Contemporary Pacific Art**  
 Focuses on work by contemporary Pacific artists, exploring the ways that they translate indigenous knowledge and urban experiences into gallery forms such as painting, installation, performance, film and video making. Themes such as migration and diaspora, language and memory, notions of homelands and return, and the creation of complex cultural identities will be explored.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History, or ANTHRO 100, 104 or LINGUIST 102  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 317
- ARTHIST 222 (2 Points)**  
**Origins of Modern Sculpture**  
 Explores the transition from traditional to contemporary forms and themes in Western sculpture. The focus is on artistic activity in Paris 1900 to 1914 with consideration of definitions of sculpture, abstraction, processes, materials, influences and innovation.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History  
*Restriction:* 114.308, ARTHIST 322
- ARTHIST 223 (2 Points)**  
**20th Century Sculpture in Australia and New Zealand**  
 Examines the changing nature of sculpture, its international origins, development of facilities, patronage, introduction of new materials and the evolution of local and national content. Aspects of identity, migration, sociopolitical influence and the contribution of women are thematic concerns.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 323
- ARTHIST 224 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in Baroque Art**  
 Selected topics in Baroque art in Europe from 1580 to 1750.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in Art History  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 202, 324
- 
- Stage III**
- ARTHIST 301 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in the Book Arts with Special Emphasis on Medieval Book Illumination**  
 European book illumination from c.1200 to c.1450 and other book-arts related topics such as early printed books, artists' books and the representation of the book in art.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Art History
- ARTHIST 302 (2 Points)**  
**Mid 19th Century Art in France and Britain**  
 Selected topics in British and French art, photography, art criticism and theory from the 1840s to the 1870s, a crucial period of change in the practice of art.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Art History
- Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Art History
- ARTHIST 304 (2 Points)**  
**Dürer and his Sources and Influence**  
 A detailed examination of Dürer's work and influence.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History
- ARTHIST 306 (2 Points)**  
**Art and Passion in the Baroque**  
 A study of Roman Baroque art with a special emphasis on how art reflected the religious, political and social concerns of the period.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Art History
- ARTHIST 307 (2 Points)**  
**Art in the USA 1945-75**  
 A study of painting and sculpture in the USA from abstract expressionism to approximately 1975.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History
- ARTHIST 310 (2 Points)**  
**Modernism and Design**  
 A study of the central role played by architecture and design within the Modern Period. The main focus will be on Europe and the United States.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History  
*Restriction:* 114.106, ARTHIST 210
- ARTHIST 311 (2 Points)**  
**Reading Landscape Art**  
 European landscape art emerged in the seventeenth century, exploring aesthetic qualities associated with nature, but also representing social values. English gardens and paintings by such artists as Constable and Turner were signifiers of economic and political change in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, as were artworks in colonial New Zealand.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Art History  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 211, 114.209 (in 1999 only)
- ARTHIST 312 (2 Points)**  
**Neo-Gothic to Art Nouveau**  
 Focuses on nineteenth century architecture and design with introductory eighteenth century material.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 212
- ARTHIST 315 (2 Points)**  
**The Print in Northern Europe 1470-1600**  
 Examines the emergence and development of the print as an independent art form in Northern Europe during the Renaissance.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Art History
- ARTHIST 317 (2 Points)**  
**Contemporary Pacific Art**  
 Focuses on work by contemporary Pacific artists, exploring the ways that they translate indigenous knowledge and urban experiences into gallery forms such as painting, installation, performance, film and video making. Themes such as migration and diaspora, language and memory, notions of homelands and return, and the creation of complex cultural identities will be explored.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Art History or in ANTHRO 100, 104 or LINGUIST 102, or HERITAGE 200 or MUSEUMS 200  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 217

**ARTHIST 318 (2 Points)****Museology and Taonga**

A study of the ways in which Maori and Pacific Islands cultures have been, and are, interpreted in museum and art gallery contexts.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Art History or 2 points at Stage II in Art History and MAORI 240, or HERITAGE 200 or MUSEUMS 200

**ARTHIST 319 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Indigenous Women's Art**

The focus will be primarily arts made by women in Aotearoa, but will also include the United States and Canada, with some reference to Australia and the Pacific, in the context of the social, political and cultural societies within which they are produced.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History

**ARTHIST 320 (2 Points)****Conceptual to Cyber: Art Film and Video Art**

An historical survey of aesthetic and perceptual issues arising from the art film and video art of late twentieth and early twenty-first century art movements.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or FTVMS 200

**ARTHIST 322 (2 Points)****Origins of Modern Sculpture**

Explores the transition from traditional to contemporary forms and themes in Western sculpture. The focus is on artistic activity in Paris 1900 to 1914 with consideration of definitions of sculpture, abstraction, processes, materials, influences and innovation.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History  
*Restriction:* 114.308, ARTHIST 222

**ARTHIST 323 (2 Points)****20th Century Sculpture in Australia and New Zealand**

Examines the changing nature of sculpture, its international origins, development of facilities, patronage, introduction of new materials and the evolution of local and national content. Aspects of identity, migration, sociopolitical influence and the contribution of women are thematic concerns.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II Art History  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 223

**ARTHIST 324 (2 Points)****Topics in Baroque Art**

Selected topics in Baroque art in Europe from 1580 to 1750.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Art History  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 202, 224

**ARTHIST 326 (2 Points)****Facing and Defacing Modernism: Abstract Painting in New Zealand**

Abstract painting in New Zealand focussing on the work of Hotere, Walters and Mrkusich and other prominent abstract artists including more recent post-modernist abstraction. Examines the work of these artists as a reading or fertile misreading of Russian, European and American movements in abstraction.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Art History or HERITAGE 200 or MUSEUMS 200

**ARTHIST 327 (2 Points)****Art in Context**

The title Art in Context highlights the importance of studying original artworks in context. Contexts for artworks include the original physical setting, such as a palace, monastery, or town hall, to wider examinations of the socio-historical situations in which they were created. In addition, new museological contexts for artworks offer insight into the display and interpretation of visual culture.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Art History at Stage II or permission of Head of Department

**Honours and Master's Courses****ARTHIST 702A (2 Points)****ARTHIST 702B (2 Points)****Art Historiography**

A study of the theoretical writings of certain major and influential art historians, including Heinrich Wölfflin, Erwin Panofsky and E.H. Gombrich, and also more recent writers such as T.J. Clark and Norman Bryson.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 702 A and B*

**ARTHIST 703A (2 Points)****ARTHIST 703B (2 Points)****Cross-cultural Representation**

An examination of visual representations of non-European peoples and places by European artists and photographers from the mid-eighteenth to, and including, the twentieth century. Prime concerns are the uses and meaning of such representations, both when they were first produced and in later periods, in different contexts.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 703 A and B*

**ARTHIST 704A (2 Points)****ARTHIST 704B (2 Points)****Topics in the Theory of Modern Art**

An examination and critical analysis of modernist theories. These include: the autonomy of the artwork, an analysis of seeing as a cognitive activity, the notion of expression, contemporary redefinitions of the creating subject and art as a language, the analysis of theory as an 'interested' activity, and postmodernist revisions.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 704 A and B*

**ARTHIST 707A (2 Points)****ARTHIST 707B (2 Points)****Maori and Polynesian Arts**

Includes discussion on topics and issues in Maori and Polynesian arts, both traditional and contemporary. It involves a series of seminars, discussions, informal meetings on and off campus, and visits to marae, galleries and museums.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 707 A and B*

**ARTHIST 708A (2 Points)****ARTHIST 708B (2 Points)****Image and Text**

An approach to problems of relation between these two terms, beginning with writing descriptions of art works and, by readings of relevant texts, moving towards formulations of theory.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 708 A and B*

- ARTHIST 709A** (2 Points)  
**ARTHIST 709B** (2 Points)  
**Spectators and Structures in Quattrocento Art**  
 An examination of fifteenth century Italian Renaissance codes of: the frame; representing time; representing space; constructing the spectator's role; and constructing the painter as 'author' figure.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 709 A and B*
- ARTHIST 712A** (2 Points)  
**ARTHIST 712B** (2 Points)  
**Postcolonial Theory and the Visual Arts**  
 A study of the issues and implications of colonialism and its roles in the construction of cultural identities. Key postcolonial and postmodern texts will be studied in relation to contemporary non-Western art practice.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 712 A and B*
- ARTHIST 713** (2 Points)  
**The Role of Museums: Past and Present**  
 An examination of the museum as an institution in the past and up to the present day. Art museums will be the main focus and issues will include: the origins of the museum, Renaissance art collections and private museums, the emergence of the public museum, recent and contemporary museums.
- ARTHIST 715** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Postcolonial Theory and the Visual Arts**  
 Postcolonial theory attempts to demonstrate ways that history, gender, identity, and social structures can be re-presented and re-articulated within institutionalised thought and visual culture. The course focuses on issues and implications of colonialism and its role in relation to the creation and expression of cultural identities. Classes require close discussions of key readings and their implications in contemporary art practice.
- ARTHIST 716** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Rembrandt**  
 This monographic study of the seventeenth-century Dutch artist Rembrandt engages in a broad range of critical approaches to his art and life. The course is taught in four modules; these comprise: the socio-political milieu in which he worked, the historical documents of his life, the artworks he produced and the technical aspects of his work.
- ARTHIST 718** (4 Points)  
**ARTHIST 718A** (2 Points)  
**ARTHIST 718B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: The Role of Museums**  
 Examines the origins of collecting in Europe, the emergence of public museums and contemporary developments.  
*Restriction: ARTHIST 713*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 718 A and B, or ARTHIST 718*
- ARTHIST 719** (2 Points)  
**Public Art: Issues and Controversy**  
 A study of the politics and function of public art and monuments, predominantly sculpture, the challenge of public space, issues of nationalism and cultural identity, patronage and the urban environment, local practice in relation to international case studies.
- ARTHIST 720** (2 Points)  
**Self-portraiture and Identity Construction in New Zealand Art**  
 A selection of topics using specific types of self-representation produced by New Zealand artists from c.1900 to the present, and issues pertaining to ideas around identity and the construction of the 'self'.
- ARTHIST 721A** (2 Points)  
**ARTHIST 721B** (2 Points)  
**Museums and the Politics of Culture**  
 This interdisciplinary course investigates the presentation of culture in museums and art galleries, the strategies of public exhibitions, and the role of curators and institutions in identity formation and nationalism. Case studies are drawn from international practice as well as regional examples from New Zealand, Australia and the Pacific.  
*Restriction: ARTHIST 714*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 721 A and B*
- ARTHIST 722** (4 Points)  
**ARTHIST 722A** (2 Points)  
**ARTHIST 722B** (2 Points)  
**Rembrandt**  
 This monographic study of the seventeenth century Dutch artist Rembrandt engages in a broad range of critical approaches to his art and life. The course is taught in seven modules; these comprise: the socio-political milieu in which he worked, the historical documents of his life, the artworks he produced, the technical aspects of his work, the organization of his studio and mechanics of the art market, the issue of authorship and the critical reception of his life and work.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 722 A and B, or ARTHIST 722*
- ARTHIST 790A** (2 Points)  
**ARTHIST 790B** (2 Points)  
**BA (Hons) Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 790 A and B*
- ARTHIST 792A** (3 Points)  
**ARTHIST 792B** (3 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 792 A and B*
- ARTHIST 793** (2 Points)  
**Research Essay**  
 Supervised research and writing on an approved topic.
- ARTHIST 795A** (7 Points)  
**ARTHIST 795B** (7 Points)  
**Research Portfolio**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 795 A and B*
- ARTHIST 796A** (7 Points)  
**ARTHIST 796B** (7 Points)  
**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 796 A and B*

---

**Arts – General**


---

**Diploma Courses****ARTSGEN 688A** (2 Points)**ARTSGEN 688B** (2 Points)**Dissertation**

Essay, project or special directed study, involving work in one subject or interdisciplinary work involving one subject among others.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 688 A and B*

**ARTSGEN 690A** (2 Points)**ARTSGEN 690B** (2 Points)**Essay/Special Directed Study/Research Project**

Essay, project or special directed study, involving work in the subject of the student's Master's degree or major of the student's first degree or interdisciplinary work involving that subject and others.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 690 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses****ARTSGEN 740** (2 Points)**ARTSGEN 740A** (1 Point)**ARTSGEN 740B** (1 Point)**Research Essay**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 740 A and B, or ARTSGEN 740*

**ARTSGEN 750** (2 Points)**Special Topic in Qualitative Research**

An introduction to qualitative social research methods designed for graduate students who have little research background but are planning to do research in their workplace or empirical thesis/dissertation work. Covers participation observation, interviewing and archival research methods. The course has a 'hands on' approach and students will design, carry out and analyse a real piece of qualitative research.

**ARTSGEN 751** (2 Points)**Special Topic in Quantitative Research**

An introduction to survey methods for quantitative social research designed for graduate students who have little research background but are planning to do research in their workplace or empirical thesis/dissertation work. Covers all aspects of survey research, data collection and analysis and a brief introduction to using computers for research and statistical analysis. The course has a 'hands on' approach and students will design, carry out and analyse a 'real life' survey.

**ARTSGEN 777** (2 Points)**Special Language Studies 1**

This course is intended to cover study at an approved overseas institution where the language of instruction is a language other than English. Supplementary study at The University of Auckland may be required as part of this course. Enrolment is subject to approval of the planned overseas study by the Head of Department or School for the language subject concerned. A student must be enrolled for the MA, and for this course, before starting overseas study. A final grade for the course will be determined

on completion of the study on the basis of formal assessment of achievement in the language concerned, together with any other submitted work specified by the Head of Department or School.

**ARTSGEN 778** (4 Points)**Special Language Studies 2**

As for ARTSGEN 777. The overseas study, together with any other work required by the Head of Department or School, is equivalent in quantity to a 4 point course.

**ARTSGEN 780** (4 Points)**ARTSGEN 780A** (2 Points)**ARTSGEN 780B** (2 Points)**Research Essay**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 780 A and B, or ARTSGEN 780*

**ARTSGEN 792** (6 Points)**ARTSGEN 792A** (3 Points)**ARTSGEN 792B** (3 Points)**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 792 A and B, or ARTSGEN 792*

**ARTSGEN 794A** (5 Points)**ARTSGEN 794B** (5 Points)**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 794 A and B*

**ARTSGEN 796A** (7 Points)**ARTSGEN 796B** (7 Points)**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 796 A and B*

**ARTSGEN 797A** (7 Points)**ARTSGEN 797B** (7 Points)**Research Portfolio**

The research portfolio consists of (usually) two or three research projects/essays in a defined area of study within one of the disciplines, or across one or more of the disciplines, taught in the Faculty of Arts. The content and coherence of the research portfolio are determined in consultation with an academic supervisor. Components of the research portfolio may require attendance at designated seminars and will include a specified number and type of pieces of assessed work. Students must demonstrate through the portfolio the same qualities expected of a thesis: an advanced level of understanding of one (or more) research tradition(s) within the discipline(s); coherence of argument; independence of thought; and the ability to produce original work. The total word length of the portfolio should be equivalent to that expected for a 14-point thesis in the relevant discipline(s).

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 797 A and B*

---

**Asian Studies****Stage 1****ASIAN 100** (2 Points)**Images of Asia**

An introduction to the history of China, Japan, Korea and South-East Asia, exploring historical conceptions and misconceptions.

*Restriction: HISTORY 135*

**ASIAN 101 (2 Points)****Faith and Festival in Asia**

A broad-based introduction to religious life in East and South-East Asia with special focus on ritual life and ceremony rather than canonical texts and theology. Religion at the personal, family, community and state level are all considered, with examples from 'animism', shamanism, Daoism, Buddhism, Shinto, Islam, Hinduism, Asian Christianity and their myriad combinations.

**Stage II****ASIAN 200 (2 Points)****Asian Identities**

Students explore the changing and contested nature of Asian identities through readings of seminal scholarly and theoretical articles on each theme, combined with analysis of the ways these themes are reflected in film, fiction and other popular culture texts. The four themes (nationalism; violence and conflict; gender; minorities and indigenous rights) and a concentration on post-1945 East and South-East Asia provide the focus.

*Prerequisite: ASIAN 100*

**ASIAN 201 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Fundamentally Muslim: Islam, Modernity and Cultural Identity**

Attempts to reconsider and re-centre the critical understanding of the multi-faceted societal process called globalization by focusing on its impact in the Islamic world, particularly in Asia.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I*

**ASIAN 202 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I*

**Stage III****ASIAN 302 (2 Points)****Asian Diasporas**

The historical backgrounds, development and modern situations in Korean and Chinese emigration are examined, particularly in respect of Korean migrants, through case studies of individual, group and host society experiences.

*Prerequisite: 4 points passed at Stage II*

**Honours and Master's Courses****ASIAN 790A (2 Points)****ASIAN 790B (2 Points)****Dissertation**

Sources in the Asian language being studied should be used in preparing this dissertation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ASIAN 790 A and B*

**ASIAN 794A (5 Points)****ASIAN 794B (5 Points)****Thesis**

Sources in the Asian language being studied should be used in preparing this thesis.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ASIAN 794 A and B*

**ASIAN 797A (7 Points)****ASIAN 797B (7 Points)****Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ASIAN 797 A and B*

**Chinese****Stage I****CHINESE 100 (2 Points)****Beginning Modern Chinese 1**

Designed to provide basic written and spoken skills in modern standard Chinese (Mandarin, *Putonghua*) for beginners.

*Restriction: CHINESE 110, 130.111*

**CHINESE 101 (2 Points)****Beginning Modern Chinese 2**

By the end of this course, students will be able to recognize and write approximately 600 Chinese characters and to converse in basic language.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 100*

*Restriction: CHINESE 110, 130.111*

**CHINESE 110 (2 Points)****Chinese for Native Speakers**

Intended for native speakers of a Chinese dialect. Introduces the pronunciation, romanization, vocabulary and grammar of modern standard Mandarin. Special attention will be given to the contrast between Mandarin and Cantonese, as well as between spoken Mandarin and written Chinese.

*Restriction: CHINESE 100, 101, 130.111*

**CHINESE 124 (2 Points)****Modern China to 1950 through Film and Literature**

The rise of modern China is reflected in the literature, films and other arts in the first half of the twentieth century. A number of May Fourth-era short stories and several films made or set in the period are studied in English for the insights they provide into the social and cultural changes in this period.

*Restriction: 130.122*

**CHINESE 125 (2 Points)****China since 1950 through Film and Literature**

Political and social changes in China under the Communist Party are introduced through a study in English of short stories, films and other arts produced to appeal to new audiences. A major concern is how artists attempted to serve personal, political and audience needs. The content is a continuation of CHINESE 124 but this course may be taken separately.

*Restriction: 130.122*

**CHINESE 130 (2 Points)****Rethinking China**

An introduction to the artistic, literary, historical and philosophical heritage of China, allowing students to engage with stimulating texts from historical times to the modern period. Taught in English.

**Stage II****CHINESE 200 (2 Points)****Intermediate Modern Chinese 1**

CHINESE 200 and 201 are continuations of CHINESE 100 and 101. Emphasis is placed on oral and aural competence and on the further development of skills in grammar, vocabulary, comprehension and sentence construction. Full-form Chinese characters are introduced systematically. Texts used offer an introduction both to a range of Chinese writing styles and various

aspects of Chinese culture. Skills of cursory reading are also introduced.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 100 and 101*  
*Restriction: CHINESE 210, 211*

**CHINESE 201 (2 Points)**

**Intermediate Modern Chinese 2**

A continuation of CHINESE 200.  
*Prerequisite: CHINESE 200 or 277*  
*Restriction: CHINESE 210, 211*

**CHINESE 210 (2 Points)**

**Chinese for Business**

Designed for students to develop their communicative competence in Chinese in business situations. Emphasis will be placed on commonly used commercial terms, phrases, sentence patterns and cultural background. General language skills in listening, speaking, reading and writing (related to business situations) will be taught throughout the course. This course is intended for native speakers of Chinese.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 110 or 130 or other appropriate Stage I courses*  
*Restriction: CHINESE 200, 201*

**CHINESE 211 (2 Points)**

**Readings in Modern and Classical Chinese for Native Speakers**

Intended for native speakers of Chinese. Readings are selected from important classical and modern Chinese literary works. Special attention is given to the cultivation of the ability to read with critical appreciation. A required proficiency in English is presumed.

*Prerequisite: 130.111 or CHINESE 110*  
*Restriction: 130.202, CHINESE 200, 201*

**CHINESE 220 (2 Points)**

**Major Schools of Chinese Thought**

Examines in detail the fundamental texts and tenets of the Confucian, Daoist and Buddhist traditions. Students will be expected to participate actively in class presentations.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 120 or 130*

**CHINESE 221 (2 Points)**

**Classical Chinese Literature in Translation**

Students will read translations of key works from the period and analyse their literary qualities and cultural significance. Requires no knowledge of the Chinese language and is open to all students.

*Prerequisite: 130.122 or CHINESE 120 or 121 or 123 or 124 or 125 or 130*

**CHINESE 222 (2 Points)**

**Modern Chinese Literature in Translation**

Through the study of a selection of short fiction from twentieth century China this course introduces strategies for reading and critical analysis to explore such issues as narrative, cultural modernization, gender, socialism, realism, dissent, modernism, etc. in the context of modern China. All texts are in English. Requires no knowledge of Chinese and is open to all students.

*Prerequisite: COMPLIT 100 or approval of the Head of School*

**CHINESE 277 (2 Points)**

**Chinese Study Abroad 2A**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: School approval required*

**CHINESE 278 (2 Points)**

**Chinese Study Abroad 2B**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: CHINESE 277 and School approval required*

**Stage III**

**CHINESE 300 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Modern Chinese 1**

Consolidates students' language skills in all areas. Materials covering various aspects of modern China are used for reading and conversation. In addition, critical study of supplementary materials further develops understanding of the principles and practice of the modern Chinese language.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 200 or 277, and CHINESE 201 or 278*  
*Restriction: CHINESE 310, 311*

**CHINESE 301 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Modern Chinese 2**

A continuation of CHINESE 300.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 300 or 377*  
*Restriction: CHINESE 310, 311*

**CHINESE 304 (2 Points)**

**Classical Chinese 1**

This course introduces a basic knowledge of classical Chinese language with selective readings from representative works of the pre-Qin period (before 221 BC). The emphasis will be on the differences and similarities between modern Chinese and classical Chinese in terms of vocabulary and grammar.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 201 or 210*  
*Restriction: 130.302, CHINESE 310, 311*

**CHINESE 305 (2 Points)**

**Classical Chinese 2**

A continuation of CHINESE 304. Readings cover the whole of imperial China, in prose and poetry. Students are required to understand key functional words and to be familiar with the cultural background of the texts and the historical development of classical Chinese language and literature.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 304*  
*Restriction: 130.302, CHINESE 310, 311*

**CHINESE 310 (2 Points)**

**Translation for Native Speakers**

Designed to develop Chinese-English and English-Chinese translation skills for Chinese-speaking students. Students are also introduced cumulatively and inductively to basic theories and principles of translation. Assumes a required proficiency in English.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 210*  
*Restriction: 130.302, CHINESE 300, 301*

**CHINESE 311 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Readings in Modern and Classical Chinese for Native Speakers**

This is a continuation of CHINESE 211 leading to: (i) the use of more advanced texts for critical study, (ii) more in-depth training in the skills of literary criticism, and (iii) more emphasis on the development of the ability to write precis, commentary and critical reviews. Assumes a required proficiency in English.

*Prerequisite: CHINESE 211*  
*Restriction: 130.302, CHINESE 300, 301*

- CHINESE 377** (2 Points)  
**Chinese Study Abroad 3A**  
Refer to the entry for *Language Study Abroad*.  
Prerequisite: School approval required
- CHINESE 378** (2 Points)  
**Chinese Study Abroad 3B**  
Refer to the entry for *Language Study Abroad*.  
Prerequisite: CHINESE 377 and School approval required
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- CHINESE 700** (4 Points)
- CHINESE 700A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 700B** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Modern Chinese: Fourth Year**  
A rounding off of the undergraduate language programme. Original Chinese source materials from various fields are used, written in both traditional and simplified characters. Students will be expected to write reviews and other critical essays.  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 700 A and B, or CHINESE 700
- CHINESE 701A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 701B** (2 Points)  
**Classical Chinese Literature: A Survey**  
A broad overview of Chinese poetry, prose and fiction from the Shijing to Ming and Qing fiction, using both original materials and secondary sources.  
Prerequisite: CHINESE 305  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 701 A and B
- CHINESE 702A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 702B** (2 Points)  
**Modern Chinese Literature: A Survey**  
An overview of Chinese literature since the May Fourth Movement, using both original materials and secondary sources.  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 702 A and B
- CHINESE 703A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 703B** (2 Points)  
**Traditional Chinese Historiography**  
Historical writings are read for their classic ancient prose as well as for the understanding of China's philosophical and historical concepts. Representative texts are chosen from major historical works and historiographical criticisms.  
Prerequisite: CHINESE 305  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 703 A and B
- CHINESE 704A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 704B** (2 Points)  
**Traditional Chinese Verse**  
An examination of Chinese poetry and verse from the Shijing through to the Qing Dynasty. Students will develop critical approaches to the verse and its analysis.  
Prerequisite: CHINESE 305  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 704 A and B
- CHINESE 706A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 706B** (2 Points)  
**Readings in Confucian and Daoist Texts**  
The major Confucian and Daoist classics have always been valued for the elegance of their texts as well as for the profundity of their philosophy.
- Attention will be paid to philological problems of Chinese texts as well as their philosophical contents.  
Prerequisite: CHINESE 305  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 706 A and B
- CHINESE 707** (2 Points)  
**Teaching Chinese as a Foreign Language 1**  
Provides an overview and analysis of the theory of teaching Chinese as a foreign language, its research and practice world-wide, and the key characteristics of the Chinese language from a pedagogical perspective. Includes the evaluation and development of TCFL teaching materials and issues concerning Chinese language curriculum design and development. With Head of School approval, native speakers of Chinese and others who have reached this level outside The University of Auckland are also eligible to enrol.  
Prerequisite: CHINESE 301 or its equivalent
- CHINESE 708** (2 Points)  
**Teaching Chinese as a Foreign Language 2**  
Continuation of CHINESE 707 leading to the theory and practice of teaching Chinese phonetics, vocabulary, grammar, Chinese characters, training in conversational, reading and compositional skills. Includes contrastive analysis in TCFL classroom. Classroom observation and supervised teaching practice in TCFL classes if available.  
Prerequisite: CHINESE 707
- CHINESE 711A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 711B** (2 Points)  
**Traditional Chinese Fiction**  
The Ming-Qing Novel: Using two selected texts, *Xiyou ji* and *Honglou meng*, as case studies, this year-long course examines the poetics and practice of the Ming-Qing *zhanghui xiaoshuo* via close readings of the primary materials and traditional commentaries. Modern critical perspectives will also be introduced.  
Prerequisite: CHINESE 305  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 711 A and B
- CHINESE 712A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 712B** (2 Points)  
**Modern Chinese Fiction**  
In-depth examination of aspects of Chinese fiction since the May Fourth Movement, including readings and critical assessment.  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 712 A and B
- CHINESE 715A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 715B** (2 Points)  
**Readings in Non-literary Modern Chinese**  
Training in the reading of Chinese texts from a range of sources and styles. Builds on verbal and writing skills learned in the undergraduate Chinese language programme.  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 715 A and B
- CHINESE 716** (4 Points)  
**CHINESE 716A** (2 Points)  
**CHINESE 716B** (2 Points)  
**'River Elegy' and Chinese Cultural Discourse since the 1980s**  
The 1988 television documentary series *Heshang* (River Elegy) brought together several strands of the re-examination of the state of Chinese culture. This course discusses the series, films and other products

of this 'cultural fever' (*wenhua re*).

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 716 A and B, or CHINESE 716

CHINESE 717 (4 Points)

CHINESE 717A (2 Points)

CHINESE 717B (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Chinese Linguistics

Investigates the phonetics/phonology, written system, dialectology, semantics, grammar (morphology and syntax) and rhetoric of Chinese. Also covered briefly are topics relating language to culture and society.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 717 A and B, or CHINESE 717

CHINESE 718A (2 Points)

CHINESE 718B (2 Points)

#### Advanced Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature

Intensive study of a particular author or authors in the second half of the twentieth century.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 718 A and B

CHINESE 719 (4 Points)

CHINESE 719A (2 Points)

CHINESE 719B (2 Points)

#### Bibliography and Research Methodology

Students are introduced to traditional Chinese bibliography and to reference tools available in both Chinese and Western languages. Equal emphasis is given to both theory and practice of bibliographical research.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 719 A and B, or CHINESE 719

CHINESE 722 (2 Points)

CHINESE 722A (1 Point)

CHINESE 722B (1 Point)

#### A Course-related Research

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 722 A and B, or CHINESE 722

CHINESE 724A (2 Points)

CHINESE 724B (2 Points)

#### Chinese Film

Students will watch, read about and discuss feature films in a range of genres from the 1930s to the present, noting the social, political and cultural contexts in which the films were produced and watched. Taught in English.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 724 A and B

CHINESE 725 (4 Points)

#### Advanced Translation Practice

Provides students with a broad training in professional translation between Chinese and English.

CHINESE 726A (2 Points)

CHINESE 726B (2 Points)

#### Chinese Semantics and Syntax

Provides an introduction to Chinese semantics and syntax in both theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 726 A and B

CHINESE 727 (4 Points)

CHINESE 727A (2 Points)

CHINESE 727B (2 Points)

#### Chinese New Zealanders: Special Studies

Students will study both the historical development of the New Zealand Chinese community and recent immigration trends. Special attention will be paid to the impact on New Zealand's demographic profile, the social and economic implications as well as race relation issues. Identity issues will be explored through literature.

Restriction: 130.320

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 727 A and B, or CHINESE 727

CHINESE 728 (2 Points)

#### Special Topic

CHINESE 729A (2 Points)

CHINESE 729B (2 Points)

#### Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 729 A and B

CHINESE 730 (2 Points)

CHINESE 730A (1 Point)

CHINESE 730B (1 Point)

#### Research Essay

Supervised research on an approved topic.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 730 A and B, or CHINESE 730

CHINESE 731A (2 Points)

CHINESE 731B (2 Points)

#### Research Essay

Supervised research on an approved topic.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 731 A and B

CHINESE 732A (2 Points)

CHINESE 732B (2 Points)

#### Special Studies

Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 732 A and B

CHINESE 780A (2 Points)

CHINESE 780B (2 Points)

#### Honours Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 780 A and B

CHINESE 790 (4 Points)

CHINESE 790A (2 Points)

CHINESE 790B (2 Points)

#### Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 790 A and B, or CHINESE 790

CHINESE 794A (5 Points)

CHINESE 794B (5 Points)

#### Thesis

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 794 A and B

CHINESE 797A (7 Points)

CHINESE 797B (7 Points)

#### Research Portfolio

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 797 A and B

---

**Classical Studies**


---

**Stage I****CLASSICS 110 (2 Points)****Classical Mythology through Tragedy**

A study of the mythology of ancient Greece and Rome through the tragedies of Aeschylus, Sophocles, Euripides and Seneca.

**CLASSICS 120 (2 Points)****Philosophy of Ancient Greece and Rome**

An introduction to the philosophic thought of Greece and its development into Roman times.

**CLASSICS 130 (2 Points)****Love and Death in Greek and Roman Literature**

A study of selected literary texts from ancient Greece and Rome that deal with two themes that continue to be relevant today.

**CLASSICS 140 (2 Points)****Classical Mythology in Epic**

A study of the treatment of mythology in ancient Greek and Roman epic poetry.

**Stage II****CLASSICS 210 (2 Points)****Greek and Roman Epic Poetry**

A study of the beginnings of European epic poetry: especially in Homer and Virgil.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101, or LATIN 101

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 310

**CLASSICS 215 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101 and 102, or LATIN 101 and 102

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 315

**CLASSICS 216 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 316

**CLASSICS 217 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or ANCHIST 102 or 103

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 317

**CLASSICS 220 (2 Points)****Greek and Roman Comedy**

A study of the comedies of Aristophanes and Menander, Plautus and Terence.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101, or LATIN 101

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 320

**CLASSICS 230 (2 Points)****The Novel in Greece and Rome**

A study of Greek and Roman prose fiction with emphasis on origins, conventions, techniques and influence: Petronius, Longus, Apuleius and others.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101, or LATIN 101

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 330

**CLASSICS 240 (2 Points)****Dialogues of Plato**

An interpretative study with attention to the literary form, dramatic and rhetorical features and dialectical method, with their implications for our

understanding of the arguments, concepts and positions presented. Dialogues to be read involve topics such as: ethics, the soul, love, education, knowledge, politics, reason and persuasion, the theory of forms and the nature of the cosmos.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101, or ANCHIST 102 and 2 points at Stage I in Philosophy, or 4 points at Stage I in Philosophy, or EUROPEAN 100 and ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 340

**CLASSICS 250 (2 Points)****Socrates, Plato and the Pythagoreans**

A study of the main figures in the Platonic and Pythagorean traditions in ancient philosophy. Particular attention will be paid to: the influences of Socrates and the original Pythagorean school on Plato, Plato's own conception of philosophy and the subsequent emergence of neo-Pythagoreanism and neo-Platonism.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101, or ANCHIST 102 and 2 points at Stage I in Philosophy, or 4 points at Stage I in Philosophy, or EUROPEAN 100 and ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 350

**CLASSICS 260 (2 Points)****Humanity, Nature and Knowledge in Ancient Philosophy**

A study of Aristotle and the Hellenistic philosophical schools, focusing on the conception of human nature in Aristotle's ethical and political works, and the alternatives presented by Stoicism, Epicureanism and Scepticism.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101, or ANCHIST 102 and 2 points at Stage I in Philosophy, or 4 points at Stage I in Philosophy, or EUROPEAN 100 and ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 360

**CLASSICS 270 (2 Points)****Art and Society in Ancient Greece**

A study of the art and architecture of the ancient Greeks. Emphasis will be placed on the role of the visual arts as vehicles for the expression of social values and political and imperial ideas.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or ANCHIST 102 or 103 or ARTHIST 101 or 111

*Restriction:* 100.204, CLASSICS 370

**CLASSICS 280 (2 Points)****Art and Society in Ancient Rome**

A study of the art and architecture of the ancient Romans. Emphasis will be placed on the role of the visual arts as vehicles for the expression of social values and political and imperial ideas.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies or ANCHIST 102 or 103 or ARTHIST 101 or 111

*Restriction:* 100.204, CLASSICS 380

**CLASSICS 285 (2 Points)****Greek Tragedy**

Tragedy as a concept, a means of interpreting events, and a literary genre, is central to the ancient Greeks' way of constructing their world. Through a close reading of a selection of ancient dramas, this course will explore the nature and interpretation of tragedy with particular reference to Aristotle's Poetics.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 385

**Stage III****CLASSICS 310 (2 Points)****Greek and Roman Epic Poetry**

A study of the beginnings of European epic poetry especially in Homer and Virgil.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 210

**CLASSICS 315 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 215

**CLASSICS 316 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 216

**CLASSICS 317 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 217

**CLASSICS 320 (2 Points)****Greek and Roman Comedy**

A study of the comedies of Aristophanes and Menander, Plautus and Terence.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 220

**CLASSICS 330 (2 Points)****The Novel in Greece and Rome**

A study of Greek and Roman prose fiction with emphasis on origins, conventions, techniques and influence: Petronius, Longus, Apuleius and others.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 230

**CLASSICS 340 (2 Points)****Dialogues of Plato**

An interpretative study with attention to the literary form, dramatic and rhetorical features and dialectical method, with their implications for our understanding of the arguments, concepts and positions presented. Dialogues to be read include topics such as: ethics, the soul, love, education, knowledge, politics, reason, persuasion, the theory of forms, and the nature of the cosmos.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 240

**CLASSICS 350 (2 Points)****Socrates, Plato and the Pythagoreans**

A study of the main figures in the Platonic and Pythagorean traditions in ancient philosophy. Particular attention will be paid to the influences of Socrates and the original Pythagorean school on Plato, Plato's own conception of philosophy, and the subsequent emergence of neo-Pythagoreanism and neo-Platonism.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 250

**CLASSICS 360 (2 Points)****Humanity, Nature and Knowledge in Ancient Philosophy**

A study of Aristotle and the Hellenistic philosophical schools, focusing on the conception of human nature in Aristotle's ethical and political works, and the alternatives presented by Stoicism, Epicureanism and Scepticism.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 260

**CLASSICS 370 (2 Points)****Art and Society in Ancient Greece**

A study of the art and architecture of the ancient Greeks. Emphasis will be placed on the role of the visual arts as vehicles for the expression of social values and political and imperial ideas.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies or 4

points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* 100.204, CLASSICS 270

**CLASSICS 377 (2 Points)****Classical Studies Study Abroad**

Study abroad on archaeological sites in Greece, Italy and the Mediterranean area.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in CLASSICS and

permission of the Head of Department

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 377

**CLASSICS 380 (2 Points)****Art and Society in Ancient Rome**

A study of the art and architecture of the ancient Romans. Emphasis will be placed on the role of the visual arts as vehicles for the expression of social values and political and imperial ideas.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies or 4

points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* 100.204, CLASSICS 280

**CLASSICS 385 (2 Points)****Greek Tragedy**

Tragedy as a concept, a means of interpreting events, and a literary genre, is central to the ancient Greeks' way of constructing their world. Through a close reading of a selection of ancient dramas, this course will explore the nature and interpretation of tragedy with particular reference to Aristotle's Poetics.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies

*Restriction:* CLASSICS 285

**Comparative Literature****Stage I****COMPLIT 100 (2 Points)****Reading Comparatively: An Introduction**

Through the study of an anthology of short fiction, poetry, myth and drama from every part of the world, introduces strategies for reading literature across national and cultural boundaries. All texts are in English.

**Stage II****COMPLIT 200 (2 Points)****Narrative: Theory and Practice**

Myths, oral tales, histories, feature films, diaries, strip cartoons, news reports, evidence in court, as well as novels and short stories, are all forms of narrative. Narrative seems to be a fundamental instrument used in all cultures to make the flow of experience comprehensible. Introduces theoretical tools for studying narrative, and applies them to a variety of texts from many cultures. All texts are in English.

*Prerequisite:* Any 8 points passed

**COMPLIT 202 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Interpreting Folktales**

An introduction to the study and interpretation of folktales. Tales from many cultures will be examined. Contrasting theories on the origins and meaning of folktales will be explored.

*Prerequisite:* Any 8 points passed

<b>COMPLIT 203</b>	(2 Points)	<b>COMPLIT 792</b>	(6 Points)
<b>Special Topic</b>		<b>COMPLIT 792A</b>	(3 Points)
<i>Prerequisite: Any 8 points passed</i>		<b>COMPLIT 792B</b>	(3 Points)
<b>COMPLIT 204</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Dissertation</b>	
<b>Special Topic: Travelling Tragedy</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in COMPLIT 792 A and B, or COMPLIT 792</i>	
A study of the mutations that tragedy has undergone from its origins as a theatrical form in ancient Greece to its contemporary manifestations around the world in drama, fiction and film.		<b>COMPLIT 794A</b>	(5 Points)
<i>Prerequisite: Any 8 points passed</i>		<b>COMPLIT 794B</b>	(5 Points)
<hr/>		<b>Thesis</b>	
<b>Stage III</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in COMPLIT 794 A and B</i>	
<b>COMPLIT 300</b>	(2 Points)	<b>COMPLIT 797A</b>	(7 Points)
<b>Special Topic: Travelling Tragedy</b>		<b>COMPLIT 797B</b>	(7 Points)
A study of the mutations that tragedy has undergone from its origins as a theatrical form in ancient Greece to its contemporary manifestations around the world in drama, fiction and film.		<b>Research Portfolio</b>	
<i>Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in COMPLIT 797 A and B</i>	
<i>Restriction: COMPLIT 204</i>		<hr/>	
<hr/>		<b>Cook Islands Maori</b>	
<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>		<b>Stage I</b>	
<b>COMPLIT 701</b>	(4 Points)	<b>COOKIS 101</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Special Topic: Telling and Retelling</b>		<b>Cook Islands Maori Structure 1</b>	
Most storytelling involves the reworking of existing stories. Exploration of the processes involved in retelling, including: oral transmission, rewriting in a different period or culture, and adaptation from written form to cinematic or sung form. Poses questions about the psychological and social functions of retelling. Examples taken from Europe, Asia and the Pacific.		An introduction to the rules that make up the Cook Islands Maori language.	
<b>COMPLIT 702</b>	(4 Points)	<b>COOKIS 102</b>	(2 Points)
<b>COMPLIT 702A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Cook Islands Maori Acquisition 1</b>	
<b>COMPLIT 702B</b>	(2 Points)	An introduction to speaking, reading and writing in Cook Islands Maori language.	
<b>Special Topic</b>		<i>Prerequisite: COOKIS 101</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in COMPLIT 702 A and B, or COMPLIT 702</i>		<hr/>	
<b>COMPLIT 703</b>	(4 Points)	<b>Stage II</b>	
<b>COMPLIT 703A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>COOKIS 201</b>	(2 Points)
<b>COMPLIT 703B</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Cook Islands Maori Structure 2</b>	
<b>Rethinking Literary Translation</b>		Extends students' understanding and appreciation of the rules of the language, and further develops their confidence in the use of Cook Islands Maori. It will also introduce the other main dialects outside the Rarotongan dialect.	
Literary translation has come to be recognized as a dynamic and problematic process, central to comparative literature, cross-cultural encounter, and colonization and the post colonial. Introduces current debates in the field.		<i>Prerequisite: COOKIS 101</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in COMPLIT 703 A and B, or COMPLIT 703</i>		<b>COOKIS 202</b>	(2 Points)
<b>COMPLIT 704</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Cook Islands Maori Acquisition 2</b>	
<b>Special Topic</b>		Provides students with the opportunity to speak, read and write in Cook Islands Maori. It will give students the opportunity to translate and interpret texts from Cook Islands Maori to English and vice versa. Students will be introduced to the language used in chants, songs and ceremonial activities.	
<b>COMPLIT 705</b>	(2 Points)	<i>Prerequisite: COOKIS 102</i>	
<b>Reading Across Cultures</b>		<b>COOKIS 203</b>	(2 Points)
An advanced level review of approaches to the study of literature across cultures. Includes structuralist and post-structuralist theory, feminist perspectives, marxist, new historicist and post-colonial approaches, literature and translation, interdisciplinary approaches to literature. Tests the potential and limits of current theories of literature in the study of literature from many cultures and periods.		<b>Cook Islands Maori Literature</b>	
<i>Restriction: COMPLIT 700</i>		Introduces students to the range of genres in Cook Islands Maori that can be classified as 'literature'. These include: narratives, myths and legends, songs, poetry and chants. These genres will be analysed with a view to describing their purposes, history and context, cultural significance, the devices employed, and appreciation.	
<hr/>		<i>Prerequisite: Approval of Head of Department</i>	
<hr/>		<b>Stage III</b>	
		<b>COOKIS 301</b>	(2 Points)
		<b>Cook Islands Maori Structure 3</b>	
		Provides students with an in-depth understanding of	

the structure of Cook Islands Maori and gives them the opportunity to study at least one of the dialects. The course will also examine language involvement in cultural and ceremonial activities.

*Prerequisite:* COOKIS 201

**COOKIS 302 (2 Points)**

**Cook Island Maori Acquisition 3**

Further develops students' confidence in the use of the language and increase fluency and competence in conversation and composition. Gives students the opportunity to increase their vocabularies through the examination of selected texts and also the chance to develop the skills of translating and interpreting the language to English and vice versa.

*Prerequisite:* COOKIS 202

**Croatian**

**Stage I**

**CROATIAN 100 (2 Points)**

**Beginners' Croatian 1**

Written and oral use of Croatian for students without previous knowledge of the language; tested in the following ways: comprehension, composition, translation, linguistic explanation, dictation, reading, basic conversation.

*Restriction:* 290.111

**CROATIAN 101 (2 Points)**

**Beginners' Croatian 2**

Written and oral use of Croatian for students who have passed CROATIAN 100 or have some prior knowledge of the language; tested in the following ways: composition, translation, linguistic explanation, reading, conversation.

*Prerequisite:* 290.111 or CROATIAN 100 or Departmental approval required

**Development Studies**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**DEVELOP 700A (2 Points)**

**DEVELOP 700B (2 Points)**

**Issues in Development Theory**

Critical examination of theories of development, emphasizing the relationship between economic growth on the one hand, and cultural, social and political change on the other. Consideration of development strategies, environment, gender and development, foreign assistance and investment, migration, population, political change and the implications of global economic change for national development.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DEVELOP 700 A and B*

**DEVELOP 701 (2 Points)**

**Development Practice and Research**

Focuses on the practice of development. Topics will include: development project planning, the project cycle, the role of various development agencies (NGOs, consultancies, etc), and participatory research methods for social impact assessment.

*Restriction:* DEVELOP 708

**DEVELOP 702 (4 Points)**

**DEVELOP 702A (2 Points)**

**DEVELOP 702B (2 Points)**

**Gender and Development**

Considers a range of topics focusing on the centrality of gender to development and developing nations. Topics include: social status, politics, education, health, fertility, gendered economies, micro-credit systems and familial resource allocation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DEVELOP 702 A and B, or DEVELOP 702*

**DEVELOP 703 (4 Points)**

**DEVELOP 703A (2 Points)**

**DEVELOP 703B (2 Points)**

**Directed Study**

Supervised study on a topic or topics approved by the Director.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DEVELOP 703 A and B, or DEVELOP 703*

**DEVELOP 704 (4 Points)**

**DEVELOP 704A (2 Points)**

**DEVELOP 704B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in DEVELOP 704 A and B, or DEVELOP 704*

**DEVELOP 705 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**DEVELOP 706 (2 Points)**

**DEVELOP 706A (1 Point)**

**DEVELOP 706B (1 Point)**

**Internship in Development**

Involves students in the operation of a development organization, enables them to put into practice development theory and methods, provides experience of researching and writing a report or proposal to be used by the organization, assists them to reflect on the process in the light of development and other social science research literature.

*Prerequisite:* DEVELOP 701 and approval of Director of Development Studies

*To complete this course students must enrol in DEVELOP 706 A and B, or DEVELOP 706*

**DEVELOP 707 (4 Points)**

**DEVELOP 707A (2 Points)**

**DEVELOP 707B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in DEVELOP 707 A and B, or DEVELOP 707*

**DEVELOP 708 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**DEVELOP 792 (6 Points)**

**DEVELOP 792A (3 Points)**

**DEVELOP 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in DEVELOP 792 A and B, or DEVELOP 792*

**DEVELOP 796A (7 Points)**

**DEVELOP 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in DEVELOP 796 A and B*

**DEVELOP 797A (7 Points)**

**DEVELOP 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in DEVELOP 797 A and B*

---

## Drama Studies

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

**DRAMA 701A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 701B** (2 Points)

#### Theories of Drama

Addresses the relationship between theatre and drama. Considers some perennial issues, eg the actor, the text, the author, the audience, the space, the time, the social context and occasion, the performance, the effect, and the manifestation of these issues in specific theatres and dramas.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 701 A and B*

**DRAMA 702A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 702B** (2 Points)

#### Performance Skills

Classes in stage acting, improvisation, movement, voice and character as they relate to modern and historical texts and forms of drama. The course will be taught over two semesters in workshop modules which are timetabled in relation to DRAMA 703.

*Restriction: 155.603*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 702 A and B*

**DRAMA 703A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 703B** (2 Points)

#### Production Practice

Classes in lighting, design, rehearsal principles and practice and stage management. These classes will form the basis on which full public productions of historical and modern texts will be undertaken. It is likely, in any one year, that one of these productions will be of a text which is taught in undergraduate literary courses in the University.

*Restriction: 155.601*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 703 A and B*

**DRAMA 704A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 704B** (2 Points)

#### Directing for Live Performance

A workshop course which concentrates on the work of the director with text and with actors. Includes classes in text study, text reading, weekly lectures and practical directing exercises. Visits from practising directors.

*Restriction: 155.610*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 704 A and B*

**DRAMA 705A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 705B** (2 Points)

#### Writing for Live Performance

Series of classes and exercises in building blocks of dramatic and performative writing, using study of existing plays and forms of drama as a starting point. Classes will meet with practising dramatists. Each student will be required to complete one substantial writing project in addition to set exercises.

*Restriction: 155.604*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 705 A and B*

**DRAMA 706A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 706B** (2 Points)

#### Modernism in Theatre

Some of the major theorists and theories, some of the major movements and moments, and some seminal

texts and performances in the development of modern theatre in the first half of the twentieth century. This will be followed by looking at the manifestation of modernist ideas and practice in the second half of the century. Examples and cases will be drawn from Italian, French, Russian, German and American theatres as well as some material from dance, music and the fine arts.

*Restriction: 155.611*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 706 A and B*

**DRAMA 707A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 707B** (2 Points)

#### New Zealand and Pacific Drama

A text-based course focusing on plays from the last 30 years, principally from New Zealand, but also from Fiji, Samoa and Australia.

*Restriction: 155.612*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 707 A and B*

**DRAMA 720** (4 Points)

**DRAMA 720A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 720B** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic in Drama: Advanced Playwriting

Develops skills in playwriting, with each student working under supervision.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 720 A and B, and DRAMA 720*

**DRAMA 721** (2 Points)

#### Directed Study in Drama

A supervised study of some approved area in drama and theatre studies.

**DRAMA 790A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 790B** (2 Points)

#### Dissertation in Drama

Written work of about 10,000 words on a supervised topic.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 790 A and B*

**DRAMA 794A** (5 Points)

**DRAMA 794B** (5 Points)

#### Thesis

Written work of about 25,000 words on a supervised topic.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 794 A and B*

**DRAMA 797A** (7 Points)

**DRAMA 797B** (7 Points)

#### Research Portfolio

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 797 A and B*

---

## Employment Relations and Organization Studies

*Note: Prescriptions for courses included in this subject are listed under the subjects Management and Employment Relations, Economics and Psychology.*

---

## English

**ENGLISH 91W** (2 Points)

#### Foundation English 1

Written and spoken English, and the study of New Zealand English as one variety among many will be developed through the study of literature. Short

stories and novels by New Zealand and other authors will be studied. Work by Albert Wendt, Patricia Grace, Maurice Gee, Fiona Kidman, Witi Ihimaera and Janet Frame will be offered as well as work by writers from other countries around the world.

**ENGLISH 92W (2 Points)**  
**Foundation English 2**

New Zealand and other poets will introduce students to poetry. Students will learn how to unpack language and discover the essence of what a poet wishes to express. Students are encouraged to view a production together before producing a scene from a play. Two films are reviewed for filming technique and the film as literature is considered.

*This course requires prior enrolment in ENGLISH 91W.*

**Stage 1**

**ENGLISH 100 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Chaucer and Shakespeare**

An introduction to the pleasures of literature from the past through works by the foremost writers of the Medieval and the Renaissance periods. The wit, erudition and inventiveness of two of England's finest poets will be displayed: in Chaucer's case through a selection from *The Canterbury Tales*, while Shakespeare's plays come from the genres of tragedy, comedy and history.

**ENGLISH 101 (2 Points)**  
**Modern to Post-modern: An Introduction**

Explores and questions the ideas and values we have inherited from the twentieth century, which still shape our lives and our identities today. Most of the great themes of the century are in these texts: God, the self, sex and desire, capitalism and colonization, war, power, patriarchy, and language itself. The texts, videos and music used in this course illuminate the radical changes in cultural values occurring during the twentieth century alongside the crises and catastrophes that marked the times and redefined the modern metropolises.

**ENGLISH 103 (2 Points)**  
**Reading Aotearoa: New Zealand Literature and the Pacific Asia Context**

An introduction to the literature of Aotearoa New Zealand, through selected examples of poetry, fiction and plays by Pakeha, Maori and Pacific and Asian New Zealanders. An outward-looking comparative perspective will be included through a selection of texts in English from the Pacific and Asia. Related works in film and other media will also be sampled.

**ENGLISH 107 (2 Points)**  
**Poetry, Prose and Drama: Past and Present**

An introduction to a selection of a wide variety of literary texts from different periods, countries and authors, chosen to suggest the historical, geographical and cultural range of literatures in the English language, and to acquaint students with some of the main literary conventions and devices within the genres of poetry, drama, the novel and the short story.

**ENGLISH 109 (2 Points)**  
**Drama on Stage and Screen**

An introduction to conventions of dramatic practice and to the dimension of performance, both on stage and screen. Discussion of performance will extend to

broader issues such as self-representation and gender. The texts studied will represent different types of dramatic styles, primarily from the twentieth century, and will include some pairings of play texts and screen productions.

**ENGLISH 110 (2 Points)**  
**Maori Dreams, Pacific Destinies**

An introduction to the literature of recent Maori and Polynesian authors writing in English. How do they represent themselves, and their futures, in New Zealand and the region? This theme will be explored in selections from the poetry and short stories, novels and plays of Polynesia's most exciting writers.

**ENGLISH 111 (2 Points)**  
**Literature: An Introduction: From Sonnets to Comics**

An introduction to literature from Shakespeare to the present. Through engaging with masterpieces from each of the last five centuries, in a wide range of genres – poetry, drama, novel, short story, essay, film and comic – students will be introduced to historical and cultural contexts, to literary terms, approaches and theory, and to new findings about the human mind that suggest how and why invented worlds and inventive words matter so much to us.

**ENGLISH 121 (2 Points)**  
**Reading/Writing/Texts**

Addresses the needs of students in both English and other disciplines where both writing and reading have an important role in learning. The course fosters personal writing skills and also introduces writing as a subject of study in itself.

**ENGLISH 156 (2 Points)**  
**Selected Author or Authors**

An introduction to a selection of established authors and their works, chosen to explore a range of historical and geographical literatures. Acquaints students with a number of famous literary works – principally novels but not excluding poetry and drama – and to provide students with ways to approach and enjoy them.

**Stage II**

**ENGLISH 200 (2 Points)**  
**Medieval Literature**

An introduction to medieval narrative, especially texts which celebrate, interrogate or subvert ideas and ideals of knighthood and chivalry. Chaucer's 'Marriage Group' from *The Canterbury Tales* explores the position of women in the chivalric world; Malory imagines and laments the end of the world of chivalry; the medieval romances offer perspectives ranging from elite self-justification to populist critique.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage 1 in English*

**ENGLISH 202 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Old English**

An introduction to the language and writings of England in the Anglo-Saxon period (the six centuries before the Norman Conquest). The primary focus is to enable students to become confident readers of Old English, and they will also be able to study the beginnings of the English language, and the first stages of a specifically English culture.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in English, or LINGUIST 100 or 103*

**ENGLISH 210****(2 Points)****Age of Shakespeare: Poetry**

A study of one of the greatest periods of English poetry, beginning with the sonnets of Shakespeare and ending with the splendour of Milton's *Paradise Lost*. Included are the sonnets of Spenser and Sidney, Donne's profane and religious poetry, Herbert's intricate and Marvell's witty verse, and finally the poetry of Katherine Phillips and Aphra Behn.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in English

**ENGLISH 213****(2 Points)****Age of Shakespeare: Tragedy**

An introduction to the golden age of English theatre, involving detailed study of tragedies by Shakespeare and his contemporaries. There is a pronounced theatrical bias starting with a section on theatre history encouraging a response to the plays as theatrical artefacts. Attention is repeatedly drawn to each play's theatrical dimension, while the practical function of dramatic verse is also stressed.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in English

**ENGLISH 219****(2 Points)****Nineteenth-century Literature: Self and Society**

Considers a range of literature from the nineteenth century – poetry, fiction and drama – as regards its treatment of growing up in the period. Issues covered include the recognition of childhood as a special state, the establishment of an individual's gender and sexual identity, and the opportunities and constraints afforded by the changing social hierarchy and religious belief systems.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage 1 in English

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 104

**ENGLISH 220****(2 Points)****Novels Since 1900**

A study of fiction. The prescribed works vary widely in their country of origin, formal elements and themes. Some are recognized as classics, while others show the new directions taken by the writers of their time. The texts are given detailed consideration as well as being placed within social and critical contexts.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in English

**ENGLISH 221****(2 Points)****New Zealand Literature 2**

An exploration of the relation between literature produced in New Zealand and the various ways questions of cultural identity and difference have been posed here. The course includes Maori literature, non-fiction, colonial novels, poetry and nationalism, and more recent drama about and by Maori.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in English

**ENGLISH 222****(2 Points)****Modern Poetry 1900–1945**

An introduction to the great modernist poets writing in English from Yeats to Marianne Moore; their fundamental rethinking of the poem and their search for a style appropriate to the twentieth century. Only six poets are studied, giving students the opportunity of exploring some of the most influential literature of the age in depth.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in English

**ENGLISH 226****(2 Points)****Autobiography: Writing Themselves**

What is autobiography? Does it describe, create or

deconstruct an identity? We will consider the cultural and material conditions of self-presentation in a range of ethnic, racial and national groups, from Virginia Woolf's *A Sketch of the Past* (1940) to the present. What choices must be made when making a life into a narrative? What makes one text a 'real' life story, while another text is fiction? Why have autobiographical forms been so important in recent writing?

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage 1 in English

**ENGLISH 230****(2 Points)****Introduction to Critical Theory and Cultural Studies**

An introduction to the concerns and methods of contemporary criticism through an examination of a number of concepts central to the study of literature, film and other media. The history of these concepts is explored as are the theoretical issues they raise, and the reading strategies they permit.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage 1 in English or FTVMS 100 and 101

**ENGLISH 231****(2 Points)****The Pacific Diaspora**

In the aftermath of colonialism New Zealand, the Pacific and the Pacific Rim have witnessed an explosion of writing by Maori, Pacific and Asian writers. The texts of a selection of the region's leading writers and artists working in poetry, short story, the novel, plays and film are explored.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage 1 in English, or MAORI 130, or PACIFIC 103

**ENGLISH 240****(2 Points)****Children's Literature: Words and Pictures**

Introduces critical reading of the twentieth century's achievements in combining verbal text and visual image in children's literature. Texts studied cover a range of reading ages, offering opportunities to compare local and overseas texts. Attention is especially drawn to the socialization of the child through reading, and to the interpretation of visual materials.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage 1 in English

**ENGLISH 255****(2 Points)****Special Topic in English 2: The Art of Writing**

Focuses on creative performance and reading, and covers poetry, fiction and non-fiction, such as essay and travel writing. Texts by established writers are discussed, but the emphasis is on producing original writing, and students can find their own style and areas of particular interest.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points passed

**ENGLISH 256****(2 Points)****Tolkien and his Worlds**

Study of the *Lord of the Rings* with particular reference to Tolkien's use of Celtic, Germanic and Christian myths; an introduction to some of the most formative and influential mythologies of European culture.

*Prerequisite:* 8 points passed

**ENGLISH 257****(2 Points)****Writing, Literacy, Argument**

Students practise and develop skills of critical interpretation, argument and writing that underpin authoritative public presentation or performance; theoretical aspects of position are another major concern. Examines a range of material or 'voices' in the public domain (academic writing, polemical or

political statements and artistic performance) which present views on topics of public import and call for cultural literacy.

*Prerequisite: 4 points including ENGLISH 121 or ENGWRIT 101, or any 4 points in English, or any 6 points*

**ENGLISH 260 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in English*

**ENGLISH 261 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 6 points passed*

**Stage III**

**ENGLISH 302 (2 Points)**

**Middle English Popular Literature**

Studies popular works in lyric, dramatic and narrative genres. Lyrics are often amorous, sometimes political, frequently devotional; narrative includes comic tale, fable, romance and outlaw tale; drama comprises the major theatrical traditions of morality and biblical historycycle plays. Covers texts written for religious purposes as well as secular, but socially embedded and often with pleasure among their aims.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

*Restriction: ENGLISH 768*

**ENGLISH 307 (2 Points)**

**Byron and Romanticism**

An exploration of the literary and cultural politics of this exciting period of revolution and reaction through a detailed study of Lord Byron's major works, which are set alongside a contextual study of poems by Wordsworth, Coleridge, Keats and Shelley, various Gothic novels, and works by feminist authors of the period.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

**ENGLISH 308 (2 Points)**

**The Novel, the Native and the New**

An inquiry into the genre and nature of the 'novel' in the eighteenth century, focusing on new worlds opened up by science and travel, commerce and the book industry, women's writing and the developing public sphere, cultural contact and colonialism. The novel is considered both a problem of the modern and a means of negotiating unprecedented phenomena.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

**ENGLISH 310 (2 Points)**

**Shakespeare: Comedies and Tragicomedies**

An examination of seven of Shakespeare's comedies and tragicomedies: the romantic comedies of his first decade and a half as a playwright; the so-called 'problem plays', the darker comedies of his middle years; and the 'romances', the strangely haunting tragicomedies of his final years. The nature of comedy and its relationship to tragedy is also explored.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

**ENGLISH 314 (2 Points)**

**Major Works: 16th and 17th Centuries**

The sonnet sequences of Shakespeare and of his contemporaries, Spenser and Sidney, are studied in considerable depth and detail.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

**ENGLISH 315 (2 Points)**

**16th and 17th Century Drama**

An advanced study of a selection of plays by Shakespeare's contemporaries and their seventeenth century successors.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

**ENGLISH 319 (2 Points)**

**History of Literary Criticism**

The development of the criticism of literature from Aristotle to the twentieth century, beginning with classical literary criticism and ending with the New Critics, I.A. Richards, and deconstruction.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

*Restriction: ENGLISH 334*

**ENGLISH 320 (2 Points)**

**Victorian Literature**

Focuses on Victorian narrative practices. One module, concentrating on novels by Dickens, Thackeray and James, examines them in the context of the Victorian reading public and publishing practices. The other module deals with the narrative possibilities open to and deployed by women writers, and features novels by Charlotte Brontë, George Eliot and Olive Schreiner.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

**ENGLISH 321 (2 Points)**

**Theory and the Gothic**

Students learn about contemporary theory and cultural studies by studying a selection of classic Gothic writing from the nineteenth century and films from the twentieth, together with influential psychoanalytical, new-historical, and queer-studies treatments of Gothic material.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, or FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**ENGLISH 323 (2 Points)**

**American Literature: Contemporary Poetry**

An introduction to the work of a dozen influential poets, this course emphasizes new poetic developments. The focus is on the still controversial L=A=N=G=U=A=G=E poetry that emerged in the late 1970s, and developments concurrent with it. This shift is seen against a background of changes - in the media, in government and in intellectual culture.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

**ENGLISH 325 (2 Points)**

**Novels from the Post-colonial World**

A study of a variety of novels dealing with the aftermath of Empire in different parts of the world. Post-Independence disillusion, neo-colonial struggle and the intersection of the discourses of colonialism and decolonization with that of gender are illuminated through fiction from continents (Africa, including South Africa, India and the Americas) as well as from nation states in the Caribbean.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*

**ENGLISH 326 (2 Points)**

**Recent Women Writers**

A survey course covering a wide range of recent women's writing, focusing on contemporary or controversial issues relevant to women in various cultures, including Afro-American, Australian, Maori, Indian and European.

*Prerequisite: 8 points at Stage II*

**ENGLISH 327 (2 Points)**

**Australian Literature**

This course examines some of the main currents of

Australian fiction and drama of the 1970s and 1980s, including special focus on fiction by women and Aboriginal writing in English.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English

**ENGLISH 331A** (1 Point)

**ENGLISH 331B** (1 Point)

**Shakespeare on Screen**

An investigation of the ways in which directors have adapted Shakespeare's plays to the cinema or television screen.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, or FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 331 A and B

**ENGLISH 332** (2 Points)

**Aspects of 20th Century Drama**

A study of British and Irish drama since the 1970s, concentrating on politically committed dramatists and the emergence of women playwrights. Addressing the plays primarily as theatre texts, it emphasizes the theatrical strategies and conventions deployed in the texts, some of which self-consciously celebrate theatricality. Teaching combines lectures, discussions, play-readings and viewing theatrical videos.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English

**ENGLISH 333** (2 Points)

**New Zealand Literature 3: Selected Topics**

Selected topics in New Zealand literature and cultural studies. The range of topics will vary from year to year in response to staff research interests and the department's wider New Zealand studies programme.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English

**ENGLISH 335** (2 Points)

**Colonial and Post-colonial Writing in the Pacific**

English language responses to the Pacific in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, together with contemporary literature in English by Pacific Island writers.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English

**ENGLISH 336** (2 Points)

**Victorian Poetry**

A study of a range of Victorian poets. They include canonical figures, such as Tennyson, Robert Browning and Matthew Arnold, as well as women poets who have received sustained critical attention only recently, such as Elizabeth Barrett Browning, Christina Rossetti and Amy Levy. Focal points of the course are: the discourse of love and sexuality, religious and spiritual belief in a changing society, and the practice of the dramatic monologue.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English

**ENGLISH 337** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Medieval Icelandic Language and Literature**

An introduction to a language and literature akin to Old English. Of particular interest for the study of medieval narrative, as well as the twentieth-century writers (notably Tolkien) who have made creative use of the myths and legends recorded by medieval Icelanders.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English or Linguistics

**ENGLISH 338** (2 Points)

**Studies in Chaucerianism**

The successors, appropriators and imitators of Chaucer. A study of the reception of Chaucer's writing and its continuing presence in writing in England and Scotland. A central topic will be Scottish writers of the fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 339, 340 or 341

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 711 or 744

**ENGLISH 339** (2 Points)

**Medieval Narrative: The French Connection**

English narratives (romances and short lais) studied in comparison with their French progenitors. For example, Marie de France and the English Breton lais; the romance of Horn.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 738 or 745

**ENGLISH 340** (2 Points)

**Arthurian Literature**

The Arthurian story, from its first passage into French in the twelfth century. The English writings are studied in comparison with their French sources and counterparts (in translation).

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English or FRENCH 200

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 738, 746

**ENGLISH 341** (2 Points)

**Middle English Literature: Major Works**

Works studied include poems of the Alliterative Revival (such as *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* and *Piers Plouman*).

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 338, 339 or 340

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 701 or 747

**ENGLISH 342** (2 Points)

**Beowulf**

A contextual study of the epic poem *Beowulf*. Some time is given to the translation of the text, and students are required to study about 1,200 lines in the original. The poem's relation to the literature and society of the Anglo-Saxon period and its Germanic analogues is also explored.

*Prerequisite:* ENGLISH 202

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 765

**ENGLISH 343** (2 Points)

**Writing Poetry**

Conceived as a writing workshop, this course guides students through poetry and poetics and the writing of poetry. Students will be required to submit, as the course requirement, an analysis of a poem (1,000 words) and an anthology of poems (1,000 words) as well as a portfolio of poems.

*Prerequisite:* 8 points passed and English Department approval required

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 328 Note: Enrolment limited to 32 students

**ENGLISH 344** (2 Points)

**Writing the Short Story**

Conceived as a writing workshop, this course guides students through the practice of writing the short story. Students will be required to submit, as the course requirement, an analysis of a short story (1,000 words) and a short story anthology (1,000 words) as well as a portfolio of short stories.

*Prerequisite:* 8 points passed and English Department approval required

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 328 Note: Enrolment limited to 32 students

- ENGLISH 345** (2 Points)  
**Adolescent Fiction**  
 Adolescence is a problematic category and, according to Kristeva, a peculiarly modern one; necessarily, the same holds true for adolescent fiction. The aim of this course is to examine this phase of development that is neither childhood nor adulthood, but lies between, and recent literary and filmic responses to the characteristic interests and demands of readers at this stage of their lives. Course reading will include film and television, as well as written texts.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*
- ENGLISH 346** (2 Points)  
**African and Caribbean Literature**  
 The Caribbean, by virtue of its geography and history, embraces cultural elements of Africa, India, Europe and North America. The focus, however, will primarily be on Caribbean and African societies, in order to address a range of issues connected to these variously hybrid cultures: slavery, black identity and sexuality, nation/narration, home and location/dislocation.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II*
- ENGLISH 347** (2 Points)  
**Poetry Off the Page**  
 The most recent technologies for performing and preserving poetry are in the process of coalescing with the oral roots of the art form. This shift in transmission and retrieval and its implications for reading communities are examined in three areas: Poetry reading (live performance and audiovisual record); the poetry archive (physical and electronic); and Electronic poetry (virtual communities, real readers).  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points in English*
- ENGLISH 350** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Rhetoric and Composition**  
 Explores writing through discussion of theories of language use, especially issues raised by theorists of rhetoric and composition: cognitive process theory, discourse analysis, language as social semiotic, literary studies, race and gender, writing for new technologies. The course centres on writing theory, but there is a practical dimension: students investigate their present writing practices and consider possible future demands.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*
- ENGLISH 351** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English*
- ENGLISH 352** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 8 points at Stage II*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- ENGLISH 700A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 700B** (2 Points)  
**Old English**  
 A study of major Old English poetry, especially those sections of *Beowulf* not studied in ENGLISH 342/765. Some time is given to the translation of texts; in the remainder the poetry's relation to the literature and society of the Anglo-Saxon period and Germanic analogues is explored.  
*Prerequisite: ENGLISH 342 or 765*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 700 A and B*
- ENGLISH 705A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 705B** (2 Points)  
**20th Century Poetry**  
 A study of the development of modernist poetry, beginning with Yeats and then examining some of the major poets of the first half of the twentieth century.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 705 A and B*
- ENGLISH 706** (4 Points)  
**ENGLISH 706A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 706B** (2 Points)  
**Shakespeare: Selected Plays and Poems**  
 The focus of this course varies from year to year, but includes attention to several of the most influential approaches to the reading of Shakespearean texts: psychoanalysis, feminism, new historicism, cultural materialism and post-colonial theory.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 706 A and B, or ENGLISH 706*
- ENGLISH 709A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 709B** (2 Points)  
**20th Century Drama**  
 A study of the work of a wide range of important dramatists of the past 125 years, including a number of non-anglophone playwrights who have exerted a major influence or have been important in their own right in the twentieth century's theatre history.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 709 A and B*
- ENGLISH 713** (4 Points)  
**ENGLISH 713A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 713B** (2 Points)  
**Research Essays**  
 A number of essays (submitted throughout the year) are written within a field, genre or period of literature. Students with a specific topic should approach both the course convener and a member of staff working in the area.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 713 A and B, or ENGLISH 713*
- ENGLISH 714A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 714B** (2 Points)  
**Modern Irish Authors**  
 A detailed exploration of Yeats's *Collected Poems* and Joyce's *Ulysses* read in conjunction with poems, plays, short stories and novels by Irish authors. Each text is assessed in its own terms, but broader issues are explored: the question of exile, the politics of language, and the role of great works in establishing (or undermining) a national literary tradition.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 714 A and B*
- ENGLISH 716A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 716B** (2 Points)  
**Modern Poetics**  
 The theory of poetry as poets themselves have developed it has important implications for reading and writing about their poetry in an academic context. In the reading of texts by Ezra Pound, Louis Zukofsky, Gertrude Stein, Charles Olson, Susan Howe and Charles Bernstein, and the exploration of recent topics in theory, changing concepts of the activity of writing are examined.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 716 A and B*

Course Descriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

- ENGLISH 717A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 717B** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand Literature**  
 A study of issues, themes and theoretical perspectives in New Zealand literature, especially the relationship of New Zealand writing to its changing social and cultural contexts.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 717 A and B*
- ENGLISH 719A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 719B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic 1: Literature and Society 1375–1550**  
 A study of texts, mostly literary, written in the period of transition from medieval to modern society in England.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 719 A and B*
- ENGLISH 730A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 730B** (2 Points)  
**19th Century Women Novelists**  
 An examination of both 'canonical' and lesser-known nineteenth century women novelists, mainly from Britain. They are studied primarily in two contexts: the nineteenth century debate on the 'Woman Question', and contemporary feminist criticism.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 730 A and B*
- ENGLISH 732A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 732B** (2 Points)  
**Popular Fiction**  
 A critical study of several varieties of modern popular fiction, especially children's literature, romance and crime fiction (both in print and on television). Reading of texts will be supported by discussion of a range of theoretical issues.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 732 A and B*
- ENGLISH 733A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 733B** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand and Australian Women Writers**  
 An examination of Australian and New Zealand women novelists, short story writers and poets from the 1890s to the 1960s, relating their works to the condition of, and attitudes towards, women in both countries. The course provides students with the opportunity to apply both post-colonial and feminist critical theories.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 733 A and B*
- ENGLISH 734A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 734B** (2 Points)  
**Irish Literature and Politics**  
 A study of the relationship between literature and the politics of national identity in Ireland from the sixteenth to the twentieth century.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 734 A and B*
- ENGLISH 736A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 736B** (2 Points)  
**Pacific Literature**  
 A study of the oral and written literatures of the Pacific (Polynesia, Melanesia and Micronesia, including the Tangata Aborigine of Australia), especially the literature in English by indigenous writers, and how that is related to other New Literatures in English.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 736 A and B*
- ENGLISH 737A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 737B** (2 Points)  
**Subjectivity, Sexuality and Transgression in 17th Century Literature**  
 An examination of drama as a site where sexual and religious conventions were established, contested and transformed. Elizabethan, Caroline and Restoration dramas will be related to topics including: transvestism and the stage, sexual ethics and the Caroline court, and Restoration libertinism. Women's changing roles as actors, playwrights and members of the audience will be an important focus.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 737 A and B*
- ENGLISH 739A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 739B** (2 Points)  
**Two Poets: Robin Hyde and H.D.**  
 A detailed exploration of the work and reception of two major twentieth century poets: Robin Hyde from New Zealand and H.D. from an Anglo-American tradition. The publishing careers of these women and their respective positioning within nationalist and Modernist traditions will be a primary focus. Contextual and critical comparisons will also be explored.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 739 A and B*
- ENGLISH 741** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 741A** (1 Point)  
**ENGLISH 741B** (1 Point)  
**Medieval Icelandic Narrative**  
 An examination of the literary reconstruction of the pagan past in a variety of sources. Texts include extracts from the family sagas and legendary histories, regnal chronicles, historically-based accounts of the exploration and settlement of Iceland, Greenland and North America, as well as traditions relating to Viking activity in the British Isles.  
*Prerequisite: ENGLISH 337*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 741 A and B, or ENGLISH 741*
- ENGLISH 744** (2 Points)  
**Studies in Chaucerianism**  
 The successors, appropriators and imitators of Chaucer. A study of the reception of Chaucer's writing, and its continuing presence in writing in England and Scotland. A central topic will be Scottish writers of the fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 339, 340 or 341*  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 711 or 338*
- ENGLISH 745** (2 Points)  
**Medieval Narrative: The French Connection**  
 English narratives (romances and short lais) studied in comparison with their French progenitors. For example, Marie de France and the English Breton lais; the romance of Horn.  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 738 or 339*
- ENGLISH 746** (2 Points)  
**Arthurian Literature**  
 The Arthurian story, from its first passage into French in the twelfth century. The English writings are studied in comparison with their French sources and counterparts (in translation).  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 738 or 340*

- ENGLISH 747** (2 Points)  
**Middle English Literature: Major Works**  
 Works studied include poems of the Alliterative Revival (such as *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* and *Piers Plowman*).  
*Prerequisite: 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 338, 339 or 340*  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 701, 341*
- ENGLISH 748** (2 Points)  
**Medieval and Early Modern Women: Representations**  
 The cultural construction of femininity in deep chronological perspective. A study of the representation, and sometimes self-representation, of individual figures or types of mythographic, legendary and historical significance, as, for example, Medea, Mary Magdalene or virgin martyrs. The central concern is with written representation, but appropriate comparisons will be made with the visual arts and historical actuality.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points from ENGLISH 302, 338, 339, 340 or 341*  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 742*
- ENGLISH 749** (2 Points)  
**Chaucer Studies**  
 A major Chaucerian text or text grouping is considered in its wider literary and cultural context, including sources, analogues and comparable writings from Continental Europe.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points from ENGLISH 302, 338, 339, 340 or 341*  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 711*
- ENGLISH 750A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 750B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Oral Tales and English Fictions**  
 Introduces a selection of novels and other literary forms from the past 200 years which retell traditional and oral narratives. Each text is read in conjunction with earlier stories, thus exposing students to narratives central in the development of English fiction. Readings in narrative theory and in the theory, practice and history of folktale studies are also provided.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 750 A and B*
- ENGLISH 751A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 751B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic 2005: Directed Research Studies**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 751 A and B*
- ENGLISH 752** (2 Points)  
**Jane Austen and Charlotte Brontë**  
 Examines a selection of the fiction of two very well-known but very different early nineteenth-century women novelists, from their juvenilia to their last completed novels. Considers how they engaged with contemporary assumptions about women's writing, and studies the reception history of their works from the nineteenth century onwards.
- ENGLISH 753** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: The Writings of Allen Curnow**  
 Allen Curnow (1911–2001) is widely recognised internationally as one of the most distinguished poets writing in English in the second half of the twentieth century. This course will explore the development of his poetry and literary criticism through three "phases", and in relation to the social, political and intellectual contexts in which the poems were written.
- ENGLISH 754** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Early Literature**
- ENGLISH 755** (2 Points)  
**McCahon and the Poets**  
 Examines the use made of text in general and poetry in particular, in the work of the important twentieth-century New Zealand artist Colin McCahon. Considers McCahon's use of poetry by Donne, Hopkins, Baxter, Brasch, Caselberg, Hooper and Kereama, his deployment of Biblical texts, plus his own writings, in the context of New Zealand art and poetry between 1940 and 1980.
- ENGLISH 756** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: McCahon and Text**  
 A study of the text-based art of Colin McCahon, New Zealand's most important visual artist. The use of text as image is an arresting and controversial feature of his painting. This practice is considered both in relation to comparable practices among modern and contemporary artists, and to McCahon's own development and how it reflects his response to his New Zealand circumstances.
- ENGLISH 757** (2 Points)  
**Studies in New Zealand Poetry**  
 A study of New Zealand poetry, especially of the post-war period, and the issues of nationalism, regionalism, modernism etc, with which poets of that era were concerned.
- ENGLISH 758** (2 Points)  
**Rhetoric and Composition**  
 Explores writing through discussion of theories of language use, especially issues raised by theorists of rhetoric and composition: cognitive process theory, discourse analysis, language as social semiotic, literary studies, race and gender, writing for new technologies. The course centres on writing theory, but there is a practical dimension: students investigate their present writing practices and consider possible future demands.
- ENGLISH 759** (2 Points)  
**Aphra Behn, Feminism and the Canon**  
 A study of selected plays, prose fictions and poems by Behn in relation to both the emerging canon of early modern English literature, and to contemporary debates about canonicity within feminism and cultural studies.  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 718, 737*
- ENGLISH 760** (2 Points)  
**Milton and Poetic Authority**  
 Milton is the poet who has been most significant in the establishment of the familiar canon of English poetry, so his achievement raises questions about the greatness of poetry written in one set of historical circumstances for an audience that the poem itself participates in constructing. In this context the course covers a range of Milton's works, but concentrates on *Paradise Lost*.  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 718*
- ENGLISH 761** (2 Points)  
**Literature and the Cross-cultural Frontier**  
 Examines representations of the early encounter between Europeans and indigenous peoples in three settings: the United States, the Pacific and New

Zealand. The course is informed by the cross-fertilization of literary studies with anthropology and history, and students will be taught how to interpret and edit literary and extra-literary texts in an interdisciplinary manner.

Restriction: ENGLISH 715

**ENGLISH 762 (2 Points)**

**Literature and the Problems of Settlement**

Examines texts that highlight foundational and ongoing problems in two different but comparable settler societies, the United States and New Zealand, in order to promote a more complex sense of each nation's cultural history. We study a number of major novels, but also explore natural history writing and popular genres such as the western.

Restriction: ENGLISH 715

**ENGLISH 763A (7 Points)**

**ENGLISH 763B (7 Points)**

**Writing the Novel**

Conceived as a writing workshop, the course guides students through the major project of writing a novel. Students will be expected to read examples from a wide variety of genres of fiction, and to complete substantial work towards the first draft of a novel.

Prerequisite: Departmental approval required

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 763 A and B

**ENGLISH 764 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: James Joyce**

A study of all his major works except *Finnegans Wake*, one chapter of which will be included.

**ENGLISH 765 (2 Points)**

**Beowulf**

A contextual study of the epic poem *Beowulf*. Some time is given to the translation of the text, and students are required to study about 1,200 lines in the original. The poem's relation to the literature and society of the Anglo-Saxon period and its Germanic analogues are also explored.

Prerequisite: ENGLISH 202

Restriction: ENGLISH 700, 342

**ENGLISH 766 (2 Points)**

**Narrative: From Epic to Novel**

Introduces students to the advanced analysis of narrative, by examining four classic texts: Homer's *Odyssey*, Shakespeare's *Hamlet* (and its medieval sources), Tolstoy's *Anna Karenina* and Joyce's *Ulysses*. Texts are from four different eras and in four different modes (epic, drama, saga and novel). Includes a focus on evolutionary and cognitive explanations of narrative.

**ENGLISH 767 (2 Points)**

**Nabokov: The American Years**

Focuses on masterpieces from Nabokov's American years - his autobiography, *Invitation of a Memory*, and the novels *Lolita*, *Pale Fire* and *Invitation of a Memory*, - and considers especially the relationship between Nabokov's ideas and the narrative strategies he uses to engage readers.

**ENGLISH 768 (2 Points)**

**Middle English Popular Literature**

Studies popular works in lyric, dramatic and narrative genres. Lyrics are often amorous, sometimes political, frequently devotional; narrative includes comic tale, fable, romance and outlaw tale; drama comprises the major theatrical traditions of

morality and scriptural cycle plays. Covers texts written for religious purposes as well as secular, but socially embedded and often with pleasure among their aims.

Restriction: ENGLISH 302

**ENGLISH 792 (6 Points)**

**ENGLISH 792A (3 Points)**

**ENGLISH 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 792 A and B, or ENGLISH 792

**ENGLISH 794A (5 Points)**

**ENGLISH 794B (5 Points)**

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 794 A and B

**ENGLISH 796A (7 Points)**

**ENGLISH 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 796 A and B

**ENGLISH 797A (7 Points)**

**ENGLISH 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 797 A and B

**English as a Second Language**

**Stage 1**

**ESOL 10W**

**English as a Second Language 1**

This foundation course is designed to develop students' language and study skills necessary for academic study across all disciplines. Integrates reading and writing skills. The skills required for reading comprehension and note-making, summary writing, essay planning, drafting, and editing essays form the core elements. Strategies for developing vocabulary and key aspects of grammar are also studied.

**ESOL 20W**

**English as a Second Language 2**

This foundation course is designed to further develop students' language and study skills for academic study. The reading and writing skills introduced in ESOL 10W are developed to a higher level of competence with further development of vocabulary and grammar.

**ESOL 101**

**(2 Points)**

**Academic English Writing**

Focus is on writing skills for academic study, starting an essay, drawing an outline, gathering information, acknowledging sources and correct referencing.

Restriction: This course is available only for students of non-English speaking backgrounds

**ESOL 102**

**(2 Points)**

**Academic English Listening and Reading**

Focus is on the listening, reading, note-taking and summary writing skills, and strategies needed for academic study at tertiary level.

Restriction: This course is available only for students of non-English speaking backgrounds

**Stage II****ESOL 200 (2 Points)****Advanced Academic Spoken English**

Aims to develop skills in leading and participating in academic seminars, giving a general academic presentation, data presentation and conducting interviews.

*Prerequisite: ESOL 101 or 102 or Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: 180.100. ESOL 200 is available only for students of non-English speaking backgrounds*

**ESOL 201 (2 Points)****Advanced Academic Written English**

Develops academic writing skills at advanced undergraduate level. Writing and editing skills are emphasised, as well as conventions of key academic text types. Language features studied include register, style and cohesion. Students focus either on library-based research essays or empirical research reports.

*Prerequisite: ESOL 101 or Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: This course is available only for students of non-English speaking backgrounds*

**ESOL 202 (2 Points)****Practical English Phonology**

Introduces key concepts of the phonological systems of English. Develops an understanding of how these function in the pronunciation of English, through learning to transcribe from oral texts with the use of models of native English text to develop English pronunciation.

*Restriction: This course is available only for students of non-English speaking backgrounds.*

**ESOL 210 (2 Points)****Special Topic****English Writing****Stage I****ENGWRIT 101 (2 Points)****English Writing for Academic Purposes**

A skills-based analysis of texts written for academic purposes. Topics include: essays of comparison and contrast, argumentative essays, problem solution texts, literature reviews, critiques, and report writing.

**ENGWRIT 111 (2 Points)****Introduction to Writing in the Professions**

Assists students to learn, develop and apply writing and critical thinking skills. Offers basic writing instruction, but also introduces process and rhetorical approaches to the analysis and composition of major forms of business and professional communication: memo, letter, report, proposal. The goal is to develop writing that identifies audience, uses clear, concise language and presents an effective case.

**Ethics**

*Prescriptions for courses included in this programme are listed under their respective subject codes.*

**Ethnomusicology**

*Prescriptions for courses included in this programme are listed under their respective subject codes.*

**European Languages and Literatures**

*Note: Major or minor not available. EUROPEAN 200 may be taken as part of the Film, Television and Media Studies programme. EUROPEAN 201 and 301 may be taken as part of the Linguistics programme. EUROPEAN 205 may be taken as part of European Studies, German, Theatre Studies, and Medieval and Early Modern European Studies.*

**Stage I****EUROPEAN 100 (2 Points)****Thinking Europe**

An introduction to the study of Europe, organized around a number of major themes, rather than chronologically. Will establish some of the basic reference points – including linguistic and ethnic groupings, historical periods, literary and cultural movements, religious and philosophical traditions, political and cultural figures, all of which are indispensable for the study of European culture. Required course for majors in French, German, Italian, Russian and Spanish.

**Stage II****EUROPEAN 200 (2 Points)****Screening Europe**

Europe's rich and distinctive film tradition provides an opportunity to examine issues of contemporary Europe and its individual nations. This course examines the sources, complexities and resonances of a number of European films and the ways in which they refer, directly or obliquely, to historical, social and political issues around the concept of Europe. The films shown will all be subtitled.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage I courses*

**EUROPEAN 201 (2 Points)****The Languages of Europe**

A comparative study of sociopolitical aspects of some main languages and language families in Europe from the Atlantic to the Urals in the modern period.

**EUROPEAN 205 (2 Points)****Staging Medieval Drama**

Taking its start in liturgy and folk customs, medieval drama quickly spread over most of Europe after the tenth century AD. Religious and secular dramas were acted out on stages in the open air as well as indoors. The way this was done differed greatly from how it happened in Shakespeare's days. Plays and traditions will be studied from various European countries with special attention to performance aspects. Scenes and play fragments will be acted out in workshops, with a special focus on morality drama.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points passed*

*Restriction: DUTCH 205*

**EUROPEAN 211 (2 Points)****Collective Memory in Europe**

A study of Europe's experience with war, occupation and totalitarian regimes in the twentieth century, as

recorded in memoirs and depicted in fiction and film from several nations of Europe.

*Prerequisites:* 4 points BA courses

*Restriction:* 194.111

**EUROPEAN 221 (2 Points)**  
**Images of the European City**

This interdisciplinary course examines the city as driving force, focus and subject in European culture. It considers visual and verbal images in literary texts, painting, architecture and film that depict the changing life of some European cities at key moments from the Middle Ages to the present. Cities such as Paris, Florence, Toledo, Amsterdam, Berlin, Copenhagen, Stockholm, Moscow and St Petersburg have played a crucial role in the cultural, as well as the political, development of their country. The selection of cities studied will vary from year to year.

**Stage III**

**EUROPEAN 301 (2 Points)**  
**The Vocabularies of Europe**

A comparative study of European vocabularies with special reference to French, English, German and Russian as representatives of the Romance, Germanic and Slavonic language families.

*Prerequisite:* EURLANG 201

**EUROPEAN 302 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

A specialized topic course that will vary from year to year and include contributions from specialists in the School of European Languages and Literatures and from visiting scholars.

**EUROPEAN 303 (2 Points)**  
**Jewish Culture and Identity in Europe**

An examination of the impact of Jewish culture and identity in Europe from the Middle Ages to modern times through an exploration of issues of identity and assimilation presented in representative literary texts, art and film by and about European Jews from critical periods.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II

**EUROPEAN 304 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Russian Language Acquisition 2**

Consolidates all language skills in a variety of registers and situations. Materials covering all aspects of modern Russia are used for reading and conversation. Critical study of these materials will further develop understanding of the principles and practice of modern Russian.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II

**EUROPEAN 311 (2 Points)**  
**Cross-cultural Currents in Medieval-Renaissance Europe**

This course aims to go beyond the official historical accounts and established literary canons of these periods to consider cross-cultural representation as one of the major developments of medieval-Renaissance eras of European cultural encounter, clash and fusion.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**EUROPEAN 700 (2 Points)**  
**Methods of Research in European Language, Literature and Cultural Studies**

An introduction to the theories and methods of

research in language, literature and cultural studies and practical instruction in skills involved in individual research and in the preparation of a dissertation or a thesis.

**EUROPEAN 701 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**EUROPEAN 702 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**French**

**Stage I**

*Note:* Students majoring in French would normally take FRENCH 103 and either FRENCH 129 or 159, 200 and two other French Stage II courses, 300 and two other French Stage III courses. Students may enter 101, 102, 103 or 200 level language courses according to their prior knowledge. Students wishing to advance in Language Acquisition only, or who are not completing a major or minor in French, do not have to comply with these requirements.

**FRENCH 101 (2 Points)**  
**Introductory French 1**

This is a four-skill language course for beginners or near-beginners. Students who have achieved in all standards entered for Level 2 NCEA French or gained grade average 50 or above should enter directly into FRENCH 102. This course does not count towards a major in French.

*Restriction:* FRENCH 151, 161

**FRENCH 102 (2 Points)**  
**Introductory French 2**

This is a four-skill language course for students who have achieved in all standards entered for Level 2 NCEA French or gained grade average 50 or above, or who have fewer than 16 credits at Level 3, or who have passed FRENCH 101 or 151 or 161. It is not available to students who qualify for FRENCH 103.

*Restriction:* FRENCH 152, 162

**FRENCH 103 (2 Points)**  
**French Language 1**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension in French. This course is designed for students with a minimum of 16 credits in Level 3 NCEA French, or who have passed FRENCH 102, 152, or 162. Particularly advanced students may be considered for direct entry to FRENCH 200.

*Prerequisite:* Pass in Bursary French or B- or higher in FRENCH 102 or 152 or 162

*Restriction:* FRENCH 100

**FRENCH 129 (2 Points)**  
**French Language and Culture in Film and Literature**

A linguistic and cultural course taught entirely in French and designed to enhance students' aural, oral and written proficiency through the study of a series of recent films and literary texts that also shed light on important aspects of twentieth century France.

*Corequisite:* FRENCH 103 or 200

**FRENCH 159 (2 Points)**  
**France: Culture and Identity**

A study of French national identity as this is reflected or challenged in a variety of French cultural movements and in the visual and print texts these have produced. The question of what it means to be

'French', particularly as this is modifying and being modified by France's participation in the European Union, will form the analysis of individual topics. Taught in English.

**FRENCH 161 (2 Points)**

**Introductory French 1 – Distance Learning**

This is a four-skill language course for beginners or near-beginners. No previous knowledge of French is required. Students who have achieved in all standards entered for Level 2 NCEA French or gained grade average 50 or above should enter directly into FRENCH 102 or 162. Prospective students must have access to email and a CD-Rom drive. This course does not count towards a major in French.

*Restriction: FRENCH 101, 151*

**FRENCH 162 (2 Points)**

**Introductory French 2 – Distance Learning**

This is a four-skill language course for students who have achieved in all standards entered for Level 2 NCEA French or gained grade average 50 or above, or who have fewer than 16 credits at Level 3, or who have passed FRENCH 101 or 151 or 161. It is not available to students who qualify for FRENCH 103. Prospective students must have access to email and a CD-Rom drive.

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 101 or 151 or 161 or a pass in Sixth Form Certificate French*

*Restriction: FRENCH 152*

**Stage II**

**FRENCH 200 (2 Points)**

**French Language 2**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of a topic, translation, dictation and reading aloud, with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 100 or 103 or 80% or more in Bursary French*

**FRENCH 214 (2 Points)**

**French Linguistics**

A presentation, in French, of key aspects of French linguistics relevant to the study and teaching of French as a foreign language, including phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics. The course assumes no prior specialist knowledge of this field.

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 100 or 103 or 200*

*Restriction: FRENCH 314*

**FRENCH 218 (2 Points)**

**History of the French Language**

An introduction to French linguistics, the history of French and regional variation in French.

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 100 or 200*

**FRENCH 230 (2 Points)**

**French for Business**

An essentially communicative French course designed to allow students to function in both oral and written French commercial activities. Topics covered will include: correspondence, report writing, form filling, the reading of contracts, and interacting and negotiating with clients.

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 100 or 103 or 200*

**FRENCH 231 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Modern France**

An introduction to society and culture in modern France. Topics include: religion and religious conflict, monarchy and court culture, the 'Age of Revolutions', urban culture and class relations, France during the World Wars, and legacies of decolonization and immigration in present-day French culture. The course is interdisciplinary in approach and is taught in English.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I*

*Restriction: FRENCH 229*

**FRENCH 239 (2 Points)**

**France on Screen: From Lumière to Godard**

An introduction to the major artistic and historical developments in French film, particularly as it relates to French culture, politics, history and society, from the birth of cinema up to and including the New Wave. The course also introduces some analytical tools for the appreciation of film: film grammar and basic aspects of film theory.

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 100 or 103, or FTMS 100 and 101*

*Restriction: FRENCH 339, 739*

**FRENCH 241 (2 Points)**

**Reading French Literature**

Introducing students to a variety of critical approaches, this course aims to provide a basic literary framework through the analysis of selected texts representing a range of genres and periods.

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 100 or 103 or 200*

**FRENCH 243 (2 Points)**

**French Theatre through Performance**

Twentieth-century French theatre studied through text, video, discussion and research-based stage work. Theoretical aspects of theatre will be explored and put into practice in class situations. Small group work will provide opportunities for research projects and performance elements in various aspects of French theatre.

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 103*

*Restriction: FRENCH 343*

**FRENCH 277 (2 Points)**

**French Study Abroad 2A**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*

**FRENCH 278 (2 Points)**

**French Study Abroad 2B**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 277 and permission of Head of Department*

**Stage III**

**FRENCH 300 (2 Points)**

**French Language 3**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: reading comprehension with linguistic and stylistic analysis, conversation, composition, exposition of a topic.

*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200*

*Restriction: FRENCH 301*

**FRENCH 301 (2 Points)**

**Advanced French**

Advanced language acquisition through the study of literary texts and films. Introduction to critical

reading, with strong emphasis on oral expression and essay writing. Selection of advanced grammar topics.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200

*Restriction:* FRENCH 300

**FRENCH 306 (2 Points)**  
**Medieval French Literature and Culture: Love and Laughter in the Middle Ages**

The main focus will be on language and literature, placing works in their historical and cultural contexts.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200

*Restriction:* FRENCH 706

**FRENCH 314 (2 Points)**  
**French Linguistics**

A presentation, in French, of key aspects of French linguistics relevant to the study and teaching of French as a foreign language, including phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics. The course assumes no prior specialist knowledge of this field.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200

*Restriction:* FRENCH 214

**FRENCH 320 (2 Points)**  
**French Translation Practice**

A course for students wishing to develop skills in translation and to increase their proficiency in using French in a professional or business environment.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200 or 300

*Restriction:* FRENCH 720

**FRENCH 322 (2 Points)**  
**Linguistic Topic: French Study Abroad**

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200 or 300, and permission of Head of Department

**FRENCH 329 (2 Points)**  
**The French-speaking World: Gender, Culture, Literature**

A study of culture and gender in texts and films from France, North Africa, Africa, Canada, the Caribbean and the Pacific.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200

*Restriction:* FRENCH 729

**FRENCH 330 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200 and permission of Head of Department

**FRENCH 339 (2 Points)**  
**France on Screen: From Lumière to Godard**

An introduction to the major artistic and historical developments in French film, particularly as it relates to French culture, politics, history and society, from the birth of cinema up to and including the New Wave. The course also introduces some analytical tools for the appreciation of film: film grammar and basic aspects of film theory.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200, or FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies

*Restriction:* FRENCH 239 and 739

**FRENCH 341 (2 Points)**  
**Panorama of the French Novel**

A study of the changing forms of the novel from the representations of the seventeenth century court in Madame de Lafayette's *La Princesse de Cleves* to the twentieth century experiments of the French 'new novelists'.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200

*Restriction:* FRENCH 741

**FRENCH 342 (2 Points)**

**French Theatre: From Farce to Frenzy**

A study of the development of French theatre, from medieval farce to the twentieth century theatre of the absurd.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200

*Restriction:* FRENCH 742

**FRENCH 343 (2 Points)**

**French Theatre through Performance**

Twentieth-century French theatre studied through text, video, discussion and research-based stage work. Theoretical aspects of theatre will be explored and put into practice in class situations. Small group work will provide opportunities for research projects and performance elements in various aspects of French theatre.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200

*Restriction:* FRENCH 243

**FRENCH 349 (2 Points)**

**French Cinema Since the New Wave**

An in-depth look at major developments in French cinema since 1965, with a particular focus on the 1990s. This course presupposes a good working knowledge of film grammar, for example, shot analysis, *mise en scène*, editing techniques.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 200, or FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film Television and Media Studies

*Restriction:* FRENCH 749

**FRENCH 377 (2 Points)**

**French Study Abroad 3A**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department

**FRENCH 378 (2 Points)**

**French Study Abroad 3B**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 377 and permission of Head of Department

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**FRENCH 700 (4 Points)**

**FRENCH 700A (2 Points)**

**FRENCH 700B (2 Points)**

**Language Acquisition**

Advanced language practice in French, with emphasis on conversation, close reading and oral presentations. French techniques of essay writing will be studied, and students will apply them in written assignments. Material will be drawn from literature (modern poetry and short stories).

*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 700 A and B, or FRENCH 700*

**FRENCH 701 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic in Old French: The Medieval Romance**

This course explores the evolving medieval French romance with particular emphasis on the Roman de la Rose as the quintessential medieval study of human nature.

**FRENCH 706 (4 Points)**

**Medieval French Literature and Culture: Love and Laughter in the Middle Ages**

The main focus will be on language and literature, placing works in their historical and cultural contexts.

*Restriction:* FRENCH 306

- FRENCH 710** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
An examination of major developments in French cinema since 1965, with a particular focus on the 1990s. Presupposes a good working knowledge of film grammar (shot analysis, mise en scène, editing techniques, for example).  
*Restriction: FRENCH 349*
- FRENCH 717** (4 Points)  
**Applied Linguistics**  
An introduction to the analysis of the French language using different linguistic models, with particular reference to their relevance for teaching.
- FRENCH 720** (4 Points)  
**FRENCH 720A** (2 Points)  
**FRENCH 720B** (2 Points)  
**Advanced French Translation**  
A study of translation theory and intensive practice in the translation of a variety of texts.  
*Restriction: FRENCH 320*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 720 A and B, or FRENCH 720*
- FRENCH 723** (4 Points)  
**20th Century Theatre**  
Trends in French theatre from 1900 to the 1990s. Students will be expected to read widely in the broader field of French theatre. Prescribed texts will be analysed against the general background of the developments in twentieth century theatre.
- FRENCH 724** (4 Points)  
**Writing the Self: Autobiography from Montaigne to Duras**  
An investigation of the nature of autobiography from writers such as Rousseau, Sand, Gide, and Colette who constitute the French tradition, to the 'new autobiographies' of the 1980s and 1990s in France. The focus of the course will be on the contemporary period.
- FRENCH 725** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- FRENCH 727** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- FRENCH 728** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- FRENCH 729** (4 Points)  
**Gender and Culture: Perspectives from the French-speaking World**  
A comparative study of the relation between gender and culture in selected sources: films, novels, personal and theoretical writings, from France, North Africa, the Caribbean, Africa, the French-speaking Pacific and Quebec.  
*Restriction: FRENCH 329*
- FRENCH 741** (4 Points)  
**Panorama of the French Novel**  
A study of the changing forms of the novel from the representations of the seventeenth century court in Madame de Lafayette's *La Princesse de Cleves* to the twentieth century experiments of the French 'new novelists'.  
*Restriction: FRENCH 341*
- FRENCH 742** (4 Points)  
**French Theatre: From Farce to Frenzy**  
A study of the development of French theatre from medieval farce to the twentieth century theatre of the absurd.  
*Restriction: FRENCH 342*
- FRENCH 749** (4 Points)  
**French Cinema Since the New Wave**
- FRENCH 750** (2 Points)  
**FRENCH 750A** (1 Point)  
**FRENCH 750B** (1 Point)  
**Special Studies**  
Supervised research on a topic or topics approved by the Head of Department.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 750 A and B, or FRENCH 750*
- FRENCH 785** (6 Points)  
**FRENCH 785A** (3 Points)  
**FRENCH 785B** (3 Points)  
**Honours Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 785 A and B, or FRENCH 785*
- FRENCH 790** (4 Points)  
**FRENCH 790A** (2 Points)  
**FRENCH 790B** (2 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 790 A and B, or FRENCH 790*
- FRENCH 792** (6 Points)  
**FRENCH 792A** (3 Points)  
**FRENCH 792B** (3 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 792 A and B, or FRENCH 792*
- FRENCH 794A** (5 Points)  
**FRENCH 794B** (5 Points)  
**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 794 A and B*
- FRENCH 796A** (7 Points)  
**FRENCH 796B** (7 Points)  
**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 796 A and B*
- FRENCH 797A** (7 Points)  
**FRENCH 797B** (7 Points)  
**Research Portfolio**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 797 A and B*

---

## Film, Television and Media Studies

---

### Stage I

**FTVMS 100** (2 Points)  
**Media Studies**

An introduction to the study of communication media in terms of the interplay between economics, politics, technology and culture. An examination of media industries, media texts and media audiences. The media examined include: film, sound recording, radio, television and the Internet. The course introduces students to the basic concepts and analytical tools of media studies.

**FTVMS 101 (2 Points)****Film Studies**

An introduction to the feature film, and the main traditions of film criticism. A series of outstanding films, from 1915 to the present, are explored in detail. The aim is to develop an historical perspective, an awareness of film-making as an art and an interest in the relationship between films and society, including debates about race, gender, censorship.

**FTVMS 110 (2 Points)****Advertising and Society**

While this course will look at how advertising works and examines the industry's viewpoint of the role of advertising, the focus of the course is a critical examination of advertising and advertisements, such as how advertisements convey meaning, the role advertising plays in consumer culture and how advertising fits into wider cultural and global changes.

**FTVMS 111 (2 Points)****Dimensions of Chinese Cinema**

An exploration of some of the main film movements, film genres and film-makers and their works from mainland China, Hong Kong and Taiwan.

**FTVMS 112 (2 Points)****Reading Contemporary Films**

Considers ways of analysing and interpreting contemporary films. The aim is to develop students' skills of close reading through the analysis of a range of contemporary films that represent a number of narrative and cinematic styles, both 'mainstream' and 'alternative'. Detailed attention will be paid to narrative strategies, narrative structure and 'visual story-telling', character construction, visual style, development of theme.

**FTVMS 113 (2 Points)****Film Genre: Science Fiction**

An examination of science fiction as a film genre, a historical phenomenon (beginning in the 1950s) and a way of imagining futures. The course addresses issues of technology, post-humanity, gender and utopia. Films will range from *Invasion of the Body Snatchers* (1956) to *Minority Report* (2002).

**Stage II****FTVMS 200 (2 Points)****Film and TV Studies**

An examination and comparison of film and television in relation to their cultural, political and economic aspects. Through a close study of selected film and television genres, the course demonstrates a range of critical methods. Various forms of drama, documentary and experimental work will be explored.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 201 (2 Points)****TV Studio Production: The Interview**

An introduction to the technical skills required to produce the interview, a core television form, as well as providing a critical framework within which to assess and critique industry practice. It will be a mix of formal lectures and practical exercises aimed at exploring the function and construction of the interview, interspersed with presentations from a variety of industry practitioners.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 202 (2 Points)****Hollywood and its Others**

An approach to Hollywood and other national cinema movements in three aspects: industrially; aesthetically, in terms of modes of narration; and socially and culturally, in terms of the cultural knowledges brought to bear on producing and reading the texts.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 203 (2 Points)****Techno-culture and New Media**

Theory and analysis of media technologies. An introduction to the major debates about technology, multimedia and the digital age. Examines the academic and popular discourse on techno-culture in modernity, focusing on the exchange of bodies and commodities as bits, bytes and loops within transnational capitalism, and the increasingly mediated 'technologization' of everyday life.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 204 (2 Points)****Media Analysis**

In workshops as well as lectures students will develop and practice the skills required to analyse, contextualize, and critique media texts (or 'products'), and deepen their understanding of the related concepts and theories of Media Studies. Students will develop a range of discursive strategies in relation to various media texts, including secondary texts such as media criticism and reviews and media policy.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 205 (2 Points)****Screening Hong Kong**

An examination of the cinema of Hong Kong through some of its major genres (eg. martial chivalry, kung fu, action, romance, comedy, fantasy, ghost, melodrama). Aims to develop both an appreciation of filmic styles and an understanding of post-1980s changes in Hong Kong's film industry and their relation to Hong Kong society.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I*

**FTVMS 206 (2 Points)****Media Research Online**

Introduces the knowledge, understanding and skills to critically use the Internet as a data resource as well as a subject of research. Includes a practical guide to, and a critical understanding of, research methodologies to be used for examining a range of services, kinds of texts and communicative activities that can be accessed on and through the net, as well as providing students with an introduction to related theories and debates.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 210 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Film, Industry, Culture: Six New Zealand Filmmakers**

Through the work and careers of six representative filmmakers, multiple and diverse routes to feature film making in Aotearoa New Zealand are examined. Besides making a detailed analysis of a feature film by each director, the career, training and funding contexts from which these films emerged are examined, and the general nature and workings of the film industry are explored.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 211 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Watching Television**

An introduction to television studies. Explores the historical development and distinctive aesthetic style of television; examines television's role in the production of individual, national and global identities; and interrogates television's negotiation of social meanings in the context of everyday life. Specific topics include domestic context; audience reception and negotiation; fandom and celebrity; the regulation of childhood; commodity culture and tabloid television.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 212 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Media Studies**

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**Stage III****FTVMS 300 (2 Points)****New Zealand Film**

An identification of the distinctive features of film in New Zealand. A variety of films are studied in terms of their artistic, social and historical points of interest.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 301 (2 Points)****FTVMS 301A (1 Point)****FTVMS 301B (1 Point)****Film and Video Production**

An introduction to the main aspects of film and video production, from scripting to editing. Students will explore traditional and alternative film and video forms. Despite the emphasis on practical skills, the course has a strong theoretical component and should not be regarded as purely vocational training.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 301 A and B, or FTVMS 301*

**FTVMS 302 (2 Points)****Bollywood and Beyond**

Examines a wide range of auteur and genre films both in popular and alternative cinema traditions. Issues examined include: colonialism and post-colonial discourse, nationalisms/national culture, gender, sexuality, urbanization, religious movements, globalization and Indian diaspora.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 303 (2 Points)****Introduction to Film and Broadcast Writing**

An introductory study of the skills involved in writing for film, television and radio. The course is not narrowly vocational but seeks to build a general understanding of the principles, forms and structures of script-writing and narrative strategies for drama. Students will be required to analyse film and television scripts from the writer's perspective as well as write their own scripts.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

*Restriction: FTVMS 304*

**FTVMS 304 (2 Points)****Advanced Film and Television Writing**

Building on FTVMS 303, the course is conceived as a writing workshop that guides students through a major project. Those selected will be expected to complete a draft of a feature length screenplay or teleplay. The course is not narrowly practical. Sessions will focus on aesthetics and narrative theory as well as characterization, structure, dialogue and development of themes.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 310 (2 Points)****Australian Cinema**

An examination of Australian cinema's best known period: the film 'revival' dating from 1970 to the present. Issues analysed will include: the cultural context of the revival; film production and distribution arrangements; the films themselves; their representations of the nation, ethnicity, gender and region; and this national cinema's differences from other national cinemas.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 311 (2 Points)****Lights! Camera! Action! TV Drama Studio**

Students will produce short dramas, drawing on the language of narrative that they have learnt in the prerequisite course. As well as developing technical skills, they will be required to critique and analyse the short dramatic film as a genre.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

*Restriction: FTVMS 305*

**FTVMS 312 (2 Points)****Media and the Information Society**

The 'mode of information' (Poster), the 'informational mode of development' (Castells) and the 'information society' (Lyon), are typical permutations of the theme that (i) structurally significant changes have taken and are taking place in 'advanced' societies, and (ii) that these are grounded in media developments. In investigating these developments, this course foregrounds institutional factors rather than their cultural expression in specific media texts.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 313 (2 Points)****Sites of Contest: Media, Sport and Culture**

An examination of the increasingly close and contested relationship between sport and the media, analysing the media institutions that are producing sport; the way sport is represented in media texts; and the role of the media audience. Through critical analysis of sport on screen (including soccer, netball, rugby, yachting and cricket) the course considers issues of local, national and global culture.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 320 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Film Studies: British Cinema: Aesthetics and National Identity**

Explores the history of British cinema in relation to questions of aesthetics and concepts of national identity. Examines the variety of aesthetic traditions and influences that have marked British cinema as a rich and diverse national cinema. Also explores the different ways in which these traditions have been

utilized to construct, represent and interrogate the idea of national identity at the level of both the national community and the individual subject.  
*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 321 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Television Studies**

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 322 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: The South Seas on Screen**

Examines the ambivalences surrounding European perceptions of the South Pacific and their translation into popular media culture. In addition to European representations of the Pacific, the course explores how these images and discourses have influenced films and video produced by Pacific peoples themselves.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**FTVMS 702A (2 Points)**

**FTVMS 702B (2 Points)**

**Television Theory**

Explores various attempts to develop a theoretical understanding of the medium of television, including the work of well-known cultural theorists, art historians, political writers and philosophers. Television theory is far less developed than film theory and one task will be to test the extent to which film theory can be seen as relevant to television. Also considers new ways to understand television in an age of rapid change and new technologies.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 702 A and B*

**FTVMS 703 (4 Points)**

**FTVMS 703A (2 Points)**

**FTVMS 703B (2 Points)**

**Research Essays**

Involves a series of research essays on a particular topic to be negotiated with, and supervised by, one of the lecturers associated with the Department. The emphasis is on writing and research skills as well as the investigation itself.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 703 A and B, or FTVMS 703*

**FTVMS 705 (2 Points)**

**Research Methods in Film, Television and Media Studies**

Explores the procedures, resources and problems associated with research in the area of film, television and media studies. The course is strongly recommended for all Honours and Master's students.

**FTVMS 710A (2 Points)**

**FTVMS 710B (2 Points)**

**The NZ Television Industry**

Analyses the organization and activities of the contemporary television industry in New Zealand. Discussion will cover political and economic as well as cultural aspects. Particular attention will be paid to the situation of local production. There will be some visiting speakers from the industry, and students will undertake research projects.

*Restriction: 285.610*

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 710 A and B*

**FTVMS 721 (2 Points)**

**Film Theory**

Key concepts and debates that have shaped the history of film theory. Topics may include: ideas of authorship, theories of montage, semiotics of film, psychoanalytic film criticism, questions of gender representation, reception studies.

*Restriction: 195.720*

**FTVMS 722 (2 Points)**

**Film Theory 1**

Documentary has existed throughout film history and, with the development of new technologies, takes on new guises. This course will be based around close readings of pivotal documentaries made since the inception of film and will analyse the nature and definition of documentary, as well as examining its relationship to notions of truth, ideology and representation.

**FTVMS 723 (2 Points)**

**Film Theory 2**

Gilles Deleuze, one of France's most celebrated recent thinkers, is one of the few contemporary philosophers to have written about cinema. This course examines Deleuze's work on film and image, placing his two books on cinema *The Movement Image* and *The Time Image* in the context of French cultural theory. It explores how he offers a powerful alternative to the psychoanalytical and semiotic approaches that have hitherto dominated film studies. It also explores how Deleuze centres the study of cinema within the project of modern philosophy. Concrete examples from the work of a diverse group of filmmakers such as Eisenstein, Bresson, Dreyer, Godard, Resnais, Antonioni, Pasolini, Marker and Rohmer will be analysed to illustrate Deleuzian views on film.

**FTVMS 724 (2 Points)**

**Film History 1**

Both Film History 1 and Film History 2 examine a period of film history or film movement in terms of the theoretical debates surrounding it and the interplay of technological, aesthetic, social and cultural influences. Topics may include: Italian neo-realism, French New Wave, New Zealand film-making in the silent film era and American cinema 1968–1975. It is possible to take FTVMS 724 and 725 separately or together.

*Restriction: 195.701*

**FTVMS 725 (2 Points)**

**Film History 2**

Both Film History 1 and Film History 2 examine a period of film history or film movement in terms of the theoretical debates surrounding it and the interplay of technological, aesthetic, social and cultural influences. Topics may include: Italian neo-realism, French New Wave, New Zealand film-making in the silent film era and American cinema 1968–1975. It is possible to take FTVMS 724 and 725 separately or together.

*Restriction: 195.701*

**FTVMS 731 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**FTVMS 732 (2 Points)**

**Reality TV**

Addresses the explosive television phenomenon

called 'Reality TV', which broadly includes all programmes that train cameras on non-actors placed in artificial situations that simulate 'real life'. It begins with the American roots of the genre, moves on to the more recent spate of European programmes and, finally, to New Zealand reality programming.

**FTVMS 733 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Seeing Sex**

An historically framed investigation of the representational conventions that visualize sex acts across a range of contemporary visual technologies – photography, cinema, television and the internet. Examines such issues as pornography and censorship, the history of sexuality, the representation of sexual subcultures, the eroticization of the gaze and the ethics of looking, the function of orgasm for cultural definitions of sex and the visual iconography of safe sex videos.

**FTVMS 734 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**FTVMS 735 (2 Points)**

**Feminist Film Theory**

Examines the long and rich tradition of feminist film theory and provides students with an understanding of its concerns. Topics will include the Anglo-American feminist film theorists of the 1970s and 1980s, close examination of Hollywood films which have inspired feminist debate, as well as recent film reconceptions of gender and sexuality.

**FTVMS 736 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Visualizing Difference**

A critical, theoretical and historical investigation into the concept of 'difference' in relation to colonial and neo-colonial discourses, local and global identities, sexuality and race. Uses media technologies, such as cinema, the Internet, television and music videos, to think through the varied and various ways that social groups signify and express the category 'difference'. Based on case studies of cross-cultural encounters.

**FTVMS 737 (4 Points)**

**Digital Media**

Combines practical and theoretical approaches to the study of computer-based media. Key concepts including hypertext, multimedia, interface and interactivity will be explored in practical multimedia workshops and through theoretical analysis of contemporary debates around new media cultures.

**FTVMS 738 (2 Points)**

**Media, Sound and Music**

Theoretical, critical and cultural studies of sound and music as mediated phenomena. Includes analysis of technologies such as gramophone recordings, radio, film, television, cassettes, video and digital files. Debates examined: music and technology; recorded sound and everyday life; the political economy of music; the politics of the popular; authorship and creativity; texts, genres and aesthetics; sonic identities and geographies.

*Restriction: FTVMS 730*

**FTVMS 750 (2 Points)**

**Film and Video Making**

This course, a core course for the MCPA–Film and Television, will provide an overview of the process of

film and video making, including script, pre-production, production and post-production, taught through a hands-on approach. Working in groups, students will make various short projects. Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students.

*Restriction: 195.751*

**FTVMS 752 (2 Points)**

**Film and Video Making: Drama**

A mix of individual and group work on short drama projects for film or video. Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students

**FTVMS 753 (2 Points)**

**Film and Video Making: Documentary**

A mix of individual and group work on short documentary projects for film or video. Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students

**FTVMS 754 (2 Points)**

**Production Management**

Clarifies the multiple roles of the production manager within film and television production. As production management underpins the success of any film or television project, it is the key to an understanding of the production process as a whole. Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students

*Restriction: FTVMS 733*

**FTVMS 758 (2 Points)**

**Scriptwriting**

This first-semester course is an advanced introduction to the principles of dramatic scriptwriting, with a focus on short films. As students develop their own scripts, attention will be paid to principles of script analysis, narrative strategy, genre and structure. By the end of the semester, students will have developed a number of script projects, culminating in a full script for a short film. The class follows a workshop format.

*Restriction: 195.754*

**FTVMS 759 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Scriptwriting: Drama**

This second semester course is more flexible in terms of 'streaming'. Those students enrolled in other tracks apart from director/writer, may be given six feature film assessments to complete in lieu of the final writing project. Students enrolled in the director/writer stream will continue to work on their scripts and by the end of the semester will have a complete draft of a feature-length script.

*Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students*

*Restriction: 195.754*

**FTVMS 760A (2 Points)**

**FTVMS 760B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Film and Television**

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 760 A and B*

**FTVMS 761A (1 Point)**

**FTVMS 761B (1 Point)**

**Special Topic in Film and Television**

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 761 A and B*

**FTVMS 762 (2 Points)**

**FTVMS 762A (1 Point)**

**FTVMS 762B (1 Point)**

**Special Topic in Film and Television**

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 762 A and B, or FTVMS 762*

<b>FTVMS 763</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>FTVMS 797A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Research Project in Film, Television, Media</b>		<b>FTVMS 797B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
Directed study on an approved topic or topics.		<b>Research Portfolio</b>	
<i>Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 797 A and B</i>	
<b>FTVMS 764</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<hr/>	
<b>Research Project in Film, Television, Media</b>		<b>German</b>	
Directed study on an approved topic or topics.		<hr/>	
<i>Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students</i>		<b>Stage I</b>	
<b>FTVMS 765</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>GERMAN 101</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Industry Internship</b>		<b>German Language Introductory 1</b>	
Students will be placed with companies producing film and television to conduct a project and obtain practical experience. The project and placement must be approved by the Head of FTVMS.		Written and oral use of German for students with no previous knowledge of the language.	
<i>Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students</i>		<b>GERMAN 102</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>FTVMS 767</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>German Language Introductory 2</b>	
<b>Research Projects in Film, Television and Media Studies</b>		Written and oral use of German. Assumes that students have passed GERMAN 101 or have achieved in all standards entered for German NCEA Level 1 or gained grade average 50 or above.	
Directed study on an approved topic or topics. All such courses of study must be approved by the Department and involve supervision.		<i>Prerequisite: GERMAN 101 or Departmental approval required</i>	
<b>FTVMS 768</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>GERMAN 103</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Research Projects in Film, Television and Media Studies</b>		<b>German in Business</b>	
Directed study on an approved topic or topics. All such courses of study must be approved by the Department and involve supervision.		The study of German business texts and similar material, with the emphasis on reading comprehension.	
<i>Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students</i>		<i>Prerequisite: GERMAN 101</i>	
<b>FTVMS 769</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>GERMAN 104</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Advanced Writing: Documentary</b>		<b>German Language Intermediate 1</b>	
Writing for the documentary differs from writing for narrative film. The focus is on treatment writing, narration writing and 'writing' in the edit, and other aspects of documentary that involve writing.		Written and oral use of German. Assumes that students have passed GERMAN 102 or have achieved in all standards entered for German NCEA Level 3 or gained grade average 50 or above, or have acquired language competence through a stay or exchange in a German-speaking country. <i>Prerequisite: GERMAN 102 or Departmental approval required</i>	
<i>Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students</i>		<b>GERMAN 110</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>FTVMS 775A</b>	<b>(5 Points)</b>	<b>German Literature: An Introduction</b>	
<b>FTVMS 775B</b>	<b>(5 Points)</b>	Literary history and criticism with special reference to poetry and short prose.	
<b>Film or Television Project</b>		<i>Prerequisite: GERMAN 101</i>	
<i>Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students</i>		<b>GERMAN 120</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 775 A and B</i>		<b>German Cinema</b>	
<b>FTVMS 776A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>	German cinema studied against the background of the social and political developments of Weimar Republic, Third Reich and post-War Germany.	
<b>FTVMS 776B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>	<hr/>	
<b>Film and Television Research Project</b>		<b>Stage II</b>	
A thesis project for students enrolled in the MCPA comprising either a documentary, short drama or feature film script, depending on the strand of study being pursued. A 6,000 word essay is also required, as well as attendance at an ongoing seminar series structured around presentations by industry professionals.		<b>GERMAN 201</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<i>Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students.</i>		<b>German Language Intermediate 2</b>	
<i>Restriction: FTVMS 775</i>		Written and oral use of German.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 776 A and B</i>		<i>Prerequisite: GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120</i>	
<b>FTVMS 792</b>	<b>(6 Points)</b>	<b>GERMAN 210</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>FTVMS 792A</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>	<b>20th Century German Literature</b>	
<b>FTVMS 792B</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>	Literary criticism of aspects of twentieth century drama, prose and/or poetry.	
<b>Dissertation</b>		<i>Prerequisite: GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 792 or FTVMS 792A and B</i>		<b>GERMAN 211</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>FTVMS 796A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>	<b>Contemporary Literature</b>	
<b>FTVMS 796B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>	Literary criticism of selected works of contemporary German literature.	
<b>Thesis</b>		<i>Prerequisite: GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 796A and B</i>			

- GERMAN 277** (2 Points)  
**German Study Abroad 2A**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*
- GERMAN 278** (2 Points)  
**German Study Abroad 2B**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 277 and Departmental approval required*
- GERMAN 290** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Business German**  
 Designed for either Commerce or Arts students who already have some knowledge of German and wish to develop some language skills within the context of business and commerce.
- 
- Stage III**
- GERMAN 301** (2 Points)  
**German Language Advanced 1**  
 Written and oral use of German.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 201*
- GERMAN 302** (2 Points)  
**German Language Advanced 2**  
 Written and oral use of German. Particularly for students intending to take Kleines Deutsches Sprachdiplom.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 301*
- GERMAN 305** (2 Points)  
**Translation**  
 The theory, practice and critical evaluation of translation, principally of texts translated from German into English. Not intended for students enrolled in Diploma of Translation Studies.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 301*  
*Restriction: 205.705*
- GERMAN 310** (2 Points)  
**Classicism, Romanticism, Realism**  
 Literary criticism of selected major works of German literature of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 210 or 211, and GERMAN 201*
- GERMAN 311** (2 Points)  
**Modern German Classics**  
 Literary criticism of selected major works of modern German literature.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 210 or 211, and GERMAN 201*
- GERMAN 330** (2 Points)  
**Middle High German**  
 An introduction to the German Middle Ages and to Middle High German language and literature.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 201*
- GERMAN 377** (2 Points)  
**German Study Abroad 3A**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*
- GERMAN 378** (2 Points)  
**German Study Abroad 3B**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 377 and Departmental approval required*
- GERMAN 390** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Sprachpraktikum**  
 Intended for advanced students of German, future teachers of German and current teachers of German.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 301*
- GERMAN 391** (2 Points)  
**The German Connection with New Zealand**  
 A study of the German connection with New Zealand, with special reference to the arts and sciences, German-speaking settlements in the nineteenth century, and German and Austrian refugees in the twentieth century.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 201*
- GERMAN 392** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 201*
- GERMAN 393** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 201*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- GERMAN 701A** (2 Points)  
**GERMAN 701B** (2 Points)  
**Language Acquisition**  
 An advanced study of oral and written use of German, including its use in literature and the media; composition, conversation, comprehension, translation and oral presentation.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 301 and either GERMAN 310 or 311*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 701 A and B*
- GERMAN 702** (2 Points)  
**Language Acquisition (GDS)**  
 An advanced study of oral and written use of German which specifically prepares students for participation in the exam for Deutsches Sprachdiplom offered by the Goethe Institute in conjunction with the University of Munich.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 701*
- GERMAN 711** (2 Points)  
**The Age of Goethe**  
 A study of selected works covering aspects of the Enlightenment, Classicism and Romanticism.
- GERMAN 714** (2 Points)  
**Post-War German Prose**  
 A literary analysis of prose works by prominent post-War German authors.
- GERMAN 715** (2 Points)  
**20th Century German Poetry**  
 A study of German poetry in the twentieth century.
- GERMAN 716** (2 Points)  
**Literature and Film**  
 A study of novels and their adaptations into films by or with the collaboration of their authors.
- GERMAN 717** (2 Points)  
**20th Century Women Writers**  
 A study of key works, major trends and topics in modern German writing by women.
- GERMAN 718** (2 Points)  
**Middle High German Literature 1**  
 A study of Middle High German language and literature with special reference to twelfth century texts and the Nibelungenlied.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 330*
- GERMAN 719** (2 Points)  
**Middle High German Literature 2**  
 A study of Middle High German language and literature with special reference to the work of Wolfram von Eschenbach.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 330*

<b>GERMAN 720</b> Special Topic in German Literature	(2 Points)	<b>Honours Dissertation</b> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 780 A and B, or GERMAN 780</i>	
<b>GERMAN 721</b> Special Topic in Germanic Studies <i>Restriction: GERMAN 391</i>	(2 Points)	<b>GERMAN 792A</b> <b>GERMAN 792B</b> Dissertation	(3 Points) (3 Points)
<b>GERMAN 722</b> Goethe: Faust 1 An in-depth study of Goethe's Faust.	(2 Points)	A dissertation with a suggested maximum of 15,000 words. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 792 A and B</i>	
<b>GERMAN 723</b> Goethe: Faust 2 An introductory reading of Goethe's Faust II.	(2 Points)	<b>GERMAN 794A</b> <b>GERMAN 794B</b> Thesis 1	(5 Points) (5 Points)
<b>GERMAN 724</b> The Contemporary Novel A literary analysis of representative contemporary German novels.	(2 Points)	A thesis with a suggested maximum of 30,000 words. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 794 A and B</i>	
<b>GERMAN 725</b> Fontane: Effi Briest as Novel and Film An in-depth comparative analysis of Fontane's novel <i>Effi Briest</i> and the four film versions by Grundgens, Jugert, Luderer and Fassbinder.	(2 Points)	<b>GERMAN 796A</b> <b>GERMAN 796B</b> Thesis 2	(7 Points) (7 Points)
<b>GERMAN 726</b> Thomas Mann: The Early Works A study of the background to and a textual analysis of selected early works by Thomas Mann. <i>Restriction: 205.712</i>	(2 Points)	A thesis with a suggested maximum of 40,000 words. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 796 A and B</i>	
<b>GERMAN 727</b> Thomas Mann: The Later Works A study of the background to and a textual analysis of selected later works by Thomas Mann. <i>Restriction: 205.712</i>	(2 Points)	<b>GERMAN 797A</b> <b>GERMAN 797B</b> Research Portfolio	(7 Points) (7 Points)
<b>GERMAN 728</b> Special Topic in Germanic Studies	(2 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 797 A and B</i>	
<b>GERMAN 729</b> Special Topic in Germanic Studies	(2 Points)		
<b>GERMAN 735</b> Special Topic in German Linguistics	(2 Points)		
<b>GERMAN 740</b> Advanced German Translation Practice The focus is on further developing the translator's competence. The materials students will translate will be a wide variety of texts which one could actually expect to be translated into English and German with a specific user in mind. Emphasis is on longer texts which may require subject knowledge and terminology research. <i>Restriction: 205.705 and GERMAN 305</i>	(4 Points)		
<b>GERMAN 741</b>	(4 Points)		
<b>GERMAN 741A</b> <b>GERMAN 741B</b> German Translation Project Having learned to translate a wide variety of text categories, registers and genres, the student will focus on one major translation project. The project will include: client involvement to establish a brief, research, documentation, production and reflection. <i>Prerequisite: GERMAN 740</i> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 741 A and B, or GERMAN 741</i>	(2 Points) (2 Points)		
<b>GERMAN 780</b>	(4 Points)		
<b>GERMAN 780A</b> <b>GERMAN 780B</b>	(2 Points) (2 Points)		

---

<b>Greek</b>	
<b>Stage I</b>	
<b>GREEK 100</b> Introduction to Ancient Greek Language 1 A beginner's course in the grammar and vocabulary of Ancient Greek.	(2 Points)
<b>GREEK 101</b> Introduction to Ancient Greek Language 2 An advancing beginner's course in the grammar and vocabulary of Ancient Greek. <i>Prerequisite: GREEK 100 or Departmental approval required</i>	(2 Points)
<b>Stage II</b>	
<b>GREEK 200</b> Ancient Greek Language Acquisition: Intermediate The analysis and description of Ancient Greek grammar, practice in the translation of Ancient Greek to and from English, vocabulary acquisition. <i>Prerequisite: GREEK 101</i>	(2 Points)
<b>GREEK 201</b> Ancient Greek Literary Texts 2A Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities. <i>Prerequisite: GREEK 101</i>	(2 Points)
<b>GREEK 202</b> Ancient Greek Literary Texts 2B Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities. <i>Prerequisite: GREEK 101</i>	(2 Points)

<b>GREEK 203</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>GREEK 703A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Ancient Greek Literary Texts 2C</b>		<b>GREEK 703B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<b>Greek Prose Authors 1</b>	
<i>Prerequisite: GREEK 101</i>		Entire works or selected passages of Greek prose writing will be set for translation and explanation.	
		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 703 A and B</i>	
<b>GREEK 204</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>GREEK 704A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Ancient Greek Literary Texts 2D</b>		<b>GREEK 704B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<b>Greek Language Topic</b>	
<i>Prerequisite: GREEK 101</i>		Passages of Greek will be set for translation and analysis of their dialect and/or other linguistic features.	
		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 704 A and B</i>	
<hr/>			
<b>Stage III</b>		<b>GREEK 705A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>GREEK 300</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>GREEK 705B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Ancient Greek Language Acquisition: Advanced</b>		<b>Greek Special Topic</b>	
The structure and use of the Greek language including the use of non-Attic Greek.		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 705 A and B</i>	
<i>Prerequisite: GREEK 200 and either GREEK 201 or 202</i>		<b>GREEK 706A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
		<b>GREEK 706B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>GREEK 301</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Research Essays in Greek</b>	
<b>Ancient Greek Literary Texts 3A</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 706 A and B</i>	
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<b>GREEK 712A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<i>Prerequisite: GREEK 200 and either GREEK 201 or 202</i>		<b>GREEK 712B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
		<b>Greek Poetry 2</b>	
<b>GREEK 302</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	Entire works or selected passages of Greek poetry will be set for translation and explanation.	
<b>Ancient Greek Literary Texts 3B</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 712 A and B</i>	
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<b>GREEK 713A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<i>Prerequisite: GREEK 200 and either GREEK 201 or 202</i>		<b>GREEK 713B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
		<b>Greek Prose Authors 2</b>	
<b>GREEK 305</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	Entire works or selected passages of Greek prose writing will be set for translation and explanation.	
<b>Special Topic</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 713 A and B</i>	
<i>Prerequisite: GREEK 300 and 301 and 302</i>		<b>GREEK 790A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
		<b>GREEK 790B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<hr/>			
<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>			
<b>GREEK 700A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Dissertation</b>	
<b>GREEK 700B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 790 A and B</i>	
<b>Unprepared Greek Translation</b>		<b>GREEK 797A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
Passages of Greek will be set for translation into English.		<b>GREEK 797B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 700 A and B</i>		<b>Research Portfolio</b>	
		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 797 A and B</i>	
<b>GREEK 701A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<hr/>	
<b>GREEK 701B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>History</b>	
<b>Greek Language Study</b>		<b>HISTORY 91W</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
Any or all of the following: translation into Greek, grammatical, syntactical and stylistic analysis of passages of Greek prose and/or verse.		<b>Foundation History 1</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 701 A and B</i>		Survey of New Zealand history primarily since 1769, with particular emphasis on the interaction between the European world and the indigenous tribes. Skills training in reading for meaning, critical analysis, essay writing and computer word processing.	
<b>GREEK 702A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>HISTORY 92W</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>GREEK 702B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Foundation History 2</b>	
<b>Greek Poetry 1</b>		Survey of New Zealand social history from 1870 to the end of World War II. Themes and topics include Maori strategies of survival, Vogel, the Liberals, women, work	
Entire works or selected passages of Greek poetry will be set for translation and explanation.			
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 702 A and B</i>			

and the labour movement, war, the Depression and the first Labour Government. Refinement of skills introduced in HISTORY 91W, especially researching a topic and the formulation and presentation of balanced and substantiated argument.

*This course requires prior enrolment in HISTORY 91W.*

### Stage I

#### **HISTORY 101 (2 Points)** **Russia's Revolutions**

Changes in Russian government and society under the last two Tsars and the causes and consequences of the revolutions of 1917. Later topics covered include the exercise of power in Stalin's Russia and social, economic and political revolutions in the Soviet empire.

#### **HISTORY 102 (2 Points)** **Sexual Histories: Western Sexualities from Medieval to Modern Times**

The shifting meanings, languages and practices of hetero- and homosexualities using examples from the USA and Europe. Topics include: origins and development in early Christian ideologies, images of the body, gender, reproduction and marriage in sexuality, homosexual identities, Victorian ideologies and behaviour, changing discourses of pornography, the modern privileging of sex and the impact of AIDS.

#### **HISTORY 103 (2 Points)** **Global History**

Thematic and chronological study of global history since the fifteenth century. Topics include: emergence of world trade networks; growth of world religions; and formation of world empires.

#### **HISTORY 104 (2 Points)** **Pacific History: An Introduction**

A survey of the history of the Pacific Islands from 1800 to the present. Includes responses, adaptations and transformations within the islands, and will focus on their interaction with the wider world.

#### **HISTORY 105 (2 Points)** **The USA in the 20th Century**

An introduction to US history from the 1890s to the present. Emphasis on the USA as a global power, as well as politics, culture, conflict and reform.

#### **HISTORY 109 (2 Points)** **From Realms to Nations: Europe 1700–1871**

Survey of European history from the erosion of 'absolute' monarchy to the advent of modern industrial society. Topics include: the social and political structure of the European 'Old Regime', the emergence of consumer society and critical public opinion in the eighteenth century, the transforming consequences of the 'Age of Revolutions' and the invention of class society and the modern city.

#### **HISTORY 110 (2 Points)** **From Rivalry to Cooperation: Europe since 1871**

The road towards closer European cooperation and integration, the two World Wars, Western Europe and development, the fall of the Iron Curtain and integration of Eastern Europe.

#### **HISTORY 122 (2 Points)** **New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori and Pakeha in the 19th Century**

Te Ao Hurihuri, the world turned around. A history of a Maori world, settled by Europeans; the evolution of a colonial economy, political system and society.

#### **HISTORY 123 (2 Points)** **New Zealand and its Peoples in the 20th Century**

Te Ao Hou, the new world. A history of New Zealand's development in the twentieth century, with particular reference to Maori and Pakeha, the growing relationship with the Polynesian Island and Asian communities, the evolution of a modern society, economy and government and international relations.

#### **HISTORY 124 (2 Points)** **Waka, Hapu, Iwi: Maori Tribal Histories**

A multi-media introduction to the research and writing of tribal histories including: resources and methodologies, the location of tribes, a Maori geography of Aotearoa-New Zealand, the significance of place names, inland journeys of exploration, founding ancestors, and a comprehensive regional overview of waka traditions and tribal histories.

*Restriction: 216.224*

#### **HISTORY 125 (2 Points)** **War, Peace and Society Since 1800**

The history of war and war's impact on society in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, a broad overview combined with focus on particular case studies.

#### **HISTORY 140 (2 Points)** **Europe in the Age of Kings and Queens 1450–1700**

An introduction to the history of late medieval and early modern Europe, with emphasis on the rise of princes, the development of European states and changes in habits of thought, social order and life styles.

#### **HISTORY 150 (2 Points)** **Invention, Science and Society**

The impact of science and technology on industrial and economic development, on everyday life and on health across a range of societies and cultures since the eighteenth century.

### Stage II

#### **HISTORY 210 (2 Points)** **Social History of Medicine**

Introduction to the social history of medicine since 1850. Topics include: emergence of 'scientific medicine' in the Western World, the transference of Western medicine to colonial contexts and healthcare systems.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History, 4 points passed at Stage I in Social Science for Public Health, or 8 points passed*

*Restriction: HISTORY 367*

#### **HISTORY 215 (2 Points)** **Society and Culture in Early Modern England**

An introduction to the mental and social worlds of sixteenth and seventeenth century England: social and gender divisions, family life, communities, education and literacy, death and disease, witchcraft, order and religion.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in History*

#### **HISTORY 217 (2 Points)** **Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

- HISTORY 218** (2 Points)  
**Social History of European New Zealanders**  
 An introduction to major aspects of the social development of European society in New Zealand. Topics include: the family, sexuality, sport and leisure. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History, or 4 points at Stage 1 in Museums and Cultural Heritage*
- HISTORY 219** (2 Points)  
**Medieval Mentalities, Western Europe c.1100–1500**  
 An introduction to the social, cultural and economic history of the high and later Middle Ages, with a thematic emphasis on the history of mentalities. Topics include: social and economic structures and their change over time, power and authority, learning, religion, family, the Black Death and popular dissent. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage 1 in History*
- HISTORY 221** (2 Points)  
**South-East Asia 1870–1990: Constructing Identity**  
 Traces the emergence of a modern sense of identity in South-East Asia from its genesis during the decades of high colonialism, through the formation of nation states following the Second World War, to the purposeful constructions of modern cultures in the late twentieth century. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History or ASIAN 100 and one of CHINESE 130, JAPANESE 150, KOREAN 120* Restriction: 216.134
- HISTORY 222** (2 Points)  
**China under the Ming and Qing Dynasties**  
 The social, political and economic structure of the final period of the Chinese empire, and the practice of imperial government under native and foreign rulers, China's relations with the outside world and the development of her cultural heritage. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History or CHINESE 130 and ASIAN 100*
- HISTORY 226** (2 Points)  
**Post-War Japanese History**  
 Emphasizing the post-1945 period, this course examines the changes that have characterized Japanese society, culture and politics. Topics include: gender, education, youth, protest and the environment. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History or JAPANESE 150 and ASIAN 100*
- HISTORY 227** (2 Points)  
**Te Tiriti: The Treaty of Waitangi**  
 The history of the Treaty of Waitangi; the establishment of the Tribunal; an analysis of rangatiratanga, sovereignty and the historical context and significance of resource claims through a study of cases presented before the Tribunal and comparisons with Africa, North America, and Australia. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History, or 4 points at Stage 1 in Museums and Cultural Heritage* Restriction: 216.351
- HISTORY 230** (2 Points)  
**Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific**  
 European exploration of the Pacific and theories on the origin and migrations of Polynesians, including Maori voyages to New Zealand. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History*
- HISTORY 231** (2 Points)  
**Colonies to Nations: Latin America to 1989**  
 The origins and history of Latin America's nation states. Topics include Latin America's impact upon global history, the creation, consolidation and decline of colonialism in the region; crises of the nineteenth century; the region's integration into the world economy; the response to that integration from Amerindians, peasants, workers, women and students; and the post-1930 history of individual nation-states. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History or LATINAM 100 or SPANISH 103* Restriction: 216.238
- HISTORY 233** (2 Points)  
**Australian History 1788–Present**  
 A survey of the history of Australia from European occupation to the present. It focuses on the lives and experiences of ordinary Australians, as well as providing an overview of the major political and economic developments across two centuries. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History*
- HISTORY 234** (2 Points)  
**Slavery and its Aftermath: African American History 1610–1910**  
 An examination of African-American experiences during slavery, emancipation and the 'Jim Crow' era of racial segregation. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History*
- HISTORY 235** (2 Points)  
**German History 1848 to the Present**  
 The unification of East and West Germany has once again raised fundamental questions about this 'restless nation'. This course will discuss the problems of its specific development, its political and cultural identity and its international relations. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage 1 in History*
- HISTORY 240** (2 Points)  
**Science, Religion and Politics: Historical Case Studies**  
 Copernicus, Galileo and Darwin represent controversial developments in scientific theory. An investigation of the interactions between scientific, religious and political beliefs and concerns in these and other controversies. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History or 705.141 and CTHTHEO 142, or any 8 points passed*
- HISTORY 241** (2 Points)  
**Making Sense of the Sixties: the USA 1954–1973**  
 Examination of the social, cultural and political history of the US in the 'long sixties'. *Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History*
- HISTORY 242** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History*
- HISTORY 243** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in History*
- HISTORY 265** (2 Points)  
**Ireland since 1798**  
 Surveys the history of Ireland from the United Irish rising of 1798. Topics include: the passing of the Act of the Union, the Great Famine, the Irish economy in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, emigration from Ireland, nationalism in Ireland and the

emergence of an independent Irish state.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in History

*Restriction:* HISTORY 365

**HISTORY 266 (2 Points)**

**The Making of Imperial Russia**

An introduction to the ideology and society of Muscovy and imperial Russia from 1600 to the Great Reforms of the 1860s. Explores the social and cultural rift between the political elite and the peasantry, and considers issues of religion, ethnicity, gender and social control. Interdisciplinary approach that makes substantial use of contemporary texts and visual resources.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in History

**Stage III**

**HISTORY 300 (2 Points)**

**Major Problems in Historical Method**

A course designed to help students majoring in history engage with some of the challenges of the discipline as currently practised. Topics include: post-structuralism and history, gender and history, the nature of historical memory and the impact of non-Western perspectives on the discipline.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 305 (2 Points)**

**New Zealand Legal History**

An introduction to the history of the law, legal institutions and the legal profession in New Zealand. Students do not need a legal background to take this course.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 310 (2 Points)**

**'Yankee Go Home?': The USA and Latin America**

Explores the relationships between the peoples and governments of the United States and Latin America.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History; or one of HISTORY 231, LATINAM 201, POLITICS 234, SPANISH 211, 213 or 306

**HISTORY 312 (2 Points)**

**Sino-Japanese Relations since the Meiji Restoration**

A study of the relations of the two principal nations of East Asia, 1868–1945. The course will include the breakdown of China's informal overseas empire and the growth of Japan's ambition and capability. The later nineteenth century history of Korea will also be considered.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 313 (2 Points)**

**Mao Zedong, Revolution and China**

The background to the career of Mao Zedong, the development of his power within the Chinese Communist Party, the entrenchment of Mao Zedong thought as Party orthodoxy, the issue of 'Maoism' and Mao's activities in the People's Republic, including his role in the Cultural Revolution.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 315 (2 Points)**

**Pacific History: Culture Contact to about 1900**

The relations between Pacific Islanders and Europeans (explorers, travellers and missionaries) up to the colonial period.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 317 (2 Points)**

**Nazi Germany**

An examination of the effects Nationalist Socialist ideology and policies had on the social, political and economic development of Germany. Going beyond the domestic impact of the Nazi regime, the course also covers Nazi Germany's increasingly aggressive foreign policy leading ultimately to European and then World War.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 320 (2 Points)**

**Gender Relations in New Zealand**

A study of the history of and historical writings about European women, men and gender in New Zealand. Topics include: gender and generations; sex and sexuality; family life.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 324 (2 Points)**

**Old Regime and Revolution in France c.1750–1815**

An introduction to the French Revolution as a founding event of modern history. Topics include: the Revolution's origins in eighteenth century culture, the collapse of the French monarchy, the radical experiment of mass democracy and the Revolution's disputed meanings and modern legacies.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 325 (2 Points)**

**Immigration and Settlement in Australia**

An examination of the peopling of the Australian continent; why immigrants came to Australia, where they settled and how they adjusted to the new society, as well as Australian attitudes towards immigration.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 329 (2 Points)**

**Social Welfare in New Zealand from 1840 to the Present Day**

An exploration of the development of the welfare state in New Zealand from 1840 to the present. An examination of the reasons for the introduction of welfare measures, the form the legislation took, and its impact on society.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200

**HISTORY 336 (2 Points)**

**Popular Cultures in England 1550–1750**

An investigation of the domains of belief and behaviour in the everyday lives of the rural and urban communities of early modern England. Topics include: sexualities, orality, literacy and print, popular religion, witchcraft, festive drama and ritual, riot, order and the law, and the meanings of 'popular culture'.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 337 (2 Points)**

**Sex and Gender in Pre-modern England**

Examines varieties of sexuality and gender roles available to men and women in England c.1300–1800.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in History

*Restriction:* HISTORY 336, 343

- HISTORY 340** (2 Points)  
**Race in New Zealand**  
 An exploration of the development of racial ideologies in New Zealand, from their eighteenth and nineteenth century European roots to the twentieth century. The course focuses on the interaction of racial ideas with actual ethnic relations (notably Maori-Pakeha relations), with historical interpretation, and with New Zealand collective identities.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 341** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 343** (2 Points)  
**The Family, Sex and Marriage in Europe, c.1300–1500**  
 A social history, examining such questions as: how were families and households structured in this period and how did they differ in different parts of Europe? Why did people marry, and what roles did husbands and wives take on? Was there a concept of childhood? Did homosexuality 'exist'?  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 346** (2 Points)  
**Vietnam: Conflict in Indo-China 1858–1993**  
 An examination of the relationship between Indo-China and the Western nations of France, the United States, Australia and New Zealand during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, with particular reference to the Vietnam War.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 347** (2 Points)  
**Japanese Popular Culture since 1945**  
 Post-Second World War artefacts of Japanese society, including: cinema, television, manga (comics), popular music, fashion and the changing patterns of youth culture situated within their historical context. The meaning of the modes of thought, identity and behaviour in post-War Japan.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 348** (2 Points)  
**America's Wars in Asia**  
 An examination of the troubled relationship between Asia and the USA, in the context of wider historical developments, with a particular focus on the four wars fought by the USA in Asia in the twentieth century.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 355** (2 Points)  
**The State of Native North America**  
 An introduction to the history of the indigenous peoples of the United States and Canada. Topics covered include: disease and demographic change, the fur trade, the colonial wars, land loss, reservation experiences, modern Indian political activism and the politics of representation.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 356** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 358** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- HISTORY 361** (2 Points)
- From Darwin to the Salvation Army: Challenges to Established Religion in Victorian England**  
 Baptists and spiritualists, agnostics and socialists, successfully challenged the belief systems and institutional authority of the Church of England. A discussion of changing beliefs and institutions with reference to theories of secularization.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History, or 705.242 and 705.243, or HISTORY 240 and 6 further points at Stage II*
- HISTORY 363** (2 Points)  
**Class and Consumer Society in the USA**  
 Focusing on the relationship between work and leisure, production and consumption, as well as culture and politics, the course examines ways in which Americans' beliefs and behaviours have changed with the industrializing of society and the rise of consumerism and mass culture.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 364** (2 Points)  
**Hollywood's America: History through Film**  
 Examination of Hollywood feature film using techniques of historical analysis.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History, or FTVMS 200 or 204, and 2 points at Stage II Film, Television and Media Studies*
- HISTORY 365** (2 Points)  
**Ireland since 1798**  
 Surveys the history of Ireland from the United Irish rising of 1798. Topics include: the passing of the Act of the Union, the Great Famine, the Irish economy in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, emigration from Ireland, nationalism in Ireland and the emergence of an independent Irish state.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in History*  
*Restriction: HISTORY 265*
- HISTORY 366** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand Women's Wars 1900–2000**  
 New Zealand women's lives have been profoundly shaped by war. Issues including citizenship, pacifism, employment, family life and participation in the military will be considered in a national and international context.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 367** (2 Points)  
**Social History of Medicine**  
 An introduction to the social history of medicine since 1850, which aims to contribute to a greater understanding of past societies and people's lives by investigating their experience of and interactions with medicine. Topics include the rise of the hospital and surgery, mental health, maternity, sexually transmitted diseases and other public health issues.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*  
*Restriction: HISTORY 210*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- HISTORY 701** (4 Points)
- HISTORY 701A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 701B** (2 Points)  
**Political Development of the Pacific Islands from about 1870**  
 An examination of political and related social change in the Pacific Islands from annexation to decolonization.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 701 A and B, or HISTORY 701*

- HISTORY 704** (4 Points) **HISTORY 710** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 704A** (2 Points) **HISTORY 710A** (1 Point)
- HISTORY 704B** (2 Points) **HISTORY 710B** (1 Point)
- Kings, Lords and Commons: Tudor Government and Society 1485–1603**  
 Involves the extensive use of primary materials. Concentrates on the changing role of parliament; the shifting relationship between king, lords and commons; and parliament's response to a wide variety of political, economic and social problems ranging from religion and witchcraft to treason and inflation.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 704 A and B, or HISTORY 704*
- HISTORY 705** (4 Points) **HISTORY 714A** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 705A** (2 Points) **HISTORY 714B** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 705B** (2 Points)
- Writing New Zealand**  
 A study of the writing of New Zealand and history from nineteenth century accounts through to more recent, revisionist undertakings. Considers general and overview histories, as well as key texts and the debates generated by such works. Students will have an opportunity to undertake research on a topic of their own choosing.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 705 A and B, or HISTORY 705*
- HISTORY 706A** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 706B** (2 Points)
- Topics in European Cultural History**  
 An historical introduction to the relationship between ideologies, cultural practices, social structures and political institutions in Europe. Topics include: the political history of manners and court culture; public opinion and print culture; gender and consumerism; the history of the senses and the human body.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 706 A and B*
- HISTORY 708A** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 708B** (2 Points)
- Religion and Revolutions in Latin America**  
 Religious responses to, and involvement in, revolutionary social and political change in Latin American history. The impact of Christianity on Latin America's indigenous peoples, the effect of independence on the Catholic Church's political influence, Catholic reformism after the Cuban Revolution, Christian opposition to counter-revolutionary military regimes, liberation theology's revolutionary politics, the Protestant reaction to liberation theology.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 708 A and B*
- HISTORY 709A** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 709B** (2 Points)
- Science and Society: Comparative Studies 1840–1950**  
 The history of science and technology in New Zealand from a comparative perspective. The professionalization of science, the linking of science and technology and the consequent importance of science in government policy, the conspicuous impact of technological changes on society.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 709 A and B*
- Rethinking History**  
 An examination of some key readings dealing with contemporary trends and theoretical issues in history writing. The focus will be on what has been termed 'history as text and discourse'. The aim is to provide a self-reflexive approach to historians' representations of the past.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 710 A and B, or HISTORY 710*
- Europe 1939–45: War, Occupation, Neutrality**  
 Examines the origins and effects of the Second World War upon Europe, including detailed analysis of German relations with occupied and neutral European countries.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 714 A and B*
- HISTORY 717A** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 717B** (2 Points)
- The Irish in North America, Australia and New Zealand**  
 A comparative study of Irish emigration to and settlement in North America, Australia and New Zealand.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 717 A and B*
- HISTORY 718A** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 718B** (2 Points)
- Nga Take: Decolonizing Maori History**  
 Contemporary literature about Maori is characterized by reference to the oral tradition of pre-European Maori. This course challenges current beliefs about creation, demigod, waka and tribal traditions, and concepts including tapu and mana, by tracing publications to their original primary and theoretical sources, and through exploring alternative methods of analysis.  
*Restriction: HISTORY 342*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 718 A and B*
- HISTORY 720** (4 Points)
- HISTORY 720A** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 720B** (2 Points)
- China's Struggle for Modernity: The Republican Era**  
 A study of the political, economic, social and cultural history of China in the period from the abdication of the Qing dynasty in 1912 to the creation of the People's Republic in 1949.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 720 A and B, or HISTORY 720*
- HISTORY 721A** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 721B** (2 Points)
- Special Topic**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 721 A and B*
- HISTORY 724A** (2 Points)
- HISTORY 724B** (2 Points)
- Labouring Lives in 19th and early 20th Century England**  
 A study of the life situation of working people in nineteenth and early twentieth century England, with an emphasis on social history. Topics include:

work, living conditions, the family, popular culture, protest and representations of labouring life.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 724 A and B

**HISTORY 725A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 725B** (2 Points)

**Health, Medicine and Society, with a Special Emphasis on New Zealand, 1840–Present Day**

Topics to be investigated include the development of the medical and allied professions, hospital and medical services and public health. Special topics will include Maori health, and women and health.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 725 A and B

**HISTORY 726A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 726B** (2 Points)

**Post-War Japanese History**

A study of the four basic historical and contemporary issues which have had a profound effect on the nature of Japan's international competitiveness in the post-war era: labour, bureaucracy and business; internationalization of the economy, socio-economic aspects of the economy. Note: it will be useful, but not essential, to have completed HISTORY 226 in a previous year.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 726 A and B

**HISTORY 728A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 728B** (2 Points)

**American Women's History**

An examination of current issues in USA women's history. Topics include: the history of sexuality, women's work, the 'domestication' of USA politics and the relationship between women's history and gender history.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 728 A and B

**HISTORY 729A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 729B** (2 Points)

**New Zealand and Australian History**

A comparative study of New Zealand and Australian history arranged around the themes of people and play.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 729 A and B

**HISTORY 731A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 731B** (2 Points)

**The Spanish Pacific**

This course attempts historically to conceptualize the Spanish Empire in the Pacific as a political, social and economic system with emphasis on the interconnectedness of geography and cultural formation.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 731 A and B

**HISTORY 733A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 733B** (2 Points)

**European Expansion: Conquest, Settlement, Myth**

An exploration of European expansion and its myths, focusing on non-European resistance (especially military resistance) and European settlement. New Zealand is a major case, but the course also essays into American, Australian and Canadian history, and the approach will be theoretical and comparative.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 733 A and B

**HISTORY 734A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 734B** (2 Points)

**Topics in USA Social/Cultural History**

An exploration of recent and innovative work in the United States' social and cultural history. The course examines the lives of ordinary Americans with special attention to values, cultural practices and daily activities. Topics include: class formation, race and gender relations, social and political movements, as well as work, consumption and leisure.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 734 A and B

**HISTORY 735A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 735B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 735 A and B

**HISTORY 736A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 736B** (2 Points)

**Medieval Women, c.1100–1500**

A study of the history and historiography of medieval women, this course considers what medieval women's history consists of, how it can or should be written, and why it is worth writing.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 736 A and B

**HISTORY 737A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 737B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 737 A and B

**HISTORY 738** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**HISTORY 739** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**HISTORY 740** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**HISTORY 741** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**HISTORY 760** (4 Points)

**HISTORY 760A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 760B** (2 Points)

**Special Study**

A research course, normally related to one of the courses HISTORY 701–736, selected in consultation with one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 760 A and B, or HISTORY 760

**HISTORY 761A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 761B** (2 Points)

**Special Study**

A research course, normally related to one of the courses HISTORY 701–736, selected in consultation with one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 761 A and B

<b>HISTORY 780A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>HISTORY 780B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Honours Dissertation</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 780 A and B</i>	
<b>HISTORY 792A</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>HISTORY 792B</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>Dissertation</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 792 A and B</i>	
<b>HISTORY 796A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>HISTORY 796B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Thesis</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 796 A and B</i>	
<b>HISTORY 797A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>HISTORY 797B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Research Portfolio</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 797 A and B</i>	

---

## History and Philosophy of Science and Technology

---

### Stage I

<b>HPST 100</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Science, Technology and Society</b>	
Introduces sociological, philosophical, historical and policy questions about science and technology, and may include: the definition and demarcation of science and technology; their influence on war, food production, environment, etc; the impact of culture and society on science and technology; science, traditional and religious belief and the conflict between evolution and religion; ethical issues concerning science and technology; risk and precaution.	

### Stage II

<b>HPST 200</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Science, Technology and the Environment in New Zealand</b>	
A comparison of the development of scientific ideas and institutions in New Zealand with those in other ex-colonial countries. Topics from early European exploration, to agricultural science and the environment in the twentieth century, to the recent restructuring of scientific research.	
<i>Prerequisite: Any 8 points passed</i>	

### Stage III

<b>HPST 300</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Advanced Studies in History and Philosophy of Science and Technology</b>	
Investigates at an advanced level selected themes in History and Philosophy of Science and Technology concerning studies about science and technology, from philosophical, historical, sociological, ethical and policy perspectives.	
<i>Prerequisite: HISTORY 240 or PHIL 260 or SCIGEN 201, and approval of the History and Philosophy of Science and Technology Convenor</i>	

---

## Indonesian

---

### Stage I

**Note:** Native speakers of Indonesian may not enrol for INDO 101 or any other Stage I or II language or literature course. The same restriction applies to students from Malaysia, but in exceptional cases may be waived by the Head of School.

<b>INDO 101</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Indonesian 1A</b>	
Introducing written and spoken contemporary Indonesian.	
<i>Restriction: 220.100</i>	
<b>INDO 102</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Indonesian 1B</b>	
Continuation of INDO 101.	
<i>Prerequisite: INDO 101</i>	
<i>Restriction: 220.100</i>	

<b>INDO 130</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Indonesia: Land and People</b>	
An introduction in English to the diversity of modern Indonesia. Provides an historical perspective on contemporary Indonesian politics, culture and society.	

### Stage II

<b>INDO 201</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Indonesian 2A</b>	
Continues the study of formal and informal Indonesian, concentrating mainly on the spoken idiom.	
<i>Prerequisite: 220.100 or INDO 102</i>	
<i>Restriction: 220.200</i>	
<b>INDO 202</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Indonesian 2B</b>	
Continues the study of formal and informal Indonesian, concentrating mainly on the spoken idiom.	
<i>Prerequisite: INDO 201</i>	
<i>Restriction: 220.200</i>	

<b>INDO 230</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Indonesian Cultural Studies 1</b>	
The courses INDO 230 and 231, offered in alternate years, have a dual purpose. In addition to the study of one or two selected topics in Indonesian regional culture or civilisation each year, both courses contain a large component designed to introduce the student to bibliography, the conventions of scholarly writing, and the methodology of Indonesian studies.	
<i>Prerequisite: One of 220.121, 220.137, INDO 120, 130, 135, 136, 138</i>	
<i>Restriction: INDO 231, 330</i>	

<b>INDO 231</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Indonesian Cultural Studies 2</b>	
A continuation of INDO 230.	
<i>Prerequisite: One of 220.121, 220.137, INDO 120, 130, 135, 136, 138</i>	
<i>Restriction: INDO 230, 331</i>	

<b>INDO 277</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Indonesian Study Abroad 2A</b>	
<i>Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.</i>	
<i>Prerequisite: Head of School approval required</i>	

<b>INDO 278</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Indonesian Study Abroad 2B</b>	

Refer to the entry for *Language Study Abroad*.  
Prerequisite: INDO 277 and Head of School approval required

**INDO 299** (2 Points)  
**Special Studies**

Directed student research conducted under the supervision of one or more lecturers. Special Studies courses require a written proposal by the student, at the time of enrolment, which needs approval of the supervisor.

Prerequisite: 8 points passed

### Stage III

**INDO 301** (2 Points)  
**Indonesian 3A**

More advanced study of formal and informal Indonesian, concentrating mainly on the spoken idiom.

Prerequisite: INDO 202

Restriction: 220.300

**INDO 302** (2 Points)  
**Indonesian 3B**

Continuation of INDO 301.

Prerequisite: INDO 301

Restriction: 220.300

**INDO 330** (2 Points)  
**Nusantara: Selected Topics 1**

A more in-depth study in English of selected topics in Indonesian culture and civilisation, taught in conjunction with the lectures offered under INDO 230.

Prerequisite: INDO 231

Restriction: INDO 230

**INDO 331** (2 Points)  
**Nusantara: Selected Topics 2**

A more in-depth study in English of selected topics in Indonesian culture and civilisation, taught in conjunction with the lectures offered under INDO 231.

Prerequisite: INDO 230

Restriction: INDO 231

**INDO 377** (2 Points)  
**Indonesian Study Abroad 3A**

Refer to the entry for *Language Study Abroad*.

Prerequisite: Head of School approval required

**INDO 378** (2 Points)  
**Indonesian Study Abroad 3B**

Refer to the entry for *Language Study Abroad*.

Prerequisite: INDO 377 and Head of School approval required

**INDO 398** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

In-depth study of selected topics in Indonesian language, literature, culture or Asian religions.

Prerequisite: INDO 230 or 231 or approval of Head of School

**INDO 399** (2 Points)  
**Special Studies**

Independent student research conducted under the supervision of one or more lecturers. Reading knowledge of Dutch, German, or French is normally necessary.

Prerequisite: INDO 230 or 231

## Italian

### Stage I

**ITALIAN 106** (2 Points)

**Italian Language for Beginners 1**

Students learn to speak, read and write Italian, studying aspects of contemporary Italian society and thought. This course does not count towards a major in Italian.

Restriction: ITALIAN 166

**ITALIAN 107** (2 Points)

**Italian Language for Beginners 2**

Further development in Italian language skills.

Prerequisite: ITALIAN 106 or 166

Restriction: ITALIAN 167

**ITALIAN 111** (2 Points)

**Italy on Screen**

Social, political and cultural issues in contemporary Italy interpreted through feature films.

**ITALIAN 166** (2 Points)

**Italian Language for Beginners 1-Distance Learning**

Students learn to speak, read and write Italian, studying aspects of contemporary Italian society. This course will be taught by distance learning. Prospective students must have access to email and a CD-Rom drive. This course does not count towards a major in Italian.

Restriction: ITALIAN 106

**ITALIAN 167** (2 Points)

**Italian Language for Beginners 2-Distance Learning**

Further development in Italian language skills. Students learn to speak, read and write Italian, studying aspects of contemporary Italian society. This course will be taught by distance learning. Prospective students must have access to email and CD-Rom drive.

Prerequisite: ITALIAN 106 or 166

Restriction: ITALIAN 107

### Stage II

**ITALIAN 200** (2 Points)

**Intermediate Italian Language 1**

Develops writing, reading, speaking and listening skills to an intermediate level, through practice on a wide range of written texts and current audio-visual material.

Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167

**ITALIAN 201** (2 Points)

**Intermediate Italian Language 2**

Continues to develop language skills at an intermediate level and introduces skills of reading and analysing literary texts.

Prerequisite: ITALIAN 200

**ITALIAN 202** (2 Points)

**Engendered Voices (Texts in Italian)**

A critical study of the representation and invention of women's experiences and of issues of gender and culture, through an examination of literary texts and films by Italian women writers and filmmakers. Students will study extracts in Italian.

Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167

Corequisite: ITALIAN 200

Restriction: ITALIAN 203

- ITALIAN 203** (2 Points)  
**Engendered Voices (Texts in English)**  
 A critical study of the representation and invention of women's experiences and of issues of gender and culture, through an examination of literary texts and films by Italian women writers and filmmakers. (Students will study extracts in English).  
*Prerequisite: Any 12 points passed*  
*Restriction: ITALIAN 202*
- ITALIAN 204** (2 Points)  
**Italian Fiction and Cinema**  
 A study of Italian novels, short stories and their adaptation into feature films. Texts are in Italian.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*  
*Corequisite: ITALIAN 200*  
*Restriction: ITALIAN 232*
- ITALIAN 205** (2 Points)  
**Il Linguaggio del Testo: Language and Text**  
 Reinforces and develops Italian language skills through the study of literary texts. Leonardo Sciascia's novel *A ciascuno il suo* and other texts are used as a point of departure for writing and discussion in Italian and also for highlighting the literary techniques used by the author.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*  
*Corequisite: ITALIAN 200*
- ITALIAN 206** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 12 points passed*
- ITALIAN 209** (2 Points)  
**Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (Texts in Italian)**  
 An introduction to themes and issues in Italian Renaissance culture. General topics are covered in English but texts are read in Italian.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*  
*Corequisite: ITALIAN 200*  
*Restriction: ITALIAN 210*
- ITALIAN 210** (2 Points)  
**Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (Texts in English)**  
 An introduction to themes and issues in Italian Renaissance culture. This course is taught entirely in English.  
*Prerequisite: Any 12 points passed*  
*Restriction: ITALIAN 209*
- ITALIAN 221** (2 Points)  
**Italian for Business**  
 A practical course designed for the business and administrative worlds. The written part focuses on Italian for business purposes including: commercial correspondence, report writing, dealing with bureaucratic forms and the broader trade environment. In the oral section students learn to communicate in specific practical situations and commercial contexts. Along with Internet-based activities, an interactive multimedia component reinforces, tests and contextualizes language learning done in the classroom. This course does not count towards an Italian major or minor.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*
- ITALIAN 231** (2 Points)  
**The Theatre of Dario Fo and Franca Rame (Texts in Italian)**  
 A study of the theatre of Dario Fo and Franca Rame including close textual readings of plays which reflect issues in Italian society and culture from the post-war period to recent times. Students will study plays in Italian.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*
- Corequisite: ITALIAN 200*  
*Restriction: ITALIAN 234*
- ITALIAN 232** (2 Points)  
**Italian Fiction and Cinema (Texts in English)**  
 A study of Italian novels, short stories and their adaptation in feature films. Texts are in English.  
*Prerequisite: Any 12 points passed*  
*Restriction: ITALIAN 204*
- ITALIAN 234** (2 Points)  
**The Theatre of Dario Fo and Franca Rame (Texts in English)**  
 A study of the theatre of Dario Fo and Franca Rame including close readings of plays which reflect issues in Italian society and culture from the post-war period to recent times. Students will study plays in English translation. This course does not count towards the major in Italian.  
*Prerequisite: Any 12 points passed*  
*Restriction: ITALIAN 231*
- ITALIAN 277** (2 Points)  
**Italian Study Abroad 2A**  
 Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*
- ITALIAN 278** (2 Points)  
**Italian Study Abroad 2B**  
 Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 277 and Departmental approval required*
- 
- Stage III**
- ITALIAN 300** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Italian Language**  
 This course builds on the language skills acquired in Italian ITALIAN 200 and 201, focusing on selected topics in more specialized contexts.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*
- ITALIAN 302** (2 Points)  
**Dante's Divina Commedia: Inferno**  
 A close study of the first section of this great fourteenth-century work, read in the context of medieval history and thought.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*  
*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*
- ITALIAN 303** (2 Points)  
**Boccaccio and Petrarca**  
 An introduction to Boccaccio's collection of short stories, the *Decamerone* and the poetry of Petrarca.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*  
*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*
- ITALIAN 322** (2 Points)  
**Italian Translation Practice**  
 Designed for students wishing to develop specific practical translation skills. Introduces students to issues in translation and offers translating practice in areas of social issues, commerce, law, technology and the media.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201 and Departmental approval required*  
*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*  
*Restriction: ITALIAN 702*
- ITALIAN 331** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Italian Literature or Film: Contemporary Italian Theatre**  
 A study of the development of Italian drama in the twentieth century.  
*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*  
*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 332 (2 Points)****Breaking the Frame: A Problem in Italian Literature and the Visual Arts**

Works in several media (painting, drama, written autobiography, opera, comic strips and film) from periods ranging from the fifteenth to the twentieth century are examined in terms of the prominence each gives to some kind of framing device, and of the ways in which that frame is fractured.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 333 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Italian Popular Culture**

An examination of typical examples of Italian popular culture in the context of critical debates on mass culture.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 334 (2 Points)****Italo Calvino's Early Fiction**

A close study of the genesis and the text of Italo Calvino's trilogy *I nostri antenati*.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 377 (2 Points)****Italian Study Abroad 3A**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**ITALIAN 378 (2 Points)****Italian Study Abroad 3B**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 377 and Departmental approval required*

**Honours and Master's Courses****ITALIAN 700A (2 Points)****ITALIAN 700B (2 Points)****Language Acquisition: Oral and Written Use of Italian**

The fundamental skills of reading, writing and speaking in various registers of Italian are taken to an advanced level. All classes are held in Italian.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 700 A and B*

**ITALIAN 701 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Italian Language Acquisition**

Provides a basis for students to orient themselves among the different registers, dialects and languages spoken by ethnic minorities and sectorial groups in contemporary Italy by analysing written and audio-visual materials.

**ITALIAN 702 (4 Points)****Advanced Italian Translation Practice**

Designed for students wishing to develop specific, practical translation skills. Introduces students to issues in translation and offers translating practice in areas of social issues, commerce, law, technology and the media.

*Restriction: ITALIAN 322*

**ITALIAN 703 (4 Points)****Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Italian**

An advanced course in Italian linguistics.

**ITALIAN 704 (4 Points)****Special Topic in Linguistics: 2001 Translation Project****ITALIAN 705 (4 Points)****History and Fantasy in the Writings of Antonio Tabucchi**

With *Sostiene pereira* (1994), Antonio Tabucchi won all major literary awards in Italy. The course will present this novel and a selection of short stories from various collections in order to highlight the author's successful blend of history and fantasy.

**ITALIAN 706 (4 Points)****Renaissance Theatre**

The transition from commedia erudita to the birth of melodrama will be viewed through two plays of the first quarter of the sixteenth century – Ludovico Ariosto's *La lena* and Niccolò Machiavelli's *La mandragola* – and one performed in 1589, Girolamo Bargagli's *La pellegrina*.

**ITALIAN 707 (4 Points)****The Italian Detective Story**

Launched in Italy as an imported genre in the late twenties, the detective story has become a phenomenon of mass culture. It has acquired a distinct Italian style with the production of novels, films, drama, television series and comic books, enjoyed by highbrow, middlebrow and lowbrow audiences. The course offers a reading of diverse texts of the genre in their socio-cultural contexts.

**ITALIAN 708 (4 Points)****Self-reflection to Self-invention: Redefining Women's Autobiography**

Examines some of the forms (including painting, mystical poetry, letters, travel journals, autobiographical novels) in which Italian women over the centuries have portrayed themselves, adopting, adapting and subverting traditional notions of genre.

**ITALIAN 709 (4 Points)****Special Topic****ITALIAN 710 (4 Points)****Special Topic in 14th Century Literature****ITALIAN 711 (4 Points)****Dante's Divina Commedia**

A close study of *Inferno*, the first section of Dante's fourteenth century poem, read in the context of medieval history and thought with supplementary readings from *Purgatorio* and *Paradiso*.

*Restriction: ITALIAN 302*

**ITALIAN 712 (4 Points)****Contemporary Italian Theatre**

A study of the development of Italian drama in the twentieth century through the analysis of representative plays by Pirandello, Betti, De Filippo, Brancati, and Ginzburg. This course will be taught in Italian.

**ITALIAN 713 (4 Points)****Italian Popular Culture**

Examines some typical examples of Italian popular culture in the context of critical debates on mass culture. Among the texts to be studied are: Pinocchio comic strips and *fotoromanzi*, an Italian horror movie, Edmondo de Amicis' *Cuore*, Carlo Fruttero and Franco Lucentini's *La donna della domenica* and the television series *Il maresciallo Rocca*.

**ITALIAN 714 (4 Points)****Italo Calvino's Fiction**

A close study of the genesis and the texts of the

following novels by Italo Calvino: *Il sentiero dei nidi di ragno* and *I nostri antenati*.

Restriction: ITALIAN 334

**ITALIAN 720** (4 Points)  
Special Topic in Renaissance Literature and Culture

**ITALIAN 721** (2 Points)  
Special Topic

**ITALIAN 730** (4 Points)  
Special Topic in 20th Century Italian Literature

**ITALIAN 732** (4 Points)  
Special Topic

**ITALIAN 733** (4 Points)  
The Films of Michelangelo Antonioni

An auteur study of the work of Michelangelo Antonioni focusing on critical issues of authorship, style, realism, narrative agency and psychoanalysis.

**ITALIAN 734** (4 Points)  
Special Topic

**ITALIAN 780** (4 Points)

**ITALIAN 780A** (2 Points)

**ITALIAN 780B** (2 Points)

Honours Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 780 A and B, or ITALIAN 780

**ITALIAN 792A** (3 Points)

**ITALIAN 792B** (3 Points)

Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 792 A and B

**ITALIAN 794A** (5 Points)

**ITALIAN 794B** (5 Points)

Thesis 1

To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 794 A and B

**ITALIAN 796A** (7 Points)

**ITALIAN 796B** (7 Points)

Thesis 2

To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 796 A and B

**ITALIAN 797A** (7 Points)

**ITALIAN 797B** (7 Points)

Research Portfolio

To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 797 A and B

## Japanese

### Stage I

**JAPANESE 130** (2 Points)  
Introduction to Japanese Language 1

An integrated basic course in modern Japanese covering reading, writing, speaking and listening.

Restriction: 230.101, 230.110, 230.111, 230.121

**JAPANESE 131** (2 Points)

**JAPANESE 131A** (1 Point)

**JAPANESE 131B** (1 Point)

Introduction to Japanese Language 2

A continuation of JAPANESE 130.

Prerequisite: 230.110 or JAPANESE 130 or School approval required

Restriction: 230.101, 230.111, 230.121

To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 131 A and B, or JAPANESE 131

**JAPANESE 150** (2 Points)  
Japan: A Survey

Covers Japanese cultural history from the pre-historic age until the 1990s, and serves as an introduction to contemporary Japan. It deals with such diverse fields as Japanese literature, economy, the political system, Japan's position in the world, popular culture, social structures and gender relations. No knowledge of the Japanese language is required.

Restriction: 230.151, 230.152

### Stage II

**JAPANESE 222A** (1 Point)

**JAPANESE 222B** (1 Point)

Structural Analysis of the Japanese Language

Structural analysis of the pronunciation, grammar, script and usage of the modern Japanese language. The prerequisites LINGUIST 100 or 103 may be taken in the first semester of enrolment in this course.

Prerequisite: 175.106 or LINGUIST 100 or 103

Coresquisite: JAPANESE 231 and 232

Restriction: 230.205

To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 222 A and B

**JAPANESE 231** (2 Points)

Intermediate Japanese 1

A continuation of JAPANESE 131.

Prerequisite: JAPANESE 131 or School approval required

Restriction: JAPANESE 230 or 239

**JAPANESE 232** (2 Points)

Intermediate Japanese 2

A continuation of JAPANESE 231.

Prerequisite: JAPANESE 231 or School approval required

Restriction: JAPANESE 230 or 239

**JAPANESE 240** (2 Points)

Introduction to Japanese Literature

Major works of Japanese literature, both classical and modern, will be read either in the original or in a retold version in modern Japanese. These works will range from the Kojiki, compiled in 712, to post-war literature. Critical study of literature and culture will be an important part of the course.

Coresquisite: JAPANESE 231 and 232

**JAPANESE 270** (2 Points)

Japanese Culture and Society

Introduces representative texts on major facets of Japanese society, dealing with changing social and political patterns, family, education, work and leisure. Japan's self-perception and its role in the world. Taught in English.

Prerequisite: JAPANESE 150 or ASIAN 100

**JAPANESE 277** (2 Points)

Japanese Study Abroad 2A

Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.

Prerequisite: School approval required

**JAPANESE 278** (2 Points)

Japanese Study Abroad 2B

Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.

Prerequisite: JAPANESE 277 and School approval required

**Stage III**

*Note: By special permission of the Head of School, prerequisites at Stage III may be waived. A pass in JAPANESE 332 or 339 is required for a major in Japanese. Either JAPANESE 331 and 332, or JAPANESE 338 and 339, must be taken concurrently with any other Stage III Japanese course, unless they or JAPANESE 330 have already been passed.*

**JAPANESE 307 (2 Points)****Classical Japanese Language and Literature**

Introduction to the classical Japanese language. Involves extensive readings of selected literary and historical works from the classics in the original language.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 322 (2 Points)****Japanese Linguistics**

Linguistic analysis of Japanese and a study of some fundamental linguistic concepts.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese including 230.205 or JAPANESE 222*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 324 (2 Points)****Topics in Japanese Linguistics**

A study of selected areas of Japanese language structure and usage.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese including JAPANESE 222 or 270 or 230.205 or 230.285*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 331 (2 Points)****Advanced Japanese 1**

A continuation of JAPANESE 232.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 150 and 6 points at Stage II including one of JAPANESE 230, 232 or 239*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 330, 338, or 339*

**JAPANESE 332 (2 Points)****Advanced Japanese 2**

A continuation of JAPANESE 331.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 331*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 330, 338, or 339*

**JAPANESE 338 (2 Points)****Japanese for Business**

Builds on skills acquired in Stage II and will develop oral-aural proficiency within a business context.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 150 and 6 points at Stage II including one of JAPANESE 230, 232 or 239*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 330, 331, 332 or 339*

**JAPANESE 339 (2 Points)****Japanese for Business 2**

Builds on the skills acquired in Stage II and will further develop oral-aural proficiency within a business context.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 338*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 332*

**JAPANESE 341 (2 Points)****Postwar Literature**

Examines how gender, national/diaspora identity, and memories of the Second World War are treated in some post-war Japanese writings. Historical and political context of each text is emphasized. Texts mostly in Japanese.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese and JAPANESE 150*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 377 (2 Points)****Japanese Study Abroad 3A**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: School approval required*

**JAPANESE 378 (2 Points)****Japanese Study Abroad 3B**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 377 and School approval required*

**JAPANESE 381 (2 Points)****Modernity and Identity**

Explores issues related to modernity and national/cultural identity in the *Meiji* period (1868-1912), with emphasis on the complex relationship between cultural essentialism and Westernization. Texts in English and Japanese. Includes writers such as: Fukuzawa Yukichi, Okakura Tenshin and Natsume Soseki.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese and JAPANESE 150*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 385 (2 Points)****Topics in Japanese Culture and Society**

Introduces several specific topics in modern Japanese society and culture. Topics may include: media, gender, ethnicity, colonialism, national identity, performing arts, and intellectual discourse. Readings are in Japanese and English.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese including JAPANESE 270*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 390 (2 Points)****Media in Contemporary Japan**

Analyses and discusses the influence of mass media in shaping Japan's contemporary urban society, making use of primary and secondary Japanese sources as well as secondary sources in English.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II*

**Honours and Master's Courses****JAPANESE 704 (2 Points)****JAPANESE 704A (1 Point)****JAPANESE 704B (1 Point)****Language: Jookyuu Nihongo**

Oral and written use of Japanese at an advanced level.

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 704 A and B, or JAPANESE 704*

**JAPANESE 705 (4 Points)****Advanced Japanese Translation Practice**

Available only to students enrolled in the Graduate Diploma in Translation Studies. Practical training in translation from English to Japanese and Japanese to English. Text categories include general, commercial, legal, and technical materials.

**JAPANESE 710 (2 Points)****Japanese Research Methodology (Literature)**

Overview of research materials and methodology as used in the field of Japanese literary research.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307*

**JAPANESE 711 (4 Points)****Modern Prose and Fiction**

Advanced readings of selected modern and contemporary works of an author or authors.

- JAPANESE 712** (4 Points)  
**Classical Prose and Fiction**  
 Advanced readings of selected classical works of an author or authors.  
*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307*
- JAPANESE 713** (4 Points)  
**Japanese Poetry**  
 Translation of and comments on representative works of Japanese poetry of all ages.  
*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307*
- JAPANESE 716** (4 Points)  
**Major Works of Modern Japanese Thinkers**  
 A survey of aspects of modern (after 1868) Japanese thought, including mutual relationships between schools and thinkers.
- JAPANESE 717** (4 Points)  
**History of Japanese Literary Criticism**  
 Translation of and comments on classical and modern texts dealing with understanding and evaluation of literary works.  
*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307*
- JAPANESE 720** (2 Points)
- JAPANESE 720A** (1 Point)  
**JAPANESE 720B** (1 Point)  
**Japanese Research Methodology (Linguistics)**  
 Overview of research materials and methodology as used in the field of Japanese language research.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 720 A and B, or JAPANESE 720*
- JAPANESE 721** (4 Points)
- JAPANESE 721A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 721B** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Japanese Linguistics**  
 An introduction to Japanese linguistics.  
*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 721 A and B, or JAPANESE 721*
- JAPANESE 722** (4 Points)
- JAPANESE 722A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 722B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Japanese Linguistics**  
 An examination of selected topics in Japanese linguistics.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 722 A and B, or JAPANESE 722*
- JAPANESE 723A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 723B** (2 Points)  
**Problems in Japanese Syntax**  
 A seminar-based course where students present explanations of Japanese grammar incorporating explanations from various textbooks and research in Japanese linguistics.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 723 A and B*
- JAPANESE 725** (4 Points)
- JAPANESE 725A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 725B** (2 Points)  
**Japanese Phonology and Morphology**  
 Readings and original research in aspects of the phonology and morphology of Japanese, both standard and dialect.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 725 A and B, or JAPANESE 725*
- JAPANESE 731** (4 Points)  
**JAPANESE 731A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 731B** (2 Points)  
**Approved Topic(s) in Culture or Literature**  
 An examination of selected topic(s) in Japanese culture and/or literature.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 731 A and B, or JAPANESE 731*
- JAPANESE 742** (4 Points)  
**JAPANESE 742A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 742B** (2 Points)  
**Readings in Modern Japanese Intellectual History**  
 Deals with such issues as modernity, national/cultural identity, race, gender and uniqueness.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 742 A and B, or JAPANESE 742*
- JAPANESE 743** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- JAPANESE 744A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 744B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 744 A and B*
- JAPANESE 745** (2 Points)  
**Research Essay**  
 Supervised research on an approved topic.
- JAPANESE 746A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 746B** (2 Points)  
**Research Essay**  
 Supervised research on an approved topic.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 746 A and B*
- JAPANESE 747A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 747B** (2 Points)  
**Special Studies**  
 Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 747 A and B*
- JAPANESE 750** (2 Points)  
**Language Analysis for Teachers of Japanese**  
 Students will gain a wide understanding of linguistic and socio-cultural issues relating to the learning and teaching of Japanese as a foreign language and will enhance their analytical ability to identify issues of concern.
- JAPANESE 751** (2 Points)  
**Teaching Japanese as a Foreign Language**  
 Critical evaluation of course design and development of teaching material for Japanese as a foreign language.
- JAPANESE 790A** (2 Points)  
**JAPANESE 790B** (2 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 790 A and B*
- JAPANESE 794A** (5 Points)  
**JAPANESE 794B** (5 Points)  
**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 794 A and B*

**JAPANESE 797A** (7 Points)  
**JAPANESE 797B** (7 Points)  
**Research Portfolio**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 797 A and B

---

## Korean

### Stage I

**KOREAN 110** (2 Points)  
**Korean for Beginners 1**  
 Basic written and spoken skills in modern Korean. Through the practice of listening to and reading basic Korean sentences, fundamental grammar and vocabulary are taught so that students will be able to carry out basic conversation and comprehend simple Korean texts.  
*Restriction: KOREAN 100*

**KOREAN 111** (2 Points)  
**Korean for Beginners 2**  
 A continuation of KOREAN 110.  
*Prerequisite: KOREAN 110*  
*Restriction: KOREAN 100*

**KOREAN 120** (2 Points)  
**Korean Society and Culture**  
 As a means to understand Korean society and culture better, Korean 'ways' will be examined and also compared with Chinese and Japanese 'ways'. Taught in English.

**KOREAN 121** (2 Points)  
**Thought and Religion in Korea**  
 Examines the major philosophical traditions in Korea: Buddhism, Daoism, Confucianism, 'Neo-Confucianism', Christianity, and others. The objectives of the course are to understand the basic tenets of these philosophical and religious traditions, analyse the interactions among them, and assess their impact on social, political and cultural developments.

---

### Stage II

**KOREAN 200** (2 Points)  
**Intermediate Korean 1**  
 Aims to expand students' proficiency in Korean by introducing further points of grammar and their usage. This course serves as the base for oral and written language skills at an intermediate level.  
*Prerequisite: KOREAN 100 or 111*

**KOREAN 201** (2 Points)  
**Intermediate Korean 2**  
 A continuation of KOREAN 200. Comprehension of written Korean. A wide range of vocabulary and approximately 100 basic *hanja* (Chinese characters) will be introduced. The improvement of accuracy and speed in reading comprehension will be emphasized.  
*Prerequisite: KOREAN 200*

**KOREAN 204** (2 Points)  
**Translation Into Modern Korean**  
 This course attempts to develop translation skills into Korean, while reviewing the major grammar points of the Korean language.  
*Prerequisite: KOREAN 100 or 111*

**KOREAN 230** (2 Points)  
**Traditional and Modern Korean Literature**  
 A survey in English of Korean literature from its beginning in myths to contemporary fiction. Particular attention will be given to the social and historical context of the literature, and to the life of the authors. Major classifications include oral literatures, literatures in Chinese, and classical and modern poetry and prose. Prior knowledge of Korean literature and history is not required.  
*Restriction: 235.303*

**KOREAN 240** (2 Points)  
**Globalization and Korea**  
 Globalization and its effects on Korean economy, culture and politics.  
*Prerequisite: 6 points passed at Stage I*

**KOREAN 277** (2 Points)  
**Korean Study Abroad 2A**  
 Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.  
*Prerequisite: School approval required*

**KOREAN 278** (2 Points)  
**Korean Study Abroad 2B**  
 Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.  
*Prerequisite: KOREAN 277 and School approval required*

---

### Stage III

**KOREAN 300** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Korean 1**  
 Korean grammar at an advanced level. A continuation of KOREAN 201.  
*Prerequisite: KOREAN 201*

**KOREAN 301** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Korean 2**  
 It is designed to emphasize comprehension and composition of Korean texts.  
*Prerequisite: KOREAN 300*

**KOREAN 304** (2 Points)  
**Translation from and into Modern Korean**  
 Translation from newspaper articles and a variety of other sources covering the society, geography, culture, economy, literature and daily life of Korea.  
*Prerequisite: KOREAN 200 and 201*

**KOREAN 340** (2 Points)  
**Korea through Popular Culture**  
 Popular culture is an excellent window through which a society and its politics can be read and understood. Examines selected films and popular music.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points passed at Stage II*

**KOREAN 377** (2 Points)  
**Korean Study Abroad 3A**  
 Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.  
*Prerequisite: School approval required*

**KOREAN 378** (2 Points)  
**Korean Study Abroad 3B**  
 Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.  
*Prerequisite: KOREAN 377 and School approval required*

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

**KOREAN 700** (2 Points)  
**Korean Language Skills 1**  
 A rounding-off of the undergraduate language programme with emphasis on written language skills. Articles on Korean culture in both media and original sources covering daily life, history, geography, literature and economy will be used.

**KOREAN 701 (2 Points)****Korean Language Skills 2**

Advanced-level study of modern Korean language employing comprehension, conversation, discussion and presentation. The materials covering general features and issues in contemporary Korean society will be used especially with the aim of enhancing spoken language skills.

**KOREAN 708 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School.

**KOREAN 709 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School

**KOREAN 710A (2 Points)****KOREAN 710B (2 Points)****Special Studies**

Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School.

*To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 710 A and B*

**KOREAN 730 (4 Points)****KOREAN 730A (2 Points)****KOREAN 730B (2 Points)****Modern Korean Literature**

This focuses on the selected readings in modern Korean literature from the early years of the twentieth century to the present day. Particular attention will be paid to the social and historical context of the literature, and to the life of the authors. Major periods include enlightenment, colonial, and division. Fiction is emphasized and the works of women – early and contemporary – are included. Both lectures and discussions are employed.

*To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 730 A and B, or KOREAN 730*

**KOREAN 797A (7 Points)****KOREAN 797B (7 Points)****Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 797 A and B*

---

**Language Study Abroad**

*The Language Study Abroad courses are intended to permit students to take advantage of opportunities for formal language study in an approved overseas institution where instruction is in a language other than English. Supplementary study at The University of Auckland may be required as part of these courses.*

*Students taking one of these courses should enrol prior to undertaking the overseas study, and enrolment is subject to approval of the planned overseas study by the Head of Department or School for the language subject concerned. A final grade for any of the courses will be based on formal assessment of achievement in the language concerned, together with any other work required by the Head of Department or School.*

*The courses available for Language Study Abroad are listed under the following subjects: Arts – General, Chinese, French, German, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Russian, Spanish.*

---

**Language Teaching and Learning**


---

**Stage I****LANGTCHG 100 (1 Point)****Linguistics for the Language Teacher**

An introduction to linguistics and its applications for language teachers. Provides basic understanding about the nature and function of language, including phonology, morphology and syntax, as well as semantics. This understanding will underpin the pedagogical principles developed in other units of the programme; and will enable students to translate their understanding of language into effective classroom practice.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TE SOL)*

**LANGTCHG 101 (1 Point)****Introduction to ELT**

An introduction to a range of approaches to second language teaching and the theories of language and learning which underpin them. Students will explore the basic concepts related to current approaches to ELT in their home country and the social context of learning.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TE SOL)*

**LANGTCHG 102 (2 Points)****Classroom Management and School Experience**

Develops the skills necessary for the teaching of English in secondary classrooms and will be linked to school experience. Introduces students to the organization of learning within the classroom and specifically to the role and behaviour of the teacher in secondary classrooms and in the school. The integrated school experience period is designed to provide students with an initial orientation to the school environment in the students' home country and to give them the opportunity to apply their growing knowledge and skills in a supportive classroom context.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TE SOL)*

**LANGTCHG 103 (2 Points)****Competency in the Mother Tongue**

Aims to extend the students' command and control over their mother tongue to enable them to operate efficiently and effectively in schools in their home country where the medium of instruction is the mother tongue. To further enrich their communication skills they will be exposed to the literature in their mother tongue.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TE SOL)*

**LANGTCHG 104 (2 Points)****Ethics and Civilisation**

The role and the influence of local culture/religion (eg, Islam or Confucianism) on world civilization in general, and local culture in particular, will be examined. Offers opportunities for students to examine Asian civilization and will examine the challenges facing contemporary Asian civilizations.

*Prerequisite: Students must be enrolled in BEd(TE SOL)*

**Stage II****LANGTCHG 202 (2 Points)****Introductory English Language Analysis for TEFL**

Introduces key concepts of phonology, grammar and vocabulary of English and develops an understanding

of how they function as systems in written and spoken English. Develops the skills needed to formally analyse the phonological, lexical and grammatical systems of English. Illustrates how linguistic descriptions can be applied in language teaching.

*Prerequisite: At least 4 points passed or approval of Programme Coordinator*

### Stage III

#### LANGTCHG 300 (2 Points)

##### Introduction to English Language Teaching

A general introduction to English language teaching. This course requires students to undertake a study of current theory and practice relating to the teaching of the knowledge systems of English and of language skills. It also familiarizes students with current language teaching resources.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II or above or Departmental approval required*

#### LANGTCHG 301 (2 Points)

##### Introduction to TEFL Curriculum

Introduces principles and procedures used in course design and to evaluate TEFL courses, coursebooks and materials. Develops a practical understanding of how to set about planning an EFL curriculum.

*Prerequisite: LANGTCHG 202 or approval of Programme Coordinator*

#### LANGTCHG 302 (2 Points)

##### Practical Language Teaching

Develops an understanding of the procedures and options used in teaching language lessons; introduces participants to a range of lesson types for the teaching of grammar, vocabulary and language skills, and to the use of classroom observation as a means of learning about language teaching and classroom interaction.

*Prerequisite: LANGTCHG 202 and 300 and approval of Programme Coordinator, or enrolment in BEd(TESOL)*

#### LANGTCHG 303 (2 Points)

##### Instructed Language Learning

Introduces the study of characteristics of the acquisition-rich classroom by considering how a second language is learned, and explores different aspects of language pedagogy from the perspective of second language learning and factors responsible for individual differences in L2 learning in a classroom context. Students will consider research that has examined instructed language learning and have the opportunity to design their own action research project.

*Prerequisite: LANGTCHG 202 and 300, or enrolment in BEd(TESOL), or approval of the Programme Coordinator*

#### LANGTCHG 310 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic

### Stage IV

#### LANGTCHG 400 (2 Points)

##### Language Curriculum Studies

Examines the meaning of curriculum in relation to the school, state, and national contexts, and the broader socio-political context. Of central importance is the idea of curriculum as an interactive process. The idea of curriculum as process and the dynamic interplay between curriculum context, theory and practice are emphasized.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TESOL)*

#### LANGTCHG 401 (2 Points)

##### Language Assessment in Schools

Aims to develop understanding of second language learning assessment. Starting with broader considerations and techniques, the focus is on different forms of assessment used in secondary English teaching contexts in the home country.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TESOL)*

#### LANGTCHG 402 (2 Points)

##### Linking Theory and Practice in the Language Classroom

Examines the pedagogical frameworks underpinning classroom methodology. Focuses on linking theory and practice and on preparing students for forthcoming classroom teaching. Includes the practical preparation and implementation of lessons, drawing on and bringing into focus relevant aspects of the programme.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TESOL)*

#### LANGTCHG 403 (6 Points)

##### Teaching Practice

A 12-week period of teaching practice in a school in the country of the student's origin. The practice will focus mainly on the teaching of English, although the student may have the opportunity to teach a second subject.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TESOL)*

### Honours and Master's Courses

#### LANGTCHG 704 (2 Points)

##### Language Assessment

Introduces students to some fundamental issues and debates in the field of second language testing and assessment to familiarise them with different assessment options and to develop skills in devising their own assessment procedures.

#### LANGTCHG 705 (2 Points)

##### Teaching English as an International Language

A study of the impact and implications of English language teaching world-wide.

#### LANGTCHG 706 (2 Points)

##### Grammar for Teachers

A study of key features of the grammar of spoken and written English from a pedagogical perspective with the focus on consciousness-raising in second/foreign language teachers.

#### LANGTCHG 707 (2 Points)

##### Phonology for Teachers

A study of key features of English phonology from a pedagogical perspective, systematic analysis and evaluation of the phonology content in language teaching resources, and the implications for teaching.

#### LANGTCHG 709 (2 Points)

##### Bilingualism and Bilingual Education

Develops an understanding of important aspects of both individual and societal bilingualism which is used to analyse issues in education, assessment and policy contexts.

#### LANGTCHG 710 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic: Task-based Language Teaching and Learning

Examines research that has investigated task-based second language learning and the theoretical rationale for task-based language teaching. Factors in the design of task-based syllabuses and

methodological options for lessons based on tasks are also considered. Problems in implementation are discussed.

**LANGTCHG 711 (2 Points)**

**Individual Differences in Second Language Acquisition**

An examination of research investigating individual differences in second language acquisition, familiarizing students with instruments for collecting data on factors contributing to individual differences and enabling them to design an empirical study of individual learner differences.

**LANGTCHG 712 (2 Points)**

**Vocabulary for Teachers**

A study of English vocabulary from a pedagogical perspective with the focus on consciousness-raising in second/foreign language teachers and with special reference to dictionaries for advanced learners.

**LANGTCHG 713 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Corpus Linguistics**

The use of spoken and written corpora in language analysis and language teaching, with special reference to vocabulary (lexis). The focus will be on: compiling a corpus based on specific design principles; using a corpus to prepare language teaching materials; becoming familiar with corpus-based approaches in language analysis and language teaching; and using corpus data to complete a linguistic study.

**LANGTCHG 714 (2 Points)**

**Sociolinguistics and Language Teaching**

An introduction to concepts and issues in sociolinguistics that are relevant to prospective or practising language teachers.

**LANGTCHG 715 (2 Points)**

**Developing Academic Literacy**

Aims to help participants understand and develop their academic literacies. Focuses on texts involved in the research process, such as review articles, research paper proposals, dissertations and conference abstracts; makes extensive reference to findings from genre and corpus-based analyses; and includes conducting mini-analyses on the discourse in participants' own disciplines.

**LANGTCHG 720 (2 Points)**

**Language Analysis for Teachers**

A study of fundamental concepts of phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary, including methods of analysis and procedures for selecting features to teach.

**LANGTCHG 721 (2 Points)**

**Discourse Analysis for Teachers**

A study of fundamental concepts and approaches for analysing characteristics and functions of spoken and written discourse; and applications of discourse analysis to language teaching.

**LANGTCHG 722 (2 Points)**

**Learner Language**

A study of learner language, including an introduction to the methods used to analyse learner language, eg. error analysis, performance analysis, and form-function analysis, and a review of empirical research that has used these methods, and its pedagogical relevance.

**LANGTCHG 723 (2 Points)**

**Theories of Language Learning**

Builds on LANGTCHG 722 which is a prerequisite for this course. A critical examination of theories of second language learning grounded in linguistics, psycholinguistics, sociolinguistics and education, identifying commonalities and differences in the theories, and considering their pedagogical implications.

**LANGTCHG 724 (2 Points)**

**Curriculum Development for Language Teaching**

An overview of principles and procedures in language teaching methodology with particular reference to course design for the teaching of second language reading, writing, listening and speaking.

**LANGTCHG 726 (2 Points)**

**Materials Development and Evaluation**

A critical examination of current language teaching materials in the light of research into second language learning and teaching, a focus on the process of developing materials, and the study of methods for carrying out prospective and retrospective evaluations of materials and courses. Students will also have the opportunity to develop their own materials for a specific teaching context.

**LANGTCHG 727 (2 Points)**

**Action Research for Language Teachers**

A study of principles and methods of action research. Students will be required to design and carry out an action research study on some aspect of their own teaching, and to write a report of the study undertaken.

**LANGTCHG 728 (2 Points)**

**Second Language Classroom Research**

A review of second language classroom research that examines such topics as teacher-talk, classroom interaction, learner participation, and form-focused instruction. The focus is on the ability to evaluate the published research and to design and carry out a small-scale classroom study.

**LANGTCHG 729 (2 Points)**

**Practicum in Second/Foreign Language Teaching**

An opportunity for students to obtain practical experience of language teaching by carrying out a series of guided observation tasks in a second/foreign language classroom and by planning, teaching and evaluating a number of lessons in the same classroom.

**LANGTCHG 731 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**LANGTCHG 732 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Applied Linguistics Research**

Introduces students to the skills necessary for carrying out applied language studies research. Topics covered will include hypothesis development, research design, literature review, data collection techniques, methods of analysis, and a brief outline of basic statistical principles.

*Note: The following courses, LANGTCHG 740–753, are available only for distance learning.*

**LANGTCHG 740 (2 Points)**

**Language Analysis for Teachers**

The study of the structure of English through an analysis of the key concepts and features of English

phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary from the perspective of second/foreign language teaching.

**LANGTCHG 741 (2 Points)**

**Second Language Course Design and Methodology**

The study of the theoretical bases of language course design and methodology. Examines how to carry out a needs analysis, different types of syllabus, theories of language teaching and the historic development of teaching methods including communicative language teaching.

**LANGTCHG 742 (2 Points)**

**Language Assessment and Evaluation**

A critical examination of the principles of language assessment and evaluation and their applications to both teaching practice and research.

**LANGTCHG 743 (2 Points)**

**Second Language Acquisition**

A study of different theories of second language acquisition and research that has investigated both natural and instructed acquisition. The applications of theory and research to language pedagogy will be considered.

**LANGTCHG 744 (2 Points)**

**Discourse Analysis**

Different approaches to discourse analysis, for the analysis of language as text and for the incorporation of discourse analysis into language teaching.

**LANGTCHG 745 (2 Points)**

**Second Language Classroom Research**

The findings of second language classroom research and the methods used in this research.

**LANGTCHG 746 (2 Points)**

**Materials Development and Evaluation**

The principles and processes of designing and evaluating language teaching materials.

**LANGTCHG 747 (2 Points)**

**Individual Learner Differences and Second Language Learning**

The findings of research into individual learner differences and their role in language learning; the quantitative and qualitative methods used in this research.

**LANGTCHG 748 (2 Points)**

**Bilingualism and Bilingual Education**

Aspects of both individual and societal bilingualism especially for the analysis of issues in education, assessment and policy.

**LANGTCHG 749 (2 Points)**

**Sociolinguistics and Language Teaching**

An examination of concepts and issues in sociolinguistics which are relevant to language teaching in practice, and of sociolinguistic research methods.

**LANGTCHG 750 (2 Points)**

**Language Planning and Policy**

An examination of a number of approaches to the study of literacy and of the implications of these approaches for second language teaching and learning.

**LANGTCHG 751 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in TESOL**

**LANGTCHG 752 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in TESOL**

**LANGTCHG 753 (4 Points)**

**Dissertation**

A piece of original research relating to language teaching and learning.

*Prerequisite: An average of A- over four courses or permission of Head of Department*

**LANGTCHG 790A (2 Points)**

**LANGTCHG 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGTCHG 790 A and B*

**LANGTCHG 794A (5 Points)**

**LANGTCHG 794B (5 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGTCHG 794 A and B*

**LANGTCHG 796A (7 Points)**

**LANGTCHG 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGTCHG 796 A and B*

**LANGTCHG 797A (7 Points)**

**LANGTCHG 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGTCHG 797 A and B*

---

## Languages and Literature

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

**LANGLIT 797A (7 Points)**

**LANGLIT 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGLIT 797 A and B*

---

## Latin

---

### Stage I

**LATIN 100 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Latin Language 1**

An introduction to the vocabulary and the grammar of simple sentences in Latin.

**LATIN 101 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Latin Language 2**

An advancing beginner's course in vocabulary and in the grammar of complex sentences in Latin.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 100 or Departmental approval required*

---

### Stage II

**LATIN 200 (2 Points)**

**Latin Language Acquisition: Intermediate**

The analysis and description of Latin grammar, practice in the translation of Latin to and from English, vocabulary acquisition.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required*

<b>LATIN 201</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Unprepared Latin Translation</b>
<b>Latin Literary Texts 2A</b>		Passages of Latin will be set for translation into English.
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 700 A and B</i>
<i>Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required</i>		
<b>LATIN 202</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LATIN 701A</b>
<b>Latin Literary Texts 2B</b>		<b>LATIN 701B</b>
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<b>Latin Language Study</b>
<i>Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required</i>		Any or all of the following: translation into Latin, grammatical, syntactical and stylistic analysis of passages of Latin prose and/or verse.
<b>LATIN 203</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 701 A and B</i>
<b>Latin Literary Texts 2C</b>		<b>LATIN 702</b>
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<b>LATIN 702A</b>
<i>Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required</i>		<b>LATIN 702B</b>
<b>LATIN 204</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Latin Poetry 1</b>
<b>Latin Literary Texts 2D</b>		Entire works or selected passages of Latin poetry will be set for translation and explanation.
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 702 A and B, or LATIN 702</i>
<i>Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required</i>		<b>LATIN 703A</b>
<b>LATIN 205</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LATIN 703B</b>
<b>Special Topic</b>		<b>Latin Prose Authors 1</b>
<i>Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required</i>		Entire works or selected passages of Latin prose writing will be set for translation and explanation.
<hr/>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 703 A and B</i>
<b>Stage III</b>		<b>LATIN 704A</b>
<b>LATIN 300</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LATIN 704B</b>
<b>Latin Language Acquisition: Advanced</b>		<b>Latin Language Topic</b>
The structure and use of the Latin language including the use of non-classical Latin.		Passages of Latin will be set for translation and linguistic analysis.
<i>Prerequisite: LATIN 200 and either LATIN 201 or 202</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 704 A and B</i>
<b>LATIN 301</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LATIN 705</b>
<b>Latin Literary Texts 3A</b>		<b>LATIN 705A</b>
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<b>LATIN 705B</b>
<i>Prerequisite: LATIN 200 and either LATIN 201 or 202</i>		<b>Latin Special Topic</b>
<b>LATIN 302</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 705 A and B, or LATIN 705</i>
<b>Latin Literary Texts 3B</b>		<b>LATIN 706A</b>
Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.		<b>LATIN 706B</b>
<i>Prerequisite: LATIN 200 and either LATIN 201 or 202</i>		<b>Research Essays in Latin</b>
<b>LATIN 305</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 706 A and B</i>
<b>Latin Special Topic</b>		<b>LATIN 712A</b>
<i>Prerequisite: LATIN 300, 301 and 302</i>		<b>LATIN 712B</b>
<hr/>		<b>Latin Poetry 2</b>
<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>		Entire works or selected passages of Latin poetry will be set for translation and explanation.
<b>LATIN 700A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 712 A and B</i>
<b>LATIN 700B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LATIN 713A</b>
		<b>LATIN 713B</b>
		<b>Latin Prose Authors 2</b>
		Entire works or selected passages of Latin prose writing will be set for translation and explanation.
		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 713 A and B</i>
		<b>LATIN 790A</b>
		<b>LATIN 790B</b>

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 790 A and B

LATIN 797A (7 Points)

LATIN 797B (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 797 A and B

**Latin American Studies**

*Note: Spanish language competence (to the level of either SPANISH 105 or SPANISH 201) is a prerequisite for some Spanish courses in the Latin American Studies major and minor.*

**Stage II**

LATINAM 200 (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: LATINAM 100 or SPANISH 103*

LATINAM 201 (2 Points)

**Latin American History and Culture Through Film**

A journey through five moments of Latin American history and culture, from its creation as a region imagined through the gaze of colonialism, through the development of an independent, revolutionary Third Cinema, to the present when globalization is critiqued from the periphery.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 103 or 105 or 107 or FTVMS 100 or 101 or 112*

*Restriction: LATINAM 100*

**Stage III**

LATINAM 301 (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: One of HISTORY 231, LATINAM 201, POLITICS 234, SPANISH 211, 213 or 306*

**Linguistics**

*Note: LINGUIST 100 or 103, 200, 201 and 300 are required for a major in Linguistics.*

**Stage I**

LINGUIST 100 (2 Points)

**Introduction to Linguistics**

An introduction to the main areas of linguistics: the production and function of sounds in language (phonetics and phonology), word structure and word formation (morphology), the principles of grammar through a study of sentence structure (syntax), and various aspects of meaning (semantics). The course is a self-contained introduction and assumes no prior knowledge of linguistics or language study.

*Restriction: 175.106, LINGUIST 103*

LINGUIST 101 (2 Points)

**Language, Mind and Society**

A survey of the interactions between language and other areas of human behaviour. Students will study the interaction between language structure and use on the one hand, and social structure and social norms on the other (sociolinguistics), the relationship between linguistic knowledge and cultural knowledge (anthropological linguistics), and

the interrelationship of language and cognitive structures as revealed through language acquisition (psycholinguistics).

LINGUIST 102 (2 Points)

**Languages of the Pacific**

An introduction to the linguistics of the Pacific Islands (Melanesia, Micronesia and Polynesia), Australia and New Guinea. The areas covered include: principles of historical change, the social use of language, oral literature and the organization of linguistic systems of sound, meaning and grammar. Pidgins and Creoles are explored, as is the interaction of language with cultural institutions and conceptual systems.

LINGUIST 103 (2 Points)

**Introduction to English Linguistics**

An introduction to the core areas of language study. Topics include: how sounds are produced, the basic structure of the English sound system, primary word formation processes in English, the rules for English sentence structure and the fundamentals of word meaning. This course serves as an entry point into Stage II Linguistics, and provides an excellent background for students studying languages including English.

*Restriction: 175.106, LINGUIST 100*

**Stage II**

LINGUIST 200 (2 Points)

**Syntax and Semantics**

Continues on from LINGUIST 100 or 103 or 175.106 and consists of a formal and a functional part, providing problems and exercises in syntactic analysis, as well as an introduction to grammatical theories and types of grammatical systems.

*Prerequisite: 175.106 or LINGUIST 100 or 103*

LINGUIST 201 (2 Points)

**Phonology and Morphology**

Continues on from LINGUIST 100 or 103 or 175.106: the study of sound systems and the structure of words; problems of analysis in phonology and morphology.

*Prerequisite: 175.106 or LINGUIST 100 or 103*

LINGUIST 202 (2 Points)

**Language Change**

Introduces long-term historical trends, types of language change, language families and comparative reconstruction.

*Prerequisite: 175.106 or LINGUIST 100 or 103*

*Restriction: LINGUIST 308*

LINGUIST 203 (2 Points)

**Applied English Grammar**

Covers the form and functions of basic sentence types in English, with special attention to the relationship between grammatical structure and meaning; foregrounding and backgrounding in information structure; the role and relationship of tense and aspect; voice. Students will be shown how to distinguish different types of spoken and written English, from formal writing to standard and non-standard informal speech.

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points passed*

LINGUIST 205 (2 Points)

**Language and Identities in New Zealand**

Focuses on how New Zealanders use their

language/s to reflect multiple aspects of their identities. Covers language use among Pakeha, Maori and Pasifika peoples, as well as language use of recent Asian immigrants and the New Zealand sign language community.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I

### Stage III

#### LINGUIST 300 (2 Points) Syntactic Theory

A continuation of LINGUIST 200. Examination of syntactic topics from functional-typological and formal perspectives.

*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 200

#### LINGUIST 301 (2 Points) Advanced Phonology and Morphology

A continuation of LINGUIST 201, introducing a more theoretical approach to phonology including distinctive feature theory, syllable theory, metrical phonology, autosegmental phonology, lexical phonology, and parallel morphology. Includes a practical component in which theories are applied to language data.

*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 201

#### LINGUIST 302 (2 Points) Semantics and Pragmatics

An examination of the key areas of semantics and pragmatics, including lexical relations, categorization, speech act theory, and conversational implicature.

*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 100 or 103 or 175.106

#### LINGUIST 303 (2 Points) Conversational Analysis

The organization of conversation as an interactive activity.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points in the BA at Stage II

#### LINGUIST 305 (2 Points) Acquisition of Language

A critical survey of recent theories of first and second language acquisition, research into language acquisition, and the relevance of language acquisition to theoretical linguistics.

*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 200 or 201

#### LINGUIST 306 (2 Points) Polynesian Comparative Linguistics

Comparative and historical study of the sound systems, grammar, and vocabulary of the Polynesian languages.

*Prerequisite:* 260.205 or LINGUIST 202 or MAORI 201 or SAMOAN 201 or 202

#### LINGUIST 307 (2 Points) The English Language Worldwide

An overview of issues as they relate to the use of English in the world today. Topics include: the roles of American and British English, attitudes toward varieties of English, the development of new Englishes and English-based pidgins and creoles, and the notion of a 'standard' variety of English.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Linguistics  
*Restriction:* 175.208 or LINGUIST 204

#### LINGUIST 308 (2 Points) Language Change

Introduces long-term historical trends, types of language change, language families and comparative reconstruction.

*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 200 and 201

*Restriction:* LINGUIST 202

#### LINGUIST 310 (2 Points)

#### LINGUIST 310A (1 Point)

#### LINGUIST 310B (1 Point)

#### Linguistics Essays Course

Students undertake supervised research which will be presented in essay form without a final examination.

*Prerequisite:* Permission of the Head of Department

To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 310 A and B, or LINGUIST 310

#### LINGUIST 320 (2 Points)

#### Special Topic

*Prerequisite:* Permission of the Head of Department

### Honours and Master's Courses

#### LINGUIST 707 (4 Points)

#### Field Methods

Description and analysis of an unfamiliar language, based on data collected by the students. The class meets weekly with a speaker of that language, and data are collected through elicitation and texts. Students analyse the phonetics/phonology of the language and a selected area of the grammar.

#### LINGUIST 708A (2 Points)

#### LINGUIST 708B (2 Points)

#### Directed Study for MA

A directed reading and individual study course designed in consultation with appropriate staff according to the field of research. This course is not available for the BA(Hons).

To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 708 A and B

#### LINGUIST 709 (2 Points)

#### Linguistic Research

An introduction to research methods and practices for graduate students in Linguistics. All graduate students, both BA(Hons) and MA, will be required to take this course.

#### LINGUIST 720 (2 Points)

#### Syntax: Functional-typological Approaches

Cross-linguistic examination of selected topics, such as lexical categories, grammatical relations, transitivity, passives, serial verb constructions and iconicity.

*Restriction:* 255.700

#### LINGUIST 721 (2 Points)

#### Formal Syntax

Formal theories of syntax and grammar, meta-theory and topics of current interest to linguists working in formal syntax frameworks. Readings will be assigned in class.

*Restriction:* 255.700

#### LINGUIST 722 (2 Points)

#### Phonology

An introduction to a range of topics from the field of non-linear phonology. Students will be expected to read the seminal works from autosegmental phonology, syllable theory, feature geometry and CV phonology.

*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 301

*Restriction:* 255.701

<b>LINGUIST 724</b> <b>Semantics and Pragmatics</b> An advanced course in semantics and pragmatics. <i>Prerequisite: LINGUIST 302</i> <i>Restriction: 255.702</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LINGUIST 741</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>LINGUIST 726</b> <b>Language Contact</b> This course deals with ways in which languages may influence each other through the historical interactions of their speakers. The main points of reference are the syntheses of Weinreich (1953) and Thomason and Kaufman (1988). <i>Restriction: 255.703</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LINGUIST 742</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>LINGUIST 727</b> <b>Pidgins, Creoles and Mixed Languages</b> This course deals with a range of language types that are extreme results of language contact situations and stand somewhat apart from the normal process of native-speaker language transmission. Topics will include: the universalist versus substratist debate on creoles, and the question of an appropriate typology for these languages. <i>Restriction: 255.703</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LINGUIST 790</b> <b>Dissertation</b> A topic in Linguistics to be selected in consultation with staff. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 790 A and B, or LINGUIST 790</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b> <b>(2 Points)</b> <b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>LINGUIST 728</b> <b>Sociolinguistics</b> Provides an overview of the major studies in the field. Focuses on the relationship between language and age, gender, ethnicity, social class and social networks. <i>Restriction: 255.704</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LINGUIST 796A</b> <b>LINGUIST 796B</b> <b>Thesis</b> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 796 A and B</i>	<b>(7 Points)</b> <b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>LINGUIST 729</b> <b>Interactional Sociolinguistics</b> Combines the perspectives of sociolinguistics with those of discourse analysis. Sociolinguistic questions about the nature of the relationship between language, social identity and the social situation are approached through an examination of the dynamic processes of talk itself and through an ethnographic analysis of interactional data. <i>Restriction: 255.704</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LINGUIST 797A</b> <b>LINGUIST 797B</b> <b>Research Portfolio</b> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 797 A and B</i>	<b>(7 Points)</b> <b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>LINGUIST 730</b> <b>Discourse and Grammar</b> This course deals with language beyond the sentence. The analysis will focus on the ways in which the demands of actual language use (both written and spoken) influence the distribution and form of linguistic constructions. <i>Restriction: 255.705</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<hr/> <b>Logic and Computation</b> <hr/>	
<b>LINGUIST 731</b> <b>Historical Linguistics</b> An advanced course in historical linguistics. <i>Restriction: 255.706</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>	
<b>LINGUIST 734</b> <b>Lexicography of English</b> A study of the principles and practices of dictionary-making, illustrated by different types of English-language dictionaries for native-speaker users, especially general-purpose monolingual dictionaries (GMDs) in one volume. Readings will be assigned. <i>Restriction: 255.711, LANGTCHG 712</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LOGICOMP 701</b> <b>Directed Studies</b> Supervised research studies in an area of logic and computation.	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>LINGUIST 740</b> <b>Directed Study</b> A directed reading and individual study course designed in consultation with appropriate staff according to the field of research.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LOGICOMP 702</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
		<b>LOGICOMP 780</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
		<b>LOGICOMP 780A</b> <b>LOGICOMP 780B</b> <b>Honours Dissertation</b> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in LOGICOMP 780 A and B, or LOGICOMP 780</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b> <b>(2 Points)</b>
		<b>LOGICOMP 796A</b> <b>LOGICOMP 796B</b> <b>Thesis</b> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in LOGICOMP 796 A and B</i>	<b>(7 Points)</b> <b>(7 Points)</b>
		<hr/> <b>Maori Studies</b> <hr/>	
		<b>Stage I</b>	
		<b>MAORI 101</b> <b>Introduction to Written Māori</b> An introduction to listening, reading, writing and translation techniques used in the composition, reading and understanding of basic Māori. Designed for students with little or no knowledge of the language, and for those with some fluency wishing to understand simple sentence structure and composition. <i>Restriction: 260.105</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
		<b>MAORI 103</b> <b>Introduction to Spoken Māori</b> An introduction to spoken Māori for those with no previous knowledge of the language. Concentrates on	<b>(2 Points)</b>

the acquisition of aural and oral skills, developing the ability to understand and speak Māori. It is recommended that students also enrol in MAORI 101.  
*Restriction: 260.102, MAORI 106*

**MAORI 104 (2 Points)**

**Reo Tīmata-Kōrero: Oral 2**

Further development of the basic language skills taught in MAORI 103.

*Prerequisite: MAORI 103 or Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: 260.102, MAORI 106*

**MAORI 106 (2 Points)**

**Whakaara Reo Māori 1**

The development of skills in speaking, writing and hearing language. This course is intended for students with a good command of Māori.

*Restriction: 260.102, MAORI 103*

**MAORI 107 (2 Points)**

**MAORI 107A (1 Point)**

**MAORI 107B (1 Point)**

**Te Reo me ōna Tikanga for Teaching**

A general introduction to Māori language and culture. There will be a heavy emphasis on the acquisition of basic Te Reo and elementary cultural practices (tikanga) for the classroom.

*For BEd(Tchg) students only*

**MAORI 110 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Māori Literature**

A study of the history, scope and nature of Māori literature.

*Restriction: MAORI 191*

**MAORI 130 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Māori Society**

An introduction to Māori tradition, culture and history: origin and migration traditions, marae protocol, Ngāti Whātua and the settlement of Tāmaki Makaurau, Māori land ownership and use, the Treaty of Waitangi, the history of Māori-Pākehā contact, Māori religion, Māori leadership and the Waitangi Tribunal.

**MAORI 170 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

**MAORI 190 (2 Points)**

**Kapa Haka 1**

An introductory course for beginners or others who have only a minimal knowledge of traditional and contemporary Māori performing arts. The course is strongly practical. It will stress the fundamentals of performance and the various social, cultural and political settings that give it meaning.

**MAORI 191 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

**Stage II**

**MAORI 201 (2 Points)**

**Intermediate Written Māori**

Follows on from MAORI 101. Techniques in listening, reading, writing and translation are further developed.

*Prerequisite: MAORI 101 or 105*

*Restriction: 260.205*

**MAORI 203 (2 Points)**

**Intermediate Spoken Māori**

Continuing the development of language skills that will facilitate students' own communicative ability.

*Prerequisite: 260.102 or MAORI 103*

*Restriction: 260.202 or MAORI 206*

**MAORI 204 (2 Points)**

**Reo Tīmata-Kōrero: Oral 2B**

Further development of students' fluency and communicative competence.

*Prerequisite: MAORI 203*

*Restriction: MAORI 106 and 206*

**MAORI 206 (2 Points)**

**Whakaara Reo Māori 2**

Follows on from MAORI 106. Study of the language through Māori texts and song.

*Prerequisite: MAORI 106*

*Restriction: 260.202, MAORI 203*

**MAORI 210 (2 Points)**

**Ngā Kōrero Tuku Iho: Oral Literature**

Translation and study of selected texts of the oral literature.

*Prerequisite: 2 points from: 260.102, MAORI 101, 103, 105, 106*

**MAORI 230 (2 Points)**

**The Ancient Māori World/Māori and Pākehā Perspectives**

Analyses traditional Māori society and examines the social, political and economic impact of European colonization upon Māori culture.

*Prerequisite: MAORI 130*

**MAORI 240 (2 Points)**

**Te Kete Aronui**

Focuses on knowledge recovery of past traditions and practices relating to Māori material culture with a strong emphasis on developing practical skills.

*Prerequisite: MAORI 130 or ARTHIST 102, or 4 points at Stage I in Museums and Cultural Heritage, or Departmental approval*

**MAORI 270 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

**MAORI 291 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: MAORI 130*

**MAORI 292 (2 Points)**

**Kapa Haka 2**

Examines traditional and contemporary Māori performing arts and covers all aspects of Māori performance including whakaeke (entry), waiata mōteatea, waiata-ā-ringa (action song), poi, haka, whakawātea (exit). There is a strong practical element to the course as well as an analysis of social, cultural and political contexts of the songs and performance.

*Prerequisite: Any Stage I MAORI language course or permission of Head of Department*

**Stage III**

**MAORI 301 (2 Points)**

**Reo Māori Tuhituhi**

Follows on from MAORI 201. Includes a survey of the theoretical orientations to the study of Māori language, the effects of colonization on the language and efforts to revitalize it once it became endangered. Also includes practical exercises in transcription and translation of selected recordings and texts, and grammatical analysis.

*Prerequisite: 260.205 or MAORI 201*

- MAORI 302** (2 Points)  
**Reo Māori Kōrero**  
 Expansion of language ability and competence, furthering the development of conversational and compositional skills.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points from: 260.202, MAORI, 203, 206*
- MAORI 310** (2 Points)  
**Ngā Kōrero o Mua: Traditional Narratives**  
 Translation and study of selected texts from the oral literature.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points from: 260.202, 260.205, MAORI 201, 203, 206*
- MAORI 311** (2 Points)  
**Whaikōrero**  
 The language of oratory.  
*Prerequisite: MAORI 206 or Departmental approval required*
- MAORI 312** (2 Points)  
**Ngā Mōteatea: Māori Poetry and Song**  
 A study of selected traditional song texts, their musical and literary form, and the traditional circumstances of their composition.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points from: 260.202, 260.205, MAORI 201, 203, 206*
- MAORI 313** (2 Points)  
**Ngā Wānanga**  
 Ka tiroirohia ētahi o ngā tuhituhi o mua e pā ana ki ngā wānanga, ki ngā tikanga o neherā. Writings relating to past wānanga and lore of former times will be examined.  
*Prerequisite: MAORI 206*
- MAORI 320** (2 Points)  
**Mātauranga Māori: Māori Knowledge**  
 Explores the various facets of Māori knowledge including: traditional Māori narratives (kōrero), genealogy (whakapapa), traditional songs (waiata), proverbs (whakatauki), prophetic sayings (kupu whakāri) and carving (whakairo). The aim is to help develop an understanding of the Māori way of knowing and the Māori way of seeing the world.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points from: 260.202, 260.205, MAORI 201, 203, 206*
- MAORI 330** (2 Points)  
**Māori Governance and Government**  
 Issues and themes of contemporary relevance to Māori society, including human, civil and cultural rights, sovereignty and autonomy, unity and diversity, tradition and change, in an otherwise hegemonic political environment.  
*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Māori Studies or 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*
- MAORI 331** (2 Points)  
**Te Hunga Noho Tāone: Urban Māori**  
 A course that will closely examine a range of issues relating to the lives of urban Māori.  
*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Māori Studies*  
*Restriction: 260.391*
- MAORI 332** (2 Points)  
**Ngā Mahi Iritakiwā: Māori and the Media**  
 Exploring the location of Māori within the media.  
*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Māori Studies or FIVMS 200*  
*Restriction: 260.392*
- MAORI 335** (2 Points)  
**Māori and Indigenous Governance**
- Examines the nature of the claims that indigenous minorities are making and the political strategies that they use to pursue their self-determining agendas in both domestic and international arenas. Concepts of indigenous and human rights, redistributive justice and others are discussed and explored in relation to contemporary demands of some indigenous peoples.  
*Prerequisite: POLITICS 229 or 4 points at Stage II in Māori Studies or 4 points in Political Studies or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200*
- MAORI 340** (2 Points)  
**Te Whare Pora**  
 Further develops the practical skills and research methods introduced in Stage II Material Culture courses with an emphasis on Māori feather and fibre arts.  
*Prerequisite: MAORI 240 or Department approval required, or 4 points at Stage II in Museums and Cultural Heritage and Departmental approval*
- MAORI 341** (2 Points)  
**Whakairo: Māori Carving**  
 Tikanga and the practical component of Whakairo.  
*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Māori Studies or Departmental approval required*
- MAORI 342** (2 Points)  
**Te Ao Kōhata**  
 Recovery of knowledge relating to traditions of stone, bone, wood, shell and fibre use by Māori.  
*Prerequisite: MAORI 240 or Department approval required, or 4 points at Stage II in Museums and Cultural Heritage and Departmental approval*
- MAORI 360** (2 Points)  
**Te Kaupapa Wāhine Māori**  
 An introduction to an understanding of the traditional and contemporary knowledge relevant to Māori women.  
*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Māori Studies or Women's Studies or Departmental approval required*
- MAORI 370** (2 Points)  
**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**
- MAORI 393** (2 Points)  
**Kapa Haka 3**  
 An advanced level of performance instruction requiring high levels of understanding of the depth and detail of the repertoire of ancient waiata, various forms and styles of haka and poi. Intellectual and experiential understanding of changes that have occurred in these forms, leading into contemporary song, dance and choral works; analysis of the social, cultural and political issues that have inspired historical and contemporary works.  
*Prerequisite: MAORI 292 or permission of Head of Department*
- MAORI 394** (2 Points)  
**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Māori Studies*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- MAORI 700** (4 Points)  
**Reo Māori: Topic in Māori Language**  
 An examination of developments in Māori and Polynesian grammar over the past 30 years.
- MAORI 710** (4 Points)  
**Ngā Tuhihi Māori: Maori Manuscripts**

Translation and analysis of nineteenth-century Māori manuscripts.

**MAORI 711 (4 Points)**

**Ngā Kōrero Tuku Iho: Māori Oral Literature**

Translation to English and analysis of texts derived from the oral tradition.

**MAORI 712 (4 Points)**

**Whakareo Kē: Translation of Māori Literature**

Intensive practice in the translation of a variety of texts.

**MAORI 713 (4 Points)**

**Te Reo Tuku Iho**

Advanced Māori language acquisition.

**MAORI 720 (4 Points)**

**Tikanga Māori**

A study of Māori customs and social practices.

**MAORI 721 (4 Points)**

**Tikanga Wāhine**

An examination of tikanga, ancestral rituals and practices, and the power bases of Māori women.

**MAORI 731 (4 Points)**

**MAORI 731A (2 Points)**

**MAORI 731B (2 Points)**

**Āhua Māori: Māori Ethnicity**

A study of selected aspects of Māori social and cultural life relevant to the maintenance of a Māori identity.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 731 A and B, or MAORI 731*

**MAORI 732 (4 Points)**

**Rangatiratanga: Politics of Culture**

A study of a theoretical framework for the analysis of cultural politics between Māori and Pākeha.

**MAORI 733 (4 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

**MAORI 740 (4 Points)**

**MAORI 740A (2 Points)**

**MAORI 740B (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Te Ao Māori: Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 740 A and B, or MAORI 740*

**MAORI 741A (2 Points)**

**MAORI 741B (2 Points)**

**Ngā Taonga Hanga: Material Culture**

An extension of skills and research methods in material culture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 741 A and B*

**MAORI 742 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

**MAORI 743 (4 Points)**

**Issues in Māori Politics and Policy**

An examination of selected issues in public policy and their impact on Māori development.

**MAORI 744 (4 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

**MAORI 745 (4 Points)**

**Māori Cultural Heritage**

Against a cross-cultural and international backdrop,

this course aims to explore the multi-stranded fabric of Māori cultural heritage; the growing appreciation of its contribution to New Zealand's heritage overall and the changes that have and/or need to occur in order that future generations succeed to a heritage of which they can be proud.

**MAORI 747A (2 Points)**

**MAORI 747B (2 Points)**

**Organizational Structures for Māori**

Examines those features and dynamics unique to Māori organizations and how they differ from their mainstream counterparts in respect of the legislative framework they operate under, accountability mechanisms both formal and informal, management structures and the identification of the competitive advantages and constraints inherent in these organizations. Also covered will be business ethics, research and kaupapa Māori business practice.

*To complete this courses students must enrol in MAORI 747 A and B*

**MAORI 785 (6 Points)**

**MAORI 785A (3 Points)**

**MAORI 785B (3 Points)**

**Honours Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 785 A and B, or MAORI 785*

**MAORI 792A (3 Points)**

**MAORI 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 792 A and B*

**MAORI 796A (7 Points)**

**MAORI 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course student must enrol in MAORI 796 A and B*

**MAORI 797A (7 Points)**

**MAORI 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 797 A and B*

---

## Medieval and Early Modern European Studies

---

### *Honours and Master's Courses*

**MEDEMS 700 (2 Points)**

**Creating the Past**

A study of the various ways in which the European past has been represented and imagined, and the impact of these representations on the scholarly project of accurate knowledge of the past. Topics will include: the creation of the Middle Ages in the Renaissance and in the Romantic movements, historical approaches to the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, the Middle Ages and contemporary fantasy.

**MEDEMS 780 (4 Points)**

**MEDEMS 780A (2 Points)**

**MEDEMS 780B (2 Points)**

**Honours Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MEDEMS 780 A and B, or MEDEMS 780*

**MEDEMS 796A** (7 Points)  
**MEDEMS 796B** (7 Points)  
**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MEDEMS 796 A and B*

**MEDEMS 797A** (7 Points)  
**MEDEMS 797B** (7 Points)  
**Research Portfolio**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MEDEMS 797 A and B*

---

## Museums and Cultural Heritage

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

**MUSEUMS 700A** (2 Points)  
**MUSEUMS 700B** (2 Points)

#### Taonga and Identity in Museums

Key issues facing museums today are governance of indigenous collections and relationships with descendant communities. Cross-cultural in its analysis, the course will particularly focus on taonga as the vehicle for engaging in wider international debates concerning identity, repatriation, reciprocity, power, agency, research and exhibition of indigenous cultures by metropolitan museums.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSEUMS 700 A and B*

**MUSEUMS 750** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Museums Past and Present**

The rise of collecting and early museums in Europe and their development in the twentieth century, with an emphasis on art galleries.

**MUSEUMS 751** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**MUSEUMS 760** (2 Points)  
**Directed Studies**

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies and subject matter of museum studies.

**MUSEUMS 761** (4 Points)  
**Directed Studies**

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies and subject matter of museum studies.

**MUSEUMS 792A** (3 Points)  
**MUSEUMS 792B** (3 Points)

**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSEUMS 792 A and B*

**MUSEUMS 796A** (7 Points)  
**MUSEUMS 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSEUMS 796 A and B*

**MUSEUMS 797A** (7 Points)  
**MUSEUMS 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSEUMS 797 A and B*

---

## Pacific Studies

---

### Stage I

**PACIFIC 101** (2 Points)

#### Political Economy of the South Pacific

An introduction to the processes of political, economic and social change in the region, with case studies where appropriate.

**PACIFIC 103** (2 Points)  
**Indigenous Knowledge and Western Science: Perspectives from the Pacific**

Indigenous knowledge and Western scientific accounts of the natural world, specifically the islands of the Pacific including New Zealand. Topics will be examined using a bicultural approach, involving both an expert in aspects of traditional knowledge and a scientist trained in the Western scientific paradigm. Where possible each topic will include both a 'pure' and 'applied' component, the latter focusing on current environmental issues.

**PACIFIC 110** (2 Points)

#### Pacific Music and Dance

Practical and theoretical introduction to performing cultures of the Pacific with emphasis on Cook Islands, Samoan and Tongan cultures. Basic music and dance skills are taught in practical instruction. Consideration of commonalities and differences among Pacific cultures. Academic discussion of styles, instruments, performer categories and the place of the performing arts in Pacific cultures.

---

### Stage II

**PACIFIC 201** (2 Points)

#### Pacific Worlds

Critically examines the responses of Pacific peoples to the changes resulting from contact with outside influences up to the Second World War. It will take the view that Pacific Islanders were active participants rather than passive victims in their encounters with outsiders.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 104 or LINGUIST 102 and one of COOKIS 101, 102, SAMOAN 101, 102, TONGAN 101, 102*

**PACIFIC 202** (2 Points)

#### Pacific Language Structures

An analysis of the sound systems and grammatical structures of some of the major languages of Polynesia, Melanesia and Micronesia.

*Prerequisite: LINGUIST 102*

**PACIFIC 203** (2 Points)

#### Pacific Language Lexicography

After giving an overview of lexicographical achievements in the Pacific, this course will teach the basic principles and practices of bilingual and monolingual dictionary-making in Pacific languages. Emphasis will be on monolingual lexicography in major Polynesian languages.

*Prerequisite: 2 points from: COOKIS 101, SAMOAN 102, TONGAN 102*

**PACIFIC 204** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic

*Prerequisite: PACIFIC 103*

**PACIFIC 210** (2 Points)

#### Pacific Music and Dance II

Instruction in the basic music and dance forms of specific Pacific nations. Practical focus on acquisition of fundamental music and dance skills, eg, songs, commands, gestures, posture, costumes, discussion of styles, instruments, performer categories and the place of the performing arts in the identified Pacific cultures. Two-four basic music and dance items will normally be taught during the semester.

*Prerequisite:* PACIFIC 110, and COOKIS 102, or SAMOAN 101, or TONGAN 101

*Restriction:* COOKIS 210, SAMOAN 210, TONGAN 210

**PACIFIC 211 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* PACIFIC 110, and COOKIS 102, or SAMOAN 101, or TONGAN 101

**Stage III**

**PACIFIC 300 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Pacific Studies

**PACIFIC 301 (2 Points)**

**Pacific Music and Dance III**

Practical instruction in specified Pacific Island performing arts requiring familiarity with fundamental performance skills. Concentration will be on the competent performance of more formal and traditional items of the repertoire. Detailed examination of relationships between music and dance forms and context.

*Prerequisite:* PACIFIC 210, and COOKIS 202, or SAMOAN 102, or TONGAN 102

*Restriction:* COOKIS 310, SAMOAN 310, TONGAN 310

**PACIFIC 310 (2 Points)**

**Koneseti**

Under supervision of instructors, students plan, rehearse, publicize and present a public song and dance performance. Repertoire selection, costuming, and rehearsal skills will be taught.

*Prerequisite:* SAMOAN 310 or TONGAN 310 or COOKIS 310 or PACIFIC 301, and 6 points from COOKIS 102, 202, 302 or SAMOAN 101, 201, 301 or TONGAN 101, 201, 301

**PACIFIC 311 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* PACIFIC 210, and COOKIS 202, or SAMOAN 102, or TONGAN 102

**PACIFIC 320 (2 Points)**

**Indigenous Knowledge and Performing Arts**

Examination of the role of song, text and dance viewed from indigenous Pacific perspectives. Consideration of emotion, courtship and romance, social identity, life cycle rituals and crises, the transmission of culture through performing arts, and interactions with other musical traditions over time and space.

*Prerequisite:* Any Stage II course for the BPerfArts major in Maori or Pacific Performing Arts, or any Stage II course in Anthropology, Maori Studies or Pacific Studies

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PACIFIC 700 (4 Points)**

**PACIFIC 700A (2 Points)**

**PACIFIC 700B (2 Points)**

**The Pacific: Interdisciplinary Studies**

An examination of the ways in which the Pacific has been and is studied in the humanities and social

sciences; an analysis and evaluation of views and perspectives on the development of the region and its peoples. This course must be included for the MA in Pacific Studies.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PACIFIC 700 A and B, or PACIFIC 700*

**PACIFIC 701 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PACIFIC 702 (2 Points)**

**Topics in Pacific Research**

Critical approaches to Pacific research development and evaluation of research design in Pacific Studies, including application of theory to research questions and developing a proposal for research which will be drawn from a wide range of topics contained within: Pacific world views and epistemologies, Pacific research methodologies, quantitative and qualitative paradigms.

**PACIFIC 703 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PACIFIC 704 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PACIFIC 785 (4 Points)**

**PACIFIC 785A (2 Points)**

**PACIFIC 785B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PACIFIC 785 A and B, or PACIFIC 785*

**PACIFIC 792A (3 Points)**

**PACIFIC 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PACIFIC 792 A and B*

**PACIFIC 796A (7 Points)**

**PACIFIC 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PACIFIC 796 A and B*

**PACIFIC 797A (7 Points)**

**PACIFIC 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PACIFIC 797 A and B*

**Philosophy**

**Stage I**

**PHIL 100 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge**

Metaphysics deals with fundamental problems about the nature of the world and human beings, for example, the question of the existence of God, the relationship between mind and body and the nature and identity of the self. The Theory of Knowledge studies the sources, limits and justification of human knowledge.

*Restriction:* 280.150

**PHIL 101 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Logic**

Logic is the study of argument. This course aims to provide an understanding of central logical notions, such as consistency and inconsistency, logical truth,

and, most importantly, what it means for an argument to be valid or invalid, sound or unsound. The course examines two main logical systems, propositional and predicate logic, and shows how these formal systems are used to analyse and evaluate arguments.

*Restriction: 280.151*

**PHIL 102 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Ethics**

Ethics is the philosophical study of morality. This course examines several ethical theories, including Kantianism, Utilitarianism and Virtue Ethics, and provides an introduction to fundamental questions about the nature of morality such as whether moral values are objective, subjective or culturally relative. The course will include discussion of selected current moral controversies and/or an introduction to some non-Western approaches to ethics.

*Restriction: HLTHPSYC 102. PSYCHIAT 102*

**PHIL 103 (2 Points)**  
**Freedom, Rights and Justice**

Considers various questions concerning the relation between individuals and political societies such as: what principles of justice should communities adopt; what are rights; what limits can legitimately be placed on individual liberty; what is the source and nature of citizens' obligations to obey the law; what makes a decision procedure democratic and why does it matter. These questions are considered in relation to the New Zealand context, with discussion of the Treaty of Waitangi.

**PHIL 105 (2 Points)**  
**Critical Thinking**

Rational argument is a vital instrument in intellectual life. This course aims to provide an understanding of rational argument. The topic will be approached by informal methods. The contrast between deductive and inductive arguments will be discussed. Other topics will be drawn from fallacies, Mill's methods, scientific reasoning and rational dialogue analysis.

**PHIL 152 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy and Theories of Human Nature**

What is human nature? The course covers competing conceptions of human nature, found in religious, philosophical and political thought, alongside theories that deny the existence of a human nature. Philosophers discussed may include: Aristotle, Descartes, Nietzsche, Plato, Hobbes, Marx, Sartre and Christian thinkers.

**Stage II**

**PHIL 200 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Mind**

Examines critically influential views about the nature of mind, including dualism, behaviourism and various forms of physicalism.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points*

**PHIL 202 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Language**

The components of language and its use (expressions, utterances, speech acts, etc); theories of language and its nature (including structuralism, Chomskyan psychologism and platonism); linguistic meaning and its connection with other sorts of meaning (Grice on meaning, sense and reference,

truth-conditional theories of meaning, etc); the connection between language, thought and reality.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy or Linguistics*

*Restriction: PHIL 322*

**PHIL 204 (2 Points)**  
**Greek Philosophy**

An introduction to some of the important figures in ancient philosophy and the issues with which they were concerned. The work of the Presocratics, Plato, and Aristotle will be explored, with a detailed discussion of the philosophical system of either Plato or Aristotle and its importance in the history of philosophy.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or CLASSICS 120*

**PHIL 205 (2 Points)**  
**Community, Society and Rights**

Addresses a variety of topics in political philosophy such as: the political theories of Locke and Hobbes; the nature of rights and rights-holders; sovereignty; strategies for securing stable and just societies between people with significantly different moral, political and cultural views; and the relationship between individuals and communities. Topics will be related to contemporary political issues in New Zealand and, in particular, to the Treaty of Waitangi.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or 4 points in Political Studies*

**PHIL 207 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Religion**

A study of the relationship between reason and faith; is belief in the Judaeo-Christian God reasonable? Topics include: the problem of evil, the meaningfulness of religious language, alternative concepts of God, Hume on miracles, and Kierkegaard and William James on faith and reason.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

*Restriction: PHIL 327*

**PHIL 208 (2 Points)**  
**British Empiricists**

A study of the British empiricists: John Locke, George Berkeley and David Hume.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

*Restriction: PHIL 328*

**PHIL 209 (2 Points)**  
**Schopenhauer and Nietzsche**

A study of the philosophies of Arthur Schopenhauer (1788–1860) and Friedrich Nietzsche (1844–1900), focusing on their respective attitudes towards the value of life and the meaning of suffering. Schopenhauer's emphasis upon transcendent modes of awareness will be compared with Nietzsche's more down-to-earth existentialism, in light of their views on the redeeming value of artistic and aesthetic experience.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points in Philosophy*

*Restriction: PHIL 329*

**PHIL 210 (2 Points)**  
**Applied Ethics**

Philosophical analysis and discussion of contemporary moral issues, such as abortion, euthanasia, reverse discrimination, the ethics of charity and our treatment of animals.

*Prerequisite: PHIL 102 or PSYCHIAT 102 or HLTHPSYC 102 or 4 points in Philosophy, or 4 points passed at Stage I in Social Science for Public Health.*

- PHIL 211 (2 Points)**  
**Ethical Theory 2**  
 Philosophical study of moral theory, in both normative ethics and meta-ethics. Topics covered include: theories of value, theories of right action, and the status and justification of such theories.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*
- PHIL 212 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of the Arts**  
 Considers a range of issues concerning the creation, presentation, interpretation and appreciation of art. The topics are approached via recent debates between philosophers about such issues as the colorization of movies, the status of artistic fakes and the paradox of our enjoying tragedy.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 12 points passed*  
*Restriction: PHIL 332*
- PHIL 213 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophical Issues in Feminism**  
 A selection of philosophical issues which arise within feminist thinking, such as: the nature of sexual equality; the relation between gender and embodiment; feminist rejections of the traditional oppositions of mind to body, nature to culture, emotion to reason; concepts of patriarchy, oppression and exploitation and their use in feminist analyses of women's social position. Texts will include works by de Beauvoir, Irigaray, Butler, as well as Foucault and Freud.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points from courses in Philosophy and/or Political Studies and/or Women's Studies*
- PHIL 214 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in Chinese and Japanese Philosophy**  
 A selective study of philosophical movements in East Asia, focusing on moral, aesthetic and metaphysical issues. Classical Chinese and contemporary Japanese philosophical outlooks will be considered, both in their own terms, and in contrast to some Western philosophical views.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy or ASIAN 100*
- PHIL 215 (2 Points)**  
**20th Century French Philosophy**  
 An examination of the development of contemporary French philosophy through the intellectual movements of Existentialism, Phenomenology, Structuralism and Post-Structuralism.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 335*
- PHIL 216 (2 Points)**  
**Applied Logic**  
 An introduction to modal logic, especially normal modal logics. Consideration will be given to some applications of modal logics for possibility and necessity, knowledge and belief, time and conditionals. All systems will be considered in both axiomatic and semantic formulations.  
*Prerequisite: PHIL 101*
- PHIL 217 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Law**  
 Themes in contemporary Western philosophy of law, relating to debates between liberal and non-liberal conceptions of law, including questions about the nature of legal rules, legal reasons and the relationship between law and morality. Major positions in legal theory will be covered, from legal
- positivism to critical legal studies.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 337*
- PHIL 218 (2 Points)**  
**Problems in Epistemology**  
 A study of problems in the theory of knowledge including the nature of justification and truth, and the nature, scope and limits of knowledge.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 338*
- PHIL 220 (2 Points)**  
**Kant and Hegel**  
 An examination of the development of German idealism from Kant to Hegel, focusing on Kant's Critique of Pure Reason (1781-1787) and Hegel's Phenomenology of Spirit (1807).  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: 280.312, PHIL 340*
- PHIL 221 (2 Points)**  
**20th Century German Philosophy**  
 An examination of the development of contemporary German philosophy through the intellectual movements of Phenomenology, neo-Kantianism, Hermeneutics and critical theory and such diverse figures as Dilthey, Husserl, Heidegger, Adorno, Habermas, Apel and Henrich.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 341*
- PHIL 222 (2 Points)**  
**Intermediate Logic**  
 Natural deduction for propositional and predicate logic; introductory metalogic and related topics in formal logic.  
*Prerequisite: PHIL 101*  
*Restriction: PHIL 201*
- PHIL 223 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophical Logic**  
 An introduction to philosophical logic, covering at least three of the following topics: use and mention, language and logic, argumentation theory, propositions and sentences, conditionals, disjunctions, and existence and quantification.  
*Prerequisite: PHIL 101*  
*Restriction: PHIL 219, PHIL 323*
- PHIL 250 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Ethics**  
 Ethical questions relating to the environment and our use of it, including: Does nature have intrinsic value; do we have obligations to preserve species; is biodiversity desirable; what responsibilities do we have to animals; do we have obligations to future generations, especially concerning preservation of the environment; are population control policies ethically defensible.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points*
- PHIL 252 (2 Points)**  
**Theories of Human Nature**  
 A continuation of PHIL 152 at a more advanced level with emphasis on theories of human nature as they have arisen in the history of philosophy from ancient to modern times, and the philosophies of human nature presupposed in human sciences such as biology, psychology, economics and anthropology. Included will be a discussion of rationality and human nature and the explanation of human action.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

**PHIL 260 (2 Points)****Philosophy of Science**

An introduction to some of the main conceptions of science that have been proposed by scientists and philosophers such as Newton, Popper, Einstein, Kuhn, etc. Other topics may include: theories, laws and causation, scientific inference, explanation and prediction, the hierarchy of sciences, reduction, emergence and materialism, realism and anti-realism.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points

*Restriction:* PHIL 360

**PHIL 261 (2 Points)****Metaphysical Structures of the World**

Issues in metaphysics, including the metaphysical presuppositions of the sciences. Topics will include some of: the nature of laws, causation, time, space, chance, explanation, determinism and indeterminism, reduction, emergence and supervenience, kinds, the structure of theories and realism versus varieties of anti-realism, the metaphysics/science distinction.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points

*Restriction:* PHIL 361

**PHIL 263 (2 Points)****Philosophy of Biology**

Topics may include: explanation, design and teleology, the status of evolutionary theory, creationism versus evolution, fitness and adaptation, species and the units of evolutionary selection, reduction and the DNA molecule, biological classification, altruism, sociobiology, evolution and ethics, selected topics in the history of biological sciences.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points

*Restriction:* PHIL 363

**PHIL 264 (2 Points)****Philosophy of Social Science**

Topics may include: explanation, causality, prediction and laws, interpretation, meaning and understanding, reduction, individualism and holism, rational choice explanation and games theory, objectivity and values in social theory, unity or disunity of natural and social sciences, the sociology of knowledge, the evaluation of selected theories from Marx to Foucault.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points

*Restriction:* PHIL 364

**PHIL 266 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Philosophy

**Stage III****PHIL 302 (2 Points)****Medieval Philosophy**

A detailed introduction to either the work of a leading medieval philosopher, for example Augustine, Abaelard, Scotus or Ockham, or to one or more of the topics which were of interest to medieval philosophers. The course aims to show how understanding medieval philosophy is essential for the history of Christian thought and philosophy up to modern times.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 303 (2 Points)****Heidegger**

A study of Heidegger.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 304 (2 Points)****Ethical Theory 3**

Advanced philosophical study of moral theory (in both normative and meta-ethics), especially virtue ethics, Aristotelian ethics and moral dilemmas.

*Prerequisite:* Either 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy including PHIL 205 or 210 or 211 or 250, or PHIL 102 and any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 305 (2 Points)****Advanced Logic**

The techniques and philosophical significance of modern logical theory, including some model theory, proof theory, set theory and recursion theory. The main objective is to provide a level of understanding of these topics sufficient for an appreciation of Godel's celebrated proof of the incompleteness of arithmetic.

*Prerequisite:* PHIL 201 or 222 or COMPSCI 225

**PHIL 306 (2 Points)****Language, Truth and Meaning**

The relationship between language, thought and reality. Topics include: the nature of existence; theories of reference, meaning and truth; and Quine's radical views of meaning and reference. Students are strongly urged to take PHIL 101 (Introduction to Logic) before taking this course.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 307 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 308 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Chinese and Japanese Philosophy**

A selective study of philosophical movements in East Asia, focusing on moral, aesthetic and metaphysical issues. Classical Chinese and contemporary Japanese philosophical outlooks will be considered, both in their own terms, and in contrast to some Western philosophical views.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 309 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 310 (2 Points)****Political Philosophy 3**

Advanced topics in Political Philosophy.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 313 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 314 (2 Points)****Topics in 20th Century Continental Philosophy**

A study of some of the major trends and texts in the Continental tradition in philosophy. A non-exhaustive list includes the work of Husserl, Heidegger, Adorno, Sartre, Derrida, Foucault, and Merleau-Ponty and Gadamer.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 315 (2 Points)****Topics in Applied Logic**

Introduces students to the logics of time (temporal logic) and change (dynamic logic), and to the theory

of belief revision and belief change. There will be discussion of the interrelation between these logics and the problems they raise for the philosophy of time and for artificial intelligence.

*Prerequisite:* PHIL 201 or 216 or 222 or COMPSCI 225

**PHIL 316 (2 Points)**

**Topics in Philosophical Logic**

The relation between language and metaphysics, including such topics as conditionals, propositions, modality, possible worlds and theories of truth.

*Prerequisite:* PHIL 101 and 2 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 317 (2 Points)**

**Ethical Issues in Biotechnology**

A discussion of ethical issues arising from developments in biotechnology, such as reproductive and genetic technologies. It will focus particularly on the perceived need for social control of individual choice and action in using these technologies, and the difficulties of justifying such restrictions, or agreeing on appropriate constraints, in a morally pluralist society.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or in History and Philosophy of Science and Technology, or 4 points from COMHLTH 205, MPHEALTH 201, HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200

**PHIL 318 (2 Points)**

**Theory of Applied and Professional Ethics**

The application of ethical theory to applied and professional ethics including: ethical particularism and the role of principles in applied ethics, ethical expertise, role ethics, dialogue ethics, the ethics of care, the relation between care and justice and the application of the ethics of care to areas of professional ethics (such as nursing).

*Prerequisite:* Either 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy including PHIL.205 or 210 or 211 or 250, or PHIL 102 and any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 320 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Mind**

Critically examines influential views about the nature of mind, including dualism, behaviourism and various forms of physicalism.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or 4 points from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201  
*Restriction:* PHIL 200

**PHIL 322 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Language**

The components of language and its use (expressions, utterances, speech acts, etc); theories of language and its nature (including structuralism, Chomskyan psychologism and platonism); linguistic meaning and its connection with other sorts of meaning (Grice on meaning, sense and reference, truth-conditional theories of meaning, etc); the connection between language, thought and reality.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or 4 points at Stage II in Linguistics  
*Restriction:* PHIL 202

**PHIL 323 (2 Points)**

**Philosophical Logic**

An introduction to philosophical logic, covering at least three of the following topics: use and mention, language and logic, argumentation theory, propositions and sentences, conditionals disjunctions, and existence and quantification.

*Prerequisite:* PHIL 101 and 2 points at Stage II in Philosophy

*Restriction:* PHIL 223

**PHIL 327 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Religion**

A study of the relationship between reason and faith; is belief in the Judaeo-Christian God reasonable? Topics include: the problem of evil, the meaningfulness of religious language, alternative concepts of God, Hume on miracles and Kierkegaard and William James on faith and reason.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* PHIL 207

**PHIL 328 (2 Points)**

**British Empiricists**

A study of the British empiricists: John Locke, George Berkeley and David Hume.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* PHIL 208

**PHIL 329 (2 Points)**

**Schopenhauer and Nietzsche**

A study of the philosophies of Arthur Schopenhauer (1788–1860) and Friedrich Nietzsche (1844–1900), focusing on their respective attitudes towards the value of life and the meaning of suffering. Schopenhauer's emphasis upon transcendent modes of awareness will be compared with Nietzsche's more down-to-earth existentialism, in light of their views on the redeeming value of artistic and aesthetic experience.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* PHIL 209

**PHIL 332 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of the Arts**

Considers a range of issues concerning the creation, presentation, interpretation and appreciation of art. The topics are approached via recent debates between philosophers about such issues as the colorization of movies, the status of artistic fakes and the paradox of our enjoying tragedy.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* PHIL 212

**PHIL 335 (2 Points)**

**20th Century French Philosophy**

An examination of the development of contemporary French philosophy through the intellectual movements of Existentialism, Phenomenology, Structuralism and Post-Structuralism.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* PHIL 215

**PHIL 337 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Law**

Themes in contemporary Western philosophy of law, relating to debates between liberal and nonliberal conceptions of law, including questions about the nature of legal rules, legal reasons and the relationship between law and morality. Major positions in legal theory will be covered, from legal positivism to critical legal studies.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* PHIL 217

**PHIL 338 (2 Points)**

**Problems in Epistemology**

A study of problems in the theory of knowledge including the nature of justification and truth, and the nature, scope and limits of knowledge.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* PHIL 218

**PHIL 340 (2 Points)**

**Kant and Hegel**

An examination of the development of German idealism from Kant to Hegel, focusing on Kant's *Critique of Pure Reason* (1781-1787) and Hegel's *Phenomenology of Spirit* (1807).

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* 280.312, PHIL 220

**PHIL 341 (2 Points)**

**20th Century German Philosophy**

An examination of the development of contemporary German Philosophy through the intellectual movements of Phenomenology, neo-Kantianism, Hermeneutics and critical theory and such diverse figures as Dilthey, Husserl, Heidegger, Adorno, Habermas, Apel and Henrich.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* PHIL 221

**PHIL 350 (2 Points)**

**Issues in Applied Ethics**

An advanced level discussion of ethics and its application in areas such as medicine, the environment, business, science and scientific research, international relations.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 360 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Science**

An introduction to some of the main conceptions of science proposed by scientists and philosophers such as Newton, Popper, Einstein, Kuhn, etc. Other topics may include: theories, laws and causation, scientific inference, explanation and prediction, the hierarchy of sciences, reduction, emergence and materialism, realism and antirealism.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or HISTORY 240, SCIGEN 201.  
*Restriction:* PHIL 260

**PHIL 361 (2 Points)**

**Metaphysical Structures of the World**

Issues in metaphysics, including the metaphysical presuppositions of the sciences. Topics will include some of: the nature of laws, causation, time, space, chance, explanation, determinism and indeterminism, reduction, emergence and supervenience, kinds, the structure of theories and realism versus varieties of anti-realism, the metaphysics/science distinction.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or 4 points from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201  
*Restriction:* PHIL 261

**PHIL 363 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Biology**

Topics may include: explanation, design and teleology, the status of evolutionary theory, creationism versus evolution, fitness and adaptation, species and the units of evolutionary selection, reduction and the DNA molecule, biological classification, altruism, sociobiology, evolution and ethics, selected topics in the history of biological

sciences.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or 4 points from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201  
*Restriction:* PHIL 263

**PHIL 364 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Social Science**

Topics may include: explanation, causality, prediction and laws, interpretation, meaning and understanding, reduction, individualism and holism, rational choice explanation and games theory, objectivity and values in social theory, unity or disunity of natural and social sciences, the sociology of knowledge, the evaluation of selected theories from Marx to Foucault.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or 4 points from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201  
*Restriction:* PHIL 264

**PHIL 365 (2 Points)**

**The Rise of Western Science**

How did science develop? This course examines the emergence and growth of science and theories of science from the ancient world onwards. A contrast may be drawn with the development of science in non-Western cultures, eg. India, China, etc.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* PHIL 265

**Diploma Courses**

**PHIL 602 (2 Points)**

**Business Ethics**

Topics in business ethics, such as: ethics of management, moral status of business firms, hiring and firing practices, sexual harassment, privacy and loyalty in employment, investment policy, advertising, labour negotiations, moral controversies in international business, worker safety. There will be a strong practical emphasis, and professional participation in teaching and seminar sessions.

**PHIL 603 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Ethics**

Theoretical perspectives and topics in environmental ethics, such as: 'deep ecology' positions and value pluralism, sentience-based positions, anthropocentric versus non-anthropocentric perspectives, rationales for the preservation of species and ecologies and our treatment of animals. There will be a strong practical emphasis, and professional participation in teaching and seminar sessions.

**PHIL 605 (2 Points)**

**Ethics and Education**

Issues of relevance to the educator's role, such as: the role of educators in moral education, the pastoral role of educators, the values of individualism in education, the significance of recent economic policies for education, the value of knowledge and research, relationships between students and educators, codes of ethics in education, the importance of impartiality.

**PHIL 606 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 607 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 610A (1 Point)**

**PHIL 610B (1 Point)**

**Professional Ethics Seminar**

Seminars covering core topics concerning the nature of professional ethics and practice relevant to a wide range of professions. Topics will be chosen to indicate the grounding of theoretical ethical issues in concrete problems, and teaching is intended to enable students from different professional backgrounds to learn from each other's experience and understanding.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 610 A and B*

**PHIL 620 (4 Points)**

**PHIL 620A (2 Points)**

**PHIL 620B (2 Points)**

**Professional Ethics Project**

A project approved by the Course Coordinator on a topic concerning a particular ethical problem (or set of problems) as related to some professional context.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 620 A and B, or PHIL 620*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PHIL 720 (4 Points)**

**PHIL 720A (2 Points)**

**PHIL 720B (2 Points)**

**Special Studies**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 720 A and B, or PHIL 720*

**PHIL 721 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 722 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 723 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 724 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 725 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 726 (2 Points)**

**Ethics 1**

**PHIL 727 (2 Points)**

**Ethics 2**

**PHIL 728 (2 Points)**

**Political Philosophy 1**

Discussion of selected topics in political philosophy.

**PHIL 729 (2 Points)**

**Political Philosophy 2**

Discussion of selected topics in political philosophy.

**PHIL 730 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Law**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of law.

**PHIL 731 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of the Arts 1**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of the arts.

**PHIL 732 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of the Arts 2**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of the arts.

**PHIL 733 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy and Feminism**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy and feminism.

**PHIL 734 (2 Points)**

**Applied Ethics 1**

Discussion of selected topics in applied ethics.

**PHIL 735 (2 Points)**

**Applied Ethics 2**

Discussion of selected topics in applied ethics.

**PHIL 736 (2 Points)**

**Logic 1**

Discussion of selected topics in logic.

**PHIL 737 (2 Points)**

**Logic 2**

Discussion of selected topics in logic

**PHIL 738 (2 Points)**

**Philosophical Logic**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophical logic.

**PHIL 739 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Language**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of language.

**PHIL 740 (2 Points)**

**PHIL 740A (1 Point)**

**PHIL 740B (1 Point)**

**Metaphysics 1**

Discussion of selected topics in metaphysics.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 740 A and B, or PHIL 740*

**PHIL 741 (2 Points)**

**Metaphysics 2**

Discussion of selected topics in metaphysics.

**PHIL 742 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Religion 1**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of religion.

**PHIL 743 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Religion 2**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of religion.

**PHIL 744 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Mathematics**

Discussion of selected topics in the philosophy of mathematics.

**PHIL 745 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Mind 1**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of mind.

**PHIL 746 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Mind 2**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of mind.

**PHIL 747 (2 Points)**

**Epistemology 1**

Discussion of selected topics in epistemology.

**PHIL 748 (2 Points)**

**Epistemology 2**

Discussion of selected topics in epistemology.

**PHIL 749 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Science 1**

Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of science.	PHIL 769	(2 Points)	Special Studies	(2 Points)
PHIL 750	(2 Points)	Directed study on a topic or topics approved by the Head of Department.		
Philosophy of Science 2				
Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of science.	PHIL 780	(4 Points)		
PHIL 751	(2 Points)	PHIL 780A	(2 Points)	
Philosophy of Social Science		PHIL 780B	(2 Points)	
Discussion of selected topics in philosophy of social science.		Honours Dissertation		
PHIL 752	(2 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 780 A and B, or PHIL 780</i>		
Ancient/Medieval Philosophy 1		PHIL 792	(6 Points)	
Discussion of selected topics in ancient and medieval philosophy.		PHIL 792A	(3 Points)	
PHIL 753	(2 Points)	PHIL 792B	(3 Points)	
Ancient/Medieval Philosophy 2		Dissertation		
Discussion of selected topics in ancient and medieval philosophy.		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 792 A and B, or PHIL 792</i>		
PHIL 754	(2 Points)	PHIL 796A	(7 Points)	
History of Philosophy 1		PHIL 796B	(7 Points)	
Discussion of selected topics in history of philosophy.		Thesis		
PHIL 755	(2 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 796 A and B</i>		
History of Philosophy 2		PHIL 797A	(7 Points)	
Discussion of selected topics in history of philosophy.		PHIL 797B	(7 Points)	
PHIL 756	(2 Points)	Research Portfolio		
History of Philosophy 3		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 797 A and B, or PHIL 797</i>		
Discussion of selected topics in history of philosophy.				
PHIL 757	(2 Points)			
European Continental Philosophy 1		<b>Polish</b>		
Discussion of selected topics in European continental philosophy.		<b>Stage 1</b>		
PHIL 758	(2 Points)	POLISH 100	(2 Points)	
European Continental Philosophy 2		Beginners' Polish 1		
Discussion of selected topics in European continental philosophy.		Introduction to elementary spoken and written Polish and the development of speaking, listening, comprehension, reading and writing skills, covering basic grammar and an introductory vocabulary.		
PHIL 759	(2 Points)	POLISH 101	(2 Points)	
European Continental Philosophy 3		Introduction to Contemporary Poland		
Discussion of selected topics in European continental philosophy.		A survey of the Polish nation in the twentieth century, from the perspective of creative writers, that reflects Polish aspirations during the Second Republic (1918-39), the catastrophe visited upon Poland by both Nazism and Bolshevism (1939-45) and the era of Sovietization (1945-89); a short sequence of lectures covering the emergence of Solidarity, the collapse of communism (1989) and subsequent moves towards democratic government and economic and political integration with the West. Especially recommended to students wishing to acquaint themselves with the major emerging political and economic power of Eastern Europe.		
PHIL 762	(2 Points)			
Special Topic		POLISH 102	(2 Points)	
PHIL 763	(2 Points)	Beginners' Polish 2		
Special Topic		Continues the study of the language with further development of the skills introduced in POLISH 100. Students completing this two-semester programme should be able to read simple texts and write and speak in Polish about everyday matters. Students with some prior knowledge of Polish may apply to be admitted directly to this course.		
PHIL 764	(2 Points)	<i>Prerequisite: POLISH 100</i>		
Medical Ethics				
Discussion of selected topics in medical ethics.				
PHIL 765	(2 Points)			
Special Topic				
PHIL 766	(2 Points)			
Special Topic				
PHIL 767	(2 Points)			
Special Topic				
PHIL 768	(2 Points)			
Special Studies				
Directed study on a topic or topics approved by the Head of Department.				

**Stage II****POLISH 210 (2 Points)****Poland, Heart of Europe**

Poland's geographic position in Europe has been both her vulnerability and strength. Surrounded by large and powerful nations vying for land and influence, Poland has often had a precarious existence, but her national spirit has remained indomitable. Through an examination of memoirs, major works of fiction and film, this course examines the nationalism that existed in pre-partitioned Poland and its significance to Poland's emerging role in the modern world.

*Prerequisite:* Any 2 points at Stage I in Polish or approval of the Head of Department

**Political Studies****Stage I****POLITICS 106 (2 Points)****International Relations**

An introduction to the theory and practice of international relations.

*Restriction:* 285.111

**POLITICS 107 (2 Points)****New Zealand Politics**

An examination of who governs New Zealand and in whose interests. Topics include: government formation and functioning under MMP, political leadership, national identity, parties and elections, the role of the media in election campaigns, the place of Maori within the political system, and business and politics.

**POLITICS 109 (2 Points)****Foundations of Western Political Thought**

An examination, via the works of selected major European thinkers from Ancient Greece to late nineteenth-century Britain, of ideas central to the western tradition of political thought: law, subjection, rights, justice, citizenship, authority, kingship, republicanism, and the right to resist governments. Thinkers studied include: Plato, Machiavelli, Hobbes, Locke, Hume, Bentham, Mill and Marx.

**POLITICS 113 (2 Points)****Politics and the Media**

An examination of the political importance of media and communication. Introduces students to theories and research dealing with the role of mass-mediated messages, images, symbols and opinions in political life. Topics include: the role of media in democracy, media and power relationships, the telecommunications revolution and its political consequences, newspaper and television constructions of political events, leaders, election campaigns, scandals, crises, foreign enemies.

**POLITICS 120 (2 Points)****Modern Political Thinking**

An introduction to the major styles of modern political thinking in New Zealand – liberalism, conservatism, socialism, feminism and nationalism – by way of studying major European thinkers in those traditions and applying their ideas to current issues in New Zealand politics.

*Restriction:* POLITICS 209

**POLITICS 121 (2 Points)****The Making of Public Policy**

Introduction to the building blocks of policymaking processes. Covers key policymaking institutions and actors through the exploration of specific policy case studies that provide the platform for introducing concepts and questions about policymaking in general.

**Stage II****POLITICS 209 (2 Points)****Modern Political Thought**

An historical and analytical survey of modern clusters of leading political ideas: capitalism and socialism.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies, or 8 points passed, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in Political Studies

**POLITICS 213 (2 Points)****Gender and Politics**

An examination of gender politics, including studies of feminist conceptions of politics, and of women's participation in decision-making.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies and/or Women's Studies or 8 points in BA, or Departmental approval required

**POLITICS 214 (2 Points)****Democracy in Theory and Practice**

An examination of current theories as to what democracy is and ought to be, and a study of how these theories relate to current practice. Issues include: referendums, deliberation and voting, representative practices (including the question of Maori representation and future problems for democracy).

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies

**POLITICS 215 (2 Points)****Russian Politics and Foreign Policy**

Examines the transformation of Soviet authoritarian system into a more democratic governance, market economy and cooperative relations with the outside world. Analyses the main institutions of Russia (presidency, parliament, courts) as well as its major foreign policy activities.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies, or 8 points passed, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage I in Political Studies

**POLITICS 218 (2 Points)****American Politics and Policy**

An introduction to the main institutions of the USA (the Presidency, the Congress and the Supreme Court) together with case studies of recent political issues and their treatment in the political system.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies

**POLITICS 220 (2 Points)****The European Union in a Changing Europe**

An examination of the European Union in the context of changes taking place in the European continent generally. The Union's relations with the USA, Japan, New Zealand, the former USSR and Russia will also be studied. Political, economic, social and security aspects will be covered.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies or EUROPEAN 100

**POLITICS 221 (2 Points)****Public Policy, Economic Reform and Social Change in**

**New Zealand**

The content of public policy in New Zealand. An historical approach to highlight pivotal policy regime shifts, in particular the shift from Keynesian social democracy to a market liberal regime. Concludes with a consideration of post-MMP politics and 'Third Way' policies.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies or Maori Studies, or MAORI 130, or 4 points passed at Stage 1 in Social Science for Public Health

**POLITICS 222 (2 Points)****Public Policy: Power and Processes**

Designed to enable development of a conceptual 'tool-kit' for the explanation and evaluation of public policy. Examines the role of policy actors such as interest groups, business, technical experts and government agencies; the way in which the international economy and domestic political institutions shape policy outcomes, the recognition and diagnosis of policy problems, and the rationality of policy decision-making.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies or Maori Studies, or MAORI 130, or 4 points passed at Stage 1 in Social Science for Public Health

**POLITICS 223 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Comparative Politics**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies or 8 points in BA, or Departmental approval required

**POLITICS 226 (2 Points)****International Relations: Asia-Pacific**

A study of international relations in the Asia-Pacific region; with attention given to current issues and foreign policies of selected states, including: USA, Japan, China, Indonesia, Australia, Russia, New Zealand and ASEAN.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies

**POLITICS 228 (2 Points)****Japan's Political Economy and Policy-making**

Examines democracy in Japan in a comparative perspective. Japan's current political system will be compared with its pre-Second World War system and with contemporary western democracies, and theoretical models of policy-making will be tested by applying them to contemporary political issues in Japan: budget crisis, deregulation, administrative reforms, trade disputes and party realignment.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies

**POLITICS 229 (2 Points)****Maori Politics**

An introduction to Maori politics. Topics include the Treaty of Waitangi, the politicization of identity, sovereignty, self-determination and self-government, representation, collectivism and Maori organizations. Some contemporary and comparative indigenous policy issues will be discussed.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political or Maori Studies

**POLITICS 230 (2 Points)****Australian Politics**

An examination of modern Australian politics: the workings of a federal system.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies  
*Restriction:* 285.315

**POLITICS 231 (2 Points)****Media, Opinion and Propaganda**

Examines major theories and methods used in studying political opinion, persuasion and propaganda. Highlighting the special role of communications media in these processes, the course explores the sources and political consequences of opinions, perceptions, myths, rituals, culture and socialization processes, rhetoric, slogans, engineering of consent, public relations and candidate image-management strategies.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies

**POLITICS 232 (2 Points)****New Zealand Parties and Elections**

An examination of New Zealand's political parties and the changing party system. Topics will include: the emergence of multi-party politics, candidate selection methods, parties and the media, the controversy over party finance and campaign funding, the so-called 'Americanization' of modern electoral campaigns, and changing patterns of electoral participation and support.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies

**POLITICS 233 (2 Points)****Tabloid News**

Increasingly common in the New Zealand commercial news media, tabloid news is sometimes dismissed as a debased form of journalistic discourse with few, if any, political implications. Critical analysis of typical news stories of personal tragedy, natural disaster, celebrity and crime indicates that tabloid news is both commercially-responsive and liable to articulate narrowly ideological viewpoints.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies

**POLITICS 234 (2 Points)****Latin American Politics**

Examines Marxist and non-Marxist theories of development as they apply to Latin America. Covers traditional and modern forms of authoritarian rule, dependent economic relationships, Latin American-US relations, and the impact of the end of the Cold War on the region.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies or LATINAM 100 or SPANISH 103

**POLITICS 235 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies

**POLITICS 236 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Enlightenment in Sociopolitical Thought, 1580-1804**

The long process by which European and North American thought moved to reject religion and priesthood, and custom and authority, are studied from both sides of the argument. The most famous of those studied are Montaigne, Hobbes, Rousseau, Adam Smith, Kant and Bentham. The rise of natural and economic science, history, and the knowledge of alien cultures are focussed on.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies

**POLITICS 237 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Security Studies**

Considers how security has been reconceptualized to go beyond military security following the end of the Cold War and as a result of globalization and international terrorism.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage 1 in Political Studies

- POLITICS 238** (2 Points)  
**Toleration, Persecution and Public Expression**  
 Considers theoretically aspects of toleration and persecution and attempts to control the public expression of political, religious and moral thought.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 239** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 240** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 241** (2 Points)  
**Foreign Policy Analysis**  
 Surveys methods of foreign policy analysis and case studies of foreign policy decision-making, focusing on New Zealand, Australia and the United States and other states as appropriate.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*  
*Restriction: POLITICS 204*
- 
- Stage III**
- POLITICS 312** (2 Points)  
**Green Politics**  
 An examination of modern environmental problems and ecological thinking. Green politics, in a variety of countries, is explored.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 318** (2 Points)  
**International Relations: Theories and New Issues**  
 Modern theories and new issues of international relations examined in the light of empirical, logical and normative evidence.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 320** (2 Points)  
**Distributive Justice**  
 An examination of the current leading theories and theorists of distributive justice: equality, giving priority to the worst off, desert, freedom, rights. How these figure in the work of utilitarians, and Rawls, Dworkin, Nozick and Gauthier.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 325** (2 Points)  
**Concepts of Control**  
 Studies the logic of concepts used in describing and evaluating political activity and institutions. Concepts include: power, rights, authority, sovereignty, representation, mana, rangatiratanga.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies or Philosophy or Maori Studies*
- POLITICS 327** (2 Points)  
**Ethnic Conflict and International Security**  
 An analysis of the causes of ethnic conflict and their implications for regional and international security. The course considers theoretical explanations of ethnic conflict and possible approaches to conflict resolution. Discussion of current national disputes in the former USSR, Yugoslavia and elsewhere in the world constitutes the core of the course.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 328** (2 Points)  
**Political Content of Television**  
 An examination of the political content of television and the factors that influence that content.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 331** (2 Points)  
**The Politics of East Asian Development**  
 This course aims at an understanding of economic development and social changes in East Asian countries, and of international relations in the region. Students will develop theoretical and critical thinking, and apply these skills to formulating solutions to social, political, economic and sociocultural problems of East Asian nations.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 332** (2 Points)  
**Comparative Regime Transition**  
 Explores the ways in which twentieth-century regimes have changed from being democratic to authoritarian (especially in the 1960s) and from being authoritarian to democratic (especially in the 1980s and 90s). Also considers current attempts to create and consolidate democratic regimes throughout the world.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies; or one of HISTORY 231, LATINAM 201, POLITICS 234, SPANISH 211, 213 or 306*
- POLITICS 333** (2 Points)  
**The Political System We have Lost**  
 Examines the uses by recent political actors of descriptions and evocations of political activity and the structure of politics in New Zealand before the reforms which began in 1984 and compares the various descriptions and evocations with an account of the structure and activity of politics as reconstructed using the methods of political science.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 334** (2 Points)  
**Revolutions, Insurgencies and Counter-hegemonic Movements**  
 Explores the theory and practice of subordinate group resistance to status quo politics. This includes both violent and non-violent forms of mass collective action, eg. urban and rural guerrilla warfare, passive resistance, civil disobedience, eco-terrorism, guerrilla theatre and other types of counter-hegemonic vehicles as well as other forms of anti-establishment politics.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies; or one of HISTORY 231, LATINAM 201, POLITICS 234, SPANISH 211, 213, or 306*
- POLITICS 335** (2 Points)  
**Reform and Conflict in the Former Soviet Union – Study Abroad**  
 The course will be taught in English over four weeks in November to December at the Russian Diplomatic Academy or similar institution in Moscow. It consists of lectures and field trips covering various aspects of domestic and foreign policies, economy, legal system, culture and society.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at stage II in Political Studies, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Political Studies. Permission of Head of Department required.*
- POLITICS 336** (2 Points)  
**Principles and Politics of Public Management**  
 An investigation into the principles and practices of government administration and management, in particular, into how the administration of government has been the focus of major reforms in New Zealand, and the effects the reforms have had on the government's policy-making capacity, public accountability and administrative ethics. It will look

at New Zealand's status as a designer laboratory for government management, worldwide, and will discuss the implications of the changes in New Zealand for the definition of the 'public sphere' and the appropriate role of government.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies, or 4 points from MAORI 250, POLITICS 221, 222 and 229, or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200

**POLITICS 337** (2 Points)

**Methods for Policy Research**

Offers a framework for thinking about policy issues and introduces students to a variety of qualitative and quantitative methods for engaging in policy research and the presentational and 'people' skills for policy analysts.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 338** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 339** (2 Points)

**Politics of North-East Asia**

Examines, in the context of theories of political change and democratization, the nature and dynamics of politics in contemporary China, Japan and Korea. The interaction between internal and external politics will also be discussed.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 340** (2 Points)

**New Zealand Diplomats in Action**

A course of lectures delivered mainly by senior staff from the Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade. Designed to give students as vivid an idea as possible of the practice, as well as the principles, informing the Ministry.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 341** (2 Points)

**International Political Economy**

Offers an advanced survey of topics in the study of international political economy. A theoretical and historical examination of economic globalization and consideration of the role of the state and non-state actors in shaping the regional and global integration of political economies.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 342** (2 Points)

**Political Participation**

An introduction to the study of political behaviour through an analysis of political participation, focusing on the international literature with New Zealand material where appropriate.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 343** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**POLITICS 344** (2 Points)

**Comparative Foreign Policies**

Comparisons of the contemporary foreign policies and inter-relationships of selected states of Europe, North America and Asia. Includes diplomacy, security, and trade policies and interactions with international organizations.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**POLITICS 703A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 703B** (2 Points)

**Political Economy of Information**

Who pays and who benefits from deregulation in the communication and information industries? What are the political system implications and the social and cultural consequences? Are the trends in the applications of convergent information technologies exclusionary or inclusive?

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 703 A and B*

**POLITICS 712** (4 Points)

**Themes in the Politics of the USA**

A selection of topics, mostly on the modern Presidency or the Supreme Court, showing political institutions coping with controversies and pressures.

**POLITICS 713A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 713B** (2 Points)

**Public Administration: Current New Zealand Issues**

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 713 A and B*

**POLITICS 720A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 720B** (2 Points)

**Democracy in New Zealand?**

An examination of ways in which democracy can be achieved, comparing New Zealand with other countries using a democratic audit. Topics covered include: representation for individuals and groups, electoral systems, who should participate, deliberation and consensus, decision-making, and political rights.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 720 A and B*

**POLITICS 723A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 723B** (2 Points)

**Topics in Political Theory**

Major topics in political theory. Includes: freedom and equality; space, time and justice; rational choice theory; markets, welfare and socialism.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 723 A and B*

**POLITICS 724** (4 Points)

**Identity Politics**

A political theory course discussing the compatibility of identity politics with the idea of equal citizenship. Topics covered are: Maori land claims, feminism, group rights, affirmative action, special political representation, discrimination, difference and equality.

**POLITICS 725A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 725B** (2 Points)

**States in the Global Political Economy**

Examination of both economic competition and cooperation among various states and non-state actors post Second World War. Topics include: the Bretton-Woods system and its transformation; trade liberalization and mercantile trade policies; industrial policies and economic development, trade and domestic politics; trade disputes among industrialized states and international law; economic regionalism; globalization and international finance; intellectual property rights, development and international law.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 725 A and B*

**POLITICS 728A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 728B** (2 Points)

**Security, Diplomacy and Conflict Resolution**

An examination of current security challenges to global and regional order and the role of diplomacy in maintaining stability and resolving conflicts of interest, as well as interstate and intrastate disputes. The course is focused on themes and issues in the Asia-Pacific region.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 728 A and B*

**POLITICS 729A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 729B** (2 Points)

**Feminist Political Theory**

A survey of the major feminist contributions in political theory in the last 10 years. Examined are feminist theories of justice, power, citizenship, equality and difference, and feminist interpretations of international relations theory.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 729 A and B*

**POLITICS 730A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 730B** (2 Points)

**China in World Politics**

A study of the People's Republic of China as a 'bogey' in world politics since 1949, and an examination of the rise of China as an economic power in Asia Pacific.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 730 A and B*

**POLITICS 732A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 732B** (2 Points)

**Audiences, Television and Elections**

An introduction to institutional and critical approaches to research on television audiences with a special focus on audiences for election campaign television. What do campaign audiences bring to, seek, and take from televised debates, news stories, current affairs programmes, political advertisements and the like? How do campaign audiences differ from audiences for other types of programming?

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 732 A and B*

**POLITICS 735A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 735B** (2 Points)

**Policy, Knowledge and Power**

The focusing question for this course is 'What constitutes good policy-making?' This question is examined from four competing perspectives which emphasize technical expertise, bargaining, negotiation and brokerage between conflicting interests and advocacy, coalitions, the usage of market-like mechanisms and disciplines, and models of participatory democracy applied to policy-making settings. In doing so, themes of knowledge, rationality, legitimacy and power are examined.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 735 A and B*

**POLITICS 736A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 736B** (2 Points)

**Transitional Dynamics**

Examines the ways in which recent politics, world-wide, has been a politics of regime transition, a politics of the creation of regional and global groupings, a politics of market penetration and global acculturation, and a politics of changing theoretical perceptions of what politics is. Examines and theorizes the transitions these changes

encompass and (probably) foreshadow.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 736 A and B*

**POLITICS 737A** (1 Point)  
**POLITICS 737B** (1 Point)

**A Course-related Research Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 737 A and B*

**POLITICS 738A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 738B** (2 Points)

**Political Symbolism and Opinion Formation**

Focuses on the 'symbolic', 'subjective' and 'communicative' dimensions of human interaction in politics, with particular attention to issues at the intersection of public opinion, individual perception, and mass media. A broadly interdisciplinary perspective is taken, drawing from politically relevant theories and empirical research techniques in adjacent disciplines of psychology, sociology, anthropology and communication.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 738 A and B*

**POLITICS 739A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 739B** (2 Points)

**Global Civil Society**

Introduces students to debates concerning the nature of world politics and the future of international relations theory. Considers how norms, interests, identities, cultures and non-state actors really matter in understanding conflict and cooperation in global politics. Of interest to students not only of IR theory but also cultural differences, the politics of ideas and identities, and the impact of social movements.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 739 A and B*

**POLITICS 740A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 740B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Pens and Swords – Media, Ideas and Revolution**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 740 A and B*

**POLITICS 741A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 741B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 741 A and B*

**POLITICS 742** (2 Points)

**Current Debates in Political Studies**

Key debates and dialogues pertinent to the discipline of politics. Each debate/dialogue is presented by two staff members and the whole academic staff of the Department is involved in this course.

**POLITICS 743** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Global Civil Society**

Introduces students to debates concerning the nature of world politics and the future of international relations theory. Considers how norms, interests, identities, cultures and non-state actors really matter in understanding conflict and cooperation in global politics. Of interest to students not only of IR theory but also cultural difference, the politics of ideas and identities, and the impact of social movements.

**POLITICS 744A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 744B** (2 Points)

**Public Policy and the Welfare State**

An examination of how welfare states have been reformed and restricted in selected democracies, especially in New Zealand, Australia, Canada, the United States and Britain. Areas of interest include health, housing, pensions, employment policy, accident compensation and poverty.

*Restriction: 285.314*

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 744 A and B*

**POLITICS 745A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 745B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 745 A and B*

**POLITICS 746** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Sovereignty to the Present**

**POLITICS 747A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 747B** (2 Points)

**Japan's Domestic and Foreign Policies**

Surveys Japan's modernization from the Meiji Restoration to the present, and its foreign policy over the same period. Continuity and change in geopolitical contexts, development of Japanese democracy, development ideology and their interaction with Japan's sociological changes are examined. Various contemporary political issues in Japan, including the changing political-economic structure, deregulation, trade disputes, ageing, increasing diplo-military role, and the political realignment will be discussed.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 747 A and B*

**POLITICS 748** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Policy Analysis and Evaluation**

Introduces students to the knowledge and skills needed to engage in careful analysis and evaluation of contemporary policy issues and government programmes. Students will become familiar with both the technical tools and people skills required of policy analysts. The course will be of most benefit to students seeking to become policy advisors or policy researchers.

**POLITICS 750A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 750B** (2 Points)

**International Relations and Human Rights**

Explores the interaction between states, non-governmental organizations, international institutions and international law with regard to the protection of human rights. Instruments of statecraft ranging from diplomacy to military intervention are described and assessed in light of case studies of their employment, with domestic politics as well as changing international circumstances taken into account.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 750 A and B*

**POLITICS 751A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 751B** (2 Points)

**Politics, Statecraft and Regional Order**

Examines international and domestic politics in foreign policy-making in China and the United States, assessing the influences of national interests,

ideology, interest groups, institutional interests, public opinion, etc. Considers Sino-American relations since the 1940s, and analyses some current major bilateral and regional issues in the Asia-Pacific region, with special attention to North-East Asia.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 751 A and B*

**POLITICS 752A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 752B** (2 Points)

**Foreign and Defence Policies of Major Powers**

Reviews the wide spectrum of foreign policies available to governments of major states, ranging from diplomatic coalition-building through trade sanctions to military action. Introduces theories and examples of the exercise of persuasion, economic influence, and military force to be researched and reported on, orally and in writing, by students.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 752 A and B*

**POLITICS 753A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 753B** (2 Points)

**Language History and Power**

Political activity often occurs in and over language. The role of ideas and language in political history, and the related concepts of ideology and discourse, dominant and oppositional political discourses in New Zealand from 1890 to the present are considered.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 753 A and B*

**POLITICS 754A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 754B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Nationalism and Internationalism in Europe**

Discusses ethnic, national, and supra-national identity within Europe, considering whether nationalism remains a strong political force or is being displaced by integrationist forces. A survey of theoretical approaches to nationalism and of the role of nationalism and internationalism within modern European history will lay the foundation for detailed analysis of post-Cold War Europe.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 754 A and B*

**POLITICS 755** (2 Points)

**Research Essay**

A supervised research essay for the programme in International Relations and Human Rights in the Master of Professional Studies. Its subject matter is to be chosen from among the topics, or as closely related to the topics, covered in the courses which the student has been permitted to take as part of this degree.

**POLITICS 756A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 756B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: New Zealand Government**

An examination of the composition, functions and powers of New Zealand's political institutions under MMP. Analyses the extent to which factors such as political leadership, policy, electoral and parliamentary tactics, and relations between the major and minor parties contribute to a government's success.

*To complete this course students must enrol in POLITICS 756 A and B*

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

**POLITICS 757 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Russia and Europe – The Cold War and After****POLITICS 758 (2 Points)****Research Design in Political Science**

Prepares students for empirical research in theses and dissertations. An introduction to the basic ideas and concepts of research design, followed by critical analysis of some of the most influential books published in political science over the last 15 years or so.

**POLITICS 759A (2 Points)****POLITICS 759B (2 Points)****Policy Analysis and Evaluation**

Cross-national policy comparisons used to diagnose local policy problems and the development of appropriate policy prescriptions to address them. Covers essential tools for applied policy analysis; examples of comparative public policy analysis; and critical scrutiny of the prominence accorded to economic development in contemporary policy debates.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 759 A and B*

**POLITICS 760 (2 Points)****Research Design: Research Proposal**

A 5,000–8,000 word research proposal. Its subject matter will be related to *POLITICS 758*.

Prerequisite: *POLITICS 758*

**POLITICS 780 (4 Points)****POLITICS 780A (2 Points)****POLITICS 780B (2 Points)****Honours Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 780 A and B*, or *POLITICS 780*

**POLITICS 790A (2 Points)****POLITICS 790B (2 Points)****Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 790 A and B*

**POLITICS 796A (7 Points)****POLITICS 796B (7 Points)****Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 796 A and B*

**POLITICS 797A (7 Points)****POLITICS 797B (7 Points)****Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 797 A and B*

**Russian****Stage I****RUSSIAN 100 (2 Points)****Beginners' Russian 1**

Written and oral use of elementary Russian tested by translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation and reading.

**RUSSIAN 101 (2 Points)****Beginners' Russian 2**

Written and oral use of Russian tested by translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation and reading.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 100* or Departmental approval required

**RUSSIAN 112 (2 Points)****Russia's National Identity**

A survey of the political, social, economic, religious, intellectual and artistic forces that have shaped contemporary Russia.

**Stage II****RUSSIAN 200 (2 Points)****Intermediate Russian 1**

Second-year language, building on the basic knowledge obtained in *RUSSIAN 101*, revising and expanding work covered in Stage I.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 101*

Restriction: *RUSSIAN 210*

**RUSSIAN 201 (2 Points)****Intermediate Russian 2**

Builds on skills obtained in *RUSSIAN 200* with special emphasis on practical work, spoken Russian and development of aural-oral skills.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 200*

Restriction: *RUSSIAN 210*

**RUSSIAN 214 (2 Points)****Russian Verbal and Visual Art**

This course considers Russian lyric texts in relation to Russian painting. Discussions are accompanied by lectures on Russian culture before Pushkin and Russian poetic style.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 200* or *210*

Restriction: *290.211*

**RUSSIAN 250 (2 Points)****Reading Russian Literature**

Studies in major examples of Russian prose fiction and drama, in English translation. The main texts are *Hero of Our Time*, *Crime and Punishment*, short stories by Chekhov and Zamyatin's novel *We*.

Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in Russian, or 4 points in BA courses

Restriction: *RUSSIAN 113*

**RUSSIAN 277 (2 Points)****Russian Study Abroad 2A**

Refer to the entry for *Language Study Abroad*.

Prerequisite: Departmental approval required

**RUSSIAN 278 (2 Points)****Russian Study Abroad 2B**

Refer to the entry for *Language Study Abroad*.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 277* and Departmental approval required

**Stage III****RUSSIAN 310 (2 Points)****Advanced Russian**

Written and oral use of advanced Russian tested by translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation and reading.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 201* or *210*

**RUSSIAN 311 (2 Points)****Introduction to Russian Linguistics**

An examination of key linguistic phenomena of Russian: phonology, morphology, the structural analysis of declension and conjugation; reflexes of historical processes in contemporary Russian; post-revolutionary and recent post-Soviet lexical developments and gender issues.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 201* or *210*

- RUSSIAN 312** (2 Points)  
**Russian Narrative Art**  
 Readings of short Russian prose texts with special reference to narrative methods. Discussion ranges from the Russian fairy tale to the complex modes of Gogol.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Russian including RUSSIAN 201 or 210*  
*Restriction: 290.212*
- RUSSIAN 350** (2 Points)  
**Issues in Contemporary Russia**  
 Focuses on the economic, cultural and religious freedoms that have characterized Russia since the collapse of Soviet totalitarianism. Includes examination of financial developments and explores contemporary religious thought and literary expressions of similar issues.  
*Prerequisite: HISTORY 101 or RUSSIAN 112, and either HISTORY 266 or POLITICS 215*
- RUSSIAN 377** (2 Points)  
**Russian Study Abroad 3A**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*
- RUSSIAN 378** (2 Points)  
**Russian Study Abroad 3B**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: RUSSIAN 377 and Departmental approval required*
- RUSSIAN 390** (2 Points)  
**East European Interdisciplinary Essay**  
 Students taking this course will write a 6,000-word essay on a historical, political or cultural issue deriving from their prior courses on Eastern Europe, in consultation with one or more of their principal teachers.  
*Prerequisite: HISTORY 101 or RUSSIAN 112, and any two of HISTORY 266, POLITICS 215, 327, 335, RUSSIAN 350*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- RUSSIAN 710** (4 Points)  
**RUSSIAN 710A** (2 Points)  
**RUSSIAN 710B** (2 Points)  
**Language Acquisition: Russian**  
 Oral and written expression and aural and written comprehension in Russian, tested by comprehension, composition, explanation, conversation, translation, dictation, reading.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in RUSSIAN 710 A and B, or RUSSIAN 710*
- RUSSIAN 711** (4 Points)  
**The Structure of Russian**  
 An in-depth examination of selected areas of modern Russian phonology, morphology and syntax.
- RUSSIAN 714** (4 Points)  
**Slavonic Lexicography and Lexicology**  
 A study of dictionaries in specialized areas of Russian, principles of lexicology as applied to Modern Russian, the Russian vocabulary (including terminologies) in its Eurasian context.
- RUSSIAN 715** (4 Points)  
**Comparative Slavonic Linguistics 1**  
 Introduction to West Slavonic languages; linguistic study of a West Slavonic language (Czech or Polish) through Russian.
- RUSSIAN 717** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- RUSSIAN 718** (4 Points)  
**Research Methods in Russian Studies**  
 The theory and practice of academic discourse in either linguistics or literature.
- RUSSIAN 719** (4 Points)  
**Early Russian Literature**  
 A survey in the original of major works of Russian literature prior to 1700, including folk, religious, political and satirical texts, and with special reference to the *Slovo o polku Igoreve* and the *Zhitie of Auvakum*.
- RUSSIAN 720** (4 Points)  
**18th Century Russian Literature**  
 A survey of the major genres of Russian literature in the eighteenth century, with special reference to Radishchev, Derzhavin and Karamzin.
- RUSSIAN 721** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic in Russian Poetry**  
 Advanced study of either a single Russian poetic movement or of a major Russian poet.
- RUSSIAN 722** (4 Points)  
**Dostoevsky and Tolstoi**  
 The close study of selected prose of Dostoevsky and Tolstoi, with special attention to their legacy in the development of Russian and world literature.
- RUSSIAN 723** (4 Points)  
**Pushkin**  
 Detailed study of *Evgenii Onegin* and other poetry and prose texts by Pushkin.
- RUSSIAN 724** (4 Points)  
**RUSSIAN 724A** (2 Points)  
**RUSSIAN 724B** (2 Points)  
**Moscow in Russian Literature and Culture**  
 A survey of major texts on this theme by poets and prose writers from late medieval times onwards in the context of political, social and cultural developments.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in RUSSIAN 724 A and B, or RUSSIAN 724*
- RUSSIAN 725** (4 Points)  
**Petersburg in Russian Poetry and Prose**  
 The Petersburg literary myth examined on the basis of major poetic and prose texts from the late eighteenth century onwards.
- RUSSIAN 726** (2 Points)  
**Modern Russian Literature**  
 Readings of short lyric and prose texts by ten representative Russian authors active since the time of Chekhov.  
*Restriction: RUSSIAN 313*
- RUSSIAN 727** (4 Points)  
**The Art of Chekhov**  
 The close study of selected works of Chekhov, with special attention to Chekhov's influence on the development of Russian and world literature, the richness and ambiguity of his artistic method and his treatment of modern and eternal themes.

**RUSSIAN 732 (4 Points)****Advanced Russian Translation Practice**

Designed for students who wish to attain expertise in the field of translation. Coursework will consist of correct use of dictionary and reference materials in printed and electronic forms, practice in translation of written material from and into Russian in a variety of registers, critical evaluation of translations.

*Prerequisite:* RUSSIAN 310

*Restriction:* 290.712

**RUSSIAN 733 (2 Points)****Practical Stylistics of Modern Russian**

An in-depth study of the functional styles of modern Russian, including grammatical and lexical stylistics.

*Restriction:* 290.713

**RUSSIAN 790 (4 Points)****Dissertation****RUSSIAN 796A (7 Points)****RUSSIAN 796B (7 Points)****Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in RUSSIAN 796 A and B

**RUSSIAN 797A (7 Points)****RUSSIAN 797B (7 Points)****Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in RUSSIAN 797 A and B

**Samoan****Stage I****SAMOAN 101 (2 Points)****Samoan Acquisition 1**

The acquisition of basic Samoan; the development of skills in listening, speaking, reading and writing. Focus will be on the development of vocabulary and basic Samoan such as that used in greetings and conversations in different contexts. Intended for students with no previous knowledge or familiarity with Samoan.

**SAMOAN 102 (2 Points)****Samoan Structure 1**

Introductory course on the structure of Samoan. Aspects of Samoan phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics will be studied. These will include topics such as vowels, consonants, vowel length, stress, prefixes, suffixes, word formation processes, lexical words, grammatical particles and different kinds of meanings including cultural meaning.

*Prerequisite:* SAMOAN 101

**SAMOAN 103 (2 Points)****Samoan Literature 1**

Introduces students to the range of genres in Samoan that can be classified as 'literature'. These include: *tala o le vavau* (myths and legends); *talafatu/tala pupu'u* (narratives); *pese* (songs); *tusigatala/tusigasolo* (creative writing); *solo* (poetry), and *solo fa'aanamua* (chants); proverbs and sayings; historical accounts; and speeches. These genres will be analysed with a view to describing their purposes, history and context, cultural significance, the devices employed and appreciation.

**Stage II****SAMOAN 201 (2 Points)****Samoan Acquisition 2**

Extension of listening, speaking, reading and writing skills developed in SAMOAN 101. The acquisition of more complex sentences and vocabulary will be encouraged through exposure to reading material and spoken texts such as conversations, speeches, letters, articles, songs, poems and other kinds of input.

*Prerequisite:* SAMOAN 101

**SAMOAN 202 (2 Points)****Samoan Structure 2**

Develops topics studied in SAMOAN 102, such as types of syllables, stress rules, different word classes, kinds of words such as reduplications, compound words, derived words, sentence structure and different kinds of clauses.

*Prerequisite:* SAMOAN 102

**Stage III****SAMOAN 301 (2 Points)****Samoan Acquisition 3**

Extension of oracy and literacy skills acquired in SAMOAN 101 and 201. Conversations and speeches will be practiced and studied. The contexts and relationship between ordinary and respectful language levels will be examined further.

*Prerequisite:* SAMOAN 201

**SAMOAN 302 (2 Points)****Samoan Structure 3**

A critical look at selected topics in Samoan phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics, such as the orthography and the extent to which it reflects Samoan phonology, word class, tense and aspect and transitivity in Samoan.

*Prerequisite:* SAMOAN 202

**Sociology****Stage I****SOCIOL 100 (2 Points)****Issues and Themes in Sociology**

Introduction to sociology as a discipline and a review of some of its internal debates. Topics include: social class, gender, globalization, power, sexual identity and family. Draws on material from a range of societies.

**SOCIOL 101 (2 Points)****Understanding Aotearoa New Zealand**

An introduction to understanding Aotearoa New Zealand. A critical examination of contested ideas about Aotearoa New Zealand's colonial origins and development, to contemporary issues of race, gender and class relations. Starts with Aotearoa New Zealand as part of Asia Pacific and finish with the question 'Where is Aotearoa New Zealand going?' in the global economy.

*Restriction:* 315.104

**SOCIOL 102 (2 Points)****Becoming Modern**

Sociology is a modern discipline, born of the 'dual revolution'. French political experience between 1789 and 1871, and British industrialization are studied

to explore the nature of modernity. And hence, of course, why sociology takes its current intellectual shape.

**SOCIOL 103 (2 Points)**  
**Social Policy, Social Justice**

Examines issues of social development in the context of globalized economic processes, social polarization and racialized poverty. Topics discussed include the rise of the 'partnering state', the new significance of localities for social programmes, the reinvention of community and the emphasis on active citizenship. Case studies include poverty, employment, health, children and families, crime, drug and alcohol control and immigration.

**SOCIOL 105 (2 Points)**  
**Cultural Studies and Society**

A cultural studies approach to social life focuses on the way we experience the world, taking account of what we see, what we hear, what we consume and how we communicate. This course looks at how our lives are influenced by flows of images and objects around the world, and tracks the ways that global and local processes impact on each other.

**SOCIOL 106 (2 Points)**  
**Sociology for Auckland**

Auckland is in New Zealand but not always of New Zealand. By studying differences in class, ethnicity, gender, sexual orientation and other social factors, what makes Auckland 'special' is explored; its own particular place(s) within New Zealand, a city suffering (and enjoying) an uneasy relationship with the rest of this country and beyond.

**Stage II**

**SOCIOL 200 (2 Points)**  
**Theory and Society**

An introduction to the major themes of social theory. The focus is on the analyses of modern society to be found in the works of classical and contemporary social analysts.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 201 (2 Points)**  
**Social Research: An Introduction**

An introduction to social research through an examination of both qualitative and quantitative approaches.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass, or 4 points passed at Stage I in Social Science for Public Health*

**SOCIOL 208 (2 Points)**  
**Work and Leisure**

Examines the social aspects of work and leisure. Particular attention is paid to the phenomena of surveillance and simulation and their impact on work and leisure, including control and resistance. These developments are crucial to understanding the 'big issues' of globalization, restructuring and new technologies. Course material is drawn from international literatures and is grounded in an understanding of contemporary New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 210 (2 Points)**  
**Colonization, Globalization and Development**

From 1492 to Franz Fanon to the Zapatistas, we look at the 'West and the Rest' through the realities of colonialism and decolonization; 'aid and development'; under/over development; globalization; IMF/World Bank/World Trade Organization hegemony; the rise of the non-governmental organizations and the anti-capitalist upsurges of the new millennium.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass or LATINAM 100 or SPANISH 103*

**SOCIOL 211 (2 Points)**  
**Sociology and Popular Culture**

An interpretation of popular culture both as an indicator of social change and as a location of meaning and significance. Undertaken by the analysis of the industries which organize it, the texts which realize it, and the audiences which recognize it.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology, or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass, or FTVMS 100 and 101, or 4 points passed from courses listed in Comparative Literature*

**SOCIOL 212 (2 Points)**  
**Race, Gender and Class in Australia and New Zealand**

This course looks at the persistence of race, gender and class inequality in Australia and New Zealand, from white settlement to the 'celebrations' of 1988/1990 and onwards to the bicultural and multicultural settlements in the twenty-first century.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 213 (2 Points)**  
**Ethnicity and Identity**

Theories of ethnicity: ethnic socialization and resocialization, ethnocide and ethnogenesis, ethnicity and the individual, ethnic social movements, ethnicity in local, national and international affairs.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 214 (2 Points)**  
**Sociology of Gender**

Introduction to the sociology of gender. Preliminary examination of the topics of concern to sociologists and the major theoretical perspectives - psychoanalytic, functionalist, Marxist, socialization, feminist, antifeminist, biological. Critical analysis of key sites such as the family, reproduction, mothering, sexuality and violence against women, drawing on both international and local literature.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass, or 4 points passed at Stage I from courses listed in Women's Studies*

**SOCIOL 215 (2 Points)**  
**Law, Inequality and the State**

Examines, in a comparative mode, how law as a set of social relations and categories can both create and remedy inequalities of gender, race, and class.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 216 (2 Points)**  
**Sociology and Crime: An Introduction**

What is crime? What causes crime? What are the best ways of dealing with crime? Why are specific actions labelled 'criminal'? Are some people more likely to be judged criminal than others? This course examines such questions by introducing and

critically analysing selected theories of crime.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 220 (2 Points)**

**Last Call: The Sociology of Death and Dying**

Examines the location of death in modern life. Draws on perceptions of death from sociological, philosophical, religious, historical, secular and medical approaches.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass, or 4 points passed at Stage I in Social Science for Public Health, or 8 points passed*

**SOCIOL 221 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Pakeha Identity**

A critical examination of the conception of national identity. Examines what is meant by national identity; how and why such identities come into being; what is meant by 'culture', and the relationship between 'culture and identity'. Focuses on the New Zealand Pakeha experience.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology, or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*  
*Restriction: SOCIOL 304*

**SOCIOL 222 (2 Points)**

**Families, Labour and Love**

The focus of this course is how and why family life is influenced by economic and labour force trends, laws and social values, as well as personal ideals and decisions. Partnering, childbearing, gendered labour and divorce, from both historical and cross-national perspectives, will be studied.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass, or 4 points passed at Stage I in courses listed in Women's Studies*

**SOCIOL 224 (2 Points)**

**Migration in the Pacific**

Reviews the history of human migration within the Pacific region from the earliest ancestral Polynesian settlements, through European missionization and colonization to the labour migrations of the late twentieth century. Concentrates on the social, demographic, political and economic forces that produce movements and consequences of migration for typical donor and recipient states' societies and economies. Will conclude with consideration of the complex 'meta-communities' that now incorporate 'home societies' and their diasporic 'offshoot' communities in 'migration systems' between which people and resources flow.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 225 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**Stage III**

**SOCIOL 303 (2 Points)**

**Sociology of Religion**

Examines sociological accounts of the changing relationship between religion and the state in modern society, and pays particular attention to two topics: contemporary religious movements and cults, and religion as a system of legitimation.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 307 (2 Points)**

**The Pacific in the World**

Brief history of post Second World War theories of economic development; Wallerstein and elements of modern world system; modern world system; and patterns of development in the Pacific; linkages between core and semi-periphery Britain, US, East Asia and Aotearoa New Zealand and Samoa/Cooks and Tuvalu; limitations of world systems models.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 308 (2 Points)**

**Law and Identity**

Survey of theoretical and practical approaches to understanding the relationship between law and society in the modern state. Emphasis on their potential application in New Zealand society.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology or Law*

**SOCIOL 310 (2 Points)**

**Applied Social Research**

Develops methodological competence in applied social research methods within a wider and critical framework of understanding of the social policy process and apparatus.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology, or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200*

**SOCIOL 311 (2 Points)**

**Sociology, Science and Technology**

Science and technology figure prominently in our lives yet they have received little sociological attention. The survey begins with the organization of scientific communities and culminates with the 'Science Wars'. Topics studied include: science and gender, colonialism and the military, images of scientists in film, technology and social theory, and 'technoculture'.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology or 4 points at Stage II in History and Philosophy of Science and Technology*

**SOCIOL 313 (2 Points)**

**Sociology of Contemporary Asia**

Broad survey of socio-historical transformation in Asia: historical patterns of development: colonization and nationalism; social, economic, and political trends of the post Second World War period; deindustrialization and reindustrialization.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology, or ASIAN 100 and 2 points passed at Stage I from courses listed in Asian Studies*

**SOCIOL 314 (2 Points)**

**Women/Deviance**

An analysis of the construction of images and representations of women in relation to conceptions of normality and deviance in bodies, reproduction, and popular culture; the creation of feminist epistemologies.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology or Women's Studies*

**SOCIOL 317 (2 Points)**

**Sociology of the Welfare State: From Welfare to Workfare?**

An examination of the origins, history, the present crisis and possible futures of the welfare state. The course looks at a range of contested theories from neo-liberal to neo-Marxist. It will be comparative but will focus on the Aotearoa New Zealand case.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology, or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200*

- SOCIOL 318** (2 Points)  
**Sociology of the Media**  
An exploration of the relationship and patterns of interaction between media, culture and society through an examination of the print and broadcasting media, and advertising, in New Zealand.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology or FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in FTVMS*
- SOCIOL 320** (2 Points)  
**Qualitative Sociological Research**  
An introduction to non-numerical research methodologies in sociology. Topics drawn from a wide range: ethnography, interviews, life history methods, archival research, analysis of text. Not all topics will be included in any one year.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology, or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200*
- SOCIOL 321** (2 Points)  
**Quantitative Sociological Research**  
Principles and practice of the design, execution and analysis of the several forms of 'systematic social research' (including survey research, census and other social bookkeeping data, content analysis, systematic observation and unobtrusive methods) and their usefulness within sociological analyses. Not all topics will be included in any one year.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology, or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200*
- SOCIOL 323** (2 Points)  
**Consuming Interests: The Sociology of Food**  
Food is basic to human society. This course blends social history, political economy and hermeneutics to examine sociological aspects of food production, processing, distribution and consumption. Other issues raised will include hunger and famine, colonialism, gender differences and development.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*
- SOCIOL 324** (2 Points)  
**Special Issues in Gender**  
Focuses on current and controversial issues in the sociology of gender, especially debates on the natural or social status of sex, gender and sexuality. Issues will be approached from contemporary feminist perspectives, including post-structuralist and other critical feminist theories. Various topics, including sex, sexualities, reproduction, transgender and cybersex, will be critically examined in both theoretical and practical terms.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*
- SOCIOL 325** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Sociology of Emotions**  
This course examines some of the emotions - including anger, revenge, shame, love, pity, resentment, empathy, disgust, and desire - that shape social processes and inflect the relationship between self and society.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*
- SOCIOL 326** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Sociology of Violence**  
Drawing on writings from a variety of intellectual traditions, this course explores the contested nature of violence through an examination of a number of contemporary debates about the causes, agents, consequences, as well as responses to and interventions in, incidents of violence.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*
- SOCIOL 330** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*
- SOCIOL 331** (2 Points)  
**Issues and Themes in Visual Culture**  
Considers the significance of vision in the societies and cultures of modernity based on the notion that perception is socially and historically constructed. Looks at the impact of technology on vision and the way visual practices travel the world.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*
- SOCIOL 333** (2 Points)  
**Sociology of Health and Medicine**  
Examines the social construction of health, illness and medicine in New Zealand. A range of issues and sociological accounts will be addressed, including: competing conceptions of medicine and the sick role; the political economy of health; debates around professionalism and managerialism; the interface of medicalization, risk and claims-making; medical ethics; the sociology of the body; lay-accounts and contested character of medical knowledge.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology, or HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200*
- SOCIOL 334** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*
- SOCIOL 335** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Organization and Representation**  
Examines political and textual representations in complex organizations. Political readings of organizations emphasize the social forces and institutional frameworks by which sets of actors represent others. Textual readings emphasize ways in which symbolic realities come to stand for material ones. Explores the differing expressions of representation across organizations and the convergence and divergence of political and textual readings.
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- SOCIOL 700** (4 Points)  
**Advanced Problems in Sociological Theory**  
Addresses contemporary developments and debates in the field of social theory and explores the effect of a range of complex social, cultural, economic and political processes of transformation on human experience and conduct.  
*Restriction: SOCIOL 733*
- SOCIOL 701** (4 Points)  
**Advanced Skills in Research**  
Examination of sociological issues in research design, execution, analysis and interpretation. Particular attention is paid to technologically mediated research and benefits of employing multiple methods.
- SOCIOL 702** (4 Points)  
**Asia and the Modern World-system**  
Examination of historical patterns of social transformation in several regions of Asia: incorporation and peripheralization; the rise of East Asia.
- SOCIOL 708** (4 Points)  
**Complex Organizations**

Reviews methods and recent approaches to organizational analysis within a sociology of knowledge framework. Emphasizes cross-cultural and comparative inquiry, focusing on such topics as Japonization and post-Fordism.

**SOCIOL 712** (4 Points)

**Capitalism Today**

Through an analysis of the works of Marx, Polanyi, Chomsky and Negri and other major theorists, this course provides an historically grounded, theoretical examination of the development of the capitalist world economy to the present. Particular reference will be made to the emergence of capitalism in the USA and its relationship with Latin American states.

**SOCIOL 713** (4 Points)

**Sociology of Law**

Recent theoretical developments in the study of law and society including the law and literature movement, feminist jurisprudence, and critical race theory.

**SOCIOL 714** (4 Points)

**Marxism and Sociology**

Examines the basic methodological differences between Marxism and sociology and their implications for the understanding and transformation of society, with reference to a range of areas of concern selected by students.

**SOCIOL 715** (4 Points)

**Development and the 'Third World' State**

Begins with the re-emergence of a concern with the 'political' in development policies. Explores both the issues and problems that emerge from this focus, such as a concern with democracy, human rights, civil society, legitimacy, and the relationship between the nation state, economic development and globalization processes. The emphasis is on the Asia Pacific region.

**SOCIOL 718** (4 Points)

**Research Projects: Design and Practice**

Research problem formulation and refinement; searching and reviewing literatures; designing and redesigning research strategies; ethical issues and procedures; calculation of personnel, material, and other resource requirements; preparing formal proposals; pilot study design and implementation.  
*Restriction: SOCIOL 731*

**SOCIOL 719** (4 Points)

**Sport, Gender and Politics**

Offers students the opportunity to explore social, cultural and political aspects of sport and leisure.

**SOCIOL 722** (4 Points)

**Remaking Aotearoa New Zealand**

Aotearoa New Zealand has experienced several critical 're-makings', from: Maori society to white-settler colony; colony to nation; 30s depression to post-war boom; from the end of the 'golden weather' to de-regulated player in the global economy. Despite these episodes, the gaps between Maori/Pakeha; men/women and employers/workers remain as the objects of future contested settlements within Aotearoa New Zealand as a nation, or nations.

**SOCIOL 726** (4 Points)

**Nature and Society**

A critical examination of the recent rise of the construction of 'nature' as a theme in social theory,

which leads on to a reconsideration of the division between the natural and social sciences.

**SOCIOL 727** (4 Points)

**The Sociology of Governance, Sanction and Censure**

Why do we behave in the ways we do? What are the wider consequences of so acting? On the basis of such questions, this course analyses the sanctioning and censoring processes by which we, as subjects of a given society, are governed. It engages a theoretical tradition in sociology concerned with developing non-violent and non-coercive methods of controlling people and producing just social formations.

**SOCIOL 728** (4 Points)

**Family, Women and the State**

This seminar will examine how ideologies of mothering, family and work, as well as the political forces and pressure groups that promote them, have influenced both the development and restructuring of social policies in several industrialized nations, including New Zealand.

**SOCIOL 729** (4 Points)

**Modernity and Consciousness**

Operating on the boundary between sociologies of history and culture, this course employs the work of Walter Benjamin, Marshall Berman, Wolfgang Schivelbusch, Raymond Williams and Talcott Parsons to explore creatively tangled relationships among three superficially similar terms - 'modernization', 'modernity' and 'modernism' - in sundry nineteenth and twentieth-century urban and rural settings.

**SOCIOL 730** (4 Points)

**Globalization and Market Governance**

Political sociology has traditionally focused on relationships between state and society. Recent theoretical and empirical changes challenge this approach. Post-structuralism, neo-Marxism and feminism have given rise to wider definitions of power, politics and social identities. Globalization, the shift from government to governance and the rise of 'new social movements' have transformed the social terrain of political struggle. Examines contemporary debates in political sociology.

**SOCIOL 731** (2 Points)

**Pre-research Practicum**

Intended for students proposing either a thesis or dissertation as part of their Master's degree. Consists of a series of formal presentations of research proposals at various stages of their development.

*Restriction: SOCIOL 718*

**SOCIOL 732** (4 Points)

**Tourism and Heritage**

Tourism is one of the world's largest and fastest growing industries. This course examines tourism's intersection with 'heritage', considering the political economy of tourist development, the tourist gaze, commodified 'authenticity' and cultural conflicts in tourism.

**SOCIOL 733** (2 Points)

**Critical Theory for Social Research**

Aims to provide critical theoretical perspectives which inform contemporary sociological research. Coursework encourages students to develop research projects, in areas of their interest, related to theoretical developments. The specific theoretical

focus will vary over time but will address implications for epistemology and methodology.

Restriction: SOCIOL 700

**SOCIOL 734 (4 Points)**

**Gambling, Governance and Identity**

Provides sociological accounts of gambling locally and globally. Explores issues associated with diversification of the field, unstable policy networks, hegemony of medical models, new technologies and the role of gambling in the construction of communities and identities. Examines topical issues around gambling, eg, problem gambling, licensing, disempowerment, taxation, and opens up broader discussions of the state, claims-making and identity politics.

**SOCIOL 735 (4 Points)**

**Current Debates in Gender and Sexuality**

Traces contemporary sociological debates in the analysis of gender and sexuality, specifically the ontological origin of gender difference. Also debated will be feminist concerns with 'bodies' as the basis on which cultural difference, sexual identity, citizenship and rights are configured in modernity. These issues will be taken up and explored through an examination of practices enacted on and/or through sexualized bodies.

Restriction: 315.723

**SOCIOL 736 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**SOCIOL 737 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**SOCIOL 738 (2 Points)**

**Directed Study**

**SOCIOL 739 (4 Points)**

**Directed Study**

**SOCIOL 740 (4 Points)**

**Modern Times, Modern Crimes**

Sociology sees itself as being centrally concerned with the question of modernity. However, until recently, it has avoided active scholarly engagement with modernity's underbelly: war, genocide and torture. This course argues that rather than appearing as peripheral aberrations they are central to the project of modernity. Special attention will be paid to the roles played by science and technology in the production of inhumanity.

**SOCIOL 792 (6 Points)**

**SOCIOL 792A (3 Points)**

**SOCIOL 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in SOCIOL 792 A and B, or SOCIOL 792

**SOCIOL 796A (7 Points)**

**SOCIOL 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in SOCIOL 796 A and B

**SOCIOL 797A (7 Points)**

**SOCIOL 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in SOCIOL 797 A and B

---

## Social Science for Public Health

---

### Stage II

**SOCSCIPH 200 (2 Points)**

**Social Science for Health**

Explores diversity in health knowledges, overviews current health trends and systems with special focus on New Zealand and the Pacific, examines the contributions of social science disciplines to analysis of health including key theoretical approaches, and applies interdisciplinary analytical models to health. Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Health Social Sciences or Social Science for Public Health, or 8 points passed

### Stage III

**SOCSCIPH 300 (2 Points)**

**Current Debates in Health and Health Policy**

Examines the recent histories of central intellectual debates in health and health policy and their relevance for and in the New Zealand and Pacific contexts. These would consist of the following: the 'medicalization' of social issues, the 'socialization' of medical issues, cross-national health policy analysis, the rationing of health resources (global and local perspectives), defining and measuring health outcomes (accountability and responsibility in health service delivery), health service management (medics or managers).

Prerequisite: HLTHSOC 200 or SOCSCIPH 200, or 16 points passed

---

## Spanish

---

### Stage I

**SPANISH 103 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Hispanic Civilization**

An introduction to the rich and complex civilization of Spain and Spanish America, focusing on major events, social traditions and cultural phenomena.

**SPANISH 104 (2 Points)**

**Beginners' Spanish 1**

Designed for students who have no previous knowledge of Spanish. Teaching of grammar is reinforced by written exercises, aural and reading comprehension, oral practice and audio-visual work. This course does not count towards a major in Spanish. It is, however, a prerequisite for SPANISH 105.

Restriction: SPANISH 107, 109

**SPANISH 105 (2 Points)**

**Beginners' Spanish 2**

This language acquisition course follows on from SPANISH 104, giving students a thorough grounding in Spanish on which they can build in future years.

Prerequisite: SPANISH 104 or 109

Restriction: SPANISH 108, 110

**SPANISH 109 (2 Points)**

**Beginners' Spanish 1 – Distance Learning**

Designed for students who have no previous knowledge of Spanish. Teaching of grammar is reinforced by written exercises, aural and reading comprehension, oral practice and audio-visual work. This course will be taught by distance learning. Prospective students must have access to email and

a CD-Rom drive. The course does not count towards a major in Spanish.

*Restriction: SPANISH 104, 107*

**SPANISH 110 (2 Points)**

**Beginners' Spanish 2 – Distance Learning**

This language acquisition course follows on from SPANISH 109, giving students a thorough grounding in Spanish on which they can build in future years. The course will be taught by distance learning. Prospective students must have access to email and a CD-Rom drive.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 104 or 109*

*Restriction: SPANISH 105, 108*

**Stage II**

**SPANISH 200 (2 Points)**

**Intermediate Spanish 1**

Second-year language, building on the basic knowledge obtained in SPANISH 105, 108 or 110, revising and expanding work covered in Stage I.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*

**SPANISH 201 (2 Points)**

**Intermediate Spanish 2**

Builds on skills obtained in SPANISH 200 with special emphasis on practical work, spoken Spanish and development of aural-oral skills.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 200*

**SPANISH 202 (2 Points)**

**Iberian Cultures and Literatures 1200–1600**

An introduction to the development of Iberian literatures in their cultural contexts from the Mediaeval, Renaissance and Early-Colonial eras, from the thirteenth to the sixteenth centuries.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108 or 110*

**SPANISH 204 (2 Points)**

**Tradition and Dissidence: 20th Century Texts**

An introduction to the historical background of modern Spain and to some of the best literature produced in Spain from 1936 through the Franco era to recent times.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108 or 110*

**SPANISH 205 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Modern Latin American Literature**

Focuses on representative works of Latin American literature, including poetry and prose.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108 or 110*

**SPANISH 211 (2 Points)**

**First Nations in Latin America**

Analysis of representation of first nations of Latin America in the context of struggles for self-determination under colonialism and in modern nation-states. Topics include: Latin American indigeneity, indigenous belief systems and *mestizaje*, nineteenth-century genocidal wars and foundational fictions celebrating modernization, testimonials, written, and visual texts of last decade. Focuses on the study of self-representation and role of mediators.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 103 or 105 or 108 or 110 or LATINAM 100*

*Restriction: SPANISH 212*

**SPANISH 213 (2 Points)**

**Cultural Critique in the Hispanic World**

Surveys the intellectual and popular currents of modernity in Latin America through the work of well-

known writers. The focus is on the ways that the uneven processes of development typical of postcolonial societies produce 'hybrid' cultures.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108 or 110*

**SPANISH 214 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108 or 110*

**SPANISH 215 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108 or 110*

**SPANISH 216 (2 Points)**

**Music, Poetry and Social Change in Latin America**

A theorized study of the history of twentieth-century social movements in Latin America through its poetry and music, largely as expressed in popular forms. The major focus is on the political and cultural manifestations of these expressions as they respond to and instigate social change.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 103 or 105 or 108 or 110*

**SPANISH 221 (2 Points)**

**Spanish for Business**

An intermediate language course that is a continuation of SPANISH 105, designed especially for students of business. Special terminology, uses and structures proper to the Hispanic business world will be treated both in the textbook and in diverse supplementary materials.

*Prerequisite may be waived for students with adequate knowledge. This course does not count towards a major in Spanish.*

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108 or 110*

**SPANISH 222 (2 Points)**

**Urban Culture in Contemporary Spain: The Street and the Night**

Urban culture as it illustrates the negotiation between the forces of globalization and the resistance to homogeneity. The development of this urban culture can be seen not only in museums, monuments or theatres but also in bars, fairs or nightclubs. To analyse this culture, we look at a variety of products, such as postcards, billboards, television advertisements, films, plays and short stories.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105*

**SPANISH 277 (2 Points)**

**Spanish Study Abroad 2A**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201 and Departmental approval required*

**SPANISH 278 (2 Points)**

**Spanish Study Abroad 2B**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**Stage III**

**SPANISH 300 (2 Points)**

**Spanish 3**

After two years' grounding in Spanish, students move on at Stage III to study the language at a more advanced level.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

**SPANISH 301 (2 Points)**

**Iberian Conquests: Epic Stories, Black Legends**

Cultural and literary interpretations of Iberian conquest and colonization within Iberia and overseas

(Mediterranean, Atlantic, Pacific) from medieval to early-modern eras. Historiographic texts about conquests by Castilian, Catalan and Portuguese authors are studied as historical and fictional literature within the contexts of debates about colonialism and comparisons of colonial encounters.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

**SPANISH 302 (2 Points)**  
**Culture of the Baroque and the Golden Age**

An introduction to the main intellectual and philosophical currents of Golden Age literature covering drama, novel and poetry.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

**SPANISH 305 (2 Points)**  
**Modern Latin American Literary Texts**

Study of modern Latin American literature through a selection of poetry, drama and novels.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

**SPANISH 306 (2 Points)**  
**Latin American Icons: The Political Economy of Otherness**

An examination of the ways in which Latin America, as a place and a people, has served as a site of otherness and exoticism providing economic and symbolic capital for the consumption and pleasure of colonial, neo-colonial, and neo-liberal powers. Latin American cultural studies texts offer students a way to read against the grain established by this process.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points from LATINAM 201, SPANISH 201, 205, 211, 213, 216, HISTORY 231, POLITICS 234*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 729*

**SPANISH 310 (2 Points)**  
**Feminist Perspectives on Hispanic Literatures**

An examination of a selection of Hispanic literary texts in the light of contemporary feminist thought.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

**SPANISH 311 (2 Points)**  
**Literature and its Others**

Analysis of the institution of literature and those forms of cultural expression that challenge its authority as central to social formation, including testimonials, diaries, chronicles, pulp fiction, fotonovelas, telenovelas, film, and other popular genres. Texts and tutorials are in Spanish.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 312*

**SPANISH 313 (2 Points)**  
**Foundational Fictions: The Myth of the Nation as Family Romance**

The debates on the gendered heritage of modernity in Latin America's nation-building project, through the study of nineteenth-century national fictions, coded as family romance.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

**SPANISH 314 (2 Points)**  
**Commerce and Communication**

A practical course designed for the business and administrative worlds. The written component focuses on Spanish commercial correspondence. In the oral section students will learn to communicate appropriately in specific contexts.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 300*

**SPANISH 315 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

**SPANISH 316 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

**SPANISH 317 (2 Points)**

**Books as Movies: Spanish Literature through Film**  
A study of Spanish texts and their representation in film. The course is divided into topics which introduce a variety of important authors and film directors.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

**SPANISH 318 (2 Points)**  
**Making Modern Spain, 1840–1939: Seduction, Nation and Revolution**

The making of modern Spain charts a period in which gender, class and ideological upheavals intersect with enquiry and debate as to what constitutes the Spanish nation. An overview of key moments of Spanish cultural politics from high Romanticism through to the end of the Spanish Civil War, examining the connections between seduction, both personal and intellectual, and social revolutions.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 725*

**SPANISH 350 (2 Points)**  
**Directed Reading and Research**

**SPANISH 377 (2 Points)**  
**Spanish Study Abroad 3A**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 300 and Departmental approval required*

**SPANISH 378 (2 Points)**  
**Spanish Study Abroad 3B**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**SPANISH 700A (2 Points)**  
**SPANISH 700B (2 Points)**

**Language Acquisition**  
Aims to consolidate all language skills in a variety of registers and situations. Material will be drawn from a wide range of sources designed to expand vocabulary and grammar as well as focusing on aural and oral skills by exposing students to the language in different contexts and specialized uses.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 700 A and B*

**SPANISH 703 (4 Points)**  
**Iberian Utopias and Dystopias 1200–1600**

A comparative study of the development of utopian and dystopian models of society in works from Mediaeval and Golden Age Iberia and Early-Colonial Latin America. Special attention is paid to epic, chivalric, humanist, picaresque, colonialist and missionary texts.

**SPANISH 708 (4 Points)**  
**Spanish Cultural Critics**

A study of the role of major Spanish intellectuals and writers and their concern with Spanish cultural and political regeneration.

**SPANISH 709 (4 Points)**  
**Spanish Novel**

A study of the Spanish twentieth century novel, with

particular emphasis on the post-Franco era and recent narrative trends.

**SPANISH 710** (4 Points)  
**Spanish Poetry**

A study of Spanish poetry from the 1927 Generation to the dissident poets of post-Civil War Spain and some of the work of Spain's leading younger women poets.

**SPANISH 711** (4 Points)  
**Spanish Theatre**

A study of works by both male and female dramatists, paying special attention to the sociopolitical contexts in which their texts are embedded.

**SPANISH 712** (4 Points)  
**Latin American Novel**

A study of the works of some of Latin America's leading contemporary authors, with particular reference to narrative techniques and autobiographical narrative.

**SPANISH 713** (4 Points)  
**Latin American Poetry**

A survey of the poetic texts of some of the best known Latin American writers. The focus is on how they deconstruct the official history in order to construct another America and other realities with their new imagery.

**SPANISH 714** (4 Points)  
**Latin American Theatre**

A study of some outstanding works of Latin American theatre.

**SPANISH 717** (2 Points)  
**Research Techniques in Language/Literature**

Designed to give students intending to complete an MA thesis a thorough grounding in a wide range of research techniques, bibliographical and other resources, thesis planning and familiarization with Hispanic journals.

**SPANISH 718** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic in Spanish Literature**

**SPANISH 719** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic in Latin American Literature**

**SPANISH 722** (4 Points)  
**Hispanic Women Writers**

A study of novelists, poets and dramatists, covering a variety of cultural and historical contexts.

**SPANISH 723** (4 Points)  
**Advanced Spanish Translation Practice**

Practical skills in translating from and into Spanish in fields most commonly required in New Zealand.  
*Restriction: SPANISH 309*

**SPANISH 724** (4 Points)  
**A Linguistic Topic**

**SPANISH 725** (4 Points)  
**Making Modern Spain, 1840–1939: Seduction, Nation and Revolution**

The making of modern Spain charts a period in which gender, class and ideological upheavals intersect with enquiry and debate as to what constitutes the Spanish nation. An overview of key moments of Spanish cultural politics from high Romanticism through to the end of the Spanish Civil

War, examining the connections between seduction, both personal and intellectual, and social revolutions. There is a special advanced seminar weekly for graduate students in addition to lectures.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 300*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 318*

**SPANISH 726** (4 Points)  
**Advanced Literary Translation**

Practice of advanced literary translation from Spanish into English. Practical exercises will be supplemented by wide discussion of related issues and a special literary translation project.

**SPANISH 727** (4 Points)  
**Colonizing the Americas**

Explores the development of the notion of colonialism following the arrival of Columbus in the Americas. It will concentrate on the apprehension of cultural difference and the debates surrounding the status of Amerindians, as reflected in the literatures and cultural discourses of the time.

**SPANISH 728** (4 Points)  
**Research Essays**

Four essays, to be submitted during the academic year, within a field, genre or period of literature, or a branch of linguistics. Students who have a particular field in mind should approach the graduate studies adviser in the Department to discuss the availability of this course. This course is particularly recommended to students who are not writing a dissertation or a thesis.

**SPANISH 729** (4 Points)  
**Latin American Icons: Political Economy of Otherness**

The ways in which Latin America as a place and a people has served as a site of otherness and exoticism providing economic and symbolic capital for the consumption and pleasure of colonial, neo-colonial, and neo-liberal powers. Latin American cultural studies texts offer students a way to read against the grain established by this process. There is a special advanced seminar weekly for graduate students in addition to lectures.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 300 or 311 or 313 or HISTORY 310 or POLITICS 332*

*Restriction: SPANISH 306*

**SPANISH 730** (4 Points)  
**Iberian Expansion History/Story**

Cultural-literary interpretations of Iberian expansion during the Reconquest from the Moors, colonizing of the Mediterranean and Atlantic, and Conquest of America. Special attention is paid to various historiographic genres and critiques of colonialist discourse. There is a special advanced seminar weekly for graduate students in addition to lectures.

**SPANISH 731** (4 Points)  
**Modern Hispanic Historical Fiction**

A study of the literary development and ideological function of historical fiction in modern Spain and Spanish America. Special attention is paid to issues of narrative, propaganda and reception in relation to cultural-historical developments.

**SPANISH 733** (4 Points)  
**Postmodernism and Postcolonialism in Latin America**

The aim of this course is dual: first, to inform students of a broad range of theories in the areas of literature, linguistics, architecture, epistemology,

economic history, translation and mass-media studies, all under the heading of postmodernism or postmodernity; and second, to study how certain fictive texts from Spanish America establish a creative tension with the postmodernist discourse, both demonstrating its utility as a tool of analysis and signalling its internal lacunae and the limits of its validity.

**SPANISH 734** (4 Points)

**Special Topic: Culture of the Baroque and the Golden Age**

An introduction to the main intellectual and philosophical currents of Golden Age literature, covering drama, novel and poetry.

**SPANISH 735** (4 Points)

**Special Topic: Literature and its Others**

Analysis of the institution of literature and those forms of cultural expression that challenge its authority as central to social formation, including testimonials, diaries, pulp fiction, *fotonovelas*, *telenovelas*, film, and other popular genres. Texts and tutorials are in Spanish.

**SPANISH 750** (2 Points)

**SPANISH 750A** (1 Point)

**SPANISH 750B** (1 Point)

**Special Studies**

Supervised research on a topic or topics approved by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 750 A and B, or SPANISH 750

**SPANISH 792A** (3 Points)

**SPANISH 792B** (3 Points)

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 792 A and B

**SPANISH 794A** (5 Points)

**SPANISH 794B** (5 Points)

**Thesis 2**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 794 A and B

**SPANISH 796A** (7 Points)

**SPANISH 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis 1**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 796 A and B

**SPANISH 797A** (7 Points)

**SPANISH 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 797 A and B

---

## Theatre Studies

---

### Stage I

**THEATRE 101** (2 Points)

**Theatre Studies I: New Zealand Theatre**

Drawing on a range of texts and performances, this course will study drama and theatre of different social and cultural contexts and styles. It will include other performance areas such as dance and music where the dramatic and theatrical context is significant. The theoretical issues to be addressed will include: representation and signification, audience reception, colonialism and post-

colonialism, and intertextual, interdisciplinary and intercultural questions.

### Stage II

**THEATRE 202A** (1 Point)

**THEATRE 202B** (1 Point)

**Theatre History and Practice**

Surveys particular periods in Western theatre history: ancient Greece and Rome; medieval theatre; Italian Renaissance comedy; and, in the modern period (from the late nineteenth century), German, French and Italian drama. Prescribed plays are studied with reference to historical conditions and conventions of performance, and classes involve practical work on the texts.

*Prerequisite: 8 points passed and English Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: THEATRE 203*

*Restriction: THEATRE 201*

To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 202 A and B

**THEATRE 203A** (1 Point)

**THEATRE 203B** (1 Point)

**Performance: Production and Appreciation**

Students will participate in both a substantial workshop project, which is connected with an aspect of the work studied in THEATRE 202, and smaller performance exercises, which may include other theatrical projects on campus. There will be a component on performance criticism.

*Prerequisite: 8 points passed and English Departmental approval required.*

*Corequisite: THEATRE 202*

*Restriction: THEATRE 201*

To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 203 A and B

---

### Stage III

**THEATRE 301** (2 Points)

**Theatre Studies 3: Topics and Themes**

Building on the principles of the Stage II Theatre courses (student involvement in practical work in the theatre), the course will focus more narrowly on topics of theatrical practice and dramatic representation. Two to three topics will be explored. They could include: Chekhov, Stanislavsky and Naturalism; new versions of old plays; political theatre; street theatre or others. Classes involve theatrical workshops and collaborative projects.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II and English Departmental approval required*

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

**THEATRE 701** (2 Points)

**Directed Study in Theatre**

A supervised study of some approved area in drama and theatre studies.

**THEATRE 710A** (2 Points)

**THEATRE 710B** (2 Points)

**Studio: Special Topic in Practical Theatre**

Students may undertake a supervised practical project in theatre of a limited scale, either as an individual or in a small group.

To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 710 A and B

**THEATRE 720A** (2 Points)  
**THEATRE 720B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Theatre**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 720 A and B

**THEATRE 721** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Theatre**

**THEATRE 722** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Theatre**

**THEATRE 770A** (4 Points)  
**THEATRE 770B** (4 Points)  
**Studio/Project in Theatre**  
 Substantial individual and group project(s), including some public presentation of project work.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 770 A and B

**THEATRE 791A** (2 Points)  
**THEATRE 791B** (2 Points)  
**Dissertation in Theatre**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 791 A and B

**THEATRE 793A** (4 Points)  
**THEATRE 793B** (4 Points)  
**Dissertation in Theatre**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 793 A and B

---

## Tongan

### Stage I

**TONGAN 101** (2 Points)  
**Tongan Acquisition 1**  
 Seeks to develop initial fluency in Tongan. The content will constitute listening, speaking, reading and writing lessons in which students will be exposed intensively to Tongan conversations, stories, speeches and other kinds of input. Emphasis will be on conversational Tongan.

**TONGAN 102** (2 Points)  
**Tongan Structure 1**  
 Introduces the structure of the Tongan language. Topics include Tongan phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics. No prior knowledge of Tongan or linguistics is required. The course is designed to show something of the structure of the Tongan language and the way it 'works'.

**TONGAN 103** (2 Points)  
**Tongan Literature 1**  
 Introduces students to the range of genres that can be classified as 'literature'. These include: *talatupu'a* (myths and legends); *fananga* (folk tales); *hiva* (songs); *maau* including *ta'anga* and *laulau* (poetry including dance poetry and chants); *lea Tonga* (proverbs and sayings); historical accounts; and speeches. These genres will be analysed with a view to describing their purposes, history and context, cultural significance, the devices employed and appreciation.

### Stage II

**TONGAN 201** (2 Points)  
**Tongan Acquisition 2**  
 Seeks to extend language fluency developed in

**TONGAN 101**, and will emphasis reading and writing skills. Will go beyond conversational Tongan to more sophisticated productive skills such as narrating myths and legends, and describing geographical features of Tonga and aspects of Tongan culture.  
*Prerequisite: TONGAN 101*

**TONGAN 202** (2 Points)  
**Tongan Structure 2**  
 Extends the knowledge and skills developed in TONGAN 102. There will be more detailed treatment of aspects of the language such as possession, parts of speech, and tense and aspect.  
*Prerequisite: TONGAN 102*

---

### Stage III

**TONGAN 301** (2 Points)  
**Tongan Acquisition 3**  
 Extends the level of fluency and literacy developed in TONGAN 201. The emphasis on reading and writing will be maintained, but the language taught will be extended to social "levels" or varieties of Tongan other than the "neutral" level. These levels include chiefly and regal vocabulary.  
*Prerequisite: TONGAN 201*

**TONGAN 302** (2 Points)  
**Tongan Structure 3**  
 Concentrates on the in-depth analysis of selected topics such as: possession, parts of speech, tense and aspect, transitivity and stress. Emphasis will be on critical evaluation of existing works and independent interpretations of these aspects of Tongan linguistics.  
*Prerequisite: TONGAN 202*

---

## Translation Studies

### Diploma Courses

**TRANSLAT 601** (2 Points)  
**Theory, Ethics and Techniques of Interpreting**  
 This course develops an understanding of the theory and ethics of interpreting and how they impact on the interpreting process and the role of the interpreter. Techniques studied and perfected will include principles of public speaking and the Geneva notation system.  
*Restriction: TRANSLAT 706*

**TRANSLAT 602** (2 Points)  
**Contextual Studies in Law, Medicine and Business**  
 This course introduces future interpreters to certain professional areas in which they will be working and extends their knowledge and understanding of the terminologies of these areas.  
*Restriction: TRANSLAT 704*

**TRANSLAT 605** (4 Points)  
**Advanced Interpreting Practice**  
 Students will be taken from basic interpreting skills, in the context of triads, and short segments of discourse through to unilateral consecutive interpreting in legal, medical and business settings of medium to long stretches of discourse.

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

*Note: The following courses in Translation Studies may also be taken, with the permission of the relevant Head(s) of Department, as part of an MA in a language major.*

**TRANSLAT 702 (2 Points)****Theory and Methodology of Translation**

A critical analysis of different theoretical models of translation will engender a greater understanding of the real nature of translation and the many phases of the translator's task. Methods will be established for the translation of a wide range of text categories.

*Restriction: 330.701*

**TRANSLAT 703 (2 Points)****Issues in Translation**

Examines views of translation that encompass history, culture, politics and gender. The basic premise upon which the analysis and evaluation of views is based is that the act and the process of translation involve much more than language.

*Restriction: 330.701*

**TRANSLAT 704 (2 Points)****Contextual Studies in Law, Medicine and Business**

Introduces future translators to three professional areas in which they will be working and extends their knowledge and understanding of the terminologies of these areas.

*Restriction: TRANSLAT 602*

**TRANSLAT 706 (2 Points)****Theory, Ethics and Techniques of Interpreting**

The theory and ethics of interpreting and their impact on the interpreting process and the role of the interpreter. Techniques studied and perfected. Will include principles of public speaking and the Geneva notation system.

*Restriction: TRANSLAT 601*

**TRANSLAT 707 (4 Points)****Advanced (Language) Translation Practice**

The focus is on further developing competence in translation. Students will translate a wide variety of professional texts. Emphasis is on longer texts, which may require special subject knowledge and terminology research.

**TRANSLAT 710 (2 Points)****Research Tools and Professional Issues**

Computing skills and electronic resources for translators. The impact of international and national legislation on the work of the translator, knowledge of the professional network and issues surrounding agency and freelance work.

**TRANSLAT 721 (2 Points)****Special Topic****TRANSLAT 722 (2 Points)****Special Topic: English Discourse for Translators**

English discourse from a linguistic viewpoint. Examines the relationship between choices about words, word order, grammatical forms and sentence types, and specific discourse functions, social and pragmatic functions and context.

---

**Women's Studies**

---

**Stage I****WOMEN 100 (2 Points)****Gender and the Culture of Everyday Life**

An introduction to feminist cultural studies that examines how gender is continually recreated in everyday life and unfolds within the specific sites and practices of ordinary experience (home, school,

street, workplace, leisure, lifestyle, fashion). Contemporary transformations in gender are related to larger ideological systems (race, colonialism, nationhood, capitalism).

*Restriction: Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 101 (2 Points)****Gender and Representation**

Considers a range of artistic and popular cultural representations, including fashion, talk shows, film and dance performance, and asks what these might tell us about contemporary understandings of gender and sexuality.

*Restriction: Certificate in Women's Studies*

---

**Stage II****WOMEN 200 (2 Points)****Introduction to Feminist Theory**

Examines how contemporary feminists theorize sexuality, gender, knowledge and power.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points or Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 201 (2 Points)****Sites of Performance**

From political campaigns to the avant-garde, the drama of the courtroom to the culture of eating and drinking, the contemporary world is fuelled by the impulse of performance. This course examines how performance destabilizes received notions of sexual, social and national identity and leads to the proliferation of new meanings.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points or Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 202 (2 Points)****Gender and Visual Culture in the Pacific**

Jointly taught by Women's Studies and Art History. Examines issues of gender and migration in the contemporary Pacific. Considers the formation of Pacific Islands diaspora as well as the ways that visual culture, including popular film, media and a range of art forms, have developed and impacted on Pacific Islands cultures.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points in BA or Certificate in Women's Studies, or 4 points at Stage I in Museums and Cultural Heritage*

**WOMEN 203 (2 Points)****Sexuality and Space**

Examines the formation of sexual identity across the twentieth-century in relation to key spatial tropes: the clinic, the city, the street, the bar, the beat, the apartment, the bedroom, and so forth. Refers to film texts, both documentary and narrative, as they disclose the operation of sexual closets and logics of corruption, contagion and initiation.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I or Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 204 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Bodies on the Brink**

How the body is technologically produced by means of older classifications – sex, race sexuality and gender – that structure modern science's futuristic outlook. Technology is interpreted in its broadest sense to include forms of body alteration from fashion to cyber-activity, the work of drugs, cosmetic surgery and genetic engineering.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points or Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 205 (2 Points)****Women's Texts of Experience**

Explores a variety of ways in which women create texts or stories based on the experiences of their lives and how these 'stories' help them reflect upon that experience. Students will study a range of poetry, fiction, theoretical writing, film, visual art, photography and music from different cultures. Also provides the opportunity to create and workshop a text of their own.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in BA Courses or Certificate in Women's Studies

**WOMEN 206 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points in BA courses or Certificate in Women's Studies

**Stage III****WOMEN 300 (2 Points)****Body Politics**

The phrase 'the body politic' is used to describe society as a body, but this metaphor also represents 'the body' as political, as shaped by cultural agendas. This course addresses the politics of embodiment, at how we experience our bodies through the lens of culture even as culture is shaped by the ways in which individuals manage their bodily experience. Film/TV, artistic and written texts are used to explore a range of bodily practices and representation (including hysteria, body-building, cyborg fictions, and dance) and the questions they might be seen to ask of cultural norms.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II

**WOMEN 301 (2 Points)****Feminist Research and Scholarship**

Issues raised by feminists about the research process. The course will address questions of feminist research ethics, theories of knowledge creation, research processes and methodologies, and the interactions of the researcher and the researched.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II

**WOMEN 303 (2 Points)****Gender and Colonialism in the Pacific**

Explores the transformation of gender relations in the Pacific since the inception of European contact and the colonial process. Emphasis will be on the gendered nature of colonialism, both in terms of how it framed the process, as well as how the experience was lived.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II

**WOMEN 304 (2 Points)****Femme Fatale: Rethinking Film Noir**

Considers the femme fatale and masculine detective figures found in classic film noir of the 1940s as well as on cinematic and theoretical revisitings of noir from the 1970s onwards. Examines noir form and style; the voice-over, narration and desire; the homosexual subtext; genre and the Hollywood production system; and the place of noir in classic film theory.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II

**WOMEN 305 (2 Points)****East Meets West: Migration, Media and Identity in Asia Pacific**

New, complex configurations of identity both produce and are produced through a media culture that shapes as it draws on individual experience.

Examines the interactions between media and gendered migrant identities. Asian and Pacific diasporas will be a particular focus, but material from the Black Atlantic as well as other ethnicities will be included.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II

**WOMEN 306 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Fashion, Identity and Globalization**

The increased role and visibility of fashion, both as an industry and as a means of signifying and constituting (gendered) identities. The course is organized around four themes: systems of meaning, globalization, sexual division of labour, and making identities, and explores the ways in which fashion (and anti-fashion) operates through global systems and shapes everyday lives.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in BA courses

**WOMEN 307 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II

**Honours and Master's Courses****WOMEN 700A (2 Points)****WOMEN 700B (2 Points)****Contemporary Debates in Feminist Theory**

Current debates on feminist theory are explored in this course. The focus will be on the politics of difference, including how feminist theory has dealt with notions of ethnicity, class and gender, identity politics, nationalism and issues of post-coloniality.

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 700 A and B*

**WOMEN 701 (4 Points)****Research Design in Women's Studies**

Debates on feminist research methodologies provide a theoretical framework for considering issues central to the design of a research project, including problem formation, research ethics and accountability, literature review, development of appropriate methods, analysis and report writing. Students will formulate and pilot an individual or joint research project.

**WOMEN 702 (4 Points)****WOMEN 702A (2 Points)****WOMEN 702B (2 Points)****Special Study**

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 702 A and B, or WOMEN 702*

**WOMEN 703 (4 Points)****WOMEN 703A (2 Points)****WOMEN 703B (2 Points)****Performing Culture**

Highlights the performative impulse in contemporary life and considers how performance features as a mode of sociality through which individuals and society are (re)constituted. Considers texts of performance, both artistic and everyday, drawing on new developments in the fields of performance, gender, and cultural theory to ask what functions performance, mundane or theatrical, serves for us and how we consolidate ourselves as social performers.

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 703 A and B, or WOMEN 703*

<b>WOMEN 704</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>WOMEN 704A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>WOMEN 704B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Sexual Narratives</b>	
Investigates the interconnection between sexuality, cinema and space using cultural, narrative and film theory. The course reads a series of classical Hollywood and contemporary film texts for their inscription of narratives of sexual origin and sexual outcome, corruption and initiation, contagion and panic, all of which fail to secure any final distinction between heterosexuality and homosexuality, its demonized other.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 704 A and B, or WOMEN 704</i>	
<b>WOMEN 705</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>WOMEN 706</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>WOMEN 785A</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>WOMEN 785B</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>Honours Dissertation</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 785 A and B</i>	
<b>WOMEN 792</b>	<b>(6 Points)</b>
<b>WOMEN 792A</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>WOMEN 792B</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>Dissertation</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 792 A and B, or WOMEN 792</i>	
<b>WOMEN 796A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>WOMEN 796B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Thesis</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 796 A and B</i>	
<b>WOMEN 797A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>WOMEN 797B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Research Portfolio</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 797 A and B</i>	

## Faculty of Business and Economics

### Accounting

#### Stage I

<b>ACCTG 101</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Accounting Information</b>	
Introduction to the role of accounting information and systems for monitoring organizational activities, and providing information to support decision-making and control. An introduction to general purpose financial statements and the interpretation of accounting information.	
<i>Restriction: 600.121, 600.171, ACCTG 191</i>	
<b>ACCTG 102</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Accounting Concepts</b>	
Basic principles and concepts of accounting that underlie the production of information for internal and external reporting. This course provides the technical platform for second year courses in	

financial and management accounting, finance, and accounting information systems.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 101 or 191*

*Restriction: 600.111, ACCTG 192*

**ACCTG 191** **(2 Points)**

#### Accounting Information for Decision-making

Introduction to the role of accounting information and systems for monitoring organizational activities, and providing information to support decision-making and control. An introduction to general-purpose financial statements and the interpretation of accounting information. Analysis of funding sources and investment decisions and tools.

*Restriction: 600.121, 600.171, ACCTG 101*

**ACCTG 192** **(2 Points)**

#### Accounting Information Support

Basic principles and concepts of accounting which underlie the production of information for internal and external reporting. This course provides the technical platform for second year courses in financial management and accounting. The emphasis is on designing recording systems that will generate information useful in the decision-making process and includes factoring institutional and legal obligations into the design process.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 101 or 191*

*Restriction: 600.111, ACCTG 102*

#### Stage II

**ACCTG 211** **(2 Points)**

#### Financial Accounting

The study of financial accounting principles within New Zealand, to enable students to: (i) understand how they are developed and influenced; (ii) understand and apply New Zealand Financial Reporting Standards; (iii) report the results of complex business structures involving multiple entities and segments. Completing students will understand the role financial statements play in investment, analysis and contracting decisions, providing a base for advanced study and supporting other areas, particularly finance.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**ACCTG 212** **(2 Points)**

#### Accounting for Special Entities

Costing, planning, decision-making and control, and related contemporary issues for trusts, farms and other special entities.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**ACCTG 221** **(2 Points)**

#### Cost and Management Accounting

Budgets and standards, costing systems, cost information for decision-making and control, performance appraisal, and contemporary related issues.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**ACCTG 222** **(2 Points)**

#### Accounting Information Systems

Encompasses the development and distribution of economic information about organizations for internal and external decision-making. Major themes include: objectives and procedures of internal control, the database approach to data management, data modelling, typical business documents and reports and proper system documentation through data flow diagrams and flowcharts.

*Prerequisite: 636.101 or INFOSYS 110, and ACCTG 102 or 192*

**ACCTG 291 (2 Points)****Financial Decision Support**

Accounting Information is compiled, analysed and interpreted in order to assist internal decision-making. This comprises analysing cost behaviour, the costing of products and services, analysing information for short-term decision making and examining costing systems. Information technology is integrated where computer techniques are considered appropriate analytical tools.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 191, 192 and INFOMGMT 191, 192 and ACCTG 191,192*

*Restriction: ACCTG 221*

**ACCTG 292 (2 Points)**  
**Financial Reporting**

Provides an overview of the New Zealand external reporting environment. A number of accounting standards are studied in order to gain an understanding of their content and practical applications. The emphasis is on being able to prepare individual and group general purpose financial reports for external users.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 191, 192 and INFOMGMT 191, 192 and ACCTG 191,192*

*Restriction: ACCTG 211*

**Stage III****ACCTG 311 (2 Points)**  
**Financial Accounting**

Explanatory and prescriptive theories of accounting provide the context for an examination of the determinants of financial reporting practice in New Zealand with special reference to accounting for pensions, foreign currency, deferred tax and financial instruments. Issues in international accounting and professional ethics are also addressed.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 211*

**ACCTG 312 (2 Points)**  
**Auditing**

An introduction to the audit of financial statements. The objective of an audit is to add credibility to the information contained in the financial statements. Emphasizes the auditor's decision-making process in determining the nature and amount of evidence necessary to support management's assertions. The end result of a financial statement audit is a report that expresses the auditor's opinion on the fair presentation of the client's financial statements.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 211 and 222*

**ACCTG 321 (2 Points)**  
**Strategic Management Accounting**

A study of the design of revenue and cost management systems to facilitate strategic decisions. This includes activity-based costing and activity-based management. The learning environment is student-centred with the seminar leader's role being that of facilitator rather than lecturer. Students work not only as individuals but also in teams. The learning environment is a combination of lectures, case studies and related readings.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 221*

**ACCTG 323 (2 Points)**  
**Performance Measurement and Management Control**

The design of planning and control systems in organizations. This includes issues from control

theory, strategic management and information systems, with an emphasis on performance evaluation, measurement and analysis. Pertinent areas from productivity theory and Data Envelopment Analysis support the performance analysis. The learning environment is a combination of lectures, case studies and related readings.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 221*

**ACCTG 331 (2 Points)**  
**Revenue and Cost Management**

Revenue management concepts and techniques and their support by cost management systems are studied with particular reference to service organizations. The range of services encompasses both private and public sector organizations. Components include: yield management, pricing, linear programming, project management, evaluation principles and methodologies.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 221*

**ACCTG 371 (2 Points)**  
**Financial Statement Analysis**

How is financial statement information used to evaluate a firm's performance, risk and value? An opportunity to examine this question and to gain experience in evaluating performance, assessing risk and estimating value.

Prerequisites are important since this applied course integrates students with prior accounting and finance knowledge.

*Prerequisite: FINANCE 251 or 261, and ACCTG 211*

**ACCTG 381 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic****ACCTG 382 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic****ACCTG 391 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Financial Decision Support**

Building on ACCTG 291, but more conceptual in approach, planning and control, short and long term decision making, performance appraisal, financial analysis and strategy are studied. Some instruction is through the medium of case studies. Information technology is integrated where computer techniques are considered appropriate analytical tools.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 291*

**ACCTG 392 (2 Points)**  
**Financial Reporting and Analysis**

Accounting theories are examined in general and as determinants of financial reporting in New Zealand. Particular attention is paid to the accounting treatment of foreign currency, deferred taxation, financial instruments and other pertinent topics.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 292*

*Restriction: ACCTG 311*

**ACCTG 393 (2 Points)**  
**Project in Accounting**

Applied Accounting project that requires the integration of skills and theory in business and information management. This project builds directly on accounting courses previously completed in the BBIM programme, consolidating existing skills and knowledge and enhancing understanding of how theory is applied in practice.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 291 and 292, and INFOMGMT 294, and MGMT 291*

*Restriction: MKTG 393 and MGMT 393*

**ACCTG 394 (2 Points)****Auditing**

The audit can be a cost-effective way of adding credibility to accounting and other information. The motivation for legislators to require an audit of certain information is examined. The process an auditor will take in collecting sufficient evidence to make an assertion about the information being audited is emphasized. The various forms of audit expression are also examined.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 292 and INFOMGMT 294*

**Honours and Master's Courses****ACCTG 701 (2 Points)****Research Methods**

The theory and application of modern research methods in accounting. The content will include the philosophy, process and design of scientific research. Prior knowledge of basic statistical techniques is assumed.

*Restriction: FINANCE 701*

**ACCTG 702A (1 Point)****ACCTG 702B (1 Point)****Information, Contracting and Governance**

An introduction to the economic literatures relating to property rights, transaction cost economics, and agency theory. Application of these notions to the way in which organizations are structured. Identification of why some transactions are internalized and some are undertaken through markets. The application of these ideas to financial and managerial accounting. The use of these notions in the New Zealand reform process.

*Restriction: FINANCE 702 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ACCTG 702 A and B*

**ACCTG 711 (2 Points)****Financial Accounting Research**

A study of the contracting-cost theories of accounting policy choice and the related empirical literature. It focuses on agency and efficient contracting explanations for accounting choice. In particular, the course explores the role of accounting in contracts between parties to the firm (eg, manager, shareholders, debtholders, customers, etc). The political process is also analysed to determine the impact on accounting policy choice. Incentives for managers to manipulate earnings under various economic settings are examined and the implications of this behaviour for accounting policy makers are analysed.

**ACCTG 712 (2 Points)****International Accounting**

An examination of the international dimensions of accounting in an environment that is increasingly global. Examines the international influences on current New Zealand practice and the diversity in accounting practices among New Zealand's economic partners. International harmonization issues are studied as well as issues generated by foreign trade, eg, accounting for foreign currency transactions and transnational business organizations.

**ACCTG 713 (2 Points)****Accounting History**

Issues in the methodology of historical research, and substantive topics including: ancient and medieval

accounting systems, charge and discharge accounting, the invention of double entry, book-keeping, cost and management accounting, corporate financial reporting, auditing, accounting standard setting, and a topic chosen from New Zealand's accounting history.

**ACCTG 714 (2 Points)****Contemporary Auditing Research**

An examination of the theoretical and empirical literature relating to the demand and supply of auditing, theoretical support for auditing activity, measures of audit quality and related topics.

**ACCTG 721 (2 Points)****Research in Management Control**

Provides an insight into the theoretical and empirical literature relating to management planning and control in private and public sector organizations. Explores the relationship between strategy, organization design, performance measurement and evaluation, application of productivity analysis and Data Envelopment Analysis.

**ACCTG 722 (2 Points)****Research in Revenue and Cost Management**

An examination of revenue and cost management arising from changes in competitive environments. Includes recent research on the design of revenue and cost management systems including developments such as theory of constraints in manufacturing, service and public sector organizations.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 221 or equivalent*

**ACCTG 731 (2 Points)****Public Sector Accounting**

Examines developments in financial accounting reporting in public sector organizations. Particular attention is given to public sector organizations in New Zealand. This course builds on knowledge gained in ACCTG 211.

**ACCTG 732 (2 Points)****Public Sector Management and Control**

Critically reviews management accounting's decision-support role in public sector policy and service delivery. Theme-based seminars will focus on contemporary issues including health, transportation and local government.

**ACCTG 771 (2 Points)****Accounting Information and Capital Markets**

The study of issues in evaluating accounting information and the use of accounting information by investors and analysts. This includes the examination of the empirical relationship between accounting earnings and share prices and the relationship between financial statement analysis and market efficiency. Perceived market failures will be analysed.

**ACCTG 776 (2 Points)****Taxation Impact on Financial Reporting**

The interaction between accounting and taxation concepts of income. Influence of taxation upon business and investment decisions, and upon business structure and wealth distribution. Consequences of these decisions as they affect the financial statements. The effect of imputation upon the Capital Asset Pricing model. Mathematical analysis of the financial accrual rules.

ACCTG 780 Special Topic	(2 Points)	The impact and management of international dimensions of economic risk.
ACCTG 781 Special Topic	(2 Points)	<b>BUSADMIN 705</b> (2 Points) <b>Business Law</b> Examines the legal environment of business, contract law, legal rules governing the management of businesses, directorships and partnerships, selected aspects of the Commerce Act and the Fair Trading Act.
ACCTG 782 Special Topic	(2 Points)	
ACCTG 783 Special Topic	(2 Points)	
ACCTG 784 Directed Readings in Literature Topics	(2 Points)	<b>BUSADMIN 710</b> (2 Points) <b>Economics</b> Principles and frameworks of economic thought to inform managerial decision-making. Monetary and fiscal policy, interpretation of the economic press, and the impact of globalization of trade are considered.
ACCTG 785 Directed Readings in Literature Topics	(2 Points)	
ACCTG 786 Special Topic in Taxation Accounting To be prescribed by the Head of Department of Accounting and Finance.	(2 Points)	<i>Restriction: 647.703</i>
ACCTG 789 Research Essay for BCom(Hons)	(2 Points)	<b>BUSADMIN 711</b> (2 Points) <b>e-Commerce Strategies</b> Strategic issues of information systems including their management and planning, their impact on the organization and its culture and their effects on an organization's competitive environment. An examination of the use of information technology within the organization and how it has become of competitive importance. An exploration of the strategic planning process and discussion of the importance of relating it to the business strategy. The impact of technology-driven change on people and its broader effects on society as a whole.
ACCTG 792A ACCTG 792B Dissertation in Taxation Accounting (For the MTaxS.) To complete this course students must enrol in ACCTG 792 A and B	(4.5 Points) (4.5 Points)	<i>Restriction: 603.704</i>
ACCTG 796A ACCTG 796B Thesis for MCom To complete this course students must enrol in ACCTG 796 A and B	(7 Points) (7 Points)	

---

## Business Administration

---

### Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses

<b>BUSADMIN 701</b> <b>Accounting and Finance</b> The interpretation of information contained in accounts prepared for use within the firm and for parties external to the firm. Understanding the sources of information contained in accounting statements. An overview of modern day capital budgeting techniques, the cost of capital, capital structures and their application to the business environment. Acceptance into this course is subject to sitting and passing a quantitative test to demonstrate competence in basic mathematics and algebra.	(2 Points)	
<b>BUSADMIN 702</b> <b>Accounting for Decision-makers</b> Financial analysis and management in decision contexts. Strategic analysis, evaluation and use of accounting information. <b>Note:</b> This course can be used to complete the requirements for the Graduate Diploma in Business Administration but not as an entry course to the Master's programmes. Students intending to further their studies towards an MBA should ensure they complete BUSADMIN 701.	(2 Points)	
<b>BUSADMIN 704</b> <b>International Economics</b> Sources of a country's comparative and competitive advantage in international trade. Trade policy. Technology transfer. Exchange rate determination.	(2 Points)	
		<b>BUSADMIN 712</b> (2 Points) <b>Leadership in Organizations</b> The role of leadership in implementing and sustaining quality management in an organization. Topics include: leadership and management, creating shared vision, learning teams, empowerment and culture, change management and learning organizations. <i>Restriction: 609.712</i>
		<b>BUSADMIN 713</b> (2 Points) <b>Managing People</b> The nature of employment in the contemporary economy and society. Matching the goals of management with the needs and aspirations of employees. Functions of human resource management including: work organization, recruitment and selection, employment negotiation and consultation, training and development, and pay and promotion. Performance management and the analysis of major problems including skill deficits and dysfunctional levels of labour turnover. <i>Restriction: 607.756</i>
		<b>BUSADMIN 715</b> (2 Points) <b>Special Topic</b>
		<b>BUSADMIN 716</b> (2 Points) <b>Special Topic</b>
		<b>BUSADMIN 717</b> (2 Points) <b>Special Topic</b>
		<b>BUSADMIN 724</b> (2 Points) <b>Financial Analysis</b> Financial analysis and management in decision contexts. Strategic analysis, evaluation and use of accounting information.

**BUSADMIN 726 (2 Points)****Business Ethics**

Ethical questions for the firm. The nature and role of core beliefs and social values. Ethics and the multinational corporation. Regulation and ethical behaviour. Ethics and social responsibility. Professional ethics. Case studies.

**BUSADMIN 728 (2 Points)****Public Policy and the Corporation**

Aspects of public policy and their impact on business. Topics for consideration include: ownership of government trading organizations, superannuation, accident compensation, protection, 'user pays', legislative design and alternatives that might be considered.

**BUSADMIN 729 (4 Points)****Integrating Strategy**

Advanced cross-functional analysis of the issues and systems that shape managerial thinking in a global economy, with a focus on the trends and critical issues in organizations and industries. Utilizes the focus of strategy and competition to integrate issues of social responsibility, finance, planning and change management.

*Restriction: 647.723*

**BUSADMIN 730 (4 Points)****Managing Organizational Change**

An overview of the major changes that have affected organizations during the 1980s and 1990s. Individual values, the corporation and the State. Organization design, incentives and strategy in a changing environment. New dimensions to human resource management. The impact of information technology. Changes in the law and their impact on management. Looking ahead.

**BUSADMIN 731 (2 Points)****International Business Management**

Strategic management in international business. Formulation and execution of strategies, including e-commerce strategies in a multinational environment. Organizational challenges in global operations; strategies for entering markets; industry and competitor analysis.

**BUSADMIN 732 (2 Points)****Strategic Human Resource Management**

Critical dimensions of human resource management from the perspective of general managers. The role of human resource strategy as a necessary condition of firm viability and a possible source of sustained advantage.

**BUSADMIN 733 (2 Points)****Creativity and Management**

Fundamental processes that drive organizational learning and creativity. Leadership and teamwork. The role of leaders and organization members in new venture decision-making processes. Case studies which examine entrepreneurial successful management. The identification, development and commercialization of innovation. New markets and new technology.

**BUSADMIN 734 (2 Points)****Quality Management**

The tools, techniques, and frameworks necessary to take action to implement operations improvement. Information systems for coordinating operations.

Managing supply chains. Managing product development.

**BUSADMIN 750 (2 Points)****Executive-in-residence Course**

Advanced analysis of issues that shape managerial thinking and leadership in a global economy, with a focus on current issues facing New Zealand organizations and industries.

**BUSADMIN 751 (2 Points)****Decision, Risk and Value**

Examines the sourcing of competitive advantage by evaluating strategies and investments, and quantifying and understanding risk associated with management decisions. This course shows managers how to develop and use computer-based models to analyse business situations and improve decision-making.

**BUSADMIN 752 (2 Points)****Knowledge Management**

Examines the importance of knowledge management and supporting technologies to current business practise. This course examines in detail the www and Intranets. In addition, it will review the generating, codifying and coordinating of knowledge in organizations, the internal market for knowledge, management in consulting and the practical limits to technologies.

**BUSADMIN 753 (2 Points)****Special Topic 1****BUSADMIN 754 (2 Points)****Special Topic 2****BUSADMIN 755 (2 Points)****Special Topic 3****BUSADMIN 756 (2 Points)****Special Topic 4****BUSADMIN 757 (2 Points)****Special Topic 5****BUSADMIN 758 (2 Points)****Special Topic 6**

---

**Commercial Law**

---

**Stage 1****COMLAW 101 (2 Points)****Law, Commerce and Government**

An introduction to the legal framework of business and government in New Zealand, including the principles of statutory interpretation and judicial reasoning, concepts of property and forms of legal liability relevant to business.

*Restriction: 610.103, COMLAW 191*

**COMLAW 191 (2 Points)****Legal Environment of Business**

An introduction to the legal environment in which businesses operate, including the rules governing commercial liability and obligation, with special emphasis on dealings involving intellectual property and valuable information.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 192*

**Stage II****COMLAW 201 (2 Points)****Commercial Contracts**

The general principles of the law of contract, including: the process of formation, contractual capacity, factors vitiating consent, consideration, privity of contract, contractual terms and the implication of terms, principles relating to the discharge of contracts, illegality and remedies for breach of contract.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 202 (2 Points)****Finance and Property Law**

An examination of the ways in which finance may be raised, the methods by which lenders are able to protect themselves and the concepts of property and ownership central to secured lending. Major topics include: the types of security available for both personal and real property, statutory provisions regulating the creation and dealing with property rights and the general principles of cheques and banking.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 203 (2 Points)****Company Law**

A detailed examination of the legal regulation of the corporate form in New Zealand, including: the concepts of separate legal entity and limited liability, the statutory and administrative requirements of the Companies Act 1993, how to incorporate a company, corporate capacity and the powers of companies, the rules relating to capital shares and finance, director's duties and potential liability, shareholder remedies, accounting records and auditing requirements for companies and the rules governing takeover activity.

*Prerequisite: 610.103 or COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 204 (2 Points)****Employment Law**

The legal principles governing the employment relationship. Topics include: bargaining, personal grievances, enforcement of employment contracts, as well as strikes and lockouts.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 205 (2 Points)****Law of Marketing**

An introduction to the law of marketing. Major topics include: intellectual property law as it relates to the marketing of goods and services, consumer protection legislation as it relates to the marketing of goods and services.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

*Restriction: COMLAW 208*

**COMLAW 207 (2 Points)****Cyberlaw**

An introduction to the legal rights, liabilities and restrictions affecting players operating in digital networked environments. Specific topics include: the enforcement of intellectual property rights and moral rights; privacy, the legal mechanisms used to control dealings in, and the structure of, digital communication industries; and the law as it affects databases and distance communication.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 208 (2 Points)****Law and Sport**

An examination of the law relating to sportspeople and the various activities that go to make up sport. Major topics include: the relationship between sports activities and law, the particular principles of law relevant to sport and the application of those principles, the policy goals behind sports legislation and the attitude of the courts.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

*Restriction: COMLAW 205*

**COMLAW 291 (2 Points)****Business Organizations**

A study of the legal rules governing different types of business structure with particular emphasis on the corporate form.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 191*

**COMLAW 292 (2 Points)****Commercial Transactions**

A detailed examination of the legal rules relating to contract, sales, property, trust, credit and security, as they affect management decision-making and tax planning, with special emphasis on electronic contracts and Internet transactions.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 191*

**Stage III****COMLAW 301 (2 Points)****Taxation**

An introduction to the Income Tax Act and the Goods and Services Tax Act. Specific topics include: the nature of income, taxation of common types of income, deduction of expenses, prohibition of various types of expenses, taxation of common types of entities, the imputation system, tax accounting issues (cash or accrual basis), provisional tax, PAYE system, tax returns, and the compliance and penalties regime and disputes procedure.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 202 or 203*

**COMLAW 302 (2 Points)****Privacy and Information Management Law**

An introduction to the legal principles relating to the holding and management of information, and to rights and duties with respect to official information. Major topics include: the scope and application of the privacy and official information statutes, exemptions, remedies for breach and enforcement.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 202 or 203 or 207*

**COMLAW 303 (2 Points)****Receiverships and Reconstructions**

A study of the causes and consequences of business failure including the consequences of bankruptcy, the law and practice relating to receiverships and liquidations, plus an overview of informal workouts and statutory schemes of arrangement.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 203 or 206*

**COMLAW 304 (2 Points)****Alternative Business Structures**

A comparative study of business structures with the emphasis on the differing legal consequences and relative merits of the structure. Structures examined include: franchises, joint ventures, unit trusts, sole traders, partnerships and special partnerships, unincorporated societies, and State Owned Enterprises.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 203*

**COMLAW 305 (2 Points)****Investment Law**

A detailed examination of the legal principles relevant to the raising of finance and investment. Topics include: securities regulation, overseas investment, the rules and functioning of the Stock Exchange, mergers and takeovers, and insider trading.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 202 or 203*

**COMLAW 307 (2 Points)**

**International Trade Law**

An introduction to the private law relationships which exist between buyers, sellers, insurers and bankers concerned with international trade. Major topics include: the sale of goods contract, the Vienna Convention, CIF and FOB contracts, marine insurance, the bill of lading, the Warsaw Convention and regional trade agreements such as CER.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201*

**COMLAW 308 (2 Points)**

**Banking Law**

Aspects of the law relating to banking transactions and practice in New Zealand. Major topics include: the nature of the role and the functions of the Reserve Bank, the banker-customer contract, legal aspects of bank accounts (eg, fund transfers, appropriations, attachment, combination, set-off, lien), safe custody and other non-account services, bank as trustee or fiduciaries, restitutionary recovery by and against banks (eg, mistaken payments), cheques and bills of exchange and lender liability.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 202 or LLB Part II*

**COMLAW 309 (2 Points)**

**Insurance and Superannuation Law**

A detailed examination of insurance and superannuation law. Major topics include: general principles of insurance (the contract of insurance, adjusting the rights of insurers and insured), specialized forms of insurance relevant to business (life insurance, marine and aviation insurance, liability and professional risk insurance). A general survey of the legal rules governing superannuation in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201*

**COMLAW 310 (2 Points)**

**Business Obligations**

An advanced study of a selected range of topics including: inter alia, doctrinal bases for the imposition of civil obligations, consequences of alternative taxonomies, the basis and content of the fiduciary obligations, the principle against unjust enrichment, economic torts, the nature and availability of remedies (particularly proprietary remedies).

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201*

**COMLAW 311 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Taxation**

An advanced study of income tax and Goods and Services Tax. Major topics include: dividends and imputation, corporate taxation, losses and grouping, partnerships, qualifying companies, trusts, financial accruals, alienation of income, international taxation and general anti-avoidance provisions.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 202 and 203 and 301, or LAW 429 and LLB Part II*

*Restriction: LAW 409*

**COMLAW 312 (2 Points)**

**International Travel Law**

An introduction to the legal liabilities and

restrictions imposed on players in the international travel market. Specific topics include: the legal structures and mechanisms that facilitate travel and tourism across national boundaries, the legal issues and problems faced by market principals and the various international treaties and conventions affecting international air travel.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 205*

**COMLAW 313 (2 Points)**

**e-Commerce and the Law**

The law relating to e-commerce and the Internet is constantly evolving in response to technological change. Current legal issues of importance including: the protection of ideas, information and identity (piracy, cybersquatting, domain names), consumer and commercial sales (domestic and international), the effect of digital technology on traditional forms of authentication and data storage (digital signatures, certification authorities), misleading statements and conduct on the Internet, electronic banking and payment mechanisms, computer crime and dispute resolution.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 202 or 205*

*Restriction: COMLAW 207*

**COMLAW 320 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Intellectual Property, Information and Ideas**

A study of the legal rules governing the protection and commercialization of ideas, information and innovation, and their application in particular business and scientific contexts. Topics include: legal protection of business reputations and the goodwill invested in brands; the patentability of biotechnology and software; the role of copyright in a technological society; theft and misuse of data and trade secrets; and the liability of Internet stakeholders.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191 or LAW 101 and 4 points at Stage II*

**COMLAW 321 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**COMLAW 391 (2 Points)**

**Principles of Taxation**

The principles and processes of taxation in New Zealand, including the taxation of electronic commerce.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 291 and 292*

**Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses**

**COMLAW 601 (2 Points)**

**Taxation Structures and Processes 1**

A study of institutions and mechanisms through which revenue is assessed and collected including: the role of the tax return, the assessment process, the collection mechanisms such as PAYE, provisional tax, resident and non-resident withholding tax, the agency provisions, use of money interest, penalties and recovery.

**COMLAW 602 (2 Points)**

**Taxation Structures and Processes 2**

A study of the institutions and mechanisms through which revenue is assessed and collected including: record retention, the Commissioner's statutory powers to obtain information, confidentiality and privilege, the challenge procedure, the appeal and review processes, including: jurisdiction, procedure and evidence.

<b>COMLAW 603</b> <b>Principles of Income Taxation</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>COMLAW 742A</b> <b>COMLAW 742B</b> <b>Discretions, Disputes and Procedures</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b> <b>(2 Points)</b>
An examination of the legal and accounting concepts which underlie the Income Tax Act. Topics include: the nature of income, special types of income, deductible expenses, prohibited deductions, timing of income and expenses, the tax status of trusts, partnerships and companies.		The nature of a tax return and obligations in relation thereto. Commissioner's powers to obtain records and information. Assessments, financial arrangements and determinations. Public law restraints on the Commissioner's powers. The Commissioner's discretions and appeal and review mechanisms. Procedure, evidence and pleading in tax cases. The jurisdiction of the High Court and Taxation Review authorities. Recovery of underpaid or overpaid tax.	
<b>COMLAW 604</b> <b>Principles of Indirect Taxation</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>COMLAW 746</b> <b>Corporation and Investor Taxation</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
An examination of the legal and accounting concepts that underlie Goods and Services Tax and other indirect taxes. Topics include: taxable activities; taxable, exempt and zero-rated supplies; input deductions, gift and stamp duties.		The impact of business structures on tax liabilities of business organizations and their members. Trusts, partnerships, joint ventures, and groups of companies are considered, but the primary focus is on the allocation of the tax burden between companies, shareholders and other investors.	
<b>COMLAW 605</b> <b>Advanced Studies in Taxation 1</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>COMLAW 747</b> <b>The Goods and Services Tax</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
An advanced study of issues of taxation relating to various entities such as companies trusts and partnerships. Topics include: the imputation system, company distributions, grouping, consolidation and amalgamation of companies, the financial accounts regime, losses.		The main focus of this course is on the Goods and Services Tax, although other indirect and asset taxes may be referred to for comparative purposes. While the course mainly deals with New Zealand GST, analogous taxes in overseas jurisdictions are also studied to provide a theoretical construct against which to assess the New Zealand experience.	
<b>COMLAW 606</b> <b>Advanced Studies in Taxation 2</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>COMLAW 748</b> <b>Current Developments in Taxation</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
An advanced study of issues of taxation relating to international taxation and anti-avoidance. Topics include: the concepts of residence and source, the taxation of overseas income and non-residence, the effect of the Double Taxation Agreements, special and general avoidance provisions and the role of the Common Law.		Selected in-depth studies of recent or imminent changes in the tax laws. The topics chosen will vary from year to year. Only those areas capable of rigorous academic analysis will be chosen for examination.	
<b>COMLAW 607</b> <b>Special Topic in Taxation</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>COMLAW 749</b> <b>Avoidance Provisions</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>COMLAW 608</b> <b>Special Topic in Taxation</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>COMLAW 753</b> <b>Special Topic in Taxation Law</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<hr/> <b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>		<b>COMLAW 754</b> <b>Special Topic in Taxation Law</b> (For the MTaxS.)	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>COMLAW 740A</b> <b>COMLAW 740B</b> <b>The Tax Base</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b> <b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>COMLAW 755A</b> <b>COMLAW 755B</b> <b>Special Topic in Taxation Law</b> (For the MTaxS.)	<b>(2 Points)</b> <b>(2 Points)</b>
The nature of income; its timing and recognition, its distinction from capital and methods of calculation. Deductions and rebates. The limited role of capital in the existing tax base and the likelihood of its expansions. Tax minimization in the courts. Statutory responses to tax avoidance. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 740 A and B</i>		An examination of the general anti-avoidance provisions contained in the Income Tax Act 1994 and the Income Tax legislation of other jurisdictions including Australia, Canada, the United Kingdom and the United States. An analysis of the structure and function of anti-avoidance provisions and of the relation to the tax system. An analysis of the relationship of statutory and common law responses to tax-avoidance.	
<b>COMLAW 741A</b> <b>COMLAW 741B</b> <b>International Taxation</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b> <b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>COMLAW 756</b> <b>Special Topic in Taxation Law</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
Tests of residence for individuals and corporations. The wider tax base for off-shore income of New Zealand residents. Income derived by overseas residents from New Zealand activities. The Double Tax Treaty System. Selecting the country of residence. Anti-avoidance measures directed at transnational activity. The use of tax havens. As well as New Zealand taxation law, the course also examines the municipal revenue law of some of our trading partners. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 741 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 755 A and B</i>	

- COMLAW 765** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Contemporary Legal Issues**  
 A detailed analysis of a current legal issue relating to intellectual property, corporate law, competition policy or international business law.  
*Restriction: LAW 720*
- COMLAW 792A** (4.5 Points)  
**COMLAW 792B** (4.5 Points)  
**Dissertation in Taxation Law**  
 (For the MTaxS)  
 To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 792 A and B
- COMLAW 798A** (7 Points)  
**COMLAW 798B** (7 Points)  
**Thesis in Taxation Law**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 798 A and B

---

## Economics

---

### Stage I

**Note:** Students intending to advance beyond Stage I should include MATHS 108, or equivalent, in their first year programme.

- ECON 101** (2 Points)  
**Microeconomics**

Introduction to the economic behaviour of individuals and firms with emphasis on output and price determination in the various market structures. Theories and selected applications will be presented.

*Restriction: ECON 191*

- ECON 111** (2 Points)  
**Macroeconomics**

The economic activity of the nation at large and its interrelationships with the rest of the world. Included are: the measurements of economic activity, determination of aggregate income, money, banking and prices, exchange rates, the balance of payments and government macroeconomic policy.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101*

- ECON 191** (2 Points)  
**Business Economics**

Introduction to economic analysis, with an emphasis on firms and their operating environment. Pricing and output decisions and cost and profit determination in competitive, imperfectly competitive, and monopolistic markets. Macroeconomic factors and policies affecting business activity in a small open economy.

*Restriction: ECON 101 and 111*

### Stage II

**Note:** Students intending to major in Economics must include ECON 201, 211 and 221 in their programme.

- ECON 201** (2 Points)  
**Microeconomics**

Study of the allocation of scarce resources among competing end uses. Intermediate-level analysis of the economic behaviour of individual units, in particular consumers and firms. Although the focus is on perfectly competitive markets, attention is also given to other types of markets. Analysis also includes concepts of expected utility and uncertainty, and welfare economics.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111 and MATHS 108*

- ECON 202** (2 Points)  
**Managerial Economics**

An applied economics course which shows how various concepts and techniques drawn from economics, finance, mathematics and statistics can be used to develop and use computer-based models in decision-making, particularly in an uncertain environment.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

- ECON 204** (2 Points)  
**The Economics of the Internet**

An introduction to the economics of the Internet using microeconomic concepts, practical examples, and case studies. Topics to be covered include: the development of the Internet, access pricing, network effects and standardization, business-to-consumer and business-to-business e-commerce, online auctions, open source software, and the law and economics of information goods such as software and music.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191*

- ECON 205** (2 Points)  
**The Contemporary New Zealand Economy**

The New Zealand economy has changed greatly over the last two decades. This course provides an overview of the structure and performance of the New Zealand economy, an examination of the context of economic reforms, and analysis of the objectives and consequences of contemporary economic policies. Topics covered include: the Reserve Bank Act, the higher education sector, the Employment Relations Act and labour market policy, and environmental management.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

- ECON 211** (2 Points)  
**Macroeconomics**

Provides an introduction to the dynamic microfoundations of macroeconomics, and demonstrates how we can utilize these foundations: (i) to understand the trends and fluctuations of macroeconomic aggregates like national output, unemployment, inflation and interest rates, and (ii) to predict the outcome of alternative government policies related to current economic problems of New Zealand and the rest of the world.

*Prerequisite: ECON 111, and 101 or 191, and MATHS 108*

- ECON 212** (2 Points)  
**Game Theory and Economic Applications**

Introduction to non-cooperative and cooperative game theory: introduction to two person zero-sum games and the min max value; n-person non-cooperative games and Nash equilibrium; examples and applications in auctions, bargaining and other economic models; applications in political science and other fields; the idea of backward induction and sub-game perfection; repeated games; introduction to games in coalitional form; the core and (Shapley) value; models of power and voting; problems in fair division, and optimal and stable matching.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191*

- ECON 221** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Econometrics**

An introduction to model building and empirical research methods in economics. Emphasizes the use and interpretation of single equation regression techniques in formulating and testing

microeconomic and macroeconomic hypotheses. Cross-section and time series modelling, as well as qualitative choice models will be covered. There will be examples of the uses of econometrics in a variety of areas through statistical analysis, problem solving and econometric estimation using a statistical computer package.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111 and STATS 101 or 102 or 107 or 108 or 125 or 191 and MATHS 102 or 108 or 130 or 150 or 151*

**ECON 232 (2 Points)**

**Development of the International Economy**

The development of the international economy and changing economic relationships that have taken place since the late nineteenth century. The causes and consequences of growing interdependency among nations are examined. Changing patterns of trade and migration of capital and labour are analysed, as are cyclical and secular trends in output, employment and investment. The focus is on the development of institutions as well as the economic and social conditions that induce and validate change.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

**ECON 241 (2 Points)**

**International Economics**

An introduction to international trade and finance. Important issues for the international economy and the development of conceptual frameworks for understanding and analysing these issues will be discussed. Emphasis will be given to issues of particular relevance to New Zealand. Topics include: exchange rate regimes, currency boards, currency crises, international capital flows and speculation, multilateral trade agreements, political economy of trade policy.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

**ECON 271 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

**ECON 272 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

**ECON 273 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

**Stage III**

**ECON 301 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Microeconomics**

Advanced treatment of aspects of general equilibrium and game theory. Applications of this basic theory to the analysis of topics in uncertainty, contracts, auctions, oligopoly, and information economics.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201*

**ECON 302 (2 Points)**

**Economics of Labour Markets**

The application of economics to issues that confront policy makers all over the world. Covers the workings of labour markets and teaches how to use economic frameworks to judge the appropriateness of education, training, employment, taxation, immigration and other labour market policies.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201*

**ECON 303 (2 Points)**

**Law and Economics**

Economic analysis of law and organization, and the application of economics to property rights, patents and natural resource management. Includes: contracts, transaction cost analysis, classical contracting, long-run contracts, enforcement, role of market forces, risk aversion, remedies for breach, economic theory for torts, negligence rules, strict liability, multiple torts, product liability. Special topics may include: crime, insider trading, and business law.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or LAW 101, and ECON 201*

**ECON 304 (2 Points)**

**Firms and Markets**

The study of firms in their markets, focusing on imperfect competition. Includes: oligopoly, monopolistic competition, analysis of strategic behaviour, government policies aimed at regulating oligopolistic and monopolistic behaviour, empirical applications.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201*

**ECON 311 (2 Points)**

**Macroeconomic Theory and Policy**

This course is designed to teach students modern macroeconomic analysis and focuses on the standard dynamic general equilibrium model, which is central to current macroeconomic research. Students are given a careful introduction to the overlapping generations version of this model and shown how this model can be adapted in different ways to address a wide variety of economic issues and policy questions.

*Prerequisite: ECON 211*

**ECON 321 (2 Points)**

**Econometrics**

Development of the linear regression model, its basis, problems, applications and extensions. Attention is also given to techniques and problems of simultaneous equations modelling, time-series analysis and economic forecasting.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201 or 211, and ECON 221 or STATS 208 or 210*

**ECON 322 (2 Points)**

**Applied Econometrics**

Provides a basic understanding of some of the econometric methods and models. Applications of basic linear regression, including: demand systems, time-series analysis including unit roots and co-integration, simulation and resampling methods. Also includes practical computing classes.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201 or 211, and ECON 221*

**ECON 331 (2 Points)**

**Economic History of Australia and New Zealand**

An examination of the methods of historical inquiry and the economic analysis of development in Australia and New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201 or 211 or 232*

**ECON 341 (2 Points)**

**International Trade**

An analysis of the causes, characteristics and effects of international trade in goods and services, and of international movements of capital and labour. Economic effects of measures designed to restrict or promote trade. An introduction to the economics of regional trading arrangements, such as free trade areas, customs unions and common markets.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201*

- ECON 342** (2 Points)  
**International Economic Policy Studies**  
An analysis of international economic policy issues and their implications for New Zealand. A variety of approaches is used, including issue-based analysis of key international economic policy problems, comparative analysis of regional trading arrangements, and a case study approach embodied in an area studies module.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 341 or 352*
- ECON 343** (2 Points)  
**East Asian Growth and Trade**  
A study of the economic factors underlying the dynamic trade and growth performance of the major economies of contemporary East Asia, and of the impact of their development on New Zealand's international trading environment. Study of individual East Asian economies is strongly emphasized.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- ECON 351** (2 Points)  
**Financial Economics**  
A study of the modern literature on corporate finance, investments and derivative securities. An analysis of consumption and investment decisions in the presence of time and risk, asset pricing models and market efficiency. The term structure of interest rates and various issues in debt and equity financing. The use of derivative securities eg. forwards and/or options to manage exchange rate risk.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- ECON 352** (2 Points)  
**International Finance**  
A study of the modern literature on exchange rate markets, exchange rate determination and the implications of exchange rate movements for various economic issues. Students will gain an understanding of why exchange rates change, of financial market arrangements, and of the reasons for, and implications of, recent events in international financial markets.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201 and 211*
- ECON 361** (2 Points)  
**Public Economics**  
A study of the state in a modern mixed economy, its roles, measurement and accountability. Topics include: welfare theory, theory of public goods, budgetary issues and the Fiscal Responsibility Act, public choice, taxation theory and practice, tax reform, the welfare state, efficiency, targeting and poverty traps, insurance markets, social insurance, pensions and the economics of an ageing population.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- ECON 371** (2 Points)  
**Development of Economic Theory**  
An introduction to the history of economic ideas and to comparative economics.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201 and 211*
- ECON 372** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Resource Economics**  
A study of the efficient allocation of non-renewable and renewable resources, resource markets and pricing, and natural resource policy.
- ECON 373** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Economics**  
An overview of the theory and empirical practice of economic analysis as it is used in evaluating environmental problems. Topics include: static and dynamic efficiency; environmental policy (pollution and economic efficiency); analysis of economic instruments, such as tradable property rights and pollution taxes; the allocation of non-renewable and renewable resources, and contemporary issues of growth, trade and the environment, and sustainable development.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- ECON 374** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Research Seminar in Advanced Studies in Economics**
- ECON 381** (2 Points)  
**Foundations of Economic Analysis**  
A grounding in the quantitative methods of economic analysis with application to commonly used formal models in microeconomics, macroeconomics and econometrics. The emphasis will be on the unifying structure of the theory with a systematic treatment of the mathematical techniques involved. Preparation for continuing study in economic theory and econometrics.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- ECON 701** (2 Points)  
**Microeconomic Theory**  
A variety of topics in traditional 'core' microeconomics from an advanced perspective as well as a selection of issues arising from recent research directions.
- ECON 702** (2 Points)  
**Industrial Organization**  
Industrial organization (IO) is concerned with the organization of markets and the behaviour of firms under conditions of imperfect competition and imperfect information. The purpose of this course is to master some of the standard modern theories in IO and apply them to better understand the recent developments in various New Zealand and international markets.
- ECON 703** (2 Points)  
**Labour Economics and Human Resources**  
An advanced survey with emphasis on theoretic modelling, empirical research and policy applications. Topics include: labour force participation, investment in education, hiring and lay-offs, distribution of earning, unemployment, labour market contracts, worker mobility and immigration issues.
- ECON 711** (2 Points)  
**Macroeconomics**  
This is a core course in macroeconomic theory which addresses fundamental problems including output growth and business cycles, unemployment and inflation in the context of mainstream models of the economy, fiscal and monetary policies.
- ECON 712** (2 Points)  
**Business Cycles**  
A theoretic, historical and statistical study of

business cycles, especially of the international cycle and its effects on New Zealand since the Second World War.

**ECON 713 (2 Points)**

**Monetary Economics**

Examines a number of advanced topics in monetary economics. Topics include: relations of money, prices and output, macroeconomic models with money, monetary policy, roles of central banks, and monetary business cycles.

**ECON 721 (2 Points)**

**Econometrics 1**

Core econometrics including theory and applications. The development of the classical linear regression model and extensions to the most general case. Applications to types of linear models involving cross-section and time-series data, and simultaneous equation models. The method of maximum likelihood, other extrema estimators and associated methods of testing.

**ECON 723 (2 Points)**

**Econometrics 2**

An overview of time series econometrics, designed to introduce a range of material in stationary and nonstationary time series including: modern model determination methods, unit root and cointegration theory, non-linear time series analysis and continuous time models. Students will be introduced to practical time series forecasting methods.

**ECON 724 (2 Points)**

**Applied Econometrics**

A variety of econometric techniques will be used to analyse models from a number of selected areas of economics. A significant part of the course will be computer-based, involving the handling of empirical data and the computation and presentation of results.

**ECON 725 (2 Points)**

**Economic Forecasting**

A survey of the various techniques used in economic forecasting, with applied work involving the empirical analysis and presentation of economic models relevant to forecasting. Discussion and analysis of the time-series approach to forecasting, and consideration of basic problems concerning difficulties and possibilities of ascertaining the future.

**ECON 741 (2 Points)**

**Advanced International Trade**

Examines microeconomic aspects of international economics, theoretical and empirical research on international trade and trade policy under perfect and imperfect competition, and discusses and analyses political economy issues related to trade liberalization. Topics which reflect current research including economic geography and multinational corporations.

**ECON 742 (2 Points)**

**Trade Policy and Modelling**

Covers a range of commercial policies including tariffs, import quotas and export subsidies. Part of the course will be allocated to general equilibrium analysis of international trade policy.

**ECON 743 (2 Points)**

**Economic Integration in the Pacific Rim**

Analysis of the developing economic relationships among the nations of the Pacific Rim, including both trade and investment flows and financial market integration. The economics of regional trade liberalization initiatives such as NAFTA, CER and AFTA, and their implication for wider economic integration, for example, through APEC. Comparative analysis of factors underlying the economic performance of Pacific Rim economies.

**ECON 744 (2 Points)**

**Emerging Economies of East Asia**

A comprehensive, comparative and historical analysis of the economic development of the emerging economies of East Asia, including China, the ASEAN and the emerging transitional economies of Indo-China. The impact of their development on the wider Asia-Pacific region is also emphasized.

**ECON 745 (2 Points)**

**The Japanese Economy**

The modern Japanese economy and its international economic relations, including an examination of the role of distinctive Japanese institutions and patterns of economic behaviour.

**ECON 746 (2 Points)**

**The Chinese Economy**

Economics of the transition toward a market economy in modern China. Integration of China into the international economy, including an examination of the special roles of Hong Kong and Taiwan.

**ECON 747 (2 Points)**

**The European Economies**

International trade and monetary issues involved in integration in Western Europe and transition in Eastern Europe. History of the facts, theory of preferential liberalization and analysis of the Single Market programme, Common Agricultural Policy, regional policy and competition policy. An analysis of monetary issues: optimum currency areas, history of monetary integrations in Europe, analysis of the EMU, ECB and fiscal federalism.

**ECON 751 (2 Points)**

**Advanced International Finance**

A study of open-economy macroeconomic topics (theoretic, empirical and policy oriented), including models of exchange rate behaviour.

**ECON 761 (2 Points)**

**Public Economics 1**

Economic aspects of the public sector, particularly of taxation. Includes welfare economics, commodity tax analysis and the use of taxes and other techniques in handling externalities.

**ECON 762 (2 Points)**

**Public Economics 2**

Topics include: personal and company taxation, taxation and other techniques of dealing with exploitation of market power and time variant public enterprise pricing.

**ECON 763 (2 Points)**

**Public Policy**

Examines the links between empirical research in economics and policy-making. The role of the policy

economist. Communication skills. Ideology and policy. Welfare state policy issues. Analysis of policy in areas such as income support, housing, broadcasting, superannuation, accident compensation, arts funding and tertiary education. Original contribution to specific topical New Zealand policy debates.

**ECON 764 (2 Points)**

**Health Economics**

Economic aspects of health and health services. Analysis of expenditure on healthcare. The structure and financing of health services and health reform. Cost benefit and cost-effectiveness and analysis in healthcare. Specific healthcare issues in the New Zealand health system.

**ECON 765 (2 Points)**

**Contemporary Issues in Fiscal Policy**

Desirable characteristics of a tax system. Equity, neutrality, simplicity, public acceptance. Administrative efficiency, responsiveness to economic changes, optimum levels for revenue need. The use of taxation to meet welfare and social goals. The machinery of tax reform.

**ECON 771 (2 Points)**

**Economics of Development**

Introduction to contemporary issues in development economics. Topics include: the way economists' approaches to 'economic development' have evolved and changed through the period from 1945 to the present, and looks at some leading development issues in this perspective; a set of topics in international trade, economic growth and development, with emphasis on the 'Newly Industrializing Countries' (NICs) and other Third World 'developing' countries.

**ECON 772 (2 Points)**

**Trade and Development**

Focuses on the link between trade and development and contemporary issues relating to trade strategies and structural adjustment policies with particular emphasis on developing countries.

**ECON 773 (2 Points)**

**The History of Economic Thought 1**

Covers a selection of topics in the history of economic ideas, including classical economics, post-classical microeconomics, topics in twentieth century economics and business cycle theory and twentieth century debates on international monetary reform.

**ECON 774 (2 Points)**

**The History of Economic Thought 2**

A survey course covering a selection of topics in the history of economic ideas including: classical economics, post-classical microeconomics, Keynesian economics, monetarism, and developments in twentieth century macroeconomics, business cycle theory and international monetary economics.

**ECON 775 (2 Points)**

**Economics of the Environment**

Economics of natural resource use and policy. Externality, welfare economics, price theory. Sustainability, future generations and equity. Environmental macroeconomics, trade. Non-market valuation methods, species preservation. International issues.

**ECON 781 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Microeconomic Theory 2**

A selection of topics from economic analysis, developing and extending the theories considered in ECON 701.

**ECON 782 (2 Points)**

**Regulation and Competition Policy**

Discusses utility regulation linked to the economics of telecommunication, electricity, water and gas. Introduces the economic principles of competition policy and discusses them with the most recent regulation and competition policy cases in New Zealand and elsewhere.

**ECON 783 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**ECON 789 (2 Points)**

**Research Essay for BCom(Hons)/BA(Hons)**

**ECON 790A (2 Points)**

**ECON 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation (MCom/MA)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ECON 790 A and B*

**ECON 792A (4.5 Points)**

**ECON 792B (4.5 Points)**

**Dissertation in Economics of Taxation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ECON 792 A and B*

**ECON 796A (7 Points)**

**ECON 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis (MCom/MA)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ECON 796 A and B*

---

**Engineering Management**

---

**Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses**

**ENGMGMT 702 (3 Points)**

**Resource Management**

An overview of both global and New Zealand issues in resource management. The Resource Management Act and its implications for engineering activities.

**ENGMGMT 703 (3 Points)**

**Technology Management**

An introduction to current information and manufacturing technologies and present methods for their analysis, planning and successful implementation to create business advantage.

**ENGMGMT 705 (3 Points)**

**Quality Management for Engineers**

Concepts, tools and models of quality management with a particular emphasis on issues relevant to engineering disciplines.

**ENGMGMT 711 (1 Point)**

**Project in Engineering Management**

A project with limited supervision, requiring the application of engineering management techniques to investigate and solve a particular problem within a participant's own organization.

*Restriction: 601.601*

---

**Finance**


---

**Stage II****FINANCE 251 (2 Points)****Financial Management**

Focuses on practical aspects of corporate finance. Topics covered include: concepts of value creation, risk and required rates of return, financial maths, capital budgeting, capital structure and dividend policies.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**FINANCE 261 (2 Points)****Introduction to Investments**

Markets for shares, fixed income securities, options and futures. Methods of valuing shares, fixed income securities, options, and futures. Simple techniques of hedging risk. Portfolio diversification. Portfolio evaluation.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**Stage III****FINANCE 351 (2 Points)****Advanced Financial Management**

A rigorous study of advanced capital budgeting procedures, more difficult aspects associated with capital structure and dividend decisions, mergers and acquisitions. Case study applications of financial management are used. A continuation of the material introduced in FINANCE 251.

*Prerequisite: FINANCE 251*

**FINANCE 361 (2 Points)****Modern Investment Theory and Management**

Portfolio theory and equilibrium asset pricing models and empirical tests. Portfolio management (forecasting, construction, administration and evaluation) including issues relating to fixed interest and international equity investment. A continuation of the material introduced in FINANCE 261.

*Prerequisite: FINANCE 261 and MATHS 208*

**FINANCE 362 (2 Points)****Risk Management**

Examines theoretical and practical aspects of risk management with an emphasis on the effective use of futures, options and other financial derivatives to control market risk exposure. Reviews no-arbitrage methods used to value financial futures and options, including the Black-Scholes model and binomial tree numerical methods.

*Prerequisite: FINANCE 261 and MATHS 208*

**FINANCE 383 (2 Points)****Special Topic****FINANCE 384 (2 Points)****Special Topic****Honours and Master's Courses****FINANCE 701 (2 Points)****Research Methods**

The theory and application of modern research methods in finance. The content will include the philosophy, process and design of scientific research. Prior knowledge of basic statistical techniques is assumed.

*Restriction: ACCTG 701*

**FINANCE 702A (1 Point)****FINANCE 702B (1 Point)****Information, Contracting and Governance**

An introduction to the economic literatures relating to property rights, transaction cost economics, and agency theory. Application of these notions to the way in which organizations are structured. Identification of why some transactions are internalized and some are undertaken through markets. The application of these ideas to finance. The use of these notions in the New Zealand reform process.

*Restriction: ACCTG 702 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINANCE 702 A and B*

**FINANCE 751 (2 Points)****Modern Corporate Finance**

Examines fundamental principles of corporate financial theory and discusses current issues, seminal theoretical contributions and empirical evidence regarding those theories. Specific topics will be chosen from capital structure, dividend policy, security issuance, mergers and acquisitions, corporate control and initial public offerings.

**FINANCE 752 (2 Points)****Management and Financial Institutions**

An investigation of issues of financial management as applied to financial institutions. The orientation is to policy issues and principles more than operating techniques. Topics will include: asset and liability management, interest rate and risk management and regulation, with attention to the New Zealand situation. The early sessions will survey broad issues while subsequent sessions will investigate specific theories and empirical evidence as to their efficacy. This course builds on knowledge gained in FINANCE 251 and 702 A and B.

**FINANCE 761 (2 Points)****Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis**

Advanced coverage of contemporary issues in investments through readings of classic theoretical articles and recent empirical studies. Topics include: market efficiency and empirical anomalies, risk-return relationships and alternative investment vehicles and strategies. This course builds on material covered in FINANCE 261 and 361 and presumes the student has completed MATHS 208 or its equivalent.

**FINANCE 762 (2 Points)****Risk Management**

The theory and practice of financial risk management for portfolio managers with an emphasis on defining and measuring market risk. This course builds on material covered in FINANCE 362 and MATHS 208 with extensions to include the use of futures, options and other financial derivatives to manage market risk.

**FINANCE 763 (2 Points)****International Finance**

An examination of theoretical and empirical perspectives on important issues in international finance. Topics will include: financial management of a multinational enterprise, macroeconomic effects, currency risk management and international capital budgeting. A portion of the course will also be devoted to international portfolio investments and diversification. This course builds on knowledge gained in FINANCE 251, 261 and 702 A and B.

<b>FINANCE 781</b> Special Topic in Finance	(2 Points)	income distribution and public policy formulation and impact. <i>Restriction: 602.607</i>
<b>FINANCE 782</b> Special Topic	(2 Points)	<b>FINMGMT 712</b> (2 Points) Finance Law A study of financial aspects of contract law, securing debt, debt recovery, the Securities Act, fund raising, insider trading, takeover, Credit Contracts Act, Hire Purchase Act and other tender liability issues.
<b>FINANCE 783</b> Special Topic	(2 Points)	<b>FINMGMT 713</b> (1 Point) Special Topic
<b>FINANCE 784</b> Directed Readings in Literature Topics	(2 Points)	<b>FINMGMT 714</b> (1 Point) Special Topic <i>Restriction: 602.606</i>
<b>FINANCE 785</b> Directed Readings in Literature Topics	(2 Points)	<b>FINMGMT 715</b> (1 Point) Special Topic <i>Restriction: 602.609</i>
<b>FINANCE 789</b> Research Essay for BCom(Hons)	(2 Points)	
<b>FINANCE 796A</b> <b>FINANCE 796B</b> Thesis	(7 Points) (7 Points)	

To complete this course students must enrol in FINANCE 796 A and B

## Finance – Executive Programmes

### Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses

#### **FINMGMT 701** (3 Points) Financial Management

A study of the conceptual framework of modern finance theory and the application of that theory to the major decisions facing a corporate financial manager. Particular attention will be given to the topics of capital budgeting, valuation including applications to property, financial structure, dividend policy, risk management and mergers and acquisitions. Implications of the theory and evidence for corporate financial decision-making are emphasized.

#### **FINMGMT 702** (3 Points) Investments

An intensive study of the basic concepts and tools of investment analysis. The environment of investment decision-making in New Zealand is covered. Topics which are given particular emphasis include: efficiency of capital markets, role of diversification, risk assessment, relationship between risk and expected return, portfolio formation, financial statement analysis, derivative securities (options, futures etc) and international finance.

*Prerequisite: FINMGMT 701*

#### **FINMGMT 703** (3 Points) Case Studies in Business and Finance

A study of corporate financial and business management issues using case studies. Topics covered may include: capital expenditure decision making, capital structure choices, dividend policy, mergers and acquisitions, security pricing and selection, portfolio management, asset allocation and international pricing.

*Prerequisite: FINMGMT 602 or BUSADMIN 701*

*Restriction: 602.603*

#### **FINMGMT 711** (2 Points) Managerial Economics

Provides frameworks of economic thought to inform managerial decision-making with particular regard to the economic behaviour of individuals and firms. Market structures, pricing and output phenomena,

## Health Informatics

### Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses

#### **HLTHINFO 713** (3 Points)

##### Information Systems Technology

The developments in information technology (IT) and how they are used to create information systems and share information securely. The emphasis is on systems integration and on making information available where, when, and in the format it is needed. Current IT requirements for healthcare and implications for the future.

*Restriction: INFORM 613*

#### **HLTHINFO 716** (3 Points)

##### Health Information Systems

The development of healthcare computing across different healthcare sectors. Conceptual design and organization of modern clinical information systems and information sharing. Technological advances leading to new ways of delivering and facilitating care such as the electronic patient record, telemedicine and care pathways. Issues of security and confidentiality.

*Restriction: INFORM 616*

#### **HLTHINFO 718** (2 Points)

##### Electronic Health Records

The theory behind the use of medical records, their purpose, their computerization and the benefits, disadvantages, and barriers to implementation. Key concepts of electronic patient and health records. Hierarchical functionality of electronic records, their role in primary, acute and seamless care. Record structure and content, and the technology for record implementation. Patient rights and privacy.

#### **HLTHINFO 720** (2 Points)

##### Telemedicine and Telecare

Definitions of telemedicine and telecare and their significance. Scope, benefits and limitations. Designing and evaluating telemedicine studies. Approaches to introducing telemedicine into mainstream medicine. Technology and practice. The main clinical applications and the legal and ethical dimensions of telemedicine.

#### **HLTHINFO 721** (2 Points)

##### Special Topic in Health Informatics

---

**Human Resource Management**


---

**Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses**
**HRMGMT 701 (3 Points)**
**Organization and Society**

Organizational behaviour and theory and the techniques of analysis in a changing and complex environment. The relationships between external contextual change and the internal dynamics of businesses. Problem-solving methodologies in organizational management.

**HRMGMT 702 (3 Points)**
**Employment Relations**

Theory and practice of employment relations with special reference to New Zealand institutions and law. The goals and behaviour of employers, workers and the state in employment relations.

*Prerequisite: HRMGMT 701*

**HRMGMT 703 (3 Points)**
**Human Resource Policies and Practice**

An analysis of research in the main functions of human resource management (such as HR planning, job analysis, recruitment and selection, performance management, remuneration, training and development, the management of labour relations). Contemporary issues. The evaluation of HR techniques.

*Prerequisite: HRMGMT 701 and 702*

**HRMGMT 704 (3 Points)**
**Managing Change in Organizations**

The theory and practice of change management in organizations drawing on the fields of organizational development (OD) and training and development (T&D). The diagnosis, planning and facilitation of change projects. Group dynamics and team learning. Culture change.

*Prerequisite: HRMGMT 701 and 702*

**HRMGMT 709 (1 Point)**
**Occupational Health and Safety**

Perspectives on occupational health and safety. Relevant legislation. Technology and occupational health. Theories of injury causation, occupation disease and stress.

**HRMGMT 712 (1 Point)**
**Special Topic**

*Restriction: 607.607*

**HRMGMT 713 (1 Point)**
**Special Topic**

*Restriction: 607.608*

**HRMGMT 714 (2 Points)**
**Professional Development in HRM**

Analysis and development of the strategies and skills required by the professional Human Resource specialist.

**HRMGMT 750 (3 Points)**
**Special Topic**
**HRMGMT 752 (2 Points)**
**Special Topic**
**HRMGMT 753 (2 Points)**
**Special Topic**
**HRMGMT 754 (1 Point)**
**Special Topic**
**HRMGMT 755 (1 Point)**
**Special Topic**


---

**Information Management**


---

**Stage I**
**INFOMGMT 191 (2 Points)**
**Business Productivity Tools**

Develops basic programming skills using the latest productivity tools in an integrated approach to solving business problems. Information systems theory will provide the context for the effective application of these skills.

*Restriction: INFOSYS 110, COMPSCI 101, 105*

**INFOMGMT 192 (2 Points)**
**Business Analysis and Applications**

Develops hands-on competencies in the creation of business applications. In-depth programming concepts with practical assessments on the application of those concepts are covered. The use of critical thinking and the systems approach in problem solving is promoted. Teaches basic data management concepts and implementation, and how to integrate them into business application development.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 191*

*Restriction: INFOSYS 110, COMPSCI 101, 105, 280*

**Stage II**
**INFOMGMT 291 (2 Points)**
**Web Applications for Business**

This course provides an understanding of the analysis and design requirements of web applications. It includes the application of analysis and design tools used in the development of Web applications. It also deals with multi-tiered client-server models, telecommunications and security issues.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 191, 192 and MGMT 191, 192*

**INFOMGMT 292 (2 Points)**
**Database Applications**

Students will demonstrate skills in the analysis of IM problems, data modeling and the selection of appropriate designs for its storage and retrieval. Emphasis is on the development of hands-on skills.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 191, 192 and MGMT 191, 192*

*Restriction: INFOSYS 222*

**INFOMGMT 293 (2 Points)**
**Information Systems for Marketing**

Introduction to how marketers can use commercial application systems on the Internet. Reviews the major elements of doing business online.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 191, 192 and MGMT 191, 192 and MKTG 291*

*Restriction: INFOMGMT 294 and 295*

**INFOMGMT 294 (2 Points)**
**Information Systems for Accounting**

Examines the key concepts in respect to designing and maintaining an accounting information system including internal controls and reporting requirements.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 192, INFOMGMT 191, 192, MGMT 191, 192*

*Restriction: INFOMGMT 293, 295, ACCTG 222*

**INFOMGMT 295 (2 Points)****Information Systems for HRM**

Analysis, critique and evaluation of the major Human Resource Information Systems and their characteristics and features, focusing on the data flow, analysis, reporting and forecasting functions and emergent characteristics of such systems and their relationship to organizational effectiveness.

*Prerequisite:* INFOMGMT 191, 192 and MGMT 191, 192, 294

*Restriction:* INFOMGMT 293 and 294

**Stage III****INFOMGMT 391 (2 Points)****e-Business**

The development and implementation of commercial application systems in the Internet, covering networking, security and integration with Enterprise Systems.

*Prerequisite:* INFOMGMT 291, 292

**INFOMGMT 392 (2 Points)****Digital Media Production**

Develops a range of digital media resources suitable to use in a web-based application. Projects will demonstrate strong practical skills in the capture, editing and production of digital resources as well as an understanding of where these resources are most effectively deployed.

*Prerequisite:* INFOMGMT 291

**INFOMGMT 393 (2 Points)****Data Mining and Decision Support**

The emphasis will be on data warehousing and data mining for the purposes of decision support and the solution of common business problems.

*Prerequisite:* INFOMGMT 292

**Information Systems****Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses****INFORM 703 (3 Points)****Information Systems Management**

Examines the managerial practices required for the quick and effective development and deployment of information systems. Guidelines for both technical and managerial personnel are described within the context of various system development life cycles. Common problems are identified and the practices which best reduce the risk of failure are presented.

**INFORM 710 (3 Points)****Electronic Commerce Applications**

Students will analyse the prospects for electronic commerce in an industry and propose an e-business strategy. Applications include the linking of manufacturers, suppliers and purchasers in a distribution network and the global delivery of information products and services. Systems architectural models and network structures are examined.

**INFORM 711 (3 Points)****Enterprise Systems**

Examines the cross-functional, integrated computer-based information systems, commonly referred to as Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems, designed to support an organization's information

needs. Management systems, common business processes, re-engineering/change management, and enterprise reference models are introduced with a holistic perspective. Considers issues associated with the analysis, design, implementation, and configuration of such enterprise systems.

**INFORM 712 (3 Points)****Project in Information Systems**

A supervised, independent study and investigation of a chosen aspect of information systems. The student is required to present a detailed investigative report.

**INFORM 713 (3 Points)****Information Systems Technology**

Introduces the business application of computer technologies via the use of an existing MS Access database. Data modelling and database design are taught in conjunction with hands-on exercises in querying and reporting. The role of business information system requirements in the development and/or purchase of software is explored.

**INFORM 714 (2 Points)****Electronic Commerce Strategies**

Describes how information system and networking technologies are employed to transform the business environment. Includes business-to-business and business-to-consumer aspects. Students study organizations noted for their mastery of electronic commerce. The profile of these organizations is investigated in terms of the inter-dependence of technology, business strategy and organizational culture.

*Restriction:* BUSADMIN 711

**INFORM 717 (2 Points)****Electronic Commerce Technology**

Introduces the business application of data communication technologies. Reviews the major elements and applications of electronic commerce (doing business online with customers, suppliers, allies and agents). Topics include: the network infrastructure required, the effect on business processes, the distributed applications needed and website design.

**Information Systems****Stage I****INFOSYS 110 (2 Points)****Business Computing**

Information systems, their structure and business applications. Dimensions addressed include: applications and goals, system components and how they are developed, and data storage and data search techniques.

*Restriction:* 636.101, INFOMGMT 191

**Stage II****INFOSYS 220 (2 Points)****Systems Analysis and Design 1**

Concepts and techniques of information systems analysis and design. Topics include: data structuring, process flow analysis, input and output design, program specification, unified modelling language and entity-relationship modelling.

*Prerequisite:* Either INFOSYS 110 and COMPSCI 101, or 636.101 and COMPSCI 101, or COMPSCI 101 and 105

**INFOSYS 222 (2 Points)****Database Systems**

Data modelling, relational theory, database design, and the manipulation of databases. Students will acquire a conceptual understanding as well as experience in using database system software.

*Prerequisite:* Either INFOSYS 110 and COMPSCI 101, or 636.101 and COMPSCI 101, or COMPSCI 101 and 105

**INFOSYS 223 (2 Points)****Information Systems for Managers**

The course is intended for students whose area of specialization is not in information systems. The focus is on understanding how IS impact on the broader organization and the manager's role, how IS support the key functions, and how to manage the IS function. Topics will be taught from a management perspective.

*Prerequisite:* 636.101 or INFOSYS 110

*Restriction:* INFOSYS 323

**INFOSYS 224 (2 Points)****Data Communications**

Topics covered include: the representation, encoding and transmission of information, transmission systems and media, communication techniques, networking fundamentals, network architectures, wide area and local area networks, wireless networks, distributed systems applications, client/server and intranet computing, Internet/www, network security and network control.

*Prerequisite:* either INFOSYS 110 and COMPSCI 101, or 636.101 and COMPSCI 101, or COMPSCI 101 and 105

*Restriction:* 636.324

**INFOSYS 225 (2 Points)****Fundamentals of Electronic Commerce**

An introduction to the major elements and applications of electronic commerce (doing business online with customers, suppliers, allies and agents) including the network infrastructure required, the effect on business processes, the nature of distributed applications, and the legal and ethical issues involved.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 110 and ACCTG 101 and MGMT 101 and ECON 111

*Restriction:* INFOSYS 328

**INFOSYS 226 (2 Points)****Electronic Commerce Technologies**

An introduction to the technologies that are essential for the deployment of electronic commerce applications. Topics may include: an overview of the architecture of the Internet and the web; tools for application design including representation and display languages; server and client-side scripting languages; security, transaction and workflow management systems; multi-agent and intelligent search technologies; application service provider technologies; and multimedia design.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 225

**Stage III**

*Note:* With the permission of the Head of Department, BSc and BTech students may substitute COMPSCI 220 and 230 for COMPSCI 280 as a prerequisite, provided they have passed these courses with a B Grade or higher.

*Note:* Enrolment in INFOSYS 338, OPSMGT 383 and OPSRES 393 is subject to approval of Head of Department.

**INFOSYS 220 (2 Points)****Systems Analysis and Design 2**

Information modelling, process/rules modelling, user interface design and the selection of tools and components in designing systems.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 or 230

**INFOSYS 231 (2 Points)****Enterprise Systems Analysis and Design**

Examines cross-functional integrated computer-based information systems, commonly referred to as Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems, designed to support an organization's information needs and operations. Considers issues associated with the selection, analysis, design, implementation and configuration of such enterprise systems. Investigates how such systems implement transaction processing, management information and decision support across an organization's business processes. Explores how problems may be characterized, in terms of process and information models.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 220 or OPSMGT 258

*Restriction:* OPSMGT 333

**INFOSYS 232 (2 Points)****Management of Information Systems**

An outline of the principles and practice of managing information systems in an enterprise. The role and functions of the information systems unit and its place and purpose within the management of the wider enterprise. The issues encountered in running an information systems unit and some of the accepted practices to deal with them.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 220 or 222 or 224 or 225 or 226

*Restriction:* INFOSYS 223

**INFOSYS 237 (2 Points)****Decision Systems**

The primary objectives of the course are to understand the theory, structure and construction of decision support and expert systems. Focus is on the study of their various components, eg, data, knowledge, models and user interface, and methods of integration. The course also addresses emerging technologies, eg, data mining, neural networks and intelligent agents, and research in these areas. Students will learn to work with system building tools to gain hands-on experience in prototyping DSS and ES.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 or 230

**INFOSYS 238 (2 Points)****Electronic Commerce**

Reviews the major elements and applications of electronic commerce (doing business online with one's customers, suppliers, allies and agents), including the network infrastructure required, the effect on business processes, the distributed applications needed and the legal and ethical issues involved. Also studies the role of government policy in the success or failure of e-commerce environments.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 110 and any 6 points at Stage II

*Restriction:* INFOSYS 225

**INFOSYS 239 (2 Points)****Advanced Data Communications**

A comprehensive coverage of different networking technologies is provided. Topics include: wide area

network devices, technologies and standards, Internet addressing, TCP/IP protocols, quality of service issues for Internet protocols, router components and configurations, routing protocols, wireless networks and network troubleshooting.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 224*

**INFOSYS 330 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Database Systems**

An in-depth examination of the technical aspects of database systems providing the essential foundation for a career in database systems. The emphasis will be to keep abreast with available database technology approaches and techniques in industrial and commercial information systems.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 or 230*

**INFOSYS 332 (2 Points)**

**Software Engineering**

Software engineering is a discipline that integrates methods, tools and procedures for the development of computer systems. The course addresses a range of software development paradigms and processes and assesses these models against the broad array of tasks needed to develop and maintain information systems. Emphasis is on the IEEE standards to develop effective information systems.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 or 230 or SOFTENG 250 and 251*

**INFOSYS 338 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Information Systems**

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 or 230*

**INFOSYS 339 (2 Points)**

**Computer Networks**

Covers the design, implementation and management of reliable and scalable networks. Topics include: local area network (LAN), switching and virtual LANs, network analysis and design, routing protocols, integrated services digital networks, frame relay, asynchronous transfer mode (ATM) networks, and a review of the methodologies used to design wide area networks.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 329*

**INFOSYS 340A (2 Points)**

**INFOSYS 340B (2 Points)**

**Information Systems Project**

Allows students to apply their theoretical knowledge to a practical problem in the business world, while being reinforced with business planning and control skills. The overall goal is to develop an information system which, at the end of the project, meets the requirements of the user that sponsored the project.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 or 230*

*To complete this course students must enrol in INFOSYS 340 A and B*

**INFOSYS 341 (2 Points)**

**Information Security**

Presents technical arrangements for making information systems more secure. The process starts with defining the proper security requirements that are usually stated as a data security policy. Other topics include: identification and authentication,

access control, security kernel, physical security, eavesdropping, hardware security, system software security, encryption techniques, public key infrastructure, security protocols and handling subversive software.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 222 and either INFOSYS 224 or COMPSCI 314*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**INFOSYS 720 (2 Points)**

**Information Systems Research**

A substantive review of research in the discipline of information systems. Behavioural, strategic and social issues relating to the design, implementation and impact of information technology applications will be studied.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 750 or 751*

**INFOSYS 722 (2 Points)**

**Decision Support Systems**

A review of the literature in the area of decision support systems (DSS) and DDS frameworks. Understanding the process of decision-making and issues involved in the design, implementation and evaluation of DSS. Additional topics include data mining, user interfaces, knowledge-based DSS, and research directions in DSS. Knowledge gained will be applied through the design and implementation of a DSS prototype.

**INFOSYS 724 (2 Points)**

**Strategic Information Systems**

A comprehensive review of the research literature in the area of strategic information systems. Topics include: competitive advantage through IT, business process re-engineering, electronic commerce and outsourcing.

**INFOSYS 725 (2 Points)**

**Organizations and Information Systems**

Explores the social and cultural issues associated with the development and use of information systems in organizations. Topics include: global information systems, IT and changes in organizational structure, IT and work, and information privacy.

**INFOSYS 726 (2 Points)**

**Information Modelling**

This course addresses the use of various modelling (process, information, and decision) approaches to support transaction and decision-making processes in organizations. Specifically, the course aims at gaining an understanding of an array of different concepts, processes and tools by which problems may be characterized and usefully supported. Problem representation utilizing a variety of perspectives will be studied. The emphasis throughout the course will be on understanding ways by which representations may be enriched by explicitly dealing with problem semantics as well as designing and implementing systems to support process, information, and decision making.

**INFOSYS 727 (2 Points)**

**Information Security Applications**

Addresses concerns regarding confidentiality, privacy and the volatility of information resulting from the use of information technology. Emphasizes such managerial security issues as system security and controls, legal and ethical issues arising from protecting computer files both from a New Zealand

and world perspective, disaster recovery and contingency planning and other tools used for protecting information system resources.

*Restriction: INFOSYS 731*

**INFOSYS 728 (2 Points)**  
**Software Engineering**

Various approaches to software design, testing and maintenance will provide an overview of the area. The development of software metrics and their applicability to software project estimation will be discussed.

**INFOSYS 730 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Computer Networks**

Focuses on contemporary computer networking technologies. Topics covered include: network and transport protocols (TCP/IP and enhancements), high-speed wide area networks, network management systems, mobile and wireless communications technologies and future directions.

**INFOSYS 732 (2 Points)**  
**Readings in Information Systems**

A comprehensive review of the research literature in a particular area of information systems. The particular area of research must be jointly agreed upon by the lecturer and students, and approved by the Head of Department.

**INFOSYS 733 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Information Systems**

**INFOSYS 734 (2 Points)**  
**Electronic Commerce**

Focuses on major research issues and links electronic commerce (EC) with core elements of the IS curriculum. Topics such as EC value network, competition and alliances, mobile commerce, and trust are discussed. A special section deals with theories and models in IS, exemplified by the Theory of Planned Behaviour and the Technology Acceptance Model.

**INFOSYS 735 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Information Systems**

**INFOSYS 736 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Information Systems**

**INFOSYS 737 (2 Points)**  
**Enterprise Resource Planning Systems**

Examines the cross-functional integrated computer-based information systems, commonly referred to as Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems. Systems, common business processes, re-engineering/change management, and enterprise reference models are introduced with a holistic and research-oriented perspective. Considers issues associated with the analysis, design, implementation, and configuration of such enterprise systems and investigates topics such as: supply chain, planning and control systems, optimization, scheduling systems, electronic commerce and business information warehousing.

**INFOSYS 738 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Information Systems**

**INFOSYS 739 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Information Systems**

**INFOSYS 740 (2 Points)**  
**Systems Dynamic for Business Modelling**

The concepts, theories and modelling tools of system dynamics are used to deal with the dynamic complexities arising from interdependencies and interactions amongst various parts and functions within organizations and societies alike. Qualitative and computer modelling are used to gain insight and to foresee the intended outcomes as well as unintended consequences of policies and strategic decisions. All aspects of organizations including HR, IT, Operations, Marketing and Strategy are considered and their interdependencies explored.

*Restriction: OPSMGT 765*

**INFOSYS 750 (2 Points)**  
**Research Methods – Quantitative**

A comprehensive review of the methodological issues in systems research, including detailed coverage of univariate and multivariate data analysis.

*Prerequisite: STATS 208 or equivalent*

**INFOSYS 751 (2 Points)**  
**Research Methods – Qualitative**

Employs a consistent framework to analyse the chain of evidence in completed research projects. Identifies three strategic options in inquiry (objective, constructive and subjective) and related theoretical perspectives and methods of generating evidence. The latter include survey, field study, proof of concept and action research. An experiential approach is adopted. Students develop integrated sets of quality indicators and present in class the results of benchmarking (ie, comparing and contrasting) multiple, conceptually related theses.

**INFOSYS 789 (2 Points)**  
**Research Essay for BCom(Hons)**

A research essay will normally consist of either an in-depth, critical review of the literature in one area of management science, operations management or information systems, or a report on empirical research undertaken by the students.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 750 or 751*

**INFOSYS 796A (7 Points)**  
**INFOSYS 796B (7 Points)**

**MCom Thesis in Information Systems**

*To complete this course student must enrol in INFOSYS 796 A and B*

---

## International Business

---

### Stage II

**INTBUS 202 (2 Points)**  
**Foundations of Strategy**

Examines how firms and industries compete. Focuses on the frameworks and tools needed to formulate, select and implement strategies. Case studies are used to encourage students to develop skills in formulating strategy in a practical context.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 101*

**INTBUS 210 (2 Points)**  
**Global Perspectives on International Business**

The nation state as a political, social and economic entity, the political economy of international trade, direct foreign investment, the international monetary system, and international and regional integration.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 and 111*

*Restriction: 622.201*

**INTBUS 211 (2 Points)****International Business: Operations and Management**

In-depth and systematic analysis of international business firm activities, encompassing the following functional areas and core topics: strategy and structure of international business, strategic choice, control and coordination of international activities, modes of entry and strategic alliances, exporting and importing, global manufacturing, global marketing, global R&D, global HRM, accounting and financial management.

*Prerequisite:* ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101

*Restriction:* 622.201

**Stage III****INTBUS 301 (2 Points)****Strategy and Management in the International SME**

Examines international growth strategy options for small and medium-sized enterprises. These options are examined from a New Zealand perspective and within the context of contrasting internationalization and strategic management frameworks. Case studies are used to facilitate practical application of concepts and techniques.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210 or 211, and INTBUS 202

**INTBUS 302 (2 Points)****Strategy and Management in the Transnational Organization**

Examines the core international business theories underlying the creation and existence of multinational corporations. It focuses on the role of multinationals in international trade and examines how these complex organizations are strategically managed.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210 or 211, and INTBUS 202

**INTBUS 303 (2 Points)****Cross-cultural Management**

Study of management in the context of international and multicultural work environments, aimed at developing understanding of the influence of culture on organizations and organizational practices. Special emphasis is placed on the behaviour of people and groups in international organizations. The focus of the course is on the interaction between people of different cultures in work settings.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210 or 211

**INTBUS 304 (2 Points)****Governments and International Business**

Examination of the relationship between governments and international businesses and consideration of the internationally active firm as a political strategist.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210, and INTBUS 202 or 211

**INTBUS 310 (2 Points)****Business Environment of Europe**

Review, analysis and projection of the environment for business in the European region including: economic, political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, scenarios for change, issues relating to the European market and the political economy of nation-states and regional groupings in the global context, and analysis of business strategies in the European market.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210, and INTBUS 202 or 211

**INTBUS 311 (2 Points)****Business Environment of the Americas**

Review, analysis and projection of the environment for business in the Americas including political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, impacts of technological change, issues relating to the natural environment, and the political economy of nation-states, regional groupings, and relationships in the global context.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210, and INTBUS 202 or 211

**INTBUS 312 (2 Points)****Business Environment of Asia and the Pacific**

Focuses on two issues: the post-Second World War economic development of the East and South-East Asian economies, particularly in terms of government-business relations, and the managerial and cultural contexts in which business takes place in Asia.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210, and INTBUS 202 or 211

**Honours and Master's Courses****INTBUS 701 (2 Points)****Advanced International Business**

Advanced study of trade and investment issues facing firms doing business across national boundaries. A focus on the development of theoretical and conceptual models prepares the way for more in-depth investigation of international business issues.

**INTBUS 702 (2 Points)****Advanced International Management**

Advanced study of management in the context of international and multinational environments. The exploration of theoretical and empirical issues lays the foundation for in-depth inquiry in the discipline.

**INTBUS 703 (2 Points)****Advanced Strategic Management**

Advanced study of strategic management theory and empirical research. This serves as a springboard for more in-depth studies by research essay or thesis.

**INTBUS 704 (2 Points)****Contemporary Research in Strategic Management**

Advanced study of a selected range of contemporary strategic management issues. The development of critical analytical skills facilitates the preparation of a subsequent in-depth research study in strategic management.

**INTBUS 705 (2 Points)****International Entrepreneurship and Innovation**

Advanced study of entrepreneurship and innovation in an international context. Accent is placed on increasing the effectiveness of inquiry through cross-disciplinary research.

**INTBUS 706 (2 Points)****Perspectives on Globalization**

Reviews the causes and consequences of globalization from different perspectives, with particular emphasis on the globalization of products, firms and markets. Resulting analytical insight supports further in-depth research on a specific globalization topic.

- INTBUS 707 (2 Points)**  
**Research Methods**  
 Application of modern research methods in strategy and international business, including both qualitative and quantitative approaches.
- INTBUS 711 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**
- INTBUS 712 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**
- INTBUS 751 (2 Points)**  
**Global Business Operations**  
 Focusing on the volatile environment within which international businesses operate, the course provides an overview of some of the recent developments and emerging trends in international business and analyses the legal, financial and marketing factors that influence the operation of businesses across national boundaries. The course provides a strong theoretical base, sound analytical skills and practical case studies.
- INTBUS 752 (2 Points)**  
**International Management Across Cultures**  
 Provides an analysis of aspects of management which are affected by conducting business across national and cultural boundaries. Topics include: cross-cultural organizational behaviour, cross-cultural communication, international human resource management, and comparative employment relations.
- INTBUS 753 (2 Points)**  
**The Global Business Environment**  
 Provides an understanding of global political, economic, social, technological and ecological relations, associated international institutions, and their implications for international business. Analytical frameworks, case studies and research seminars are used in order to develop students' analytical thinking and decision-making skills.
- INTBUS 754 (2 Points)**  
**Strategic Management of the International Firm**  
 Focuses on strategic management and marketing in the international firm, including management of international development in industries ranging from multi-domestic to global; development of export marketing and importing businesses; strategies for international networking and strategy implementation in multinational and transnational organizations.
- INTBUS 755 (2 Points)**  
**Competing in the Asia Pacific Region**  
 Review, analysis and projection of the environment for business in the Asia-Pacific region including political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, impacts of technological change, issues relating to the natural environment and the economics of nation-states, regional groupings and relationships in the global context.
- INTBUS 756 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Research in Asia Pacific Business**  
 Advanced treatment of topics introduced in INTBUS 312.
- INTBUS 757 (2 Points)**  
**Competing in Europe**  
 Review, analysis, and projection of the environment for business in the European region including political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, and the economics of nation-states, regional groupings, and Europe's relationships in the global context.
- INTBUS 758 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Research in European Business**  
 This course analyses specific business interests and markets within the European context for business. Consideration is focused on potential opportunities inside both Western and Eastern Europe. The course provides for an indepth understanding of the practical context of Europe in the international business arena and of the development and implementation of strategies for the European market.
- INTBUS 759 (2 Points)**  
**Competing in the Americas**  
 Review, analysis and projection of the environment for business in the Americas region, including political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, impacts of technological change, issues relating to the natural environment, and the economics of nation-states, regional groupings and relationships in the global context.
- INTBUS 760 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Research in Business in the Americas**  
 Advanced treatment of topics introduced in INTBUS 311.
- INTBUS 765A (5 Points)**  
**INTBUS 765B (5 Points)**  
**Applied Research Project in International Business**  
 Provides an opportunity for students to experience the environment of international business firsthand. Comprises a research preparation period followed by the execution of an applied research project. A substantial written report must be submitted.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in INTBUS 765 A and B*
- INTBUS 766 (2 Points)**  
**Research Seminar in International Business**  
 Integrates all aspects of the MIntBus programme with the applied research project. Focuses on the integration of the academic and practical experience of students based on the presentation of, and reflection on, their applied research projects (INTBUS 765).
- INTBUS 767A (2 Points)**  
**INTBUS 767B (2 Points)**  
**Second Language for Business**  
 An introduction to a second language for students of English-speaking backgrounds emphasizing oral, aural and written communication and focusing on business interactions and protocol.  
*Restriction: 622.761*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in INTBUS 767 A and B*
- INTBUS 768A (2 Points)**  
**INTBUS 768B (2 Points)**  
**Business English**  
 Advanced English language for students of non-English speaking backgrounds. Focuses on the skills of speaking and writing in business situations.  
*Restriction: INTBUS 762*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in INTBUS 768 A and B*

**INTBUS 769** (4 Points)

**Intensive Language: Asian**

A short intensive language acquisition programme in an Asian language.

*Restriction: 622.763*

**INTBUS 770** (4 Points)

**Intensive Language: European**

A short intensive language acquisition programme in a modern European language.

*Restriction: 622.764*

**INTBUS 789** (2 Points)

**Research Essay for BCom(Hons)**

**INTBUS 796A** (7 Points)

**INTBUS 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis (MCom)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in INTBUS 796 A and B*

---

## International Strategy and Leadership

---

### Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses

**INTSTRAT 652** (3 Points)

**International Trade Regimes**

Analysis of the growth and behaviour of international trading blocs, international trading regimes, eg. GATT, WTO, their implications for New Zealand trade in terms of opportunities and obstructions.

**INTSTRAT 750** (3 Points)

**International Business**

An overview of the key dimensions of international business, including the international firm and its organizational structure, marketing, finance, human resource and strategic dimensions.

**INTSTRAT 751** (3 Points)

**Strategy and Planning for International Competitiveness**

Conceptual analysis of strategy formation in SMEs and corporates, focusing on export development; the role of planning in formulating and implementing strategy; case study analysis of strategy and planning for international entry, including market assessment, resource analysis, environmental analysis.

**INTSTRAT 755** (3 Points)

**Business Environment of Asia**

Analysis of the business environment of Asia, focusing on trading opportunities for New Zealand enterprises in the dynamic economics of East Asia.

**INTSTRAT 756** (1 Point)

**Cross-cultural Dimension of Business**

Study of management in cross-cultural environment, understanding the impact of culture on organizations trading across national borders, cultural issues in entering a market, negotiation and completion of trade contracts.

*Restriction: 601.654*

**INTSTRAT 757** (2 Points)

**Strategic Leadership**

The role of the strategic decision-maker; strategy and leadership; cross-cultural issues in leadership; top management teams; the CEO role; CEO succession; top management reward structures.

**INTSTRAT 760** (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

**INTSTRAT 761** (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

**INTSTRAT 762** (1 Point)

**Special Topic: International Business**

---

## MMgt/GradDipBus

---

### Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses

*Note: As indicated in their respective regulations, courses MANAGEMENT 720-723 are available for the MEdMgt and the MEMgt.*

**MANAGEMENT 699** (2 Points)

**Special Project (Strategic Project Management)**

Effective project management relies on alignment of organizational objectives of cost, timeliness and quality with those of the project. Successful projects need to be placed in the organizational context and fit both organizational and professional research objectives. Topics include: project identification and demand forecast techniques, project design and planning methods, technological forecasting and evaluation techniques, capital budgeting, project control and scheduling techniques.

**MANAGEMENT 704** (2 Points)

**Research Processes**

Provides insights into the business research process, particularly the interaction of quantitative and qualitative methods within the context of action research. Both the development and refinement of research programmes are discussed in depth.

**MANAGEMENT 705** (12 Points)

**Managing a Strategic Intervention**

Project-based research into strategic change and/or organizational change. The project (or projects) will be supported by seminars, workshops, classroom attendance and readings. The written project(s) will be prefixed by a compulsory, research processes course plus a research proposal. The individual research activity will document an analysis of particular strategic initiatives and the management of the processes involved. The project(s) will track each initiative from initiation through to implementation and may include a detailed analysis of all or part of the development, planning and implementation processes within an organization.

*Restriction: 643.703*

**MANAGEMENT 706** (4 Points)

**Business Research Project 1**

Supervised empirical or analytical research on organizational change, organizational design, or governance, designed to cover areas of managerial competence. The form of the written report will depend upon the project's orientation. It will be grounded in the appropriate literature, and will provide an analysis and critique, and document an analysis of organizational needs and establish a planning and implementation framework.

**MANAGEMENT 707** (4 Points)

**Business Research Project 2**

Supervised empirical research involves an organizational assessment. A written project will

document an analysis of the student's organization, based on a multi-disciplinary framework, and will draw appropriate conclusions and recommendations.

**MANAGEMENT 708 (4 Points)**  
**Business Research Project 3**

A written project addresses major strategic and organizational issues, involving the analysis, evaluation and implementation of strategic change. This can also involve areas that cross-function within the organization, eg, marketing and production, and can be benchmarked against organizational and international best practice.

**MANAGEMENT 712A (7 Points)**  
**MANAGEMENT 712B (7 Points)**

**Applied Research in Organizations**

An integrated combination of supervised empirical or analytical research projects and investigations into strategic interventions and/or organizational change. Selections will be designed to meet the requirements of each individual student and are subject to the approval of the programme director. Research projects and investigations will track each strategic or organizational initiative, from initiation through to implementation, and may include a detailed analysis of all or part of the development, planning and implementation processes within an organization. Research proposals and reports will be grounded in the appropriate literature and use of quantitative and qualitative research methodologies. *To complete this course students must enrol in MANAGEMENT 712 A and B*

**MANAGEMENT 720 (3 Points)**  
**Organization and Management**

Approaches to organization strategy, structure and design as applied to professional organizations are considered. Management theory and practice in professional contexts. Differences in managerial and professional culture and values are examined with particular reference to the relationship between professional autonomy and managerial control systems. Leadership and management roles in collegial organizations.

**MANAGEMENT 721 (3 Points)**  
**Financial Management**

The development and use of appropriate accounting information for organizational decision-making and planning. Topics to be considered include: deriving and analysing financial statements, financial planning, financial controls, capital budgeting and business units (including profit and cost centres). An important aspect of the course will be the development of an understanding of the budgetary process.

**MANAGEMENT 722 (3 Points)**  
**Human Resource Management**

A strategic and functional overview of the theory and practice of the management of people in paid employment. The special issues of managing professionals and support staff, New Zealand's changing demographic and legislative environment, and appraising professional performance, will be integrated into the course. Students will develop an understanding of models of human resource management appropriate to their own organizations and experience.

**MANAGEMENT 723 (3 Points)**

**Service Delivery**

Issues related to the successful delivery of an effective service to organizational stakeholders are covered, including operations management, scheduling, continuous quality improvement, customer orientation and focus and employee satisfaction. Students will also develop an understanding of how consultation, planning, evaluation and accountability processes can facilitate organizational learning and improve service delivery. Issues related to the marketing of professional services are also considered.

**MANAGEMENT 724 (2 Points)**

**Strategic Management of Professional Organizations**

Advanced analysis of strategic management issues that confront health care and other professional organizations in a dynamic environment. These will include managing with professionals, organization design, strategic planning and the management of change in professional organizations.

**MANAGEMENT 725 (2 Points)**

**Contemporary Health Care Delivery Systems**

Analysis of the management systems employed in contemporary health care organizations including case mix, managed care methods and health care integration systems. Comparative and international developments will be reviewed.

**MANAGEMENT 726 (2 Points)**

**The Public Sector**

The reasons for and the theories behind the radical restructuring of the New Zealand public sector. It looks at the distinctive features of the public sector system (such as the separation of policy and service, purchase-provider split, competition and contestability) and weaves these into a strategic view for the delivery of services.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 727 (2 Points)**

**Organization and Management in the Public Sector**

This course examines the new organizational forms that have emerged in the restructured public sector, eg, SOEs, LATEs etc, and their strategic response to the new environment. Topics include: strategic planning, organizational structure and design, contracting out and internal charging, pricing and costing.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 728 (2 Points)**

**Quality Management in the Public Sector**

Quality management in the public sector focusing on performance management. Topics include: the development of a customer focus and a quality culture, incentive contracting and remuneration systems, and the management of diversity.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 729 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Public Sector Management**

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 730 (2 Points)**

**Service Organizations**

Service as a source of differentiation, distinctive aspects of service management and marketing and developing the strategic service vision.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 731** (2 Points)  
**Managing for Service Quality**  
 Focuses on: designing the service delivery system, outlining tools and techniques for managing service quality, and techniques for managing capacity and demand fluctuations.  
*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 732** (2 Points)  
**Managing Service Customers and the Service System**  
 Techniques for managing the external customer (ways to build customer loyalty) and managing the internal customer (ways to motivate your staff and build their loyalty) to become a 'service-driven service company'.  
*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 733** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Services Management**  
*Prerequisite: 643.601*

## Maori Development

### Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses

**MAORIDEV 701** (3 Points)  
**Maori Society: History and Resources**  
 A survey of Maori economic activity and resources by examining the interaction of culture, society and commerce. Considers the relevant regulatory environment as it pertains to Maori resource use and commercial development, the relevant findings and implications of the Waitangi Tribunal negotiations, Te Ture Whenua and the Maori Land Court.

**MAORIDEV 704** (3 Points)  
**Maori Business Development: Te Whakapakari Huanga Māori**  
 The principles of marketing and assessment and the evaluation of business opportunities. Participants examine an analysis of successful national and international collective-entrepreneurship models to develop a business checklist and present a case for finance. The focus of this course is the integration of concepts developed across all disciplines covered in the course. Students examine specific case scenarios relating to Maori development.

**MAORIDEV 710** (2 Points)  
**Accounting for Maori Business: Te Takinga mai me Te Tai**  
 Accounting practice for Maori organizations exploring the structure of accounting information and the use of accounting data for managerial planning, decision-making and control. Topics include: an introduction to financial statements, analysing financial statements and an analysis of the types of commercial information and accounting systems used by Maori organizations.  
*Restriction: 604.602*

**MAORIDEV 711** (2 Points)  
**Legal Studies for Maori Business**  
 The general ideas, policies and practice of commercial law, the legal environment of business, contract law, legal aspects of company-directing, partnerships, trust law, company floats, takeovers and legislation governing private and corporate business practice in New Zealand. Cases and study will emphasize aspects of these in relation to their impact with and for Maori business with additional emphasis placed on the Treaty of Waitangi.  
*Restriction: 604.608*

**MAORIDEV 712** (2 Points)  
**Management of Maori Organizations**  
 Analysis of the nature of Maori enterprise and the Maori manager in relation to modern management theory and frameworks.  
*Restriction: 604.603*

**MAORIDEV 713** (1 Point)  
**Special Topic**  
*Restriction: 604.605*

**MAORIDEV 714** (1 Point)  
**Special Topic**

## Marketing

### Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses

**MARKET 701** (3 Points)  
**Marketing Strategy**  
 Marketing, the role of marketing in an organization and the relationship of marketing to other disciplines. Procedures for analysing internal competencies and competitive advantages, strategies for growth and development and new product development and the development of strategies and marketing plans are studied.

**MARKET 702** (3 Points)  
**Understanding Customers and Markets**  
 Develops an appreciation and understanding of consumer and buyer behaviour and market research, and their implications for management decision-making.  
*Prerequisite: MARKET 701*

**MARKET 703** (3 Points)  
**Marketing Communications**  
 Develops an appreciation and understanding of the individual elements of the marketing communications mix: advertising, direct marketing, sales promotion and public relations. Further, how these may be managed as an integrated programme to implement and support the brand, product or service strategy.  
*Prerequisite: MARKET 701*

**MARKET 705** (3 Points)  
**Special Project in Marketing**  
 A supervised, independent study and investigation of a chosen aspect of marketing or international business. The student is required to present a detailed investigative report.

**MARKET 708** (1 Point)  
**Special Topic: Advanced Strategy**

**MARKET 713** (2 Points)  
**Marketing for Managers**  
 Marketing concept and process, the role of marketing and marketers within the organization and wider social context, identification of marketing opportunities, developing marketing strategies, planning marketing programmes and managing the marketing effort.

**MARKET 714** (2 Points)  
**e-Commerce and Interactive Marketing**  
 Examines how new interactive marketing technologies are impacting on marketing strategy and communications. The sessions include: lectures, guest speakers and computer laboratories in order to

explore the changing market environment from both a theoretical and an applied perspective. Examines demographic and psychographic trends in the New Zealand marketing environment in the context of changing marketing communications, media trends and communication opportunities.

*Restriction: 605.609*

**MARKET 715** (2 Points)

**Creating and Managing Brands**

Brand equity is a crucial component of competitive advantage. This course explores the strategic role brands play in local and global competition, provides guidelines on how to develop and manage strong brands, and examines the emerging role of brands in an electronic environment.

**MARKET 720** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Services Marketing**

**MARKET 721** (2 Points)

**Sales Management**

Investigates the changing role and potential of the sales management function and how to effectively manage the interface of sales management with other aspects of management, particularly relationship marketing.

*Prerequisite: MARKET 701*

**Management and Employment Relations**

**Stage I**

**MGMT 101** (2 Points)

**Organization and Management**

The relationships between organizations and society. Schools of management thought. Introduction to employment relations. Contemporary and critical issues in management, policy and practice.

*Restriction: MGMT 191 and 192*

**MGMT 191** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Business**

Develops an integrated understanding of how business works in today's global markets. Real life situations are used to examine how people, products and technology interact for business success. Learning approaches that enable effective organizational communication for creativity and innovation are developed through independent and collaborative activities in the study of marketing, human resource management, organizational culture, and operations management.

**MGMT 192** (2 Points)

**Business Management**

Continues MGMT 191 using a business simulation to advance understanding of how businesses operate. Competing as teams operating a virtual business, students learn how leadership and strategic management can enhance productive workplace relations and individual careers. The role of entrepreneurship and enterprise in New Zealand's move towards a knowledge economy is also examined.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 191*

**Stage II**

**MGMT 201** (2 Points)

**Management**

A study of contemporary perspectives and trends in general management. Opportunity is given to develop a number of practical management skills, including creative thinking, organization analysis, business report writing and problem diagnosis.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 101 or SCIGEN 201*

**MGMT 211** (2 Points)

**Organizational Behaviour**

Description and analysis of the behaviour of individuals and groups within organizations with a focus on the New Zealand context. Topics include: individual differences, group dynamics and the impact of culture and communication on individuals in organizational life. Knowledge of organizational behaviour is a prerequisite for effective management.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 101 or SCIGEN 201*

**MGMT 212** (2 Points)

**Organization Theory**

The contribution of classical theorists to the study of organizations. The work of Marx, Weber, Durkheim, Barnard and Parsons. Bureaucracy, functionalism and systems theory. The critique of functionalist and systems approaches. Organizational typologies. Critical understanding of organizations. Symbolic, institutional and contingency theories of organizations. Introduction to organizational structure.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 101 or SCIGEN 201*

**MGMT 213** (2 Points)

**Communication Processes**

An introduction to the theories and processes of communication. Includes aspects of interpersonal and small group communication, particularly as they apply to the workplace.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 101 or SCIGEN 201*

**MGMT 223** (2 Points)

**Employment Relations in Theory and Practice**

An introduction to the theory and practice of employment relations. Main theoretical schools and frames of reference. The roles and motivations of the parties involved in the employment relationship. The social, political and economic environment of employment relations. The New Zealand legislative framework for employment relations. Contemporary issues, including the changing nature of work and workplace relations, and the Employment Relations Act.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 101 or SOCIOL 101*

*Restriction: 641.221, 641.222*

**MGMT 231** (2 Points)

**Business in Society**

An in-depth look at the ideology of modern business, the economic and social 'revolution' in New Zealand and the process of globalization. An integrative course, considering the economic, social, psychological and moral impacts of global capitalism. Most of the focus will be on the impacts of the market on key social indicators in New Zealand, but time will also be devoted to international issues.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 101 or SOCIOL 105*

**MGMT 232** (2 Points)

**Kaupapa Māori in Business**

An introduction to an indigenous people's approach to business and ethics, and research. Maori people, their world view and the resulting ethical and knowledge frameworks, particularly those that relate

to business development. Maori thought is compared with key ideas in Western, Islamic, Buddhist, African and Pacific thought and business ethics. Indigenous people's research methods and the role of research in the construction of knowledge.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 130 or MGMT 101 or PHIL 102 or 103 or 152

**MGMT 291 (2 Points)**

**Project Management and Communications**

Tools to support project management and the development of skills in communication (written, oral and electronic) to support a project management effort, including executive summaries, progress reporting, documentation and proposals. Issues in electronic communication and the impact of technology on communication will be addressed.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 191, 192 and INFOMGMT 191, 192 and STATS 108 or 191

**MGMT 292 (2 Points)**

**Organizational Behaviour and Human Resource Practice**

Analysis of the generic functions of human resource management from the perspective of underlying theory in organizational behaviour, including theories associated with perception, motivation, job satisfaction and psychological contracting. Functions studied include: job analysis, recruitment, selection, training and development, performance appraisal and remuneration.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 191, 192 and INFOMGMT 191, 192

**MGMT 293 (2 Points)**

**Employment Relations and Workplace Change**

Analysis of the quality of management-union and management-workforce relations in New Zealand, including policy questions associated with employment negotiations and the management of technological change. Distinctive features of employment regulation in New Zealand. The role of work practices, workforce education and skills, and employee relations' philosophies and styles in workplace performance.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 191, 192, INFOMGMT 191, 192

**MGMT 294 (2 Points)**

**Contemporary Organization Design**

Principles of contemporary organization design including relevant organization theory. Consideration of the impact of environmental factors, information technology, and the implications of the knowledge economy for organization design. Consideration of contemporary approaches to organization design, including: team and project-based structures, knowledge creation and management, centres for innovation, and network and virtual organizations.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 191

**Stage III**

**MGMT 301 (2 Points)**

**Management Theory and Practice**

Students create and manage virtual companies in a 12-week business simulation. Theory is linked to practice in multidisciplinary teams, personal and group effectiveness and other classic and contemporary management issues. Readings and assignments focus on reflective learning, with an emphasis on advanced, written and oral communication skills.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 201 or 211 or ENGGEN 302

**MGMT 302 (2 Points)**

**Business Policy and Strategy**

A case-based course which focuses on analysing and responding to complex organizational situations from a general manager's perspective. The processes of strategizing, the impact of organizational contexts and the subsequent strategic tensions are explored so as to understand the adoption of various strategic practices.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 212 or INTBUS 202

**MGMT 303 (2 Points)**

**Entrepreneurship and New Ventures**

Understanding of the role of entrepreneurship and innovation in new small ventures and existing firms. Exposure to the issues related to starting and managing new small ventures, and establishing entrepreneurial programmes in existing firms.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Management and Employment Relations or ENGGEN 302

**MGMT 310A (2 Points)**

**MGMT 310B (2 Points)**

**Project in NZ Management**

Applied management within a New Zealand organization. Theoretical understanding of management is linked to organizational practice in a student project, resulting in a management report and an independent research project.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 201 or 211 or 212 or 213 or 223 or 231 or 232

To complete this course students must enrol in MGMT 310 A and B

**MGMT 311 (2 Points)**

**Rethinking Organizational Design**

Analysis of different organizational design alternatives, configurations and forms. Explores various challenges that confront managers, theorists, consultants and professionals attempting to create effective organizations. Examines principles of organizational design and looks at the emergence of new organizational forms, eg, alliances, network organizations, team-based designs and alternative organizational models.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 212 or 302

**MGMT 313 (2 Points)**

**Gender in Organizations**

The experiences and implications of increasing numbers of women in the paid workforce are explored in an interdisciplinary way. Topics include: home-work interface, female identity, influences of gender and ethnicity, sexual harassment issues, career development, women managers, leadership and power, feminist critiques of organizations, women-run organizations, and micro and macro strategies for change.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 211 or WOMEN 100

**MGMT 315 (2 Points)**

**Interpersonal Relations in Organizations**

Provides an intensive, experientially-based understanding of interpersonal relations in organized settings. Relational assumptions and styles are explored first-hand, using dyadic group and intergroup exercises.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 211 or WOMEN 100 or Departmental consent required

**MGMT 316 (2 Points)**

**Organizational Culture**

Provides an overview of the organizational culture field. Topics include: modern and postmodern perspectives on culture, symbolism, culture types, psychodynamic influences on culture, organizational stories, and methods for accessing and reading cultural phenomena. Fieldwork is used to give students an experiential understanding of the topic.  
*Prerequisite:* MGMT 201 or 211 or 212 or 292 or PSYCH 263

**MGMT 318** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**MGMT 321** (2 Points)  
**Comparative Employment Relations**

Theories of comparative employment relations. The influence of changes in the global economy on employment relations. Debates over a social dimension to multilateral and regional trade environments and response to these debates from employers, labour and government. The rise of transnational corporations, their influence on the employment relationship, and developing trade union strategies in the face of that influence.  
*Prerequisite:* 641.221 or 641.222 or MGMT 223

**MGMT 322** (2 Points)  
**Contemporary Employment Relations**

An advanced study of how employers, unions and workers manage employment relations in the contemporary context, including consideration of current issues and debates. The impact of a deregulated environment on trade unions, employers and workplace governance; labour market flexibility and atypical employment patterns; workplace reform; individual and collective bargaining.  
*Prerequisite:* 641.221 or 641.222 or MGMT 223

**MGMT 323** (2 Points)  
**Human Resource Management**

Historical and philosophical bases of personnel management and HRM. Roles of HR specialists and their relationship to strategy. Influence of labour law on HR practices. HR functions such as job analysis and design, recruitment and selection, training and development, remuneration and benefits, management of labour relations and contemporary issues.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 211 or ENGGEN 302 or PSYCH 263

**MGMT 324** (2 Points)  
**Women and Employment Relations**

A study of work, both paid and unpaid, from a gendered perspective. Women's functions in the labour market and the labour process, the gendered construction of skill, pay equity, women in management, women in trade unions, women in industrial relations and policy initiatives arising out of these issues.

*Prerequisite:* 641.221 or 641.222 or MGMT 223

**MGMT 326** (2 Points)  
**Work, Technology and Organization**

Issues in technological change, contemporary work and organizational practices. The social impact of new technologies such as advanced manufacturing technologies and advanced information technologies on organizations and the workplace; implications for management and labour relations, work and society.  
*Prerequisite:* MGMT 211 or 212 or 223

**MGMT 327** (2 Points)  
**Maori Organizations and Governance**

An analysis of the historical, statutory, social and cultural imperatives and impediments that have shaped and continue to shape Maori development, Maori organizations and the governance of Maori organizations.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 232

**MGMT 328** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**MGMT 331** (2 Points)  
**Business Ethics**

An examination of ethical issues which arise in business contexts. Several frameworks for resolving such issues are presented. Three main areas are covered: ethical dilemmas facing individuals within organizations, ethical issues for organizations, fundamental questions about the ethical nature of business.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 231 or any 4 points at Stage II in the BA, Ethics Programme

**MGMT 332** (2 Points)  
**Business and Culture**

An opportunity for study of issues arising at the interface between business and society; explores in particular the dynamics of a business culture and the role of business in cultural change.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 231

**MGMT 335** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**MGMT 336** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Creating Wealth from Technology**

An intensive course in identifying opportunity and commercializing technology.

**MGMT 337** (2 Points)  
**Current Issues in Business, Society and Culture**

Business is conceived of differently in different cultural world views, some seeing it as a force that ought to be liberated from as much constraint as possible, others seeing it as a liability that must be controlled for the sake of the collective. A variety of cultural models of business and the impacts these have on social ordering will be examined.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 231

**MGMT 338** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Career Management**

A practically-oriented programme of study in present day career structures and their likely development in the twenty-first century. Includes career theories, effective career practice, and the development of relevant career skills. Personal career assessment and planning.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 201 or 211 or PSYCH 263

**MGMT 339** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Honours Seminar**

Seminars on advanced topics in organizations and management behaviour. This course is available to students who are interested in going on to do an honours year in MER. It provides an introduction to the requirements and experiences of advanced learning in management and employment relations, within an intensive small group environment.

**MGMT 340** (2 Points)  
**ICT and Organizational Change**

The implications of IT-led organizational transformations. Topics include: technology-enabled

strategies, organizational performance, emergent organizational designs and the management of technology. A case-driven approach will be used to highlight the issues in this course.

*Prerequisite: OPSMGT 258*

**MGMT 391 (2 Points)**

**Human Resource Management and Business Performance**

Analysis of the role of effective HR strategy as a necessary, but not sufficient, condition of firm viability and its potential to provide a source of sustained competitive advantage. General principles for improving business performance through human resource strategy and their adaptation in dynamic and complex contexts, including knowledge-intensive competition. Globalization and the special problems of human resource strategy in multidivisional and international firms. Techniques for modelling and measuring the links between HRM, other business functions and the firm's performance.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 292*

**MGMT 392 (2 Points)**

**Managing Change**

Analysis of contemporary organizational and people management issues in a context of change, including innovation and imitation. Issues include leadership style, facilitation of creativity and the systemic management of complex change. Assessment of personal and professional responses to change and frameworks for the assessment of individual and group learning. The role of new technology as both a source and enabler of change.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 293 and 294*

**MGMT 393 (2 Points)**

**Project in Human Resource Management**

Applied human resource management project that requires the integration of skills and theory in business and information management. This project builds directly on management courses previously completed in the BBIM programme, consolidating existing skills and knowledge and enhancing understanding of how theory is applied in practice.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 291, 292, 293, 294 and INFOMGMT 295*  
*Restriction: ACCTG 393, MKTG 393*

**MGMT 394 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: MGMT 292*

**MGMT 395 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: MGMT 293*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**MGMT 711 (2 Points)**

**Strategic Human Resource Management**

Theory and research in HR strategy, including debates about 'best fit' and 'best practice'. The resource-based view of the firm and competition for human capital in the knowledge economy. The roles of HR specialists and the practice of HR planning.

*Restriction: 641.723, MGMT 761*

**MGMT 712 (2 Points)**

**Employee Recruitment and Development**

The 'make versus buy' decision in HR and review of key studies in recruitment, selection, socialization, employee development and labour turnover. Skill development in job analysis and employment

interviewing. Equal employment opportunity (EEO) issues.

*Restriction: MGMT 777*

**MGMT 713 (2 Points)**

**Performance Management and Reward Systems**

Theories underpinning performance management and studies of performance appraisal, pay policies, promotion systems and non-pay rewards. Skill development in core techniques such as job evaluation and performance appraisal design.

*Restriction: MGMT 746*

**MGMT 714 (2 Points)**

**Work Organization and Employment Negotiation**

International theories and research on work organization, the future of work and collective and individual bargaining including the nature and growth of more cooperative bargaining strategies, and review of bargaining and mediation practice in New Zealand. Skill-based negotiation exercises.

*Restriction: MGMT 768*

**MGMT 715 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Contemporary Themes in Management and Employment Relations**

Description and analysis of the behaviour of individuals and groups with a focus on the New Zealand context. Topics include: individual differences, group dynamics and the impact of culture and communication on individuals in organizational life. Knowledge of organizational behaviour is a prerequisite for effective management.

**MGMT 716 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**MGMT 721 (2 Points)**

**Frameworks of Change and Innovation**

Builds a foundation and framework for the study of organizational change and innovation and provides multiple perspectives on the topic, including: 'purpose', 'context', 'structure', 'culture' and 'technology'. Case-based teaching is focused on best practice and challenges for New Zealand organizations in a global economy.

**MGMT 722 (6 Points)**

**Organizational Change and Innovation: Theory and Practice**

Provides comprehensive and practical exposure to contemporary practices of organizational change and innovation in a closely supervised, team-taught, intensive format. Through interactions with companies, students have the opportunity to explore real change issues at the company or industry level of analysis. In addition, throughout the course, students develop their professional skills in order to make a difference in organizations of the future.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 721*

**MGMT 723 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**MGMT 724 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**MGMT 731 (2 Points)**

**Contemporary Organizations and Management**

The world of organizations and management is changing as a consequence of new technologies, globalization and increased competition for resources. Students will examine the emergence of new organizational forms, such as network, project-

based and virtual (e-business) organizations, and develop their theoretical understanding of the reasons for these developments. Students will also gain an understanding of the new managerial roles that are required in this new organizational environment. Through their participation in this course, students will also become familiar with, and be able to apply, the tools of organizational analysis.  
*Restriction: MGMT 751*

**MGMT 732 (2 Points)****Critical Organizational Analysis**

Explores critical theories and ideas about formal organizations in contemporary Western societies. Emphasizes and critically examines the relationships between the social contexts of organizations and the development of organizational theory and practice, while also considering micro-processes in organizational enactments such as organizational psychologies. In particular, the course considers the implications of the post-modern debate in social and cultural theory for organizational analysis. The questions explored include the problematics of rationality, structure, agency, authority, legitimacy and their counter-practices.  
*Restriction: MGMT 757*

**MGMT 733 (2 Points)****Issues in Society, Culture and Business**

The advanced study of issues arising at the interface between business, society and culture, and analysis of the role of business and commerce in the construction and dissemination of culture. Topics will be selected from the following: the ethics of modern business, business and the environment, the market culture and the culture industries.  
*Restriction: MGMT 770*

**MGMT 734 (2 Points)****Gender and Diversity in Organizations**

Focuses on the identity of individuals and the concomitant gendered analysis of organizational processes. The interactions of gender, ethnicity and class will be explored according to interests of students. The application of identity in organizations will be studied through the dilemmas of managing and valuing diversity, its implication for everyday practice and alternate organizational forms.  
*Restriction: 641.713, MGMT 752*

**MGMT 735 (2 Points)****Kaupapa Māori and Organizations**

Students will be introduced to a world view which draws on a uniquely Maori intellectual and philosophical framework that is manifest in tradition and practice (tikanga me ritenga). This is the basis from which the students will construct their perspectives (matauranga Māori) of Maori organization and management.  
*Restriction: MGMT 771*

**MGMT 736 (2 Points)****Special Topic****MGMT 737 (2 Points)****Special Topic****MGMT 740 (2 Points)****Foundations of Research**

Theory and philosophy of social science research methods.  
*Restriction: 641.701*

**MGMT 741 (2 Points)****Research Practice**

The application of research methods in organizational contexts including different approaches to the study of organizations and organizational behaviour with special emphasis on qualitative methodology. Includes a practical application of different approaches to studying organizations such as: experimental, survey, qualitative, archival research, as well as some important issues in doing organizational research using qualitative methodologies.  
*Restriction: 641.701*

**MGMT 789 (2 Points)****Research Essay****MGMT 790A (2 Points)****MGMT 790B (2 Points)****Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGMT 790 A and B*

**MGMT 796A (7 Points)****MGMT 796B (7 Points)****Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGMT 796 A and B*

**Marketing****Stage II****MKTG 201 (2 Points)****Marketing Management**

Introduction to the fundamentals of marketing management, including basic practical marketing concepts and elements of marketing practice: the nature of the role and operation of marketing within New Zealand, the global economy, and the individual firm.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 and 111 and MGMT 101 and STATS 108*

**MKTG 202 (2 Points)****Marketing Research**

The fundamental concepts and stages of marketing research provided within an overall structural framework, including: how to integrate stages, carry out research in a scientific manner, read and analyse research reports, apply research skills.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and STATS 208*

*Restriction: 646.310*

**MKTG 291 (2 Points)****Marketing Perspectives**

Focuses on the major principles and concepts of modern marketing management and on the challenges that are involved in effectively planning, implementing and evaluating marketing mix strategies. Particular attention is placed on the application of theory to practice through the use of case studies and through the discussion of current business stories and events from New Zealand and around the world.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 191*

**MKTG 292 (2 Points)****Creating Market Knowledge**

The fundamental concepts and stages of marketing research provided within an overall structural

framework, including how to integrate stages, carry out research in a scientific manner, read and analyse research reports and apply research skills. Students gain hands-on experience in statistical analysis of marketing research data.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 291, MGMT 191, 192, INFOMGMT 191, 192, STATS 191 or 108

*Restriction:* MKTG 202

**MKTG 293 (2 Points)**

**Understanding Consumers**

A theoretical framework for understanding aspects of buyer behaviour is examined including the IT-mediated environment. This includes: individual and group decision-making processes, social and cultural influences, involvement and situational impacts.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 291, MGMT 191, 192, INFOMGMT 191, 192

*Restriction:* MKTG 303

**Stage III**

**MKTG 301 (2 Points)**

**Marketing Strategy**

Focuses on development, implementation, and control of marketing strategies needed to attain and sustain an organization's competitive advantage with the objective of achieving long-term organizational goals. Introduces techniques and tools that assist in developing and evaluating the effectiveness of marketing strategies, as well as discussing the contemporary issues and trends in marketing practice. Instructional methods include: the use of case studies, the development of a marketing plan and a computer-based decision-making simulation Mike's Bikes.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 201 and 202

**MKTG 302 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Marketing Research**

Focuses on the more technical components of market research. Covers advanced methods used in marketing research such as: logistic regression, discriminant analysis, factor analysis, cluster analysis, multidimensional scaling, analysis of variance, conjoint analysis and choice modelling.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 201 and 202

*Restriction:* 646.310

**MKTG 303 (2 Points)**

**Buyer Behaviour**

Essentially, the application of psychology to how people make consumption decisions and interpret advertising. This includes a consideration of individual differences and environmental/situational influences on consumers.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 201 and 202

**MKTG 305 (2 Points)**

**Services Marketing and Management**

The marketing management issues faced by organizations competing in the service sector or other firms developing service as a source of competitive advantage. The course also looks at the implications of relationships, customer satisfaction, service recovery and other critical elements in services marketing.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 201 and 202

**MKTG 306 (2 Points)**

**Advertising and Promotion**

Discusses the elements of the marketing

communications mix: advertising, personal selling, public relations, sales promotion and direct marketing. The facilitation of marketing communications through electronic channels. The decision-making process when developing promotional campaigns to support a firm's brand or produce/service strategy will also be covered.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 201 and 202

**MKTG 307 (2 Points)**

**Retailing**

The fundamentals of retail marketing including the integration of spatial and aspatial characteristics of consumer store choice, the role of retailing in the overall marketing concept, and the practice and future of retailing in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 201 and 202

**MKTG 312 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 201 and 202

**MKTG 313 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 201 and 202

**MKTG 314 (2 Points)**

**Customer Relationship Management**

An investigation of the use of electronic commerce technologies for the effective management of relationships with individual customers. Coverage includes topics related to product and service delivery on the web, communication using the web infrastructure, data collection and analysis, personalized exchange of information with customers and new models of managing customer relationships both internal and external.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 202 or OPSMGT 258

**MKTG 391 (2 Points)**

**Strategic Services Marketing**

Examines traditional strategy topics from a service delivery perspective and within a relationship marketing perspective. The decisions and challenges involved in strategy development, implementation and change are analysed in conjunction with issues such as relationship architecture, service recovery, customer satisfaction, internal marketing and return on quality. Also examines the use of information technology as a tool to create competitive advantage through service delivery.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 291, 292, 293

*Restriction:* MKTG 301, 305

**MKTG 392 (2 Points)**

**Advertising and Communications**

The marketing communications process and the elements of the marketing communications mix are studied to understand how a marketing communications strategy is planned, implemented and controlled in theory and practice. The interface between advertising and communications and e-commerce is also examined in depth.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 291, 292, 293

*Restriction:* MKTG 306

**MKTG 393 (2 Points)**

**Project in Marketing**

Applied marketing project that requires the integration of skills and theory in business and information management. This project builds directly on marketing courses previously completed

in the BBIM programme, consolidating existing skills and knowledge and enhancing understanding of how theory is applied in practice.

*Prerequisite:* MKTG 291, 292, 293, INFOMGMT 293, MGMT 291

*Restriction:* ACCTG 393, MGMT 393

### **Honours and Master's Courses**

**MKTG 701** (2 Points)

#### **Advanced Marketing 1**

An introduction to marketing philosophy and theory, with an emphasis on developing critical and analytical skills required to undertake postgraduate research, and to develop an in-depth research knowledge in particular areas of marketing.

**MKTG 702** (2 Points)

#### **Advanced Marketing 2**

An advanced study of marketing theory relating to contemporary issues. The aim is to develop the ability of critical evaluation. Examples of topics covered include: contemporary services marketing issues, relationship marketing, branding and corporate identity.

**MKTG 703** (2 Points)

#### **Research Methods in Marketing 1**

A core course for any student interested in conducting sound research. An overview of the research process, an examination of different types of research philosophies used in the discovery of theory. An introduction to both qualitative and quantitative research techniques is provided to assist students to think critically when designing a research study.

**MKTG 704** (2 Points)

#### **Research Methods in Marketing 2**

A continuation of MKTG 703, with the aim of providing students with a more in-depth knowledge of data analysis using multivariate methods. The aim is to gain an appreciation of the appropriate types of quantitative methods of analysis and research designs suitable for different types of research problems.

**MKTG 705** (2 Points)

#### **Advanced Buyer Behaviour 1**

A core course in the postgraduate programme because it lays the foundation for a deeper understanding of consumers. This is an advanced study of fundamental theories in consumer behaviour, where both classical and contemporary theories are critically evaluated.

**MKTG 706** (2 Points)

#### **Advanced Buyer Behaviour 2**

Builds upon the foundation of MKTG 705. The objective is to explore in depth some important and interesting issues to provide a stronger background in consumer research. Examples of topics include: diffusion of innovation, and the role of moods and emotions, self-referencing and cross-cultural research.

**MKTG 708** (2 Points)

#### **Marketing Models**

The application of mathematical and statistical models in marketing. Topics covered will be consumer purchase models, media exposure models and sales response models.

**MKTG 709** (2 Points)

#### **Information Technology in Marketing**

The advanced study of IT in pursuit of competitive advantage and in marketing communications. Topics include: database marketing and marketing in new media such as the Internet. Aims to provide MCom students with an understanding of the impact of IT on organizations and in marketing communications, and on resulting changes that are occurring in marketing theory and practice.

**MKTG 710** (2 Points)

#### **Advanced Communications Research**

An examination of current and emerging research in communications. Examines relevant research into consumer behaviour as it relates to the receiving and processing of advertising messages. By examining various points of view, students should have a better understanding of the theoretical issues involving the use of the advertising media selection and creative execution of advertising programmes.

**MKTG 716** (2 Points)

#### **Special Topic: Electronic Commerce**

This is an integrative course jointly taught by ISOM and Marketing. Reviews the major elements and applications of electronic commerce and inspects the ways in which integrated systems for electronic commerce might be realized. The emphasis of this course is on synthesizing the many strands of developments in the field of electronic commerce by applying them to a major concrete situation. Accordingly, student teams will conduct an analysis of the prospects of using electronic commerce in an assigned industry. The team will also create an e-business/electronic strategy and a systems architectural model for an individual firm in the industry.

**MKTG 717** (2 Points)

#### **Special Topic**

**MKTG 718** (2 Points)

#### **Special Topic**

**MKTG 719** (2 Points)

#### **Special Topic**

**MKTG 720** (2 Points)

#### **Entrepreneurship, Innovation and Marketing**

An examination of current and emerging research issues at the marketing/entrepreneurship interface. Examines entrepreneurial marketing and innovation in a cross-disciplinary fashion, drawing on knowledge from other fields including strategy, international business, psychology, sociology and science. Exposes students to fundamental marketing issues related to entrepreneurial firm start-up, growth, development and sustenance.

**MKTG 789** (2 Points)

#### **Research Essay for BCom(Hons)**

**MKTG 790A** (2 Points)

**MKTG 790B** (2 Points)

#### **Dissertation (MCom)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MKTG 790 A and B*

**MKTG 794A** (7 Points)

**MKTG 794B** (7 Points)

#### **Advanced Research Studies in Marketing**

An integrated combination of research projects and investigations in selected topics in marketing designed to meet the needs of each individual student. The selection is subject to the approval of the Head of Department of Marketing. Research proposals and reports will be grounded in the appropriate literature and quantitative and qualitative research methodologies.

To complete this course students must enrol in MKTG 794 A and B

**MKTG 796A** (7 Points)

**MKTG 796B** (7 Points)

Thesis (MCom)

To complete this course students must enrol in MKTG 796 A and B

## New Venture Management

### Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses

**NEWVENT 703** (3 Points)

New Ventures

The venture process and its context. Models of entrepreneurship. Profile of the entrepreneur.

**NEWVENT 704** (3 Points)

Corporate Venturing

The venturing process as part of a corporation. Aims to help managers who launch firms themselves, or as part of a larger organization, to handle the practical problems that will arise and at the same time be able to understand the economic theory which explains why some organizations are more innovative and some more conservative, why some tend to product innovation and some to process innovation.

**NEWVENT 705** (1 Point)

Franchising

Franchising, as a special instance of the small and large business interface will be studied.

**NEWVENT 706** (1 Point)

Special Topic in New Ventures

**NEWVENT 709** (2 Points)

Managing a Small Business

The skills of owner-management are explored. Open competition is used as a model to give understanding of small business dynamics as well as techniques for measuring a small firm's viability.

## Operations Management – Exec Prog

### Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses

**OPSMAN 703** (2 Points)

Operations Management

An understanding of the importance of the operations management function for organizations, the strategic issues involved and the tools and techniques used to solve operations management issues. Topics include: decision analysis, resource planning, capacity planning and scheduling, supply and demand issues, location and layout and other issues considered core to the operations of an organization.

Restriction: 608.603, 608.604

**OPSMAN 705** (3 Points)

Project Management

An exploration of the methods and issues inherent in planning programmes and projects. Topics include: the role of project management in new business thinking, the dynamics of project management, project organization planning and scheduling, using computerized project management tools, politics and leadership in projects, building and managing a team, and handling conflict.

**OPSMAN 713** (1 Point)

Quantitative Methods for Managers

Topics include: statistics, regression analysis and the methods by which individuals or firms choose to measure results or performance.

Restriction: 605.607

**OPSMAN 714** (3 Points)

Logistics and Supply Chain Management

Logistics management at company level and management of the entire supply chain as an integrated system. Topics include: role of logistics in strategy, integrated logistics management, total cost concept, customer service, transportation, warehousing, inventory management (including order-pint systems and DRP) supply chain management, organizing for logistics, order processing and information systems and global logistics.

**OPSMAN 715** (1 Point)

Performance Frameworks

The development of balanced scorecard performance frameworks at both an individual and organizational level. Emphasis is given to the development of appropriate measures for use in team-based organizations. Use of MS Office software for creating graphical and numerical measurement frameworks to reflect strategic intent.

**OPSMAN 716** (3 Points)

Strategic Operations

The development and implementation of operations strategies within corporate, business and other functional strategies of the organization. Topics include: the strategy formulation process, competitiveness, trade-offs in operation objectives and decisions, focused operations, facilities and capacity management and technology choice.

## Operations Management

### Stage II

**OPSMGT 255** (2 Points)

Introduction to Operations Management

An introduction to a subset of decision areas in operations management, eg. quality, capacity and aggregate planning, inventory and transportation, and supporting operations research models, including forecasting, queuing and simulation, linear programming and networks. Qualitative and quantitative issues will be addressed.

Prerequisite: 636.101 or INFOSYS 110, and STATS 108

Restriction: 636.251, 636.252

**OPSMGT 257** (2 Points)

Project Management

An introduction to the management of projects in organizations, with a particular emphasis placed on the interdisciplinary nature and broad applications of projects. Topics covered include: project selection

and initiation, external issues, human resources, planning, financing, ethics, scheduling and resource allocation, information systems, control, evaluation and termination.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 110, STATS 108 and 6 points at Stage I

*Restriction:* 636.380

**OPSMGT 258 (2 Points)**  
**Business Process Design**

Business process modelling using visual maps, or diagrams, underpins all electronic commerce initiatives. Introduces the elements of business process modelling through mapping and design. Emphasis is on the analysis of how organizational processes need to be redefined in the electronic commerce context. Includes event-driven process chain (EPC) diagrams which are used to model process, data, organization and interaction. Other topics include: basic flows and processes, business process management and supply chain and organizational performance metrics.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 110 and STATS 108

**Stage III**

**OPSMGT 370 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Operations Management**

Advanced issues supported by case studies. Operations strategy and policies. Operations process and its development, execution and upgrade. Operations networks/systems and their interactions with information technologies and other business functions. Operations assessment and improvement and related human factors.

*Prerequisite:* OPSMGT 255

**OPSMGT 371 (2 Points)**

**Business Logistics**

Covers current issues in business logistics. Focuses on logistics at company level as well as at the level of the entire supply chain. Topic coverage has a modelling emphasis that is in keeping with e-commerce initiatives, and includes forecasting and inventory control models suitable for use in a distribution and supply-chain context.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 255 and OPSMGT 255, 258

**OPSMGT 372 (2 Points)**

**Systems and Quality Management**

The principles for delivering quality products and services that have value for both external and internal customers, while reducing waste throughout the system.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 255, OPSMGT 255, 258

*Restriction:* OPSMGT 256

**OPSMGT 373 (2 Points)**

**e-Business and Supply Chains**

Focuses on current management thinking and methods and strategies that are utilized in managing supply chains with e-business. Major emphasis will be placed on Internet-enabled supply chain management.

*Prerequisite:* OPSMGT 258

**OPSMGT 375A (2 Points)**

**OPSMGT 375B (2 Points)**

**Operations Management Project**

Provides students with the opportunity to participate in projects dealing with manufacturing and service operations, and quality management.

These projects permit students to apply management principles and philosophies together with theory and tools to improve processes and the quality of goods and services.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 255 and OPSMGT 255, 258

*Restriction:* 636.379, INFOSYS 340

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPSMGT 375 A and B*

**OPSMGT 382 (2 Points)**

**Production Planning and Scheduling**

Planning and scheduling occur in a wide range of economic activities. They always involve accomplishing a number of activities that tie up various resources for periods of time. Scheduling problems are always complicated by large numbers of constraints relating activities to each other, resources to activities and to each other, and either resources or activities to events external to the system. This course explores the planning and scheduling problems in a production environment and methods of their solution.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 255 and OPSMGT 255, 258

*Restriction:* 636.381

**OPSMGT 383 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Operations Management**

*Prerequisite:* STATS 255 and OPSMGT 255, 258

*Corequisite:* OPSMGT 370

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**OPSMGT 740 (2 Points)**

**Readings in Operations Management**

A comprehensive review of the research literature in a particular area of operations management. The particular area of research must be jointly agreed upon by the lecturer and student(s) and approved by the Head of Department.

**OPSMGT 752 (2 Points)**

**Research Methods 3**

Simulation and modelling methods in information systems and operations management research. Includes simulation techniques, optimization heuristic search, time series and other modelling methods.

**OPSMGT 760 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Enterprise Systems**

An important opportunity for students to gain knowledge regarding ways in which they can efficiently improve the internal and external service aspects of business. Production and operations decisions can provide major competitive advantage. The focus is on the methods of building a comprehensive enterprise system.

**OPSMGT 761 (2 Points)**

**Systems Thinking for Decision-making**

An introduction to the concepts of system thinking and the application of methodologies such as social system design, interactive planning, soft systems methodology and critical system heuristics to complex socio-technical systems, such as the operations function in an organization, as well as the organization itself. The course will increase the effectiveness of inquiry into problem situations using an experiential approach to systems thinking.

**OPSMGT 762 (2 Points)**

**Quality Management**

An investigation of the key concepts and theories of total quality management and its links between systems theory and learning organization. Topics will include: theoretical underpinning of quality management, Denning's theory of profound knowledge, links between systems theory and learning organization, continuous improvement models and planning as learning.

**OPSMGT 763 (2 Points)**  
**Integrated Performance Frameworks**

Addresses both intra and inter-organizational performance at multiple levels. Views on organizational performance are changing rapidly, in line with the critical mass of accessible information and Communication Technologies (ICTs). The information age brings a whole new set of frameworks that are likely to be key to future organizational success. Examines both 'information age' models, largely based on organizational networks, which have complexity theory as the underlying paradigm, as well as industrial age models such as the Balanced Scorecard and Hoshin planning. The course is cross-functional: studying material which has been developed from a broad range of disciplines including operations, accounting and human resources.

**OPSMGT 764 (2 Points)**  
**Stochastic and Dynamic Aspects of Supply Chains and Operations**

Business operations are becoming increasingly integrated and multifaceted, demanding novel approaches to managing their complexity. For example, the management of supply chains and of projects is particularly demanding, typically involving interrelated mission-critical activities that organizations must plan and control if they are to maximize their business opportunities and utilize their resources effectively. Develops some of the key concepts of stochastic and dynamic control and shows how they are applied in different circumstances.

**OPSMGT 780 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Operations Management**

**OPSMGT 781 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Operations Management**

**OPSMGT 782 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Operations Management**

**OPSMGT 783 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Operations Management**

**OPSMGT 789 (2 Points)**  
**Research Essay in Operations Management for BCom(Hons)**  
*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 750 or 751*

**OPSMGT 796A (7 Points)**  
**OPSMGT 796B (7 Points)**  
**Thesis in Operations Management**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in OPSMGT 796 A and B*

**Operations Research**

**Stage III**

**OPSRES 385 (2 Points)**  
**Stochastic Methods in Management Science**

Simulation and Monte Carlo methods, an introduction to queues, inventory management, reliability and decision analysis.

*Prerequisite: OPSMGT 255 and STATS 255*  
*Restriction: STATS 320*

**OPSRES 392 (2 Points)**

**Optimization in Management Science**

Matrix-vector algebra, linear programming, simplex and revised simplex methods, duality, post-optimal analysis, network optimization methods, machine and job shop scheduling problems and solution methods.

*Prerequisite: OPSMGT 255 and STATS 255*  
*Restriction: STATS 391*

**OPSRES 393 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Operations Research**

*Prerequisite: OPSMGT 255 and STATS 255*  
*Corequisite: OPSRES 385 or 392*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**OPSRES 784 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Operations Research**

**OPSRES 785 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Operations Research**

**OPSRES 786 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Operations Research**

**OPSRES 789 (2 Points)**

**Research Essay in Operations Research for BCom(Hons)**

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 750 or 751*

**OPSRES 796A (7 Points)**

**OPSRES 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis in Operations Research**

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPSRES 796 A and B*

**Property**

**Stage I**

**PROPERTY 102 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Property**

An introduction to the study of property. Topics include: property rights and use, property valuation, property investment alternatives, property management, development and marketing.

*Restriction: PROPERTY 101*

**PROPERTY 141 (2 Points)**

**Construction**

An introduction to residential and low-rise commercial and industrial construction.

**Stage II**

**PROPERTY 211 (2 Points)**

**Valuation**

The principles and practice of urban property valuation. Topics include: the application of valuation models to residential, commercial and industrial land and improvements.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 102 and 141*

*Corequisite: PROPERTY 251*

**PROPERTY 221 (2 Points)**

**Property Marketing**

A study of marketing and its application to real

estate. Topics include: buyer behaviour, marketing research, segmentation and targeting, the marketing plan, the listing process, and selling techniques.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 102, 141*

**PROPERTY 231 (2 Points)**  
**Property Management**

An introduction to property management theory through the study of its practical application in the building and operational management of owner-occupied and investment property. The management of residential and industrial property.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 102, 141*

**PROPERTY 241 (2 Points)**  
**Land-Use Planning and Controls**

Provides an understanding of the Resource Management Act and regional and district plans and how these affect land use and subdivision as well as resource consent applications and other processes.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 102, 141*

**PROPERTY 251 (2 Points)**  
**Property Finance**

An overview of financial economics and the application of general theory to the analysis of property development and investment. Topics include: financial mathematics, discounted cash flow, investment appraisal, the risk/return trade-off and introductory portfolio theory.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 102, 141*

**PROPERTY 261 (2 Points)**  
**Property Economics**

An introduction to urban land economics, development economics and urban public policy incorporating international perspectives.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101, PROPERTY 102, 141*

**PROPERTY 271 (2 Points)**  
**Property Law**

Covers a range of laws of particular relevance to the real estate, valuation and property management professions.

**Stage III**

**PROPERTY 311 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Valuation**

The theory and practice of valuing special categories of urban property. Topics include: valuation of CBD land and office buildings, shopping centres, hotels and leasehold land. Also covered are: statutory valuations (compulsory purchase), going-concern valuations, litigation, arbitration, and professional ethics and practice.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 211, 344*

**PROPERTY 312 (2 Points)**  
**Plant and Machinery Valuation**

Principles and practice of plant and machinery valuation, with case studies of insurance, market, existing use and infrastructural asset valuations.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 211 and 251*

**PROPERTY 321 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Property Marketing**

The marketing of specialized properties and real estate services. Topics include: the preparation of marketing strategies, plans and market analysis.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 221*

**PROPERTY 331 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Property Management**

Advanced property management theory through the study of its practical application in the strategic and estate management of property portfolios held in public and private ownership. The management of commercial and specialized property.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 231 and 251*

**PROPERTY 333 (2 Points)**  
**Facilities Management**

An introduction to facilities management.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 231*

**PROPERTY 342 (2 Points)**  
**Property Development**

An introduction to the process of property development, including application of analytical methods to case studies.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 241 and 251 and 261*

**PROPERTY 344 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Construction**

An introduction to high-rise residential and commercial construction.

*Restriction: PROPERTY 343*

**PROPERTY 351 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Property Finance and Investment**

Advanced capital budgeting issues and application of investment appraisal techniques to property. Topics include: asset pricing models, capital structure decision, weighted average cost of capital and adjusted present value, property as an asset class, and financing and investment strategies.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 251*

**PROPERTY 363 (2 Points)**  
**Property Research Methods**

Application of property research methods through a case study or studies.

*Prerequisite: STATS 108*

*Corequisite: PROPERTY 251 and 261*

*Restriction: PROPERTY 362*

**PROPERTY 371 (2 Points)**  
**Property Project**

A research course or applied project on an approved topic.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY Part II*

**PROPERTY 372 (2 Points)**  
**Applied Valuation Project**

The completion of a range of practical valuation reports in conjunction with industry mentors.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 211*

**PROPERTY 373 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Property Law**

Advanced study of law of particular relevance to the real estate, valuation and property management professions.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 241 and 271*

**PROPERTY 381 (2 Points)**  
**Building Economics**

An introduction to building economics.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 and PROPERTY 251*

**PROPERTY 382 (2 Points)**  
**Maori Land Issues**

History of land conflicts in New Zealand, Waitangi Tribunal process, and development of portfolio management strategies.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 241 and 271*

<b>PROPERTY 383</b> <b>Special Topic</b> A seminar or individual course of study on a specialized aspect of property. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY Part II</i>	(2 Points)	<b>PROPERTY 763</b> <b>Seminar in Property Economics</b> Advanced studies in the theory and practice of urban property economics and urban policy. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY 261 and 351 and, 362 or 363</i>	(2 Points)
<b>PROPERTY 384</b> <b>Special Topic</b> A seminar or individual course of study on a specialized aspect of property. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY Part II</i>	(2 Points)	<b>PROPERTY 764</b> <b>Seminar in Building Economics</b> Advanced studies in the theory and practice of building economics. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY 381</i>	(2 Points)
<hr/>			
<b>Diploma Courses</b>			
<b>PROPERTY 671</b> <b>Research Project</b> A research project on an approved topic in property that may be used to prepare a literature review and research proposal for a dissertation. <i>Prerequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763</i>	(2 Points)	<b>PROPERTY 783</b> <b>Special Topic</b> A seminar or individual study on a specialized aspect of property. <i>Corequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763</i>	(2 Points)
<b>PROPERTY 691</b> <b>Dissertation</b> A dissertation on an approved topic in property. <i>Prerequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763</i>	(4 Points)	<b>PROPERTY 784</b> <b>Special Topic</b> A seminar or individual study on a specialized aspect of property. <i>Corequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763</i>	(2 Points)
<hr/>			
<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>			
<b>PROPERTY 713</b> <b>Seminar in Valuation</b> Advanced studies in the theory and practice of valuation. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY 311</i>	(2 Points)	<b>PROPERTY 785</b> <b>Special Topic</b> A seminar or individual study on a specialized aspect of property. <i>Corequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763</i>	(2 Points)
<b>PROPERTY 714</b> <b>Plant and Machinery Valuation</b> Principles and practice of plant and machinery valuation. Includes case studies of insurance market, existing use and infrastructural asset valuations. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY 312</i>	(2 Points)	<b>PROPERTY 788</b> <b>Honours Research Project</b> To be used to prepare a research proposal and literature review for the Honours Dissertation. <i>Prerequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763</i>	(2 Points)
<b>PROPERTY 723</b> <b>Seminar in Property Marketing</b> Advanced studies in the theory and practice of property marketing. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY 321</i>	(2 Points)	<b>PROPERTY 789</b> <b>Honours Dissertation</b> A dissertation on a topic in property approved by the Head of Department. <i>Prerequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763</i>	(4 Points)
<b>PROPERTY 733</b> <b>Seminar in Property Management</b> Advanced studies in the theory and practice of property management. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY 331</i>	(2 Points)	<b>PROPERTY 792</b> <b>Thesis Proposal</b> To be used to prepare a research proposal and literature review for the Master's Thesis. <i>Prerequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763</i>	(2 Points)
<b>PROPERTY 734</b> <b>Seminar in Facilities Management</b> Advanced studies in the theory and practice of facilities management. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY 333</i>	(2 Points)	<b>PROPERTY 793A</b> <b>PROPERTY 793B</b> <b>Thesis</b> A thesis for MProp students. <i>Prerequisite: At least 10 points selected from PROPERTY 713-785, and an approved research methods course</i> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in PROPERTY 793 A and B.</i>	(7 Points) (7 Points)
<b>PROPERTY 743</b> <b>Seminar in Property Development</b> Advanced studies in the theory and practice of property development. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY 261, 342, 344, 351</i>	(2 Points)	<hr/>	
<b>PROPERTY 753</b> <b>Seminar in Property Finance and Investment</b> Advanced studies in the theory and practice of property finance and investment. <i>Prerequisite: PROPERTY 351</i>	(2 Points)	<b>Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses</b>	
		<b>QUALITY 702</b> <b>Statistical Thinking in Quality Management</b> Students will gain knowledge and understanding of statistical concepts and tools relevant to the management of quality. Topics will include: descriptive and inferential statistics, population parameters, probability concepts, statistical distributions, notions of variation, control charts, process capability and design of experiments.	(3 Points)

**QUALITY 703** (3 Points)  
**Quality Strategy and Implementation**  
 Teaches the knowledge and skills needed to develop strategies to introduce and sustain quality management in organizations. Topics include: quality and strategic management, generic models of quality implementations, Shiba's model, Maani/Wilson model, Hoshkin planning and policy deployment, with New Zealand case studies.

**QUALITY 713** (3 Points)  
**Quality Management**  
 Concepts, tools, models and implementation strategies of quality management and the contrast between them and traditional notions of management. Topics include: customer focus, continuous improvement, service-gap mode, vertical and horizontal integration, ISO 9000 and business process re-engineering.  
*Restriction: 609.601, 609.611*

**ARCHDES 300** (3 Points)  
**Design 5**  
 Thematically and/or programmatically based studies, extending fundamental awareness, understanding and skills acquired in Design 1 and 2, and creating opportunities for architectural exploration and experimentation.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 200 or 755.200*  
*Restriction: 755.300*

**ARCHDES 301** (3 Points)  
**Design 6**  
 Culminating studies in which students are expected to demonstrate appropriate awareness, knowledge and skill in the preparation of a fully resolved architectural sketch design in response to a challenging project. Designs are required to articulate the integration of knowledge acquired from other architecture courses.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 200 or 755.200*  
*Restriction: 755.301*

**ARCHDES 374** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDES 375** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDES 376** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDES 377** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

### ***BArch Courses***

**ARCHDES 400** (3 Points)  
**Design 7**  
 Advanced design studies in which social, cultural, environmental and technological issues are investigated and synthesized in the context of an architectural project and setting of moderate complexity.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 301 or 755.301*  
*Restriction: 755.400*

**ARCHDES 401** (3 Points)  
**Design 8**  
 Advanced design studies in which social, cultural, environmental and technological issues are investigated and synthesized in the context of an architectural project and setting of moderate complexity.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 301 or 755.301*  
*Restriction: 755.401*

**ARCHDES 474** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDES 475** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDES 476** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDES 477** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

---

## **Faculty of Creative Arts and Industries**

---

### **Architectural Design**

---

#### ***BAS Courses***

**ARCHDES 100** (3 Points)  
**Design 1**  
 An introduction to the fundamentals of architectural design. Exploratory studies of the relationship of human activities/occasions, physical settings/environmental conditions and historical precedent with architectural space and form. The development of skills and abilities in conceptual thinking and architectural design realization using a range of representational media.  
*Restriction: 755.100*

**ARCHDES 101** (3 Points)  
**Design 2**  
 The fundamentals of architectural design. Exploratory studies of the relationship of human activities/occasions, physical settings/environmental conditions and historical precedent with architectural space and form. The development of skills and abilities in conceptual thinking and architectural design realization using a range of representational media.  
*Restriction: 755.101*

**ARCHDES 200** (3 Points)  
**Design 3**  
 Thematically and/or programmatically based studies, extending fundamental awareness, understanding and skills acquired in Design 1 and 2, and creating opportunities for architectural exploration and experimentation.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 100 or 755.100*  
*Restriction: 755.200*

**ARCHDES 201** (3 Points)  
**Design 4**  
 Development of the fundamentals of architectural design.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 100 or 755.100*  
*Restriction: 755.201*

<b>ARCHDES 500</b> Design 9 As for ARCHDES 400 but student achievement levels should exceed those of Design 7 and 8. <i>Prerequisite: 755.400 or ARCHDES 400</i> <i>Restriction: 755.500, ARCHDES 502</i>	(3 Points)	<b>ARCHDES 773</b> ARCHDES 773A ARCHDES 773B Elective Study 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 773 A and B, or ARCHDES 773</i>	(2 Points) (1 Point) (1 Point)
<b>ARCHDES 502</b> Design 9 Culminating studies in which students are expected to address a challenging and conceptually complex architectural design and to achieve a fully resolved sketch design, together with developed design studies sufficient to explain the building's construction, structure, materials and environmental performance. A report is required to elucidate the design. <i>Prerequisite: 755.400 or ARCHDES 400</i> <i>Restriction: 755.500, ARCHDES 500</i>	(4 Points)	<b>ARCHDES 774A</b> <b>ARCHDES 774B</b> Elective Project 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 774 A and B</i>	(1.5 Points) (1.5 Points)
<b>ARCHDES 503</b> Design 10 Culminating studies in which students are expected to engage with complex architectural design issues, with an opportunity to explore areas of specific personal interest, leading to a fully resolved architectural design. A report is required to elucidate the design. <i>Prerequisite: 755.400 or ARCHDES 400</i> <i>Restriction: 755.501, ARCHDES 501</i>	(4 Points)	<b>ARCHDES 775A</b> <b>ARCHDES 775B</b> Elective Project 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 775 A and B</i>	(1.5 Points) (1.5 Points)
<b>ARCHDES 574</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDES 776A</b> <b>ARCHDES 776B</b> Elective Project 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 776 A and B</i>	(1 Point) (1 Point)
<b>ARCHDES 575</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDES 777A</b> <b>ARCHDES 777B</b> Elective Project 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 777 A and B</i>	(1 Point) (1 Point)
<b>ARCHDES 576</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<hr/> <b>Architectural Drawing and Computing</b> <hr/>	
<b>ARCHDES 577</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>BAS Courses</b>	
<hr/> <b>Master's Courses</b> <hr/>		<b>ARCHDRC 100</b> Introduction to Architectural Computing A theoretical overview and practical introduction to current and future computing practice in architecture with an emphasis on the use of the digital medium to aid conceptual design. <i>Restriction: 755.150</i>	(1 Point)
<b>ARCHDES 770</b>	(4 Points)	<b>ARCHDRC 101</b> Architectural Drawing 1 The course includes: freehand drawing techniques, sketching, basic perspective, the use of various media; the relationship between architectural form and its graphical representations; the analytical and critical value of drawing; representation and rendering techniques related to studio drawing. <i>Restriction: 755.185</i>	(1 Point)
<b>ARCHDES 770A</b> <b>ARCHDES 770B</b> Elective Study 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 770 A and B, or ARCHDES 770</i>	(2 Points) (2 Points)	<b>ARCHDRC 200</b> Computer-aided Design The course includes: computer-aided design and information processing techniques; three-dimensional modelling and two-dimensional drafting; an introduction to the management and use of computers in the production of working drawings; generics and specific software. <i>Prerequisite: ARCHDRC 100 or 755.150</i> <i>Restriction: 755.250</i>	(1 Point)
<b>ARCHDES 771</b>	(4 Points)	<b>ARCHDRC 201</b> Architectural Drawing 2	(1 Point)
<b>ARCHDES 771A</b> <b>ARCHDES 771B</b> Elective Study 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 771 A and B, or ARCHDES 771</i>	(2 Points) (2 Points)		
<b>ARCHDES 772</b>	(2 Points)		
<b>ARCHDES 772A</b> <b>ARCHDES 772B</b> Elective Study 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 772 A and B, or ARCHDES 772</i>	(1 Point) (1 Point)		

Study of drawing and related art practices in terms of architectural representation and analysis and practice of selected techniques.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 101 or 755.185

*Restriction:* 755.285

**ARCHDRC 300** (1 Point)  
**Life Drawing**

Analysis and understanding of proportion, structure, scale and how the human figure relates to architectural space and form.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 201 or 755.285

*Restriction:* 755.385

**ARCHDRC 301** (1 Point)  
**Measured Drawing**

The measurement, recording and drawing of existing New Zealand architecture of historical and cultural significance.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 201 or 755.285

*Restriction:* 755.386

**ARCHDRC 302** (1 Point)  
**Audiovisual Techniques**

An introduction to audiovisual camera and editing techniques with an emphasis on the use of the medium as an aid to conceiving and developing architectural form and space.

*Restriction:* 755.387

**ARCHDRC 303** (1 Point)  
**Freehand Drawing**

The examination, through penetrative seeing, of the basic structure, form, tonal colour and textural elements found in the environment and the development of these awarenesses in knowledgeable graphic communications with an emphasis on perceptual expression. Note that there is a limit of 30 enrolments in this course.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 201 or 755.285

*Restriction:* 755.377

**ARCHDRC 304** (1 Point)  
**Introduction to Architectural Photography**

An introduction to architectural photography and photographic techniques.

**ARCHDRC 305** (1 Point)  
**Ephemeral Effects in Architecture**

Using the computer to experiment with shadows, light, blurring and transparency in both two-dimensional and three-dimensional media, students will investigate an architectural concern and illustrate a critical involvement with the subject through imagery production.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 200

**ARCHDRC 306** (1 Point)  
**Composite Architecture**

Using the computer to combine worlds and media, this course emphasizes the bringing together of the two-dimensional (including non-electronic) and the three-dimensional. Students will produce a collection of examples, which show a critical inquiry into the construction of electronic imagery in the discipline of Architecture.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 200

**ARCHDRC 307** (1 Point)  
**Freehand Drawing 2**

Freehand drawing exercises that examine common object structures, an understanding of one and two point perspective; perceptual problem solving, colour

theory and the relationship of the human figure in architectural interior and exterior space.

*Restriction:* ARCHDRC 377

**ARCHDRC 370** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 371** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 372** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 373** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 374** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 375** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 376** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 378** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

---

### *BArch Courses*

**ARCHDRC 400** (1 Point)  
**Advanced Architectural Computing**

Exploring new and more complex applications in architectural representation and animation.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 200 or 755.250

*Restriction:* 755.450

**ARCHDRC 401** (1 Point)  
**Representation and Post-colonial Discourses**

Studies of architectural representations, drawing on cultural studies, post-colonial and feminist theories.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 201

**ARCHDRC 470** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 471** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 472** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 473** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 474** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHDRC 475** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

<b>ARCHDRC 476</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 774</b> Elective Project 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 774 A and B, or ARCHDRC 774</i>	(3 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 477</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 774A</b> <b>ARCHDRC 774B</b> Elective Project 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 774 A and B, or ARCHDRC 774</i>	(1.5 Points) (1.5 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 570</b> Elective Study Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 775</b> Elective Project 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 775 A and B, or ARCHDRC 775</i>	(3 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 571</b> Elective Study Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 775A</b> <b>ARCHDRC 775B</b> Elective Project 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 775 A and B, or ARCHDRC 775</i>	(1.5 Points) (1.5 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 572</b> Elective Study Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 776</b> Elective Project 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 776 A and B, or ARCHDRC 776</i>	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 573</b> Elective Study Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 776A</b> <b>ARCHDRC 776B</b> Elective Project 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 776 A and B, or ARCHDRC 776</i>	(1 Point) (1 Point)
<b>ARCHDRC 574</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 777</b> Elective Project 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 777 A and B, or ARCHDRC 777</i>	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 575</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 777A</b> <b>ARCHDRC 777B</b> Elective Project 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 777 A and B, or ARCHDRC 777</i>	(1 Point) (1 Point)
<b>ARCHDRC 576</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)		
<b>ARCHDRC 577</b> Elective Project Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(1 Point)		

---

**Master's Courses**

<b>ARCHDRC 770</b> Elective Study 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 770 A and B, or ARCHDRC 770</i>	(4 Points)	<b>ARCHGEN 400</b> Research Methods An introduction to the research process including: the identification of research topics and research questions, the review and critique of literature, the selection of a research method, referencing and the preparation of a bibliography. The focus of the course is on preparing students to undertake their own research projects. <i>Restriction: 755.388</i>	(1 Point)
<b>ARCHDRC 771</b> Elective Study 1 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 771 A and B, or ARCHDRC 771</i>	(4 Points)	<b>ARCHGEN 590</b> Research Report A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 772</b> Elective Study 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 772 A and B, or ARCHDRC 772</i>	(2 Points)	<b>ARCHGEN 591</b> Research Report A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 773</b> Elective Study 2 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 773 A and B, or ARCHDRC 773</i>	(2 Points)	<b>ARCHGEN 592</b> Research Report A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 770A</b> <b>ARCHDRC 770B</b>	(2 Points) (2 Points)	<b>ARCHGEN 593</b> Research Report A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 771A</b> <b>ARCHDRC 771B</b>	(2 Points) (2 Points)	<b>ARCHGEN 595</b> <b>ARCHGEN 595A</b> <b>ARCHGEN 595B</b>	(4 Points) (2 Points) (2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 772A</b> <b>ARCHDRC 772B</b>	(1 Point) (1 Point)		
<b>ARCHDRC 773A</b> <b>ARCHDRC 773B</b>	(1 Point) (1 Point)		

---

**Architecture: General**


---

**BArch Courses**

<b>ARCHGEN 400</b> Research Methods An introduction to the research process including: the identification of research topics and research questions, the review and critique of literature, the selection of a research method, referencing and the preparation of a bibliography. The focus of the course is on preparing students to undertake their own research projects. <i>Restriction: 755.388</i>	(1 Point)
<b>ARCHGEN 590</b> Research Report A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHGEN 591</b> Research Report A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHGEN 592</b> Research Report A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHGEN 593</b> Research Report A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHGEN 595</b> <b>ARCHGEN 595A</b> <b>ARCHGEN 595B</b>	(4 Points) (2 Points) (2 Points)

**Dissertation**

A dissertation involving applied research and/or a development project on a topic approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

*Restriction: 755.590*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 595 A and B, or ARCHGEN 595*

**Diploma Courses****ARCHGEN 600 (2 Points)****Research Methods 1A**

Research methods for application in architectural research, including scientific and technological methods, and those used in critical and historical studies.

*Restriction: 755.683*

**Master's Courses****ARCHGEN 700 (2 Points)****Research Methods**

An introduction to the research process including: the identification of research topics and research questions, the review and critique of literature, the selection of a research method, referencing and the preparation of a bibliography. The focus of the course is on preparing students to undertake their own research projects.

*Restriction: 755.783*

**ARCHGEN 701 (2 Points)****Research Methods 2**

Application of research methods to a research task, preparation of research proposal, defining appropriate research methods, preparation of bibliography and other preparatory work for either a thesis or advanced research project.

*Restriction: 755.784*

**ARCHGEN 790A (4 Points)****ARCHGEN 790B (4 Points)****Research Report**

A report involving advanced research and application in an architectural subject for the Degree of Master of Architecture, on a topic approved by the Head of School under the guidance of an appointed supervisor. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical topic, or similar study.

*Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.783*

*Restriction: ARCHGEN 795, 755.796 or 755.765*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 790 A and B*

**ARCHGEN 791 (8 Points)****ARCHGEN 791A (4 Points)****ARCHGEN 791B (4 Points)****Research Report**

A report involving advanced research and application in a building science subject for the Degree of Master of Building Science, on a topic approved by the Head of School, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor. The project may be a design study, a technological investigation, an experimental or theoretical topic, or similar study.

*Prerequisite: ARCHGEN 700 or 755.783*

*Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.784*

*Restriction: ARCHGEN 796, 755.798 or 755.766*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 791 A and B, or ARCHGEN 791*

**ARCHGEN 792 (8 Points)****ARCHGEN 792A (4 Points)****ARCHGEN 792B (4 Points)****Research Report**

A report involving advanced research and application in an architectural subject for the degree of Master of Architectural Studies, on a topic approved by the Head of School under the guidance of an appointed supervisor. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical topic, or similar study.

*Prerequisite: ARCHGEN 700 or 755.783*

*Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.784*

*Restriction: ARCHGEN 797, 755.797, 755.767*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 792 A and B, or ARCHGEN 792*

**ARCHGEN 793A (7 Points)****ARCHGEN 793B (7 Points)****Thesis**

A thesis involving a discourse on a topic approved by the Head of School for the degree of Master of Architectural Studies, Master of Architecture or Master of Building Science, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor.

*Prerequisite: ARCHGEN 700*

*Restriction: ARCHGEN 795, 796, 797*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 793 A and B*

**ARCHGEN 795A (6 Points)****ARCHGEN 795B (6 Points)****Thesis**

A thesis involving a discourse on a topic approved by the Head of School for the Degree of Master of Architecture, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor.

*Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.784*

*Restriction: ARCHGEN 790, 755.765 or 755.796*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 795 A and B*

**ARCHGEN 796A (6 Points)****ARCHGEN 796B (6 Points)****Thesis**

A thesis involving a discourse on a topic approved by the Head of School for the Degree of Master of Building Science, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor.

*Prerequisite: ARCHGEN 700 or 755.783*

*Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.784*

*Restriction: ARCHGEN 791, 755.766 or 755.798*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 796 A and B*

**ARCHGEN 797A (6 Points)****ARCHGEN 797B (6 Points)****Thesis**

A thesis involving a discourse on a topic approved by the Head of School for the Degree of Master of Architectural Studies, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor.

*Prerequisite: ARCHGEN 700 or 755.783*

*Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.784*

*Restriction: ARCHGEN 792, 755.767, 755.797*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 797 A and B*

## Architectural History, Theory and Criticism

**General Note:** Stage I, II and III Architectural History, Theory and Criticism courses may be available to both Architecture and non-Architecture students.

### BAS Courses

#### ARCHHTC 100 (1 Point)

##### Introduction to Modern Architecture

An introduction to the history, theory and criticism of modern Western architecture, and an introduction to the modern architecture of New Zealand.

*Restriction:* 755.130

#### ARCHHTC 101 (1 Point)

##### Introduction to Architectural Theory

An introduction to the theories of architecture, with emphasis on significant developments in the modern and post-modern periods. Introduction to the contribution of architectural theory to an understanding of the phenomenon of architecture and to architectural design practice.

*Restriction:* 755.131

#### ARCHHTC 200 (1 Point)

##### Oceanic Architecture 1

An introduction to the indigenous architecture of the Pacific. A study of the architecture of the Pacific Islands, choosing one area to study in depth. The particular Pacific Islands selected will vary from year to year.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 300

#### ARCHHTC 201 (1 Point)

##### Vernacular Architecture 1

The Resource Management Act, Agenda 21, the principles of sustainability, cultural integrity, and the need to conserve both energy and resources all indicate that buildings and cities should ideally achieve perfect harmony with place. In turn, truly responsive vernacular architecture provides a means of reading climate, landscape, culture, local materials and local traditions. An understanding of historical vernacular precedents provides a context for presenting vernacular as the appropriate architecture for this moment in history.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 301

#### ARCHHTC 202 (1 Point)

##### Urban Design 1

An introduction to urban history, theory and design.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 302

#### ARCHHTC 204 (1 Point)

##### New Zealand Architecture 1

The course includes: outline knowledge, experience and interest in the development of New Zealand architecture; origins; key studies in architecture in New Zealand with reference to historical influences and particular developments; New Zealand identity, characteristics and appropriateness, including today.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130,

755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 304

#### ARCHHTC 207 (1 Point)

##### Contemporary Architecture of Japan 1

Focuses on the *matchiya* (businessman's house), and *minka* (rural farm house) of Japan. Favourable economic conditions and the two parallel generations of Japanese architects will be discussed from the international viewpoint.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 307

#### ARCHHTC 208 (1 Point)

##### From Garden City to Suburbia 1

A critical study of housing in contemporary cities, tracing the origins of suburban living and culture from Moore's Utopia through the social and political agendas of the factory towns of England to Howard's Garden City, and the emergence of suburbia worldwide.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 308

#### ARCHHTC 209 (1 Point)

##### Conservation Architecture 1

Theory, legislation and technology concerning architectural conservation. Historical periods, case-studies and experience, primarily local. Terminology. Architectural context. Introduction to HPT, RMA, Heritage, and ICOMOS.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 309

#### ARCHHTC 213 (1 Point)

##### Built Form and Culture 1

A study of the relationship between various cultures and their architecture. Specifically concerned with settlement patterns, dwellings and other buildings, the study relates these to various aspects of both traditional and contemporary cultures.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 313

#### ARCHHTC 214 (1 Point)

##### Architecture and Landscaping of Japan 1

Housing, landscaping and living in Japan. Traditional town house with *Sukiya* style and its inner gardens. The economic growth and loss of traditional values discussed from an architectural viewpoint.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 314

#### ARCHHTC 215 (1 Point)

##### Byzantine Architecture 1

An introduction to Byzantine architecture from the fourth to fifteenth centuries with selected urban case studies, including Constantinople.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 315

- ARCHHTC 217** (1 Point)  
**Biculturalism in Architecture 1**  
 A discussion of issues of biculturalism in the provision of architecture in Aotearoa New Zealand and the Pacific, including Pacific Rim countries, providing an insight into the emerging Pacific architecture and Aotearoa New Zealand's role.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 317
- ARCHHTC 218** (1 Point)  
**Design Procedures 1**  
 The idea of 'design procedures' is established and the nature of that process is examined. A variety of procedures that support the decision-making process are reviewed. Where relevant, design procedural issues are explained by reference to architects' designs and built work.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 318
- ARCHHTC 219** (1 Point)  
**Architecture – Theory: 1598–1789 1**  
 The political ideologies, technological and aesthetic theories and archaeological projects which were advanced between the dates of the birth of Francois Mansart (1598) up to the French revolution (1789) have suggested that the architects of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries were indeed the 'first moderns'. This course is structured thematically on French, English, Italian and German sources for urban spaces, architecture, gardens and interior and furniture design.  
*Prerequisite:* ARCHHTC 100, 101  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 319
- ARCHHTC 220** (1 Point)  
**Communications in Design 1**  
 The application of communications theory to design practice and education. Notions of the inter-communication processes, the concept of the 'hidden curriculum'. The deep structure of communication processes in terms of its impact on design with respect to interpersonal communication, using a wide variety of communications media.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 320
- ARCHHTC 223** (1 Point)  
**Renaissance and Baroque Architecture 1**  
 An examination of the principal architecture, works and theories from the period 1400–1700.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 323
- ARCHHTC 224** (1 Point)  
**Modern Italian Architecture 1**  
 A survey of Italian architecture from 1900 to the present day.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 324
- ARCHHTC 225** (1 Point)  
**Contemporary Dutch Architecture 1**  
 A study of the recent work of key figures in contemporary Dutch architecture, with emphasis on the contributions of Herman Hertzberger and Aldo van Eyck. Aspects of Dutch culture, social life, and architecture in the twentieth century.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 325
- ARCHHTC 226** (1 Point)  
**New Zealand Architecture and the Treaty of Waitangi 1**  
 An investigation of the relationship between the infusion of European architecture into New Zealand as a result of settlement, and the repression of modern Maori architecture as a result of this and the Treaty of Waitangi.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 326
- ARCHHTC 227** (1 Point)  
**The Treaty and Post-colonial Issues 1**  
 An investigation of the Treaty of Waitangi and its place in post-colonial discourse. An exploration of the Treaty as design-generator and an expression of New Zealand and international architecture.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 327
- ARCHHTC 228** (1 Point)  
**History Elective 1**  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses
- ARCHHTC 229** (1 Point)  
**History Elective 1**  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses
- ARCHHTC 270** (1 Point)  
**History Elective 1**  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses
- ARCHHTC 271** (1 Point)  
**History Elective 1**  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses
- ARCHHTC 300–371**  
**Note:** These Architectural History, Theory and Criticism courses have the same prescriptions, prerequisites and points as the corresponding stage II level Architectural History, Theory and Criticism courses.
- ARCHHTC 374** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses
- ARCHHTC 375** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 376** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 377** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**BArch Courses**

**ARCHHTC 400** (1 Point)  
**Myth and Metaphor**

An introduction to cultural philosophy and myth criticism as it may be applied in architectural theory-building. The course treats architectural topics in New Zealand Maori, Medieval Japan, Ancient Egypt and the contemporary information age. Theoretical background embraces the dialectic in Western thought, Martin Heidegger and Eastern thought.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* 755.432

**ARCHHTC 401** (1 Point)  
**Paradigms of Architectural Thinking**

Introduction to a philosophical treatment of some essential architectural concepts around four paradigms: Language, Representation, Aesthetics and Negation.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131  
*Restriction:* 755.438

**ARCHHTC 402** (1 Point)  
**Contemporary Theoretical Positions**

Post-structuralist theories, theories of textuality, feminist history, cultural studies and issues of representation, and a consideration of these issues in relation to architecture.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131  
*Restriction:* 755.439

**ARCHHTC 404** (2 Points)  
**Architectural Theory and Discourse**

An examination of architectural writing and criticism relative to contemporary theoretical positions.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131  
*Restriction:* 755.441

**ARCHHTC 405** (1 Point)  
**Urban Design 2**

The course includes: advanced urban studies, contemporary theory, South Pacific issues.  
*Prerequisite:* ARCHHTC 202 or 302  
*Restriction:* 755.442

**ARCHHTC 406** (1 Point)  
**Designing for Institutions**

The examination of the special nature of design tasks which institutional settings present, reviewing of a

variety of strategies and procedures for managing the design decision-making process in these settings. An analysis of a number of contemporary buildings that represent significant contributions in the field of institutional and public architecture.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 408** (1 Point)  
**Topics in Architectural Theory**

An examination of selected architectural themes in architectural writing and criticism relative to contemporary theoretical positions.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 411** (1 Point)  
**Sustainable Design 2**

A seminar series based on weekly readings undertaken by all participants. The course will explore the philosophical, social and political context of the sustainable future. The role of the designer in the construction of a sustainable future will be discussed.

**ARCHHTC 414** (1 Point)  
**Gothic Architecture**

An investigation of the nature of European Gothic architecture as exemplified by its religious buildings. The course further explores the essence of Gothic that was extracted by the Ecclesiological establishment, exported to New Zealand, and the buildings that resulted.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 415** (1 Point)  
**Toward the Modern: 1789 – 1900**

Reviewing the architectural projects, historical texts and theoretical writings for the century following the French Revolution (ending with the deaths of Semper, Viollet le Duc, Morris and Ruskin) the many avantgarde positions developed from combinatorial possibilities of history, technology and aesthetics serve to enrich our understanding of Modernism. The urban schemas, architecture, gardens, furniture and books refer to the different socio-cultural environments of France, England, Russia, the German states and America.  
*Prerequisite:* Any two of 754.100, 754.101, ARCHHTC 100, 101.  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 475

**ARCHHTC 416** (1 Point)  
**History of Architectural Theory**

A survey, in the form of a series of readings, of texts concerning architectural theory from the Greeks to today.  
*Prerequisite:* ARCHHTC 100, 101.  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 474

**ARCHHTC 417** (1 Point)  
**Architecture and Text: Ancient and Mediaeval**

The idea and reality of both architecture and ornament are read from primary materials (texts, drawings and models) originating from Ur to Chartres. The prestigious knowledge and specializing roles of early architects are investigated thematically (abstraction and reinterpretation, migration and

hybridization, archotyping and copying, number measure and proportion), revealing historical sources to be both true reflection and distorting mirror.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of 755.130, 755.131, ARCHHTC 100, 101

*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 413

**ARCHHTC 470** (1 Point)  
Elective Study

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 471** (1 Point)  
Elective Study

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 472** (1 Point)  
Elective Study

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 473** (1 Point)  
Elective Study

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 476** (1 Point)  
Elective Project

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 477** (1 Point)  
Elective Project

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 478** (1 Point)  
Elective Project

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 479** (1 Point)  
Elective Project

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 570** (1 Point)  
Elective Study

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 571** (1 Point)  
Elective Study

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 572** (1 Point)  
Elective Study

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 573** (1 Point)  
Elective Study

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 574** (1 Point)  
Elective Project

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 576** (1 Point)  
Elective Project

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 578** (1 Point)  
Elective Project

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHHTC 579** (1 Point)  
Elective Project

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

#### **Master's Courses**

**ARCHHTC 700A** (1 Point)  
**ARCHHTC 700B** (1 Point)

#### **Advanced Urban Design Studies**

The course examines: urban history, theory and design; and contemporary issues in urban design, development strategies and guidelines.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 700 A and B*

**ARCHHTC 770** (4 Points)

**ARCHHTC 770A** (2 Points)

**ARCHHTC 770B** (2 Points)

Elective Study 1

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 770 A and B, or ARCHHTC 770*

**ARCHHTC 771** (4 Points)

**ARCHHTC 771A** (2 Points)

**ARCHHTC 771B** (2 Points)

Elective Study 1

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 771 A and B, or ARCHHTC 771*

**ARCHHTC 772** (2 Points)

**ARCHHTC 772A** (1 Point)

**ARCHHTC 772B** (1 Point)

Elective Study 2

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 772 A and B, or ARCHHTC 772*

**ARCHHTC 773** (2 Points)

**ARCHHTC 773A** (1 Point)

**ARCHHTC 773B** (1 Point)

Elective Study 2

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 773 A and B, or ARCHHTC 773*

**ARCHHTC 774** (3 Points)

**ARCHHTC 774A** (1.5 Points)

**ARCHHTC 774B** (1.5 Points)

Elective Project 1

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 774 A and B, or ARCHHTC 774*

**ARCHHTC 775** (3 Points)

**ARCHHTC 775A** (1.5 Points)

**ARCHHTC 775B** (1.5 Points)

Elective Project 1

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 775 A and B, or ARCHHTC 775*

**ARCHHTC 776** (2 Points)

**ARCHHTC 776A** (1 Point)

**ARCHHTC 776B** (1 Point)

Elective Project 2

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 776 A and B, or ARCHHTC 776*

**ARCHHTC 777** (2 Points)

**ARCHHTC 777A** (1 Point)

**ARCHHTC 777B** (1 Point)

Elective Project 2

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 777 A and B, or ARCHHTC 777*

## Architectural Practice and Management

### BAS Courses

- ARCHPRM 301** (1 Point)  
**Building Economics**  
 Perceptions of buildings from the points of view of developer, owner and user. Life cycle costs. Sources and cost of finance. Feasibility studies. Building efficiency.  
*Restriction: 755.361*
- ARCHPRM 302** (1 Point)  
**Town Planning**  
 The evolution of modern town planning theory and practice; the planning process; contemporary town planning in New Zealand.  
*Restriction: 755.362*
- ARCHPRM 370** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHPRM 371** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHPRM 372** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHPRM 373** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHPRM 374** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHPRM 375** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHPRM 376** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHPRM 377** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

### BArch Courses

- ARCHPRM 401** (1 Point)  
**Project Management 1**  
 Management of the building project from inception through to the stage of tendering. Client needs and agreements, feasibility studies, project constraints, cost planning and control, consultants, administration and quality control. Particular emphasis on documentation, and the place of information technology in the architect's practice.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHPRM 300*  
*Restriction: ARCHPRM 400*
- ARCHPRM 402** (1 Point)  
**Project Management 2**  
 Management of the building project from the tendering stage through to project completion, including post-occupancy evaluation. Establishment of the building contract, contract administration and site observation, study of contract law and cost management during the construction phase.

All aspects of documentation during construction and final project accounts.

*Prerequisite: ARCHPRM 300*

*Restriction: ARCHPRM 400*

- ARCHPRM 403** (1 Point)  
**Facilities Management**

Studies of the purpose of facilities to their users, and their problems of management. Investigation of life-cycle costs, legal obligations of tenants, leases, building health, energy management and other key areas of operations.

*Restriction: 755.461*

- ARCHPRM 404** (1 Point)  
**Construction Management**

An introduction to quantitative techniques in management of construction projects.

*Restriction: 755.462*

- ARCHPRM 405** (1 Point)  
**Resource Consents**

Based on case studies that explain the planning processes relevant to architectural practice.

- ARCHPRM 423** (1 Point)  
**Contract Documentation**

Methods and systems of contract documentation and the application and use of appropriate computer technologies.

*Restriction: ARCHPRM 303 and 755.363*

- ARCHPRM 470** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

- ARCHPRM 471** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

- ARCHPRM 472** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

- ARCHPRM 473** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

- ARCHPRM 474** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

- ARCHPRM 475** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

- ARCHPRM 476** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

- ARCHPRM 477** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

- ARCHPRM 478** (1 Point)  
**Project Management Elective 1**

Special elective studies in the project management area.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School of Architecture*

- ARCHPRM 479** (1 Point)  
**Project Management Elective 2**

Special elective studies in the project management area.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School of Architecture*

Colour Prescriptions  
For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

<b>ARCHPRM 501</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHPRM 671A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Practice Management 1</b>		<b>ARCHPRM 671B</b>	(2 Points)
Introduction to the New Zealand legal system and the law of contract and torts. Negotiations, negligence, disputes and remedies relevant to architects in practice. Introduction to the professional institute, the registration procedure, risk management and professional ethics.		<b>Elective Study 1</b>	
<i>Prerequisite: ARCHPRM 401 and 402</i>		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
<i>Restriction: ARCHPRM 500</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 671 A and B</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 502</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHPRM 672A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Practice Management 2</b>		<b>ARCHPRM 672B</b>	(1 Point)
Establishing and maintaining an architectural practice as a business venture. Organizational structures. Strategic market management. Financial planning, insurance and taxation. Aspects of the law as related to practice.		<b>Elective Study 2</b>	
<i>Prerequisite: ARCHPRM 401 and 402</i>		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
<i>Restriction: ARCHPRM 500</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 672 A and B</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 570</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHPRM 673A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Elective Study</b>		<b>ARCHPRM 673B</b>	(1 Point)
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.		<b>Elective Study 2</b>	
<b>ARCHPRM 571</b>	(1 Point)	Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
<b>Elective Study</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 673 A and B</i>	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.		<b>ARCHPRM 674A</b>	(1.5 Points)
<b>ARCHPRM 572</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHPRM 674B</b>	(1.5 Points)
<b>Elective Study</b>		<b>Elective Project 1</b>	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
<b>ARCHPRM 573</b>	(1 Point)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 674 A and B</i>	
<b>Elective Study</b>		<b>ARCHPRM 675A</b>	(1.5 Points)
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.		<b>ARCHPRM 675B</b>	(1.5 Points)
<b>ARCHPRM 574</b>	(1 Point)	<b>Elective Project 1</b>	
<b>Elective Project</b>		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 675 A and B</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 575</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHPRM 676A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Elective Project</b>		<b>ARCHPRM 676B</b>	(1 Point)
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.		<b>Elective Project 2</b>	
<b>ARCHPRM 576</b>	(1 Point)	Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
<b>Elective Project</b>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 676 A and B</i>	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.		<b>ARCHPRM 677A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHPRM 577</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHPRM 677B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Elective Project</b>		<b>Elective Project 2</b>	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
<b>ARCHPRM 578</b>	(1 Point)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 677 A and B</i>	
<b>Practice Management Elective 1</b>		<b>Master's Courses</b>	
Special elective studies in the Practice Management area.		<b>ARCHPRM 770</b>	(4 Points)
<i>Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School of Architecture</i>		<b>ARCHPRM 770A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHPRM 579</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHPRM 770B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Practice Management Elective 2</b>		<b>Elective Study 1</b>	
Special elective studies in the Practice Management area.		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
<i>Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School of Architecture</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 770 A and B, or ARCHPRM 770</i>	

---

**Diploma Courses**

<b>ARCHPRM 670A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>ARCHPRM 772</b>	(2 Points)
<b>ARCHPRM 670B</b>	(2 Points)	<b>ARCHPRM 772A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Elective Study 1</b>		<b>ARCHPRM 772B</b>	(1 Point)
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.		<b>Elective Study 2</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 670 A and B</i>		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 772 A and B, or ARCHPRM 772

**ARCHPRM 773** (2 Points)

**ARCHPRM 773A** (1 Point)

**ARCHPRM 773B** (1 Point)

**Elective Study 2**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 773 A and B, or ARCHPRM 773

**ARCHPRM 774** (3 Points)

**ARCHPRM 774A** (1.5 Points)

**ARCHPRM 774B** (1.5 Points)

**Elective Project 1**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 774 A and B, or ARCHPRM 774

**ARCHPRM 775** (3 Points)

**ARCHPRM 775A** (1.5 Points)

**ARCHPRM 775B** (1.5 Points)

**Elective Project 1**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 775 A and B, or ARCHPRM 775

**ARCHPRM 776** (2 Points)

**ARCHPRM 776A** (1 Point)

**ARCHPRM 776B** (1 Point)

**Elective Project 2**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 776 A and B, or ARCHPRM 776

**ARCHPRM 777** (2 Points)

**ARCHPRM 777A** (1 Point)

**ARCHPRM 777B** (1 Point)

**Elective Project 2**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 777 A and B, or ARCHPRM 777

## Architectural Technology

### BAS Courses

**ARCHTECH 102** (1 Point)

**Introduction to Architectural Science 1**

Introduction to anthropometrics and ergonomics; architectural psychology; psychophysics; materials science; techniques of architectural science and the application of results in architectural design.

Restriction: 758.101

**ARCHTECH 103** (1 Point)

**Introduction to Architectural Science 2**

Introduction to architectural physics (heat, light and sound); the physiology and psychology of vision hearing and thermal sensation; the interaction of heat, light and sound with building materials and constructions and its quantification in environmental design.

Restriction: 758.101

**ARCHTECH 104** (1 Point)

**Construction and Structure 1**

An introduction to light timber, steel and concrete construction of domestic scale buildings in the

New Zealand context. The physical characteristics and behaviour of common building materials. Structural concepts relating to simple structure.

Restriction 755.110, ARCHTECH 100

**ARCHTECH 105** (1 Point)

**Construction and Structure 2**

Light timber, steel and concrete construction of domestic scale buildings in the New Zealand context. The physical characteristics and behaviour of common building materials. Structural concepts relating to simple structure.

Restriction 755.110, ARCHTECH 100

**ARCHTECH 202** (1 Point)

**Environment and Services 1**

Climate and energy considerations in building. Thermal performance, ventilation and condensation. Mechanical, electrical and hydraulic services for low-rise buildings.

Prerequisite: 758.101 or ARCHTECH 103

Restriction: 758.201

**ARCHTECH 203** (1 Point)

**Environment and Services 2**

Natural and artificial lighting; noise control and acoustical design principles and their application in buildings; requirements and recommendations to practice.

Prerequisite: 758.101 or ARCHTECH 103

Restriction: 758.201

**ARCHTECH 204** (1 Point)

**Construction and Structure 3**

Development of construction and structural principles for commercial scale buildings. Emphasis is placed on the development of a greater understanding of materials behaviour. Covers issues of material selection and structural systems. Structural concepts are advanced and computer applications are introduced.

Prerequisite: ARCHTECH 104 and 105, or 100, or 755.110

Restriction: 755.210, ARCHTECH 200

**ARCHTECH 205** (1 Point)

**Construction and Structure 4**

Further development of construction and structural principles for commercial scale buildings. Emphasis is placed on the development of a greater understanding of materials behaviour. Covers issues of material selection and structural systems. Structural concepts are advanced and computer applications are introduced.

Prerequisite: ARCHTECH 104 and 105, or 100, or 755.110

Restriction: 755.210, ARCHTECH 200

**ARCHTECH 300** (1 Point)

**Alternative Construction Methods**

An examination of the claim that "Architecture is the result of the artistic implementation of technology" leads to an exploration of uncommon construction methods ranging from earth buildings through cable, membrane and structural plastics, and the computer resolution of complex forms, as exemplified by Gaudi and Calatrava.

Prerequisite: ARCHTECH 200 or 755.210

Restriction: 755.310

**ARCHTECH 305** (1 Point)

**Ergonomics**

The limitations and capacities of people as affecting the design of buildings, equipment and the environment. The influence of anatomy, physiology,

and psychology as it affects design, in order to make the best possible use of human resources.

*Restriction: 755.315*

**ARCHTECH 306 (1 Point)**  
**Workshop Project**

A workshop-based project intended to introduce students to woodwork and/or metalwork skills through the production of a small piece of furniture or joinery or other project as may be approved.

*Restriction: 755.316*

**ARCHTECH 308 (1 Point)**  
**Environmental Science 1**

Services appropriate for medium-rise commercial and institutional buildings; an introduction to vertical transportation; integration of services into building fabric; use of solar energy in the New Zealand context; performance prediction using ALF.

*Prerequisite: 758.201 or ARCHTECH 202*

*Restriction: 755.313, 755.314, 758.303, 758.304*

**ARCHTECH 309 (1 Point)**  
**Environmental Science 2**

Visual performance and visual perception; quantitative and qualitative techniques for the design of natural and artificial lighting; origins, behaviour, description and measurement of sound; acoustical design of communication spaces and rooms.

*Prerequisite: 758.201 or ARCHTECH 203*

*Restriction: 755.311, 755.312, 758.301, 758.302*

**ARCHTECH 310 (1 Point)**  
**Hi-Tech Architecture**

The historical context, influences, case studies and the use of structure and construction in design. Traced from late Gothic, Victorian, early modern steel, 1940s and 50s Europe, 1960s England, hi-tech and influences on later movements. To extend our understanding of the potential usefulness of structure, technology and construction in pursuit of personal excellence in design.

*Restriction: ARCHTECH 377*

**ARCHTECH 311 (1 Point)**  
**Construction and Structure 5**

Construction and structural systems of multi-storey buildings. Particular design issues inherent with external cladding, the effects of wind on and around buildings, earthquake events and the consideration of construction and structure that are the outcomes of wind and earthquake events.

*Prerequisite: ARCHTECH 204 and 205, or 200, or 755.210*

*Restriction: 755.410, ARCHTECH 400*

**ARCHTECH 370 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHTECH 371 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHTECH 372 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHTECH 373 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Study**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHTECH 374 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHTECH 375 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHTECH 376 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

**ARCHTECH 378 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Project**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.

---

**BArch Courses**

**ARCHTECH 401 (2 Points)**  
**Acoustics and Noise Control 1**

Advanced studies in room acoustics and acoustical design of communication spaces, psychophysics of audience preference and objective measurements in rooms and acoustical models. Materials for noise control, their performances specification, and theory of vibrating systems. Noise assessment and control in communities, buildings and machinery, application of vibration isolation techniques. The course will include practicals giving experience with materials, measurements and design of constructions.

*Prerequisite: 758.301 or ARCHTECH 309*

*Corequisite: ARCHTECH 402*

*Restriction: 755.411*

**ARCHTECH 402 (1 Point)**  
**Acoustics and Noise Control 2**

Project and/or laboratory work related to the material covered in ARCHTECH 401.

*Prerequisite: 758.301 or ARCHTECH 309*

*Corequisite: ARCHTECH 401*

*Restriction: 755.412*

**ARCHTECH 403 (1 Point)**  
**Active Audio Systems**

Sound reinforcement and public address system design, covering a design method for matching a sound system with existing architecture. Required site measurement and system evaluation and how to specify the required equipment. Recent trends in direct sound designing and audience coverage. Developments in active barriers and active noise control. Design and calculation by computers.

*Prerequisite: 758.301 or ARCHTECH 309*

*Restriction: 755.413*

**ARCHTECH 404 (1 Point)**  
**Advanced Lighting**

Advanced considerations in the design of natural and artificial lighting for building interiors. Developments in lighting technology. Modelling and computer techniques. Case studies of lighting for particular building types, which may include galleries, libraries, shopping and places of worship.

*Prerequisite: 758.302 or ARCHTECH 309*

*Restriction: 755.414*

**ARCHTECH 405 (1 Point)**  
**Advanced Services**

Advanced studies of the principles and design considerations for environmental and utility services with special reference to tall buildings. Studies of the servicing requirements and design approaches for specialized buildings (such as hotels, hospitals) and atrium buildings. Maintenance, replacement and energy considerations.

*Prerequisite: 755.314 or 758.304*

*Restriction: 755.415*

- ARCHTECH 410** (1 Point)  
**Multi-storey Construction**  
 A detailed study of multi-storey construction techniques and constraints, both on-site and off-site. Legislative impact along with acceptable risk considerations, quality control and long-term maintenance philosophies, all as determinants of architectural form.  
*Corequisite: ARCHTECH 400 A and B*  
*Restriction: 755.420*
- ARCHTECH 411** (1 Point)  
**The New Goths**  
 A critical study of Northern European 'hi-tech' architecture 1970–1985. The historical context, influences, case studies and the use of technology in design.  
*Corequisite: ARCHTECH 400 A and B*  
*Restriction: 755.421*
- ARCHTECH 412** (1 Point)  
**Timber Technology**  
 An exploration of timber as a material for building, with its advantages and disadvantages for creating space. Study of the methods for approximate sizing and the design issues inherent in the use of the various timber products on the market.  
*Corequisite: ARCHTECH 400*  
*Restriction: 755.422*
- ARCHTECH 414** (1 Point)  
**Sustainable Design 1**  
 A review of the evolution of environmentally-sustainable settlements and buildings and the technologies used. Examples from the past and the present are analysed in terms of flows of resources and energy. Current technologies and their effectiveness for the designer of such environments.  
*Prerequisite: In the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses*
- ARCHTECH 415** (1 Point)  
**Designing with the Sun**  
 An introduction to passive solar design through the search for a balance between the natural environment, traditional architectural responses and building technology.
- ARCHTECH 416** (1 Point)  
**Designs on Technology**  
 An individual exploration of components, elements or assemblies of construction as a design tool.  
*Prerequisite: In the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses*
- ARCHTECH 417** (1 Point)  
**Theories and Philosophies on Construction**  
 An exploration of the complex historical relationships between architecture, art, craft, industry, philosophy and construction. Particular consideration will be given to the development of the building process from local craft-based tradition to global industrialized activity and the implications for architectural education and practice.  
*Prerequisite: In the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses*
- ARCHTECH 418** (1 Point)  
**Designing with Light**  
 Through the work of major architects, this course will explore the power of light to reveal form and shape space. Case study exploration will be followed by a design project.
- ARCHTECH 419** (1 Point)  
**Advanced Thermal Environment**  
 Discusses the thermal implications of the New Zealand Building Code and what architects need to know. Appropriate thermal modelling techniques will be undertaken by students. The thermal environment of commercial buildings in New Zealand will be examined.  
*Prerequisite: 758.303 or ARCHTECH 308*
- ARCHTECH 420** (1 Point)  
**Construction and Structure 6**  
 Multi-storey and low rise commercial buildings are investigated with emphasis on material selection and evaluation of appropriate tolerances that will assist buildability. Fire protection by way of the approved solutions is investigated, as well as the influence on design outcomes due to fire and egress considerations.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHTECH 200, 755.210 or ARCHTECH 311*  
*Restriction: 755.410, ARCHTECH 400*
- ARCHTECH 470** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHTECH 471** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHTECH 472** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHTECH 473** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHTECH 474** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHTECH 475** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHTECH 476** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHTECH 477** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.
- ARCHTECH 500** (1 Point)  
**Advanced Structures**  
 Introduction to structural design and materials codes. Computer modelling of structural systems, and their application in design project work.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHTECH 400 or 755.410*  
*Restriction: 755.510*
- ARCHTECH 503** (1 Point)  
**Architectural Technology Project**  
 An architectural technology project as approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
*Restriction: 755.518*
- ARCHTECH 504** (1 Point)  
**Architectural Technology Project**  
 An architectural technology project as approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
*Restriction: 755.519*

<b>ARCHTECH 570</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHTECH 676A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Elective Study</b>		<b>ARCHTECH 676B</b>	(1 Point)
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.			
<b>ARCHTECH 571</b>	(1 Point)	<b>Elective Project 2</b>	
<b>Elective Study</b>		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.			
<b>ARCHTECH 572</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHTECH 677A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Elective Study</b>		<b>ARCHTECH 677B</b>	(1 Point)
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.			
<b>ARCHTECH 573</b>	(1 Point)	<b>Elective Project 2</b>	
<b>Elective Study</b>		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.			
<b>ARCHTECH 574</b>	(1 Point)	<hr/>	
<b>Elective Project</b>		<b>Master's Courses</b>	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.			
<b>ARCHTECH 575</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHTECH 700A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Elective Project</b>		<b>ARCHTECH 700B</b>	(2 Points)
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.			
<b>ARCHTECH 576</b>	(1 Point)	<b>Fire Protection</b>	
<b>Elective Project</b>		Fundamental fire engineering concepts and models.	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.			
<b>ARCHTECH 577</b>	(1 Point)	Calculation procedures and methods. Fire design for buildings under the Building Code. Protection, detection and escape.	
<b>Elective Project</b>		Restriction: 755.711	
Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.			
		To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 700 A and B	
		<b>ARCHTECH 701A</b>	(2 Points)
		<b>ARCHTECH 701B</b>	(2 Points)
		<b>Building Health</b>	
		Building health concepts and models. Legislative climate for building health. Sources of health hazard and relative risk.	
		To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 701 A and B	
		<b>ARCHTECH 702A</b>	(2 Points)
		<b>ARCHTECH 702B</b>	(2 Points)
		<b>Building Intelligence</b>	
		Building intelligence concepts and models. Building management concepts. Building automation and services controls.	
		To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 702 A and B	
		<b>ARCHTECH 703A</b>	(2 Points)
		<b>ARCHTECH 703B</b>	(2 Points)
		<b>Facilities Management</b>	
		Facilities management concepts and models. Capital, operating costs and life-cycle costs of property. Legal duties of building owners and users.	
		Restriction: 755.714	
		To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 703 A and B	
		<b>ARCHTECH 704</b>	(4 Points)
		<b>Sustainability of the Built Environment</b>	
		Evolution of sustainable settlements and buildings, and the technologies used both past and present.	
		Analysis of examples in terms of flows of resource and energy. Defining sustainability quantitatively.	
		<b>ARCHTECH 705</b>	(4 Points)
		<b>Energy and the Built Environment</b>	
		Contemporary achievements in low-energy building design. Methods of prediction and assessment of building energy performance. Energy modelling as a design tool for the sustainable built environment.	
		<b>ARCHTECH 770A</b>	(2 Points)
		<b>ARCHTECH 770B</b>	(2 Points)
		<b>Elective Study 1</b>	
		Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.	
		To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 675 A and B	

**Diploma Courses**

**ARCHTECH 670A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 670B** (2 Points)  
**Elective Study 1**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 670 A and B

**ARCHTECH 671A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 671B** (2 Points)  
**Elective Study 1**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 671 A and B

**ARCHTECH 672A** (1 Point)  
**ARCHTECH 672B** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study 2**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 672 A and B

**ARCHTECH 673A** (1 Point)  
**ARCHTECH 673B** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study 2**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 673 A and B

**ARCHTECH 674A** (1.5 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 674B** (1.5 Points)  
**Elective Project 1**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 674 A and B

**ARCHTECH 675A** (1.5 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 675B** (1.5 Points)  
**Elective Project 1**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 675 A and B

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 770 A and B

ARCHTECH 771 (4 Points)

ARCHTECH 771A (2 Points)

ARCHTECH 771B (2 Points)

**Elective Study 1**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 771 A and B, or ARCHTECH 771

ARCHTECH 772 (2 Points)

ARCHTECH 772A (1 Point)

ARCHTECH 772B (1 Point)

**Elective Study 2**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 772 A and B, or ARCHTECH 772

ARCHTECH 773 (2 Points)

ARCHTECH 773A (1 Point)

ARCHTECH 773B (1 Point)

**Elective Study 2**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 773 A and B, or ARCHTECH 773

ARCHTECH 774 (3 Points)

ARCHTECH 774A (1.5 Points)

ARCHTECH 774B (1.5 Points)

**Elective Project 1**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 774 A and B, or ARCHTECH 774

ARCHTECH 775 (3 Points)

ARCHTECH 775A (1.5 Points)

ARCHTECH 775B (1.5 Points)

**Elective Project 1**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 775 A and B, or ARCHTECH 775

ARCHTECH 776 (2 Points)

ARCHTECH 776A (1 Point)

ARCHTECH 776B (1 Point)

**Elective Project 2**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 776 A and B, or ARCHTECH 776

ARCHTECH 777 (2 Points)

ARCHTECH 777A (1 Point)

ARCHTECH 777B (1 Point)

**Elective Project 2**

Topics approved by the Head of School of Architecture.  
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 777 A and B, or ARCHTECH 777

**Arts Management**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

ARTSMGT 702 (2 Points)

**The Arts Milieu**

An in-depth study of the organization of the arts in New Zealand in regards to national and local government policy-making; arts policy and funding

policies, ie, the 'politics' of the arts. Also legal aspects and the arts; negotiating with performers, venues, etc; contracts, rights, basic legal issues, operating structures and accountability.

Restriction: 120.602

ARTSMGT 703 (2 Points)

**The Economics of the Arts**

How the arts contribute to and impact on local, regional and national economies, business and community development and tourism. Interaction and the relationship between business and the arts; sponsorship development. Also, the arts as a new or growing venture; ways of achieving a sustainable competitive advantage.

Restriction: 120.603

ARTSMGT 704 (2 Points)

**Special Issues in Arts Administration**

Special interest topics in workshop form. Arts specific skills include: box office systems, technical, production skills, tour planning, working with artists (the creative/administrative interchange) and arts and the media.

Restriction: 120.604

ARTSMGT 705 (2 Points)

**Special Project**

Includes: the dynamics of project management for arts managers, project organization, planning and scheduling, computerized project management tools, politics and leadership in projects, building and managing a team and handling conflict.

Restriction: 120.605

ARTSMGT 706 (2 Points)

**ARTSMGT 706A (1 Point)**

**ARTSMGT 706B (1 Point)**

**Internship in Arts Management**

Students are placed with an arts organization to conduct a project and obtain practical experience. The Director of Arts Management Programmes must approve the project and placement.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSMGT 706 A and B, or ARTSMGT 706

ARTSMGT 791 (4 Points)

ARTSMGT 791A (2 Points)

ARTSMGT 791B (2 Points)

**Dissertation in Arts Management**

To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSMGT 791 A and B, or ARTSMGT 791

**Dance Studies**

**Stage I**

DANCE 101A (1 Point)

DANCE 101B (1 Point)

**Dance Transition**

Combines contextualized theoretical study of dance as an art form with practical classes in dance technique. Practical study will emphasize safe and efficient use of the body. This course does not require prior dance training.

To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 101 A and B

DANCE 105 (2 Points)

DANCE 105A (1 Point)

DANCE 105B (1 Point)

**Modern Ballet Technique 1**

An introduction to the, basic laws of human movement, relating them to the principles of classical dance, accenting a modernist approach through the use of rhythmical/musical diversity and present day choreographic developments.

*Prerequisite: Admission to BPerfArts - Dance major or permission of Dance Coordinator*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 105 A and B, or DANCE 105*

**DANCE 106 (2 Points)**

**DANCE 106A (1 Point)**

**DANCE 106B (1 Point)**

**Jazz Dance Technique 1**

Fundamentals of jazz dance technique incorporating technical and stylistic elements found in modern theatre. Practical, theoretical and musical emphases. The historical background of jazz dance.

*Prerequisite: Admission to BPerfArts - Dance major or permission of Dance Coordinator*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 106 A and B, or DANCE 106*

**DANCE 107 (2 Points)**

**Dance History 1**

Study of the historical development in western theatre dance from the nineteenth century to the beginning of the twentieth century.

**DANCE 110A (1 Point)**

**DANCE 110B (1 Point)**

**Contemporary Dance and Choreography 1**

A study of contemporary dance practices through the choreography, creative facilitation and techniques of contemporary dance makers. Emphasis will be on the Merce Cunningham Technique.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 110 A and B*

**DANCE 111 (2 Points)**

**DANCE 111A (1 Point)**

**DANCE 111B (1 Point)**

**Dance on Stage**

A performance based course centered on acquiring skills for the stage. The study of new choreographic repertoire. Kinesthetic memory, musicality and accuracy of execution are emphasized. For BPerfArts Dance major students or with permission of Dance Coordinator.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 111 A and B, or DANCE 111*

**DANCE 112 (2 Points)**

**Dance Kinesiology**

Introduction to physiological and kinesiological analysis of dance movements. The study of skeletal alignment, muscular balance and mechanical efficiency. For BPerfArts Dance major students or with permission of Dance Coordinator.

**Stage II**

**DANCE 201A (1 Point)**

**DANCE 201B (1 Point)**

**Dance Techniques**

Continues the development and consolidation of skills in practical dance technique, including the theoretical underpinning of anatomy taught through somatics, and technique in relation to artistic expression.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 101*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 201 A and B*

**DANCE 202 (2 Points)**

**DANCE 202A (1 Point)**

**DANCE 202B (1 Point)**

**Dance on Stage**

An exploration of the social and historical conditions which give rise to Western stage dance in both popular culture and high art expression.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 102 or THEATRE 101*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 202 A and B, or DANCE 202*

**DANCE 204A (1 Point)**

**DANCE 204B (1 Point)**

**Dance Performance 1**

Studies in the concepts and practice of performance; participation in rehearsals and performances (including public appearance) of selected repertoire including student choreography.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 101*

*Corequisite: DANCE 201*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 204 A and B*

**DANCE 205 (2 Points)**

**DANCE 205A (1 Point)**

**DANCE 205B (1 Point)**

**Modern Ballet Technique 2**

Emphasis on the Modern Ballet style, its choreographic foundations and historic development - from George Balanchine to William Forsythe. Developing the technical work that was set out in Stage II by introducing further vocabulary found in today's ballet practices and repertoire.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 105*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 205 A and B, or DANCE 205*

**DANCE 206A (1 Point)**

**DANCE 206B (1 Point)**

**Jazz Dance Technique 2**

Jazz technique and performance development. Jazz choreography. The practical study of jazz repertoire for stage.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 106*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 206 A and B*

**DANCE 210 (2 Points)**

**DANCE 210A (1 Point)**

**DANCE 210B (1 Point)**

**Contemporary Dance and Choreography 2**

The study of contemporary dance practices through the choreography, creative facilitation and techniques of contemporary dance makers in the twentieth century. For BPerfArts Dance major students or with permission of Dance Coordinator.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 110*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 210 A and B, or DANCE 210*

**DANCE 211 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Dances of European History**

*Prerequisite: DANCE 101*

**DANCE 212 (2 Points)**

**Dance History 2**

Study of the historical development in western

theatre dance, including areas of development within New Zealand Aotearoa, in the twentieth century.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 107*

**DANCE 213** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: For students enrolled in a Dance major or minor, or approval of the Dance Coordinator*

**DANCE 250** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**Stage III**

**DANCE 300** (2 Points)

**Dance Intensive**

Intensive practice in the physicality and creation of dance that bridges the gap between the studio and academia.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 201 or 301, and DANCE 203 or 303, and Departmental approval required*

**DANCE 301** (2 Points)

**DANCE 301A** (1 Point)

**DANCE 301B** (1 Point)

**Dance Technique 3**

Emphasis on the development of artistry and complexity of skills required in various contemporary techniques, with a continued emphasis on the somatic approach to physical and theoretical developments.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 201*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 301 A and B, or DANCE 301*

**DANCE 302** (2 Points)

**Dance in Society**

The diverse ways and contexts in which people express fundamental experiences and emotions through dance, illustrating the cultural importance of dance in every society, but with particular emphasis on the indigenous, hegemonic and minority cultures in Aotearoa.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Dance Studies and DANCE 304*

**DANCE 303A** (1 Point)

**DANCE 303B** (1 Point)

**Choreography 2**

Development of composition skills with an emphasis on discovering original material and developing the organizational abilities needed to bring ideas to fruition.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 201 and 203*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 303 A and B*

**DANCE 304** (2 Points)

**Movement Analysis**

Introduction to the systematic analysis and understanding of the qualitative aspects of movement, enabling an expansion of movement vocabulary and ability to observe and describe dance.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Dance Studies including DANCE 202*

**DANCE 307A** (1 Point)

**DANCE 307B** (1 Point)

**Dance Performance 2**

Studies in the concepts and practice of performance; participation in rehearsals and performances (including public appearance) of selected repertoire

including student choreography.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 201*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 307 A and B*

**DANCE 308A** (1 Point)

**DANCE 308B** (1 Point)

**Modern Ballet Technique 3**

Emphasis on coordination, articulation and expressiveness in adagio and allegro enchainment. Partnering, variations and repertoire. For BPerfArts Dance major students or with permission of Dance Coordinator.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 205*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 308 A and B*

**DANCE 309A** (1 Point)

**DANCE 309B** (1 Point)

**Jazz Dance Technique 3**

A practical course designed for the advanced student of jazz dance. Students will be required to use technical and interpretive skills to develop their jazz repertoire for solo and group performance. For BPerfArts Dance major students or with permission of Dance Coordinator.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 206*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 309 A and B*

**DANCE 310** (2 Points)

**DANCE 310A** (1 Point)

**DANCE 310B** (1 Point)

**Contemporary Dance and Choreography 3**

The study of contemporary dance practices through the choreography and techniques of contemporary dance makers. Emphasis will be on the Martha Graham Technique. For BPerfArts Dance major students or with permission of Dance Coordinator.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 210*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 310 A and B, or DANCE 310*

**DANCE 311** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in DANCE*

**DANCE 312** (2 Points)

**DANCE 312A** (1 Point)

**DANCE 312B** (1 Point)

**Dance Production**

Dance works are choreographed on the students by leading dance professionals in their chosen genre, resulting in a dance production. Preparations for performance including basic skills in grooming, make-up and theatre protocol are studied and practiced. For BPerfArts Dance major students or with permission of Dance Coordinator.

*Prerequisite: Any 6 points at Stage II in Dance*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 312 A and B, or DANCE 312*

**DANCE 314** (2 Points)

**Dance and Technology**

Project based study of the interaction between technology and dance. Including hands-on practice with video, digital photography and the study of dance for film. For BPerfArts Dance major students or with permission of Dance Coordinator.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 101, 201*

**DANCE 315** (2 Points)  
**Dance Composition**  
 Studio based course developing improvisational and compositional skills. Choreographic principles are studied as guidelines for structure and design in movement. For BPerfArts Dance major students or with permission of Dance Coordinator.  
*Prerequisite: DANCE 101, 201*

**DANCE 350** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

**DANCE 730** (4 Points)  
**Dance Intensive**  
 Advanced practice in the physicality and creation of dance that bridges the gap between the studio and academia.  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**DANCE 731** (2 Points)  
**Analysis of Movement**  
 The structure of choreography. Study of the works of contemporary, jazz and classical dance makers.  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**DANCE 732** (4 Points)  
**DANCE 732A** (2 Points)  
**DANCE 732B** (2 Points)

**Directing for Dance**  
 Instruction in the theory and practice of design and lighting for dance performance. Practical systems of rehearsing dance for performance.  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 732 A and B, or DANCE 732*

**DANCE 733A** (2 Points)  
**DANCE 733B** (2 Points)

**Choreographic Language**  
 Song, poetry, mythology and legend have inspired many dance makers. Encourages the investigation into the written and spoken word and its relationship to dance. Emphasis will be on the study of rhythmic and Grammatik expression within the choreographer's own dance genre, resulting in the practical performance of voice and movement.  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*  
*Restriction: DANCE 760*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 733 A and B*

**DANCE 751** (2 Points)  
**DANCE 751A** (1 Point)  
**DANCE 751B** (1 Point)

**Research Methodologies**  
 An introduction to empirical and performative research methods. Addresses issues related to dance theory, current research methodologies, research design, archives and resources, literature reviews, research ethics, analysis and report writing.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 751 A and B, or DANCE 751*

**DANCE 753** (4 Points)  
**DANCE 753A** (2 Points)  
**DANCE 753B** (2 Points)  
**Dance in the 20th Century**  
 An overview of twentieth century stage dance with a

focus on the major choreographers of the modern and postmodern period. The emphasis is principally on dance in Europe and America, as well as on the developments of stage dance in Aotearoa/New Zealand. Practical reconstructions of some choreography will be included.  
*Restriction: 276.661, PERFORM 653*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 753 A and B, or DANCE 753*

**DANCE 765A** (2 Points)  
**DANCE 765B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Dance**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 765 A and B, or DANCE 765*

**DANCE 766** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Dance**

**DANCE 767** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Dance**

**DANCE 768** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Dance**

**DANCE 769** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic in Dance**

**DANCE 770** (4 Points)  
**DANCE 770A** (2 Points)  
**DANCE 770B** (2 Points)

**Dance Project**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 770 A and B, or DANCE 770*

**DANCE 771** (8 Points)  
**DANCE 771A** (4 Points)  
**DANCE 771B** (4 Points)

**Dance Project**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 771 A and B, or DANCE 771*

**DANCE 791** (4 Points)  
**DANCE 791A** (2 Points)  
**DANCE 791B** (2 Points)

**Dissertation in Dance**  
 Written work of about 10,000 words on a supervised topic.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 791 A and B, or DANCE 791*

**DANCE 793** (8 Points)  
**DANCE 793A** (4 Points)  
**DANCE 793B** (4 Points)

**Dissertation in Dance**  
 Written work of about 20,000 words on a supervised topic.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 793 A and B, or DANCE 793*

---

## Fine Arts

### Stage I

**FINEARTS 100A** (5 Points)  
**FINEARTS 100B** (5 Points)

**Studio 1**  
 Exploration of those disciplines which are fundamental to the development of the artist and designer. Basic elements of two and three-

dimensional design (space, shape, line, rhythm, texture) and the varied properties and qualities of colour and light. The creative potential and characteristic limitations of various media such as wood, stone, plastic, metal, glass and pigment. Methods and techniques such as welding, casting, printmaking, painting and photographic media. Observation and analysis of the structure of the natural world and human environment. Drawing as an expressive means of communication, and as a vital stimulus to personal development.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 100 A and B

### Stage II

FINEARTS 200A	(5 Points)
FINEARTS 200B	(5 Points)
Studio 2	

An individually planned programme as approved by the Head of Fine Arts, with content related to the student's requirements. For example, one or more of the following: painting, printmaking, photography, sculpture, intermedia, Maori art and design. Advanced experimentation in techniques and materials.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 200 A and B

### Stage III

FINEARTS 300A	(5 Points)
FINEARTS 300B	(5 Points)
Studio 3	

Development of Studio 2 in selected fields.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 300 A and B

FINEARTS 301	(2 Points)
Working the Frame: New Painting Technologies	

An introduction to new painting technologies, with particular focus on the Digital Paint System. 'Working the Frame' comes from Derrida's *The Truth In Painting* and refers to the 'undecidable' line or frame separating art from non-art (art/philosophy, art/technology) and separating the different disciplines of art (painting/photography, painting/printmaking). Derrida suggests that art and technology are not, and cannot be, strictly separated but 'contaminate' each other in unforeseeable ways.

Prerequisite: FINEARTS 200, or permission of Head of School

### Stage IV

FINEARTS 400A	(7 Points)
FINEARTS 400B	(7 Points)
Studio 4A	

Development of Studio 3 in selected fields.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 400 A and B

FINEARTS 401A	(3 Points)
FINEARTS 401B	(3 Points)
Studio 4B	

Development of Studio 3 in selected fields.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 401 A and B

### Diploma Courses

**Note:** The proposed dissertation topic for each course is to be submitted for approval to the Head of Fine Arts by the 31 March.

FINEARTS 651A	(7 Points)
---------------	------------

FINEARTS 651B	(7 Points)
---------------	------------

#### Studio

A practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 651 A and B

FINEARTS 652A	(3 Points)
---------------	------------

FINEARTS 652B	(3 Points)
---------------	------------

#### Practical

A practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 652 A and B

FINEARTS 690A	(4 Points)
---------------	------------

FINEARTS 690B	(4 Points)
---------------	------------

#### Dissertation

Documentation of the results of an original investigation or advanced study or research, related to the student's programme in studio.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 690 A and B

### Honours and Master's Courses

**Note:** The proposed dissertation topic for each course is to be submitted for approval to the Head of Fine Arts by the 31 March.

FINEARTS 753A	(4 Points)
---------------	------------

FINEARTS 753B	(4 Points)
---------------	------------

#### Studio 5C

A practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts.

Prerequisite: 16 points in Art History including 6 points at Stage III

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 753 A and B

FINEARTS 754A	(7 Points)
---------------	------------

FINEARTS 754B	(7 Points)
---------------	------------

#### Studio 5D

A practical performance in an approved aspect of the fine arts.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 754 A and B

FINEARTS 762A	(4 Points)
---------------	------------

FINEARTS 762B	(4 Points)
---------------	------------

#### Studio 6B

A practical performance in an approved aspect of the fine arts. The work in Studio 6B may be in an aspect of the fine arts other than that approved for Studio 5D.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 762 A and B

FINEARTS 763A	(7 Points)
---------------	------------

FINEARTS 763B	(7 Points)
---------------	------------

#### Studio 6C

A practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts. The work in Studio 6C may be in an aspect of the fine arts other than that approved for Studio 5D.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 763 A and B

**FINEARTS 764A** (3.5 Points)  
**FINEARTS 764B** (3.5 Points)  
**Studio 6D**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 764 A and B

**FINEARTS 791A** (3 Points)  
**FINEARTS 791B** (3 Points)  
**Dissertation**

A dissertation embodying the results obtained by the student through original investigation of advanced study relative to the student's programme in Studio 5D and Studio 6B.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 791 A and B

**FINEARTS 797A** (7 Points)  
**FINEARTS 797B** (7 Points)  
**Fine Arts Thesis**

A thesis embodying the results obtained by the student of an original investigation or advanced study relative to the student's programme in Studio 5C.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 797 A and B

## Jazz

### Stage I

**JAZZ 101A** (1 Point)  
**JAZZ 101B** (1 Point)

#### Applied Music Instruction 1

Development of student competence in the elements of music through an in-depth study of scales, chords, tuning, sound generation and relevant musical literature. For students in BPerfArts Jazz or Popular Music majors, or with permission of Director.

Restriction: JAZZ 180, MUSIC 180

To complete this course student must enrol in JAZZ 101 A and B

**JAZZ 103A** (1 Point)  
**JAZZ 103B** (1 Point)

#### Contemporary Theory and Ear Training

An introduction to basic theory. Includes the study of scales, intervals, chords of various types, harmonic progression, and the analysis of simple musical forms as well as aurally recognizing and vocalizing these musical applications. Coursework includes recognition, writing, dictation, and sight-reading of melodies, chords and progressions and rhythms. For BPerfArts, or BTech in Multimedia and the Arts, students.

Restriction: JAZZ 191, MUSIC 103, POPMUS 110

To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 103 A and B

**JAZZ 105A** (1 Point)  
**JAZZ 105B** (1 Point)

#### Class Piano

Elementary keyboard training using theoretical, harmonic, and technical concepts in practical keyboard application: transposition, melody harmonization, technique and repertoire.

Corequisite: JAZZ 101

Restriction: JAZZ 184

To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 105 A and B

**JAZZ 107A** (1 Point)  
**JAZZ 107B** (1 Point)

#### Introduction to Jazz Improvisation

Elementary jazz improvisation dealing with linear, melodic, harmonic, and rhythmic fundamentals of improvisation, as well as the interactive and group aspects.

Corequisite: JAZZ 101

Restriction: JAZZ 182

To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 107 A and B

**JAZZ 109A** (1 Point)  
**JAZZ 109B** (1 Point)

#### Small Ensemble 1

Student participation in a range of small ensembles selected for their diversity of style and instrumentation, designed to present varied musical experiences.

Corequisite: JAZZ 101

Restriction: JAZZ 186

To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 109 A and B

**JAZZ 111A** (1 Point)  
**JAZZ 111B** (1 Point)

#### Large Ensemble 1

Participation in large ensemble addresses development of sectional skills and musicianship as well as the interaction of the roles of various instruments and the development of communication and performance skills. Ensembles may include: big band, guitar ensemble, choir and other large ensembles.

Corequisite: JAZZ 101

Restriction: JAZZ 187, 188, 189

To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 111 A and B

**JAZZ 113** (2 Points)  
**Jazz History**

Critical examination of musical styles, performers, cultural and industrial contexts surrounding jazz musics from the mid-nineteenth century, including ragtime, through New Orleans, swing, be-bop, cool, free, third-stream and post-bop. In-depth study of primary exponents of various styles. Audio and visual materials are a major component of study.

Restriction: JAZZ 184

**JAZZ 131A** (1 Point)  
**JAZZ 131B** (1 Point)

#### Secondary Applied Music Instruction 1

Group lessons that provide the student with an introduction to jazz performance, technique development and repertoire for students not taking BPerfArts in Jazz. For BPerfArts major students, or with permission of Jazz Coordinator.

To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 131 A and B

### Stage II

**JAZZ 201A** (1 Point)  
**JAZZ 201B** (1 Point)

#### Applied Music Instruction 2

Development of mastering the elements of music through an in-depth study of scales, chords, tuning, sound generation and relevant musical literature.

Prerequisite: JAZZ 101

Restriction: JAZZ 280, MUSIC 280

To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 201 A and B

<b>JAZZ 203A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>JAZZ 203B</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Jazz Theory and Ear Training</b>	
A study of diatonic and chromatic theory as related to jazz and contemporary music combined with melodic, harmonic and rhythmic aural skill development in the jazz and contemporary music idioms.	
<i>Prerequisite: JAZZ 103 or 191 or MUSIC 103</i>	
<i>Corequisite: JAZZ 201</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 203 A and B</i>	
<b>JAZZ 205A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>JAZZ 205B</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Jazz Piano</b>	
Harmonic concepts in keyboard application for jazz and contemporary music, chord voicing for popular tunes, standards, and original harmonization will be explored.	
<i>Prerequisite: JAZZ 105 or 184</i>	
<i>Corequisite: JAZZ 201</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 205 A and B</i>	
<b>JAZZ 206A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>JAZZ 206B</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Jazz Arranging and Composition</b>	
A functional approach to ensemble scoring including score analysis, combo arranging, arranging for mixed instrumentation, musical settings for vocalists and arranging for medium sized ensembles.	
<i>Prerequisite: JAZZ 103 or 191 or MUSIC 103</i>	
<i>Corequisite: JAZZ 203</i>	
<i>Restriction: JAZZ 290</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 206 A and B</i>	
<b>JAZZ 207A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>JAZZ 207B</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Intermediate Jazz Improvisation</b>	
The application of improvisational techniques encompassing all standard forms and styles. Performance practices are related to the individual student's abilities, background and experience. Includes solo transcription and analysis, a comparison of improvisational methods and a survey of educational resources.	
<i>Prerequisite: JAZZ 107 or 182</i>	
<i>Corequisite: JAZZ 201</i>	
<i>Restriction: JAZZ 282, MUSIC 282</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 207 A and B</i>	
<b>JAZZ 209A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>JAZZ 209B</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Small Ensemble 2</b>	
Student participation in a range of small ensembles selected for their diversity of style and instrumentation, designed to present varied musical experiences.	
<i>Prerequisite: JAZZ 109 or 186</i>	
<i>Corequisite: JAZZ 201</i>	
<i>Restriction: JAZZ 286, MUSIC 286</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 209 A and B</i>	
<b>JAZZ 211A</b>	(1 Point)
<b>JAZZ 211B</b>	(1 Point)
<b>Large Ensemble 2</b>	
Participation in large ensemble addresses development of sectional skills and musicianship as	

well as the interaction of the roles of various instruments and the development of communication and performance skills. Ensembles may include: big band, guitar ensemble, choir and other large ensembles.

*Corequisite: JAZZ 201*

*Restriction: JAZZ 288, MUSIC 288*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 211 A and B*

**JAZZ 231A** (1 Point)

**JAZZ 231B** (1 Point)

### Secondary Applied Music Instruction 2

Group lessons that provide the student with an introduction to jazz performance, technique development and repertoire for students not taking BPerfArts in Jazz.

*Prerequisite: JAZZ 131*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 231 A and B*

### Stage III

**JAZZ 301A** (1 Point)

**JAZZ 301B** (1 Point)

### Applied Music Instruction 3

Development of mastering the elements of music through an in-depth study of scales, chords, tuning, sound generation and relevant musical literature.

*Prerequisite: JAZZ 201 or 280 or MUSIC 280*

*Restriction: JAZZ 380, MUSIC 380*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 301 A and B*

**JAZZ 306A** (1 Point)

**JAZZ 306B** (1 Point)

### Composition and Arranging

Arranging and composition in the jazz idiom: big band writing will be a major focus of this course as well as basic musical techniques, including scoring and writing for the jazz rhythm section and various ensemble voicing concepts. Final arrangements will be performed and recorded.

*Prerequisite: JAZZ 203 or 205*

*Corequisite: JAZZ 301*

*Restriction: JAZZ 390, 391, MUSIC 390*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 306 A and B*

**JAZZ 307A** (1 Point)

**JAZZ 307B** (1 Point)

### Advanced Improvisation

A continuation of JAZZ 207 including the performance and analysis of more complex musical ideas and literature from the jazz idiom. Various ways of approaching tunes including: stylistic playing, advanced chord progressions, reharmonization and other advanced musical concepts will be explored.

*Prerequisite: JAZZ 203 or 205 or 284*

*Corequisite: JAZZ 301*

*Restriction: JAZZ 392*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 307 A and B*

**JAZZ 309A** (1 Point)

**JAZZ 309B** (1 Point)

### Small Ensemble 3

Student participation in a range of small ensembles selected for their diversity of style and instrumentation, designed to present varied musical experiences.

*Prerequisite: JAZZ 209 or 286*

*Corequisite: JAZZ 301*

*Restriction: JAZZ 397, MUSIC 387*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 309 A and B*

**JAZZ 311A** (1 Point)

**JAZZ 311B** (1 Point)

### Large Ensemble 3

Participation in large ensemble addresses development of sectional skills and musicianship as well as the interaction of the roles of various instruments and the development of communication and performance skills. Ensembles may include: big band, guitar ensemble, choir, and other large ensembles.

*Corequisite: JAZZ 301*

*Restriction: JAZZ 388, MUSIC 388*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 311 A and B*

**JAZZ 313A** (1 Point)

**JAZZ 313B** (1 Point)

### Performance Research

The preparation and presentation of two essays and two practical seminars on a performer or period of stylistic development related to principal instrument or major study.

*Prerequisite: 16 points passed*

*Restriction: JAZZ 396, MUSIC 396*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 313 A and B*

**JAZZ 331A** (1 Point)

**JAZZ 331B** (1 Point)

### Secondary Applied Music Instruction 3

Group lessons that provide the student with an introduction to jazz performance, technique development and repertoire for students not taking BPerfArts in Jazz.

*Prerequisite: JAZZ 231*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAZZ 331 A and B*

## Music

### Stage I

**MUSIC 100** (2 Points)

#### Basic Musical Techniques

An intensive overview of fundamental written skills in music, and practice in aural perception.

*Restriction: May not be taken after passing 840.101 or MUSIC 102 or 103*

**MUSIC 102A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 102B** (1 Point)

#### Harmony and Counterpoint

Exercises in and analysis of Renaissance polyphony in two and three parts, and seventeenth century hymnody and four-part chorales.

*Prerequisite: B+ grade in MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 102 A and B*

**MUSIC 103A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 103B** (1 Point)

#### Musical Skills and Perception

Development of musical responses by means of aural perception, sight singing and keyboard skills. Required course for BMus and BMusEd, BA major in

music. A placement test will be held in the first week of lectures. Following this test, some students may be advised to transfer to MUSIC 100. The School of Music will also hold tests prior to enrolment.

*Prerequisite: B+ grade in MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 103 A and B*

**MUSIC 106A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 106B** (1 Point)

#### Conducting

An introduction to the study of conducting which includes an historical overview and work on posture, patterns and gesture. Emphasis will be placed on choral repertoire.

*Prerequisite: B+ grade in MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 106 A and B*

**MUSIC 109** (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Music Technology

A survey of the technology available to assist musicians. Topics will include: audio recording, computer notation, sound editing and synthesis, sequencing, MIDI, instructional software, music and the Internet.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 110A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 110B** (1 Point)

#### Composition

Creativity and craftsmanship in original free composition are studied with some analysis of significant twentieth-century works and exercises in important twentieth-century techniques. Coordination with performers both within and outside the class is important.

*Prerequisite: B+ grade in MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 110 A and B*

**MUSIC 122A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 122B** (1 Point)

#### Second Instrument Study

Performance work for students who wish to maintain a high level of study in voice or instrumental performance supplementary to their existing performance course. The work will include regular performance lessons and ensemble playing.

*Corequisite: MUSIC 128 and permission of the Head of Department*

*Restriction: MUSIC 123, 124*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 122 A and B*

**MUSIC 128A** (2.5 Points)

**MUSIC 128B** (2.5 Points)

#### Performance

Performance work covering music from different periods. Weekly individual lessons, performance classes and ensemble training in one of the following: singing, pianoforte, organ and/or harpsichord, guitar, recorder, baroque flute, baroque violin, baroque cello, percussion and approved orchestral instrument. Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme 25 to 35 minutes in length.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: MUSIC 120, 121, 129*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 128 A and B*

**MUSIC 129A** (1.5 Points)

**MUSIC 129B** (1.5 Points)

**Performance Studies**

Performance work covering music from different periods. Weekly individual lessons and performance classes in one of the following: singing, choral conducting, pianoforte, organ and/or harpsichord, fortepiano, guitar, recorder, baroque flute, baroque violin, baroque cello, percussion, or an approved orchestral instrument. Preparation and performance of a programme of about 20 minutes in length.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: MUSIC 128*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 129 A and B*

**MUSIC 132** (1 Point)

**Orchestra 1**

Participation in section ensembles and full orchestral rehearsals and public performance; the study of ensemble techniques and discipline, and relevant orchestral repertory. Required for Performance majors in orchestral instruments.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 133** (1 Point)

**Orchestra 2**

Participation in section ensembles and full orchestral rehearsals and public performance; the study of ensemble techniques and discipline, and relevant orchestral repertory. Required for Performance majors in orchestral instruments.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 134** (1 Point)

**Choral Ensemble 1**

Participation in choral singing in rehearsal and public performance, and the study of vocal ensemble techniques and choral repertory.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 135** (1 Point)

**Choral Ensemble 2**

Participation in choral singing in rehearsal and public performance, and the study of vocal ensemble techniques and choral repertory.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 136** (1 Point)

**Accompanying 1**

Candidates presenting keyboard instruments for Performance Studies will have the opportunity to work with singers or instrumentalists in a study of accompanying techniques and repertory, in rehearsal and public performance.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 128 A and B*

**MUSIC 137** (1 Point)

**Accompanying 2**

Candidates presenting keyboard instruments for Performance Studies will have the opportunity to work with singers or instrumentalists in a study of accompanying techniques and repertory, in rehearsal and public performance.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 128 A and B*

**MUSIC 144** (2 Points)

**Turning-points in Western Music**

A study of the significance of certain major discoveries, inventions and trends in Western music,

and their effect on today's 'classical' music. No previous knowledge of music is assumed.

**MUSIC 149** (2 Points)

**New Zealand Music Studies**

New Zealand art music and popular music from World War II to the present, with a focus on contemporary practice. A broad range of musical styles and genres and their historical significance and wider social contexts will be discussed, together with notions of cultural identity in music at national and local levels. No previous knowledge of music is assumed.

**MUSIC 154** (2 Points)

**Acoustics for Musicians**

The fundamental principles of: oscillations and wave propagation, stationary waves, resonance, loudness, pitch, tone quality, intervals and scales, the principles of operation of stringed, woodwind, brass and other instruments, and the acoustics of rooms.

**MUSIC 170** (2 Points)

**MUSIC 170A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 170B** (1 Point)

**Languages for Singers**

Language study, based on the needs of singers. The language taught will normally be Italian. In addition to the weekly meetings of the class there will be prescribed language laboratory work, and some intensive periods of language activity.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 128 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 170 A and B, or MUSIC 170*

**Stage II**

**MUSIC 201A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 201B** (1 Point)

**Materials and Analysis**

The study and analysis of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements, through the examination of a wide range of music, from plainsong and early polyphony to the present.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 201 A and B*

**MUSIC 202A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 202B** (1 Point)

**Harmony and Counterpoint**

Exercises and analysis of harmonic and contrapuntal techniques based on eighteenth and early nineteenth-century practices.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Music, including MUSIC 102*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 202 A and B*

**MUSIC 203A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 203B** (1 Point)

**Musical Skills and Perception**

Further development of musical skills and responses by means of aural perception, sight singing and keyboard skills.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 103*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 203 A and B*

Course Descriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

- MUSIC 206A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 206B** (1 Point)  
**Conducting**  
 Practical work in elementary conducting (choral and orchestral) including rehearsal techniques, management, score preparation, and observation of rehearsals.  
*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102, and MUSIC 106*  
*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 206 A and B
- MUSIC 210** (2 Points)  
**Composition 1**  
 The composition of works for a wide variety of media in conjunction with a study of short pieces. Expansion of technique and realization of performances.  
*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102 and 110*  
*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*
- MUSIC 211** (2 Points)  
**Composition 2**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in MUSIC 210.  
*Prerequisite: MUSIC 210*  
*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*
- MUSIC 214A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 214B** (1 Point)  
**Orchestration**  
 Technical aspects of writing for orchestral instruments and problems of scoring, where possible using practical examples and performers within the group. Study of standard repertoire for classical and small orchestras.  
*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102*  
*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 214 A and B
- MUSIC 216A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 216B** (1 Point)  
**Electronic Music**  
 A study of the major works in this medium composed during the last 40 years. Introduction to studio techniques; tape music and different methods of sound synthesis.  
*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102*  
*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 216 A and B
- MUSIC 222A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 222B** (1 Point)  
**Second Instrument Study**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in MUSIC 122.  
*Prerequisite: MUSIC 122, or 123 and 124, and permission of the Head of Department*  
*Corequisite: MUSIC 228*  
*Restriction: MUSIC 223, 224*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 222 A and B
- MUSIC 228A** (2.5 Points)  
**MUSIC 228B** (2.5 Points)  
**Performance**  
 Further performance work, individual weekly lessons, performance classes and ensemble training. Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme 30 to 35 minutes in length.  
*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102, and 141 or 144, and a pass of at least C in MUSIC 120, and 121 or 128*  
*Restriction: MUSIC 220, 221, 229*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 228 A and B
- MUSIC 229A** (1.5 Points)  
**MUSIC 229B** (1.5 Points)  
**Performance Studies**  
 Further performance work, weekly individual lessons and performance classes. Preparation and performance of a balanced programme of about 25 minutes in length.  
*Prerequisite: MUSIC 129*  
*Restriction: MUSIC 228*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 229 A and B
- MUSIC 232** (1 Point)  
**Orchestra 1**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 132 and/or 133. Required for Performance majors in orchestral instruments.  
*Prerequisite: MUSIC 132 or 133, and Departmental approval required*
- MUSIC 233** (1 Point)  
**Orchestra 2**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 134 and/or 135. Required for Performance majors in orchestral instruments.  
*Prerequisite: MUSIC 132 or 133, and Departmental approval required*
- MUSIC 234** (1 Point)  
**Choral Ensemble 1**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 134 and/or 135.  
*Prerequisite: MUSIC 134 or 135*
- MUSIC 235** (1 Point)  
**Choral Ensemble 2**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 134 and/or 135.  
*Prerequisite: MUSIC 134 or 135*
- MUSIC 236** (1 Point)  
**Accompanying 1**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 136 and/or 137.  
*Prerequisite: MUSIC 136 or 137*  
*Corequisite: MUSIC 228 A and B, and Departmental approval required*
- MUSIC 237** (1 Point)  
**Accompanying 2**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 136 and/or 137.  
*Prerequisite: MUSIC 136 or 137*  
*Corequisite: MUSIC 228 A and B, and Departmental approval required*
- MUSIC 238** (1 Point)  
**Chamber Music 1**  
 Rehearsal and public performance of chamber music and ensemble playing.  
*Corequisite: MUSIC 228 A and B, and Departmental approval required*  
*Restriction: 840.230*
- MUSIC 239** (1 Point)  
**Chamber Music 2**  
 Rehearsal and public performance of chamber music and ensemble playing.

*Corequisite: MUSIC 228 A and B, and Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: 840.230*

**MUSIC 240 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Theatre**

The lyric stage, its conventions, problems, and practices, and the function and typical structures of music in the theatre. Opera will be the primary focus, with some attention to operetta and musicals. Video will be the chief medium for the study of particular works against their social, cultural, political and intellectual background.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 141 or 144*

**MUSIC 241 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Middle Ages**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 141 or 144*

*Restriction: MUSIC 341*

**MUSIC 242 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Renaissance**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 141 or 144*

*Restriction: MUSIC 342*

**MUSIC 243 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Classic-Romantic Era**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 141 or 144*

*Restriction: MUSIC 343*

**MUSIC 244 (2 Points)**

**Music from Modernism to the Present**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 141 or 144*

*Restriction: MUSIC 344*

**MUSIC 246 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Baroque Era**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 141 or 144*

*Restriction: MUSIC 346*

**MUSIC 247 (2 Points)**

**Music from Post-Romanticism to Modernism**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 141 or 144*

*Restriction: MUSIC 347*

**MUSIC 250 (2 Points)**

**MUSIC 250A (1 Point)**

**MUSIC 250B (1 Point)**

**Musicology**

The aims and scopes of musicological research. Topics include: bibliography research tools, survey of standard reference works, specific areas of debate in the subject and historical projects in selected areas.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102, and 141 or 144*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 250 A and B, or MUSIC 250*

**MUSIC 251 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Performance Practice**

A survey of baroque and classical instrumental and vocal performance practice, using eighteenth-century treatises and modern commentaries. Practical application of principles in small group performances, in directing ensembles, or in the presentation of a performing edition of a work.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102*

*Restriction: MUSIC 351, 357*

**MUSIC 262A (1 Point)**

**MUSIC 262B (1 Point)**

**Repertory and Pedagogy**

Repertoire and performance practice, and a survey of pedagogical practices relating to the interface of teaching with performance. The instrument or instrumental group focused on will vary from year to year.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 262 A and B*

**MUSIC 270 (2 Points)**

**MUSIC 270A (1 Point)**

**MUSIC 270B (1 Point)**

**Languages for Singers**

More advanced work in languages as required by singers. The languages studied will normally be German and French.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 170*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 228 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 270 A and B, or MUSIC 270*

**MUSIC 272 (2 Points)**

**Asian Music and Dance**

In-depth study of Asian music and dance performance traditions, involving group performance training as well as academic study. Students will be expected to participate in ensemble performance, on the basis of training given in this course.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 103 and Departmental approval required*

**Stage III**

**MUSIC 301A (1 Point)**

**MUSIC 301B (1 Point)**

**Analysis**

The extension of each student's analytical skills through the study of a variety of works, with more emphasis than at Stage II on student input in workshops and discussions.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Music including MUSIC 201*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 301 A and B*

**MUSIC 302A (1 Point)**

**MUSIC 302B (1 Point)**

**Advanced Harmony**

- Exercises and analysis of harmonic and contrapuntal techniques based on nineteenth and early twentieth century practices.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music including MUSIC 202  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 302 A and B
- MUSIC 306A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 306B** (1 Point)  
**Conducting**  
 Elements of baton technique, rehearsal planning, management and advanced score preparation.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music including MUSIC 206  
*Corequisite:* Departmental approval required  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 306 A and B
- MUSIC 310** (3 Points)  
**Composition 1**  
 Composing for various instrumental and vocal resources, computer notation, study of major twentieth-century composers and their methods.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 210 or 211  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 214 and Departmental approval required
- MUSIC 311** (3 Points)  
**Composition 2**  
 Continuation of work undertaken in MUSIC 310, including a substantial chamber work.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 310
- MUSIC 316A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 316B** (1 Point)  
**Electronic Music**  
 Composition using advanced studio techniques; methods of analogue synthesis, FM synthesis, sampling, use of microcomputers for data storage, MIDI and synchronization. Aesthetics of electronic music, study of selected examples from past and contemporary sources, especially New Zealand studies.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 216  
*Corequisite:* Departmental approval required  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 316 A and B
- MUSIC 322A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 322B** (1 Point)  
**Second Instrument Study**  
 Continuation of work undertaken in MUSIC 222.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 222, or 223 and 224, and permission of Head of Department  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 328  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 323, 324  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 322 A and B
- MUSIC 328A** (3 Points)  
**MUSIC 328B** (3 Points)  
**Performance**  
 Advanced work in all aspects of performance, individual weekly lessons, performance classes and ensemble training. Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme 40 to 50 minutes in length.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 201, and a pass of at least C in MUSIC 220 and 221, or 228  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 320, 321, 329  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 328 A and B
- MUSIC 329A** (1.5 Points)  
**MUSIC 329B** (1.5 Points)  
**Performance Studies**  
 Further performance work, weekly individual lessons and performance classes. Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme of about 35 minutes in length.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 229  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 328  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 329 A and B
- MUSIC 332** (1 Point)  
**Orchestra 1**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 232 and/or 233. Required for Performance majors in orchestral instruments.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 232 or 233, and Departmental approval required
- MUSIC 333** (1 Point)  
**Orchestra 2**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 232 and/or 233. Required for Performance majors in orchestral instruments.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 232 or 233, and Departmental approval required
- MUSIC 334** (1 Point)  
**Choral Ensemble 1**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 234 and/or 235.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 234 or 235
- MUSIC 335** (1 Point)  
**Choral Ensemble 2**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 234 and/or 235.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 234 or 235
- MUSIC 336** (1 Point)  
**Accompanying 1**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 236 and/or 237.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 236 or 237  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 328 A and B, and Departmental approval required
- MUSIC 337** (1 Point)  
**Accompanying 2**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 236 and/or 237.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 236 or 237  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 328 A and B, and Departmental approval required
- MUSIC 338** (1 Point)  
**Chamber Music 1**  
 Advanced playing in the fields of chamber music and ensemble playing.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 238 or 239  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 328 A and B, and Departmental approval required  
*Restriction:* 840.330
- MUSIC 339** (1 Point)  
**Chamber Music 2**  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 238 or 239  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 328 A and B, and Departmental approval required  
*Restriction:* 840.330
- MUSIC 341** (2 Points)  
**Music in the Middle Ages**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 241

**MUSIC 342 (2 Points)**  
**Music in the Renaissance**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 242

**MUSIC 343 (2 Points)**  
**Music in the Classic-Romantic Era**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 243

**MUSIC 344 (2 Points)**  
**Music from Modernism to the Present**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 244

**MUSIC 346 (2 Points)**  
**Music in the Baroque Era**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 246

**MUSIC 347 (2 Points)**  
**Music from Post-Romanticism to Modernism**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music, or EUROPEAN 100 and 2 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 247

**MUSIC 350 (2 Points)**

**MUSIC 350A (1 Point)**

**MUSIC 350B (1 Point)**

**Musicology**

Continuation of work begun in MUSIC 250. Work with primary sources, and related bibliographical and reference tools, editing, individual research projects.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 201, 250  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 301 A and B  
To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 350 A and B, or MUSIC 350

**MUSIC 351 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Studies in Performance Practice**

A survey of baroque and classical instrumental and vocal performance practice, using eighteenth century treatises and modern commentaries. Practical application of principles in small group performances, in directing ensembles, or in the presentation of a performing edition of a work.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 201  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 251, 357

**MUSIC 357 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music

**MUSIC 358 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music

**Diploma Courses**

**MUSIC 625A (1.5 Points)**

**MUSIC 625B (1.5 Points)**

**Performance Studies 1**

Advanced work in all aspects of solo performance. Relevant ensemble work, including orchestral rehearsals and performance, may be required.

*Prerequisite:* B- grade in MUSIC 328  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 626 and MUSIC 627  
To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 625 A and B

**MUSIC 626A (1.5 Points)**

**MUSIC 626B (1.5 Points)**

**Performance Studies 2**

Additional work in selected areas of performance.

*Prerequisite:* B- grade in MUSIC 328  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 625 and MUSIC 627  
To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 626 A and B

**MUSIC 627A (2 Points)**

**MUSIC 627B (2 Points)**

**Recital**

Preparation for and performance of a well-balanced public recital of 50-60 minutes.

*Prerequisite:* B- grade in MUSIC 328  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 625 and MUSIC 626  
To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 627 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**MUSIC 701 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Analysis: Schenkerian**

The study of Schenkerian analytical theory.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 301

**MUSIC 702 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Analysis: Post-tonal Music**

The extension of analytical techniques to more complex works of the twentieth century, with particular attention to set theory.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 301

**MUSIC 710A (2 Points)**

**MUSIC 710B (2 Points)**

**Composition**

Composing for a wide variety of media; voices, instruments and electronic resources.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 310, 311  
To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 710 A and B

**MUSIC 714A (2 Points)**

**MUSIC 714B (2 Points)**

**Advanced Orchestration**

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

- Orchestration and instrumentation in the twentieth century, including contemporary instrumental and vocal techniques, with practical scoring exercises.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 214  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 714 A and B*
- MUSIC 715A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 715B** (2 Points)  
**Electronic Music**  
Composition using advanced studio techniques, computer synthesis and study of relevant programming languages such as Csound. The introduction to the programming language MAX.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 316  
*Restriction:* 840.716, 840.717  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 715 A and B*
- MUSIC 728A** (3 Points)  
**MUSIC 728B** (3 Points)  
**Performance**  
Advanced work in all areas of solo performance. Relevant ensemble work, including orchestral rehearsals and performance, may be required. Preparation for and performance of a well-balanced public recital of 50 to 60 minutes.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 328  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 722, 723  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 728 A and B*
- MUSIC 738** (2 Points)  
**Chamber Music 1**  
More advanced work in the field of chamber music and ensemble playing, with particular attention to the literature of the sonata.  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 728 and *Departmental approval required*  
*Restriction:* 840.730
- MUSIC 739** (2 Points)  
**Chamber Music 2**  
More advanced work in the field of chamber music and ensemble playing, with particular attention to the literature of the sonata.  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 728 and *Departmental approval required*  
*Restriction:* 840.730
- MUSIC 744A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 744B** (2 Points)  
**Studies in New Zealand Music**  
Historical, analytical and bibliographical approaches to New Zealand music, with the emphasis on major composers and works of the last 50 years.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 744 A and B*
- MUSIC 745A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 745B** (2 Points)  
**Music and Text 1750–1950**  
A study of the theory and practice of music with words, in the context of European literature and theatre during the period 1750–1950.  
*Restriction:* 840.742, 840.743  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 745 A and B*
- MUSIC 746** (2 Points)  
**Stylistic Studies 1**  
Detailed survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in a period not previously covered in MUSIC 241–244, 246, 247 or 341–347.
- MUSIC 747** (2 Points)  
**Stylistic Studies 2**  
Detailed survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in a period not previously covered in MUSIC 241–244, 246–247 or 341–347.
- MUSIC 748** (2 Points)  
**Choral Repertoire and Pedagogy**  
An overview of choral literature and the pedagogical skills to bring the discipline to the rehearsal room and the concert platform for current students and for those already in the workforce who wish to improve their skill level in this discipline. Includes analysis, score preparation and attendance at rehearsals/performances of community, tertiary and secondary ensembles.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 206  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 348
- MUSIC 750A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 750B** (2 Points)  
**Seminar in Musicology**  
Musicological method, bibliographical studies, selected problems for discussion and investigation, with individual reports orally and in writing.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 350  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 750 A and B*
- MUSIC 751A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 751B** (2 Points)  
**Aspects of Performance Practice**  
Selected topics for discussion and investigation from the field of performance practice and its historical documentation. The study of source materials, individual projects, performance and/or teaching and direction of music from the area studied.  
*Prerequisite:* Either MUSIC 251 or 351; or MUSIC 123 and 124; or MUSIC 122  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 751 A and B*
- MUSIC 752** (2 Points)  
**Studies in Music Notation 1**  
Detailed study of white mensural notation of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Basic principles of notation, transcription and editing, including Latin and vernacular text underlay, with weekly assignments and a final editing project.
- MUSIC 753** (2 Points)  
**Studies in Music Notation 2**  
Detailed study of lute and keyboard tablatures of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, including their relation to contemporary mensural notation. Basic principles of in tabulation, transcription and editing, with weekly assignments and a final editing project.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 752
- MUSIC 757A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 757B** (1 Point)  
**Special Studies in Music**  
Supervised study on a topic in Music.  
*To complete this course students must enrol for MUSIC 757 A and B*
- MUSIC 758** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- MUSIC 759** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

<b>MUSIC 789A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>MUSIC 789B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Dissertation</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 789 A and B</i>	
<b>MUSIC 792A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>MUSIC 792B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Performance</b>	
<i>Prerequisite: MUSIC 728</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 792 A and B</i>	
<b>MUSIC 795A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>MUSIC 795B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Composition</b>	
<i>Prerequisite: MUSIC 710</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 795 A and B</i>	
<b>MUSIC 796A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>MUSIC 796B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Thesis</b>	
<i>Prerequisite: MUSIC 750</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 796 A and B</i>	
<b>MUSIC 797A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>MUSIC 797B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Research Portfolio</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 797 A and B</i>	

---

## Music Education

---

### Stage I

<b>MUSED 160</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Foundations of Music Education</b>	
A conceptual and practical foundation for ongoing work in music education. A survey of the field, the role of the music educator and the meaning and function of music in society. School and other pedagogical contexts are explored. Students are asked to critically reflect on their own musicianship and musical experiences.	

<b>MUSED 164A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>MUSED 164B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>

#### Practical Studies in Musicianship

Students will have the chance to explore music, both at their own level, and in practical applications for schools and the community. Weekly lessons on chosen instrument or voice. Group experience offered from the following: singing, percussion, music technology, improvisation and guitar. Performing in University music groups is encouraged. For BMusEd students only.

*Restriction: MUSIC 164*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSED 164 A and B*

### Stage II

<b>MUSED 260</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
------------------	-------------------

#### Critical Studies in Music Education

A critical examination of issues and concepts related to the learning and teaching of music. Maori music education, music from a cultural studies perspective and music in the postmodern condition. The impact

of music technologies on education and the preparation of curriculum materials within the framework of the New Zealand Arts Curriculum. Practical considerations in relation to these theories. *Prerequisite: MUSED 160 or MUSIC 164*  
*Restriction: MUSIC 260*

<b>MUSED 264</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
------------------	-------------------

<b>MUSED 264A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
-------------------	------------------

<b>MUSED 264B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
-------------------	------------------

#### Musicianship, Ensembles and Choirs

The continued development of musicianship skills for teachers including sight singing and aural. Practical work in singing and instrumental groups. Examination of practical leadership, the development of group performance and composition in schools. School and community group observations. Students with MUSED 160 only must demonstrate musical competence. Students should consult the Music Education Coordinator before enrolling in MUSED 264.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 164 or MUSED 160*

*Restriction: MUSIC 264*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSED 264 A and B, or MUSED 264*

<b>MUSED 267</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
------------------	-------------------

#### Contemporary Keyboard Styles

A survey of piano and keyboard styles recognized in recent times including jazz, pop, gospel, blues and rock. Case studies of jazz pianists. An educational perspective is taken, outlining approaches to teaching these keyboard styles and the development of keyboard improvisation. Some self-directed practical work is required.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in MUSIC and/or MUSED*

---

### Stage III

<b>MUSED 360</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
------------------	-------------------

#### Music Education Research

Current research in the fields of social psychology and the philosophy of music education and an introduction to music education research methodologies. Students undertake their own fieldwork in schools and the community, in which this knowledge is applied.

*Prerequisite: MUSED 260 or MUSIC 260*

*Restriction: MUSIC 360*

<b>MUSED 366</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
------------------	-------------------

#### Performance Practices and Analysis in Music Education

Provides students with an opportunity to develop experience in a selected group of musical genres and practices in a school context. Contemporary, Maori and Pacific music are examined along with the formation of active performance groups. Students arrange and lead their own performance project using music technology where applicable.

*Prerequisite: MUSED 264 or MUSIC 264*

*Restriction: MUSIC 364*

<b>MUSED 367</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
------------------	-------------------

#### Studies in Community and School Music

Community music theory and philosophical underpinnings. Exploration of issues of quality and access. A survey of the community music field, successful case studies and approaches to community music projects. A practical student study is developed in one aspect of community (or school) music. Involves

practical work, music leadership, planning, facilitation and participation in a dedicated concert.

*Prerequisite:* MUSED 260 or MUSIC 260, and MUSED 264 or MUSIC 264

*Restriction:* MUSED 466

#### Stage IV

**MUSED 466** (2 Points)

##### Advanced Studies in Community and School Music

Theoretical and practical concepts in community and school music. Relationship between community and school music is analysed. A more advanced leadership project is undertaken in conjunction with school/community placement requirements. Students bring their work to a concert as a result of ongoing planning, facilitation and music leadership. For BMusEd students only.

*Prerequisite:* MUSED 366 or MUSIC 364

*Restriction:* MUSED 367, MUSIC 464

#### Honours and Master's Courses

**MUSED 701** (4 Points)

##### Music Education

An examination at advanced level of the historical, philosophical and psychological foundations of music education, together with an examination of recent theories and writings in educational thought and their implications for music education.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from MUSED 360, 366, 367, 466, MUSIC 360 or Departmental approval required

*Restriction:* MUSIC 760

**MUSED 702** (4 Points)

##### Music Education Research Project

An introduction to methodologies of research relevant to music education, and a supervised project investigating research in some area of the field.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from MUSED 360, 366, 367, 466, MUSIC 360 or Departmental approval required

*Restriction:* MUSIC 767

**MUSED 710** (2 Points)

##### Special Topic

**MUSED 711** (4 Points)

##### Special Topic

**MUSED 780** (4 Points)

##### Research Topic

Supervised research on a topic or topics approved by the Head of Department.

### Performing Arts

#### Diploma Courses

**PERFORM 601A** (7 Points)

**PERFORM 601B** (7 Points)

##### Performing Arts (Opera)

A predominantly practical full-time study of opera's three essential elements: music (vocal technique, coaching in diction, style, interpretation and ensemble), language (French, German, Italian, Russian, English and IPA) and drama (script analysis, movement characterization, Alexander technique and fencing) culminating in presentations of showcases at the end of each semester.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PERFORM 601 A and B*

**PERFORM 651A** (2 Points)

**PERFORM 651B** (2 Points)

##### Research Project

Students will pursue a supervised project involving substantial written work, with the option of doing performative research. Background seminars will address issues related to: dance theory, current research methodologies, research design, archives and resources, literature reviews, research ethics, analysis and report writing.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PERFORM 651 A and B*

**PERFORM 652** (4 Points)

##### Sociocultural Contexts of Dance in Aotearoa

Dance in Aotearoa New Zealand is considered in its wide social and cultural contexts, covering such aspects as: identity, tradition, tourism, appropriation, elitism and gender. Both theoretical and practical elements will be covered, illustrated by the study of selected dance forms. Movement analysis skills will be taught and applied to these dance forms.

**PERFORM 653** (4 Points)

##### Dance in the 20th Century

An overview of twentieth century stage dance with a focus on the major choreographers of the modern and postmodern period. The emphasis is principally on dance in Europe and America, as well as on the developments of stage dance in Aotearoa New Zealand. Practical reconstructions of some choreography will be included.

*Restriction:* 276.661

**PERFORM 660** (2 Points)

##### Choreography

An investigation and analysis of choreographic process and practice in the twentieth century with an emphasis on postmodern approaches. Issues such as funding, health and safety, contract writing, collaboration and copyright will also be included. Students will be expected to develop work-in-progress culminating in a performance.

**PERFORM 662** (2 Points)

##### Choreography for the Screen

The practice and theory of choreographing for the small screen, including differences from and similarities to stage choreography. Composition, lighting, storyboarding and editing will be considered. Prior choreographic experience is an advantage and participants are encouraged to procure a video camera.

**PERFORM 663** (2 Points)

##### Comparative Techniques

The theory and comparative practices of selected dance genre and styles, with an emphasis on alternative training and release techniques. Issues such as body/mind connections, body image and safe dance will be investigated. Students will be expected to have passed (or to take concurrently) SPORTSCI 103 Human Anatomy or SPORTSCI 104 Functional Human Anatomy, or to satisfy the Diploma Coordinator that they already have sufficient knowledge of anatomy.

*Prerequisite:* SPORTSCI 101

---

**Honours and Master's Courses****PERFORM 701 (2 Points)**  
**Business of Arts**

Gives an overview of running an arts business. Arts specific skills include: project management, strategic planning, legal issues, funding, sponsorship, governance issues, marketing and audience development.

*Restriction: PERFORM 700*

**PERFORM 720A (2 Points)****PERFORM 720B (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PERFORM 720 A and B*

**PERFORM 721A (2 Points)****PERFORM 721B (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PERFORM 721 A and B*

**PERFORM 725 (2 Points)****Special Topic****PERFORM 726 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

---

**Planning****Part I****PLANNING 100 (2 Points)****Introduction to Planning**

The evolution of modern planning as an intellectual and professional movement.

**PLANNING 101 (2 Points)****Institutional Framework**

An introduction to institutional structures, legal institutions and reasoning. The political context of local and national government.

**PLANNING 102 (2 Points)****Society and Economics**

The interactions of economic systems and communities. Equity and the allocation of resources.

**PLANNING 103 (2 Points)****Environmental Context of Planning**

Human responses to the environment and environmental change. An introduction to environmental processes and outcomes.

**PLANNING 110 (2 Points)****Fundamental Skills**

The course covers: written, verbal and graphic communication; computer competence; data collection and statistical analysis; and information integration and synthesis.

**PLANNING 111 (2 Points)****Foundations for Policy Analysis**

An introduction to interdisciplinary techniques from the natural and built environment and social sciences, applied to planning issues.

**PLANNING 120 (1 Point)****Studio 1A**

An analysis of, and presentation on, a local area issue.

**PLANNING 121 (1 Point)****Studio 1B**

Preparation and presentation of a planning proposal for a local area issue.

*Prerequisite: PLANNING 120*

**PLANNING 130 (1 Point)****Special Topic****PLANNING 131 (1 Point)****Special Topic****PLANNING 132 (1 Point)****Special Topic****PLANNING 133 (1 Point)****Special Topic****PLANNING 134 (1 Point)****Special Topic****PLANNING 135 (1 Point)****Special Topic****PLANNING 136 (1 Point)****Special Topic****PLANNING 137 (1 Point)****Special Topic****PLANNING 138 (1 Point)****Special Topic****PLANNING 139 (1 Point)****Special Topic**

*Note: The above Special Topic courses are specified by the Head of Department in cases where courses gained from previous examinations have included a part of a core Planning course in Part I for which a substitution course may be granted.*

---

**Part II****PLANNING 200 (2 Points)****Settlement Planning**

Practicum concerning issues in national, regional, rural, urban and coastal development and planning systems.

**PLANNING 201 (2 Points)****Introduction to Planning Legislation**

An introduction to the planning legislation with particular emphasis on resource management.

**PLANNING 202 (2 Points)****Planning Physical and Social Infrastructure**

The role and provision of physical and social infrastructure in urban and regional planning.

**PLANNING 203 (2 Points)****Design and the Built Environment**

The role of urban design in shaping the identity of human settlements and communities.

**PLANNING 210 (2 Points)****Research and Methods for Policy Analysis**

Research methods and analytical techniques with practical applications for urban and regional planning.

**PLANNING 220 (2 Points)****Studio 2**

An integrative exercise involving land capability assessment, prescription and design.

<b>PLANNING 230</b> <b>Introduction to Landscape</b> The appreciation and interpretation of landscape values. Design in the development of landscape and the management of resources.	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 320</b> <b>Studio 3A</b> An integrative exercise requiring the application of assessment methods to a complex planning issue.	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 231</b> <b>Landscape Planning</b> The assessment of landscape quality, landscape design principles applied to planning cases, landscape in rural and urban contexts.	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 321</b> <b>Studio 3B</b> The application of skills and methods to a complex planning situation.	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 232</b> <b>Development and Planning</b> A critical examination of theories of growth, development and planning.	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 330</b> <b>Planning for Community and Economic Development</b> The public, private and non-profit sectors and community development. Case studies of planning for local and regional development.	(2 Points)
<b>PLANNING 233</b> <b>Pacific Development Issues</b> Planning and development with particular reference to a selected Pacific region.	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 331</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 234</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 332</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 235</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 333</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 236</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 334</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 237</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 335</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 238</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 336</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 239</b> <b>Special Topic</b> Directed studies on topics approved by the Head of Department.	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 337</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)
<hr/>			
<b>Part III</b>			
<b>PLANNING 300</b> <b>Maori and Resource Management</b> Traditional and contemporary relationships between tangata whenua and their environment. Maori perspectives and roles on public policy, planning and development.	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 339</b> <b>Special Topic</b> Directed studies on topics approved by the Head of Department.	(1 Point)
<hr/>			
<b>Part IV</b>			
<b>PLANNING 301</b> <b>Planning and Resource Management Law</b> Public law relevant to public and private sector planning. Case studies and the Resource Management Act 1991.	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 400</b> <b>Planning Theories and Professional Practice</b> Theoretical approaches concerning the nature, scope and purpose of planning. Professional practice in public and private agencies. The roles and function of planners in society.	(2 Points)
<b>PLANNING 302</b> <b>Environmental Issues</b> Minimization of effects upon the natural environment of the design and functioning of diverse human activities and developments.	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 401</b> <b>Sustainable Futures</b> The study of futures. The role of futures and establishing long term goals in planning.	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 303</b> <b>Planning and Design</b> Relating design to the principle of planning for and with people. Urban form, development controls and the forces shaping human settlements. Perspectives on design theory and method, skills and practice.	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 402</b> <b>Gender and Equity in Planning</b> Community and individual attitudes and values towards gender and equity issues, and their significance for planning.	(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 310</b> <b>Methods for Policy Analysis</b> Methods for strategic environmental assessment, including economic and social effects.	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 403</b> <b>Housing</b> Housing policy and practice. Attitudes and values to housing. Housing market critique; structure and functions.	(1 Point)

<b>PLANNING 410</b> <b>Research Project</b> An investigation of an issue or technique relevant to planning.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	An introduction to key statutes and legal concepts for planning and development in New Zealand.
<b>PLANNING 420</b> <b>Studio 4</b> Project work linked to planning and development of diverse environments. The application of advanced planning methodology to achieve policy objectives.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>PLANNING 703</b> <b>Infrastructure and Planning</b> The role of physical and social infrastructure in urban and regional planning. Policies and requirements for the provision of infrastructure.
<b>PLANNING 430</b> <b>Settlement Design</b> A critique of traditional town development. Ecological settlement design. Sustainability and settlement design.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>PLANNING 704</b> <b>Resource Management and Maori</b> Maori attitudes and values towards the environment and resource management: traditional and contemporary. Tangata whenua views of public policy, planning and development. Institutional critiques.
<b>PLANNING 431</b> <b>Special Topic: Cultural Planning</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>PLANNING 705</b> <b>Theories and Practice for the Planning Professional</b> The nature, scope and purpose of planning, relating advanced theoretical and practical perspectives. Professional roles, ethics, functions and practice in the context of public and private agencies.
<b>PLANNING 432</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>PLANNING 706</b> <b>Futures in the Context of Sustainability</b> The nature and role of the study of futures in planning.
<b>PLANNING 433</b> <b>Special Topic: Selected Aspects of Futures</b> An application of aspects of sustainable futures to an actual location or situation.	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>PLANNING 707</b> <b>Planning's Response to Gender and Equity Issues</b> The nature and significance of gender and equity issues for planning.
<b>PLANNING 434</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>PLANNING 708</b> <b>Shelter, Housing and Society</b> Policy and practice concerning the need for shelter. Attitudes and values to housing. The structure and function of the housing market.
<b>PLANNING 435</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>PLANNING 709</b> <b>Resource Management and Planning Law</b> Legislation and case law relevant to public and private sector planning, with particular reference to the Resource Management Act 1991 and related statutes.
<b>PLANNING 436</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>PLANNING 710</b> <b>Methods and Practices for Policy Development</b> Research, analytical techniques and practical applications for developing policy related to planning issues.
<b>PLANNING 437</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>PLANNING 711</b> <b>Methods for Policy Assessment in Planning</b> Strategic environmental assessment, including the analysis of economic and social implications of policy.
<b>PLANNING 438</b> <b>Special Topic: Whaihanga Studio 1</b> Whaihanga multidisciplinary Maori studio applying aspects of planning, architecture, property management and design to a specific Maori/iwi case study. <i>Prerequisite: PLANNING 300 or 704</i>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>PLANNING 712</b> <b>Research Project</b> An original investigation of an issue or technique relevant to planning.
<b>PLANNING 439</b> <b>Special Topic: Whaihanga Studio 2</b> Whaihanga multidisciplinary Maori studio, applying aspects of planning, architecture, property management and design to a specific Maori/iwi case study. This course further develops skills acquired in Whaihanga Studio 1. <i>Prerequisite: PLANNING 300 or 438, 704</i>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>PLANNING 720</b> <b>Studio 1</b> An introduction to the professional skills base of planning. Practical policy and plan-making methods.
<hr/>		
<b>Master of Planning Practice</b>		
<b>PLANNING 700</b> <b>Planning Theory and Method</b> A comparative exploration of the development of planning theories, concepts and methods in the context of socio-economic and political change. New issues and debates.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>PLANNING 721</b> <b>Studio 2</b> The application of skills and methods to produce a case study.
<b>PLANNING 701</b> <b>Advanced Planning and Design</b> The principles and practices of design within the theories and methods of planning.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>PLANNING 702</b> <b>Legal and Institutional Context of Planning</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	

**PLANNING 722 (2 Points)**  
**Studio 3**

Project work for the management of complex urban planning issues, discussion and application of advanced planning methodology, regulatory and alternative means to achieve policy objectives.

**PLANNING 730 (2 Points)**  
**Designing Settlements**

Traditional town development in relation to contemporary attitudes in planning, including the application of ecological principles.

**PLANNING 731 (2 Points)**  
**Community and Economic Development**

Community development and the initiatives available for action by public, private and non-profit sectors. Case studies of planning for local and regional development.

**PLANNING 732 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic****PLANNING 733 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Introduction to Landscape****PLANNING 734 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Pacific Development Issues**

*Note: The above Special Topic courses are specified by the Head of Department in cases where courses gained from a previous degree have included a part or all of a core Planning course in Part I for which an exemption may be granted.*

**PLANNING 735 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Geographic Information Systems****PLANNING 736 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Selected Aspects of Futures**

An application of aspects of sustainable futures to an actual location or situation.

**PLANNING 737 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Skills for Conserving the Natural Environment**

The effects of human settlement and resource use upon soils, water, air and ecosystems. Skills to minimize adverse effects.

**PLANNING 738 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Landscape Planning****PLANNING 739 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic**

Directed studies on topics approved by the Head of Department.

**PLANNING 740A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 740B (1 Point)****Graduate Case Studies 1**

The further development of theory, techniques and practice in planning, based on knowledge, issues and cases introduced in the other core planning and substitute courses.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 740 A and B*

**PLANNING 741A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 741B (1 Point)****Graduate Case Studies 2**

The further development of theory, techniques and practice in planning, based on knowledge, issues and cases introduced in the other core planning and substitute courses.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 741 A and B*

---

**Master of Planning****PLANNING 750A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 750B (1 Point)****Advanced Planning Theory**

The theoretical frontiers of planning and development, with particular relevance to contemporary practice. Case studies will be used to identify theoretical issues.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 750 A and B*

**PLANNING 751A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 751B (1 Point)****Equity Issues and Planning**

Contemporary social and Treaty issues in New Zealand. The social and economic impact of policy and plans on particular groups' needs for planning, equity and effective partnership.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 751 A and B*

**PLANNING 752A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 752B (1 Point)****Advanced Planning Techniques**

The evolution of planning techniques and their applicability for contemporary planning practice by public and private sector organizations. Critiques of techniques to be grounded in case studies.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 752 A and B*

**PLANNING 753A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 753B (1 Point)****Planning Issues**

A case study approach to current planning and resource management issues, examining the place of policy development, law, institutional factors, and evaluative methods.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 753 A and B*

**PLANNING 754A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 754B (1 Point)****Environmental Issues and Planning**

Case studies of contemporary environmental issues, with particular emphasis on ecological and social processes as the basis for managing the use, development and protection of the environment.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 754 A and B*

**PLANNING 755 (2 Points)****PLANNING 755A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 755B (1 Point)****Advanced Planning and Resource Management Law**

Contemporary New Zealand and international law and its application to planning and resource management. Case studies relating relevant law to current issues in planning and resource management.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 755 A and B, or PLANNING 755*

**PLANNING 756A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 756B (1 Point)****Urban Design and Planning**

Traditional and contemporary design theory and

methods, and their implications for today's design skills and practice, with particular emphasis on the planning of urban environments.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 756 A and B

**PLANNING 757A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 757B** (1 Point)

#### Heritage Conservation Planning

Contemporary practice in heritage conservation planning, examining the roles of public institutions, private organizations, and the community, the influences of Maoritanga, other cultural traditions and legislation.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 757 A and B

**PLANNING 758A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 758B** (1 Point)

#### Development and Planning for Small Economies

The theoretical and applied basis for planning and development in the context of small economies, with particular emphasis on the needs of the South-West Pacific region.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 758 A and B

**PLANNING 759A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 759B** (1 Point)

#### Tourism Planning

The theory and practice of planning for recreation and tourism, with case studies that examine the opportunities for tourism development and the resolution of conflicting perceptions over the use, development and protection of the environment.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 759 A and B

**PLANNING 760A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 760B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic: Urban Sustainability

An exploration of theories, concepts and practices for urban sustainability.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 760 A and B

**PLANNING 761** (2 Points)

**PLANNING 761A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 761B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 761 A and B, or PLANNING 761

**PLANNING 762** (2 Points)

**PLANNING 762A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 762B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic: Development Planning

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 762 A and B, or PLANNING 762

**PLANNING 763A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 763B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 763 A and B

**PLANNING 764A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 764B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 764 A and B

**PLANNING 765A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 765B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 765 A and B

**PLANNING 766A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 766B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 766 A and B

**PLANNING 767A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 767B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 767 A and B

**PLANNING 768A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 768B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 768 A and B

**PLANNING 769A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 769B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic: Research Thesis Proposal and Research Methodology

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 769 A and B

**PLANNING 770A** (2 Points)  
**PLANNING 770B** (2 Points)

#### Case Study Report

A description and critical analysis of a significant planning issue.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 770 A and B

**PLANNING 780A** (4 Points)  
**PLANNING 780B** (4 Points)

#### Research Project

A project involving research in a planning subject. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical topic, the development of a new planning procedure or the development of a computer package.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 780 A and B.

**PLANNING 797A** (7 Points)  
**PLANNING 797B** (7 Points)

#### Thesis

An original piece of research.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 797 A and B

---

## Popular Music

---

### Stage I

**POP MUS 101** (2 Points)

**POP MUS 101A** (1 Point)  
**POP MUS 101B** (1 Point)

### Popular Music Performance Studies 1

Fundamental skills and resources for making popular music. Workshop, practical instruction and student projects in performance in a variety of musical styles. Also features listening, discussion, technical instruction, composition and public

student performances. Evaluation emphasizes practical coursework but written assessment is also required.

To complete this course students must enrol in POPMUS 101 A and B, or POPMUS 101

**POPMUS 102 (2 Points)**

**The Popular Music Industry 1**

Practical and critical perspective on power and practise in the popular music industry. Enriched by instruction from experts 'in the field', this course provides fundamental knowledge enabling students to begin functioning in and examining theoretically the complex workings of the local music industry and its multi-million dollar global counterpart. Practical areas covered will include: music promotion, publishing and copyright, management, organization of functions and festivals, legal issues and manufacture.

**POPMUS 103 (2 Points)**

**Technology and Production 1**

The basics of essential technologies in popular music recording and performance: analogue and digital recording, live and recorded mixing. Introduction to computer-based recording systems, synthesizers and 'the studio' as recording tools. Students will learn the fundamentals of sound engineering for both live and recorded pop music productions. Introduction to theoretical and legal issues and the development of musical technology, with written coursework reflecting on the role of these technologies in the production of popular culture.

**POPMUS 105 (2 Points)**

**From Disco to Hip Hop**

A broad musical examination of styles stemming from disco of the mid-seventies. The manner in which disco provides for hybridization of a multitude of musical styles and a meeting of technology and composition is related through the emergence of successive forms and genre that do the same. The development of rap as a musical entity is discussed along with other stylistic components of hip hop.

**POPMUS 106 (2 Points)**

**Music and Dance in Popular Culture**

The growth of popular music and dance culture across the globe after 1900, from the Cakewalk and Classic Blues to Te Vaka and Rave. The role of the mass media in the creation of popular culture, from the player piano to the music video. The interaction of hegemonic and minority cultures and media.

Restriction: MUSIC 145

**Stage II**

**POPMUS 201 (2 Points)**

**POPMUS 201A (1 Point)**

**POPMUS 201B (1 Point)**

**Popular Music Performance Studies 2**

Extends practical knowledge and experience of selected popular music styles. Composition, production and performance tutored by guest artists. Academic engagement with popular music styles and production enhances a practical coursework base. Greater attention to the quality of recorded and performed student projects.

Prerequisite: POPMUS 101 and POPMUS 106

To complete this course students must enrol in POPMUS 201 A and B, or POPMUS 201

**POPMUS 202 (2 Points)**

**POPMUS 202A (1 Point)**

**POPMUS 202B (1 Point)**

**The Popular Music Industry 2**

Building upon knowledge gained in POPMUS 102, this course provides experience and advanced instruction in practical aspects of promotion, management, ownership and rights in popular music, integrated with theoretical critiques of power locations and complex structures in the popular music industry. Industry professionals are brought in for instruction, mentoring and advice. The convoluted structures of local and international record companies will be addressed looking, in particular, at the workings of the five 'majors', their relationship with independent companies and the multiple layers of ownership and distribution. Coursework combines written and practical work.

Prerequisite: POPMUS 102

To complete this course students must enrol in POPMUS 202 A and B, or POPMUS 202

**POPMUS 203 (2 Points)**

**Music Technology and Production 2**

Explores more sophisticated software, software applications and hardware tools for signal synthesis and processing: synthesisers, effects use, samplers and drum machines, turntables, CD mixers and related software. Continued development of analogue and digital recording technologies and techniques. Provides instruction on and experience with: MIDI, sequencing, the Internet, DJ-ing, radio, sampling, as well as fostering professional production aesthetics. This course also examines the role of acoustics in popular music production. Student projects require demonstration of mid-level skills in engineering and mastering of their own and others' works. In written coursework, students reflect critically on the mechanics of the production process in a multi-media environment and the technician's role therein.

Prerequisite: POPMUS 103

**POPMUS 206 (2 Points)**

**From Jazz to Rock**

Study of the development of jazz, rock and intermediate styles from 1850. In addition to the general and regional study of the growth of the musics, there will also be some concentration on particular styles, performers and performances.

Prerequisite: 4 points in POPMUS or MUSIC at Stage 1

Restriction: MUSIC 245

**POPMUS 207 (2 Points)**

**Popular Music Analysis**

Musical analysis in the popular music idiom. Techniques of deconstructing music and text from a variety of musical styles in order to identify significant characteristics or trends in composition and lyric writing. The interaction of composition, arrangement, text and instrumentation is a central focus of this study. New Zealand music forms a significant component of the analysed material.

Prerequisite: JAZZ 103 or MUSIC 103 or POPMUS 110

**POPMUS 210 (2 Points)**

**Practical Singing and Musicianship 2**

Training in practical musical skills for students with prior music training or performance experience. Familiarity with western notation is required. Further development of aural melody and rhythm perception, emphasis on two-part musical

performance across a wide range of melodic and rhythmic content, continued development of guitar or keyboard performance skills with emphasis on the musical accompaniment of self and others.

*Prerequisite:* POPMUS 110

### Stage III

**POPMUS 301** (2 Points)

**POPMUS 301A** (1 Point)

**POPMUS 301B** (1 Point)

#### Popular Music Performance Studies 3

Advanced instruction in performance and production of popular music styles combined with academic engagement with historical and social aspects of popular musics. Composition, creation, analysis, research and performance are included in coursework.

*Prerequisite:* POPMUS 201

To complete this course students must enrol in POPMUS 301 A and B, or POPMUS 301

**POPMUS 302** (2 Points)

#### Popular Musicology

Musicological method applied to the analysis of pop songs, trends and genres. Development of a musicological understanding of theoretical assertions of 'authenticity', 'success' and pop aesthetics. Analyses the rhythm patterns, timbre, harmonic structure, lyrics, arrangement and orchestration, production, tonality, time and motive of selected pop songs. Provides vital skills in listening, notation and familiarity with a diversity of pop styles; equips students with the language to examine and criticize popular music as music.

*Prerequisite:* POPMUS 210 or MUSIC 203

**POPMUS 303** (2 Points)

#### Music Technology and Production 3

Advanced instruction and experience in technologies integral to popular music production. Provides training in and engagement with multi-track digital recording, integrated with video production and MIDI sequencing. Through coursework, the technologies surrounding electronic-based music are integrated with advanced tasks resulting in recordings of electronic or electro-acoustic works. Theoretical consideration of the importance of psycho-acoustic processes and legal issues in technology, with written projects for coursework.

*Prerequisite:* POPMUS 203 or MUSIC 216

**POPMUS 304** (2 Points)

#### Performance Project

The individual construction, by each student, of a 'portfolio' of items demonstrating students' mastery of some of, but not necessarily all of, the skills of musical creation, production, management and performance. Guided by an approved supervisor, students will produce and/or collaborate on their own popular music creation. Coursework will include the artistic piece itself in all its stages, such as planning, performance, recording, promotion and organization and a written analysis, description and critical exploration of the work. Portfolio items may include group performances featuring individual creation or performance, recordings of performance and production projects, compositions submitted in notation or on recorded media. Other portfolio items are also possible with approval of lecturers. Students

may collaborate in production process but assessment is based on the individual's performance or creative work.

*Prerequisite:* POPMUS 201, 202 and 203

*Corequisite:* POPMUS 301

**POPMUS 305** (2 Points)

#### British and American Rock 1965-1977

Traces musical 'developments' in British popular music; the influences of American R&B and pop and subsequent British influences upon American popular music. Key British invasion bands and the transformations of pop-inflected rock of the mid-sixties into the late sixties and ultimately into heavy rock and heavy metal. The significance of the punk movement of the mid-1970s.

*Prerequisite:* 16 points passed

## Sound Recording and Design

### Honours and Master's Courses

**SOUND 701** (4 Points)

**SOUND 701A** (2 Points)

**SOUND 701B** (2 Points)

#### Studio Studies

Advanced examination of the technological structures of modern recording studios. Electronic, digital and physical engineering and design practice; professional recording consoles and outboard gear. Analogue and digital audio systems are compared through directed research and demonstration with an emphasis on theoretical understanding. Computer applications in audio and related fields are explored, the primary focus being on hard disc recording technology. Theory and practice of modern synchronization systems for audio and visual environments.

To complete this course students must enrol in SOUND 701 A and B, or SOUND 701

**SOUND 702** (2 Points)

#### Live Recording Research and Practice

The construction of electronic and electro-acoustic systems, microphone design, application and placement; engineering suitable systems for live studio and 'in concert' recording.

**SOUND 703** (2 Points)

#### Physical and Cognitive Sound

The application of physical acoustic sound properties to the recording process, the physiology and functioning of the ear, aural cognition and human perception, and sound processing as these affect the production and recording process. Audience preferences in live and recorded sound.

**SOUND 704** (2 Points)

#### Sound Recording in Contemporary Culture

The role of recording practice and the institution of the studio in cultural and professional context. Considers issues of cultural and sub-cultural sound ideals, the role of recording and technology in the creative process, and the critique of the music industry and recording in the construction of modern and post-modern theory. Ethical issues surrounding the process of sound recording and the recording industry are also considered.

- SOUND 705** (2 Points)  
**Industry Perspectives and Issues**  
 The history, structure and operation of the music industry, with particular reference to developments in music technology. Basic research methodologies are also introduced and contemporary issues are explored.
- SOUND 706** (2 Points)  
**Sound Design**  
 The application of technological music skills to a range of media. The selection, preparation and integration of electronic or electro-acoustic sounds into live drama, video, film, web sites, etc, as background music, sound effects or other component parts of multimedia productions or installations. Introduction to aesthetic considerations for sound design and to technological methodologies such as surround format and audio/video synchronization.
- SOUND 707** (2 Points)  
**Acoustics for Recording**  
 Study of the behaviour of sound in an enclosed space. Moves progressively towards research, analysis of design criteria and the engineering of appropriate acoustic environments. The primary focus is on recording studios and control rooms. The practical testing of acoustic spaces and electronic systems is covered, as are certain aspects of budgeting for recording studio construction.
- SOUND 709** (2 Points)  
**Electronica Composition**  
 Composition exploring progressive dj and electronica music culture, with reference to contemporary dj, performance and music installation artists. Composition for interactive and multi-media contexts.
- SOUND 710** (2 Points)
- SOUND 710A** (1 Point)  
**SOUND 710B** (1 Point)  
**Research in Sound 1**  
 Guided research in a topic chosen with approval of the academic supervisor. Assessed work may be academic, technical or creative.  
*Prerequisite:* 14 points in courses for the MCPA in Sound Recording and Design  
*Restriction:* SOUND 711  
 To complete this course students must enrol in SOUND 710 A and B, or SOUND 710
- SOUND 711** (4 Points)  
**Research in Sound 2**  
 Guided research in a topic chosen with approval of the academic supervisor. Assessed work may be academic, technical or creative.  
*Prerequisite:* 14 points in courses for the MCPA in Sound Recording and Design  
*Restriction:* SOUND 710
- SOUND 712** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- SOUND 713** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- SOUND 714** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- SOUND 715A** (2 Points)  
**SOUND 715B** (2 Points)
- Creative Sound Design and Installation**  
 The creation and application of electronic and electro-acoustic music in multi-media projects and/or installations. The creation of effective sound environments. The collaborative use of sound design to supplement installations in other media and the creation of interactive sound sculptures whether real or virtual.  
*Restriction:* SOUND 708  
 To complete this course students must enrol in SOUND 715 A and B
- SOUND 791** (8 Points)  
**SOUND 791A** (4 Points)  
**SOUND 791B** (4 Points)  
**Professional Practice and Research**  
 An audio engineering research course, in which an investigation into professional, technological or industrial issues is conducted through practical experience in a professional/industrial setting. With approval of the coordinator and subject to availability of suitable placement, this course may include placement and internship in practical settings throughout New Zealand. Professional practice is to be complemented by written work presenting theoretical and technical insights based on the work undertaken. Students considering enrolling for this course must obtain prior departmental approval.  
*Prerequisite:* 14 points in courses for the MCPA in Sound Recording and Design  
*Corequisite:* SOUND 710 or 711  
 To complete this course students must enrol in SOUND 791 A and B, or SOUND 791
- SOUND 793A** (4 Points)  
**SOUND 793B** (4 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
 Supervised research on a topic selected with the approval of the academic supervisor.  
*Prerequisite:* 14 points in courses for the MCPA in Sound Recording and Design  
*Corequisite:* SOUND 710 or 711  
 To complete this course students must enrol in SOUND 793 A and B
- SOUND 796A** (7 Points)  
**SOUND 796B** (7 Points)  
**Thesis**  
 Academic research project in areas of sound recording or design. Developed in consultation with the academic supervisor and approved by the programme coordinator.  
*Prerequisite:* 14 points in courses for the MCPA in Sound Recording and Design  
 To complete this course students must enrol in SOUND 796 A and B
- 
- Visual Arts**
- Stage I**
- VISARTS 150A** (1.5 Points)  
**VISARTS 150B** (1.5 Points)  
**Contextual Studies 1**  
 Investigation of a range of academic, visual arts-related material from: art history and theory, philosophy, sociology, political studies, architecture, cultural theory, English literature, and arts administration. Topics vary yearly in accordance with current trends in contemporary visual arts practice.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 150 A and B

**VISARTS 160A** (1.5 Points)  
**VISARTS 160B** (1.5 Points)  
**Drawing 1**

Exploration and practice of diverse media and approaches, from contemporary electronic technologies to traditional life drawing. Emphasis is placed on the use of drawing in visualizing, exploring, interpreting and communicating ideas.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 160 A and B*

**VISARTS 170A** (4 Points)  
**VISARTS 170B** (4 Points)  
**Studio 1**

Introduction to the research culture of visual arts practice through the exploration of those disciplines which are fundamental to the development of the artist and designer, with an emphasis on experimental and interdisciplinary outcomes.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 170 A and B*

### Stage II

**VISARTS 250A** (1 Point)  
**VISARTS 250B** (1 Point)

#### Contextual Studies 2

Introduction to and study of theories of modern art, and other topics selected from: post-modernism, contemporary Pacific art, contemporary Maori art, systems of belief, introduction to philosophy, contemporary New Zealand art.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 250 A and B*

**VISARTS 260A** (1 Point)  
**VISARTS 260B** (1 Point)

#### Drawing 2

Development of Drawing 1; further investigation of drawing as a means of personal expression. Depth of skills and knowledge is enhanced through a variety of elective drawing projects.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 260 A and B*

**VISARTS 270A** (3 Points)  
**VISARTS 270B** (3 Points)

#### Major Studio 2

Individually planned programme, with content related to the student's requirements. Selected from: painting, printmaking, photography, moving image, three-dimensional concerns (leading to sculpture or jewellery in Studio 3), and design.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 270 A and B*

**VISARTS 271** (2 Points)  
**Minor Studio 2A**

Subjects may vary from year to year. Intended to complement Major Studio subjects and extend students' process knowledge and skills.

**VISARTS 272** (2 Points)  
**Minor Studio 2B**

Subjects may vary from year to year. Intended to complement Major Studio subjects and extend students' process knowledge and skills.

### Stage III

**VISARTS 350A** (1 Point)  
**VISARTS 350B** (1 Point)

### Contextual Studies 3

Development of Professional Practice, and study of topics selected from: contemporary theory and philosophy, indigenous issues, contemporary media, western mythology, representation and gender.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 350 A and B*

**VISARTS 360A** (1 Point)  
**VISARTS 360B** (1 Point)

#### Drawing 3

Development of Drawing 2, with an emphasis on the use of drawing methodologies appropriate to individual art practice.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 360 A and B*

**VISARTS 370A** (5 Points)  
**VISARTS 370B** (5 Points)

#### Major Studio 3

Development of Studio 2 in selected fields. Advanced experimentation in techniques and materials.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 370 A and B*

### Stage IV

**VISARTS 470A** (7 Points)  
**VISARTS 470B** (7 Points)

#### Studio Practice

Synthesis of artistic activity within an area of personally identified interest, with in-depth contextual insight into the student's personal studio work.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 470 A and B*

## Faculty of Education

### Education Curriculum

#### Stage I

**EDCURR 102** (2 Points)

**EDCURR 102A** (1 Point)

**EDCURR 102B** (1 Point)

#### Processes of Literacy Learning

Introduces the New Zealand English curriculum framework and a range of pedagogies that are associated with effective teaching of literacy. The emphasis will be on the development of oral and written language, beginning reading and writing processes and associated primary school teaching practices. Students will also be expected to develop their own abilities in reading critically and writing fluently for a range of purposes.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 102 A and B, or EDCURR 102*

**EDCURR 103** (2 Points)

#### Mathematics for Teaching

Introduction to the mathematics that underlies the concepts and procedures that are taught in primary schools. Students develop their own mathematical knowledge and skills while exploring the steps that pupils may go through in reaching mathematical understanding.

*Restriction: MATHS 101*

- EDCURRE 104** (2 Points)  
**EDCURRE 104A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURRE 104B** (1 Point)  
**Teaching Science 1**  
 Provides students with an introduction to the scientific concepts and principles they need to become effective teachers at primary school level. These understandings are developed within contexts that consider the various issues peculiar to the teaching and learning of science within a multicultural/multi-ability classroom. The course will also provide a comprehensive introduction to Science in the New Zealand Curriculum. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*Restriction: EDCURRE 212, SCIGEN 100*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 104 A and B, or EDCURRE 104*
- EDCURRE 106A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURRE 106B** (1 Point)  
**Teaching the Arts and ICT**  
 Introduces students to the arts disciplines in the New Zealand Curriculum. They develop practical and pedagogical knowledge of arts processes related to planning, teaching and evaluation in primary schools. Students are encouraged to engage in real contexts of arts learning and links are explored with the wider curriculum. Students also investigate the role of information and communication technology (ICT) in schools and learn how to integrate ICT in primary classroom settings. They develop technical skills in computing to support their planning, teaching and evaluation practices. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 106 A and B*
- EDCURRE 107A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURRE 107B** (1 Point)  
**Teaching Social Studies**  
 An introduction to the framework and pedagogy of social studies in the New Zealand Curriculum including required content knowledge and an emphasis on essential learning about New Zealand society and cultural issues. Approaches to planning, teaching, assessing and evaluating social studies lessons and units are taught. Students learn how to integrate social studies with other curriculum areas and examine approaches to school wide planning. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*Restriction: EDCURRE 214*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 107 A and B*
- EDCURRE 108A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURRE 108B** (1 Point)  
**Teaching Health and Physical Education**  
 Introduction to the framework and pedagogy of health and physical education in the New Zealand Curriculum. Students gain an understanding of the role of health and physical education in New Zealand schools and recognize the interconnectedness of these curriculum areas. They explore various approaches to planning, teaching and assessing health and physical education, and become familiar with a wide range of curriculum and community resources. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*Restriction: EDCURRE 215*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 108 A and B*
- 
- Stage II**
- EDCURRE 201** (2 Points)  
**EDCURRE 201A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURRE 201B** (1 Point)  
**Professional Practice 2**  
 A study of the principles and practice of working as a teaching professional. Content areas will encompass: ethical practice, working with professionals in a school system, working with parents/care-givers, and community. Available only to BEd(Tchg) or BEd(Tchg) conjoint students.  
*Prerequisite: EDCURRE 100 or EDP8ROF 100*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 201 A and B, or EDCURRE 201*
- EDCURRE 202A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURRE 202B** (1 Point)  
**Teaching Literacy**  
 Examines literacy development and how it relates to English in the New Zealand Curriculum during the primary school years. Focuses on the development of proficiency in readers and writers through teaching, monitoring and assessment. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*Prerequisite: EDCURRE 102*  
*Restriction: EDCURRE 210*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 202 A and B*
- EDCURRE 203A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURRE 203B** (1 Point)  
**Teaching Mathematics**  
 Prepares students to teach mathematics in primary schools. Provides an examination of the main factors that lead to successful teaching of mathematics in primary schools. Theoretical and practical issues behind some of the more difficult concepts taught will also be examined. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*Prerequisite: EDCURRE 103*  
*Restriction: EDCURRE 211*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 203 A and B*
- EDCURRE 204A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURRE 204B** (1 Point)  
**Teaching Science 2**  
 Further develops students' understanding of the scientific concepts and principles needed for effective science teaching at the primary school level. Appropriate strategies for teaching a variety of concepts and principles will be developed, together with the skills required to support pupils' investigations into natural phenomena as outlined in science in the New Zealand Curriculum. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*Prerequisite: EDCURRE 104*  
*Restriction: EDCURRE 212, SCIGEN 100*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 204 A and B*

- EDCURR 206A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 206B** (1 Point)  
**Teaching The Arts**  
 Develops practical and pedagogical knowledge in arts disciplines through a variety of practical experiences. Planning, teaching and evaluation issues are examined and prepared in readiness for work in schools. Management and resource issues related to arts learning in the various arts disciplines are explored. Students develop understandings and skills that enable them to integrate arts curricula into other curriculum areas. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*Prerequisite: EDCURR 106*  
*Restriction: EDCURR 216*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 206 A and B*
- EDCURR 209A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 209B** (1 Point)  
**Teaching Technology**  
 Develops an understanding of the framework and pedagogy of technology education in the New Zealand Curriculum. Discusses approaches to the implementation of technology in schools, including the concept of technological practice. Skills in planning, teaching, assessing and evaluating technology units will be developed. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*Prerequisite: EDCURR 106*  
*Restriction: EDCURR 213*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 209 A and B*
- EDCURR 210A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 210B** (1 Point)  
**Languages**  
 A sound working knowledge of the content, structure underlying principles and application of the language and languages, and Te Reo in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 210 A and B*
- EDCURR 211A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 211B** (1 Point)  
**Mathematics**  
 A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of mathematics in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 211 A and B*
- EDCURR 212A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 212B** (1 Point)  
**Science**  
 A sound working knowledge and application of the content, structure and underlying principles of Science in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Students will learn to abstract relevant science concepts from selected contexts and to develop scientific literacy. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 212 A and B*
- EDCURR 213A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 213B** (1 Point)  
**Technology**  
 A sound working knowledge and application of the content, structure and underlying principles of the Technology in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Students will learn to abstract relevant technology concepts from selected contexts and to develop technological literacy. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 213 A and B*
- EDCURR 214** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 214A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 214B** (1 Point)  
**Social Sciences**  
 A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of the Social Sciences in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 214 A and B, or EDCURR 214*
- EDCURR 215A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 215B** (1 Point)  
**Health and Physical Well-Being**  
 A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of the Health and Physical Well-being in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 215 A and B*
- EDCURR 216A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 216B** (1 Point)  
**The Arts**  
 A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of the Arts in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) or BMusEd (primary) students.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 216 A and B*
- EDCURR 231** (2 Points)  
**Te Reo (Languages)**  
 A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Te Reo and the Languages in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. Appropriate research will be developed within the cultural framework of pedagogical theory and practices.

**EDCURR 232 (2 Points)****Pangarau (Mathematics)**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Pangarau in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. Appropriate research will be developed within the cultural framework, of pedagogical theory and practices.

**EDCURR 233 (2 Points)****Putaiiao (Science)**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Putaiiao in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. Students will learn to abstract relevant ideas about science and also extract Maori skills and knowledge within the context of Putaiiao.

**EDCURR 234 (2 Points)****Hangarau (Technology)**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Hangarau in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. Students will learn to abstract relevant ideas about technology and extract Maori skills and knowledge from the cultural frameworks developed in the hangarau curriculum.

**EDCURR 235 (2 Points)****Tikanga-a-iwi (Social Sciences)**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Tikanga-a-iwi in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. A kaupapa Maori theoretical framework will operate in developing research and teaching/learning practices for this curriculum area.

**EDCURR 236 (2 Points)****Hauora te me Kori-a-Tinana (Health and Physical Well-Being)**

This study is linked to the Health and Physical Well-being curriculum. Students will be expected to have a sound working knowledge of its content, structure and application in the New Zealand curriculum. Ideas of Kori-a-tinana will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. A kaupapa Maori theoretical framework will operate in developing research and teaching/learning practices for this curriculum area.

**EDCURR 237 (2 Points)****Mahi Toi (The Arts)**

Mahi toi as a study is linked to the Arts curriculum. Students will be required to have a sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Arts in the New Zealand curriculum. It will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. A kaupapa Maori theoretical framework will operate in developing research and teaching/learning practices for this curriculum area.

**Stage III****EDCURR 301 (2 Points)****EDCURR 301A (1 Point)****EDCURR 301B (1 Point)****Professional Practice III**

A study of the principles and practice of working as a teaching professional. Content areas will encompass the application of pedagogical theory in a prescribed setting. Available only to BEd(Tchg) or BEd(Tchg) conjoint students.

*Prerequisite: EDCURR 201 or EDPROF 200 or 210*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 301 A and B, or EDCURR 301*

**Diploma Courses****EDCURR 601A (2 Points)****EDCURR 601B (2 Points)****International Languages for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 601 A and B*

**EDCURR 602A (2 Points)****EDCURR 602B (2 Points)****Accounting for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 602 A and B*

**EDCURR 603A (2 Points)****EDCURR 603B (2 Points)****English for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 603 A and B*

**EDCURR 604A (2 Points)****EDCURR 604B (2 Points)****Geography for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 604 A and B*

**EDCURR 605A (2 Points)****EDCURR 605B (2 Points)****History for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 605 A and B*

**EDCURR 606A (2 Points)****EDCURR 606B (2 Points)****Maori for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 606 A and B*

**EDCURR 607A** (2 Points)

**EDCURR 607B** (2 Points)

**Mathematics for Teaching Years 9-12**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 607 A and B*

**EDCURR 608A** (2 Points)

**EDCURR 608B** (2 Points)

**Science for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 608 A and B*

**EDCURR 611A** (2 Points)

**EDCURR 611B** (2 Points)

**Economics for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 611 A and B*

**EDCURR 612A** (2 Points)

**EDCURR 612B** (2 Points)

**Japanese for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 612 A and B*

**EDCURR 613A** (2 Points)

**EDCURR 613B** (2 Points)

**Spanish for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 613 A and B*

**EDCURR 619A** (2 Points)

**EDCURR 619B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of a selected subject in schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 619 A and B*

**EDCURR 620A** (2 Points)

**EDCURR 620B** (2 Points)

**Classical Studies/Latin for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subjects in schools, and the

knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subjects, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 620 A and B*

**EDCURR 621A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURR 621B** (1.5 Points)

**Bilingual Curriculum Studies for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 621 A and B*

**EDCURR 622A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURR 622B** (1.5 Points)

**Classical Studies for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 622 A and B*

**EDCURR 623A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURR 623B** (1.5 Points)

**International Languages for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 623 A and B*

**EDCURR 624A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURR 624B** (1.5 Points)

**Accounting for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 624 A and B*

**EDCURR 625A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURR 625B** (1.5 Points)

**Computer Science and Information Technology for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 625 A and B*

**EDCURR 626A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURR 626B** (1.5 Points)

**English for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 626 A and B*

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

**EDCURRE 627A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 627B** (1.5 Points)

**ESOL for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 627 A and B*

**EDCURRE 628A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 628B** (1.5 Points)

**Geography for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 628 A and B*

**EDCURRE 629A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 629B** (1.5 Points)

**History for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 629 A and B*

**EDCURRE 630A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 630B** (1.5 Points)

**Maori for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 630 A and B*

**EDCURRE 631A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 631B** (1.5 Points)

**Mathematics for Teaching Year 13**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*Corequisite: EDCURRE 607*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 631 A and B*

**EDCURRE 632A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 632B** (1.5 Points)

**Media Studies for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 632 A and B*

**EDCURRE 633A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 633B** (1.5 Points)

**Science for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the

knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 633 A and B*

**EDCURRE 634A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 634B** (1.5 Points)

**Social Science for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 634 A and B*

**EDCURRE 635A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 635B** (1.5 Points)

**Economics for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 635 A and B*

**EDCURRE 636A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 636B** (1.5 Points)

**Biology for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 636 A and B*

**EDCURRE 637A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 637B** (1.5 Points)

**Physics for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 637 A and B*

**EDCURRE 638A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 638B** (1.5 Points)

**Chemistry for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 638 A and B*

**EDCURRE 639A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 639B** (1.5 Points)

**Japanese for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 639 A and B*

**EDCURR 640A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 640B** (1.5 Points)

**Spanish for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 640 A and B*

**EDCURR 641A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 641B** (1.5 Points)

**Social Studies for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 641 A and B*

**EDCURR 645A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 645B** (1.5 Points)

**Technology for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 645 A and B*

**EDCURR 646A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 646B** (1.5 Points)

**Music for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 646 A and B*

**EDCURR 647A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 647B** (1.5 Points)

**Samoan for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 647 A and B*

**EDCURR 648A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 648B** (1.5 Points)

**Health Education for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 648 A and B*

**EDCURR 649A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 649B** (1.5 Points)

**Chinese for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning,

teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 649 A and B*

**EDCURR 650A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 650B** (1.5 Points)

**French for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 650 A and B*

**EDCURR 651A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 651B** (1.5 Points)

**Special Topic for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of a selected subject in schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 651 A and B*

**EDCURR 652** (3 Points)

**EDCURR 652A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDCURR 652B** (1.5 Points)

**Understanding the Secondary Classroom**

Prepares students who are unfamiliar with the culture, language and pedagogical demands of the New Zealand secondary classroom to work alongside secondary students and teachers in New Zealand schools. For students who have not attended secondary school in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: Approval of Head of School*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 652 A and B, or EDCURR 652*

**EDCURR 661A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 661B** (2 Points)

**Music for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 661 A and B*

**EDCURR 662A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 662B** (2 Points)

**Music for Community Teachers**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in the community, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 662 A and B*

**EDCURR 663A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 663B** (2 Points)

**Chinese for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 663 A and B*

**EDCURRE 664A** (2 Points)

**EDCURRE 664B** (2 Points)

**French for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 664 A and B*

**EDCURRE 665A** (2 Points)

**EDCURRE 665B** (2 Points)

**Samoan for Teaching**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 665 A and B*

**EDCURRE 666A** (2 Points)

**EDCURRE 666B** (2 Points)

**Teaching Junior Mathematics**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 666 A and B*

**EDCURRE 667A** (2 Points)

**EDCURRE 667B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of a selected subject in schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 667 A and B*

**EDCURRE 668A** (2 Points)

**EDCURRE 668B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of a selected subject in schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 668 A and B*

**EDCURRE 670A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 670B** (1.5 Points)

**Teaching Art History**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 670 A and B*

**EDCURRE 671A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 671B** (1.5 Points)

**Special Topic**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of a selected subject in schools, and the

knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 671 A and B*

**EDCURRE 672A** (1.5 Points)

**EDCURRE 672B** (1.5 Points)

**Special Topic**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of a selected subject in schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 672 A and B*

**EDCURRE 675A** (1 Point)

**EDCURRE 675B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of a selected subject in schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 675 A and B*

**EDCURRE 676** (2 Points)

**EDCURRE 676A** (1 Point)

**EDCURRE 676B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of a selected subject in schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 676 A and B, or EDCURRE 676*

**EDCURRE 677A** (1 Point)

**EDCURRE 677B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of a selected subject in schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 677 A and B*

**EDCURRE 678A** (1 Point)

**EDCURRE 678B** (1 Point)

**Teaching Languages in Primary School**

The knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the languages in primary schools, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 678 A and B*

**EDCURRE 679A** (2 Points)

**EDCURRE 679B** (2 Points)

**Teaching Drama to Year 13**

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 679 A and B*

**EDCURR 680A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 680B** (2 Points)

#### Teaching German

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

To complete this course students must enrol in *EDCURR 680 A and B*

**EDCURR 681A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 681B** (2 Points)

#### Teaching Social Studies to Year 13

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

To complete this course students must enrol in *EDCURR 681 A and B*

**EDCURR 682A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 682B** (2 Points)

#### Teaching Media Studies to Year 13

The content knowledge required to support the teaching of the subject in secondary schools, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing the subject, consistent with relevant curriculum requirements.

To complete this course students must enrol in *EDCURR 682 A and B*

**EDCURR 690** (1 Point)

#### Classroom Curriculum Research

Students undertake a supervised research study in an area of the New Zealand secondary school curriculum.

---

## Education (Professional)

---

### Stage I

**EDPROF 100** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 100A** (1 Point)

**EDPROF 100B** (1 Point)

#### Primary Professional Practice 1

Provides a theoretical basis for understanding the values and assumptions that students bring to their own practice. Also introduces the pastoral role of teaching and the inquiry skills needed to evaluate the effectiveness of teaching. Provides opportunities to apply them in small group teaching situations. Available only to BEd(Tchg) or BMusEd (primary specialization) students.

*Restriction: EDPROF 101*

To complete this course students must enrol in *EDPROF 100 A and B, or EDPROF 100*

**EDPROF 101A** (1 Point)

**EDPROF 101B** (1 Point)

#### Secondary Professional Practice 1

A theoretical basis for understanding the values and assumptions that students bring to their own practice and the professional obligations associated with teaching in a secondary school. Also introduces the pastoral role of teaching and the inquiry skills needed to evaluate the effectiveness of teaching.

Provides opportunities to apply these to the observation of teachers in schools and to their own practice in small group situations. Available only to BEd(Tchg) conjoint (secondary) and BMusEd (secondary specialization) students.

*Restriction: EDPROF 100*

To complete this course students must enrol in *EDPROF 101 A and B*

---

### Stage II

**EDPROF 200A** (1 Point)

**EDPROF 200B** (1 Point)

#### Primary Professional Practice 2

Students examine the theoretical basis that underpins the teacher education programme and use it to craft practices consistent with that framework. This theoretical framework will be used to critique their own and others' practice through the systematic collection and analysis of classroom data. Students develop skills in fulfilling pastoral responsibilities. They teach a sequence of lessons and evaluate their impact on a class of primary school students. Available only to BEd(Tchg) students.

*Prerequisite: EDPROF 100*

*Restriction: EDPROF 210, 211*

To complete this course students must enrol in *EDPROF 200 A and B*

**EDPROF 210A** (1 Point)

**EDPROF 210B** (1 Point)

#### Primary Conjoint Professional Practice 2

An examination of a theoretical basis for understanding the values and assumptions students bring to their own practice. Students will also be taught how to inquire into their own and others' assumptions about teaching effectiveness. Students develop skills in fulfilling pastoral responsibilities and teach small groups of students in classroom situations. Available only to BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) and BMusEd (primary specialization) students.

*This course is for conjoint and BMusEd students only*

*Prerequisite: EDPROF 100*

*Restriction: EDPROF 200, 211*

To complete this course students must enrol in *EDPROF 210 A and B*

**EDPROF 211** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 211A** (1 Point)

**EDPROF 211B** (1 Point)

#### Secondary Professional Practice 2

Students examine the theoretical basis that underpins the teacher education programme and design practices consistent with this framework. They use the framework to critique their own practice through the systematic analysis of data. Students teach a group of secondary students and evaluate their impact on this group. Students are also introduced to the culture and organization of secondary schools and develop skills in fulfilling pastoral responsibilities. Available only to BEd(Tchg) conjoint (secondary) and BMusEd (secondary specialization) students.

*Prerequisite: EDPROF 101*

*Restriction: EDPROF 200, 210*

To complete this course students must enrol in *EDPROF 211 A and B, or EDPROF 211*

**Stage III****EDPROF 300A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 300B** (1 Point)**Primary Professional Practice 3**

Students examine a range of theoretical models for understanding and evaluating their own and others' practice. Data will be collected and theoretical frameworks used to evaluate the impact of teaching on primary school students' learning. Students develop skills in fulfilling pastoral responsibilities. Involves teaching a primary school class over several weeks. Available only to BEd(Tchg) students.

*Prerequisite: EDPROF 200**Restriction: EDPROF 310**To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 300 A and B***EDPROF 310A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 310B** (1 Point)**Primary Conjoint Professional Practice 3**

An examination of the theoretical basis that underpins the teacher education programme and use of this framework to evaluate their own practice and its impact on student learning. Students develop skills in fulfilling pastoral responsibilities. They teach a sequence of lessons to a group of students followed by a sequence of structured whole-class lessons, and, finally, a whole primary school class over several weeks. Available only to BEd(Tchg) conjoint (primary) and BMusEd (primary specialization) students.

*Prerequisite: EDPROF 210**Restriction: EDPROF 300**To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 310 A and B***Diploma Courses****EDPROF 601A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 601B** (1 Point)**Educational Studies**

Student understandings about the relationship of human development and learning to teaching, cultural and linguistic diversity of students and the ability to reflect on social and political issues as they impinge on learning and teaching will be developed in this course.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 601 A and B***EDPROF 602** (2 Points)**EDPROF 602A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 602B** (1 Point)**Learning and Teaching 1**

Students will develop an understanding of strategies which facilitate children's learning by creating learning opportunities, shaping their learning environment, enabling self-managing behaviour, facilitating learning and supporting learning through assessment. The principles developed in this course will underpin all curriculum courses.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 602 A and B, or EDPROF 602***EDPROF 603A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 603B** (1 Point)**Professional Practice in Language and Languages (including Te Reo)**

A sound working knowledge of the content structure

underlying principles and application of the language and languages and Te Reo in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 603 A and B***EDPROF 604A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 604B** (1 Point)**Professional Practice in Mathematics**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of Mathematics in the New Zealand curriculum document will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 604 A and B***EDPROF 609A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 609B** (1 Point)**Learning and Teaching 2**

The knowledge and skills outlined in Learning and Teaching 1 will be further developed and applied across a variety of settings using the principle of reflective practice.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 609 A and B***EDPROF 610A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 610B** (1 Point)**Professional Practice in Science and Technology**

A sound working knowledge and application of the content, structure and underlying principles of the Science and Technology in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Students will learn to abstract relevant science and technology concepts from selected contexts and to develop scientific and technological literacy.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 610 A and B***EDPROF 611A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 611B** (1 Point)**Professional Practice in Social Studies, the Arts, and Health and Physical Education**

Students will develop an understanding of the general aims, learning activities and skills as outlined in the appropriate sections of the New Zealand Curriculum Framework. Competence in applying this knowledge will be developed across a range of settings.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 611 A and B***EDPROF 612A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 612B** (1 Point)**The Practicum**

Students will learn to develop their knowledge of the New Zealand Curriculum Framework, participate in school organization, communicate with parents and caregivers, and apply pedagogical theory within the school-based practicum component.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 612 A and B***EDPROF 614A** (1 Point)**EDPROF 614B** (1 Point)**Reflective Professional Practice**

Students will be encouraged to develop, reflect on and critique their own teaching and professional

practice using appropriate theories of teaching effectiveness and data-based methods of reflection.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 614 A and B

**EDPROF 622A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 622B** (1 Point)

#### Professional Practice

Teachers' professional and institutional extra-subject responsibilities will form the core content of this course. It will focus on pupil behaviour, pastoral care, special needs and school management. Continuing professional development will be a central theme.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 622 A and B

**EDPROF 624A** (1.5 Points)  
**EDPROF 624B** (1.5 Points)

#### Educational Studies

The key themes of this course will be theories and practice of teaching, learning and assessment. Studies of the social and political contexts of education, and an intensive study of Te Reo will also be included.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 624 A and B

**EDPROF 625A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 625B** (1 Point)

#### Classroom Teaching

This course is based on teaching in schools. It examines the provision of opportunities to learn in a variety of classroom contexts and professionalism in school and classroom situations. Content will include: processes of lesson planning, teaching skills and methods, and assessment and evaluation of learning.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 625 A and B

**EDPROF 630A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 630B** (1 Point)

#### Curriculum Issues in Special Education

An introduction to assessment and programme development for children with moderate and severe disabilities, using a problem-solving and data-based approach.

Corequisite: EDUC 101 and 223

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 630 A and B

**EDPROF 631A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 631B** (1 Point)

#### Research Topic in Special Education

An introduction to research methods and procedures in special education. The major component of the course will be an empirical study of some aspect of special education for children with disabilities.

Prerequisite: EDPROF 630

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 631 A and B

**EDPROF 632A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 632B** (1 Point)

#### Folio of Casework (Special Education)

Students will be required to plan, undertake and report three case-studies involving children with disabilities. Students will be encouraged to focus each of their case-studies on one particular curriculum area.

Prerequisite: EDPROF 630

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 632 A and B

**EDPROF 633** (3 Points)  
**Students in Contexts**

An introduction to concepts and practices in the interaction of individuals and small groups of students in their classroom contexts and to understanding the resource teacher's role in effective assessment, consultation and intervention strategies.

**EDPROF 634** (3 Points)  
**Classroom Contexts**

An introduction to classroom contexts. Emphasis is placed upon understanding the role of the resource teacher in assisting teachers to develop inclusive classroom environments that enhance academic performance and social behaviour.

**EDPROF 650** (2 Points)  
**Casework: Theory and Practice**

An introduction to the concept of disciplined inquiry, followed by an application of a variety of theoretical approaches to individual casework.

**EDPROF 651** (2 Points)  
**Casework in Educational Contexts**

A critical analysis of the theoretical underpinnings of a range of educational assessment and intervention approaches, integrated with skill development for collaborative work across home-school contexts.

**EDPROF 652** (2 Points)  
**Educational Psychology: Professional Practice**

Trainees will assess their own learning needs and engage in self-directed learning after studying the role of educational psychologists in the context of legislation, the Code of Ethics and other forms of accountability, educational systems, policy, culture and community.

**EDPROF 653A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 653B** (1 Point)

#### Casework: Early Childhood

An examination of approaches and professional issues in service delivery, with supervised practice in family, community and interdisciplinary contexts.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 653 A and B

**EDPROF 654** (2 Points)  
**Educational Psychology: A Systems Approach**

A study of a theoretical framework for analysing organizational problems and to be subsequently applied in major project work.

**EDPROF 655A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 655B** (1 Point)

#### Elective: Casework

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 655 A and B

**EDPROF 667** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 667A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 667B** (1 Point)

#### Special Topic in Mathematics Education

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 667 A and B, or EDPROF 667

**EDPROF 690** (7 Points)  
**Dissertation (Educational Psychology)**

Prerequisite: Departmental consent required

- EDPROF 691** (7 Points)  
**EDPROF 691A** (3.5 Points)  
**EDPROF 691B** (3.5 Points)  
**Folio of Casework (Counselling)**  
*Prerequisite: Departmental consent required*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 691 A and B, or EDPROF 691*
- EDPROF 692** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 692A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 692B** (1 Point)  
**Research Project in Mathematics Education**  
 A supervised research project in an area of mathematics education.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 692 A and B, or EDPROF 692*
- EDPROF 693** (4 Points)  
**EDPROF 693A** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 693B** (2 Points)  
**Investigation in Mathematics Education**  
 An extended, supervised research project in an area of mathematics education.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 693 A and B, or EDPROF 693*
- EDPROF 694** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 694A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 694B** (1 Point)  
**Investigation in Science Education**  
 An original study (empirical or theoretical) that relates directly to some issue or issues in science education at primary, secondary or tertiary level.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 694 A and B, or EDPROF 694*
- EDPROF 697A** (7 Points)  
**EDPROF 697B** (7 Points)  
**Internship**  
 Requires work in one of the Specialist Education Services centres or in a similar service under the close supervision of an accredited supervisor who is an experienced educational psychologist.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 697 A and B*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- EDPROF 723A** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 723B** (2 Points)  
**Special Education**  
 This advanced applied course complements and extends the content of the existing theoretical course in special education (EDUC 744). The course will focus primarily on issues surrounding the assessment of, and programme development for, children with disabilities, via a disciplined inquiry approach in casework.  
*Corequisite: EDUC 345*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 723 A and B*
- EDPROF 726A** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 726B** (2 Points)  
**Psychological Issues in Literacy**  
 A critical examination of selected issues in reading, writing and language education from a number of theoretical perspectives.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 726 A and B*
- EDPROF 731A** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 731B** (2 Points)  
**The Mentoring Process**  
 Approaches to mentoring and reflections on issues and practices associated with the mentoring role. Emphasis will be placed upon the mentor-student relationship including the way this develops over time, issues associated with promoting student self-evaluation, and assessment of school-based practice.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 731 A and B*
- EDPROF 733** (3 Points)  
**Students in Contexts (Advanced)**  
 An examination of the interaction of individuals and small groups of students and the contexts in which they experience learning and behavioural difficulties. This includes implementing effective assessment, consultation and intervention strategies in order to effect positive change.  
*Restriction: EDPROF 633*
- EDPROF 734** (3 Points)  
**Classroom Contexts (Advanced)**  
 An analysis of classroom contexts and their impact upon the learning and behaviour of students. Emphasis is placed upon assisting teachers to develop inclusive classroom environments that enhance academic performance and social behaviour.  
*Restriction: EDPROF 634*
- EDPROF 735A** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 735B** (2 Points)  
**School and Community Contexts**  
 An analysis of school and community contexts and their impact on student learning and behaviour. Emphasis is placed on consulting and collaborating with schools and community members to put in place effective strategies and programmes which will enhance outcomes for students.  
*Prerequisite: EDPROF 633 and 634, or 733 and 734*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 735 A and B*
- EDPROF 736A** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 736B** (2 Points)  
**Professional Practice Portfolio**  
 A supervised practicum incorporating a portfolio of professional practice which demonstrates achievement of the learning outcomes of the complete programme.  
*Prerequisite: EDPROF 633 and 634, or 733 and 734*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 736 A and B*
- EDPROF 742** (2 Points)  
**Couple Counselling**  
 An advanced examination of counselling principles as applied to stresses arising within couple relationships.
- EDPROF 743** (2 Points)  
**Family Counselling**  
 An advanced examination of counselling principles as applied to stresses arising within family relationships.
- EDPROF 744** (2 Points)  
**Cultural Issues in Counselling**  
 A critical examination of cultural dimensions present in counselling activities.

<b>EDPROF 745</b> <b>Group Counselling</b> A critical examination of group dimensions in counselling activities.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 772 A and B</i>
<b>EDPROF 746</b> <b>The Counselling Process</b> An advanced examination of principles of counselling together with their application in the counselling process. <i>Corequisite: EDPROF 747 A and B</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>EDPROF 773</b> <b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>EDPROF 747A</b> <b>EDPROF 747B</b> <b>Counselling Laboratory</b> A laboratory focusing on the acquisition of counselling skills and appropriate role performance. <i>Corequisite: EDPROF 746</i> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 747 A and B</i>	<b>(1 Point)</b> <b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>EDPROF 773A</b> <b>(1 Point)</b> <b>EDPROF 773B</b> <b>(1 Point)</b> <b>Special Study in Education</b> The course will consist of the supervised writing of an essay or essays in the field of educational inquiry. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 773 A and B, or EDPROF 773</i>
<b>EDPROF 748</b> <b>Consultation</b> An advanced examination of principles of consultation, together with practical experience in selected procedures.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>EDPROF 776</b> <b>(2 Points)</b> <b>Educational Leadership in the Electronic Age</b> Advanced study of the impact of ICT on teaching pedagogies, curriculum and management in educational environments. Emphasis is on assisting educational leaders to focus ICTs on school applications that improve management practice and student learning outcomes.
<b>EDPROF 749</b> <b>Professional Issues in Counselling</b> An examination of significant professional issues in counselling, including supervision, ethics and accountability, and role development.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>EDPROF 790</b> <b>(4 Points)</b> <b>EDPROF 790A</b> <b>(2 Points)</b> <b>EDPROF 790B</b> <b>(2 Points)</b> <b>Dissertation</b> <i>Prerequisite: EDPROF 744, 746, 747, 749, 750</i> <i>Restriction: EDPROF 796</i> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 790 A and B, or EDPROF 790</i>
<b>EDPROF 750</b> <b>Critical Analysis in Counselling</b> An introduction to principles of critical analysis as applied to theory and practice in counselling, and to basic methodology in counselling research.	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>EDPROF 794</b> <b>(8 Points)</b> <b>EDPROF 794A</b> <b>(4 Points)</b> <b>EDPROF 794B</b> <b>(4 Points)</b> <b>Advanced Folio of Casework</b> Includes 500 hours of counselling-related activities in an approved setting under supervision, together with attendance at University seminars. <i>Prerequisite: EDPROF 744, 746, 747, 749, 750</i> <i>Restriction: EDPROF 797</i> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 794 A and B, or EDPROF 794</i>
<b>EDPROF 760</b> <b>History of School Science Curriculum</b> A consideration of the major influences on contemporary science curriculum development. <i>Prerequisite: EDUC 782</i>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>EDPROF 796A</b> <b>(7 Points)</b> <b>EDPROF 796B</b> <b>(7 Points)</b> <b>Thesis</b> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 796 A and B</i>
<b>EDPROF 764</b> <b>History, Philosophy and Science Teaching</b> An examination of the connections between science teaching and the history, philosophy and sociology of science.	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>EDPROF 797</b> <b>(7 Points)</b> <b>EDPROF 797A</b> <b>(3.5 Points)</b> <b>EDPROF 797B</b> <b>(3.5 Points)</b> <b>Advanced Folio of Casework</b> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 797 A and B, or EDPROF 797</i>
<b>EDPROF 770</b> <b>Educational Leadership</b> A critical examination of the theory and practice of educational leadership including a series of practical workshops on leadership effectiveness.	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<hr/> <b>Special Topics</b>
<b>EDPROF 771</b> <b>Educational Policy and Organization</b> An examination of various conceptual, policy and empirical debates about New Zealand educational policy and school and organizational effectiveness.	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>EDPROF 841A</b> <b>(3.5 Points)</b> <b>EDPROF 841B</b> <b>(3.5 Points)</b> <b>Research Portfolio</b> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 841 A and B</i>
<b>EDPROF 772A</b> <b>EDPROF 772B</b> <b>Research for Educational Practitioners</b> The theoretical and practical features of research which is designed to investigate and improve educational practice. Students will learn research methodologies and associated research methods that are particularly suited to this practical purpose. A year-long action research project in an educational institution will be the main assessment requirement.	<b>(2 Points)</b> <b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>EDPROF 842A</b> <b>(3.5 Points)</b> <b>EDPROF 842B</b> <b>(3.5 Points)</b> <b>Research Portfolio</b> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 842 A and B</i>
		<b>EDPROF 897</b> <b>(14 Points)</b> <b>Thesis</b>

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

---

**Education**


---

**Stage I****EDUC 111 (2 Points)****Understanding Teaching 1**

Includes: (i) an examination of issues relating to culture, race and ethnicity within the educational environment, and how these issues impact on students' experience of schooling and education in Aotearoa New Zealand; and (ii) an examination of the processes of, and influences on, child and adolescent psychological, social and physical development and learning.

*Restriction: EDUC 101*

**EDUC 112 (2 Points)****Understanding Teaching 2**

An examination of the nature of the education/society relationship in Aotearoa New Zealand and the way this relationship is manifested in schooling and an examination of the nature, structure and organization of schools' and their influence on teacher and student learning and development.

*Restriction: EDUC 102, 103*

**EDUC 113 (2 Points)****Current Issues in Education**

Educational issues are pressing concerns in our society. An introduction to ways in which educational thought and research address big topics. At its core is systematic analysis using perspectives from cultural and policy studies, psychology and Maori education. Applies the practices and findings of educational research in areas contributing to the design of effective educational environments.

*Restriction: EDUC 101, 102, 103*

**EDUC 114 (2 Points)****Introduction to Maori Education**

An introduction to Maori education and to the education of Maori in Aotearoa and the relevance of the Treaty of Waitangi to these contexts. A range of critical issues related to Maori experiences both in and as a result of schooling and education in Aotearoa, and Maori educational interventions that have emerged are examined.

*Restriction: EDUC 103*

**EDUC 115 (2 Points)****Child and Adolescent Development**

A study of factors relating to children's growth and socialization within the cultural and linguistic diversity of the New Zealand context. Research relating to family and parenting processes, and in educational psychology on physical, social, cognitive and language development in the pre-natal to adolescent period are drawn on.

*Restriction: EDUC 101, 111*

**EDUC 116 (2 Points)****Introduction to Educational Thought**

An introduction to the study of education from sociological, historical and philosophical perspectives with reference to the nature, purposes and value of education; the forces that have shaped the development of education, especially in New Zealand; social diversity and (in-)equalities in education; the impact of educational policies and practices on Maori and Pacific communities; and

educational alternatives.

*Restriction: EDUC 102, 112*

**EDUC 130 (2 Points)****Philosophy of Education**

An introduction to relevant philosophical schools of thought including elements of philosophical reasoning in Western and other cultural contexts. Focus will be on the philosophy of education and its purpose in achieving excellence in education.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TESOL)*

**EDUC 131 (2 Points)****Human Development**

Designed to help students analyse human development with particular emphasis on secondary school-age children. It will be concerned with the development of knowledge of constancy, change and individual differences as a perspective on all aspects of development. As a consequence, students will be able to interact effectively with a diverse group of children in a wide range of educational settings.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TESOL)*

**EDUC 132 (2 Points)****Learning and the Learner**

Learning is examined from a variety of perspectives including behaviourism, social learning theory, cognitivism, constructivism, as well as humanistic approaches to learning. Within this learning theory framework, consideration is given to how learners construct knowledge and how teachers can assist them to become self-motivated, self-regulated and independent in their learning. Attention is paid to the development of thinking skills, including the ability to think about one's own thinking (metacognition), and the development of creative problem-solving skills.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TESOL)*

**Stage II****EDUC 201 (2 Points)****History of Education**

An introduction to historical studies in education, with special reference to New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 204 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Philosophy and Sociology of Education**

An exploration of key educational themes and questions from philosophical and sociological perspectives.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

*Restriction: EDUC 206, 208*

**EDUC 206 (2 Points)****Sociology of Education**

An introduction to contemporary sociology of education.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 207 (2 Points)****The State and Indigenous Education in the Islands of the Pacific including Aotearoa**

An examination of the interaction of the state and the indigenous peoples in the contested area of education and schooling.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 208 (2 Points)****Educational Philosophy**

An introduction to the philosophy of education through the work of influential liberal, radical and postmodern thinkers.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 210 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Curriculum Studies**

An introduction to ideas about curriculum, the analysis of existing New Zealand curricula and proposals for curriculum change.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 221 (2 Points)**

**Child Development**

A study of central issues in development with a focus on middle childhood. Includes aspects of: literacy, bilingual language development, friends and peers, and mathematical understanding.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 223 (2 Points)**

**Educational Psychology**

Learning and teaching in educational settings. Major sections of the course deal with ability and motivation in learning, applied behaviour analysis, the measurement of achievement and attitudes, and special education. The course assists students in preparing for more advanced courses in psychological studies.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 224 (2 Points)**

**Assessment and Evaluation in Education**

Critical insights into social and political contexts and the skills required for measurement and evaluation.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 225 (2 Points)**

**Curriculum, Assessment and Evaluation**

A general introduction to curriculum development and implementation as well as classroom assessment and evaluation focussing on theoretical and practical issues. Includes critical evaluation of recent New Zealand assessment policy and practice.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

*Restriction: EDUC 210, 224*

**EDUC 283 (2 Points)**

**Pedagogy – Beyond Skills and Methods**

Emphasizes the complexity of the teacher's task. It examines models of teaching based on sociological and psychological research about learning. Also examines critical pedagogy and discusses current New Zealand pedagogical practices.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

*Restriction: EDUC 383*

**Stage III**

**EDUC 302 (2 Points)**

**History of Education**

Educational reform in the twentieth century. Emphasis is placed on the establishment, development, maintenance and reform of the New Zealand education system.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 303 (2 Points)**

**School and Society**

The sociology of the curriculum and school processes. The dynamics and mechanisms of 'socialization' through schooling and 'alternative' curriculum approaches, and the class, gender, ethnic and

national issues that underlie the curriculum.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 304 (2 Points)**

**Educational Philosophy and Policy**

Examines the competing ideologies of individualism and community, their influence in recent educational reforms in New Zealand, and their wider implications for education, society and culture. Introduces the basic concepts and themes of classical liberalism, comparing and contrasting them with versions of neo-liberalism, and outlines the case for a community-based social policy and the renewal of social democracy.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 305 (2 Points)**

**Feminist Perspectives in Education Matauranga Wahine**

A critical study of feminist theory and research in education, with emphasis on the New Zealand context. Includes a focus on traditional and contemporary Maori women's knowledge.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 306 (2 Points)**

**Akonga Māori: Nga Take E Pa Ana Ki Nga Akonga Māori**

Critical analysis of key issues in Maori education, incorporating Maori language and cultural perspectives through Maori pedagogy.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 307 (2 Points)**

**Education Policy Studies**

An investigation of key areas of educational policy with special emphasis given to issues of race, gender and class. While the major focus is on New Zealand education policy, international cases will be considered as appropriate.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 309 (2 Points)**

**Issues in Pacific Nations' Education**

A critical examination of current issues and debates in Pacific Nation education for Pacific Islands countries and for Pasifika communities in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 310 (2 Points)**

**Schooling and Ethnic Relations**

Issues of 'race' and ethnicity in education. Includes a critical examination of theories, structures and strategies such as 'multicultural education' and 'anti-racist education' as developed in New Zealand and overseas in response to ethnic diversity. In particular the course focuses on the place of schooling in the economic and political relations of Pakeha, Maori and Pacific Islands' peoples in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 311 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Teaching in Diverse Urban Schools**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 312 (2 Points)**

**EDUC 312A (1 Point)**

**EDUC 312B (1 Point)**

**Learning and Reading Disabilities**

An examination of the special educational and teaching needs of children with learning disabilities, including reading difficulties. The course will include

a practical project involving 20 hours of supervised individualized tutoring.

*Prerequisite: EDUC 221 or 223 or 224 and approval of Head of School*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 312 A and B, or EDUC 312*

**EDUC 313 (2 Points)**

**EDUC 313A (1 Point)**

**EDUC 313B (1 Point)**

**Special Study in Education**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education and Departmental approval*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 313 A and B, or EDUC 313*

**EDUC 314 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education and Departmental approval required*

**EDUC 315 (2 Points)**

**EDUC 315A (1 Point)**

**EDUC 315B (1 Point)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 315 A and B, or EDUC 315*

**EDUC 316 (2 Points)**

**Gifted Education**

An analysis of the gifted education movement and of the need for appropriate educational provision for gifted and talented students. The course draws on current research to assist with the identification of gifted and talented students and with the development of strategies to meet their learning and emotional needs.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 317 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: History and Sociology of Education**

An analysis of historical and contemporary developments in education taking account of the major influences, national and international, which shape education policy, practice and experience.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

*Restriction: EDUC 302, 303*

**EDUC 318 (2 Points)**

**EDUC 318A (1 Point)**

**EDUC 318B (1 Point)**

**Teaching Languages in Schools**

Students who have a working knowledge of a second language will study and apply strategies for classroom teaching of second languages in schools. Following critical observation of different teaching models used in schools, students will prepare teaching materials, plan class lessons and apply information and communication technology in teaching and learning second languages. Available only to BEd(Tchg), BEd(Tchg) conjoint, and BMusEd students.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 318 A and B, or EDUC 318*

**EDUC 340 (2 Points)**

**The Guidance Process**

An introduction to the theory and practice of counselling and guidance within New Zealand

educational institutions. A component of practical work must be completed concurrently.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 341 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Counselling in the Community**

An examination of the application of basic principles of counselling to the needs of individual children and adults and to couples, families and other groups.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 342 (2 Points)**

**Educational Psychology: A Behavioural Approach**

A study of contemporary ideas and research in human learning and instruction. Topics will include the analysis of child and adult behaviour in school, home and residential settings.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 345 (2 Points)**

**Special Education**

An examination of the special educational needs of children showing atypical development, including children with intellectual disability and the effectiveness of current special educational provisions and early intervention strategies.

*Prerequisite: EDUC 223 and 2 further points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 348 (2 Points)**

**The Reading Process**

Contemporary ideas and research on the reading process.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 349 (2 Points)**

**Psychology of Learning and Motivation in the Classroom**

Recent theory and research on children's learning and motivation, particularly as they relate to the social context found in classrooms.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 351 (2 Points)**

**Understanding Behaviour in Schools: A Psychological Perspective**

The contribution of psychological theories and methods to educators' understanding and management of learning and instruction in New Zealand schools.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 352 (2 Points)**

**Developmental Psychology: Childhood and Adolescence**

Selected aspects of child and adolescent psychology including theories of development and an examination of contemporary issues in development such as literacy, technology, peers, sexuality and identity.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

*Restrictions: EDUC 343 or 344*

**EDUC 380 (2 Points)**

**Methods of Research in Education**

An introduction to the varieties of qualitative and quantitative approaches available to educational and social researchers. Students will be able to gain practical experience through completion of a supervised research project.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 381 (2 Points)**

**Adult Learning and Education**

An introduction to adult and continuing education

theory and practice. Major components include: adults as learners, teaching practices, programme planning and agencies, and current issues in which adult education is engaged.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 382 (2 Points)**

#### Aspects of Science Education

An introduction to some central issues in science teaching and learning at primary and secondary school levels. Topics such as: the nature of science and its relationship to science education, children's learning in science, the role of practical investigations and the New Zealand Science Curriculum will be discussed.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 383 (2 Points)**

#### Pedagogy

An examination of the theory and practice of teaching in relation to the tradition of critical pedagogy. The course will investigate the theoretical foundations of critical pedagogy as well as critical pedagogy in the classroom.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

*Restriction: EDUC 283*

**EDUC 384 (2 Points)**

#### Information Technology in Education

The role of computers in primary and secondary education.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

### Stage IV

**EDUC 400 (2 Points)**

#### Professional Development

Covers topics related to professional and personal development. Discusses the status and challenges of teaching as a profession and includes the varying roles of teachers in keeping up with the rapid changes and expectations required of them. Continuing education for self-improvement is also given emphasis.

*Prerequisite: Student must be enrolled in BEd(TESOL)*

### Diploma Courses

**EDUC 601 (2 Points)**

**EDUC 601A (1 Point)**

**EDUC 601B (1 Point)**

#### Research Topic in Adult Education

The course will consist of supervised writing of an essay or essays in the field of adult educational inquiry usually within the student's own practice context.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 601 A and B, or EDUC 601*

**EDUC 602A (1 Point)**

**EDUC 602B (1 Point)**

#### Practicum in Adult Education

Supervised practice within an adult education setting where students apply and critically evaluate their learning from the theory and educational issues in relation to practice. Unless otherwise negotiated, the supervised practice will take place within the student's own workplace. Students will produce a folio of work and a supervisor's report will normally be expected.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 602 A and B*

### Honours and Master's Courses

**EDUC 702 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 702A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 702B (2 Points)**

#### Historical Studies in Education

An examination of issues involved in historical studies and research related to education, including supervised investigation of a selected aspect.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 702 A and B, or EDUC 702*

**EDUC 703 (4 Points)**

#### Educational Philosophy

Philosophical issues in education.

**EDUC 704 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 704A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 704B (2 Points)**

#### Sociology of Education

A political, sociological and comparative perspective on the nature and consequences of the governance of education and on the roles of state, market and 'community' in that process (with reference to both New Zealand and overseas).

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 704 A and B, or EDUC 704*

**EDUC 705 (4 Points)**

#### Education and Development Policy

Explores the following topics and themes: policy analysis and formulation in the context of development; the impact of the globalization on, and the role of international agencies in, education for development; human capital theory and human resource development; education and aid; research and consultancy strategies and ethics; New Zealand's ODA policy towards Oceania; global and local intersections in Oceanic education.

**EDUC 707 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 707A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 707B (2 Points)**

#### Kaupapa Kura: Maori Education Policy Development and Practice

An analysis of Maori education policy development and practice in New Zealand schooling.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 707 A and B, or EDUC 707*

**EDUC 708 (4 Points)**

#### Feminist Issues in Education

An examination of selected issues in current feminist debates on education.

**EDUC 709 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 709A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 709B (2 Points)**

#### Educational Policy Studies

Provides a critical, in-depth examination of selected themes and topics in educational policy studies, with a particular emphasis on the politics of educational reform in New Zealand.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 709 A and B, or EDUC 709*

**EDUC 710 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 710A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 710B (2 Points)**

#### International Issues in Indigenous Education

Applied critical studies of selected educational and schooling issues of international importance to indigenous peoples. Requires experience in indigenous education contexts. An interview with the Course Coordinator is a prerequisite for enrolment.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 710 A and B, or EDUC 710

**EDUC 712 (4 Points)**

**'Race', Ethnicity and Education**

An examination of selected issues concerning 'race' and ethnicity in education.

**EDUC 717 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 717A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 717B (2 Points)**

**Special Study**

To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 717 A and B, or EDUC 717

**EDUC 718 (4 Points)**

**The Pedagogy of Paulo Freire**

Explores Paulo Freire's philosophy, pedagogical theory, and practice of adult literacy education. Major critiques of Freire's work are discussed, and consideration is given to the application of Freirean ideas in a variety of first world and third world settings.

**EDUC 719 (4 Points)**

**Te Ao Tuhi: Historical and Contemporary Issues in Maori Literacy**

Draws upon both sociological and psychological theories and methodologies to examine and understand the historical and contemporary factors which have shaped and influenced Maori literacy. Requires knowledge of Te Reo Maori.

**EDUC 721 (4 Points)**

**Culture and Education**

Exploration of the relationships between education (as institution and process) and cultural values and influences with specific references to the island societies of the Pacific. Themes included are: cultural influences on the school; cultural diversity as an issue in formal education; cultural universals as markers of change and reform; teachers as agents of cultural change; schooling and cultural identity.

**EDUC 722 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 722A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 722B (2 Points)**

**Advanced Study of Education in Small Island States**

A study of the following themes within the context of the small island states of the Pacific region: the nature of the relationship between education and development; the extent to which educational directions, form and content are influenced by the development process; the influence on education of major economic, social and political issues in the region; selected issues and problems in education in the region.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 722 A and B, or EDUC 722

**EDUC 723 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Curriculum Theory**

Designed to enable students to identify and explain the significant issues in the current curriculum debate and define their own curricular position in the

context of the Oceanic region. They should learn to recognize similarities in local discussions about curriculum and place particular instances within a theoretical field.

**EDUC 724 (4 Points)**

**Educational Planning in Third World Countries**

Critical analysis of the theories and methods used in educational planning (as sectoral or national education plans) in third world countries with special reference to the countries of Oceania. The course will emphasize the understanding of current and emerging theories and assumptions in development planning and administration relevant to education systems in the region, and critically examine the educational plans of regional countries.

**EDUC 725 (2 Points)**

**Language and Literacy in a Development Context**

Draws on theoretical and empirical research on issues related to literacy, bilingualism and other aspects of language significant to education in the context of development.

**EDUC 728 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic: Children's Reading Difficulties**

A critical examination of research and practice relating to reading and writing difficulties. The goal is to create knowledge and research expertise for effective assessment and teaching of children who do not respond to regular classroom teaching of literacy.

**EDUC 729 (4 Points)**

**The Politics of Maori Images**

Draws upon Kaupapa Maori theories, alongside anti-colonial and critical theories of deconstruction, to provide analysis of the ways in which images of Maori are constructed and presented in a range of media forms including: film, video, television, photographic images, illustrations, textbooks and journals.

**EDUC 730 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 730A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 730B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Atypical Development in Childhood**

An advanced study of the developmental processes that contribute to maladaptive behaviour in children. To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 730 A and B, or EDUC 730

**EDUC 741 (4 Points)**

**Educational Psychology**

An advanced study of cognitive, motivational and social factors influencing learning.

**EDUC 742A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 742B (2 Points)**

**Developmental Psychology**

An advanced examination of theory and research in selected topics in child and adolescent development. To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 742 A and B

**EDUC 743 (2 Points)**

**Childhood Behavioural Difficulties**

An advanced study of theory and research dealing with the nature, origins and developmental course of childhood behavioural difficulties.

**EDUC 744 (4 Points)**

**Special Education**

An advanced study of special educational provisions

and early intervention strategies for children with disabilities and their families, including an intensive analysis of provisions for children with intellectual disabilities.

*Prerequisite: EDUC 345*

**EDUC 746 (4 Points)**

**Psychology of Reading**

An advanced study of contemporary ideas and research on the reading process.

**EDUC 747 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 747A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 747B (2 Points)**

**Issues in Adolescent Development**

An advanced study of the theories of adolescent development and a critical examination of research dealing with issues which affect development.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 747 A and B, or EDUC 747*

**EDUC 749A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 749B (2 Points)**

**Behaviour Analysis in Education**

An examination of the application of behaviour analysis techniques to contemporary problems in education including supervised research and field experience.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 749 A and B*

**EDUC 751 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 751A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 751B (2 Points)**

**Critical Theories in Adult and Higher Education**

An exploration of critical education theories and what they have to offer to an analysis of adult and higher education.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 751 A and B, or EDUC 751*

**EDUC 752A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 752B (2 Points)**

**Teaching and Learning in Adult and Higher Education**

A critical examination of research in teaching and learning in adult and higher education and the implications for practice.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 752 A and B*

**EDUC 753 (4 Points)**

**EDUC 753A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 753B (2 Points)**

**Principles and Practice of Lifelong Learning**

A study of theories of adult education and lifelong learning; the practice of educating adults in varying contexts. Participants will be expected to relate the concept of lifelong learning to a range of educational and social contexts.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 753 A and B, or EDUC 753*

**EDUC 757A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 757B (2 Points)**

**Schools as Organizations**

An examination of different theoretical frameworks for understanding organization and a process for analysing and solving organizational problems.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 757 A and B*

**EDUC 761 (2 Points)**

**Learning and Language in Mathematics Education**

An examination of the application of psychological theories of learning and language to mathematics education. General issues such as attitude and gender difference may also be addressed.

**EDUC 762 (2 Points)**

**The Development of Students' Mathematical Concepts**

A critical examination of recent research on students' learning of specific aspects of mathematics.

**EDUC 768 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Education Psychology**

**EDUC 769A (1 Point)**

**EDUC 769B (1 Point)**

**Special Topic in Education Psychology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 769 A and B*

**EDUC 771 (2 Points)**

**Evaluation in Education**

The key feature of research on educational practice is that it raises questions of value and not just of fact. Modern evaluation combines the two. This course spells out the foundations of this new discipline and its application to the evaluation of educational products and programmes.

**EDUC 772 (2 Points)**

**Applied Evaluation Research**

An examination of the applications of evaluation research to the evaluation of educational performance (ie. assessment), personnel (eg. teachers), policy, and proposals.

*Prerequisite: EDUC 771*

**EDUC 773 (2 Points)**

**Current Controversies in Education**

Relates current controversies in world education to research and to the situation in New Zealand. Examples include the use, non-use, and abuse of: (i) computers in education; (ii) secular moral education; (iii) teaching critical and creative thinking; (iv) the conflict between science education and technology education; (v) achievement-grouped versus age-grouped classes.

**EDUC 774 (2 Points)**

**Research Methods in Education**

A detailed examination of the controversy over the evidence required to establish causal claims in educational research within both experimental and qualitative methodological frameworks; bias control in observations and judgments; research synthesis (meta-analysis); and objectivity in evaluative research.

**EDUC 778 (2 Points)**

**EDUC 778A (1 Point)**

**EDUC 778B (1 Point)**

**Special Topic in Applied Education Research**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 778 A and B, or EDUC 778*

**EDUC 779 (2 Points)**

**EDUC 779A (1 Point)**

**EDUC 779B (1 Point)**

**Special Topic in Applied Education Research**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 779 A and B, or EDUC 779*

**EDUC 781A** (2 Points)

**EDUC 781B** (2 Points)

**Curriculum Development and Evaluation**

A critical examination of issues in curriculum design and development, assessment and learning, and programme evaluation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 781 A and B*

**EDUC 782** (4 Points)

**Perspectives on Science Education**

A study of concept development in science, the relationship between philosophy of science and science curriculum and the factors that influence science curriculum change.

**EDUC 783** (4 Points)

**Science, Philosophy and Western Culture**

The interaction between science and culture and the ways in which the rich cultural and intellectual dimensions of science can be conveyed in science, history and literacy education.

**EDUC 784** (4 Points)

**EDUC 784A** (2 Points)

**EDUC 784B** (2 Points)

**Research Topic in Education**

The course will consist of the supervised writing of an essay or essays in a field of educational inquiry.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 784 A and B, or EDUC 784*

**EDUC 785** (6 Points)

**EDUC 785A** (3 Points)

**EDUC 785B** (3 Points)

**Honours Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 785 A and B, or EDUC 785*

**EDUC 787** (4 Points)

**EDUC 787A** (2 Points)

**EDUC 787B** (2 Points)

**Tikanga Rangahau: Maori Perspectives on Research in Education**

An examination of a range of issues related to educational research 'of Maori', 'by Maori' and 'for Maori'.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 787 A and B, or EDUC 787*

**EDUC 790** (4 Points)

**EDUC 790A** (2 Points)

**EDUC 790B** (2 Points)

**Dissertation**

*Restriction: EDUC 796*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 790 A and B, or EDUC 790*

**EDUC 796A** (7 Points)

**EDUC 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 796 A and B*

**EDUC 797A** (7 Points)

**EDUC 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

The research portfolio consists of (usually) two or three research projects/essays. The content and coherence of the research portfolio are determined in

consultation with an academic supervisor. Components of the research portfolio may require attendance at designated seminars and will include a specified number, and type of pieces of assessed work. Students must demonstrate, through the portfolio, the same qualities expected of a thesis: an advanced level of understanding of one (or more) research tradition(s) within the discipline; coherence of argument; independence of thought; and the ability to produce original work. The total word length of the portfolio should be equivalent to that expected for a 14 point thesis.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 797 A and B*

---

## Faculty of Engineering

---

### Chemical and Materials Engineering

---

#### Part I

**CHEMMAT 121** (2 Points)

**Materials Science**

Atomic structure and bonding. Structure of solids. Microstructure. Mechanical properties. Alloying and phase diagrams. Engineering alloys and their heat-treatment. Engineering ceramics and glasses. Engineering polymers. Engineering composites. Biomaterials. Electronic, optical, superconducting and magnetic materials. Corrosion and degradation of metals.

*Students intending to proceed to a degree in Chemical and Materials Engineering are strongly recommended to select CHEM 195 as their elective course, or to ensure that their knowledge of Chemistry is comparable with CHEM 195.*

#### Part II

**CHEMMAT 201** (1 Point)

**Materials for Electrical Engineering**

An introduction to electrical and electronic materials, essential for engineers working in electrical, electronic, computer, device and telecommunication industries. Contents include: electrical conduction theories, conducting materials and insulators, semiconductor properties and materials, magnetic and dielectric properties and materials. Emphasis is put on the basic properties of electronic materials and their applications in modern industries.

**CHEMMAT 211** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Process Engineering**

Materials and energy balancing with and without chemical reaction. The first law of thermodynamics. Types of chemical reactors and methods of operation. The importance of design and process options. Design concepts and safety as applied to processing. Introduction of fluid mechanics, heat and mass transfer principles and their importance in process engineering.

**CHEMMAT 212** (2 Points)

**Energy and Processing**

The second law of thermodynamics. Thermodynamics of power and refrigeration cycles and flow processes. Classical chemical thermodynamics including concepts of chemical potential, fugacity and activities; their applications to reacting systems. Thermodynamics of solutions;

various stability zone diagrams. Multi-component physical equilibria. Multiple reaction equilibria and system-free energy minimization. Appropriate computational techniques for energy and reaction calculations. Practical examples and applications.

**CHEMMAT 213 (2 Points)**  
**Transfer Processes 1**

Fluid properties and definitions – fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity, laminar and turbulent flow, compressible flow, forces and momentum relationships, flow measurement. Heat transfer via steady state conduction, convection and radiation. Effect of geometry, force and natural convection. Dimensionless correlations of heat transfer processes with flow processes. Film and overall heat transfer coefficients. Practical examples and applications.

**CHEMMAT 221 (2 Points)**  
**Materials**

Solid state transformation – diffusion, vacancies, solidification, nucleation and growth. Dislocations and plastic deformation, grain boundaries, annealing. Mechanical performance of materials. Strengthening mechanisms. Iron/carbon alloy systems and transformations (including pearlitic, austenitic, bainitic and martensitic), effects of alloying elements. Analytical methods – stereography, X-ray diffraction and methods, scanning electron microscopy, microanalysis, surface analysis method. Texture, residual stress.

**CHEMMAT 231 (1 Point)**  
**Process Design 1**

Safety issues in chemical plant design. Selection and specification of selected items of equipment – reactors, pressure vessels. Mechanics of solids and approximate analysis of stress and strain. Design of thin-walled pressure vessels. Applications to the design of pressure vessels, reactors, piping and heat transfer equipment.

**CHEMMAT 241 (1 Point)**  
**Applied Chemistry 1**

Surface and interfacial processes, surface energies and adsorption. Heterogeneous catalysis, mechanisms of surface reactions. Solid/liquid interfaces, interfacial phenomena and applications to flotation. Techniques for characterizing surfaces. Rate processes and surface reactions. Classical and titrimetric methods of analysis, introduction to instrumental methods. Chromatographic techniques and types of chromatographs. Optical spectroscopy and practical applications of spectroscopy in analysis.

**Part III**

**CHEMMAT 311 (1 Point)**  
**Process Dynamics and Control**

Elementary, open-loop dynamic modelling of instruments and processes in the chemical industry, transfer functions, block diagrams, dynamic response of components to standard inputs, transport delay, linearization, interactive systems, stability, open-loop and negative feedback control systems, controllers, root locus concepts, Routh stability criteria. Applications.

**CHEMMAT 312 (2 Points)**  
**Transfer Processes 2**

Principles of continuous and staged processes. Mass transfer in various media, systems and phases. Interrelating reactor design to mass transfer processes. Studies of selected separation processes such as absorption, adsorption, crystallization and distillation. Heat transfer with phase change; nucleate and film boiling of liquids.

**CHEMMAT 315 (2 Points)**  
**Chemical Reactor Engineering**

Kinetics of multiple reactions, analysis of basic reactors – batch, plug flow, and continuous stirred tank reactors. Reactor performance under the conditions of isothermal, adiabatic, and varying temperature. Effect of semi-continuous, counterflow and recycle on the performance of reactors. Heterogeneous reactions and catalysis, diffusion and reaction in porous catalysts, effects of external mass transfer resistance, fixed and fluidized bed reactors, gas-liquid reactors. Reactor engineering for biological systems and applications of biochemical engineering to selected process industries. Electrochemical reactor engineering.

**CHEMMAT 316 (1 Point)**  
**Particulate Technology**

A course on particulate technology including characterization of particles – fluid dynamics. Sedimentation and settling – analysis of separation processes and separation mechanisms. Size reduction and particle size measurement. Separation techniques.

**CHEMMAT 321 (1 Point)**  
**Materials Performance**

Degradation and protection – electrochemical corrosion, corrosion rate, polarization, corrosion protection, testing. Corrosion resistant alloys. Oxidation and high temperature behaviour. Engineering alloys, especially non-ferrous. Introduction to the performance of polymers and ceramics. Selection and specification of materials especially for process plants. Selection software.

**CHEMMAT 331A (1 Point)**  
**CHEMMAT 331B (1 Point)**

**Process Design 2**  
The nature and function of design – process conception, alternatives, constraints and their simulation. Raw materials, safety and environmental considerations. Flow sheet representation of information. Separation systems, heat exchanger networks, and specification of equipment. Process economics and project documentation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 331 A and B*

**CHEMMAT 341 (1 Point)**  
**Applied Chemistry 2**

An extension of mechanistic interpretations for organic reactions, rearrangements in selected systems. Heavy organic chemicals, feedstocks and processing versus products. Polymeric and organic unit processing including synthesis of selected monomers from natural gas and petroleum feedstocks. Appropriate protective measures and safe handling procedures.

- CHEMMAT 361** (2 Points)  
**Engineering Biotechnology**  
 Principles of biochemical engineering. Exploitation of bioreaction and bioprocess systems. Enzyme kinetics and microbial growth. Production of primary and secondary metabolites. Special considerations for biological reactors, reduced temperature preservation. Examples of biochemical process industries, waste water treatment and equipment design.
- 
- Part IV**
- CHEMMAT 411** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Process Engineering**  
 A practical, in-depth analysis of selected topics that influence the efficient design and performance of process plants, environmental preservation, resource management and safety.
- CHEMMAT 421** (1 Point)  
**Materials Processing**  
 Deformation processing – forging, rolling, drawing, extrusion, etc., with emphasis on materials effects, defects and an introduction to the mechanics. Solidification and casting – methods, theory and applications. Joining technologies – adhesives, soldering, brazing, welding methods and metallurgy. NDT. Powder metallurgy. Surface technology. Design.
- CHEMMAT 422** (2 Points)  
**Non-metallic Materials**  
 Polymers – structure and physical properties, influence of structure and temperature on mechanical properties. Rubber elasticity, viscoelasticity. Engineering polymers and design. Biomaterials – structural hierarchical relationships, structural proteins, natural fibres, biomaterials as integrated multicomponent systems, mechanical gels, bioceramics. Ceramics – ternary phase diagrams, bonding, structure, mechanical and thermal properties, high performance ceramics, glasses and composites, processing techniques. Carbon-based materials.
- CHEMMAT 423** (2 Points)  
**Materials Engineering**  
 Advanced aspects of mechanical behaviour, primarily application of fracture mechanics and failure analysis. Selected topics in primary materials processing, modern steel making. Further topics on materials joining – modern welding processes, standards and specifications, exotic materials. Surface engineering of materials and coating processes.
- CHEMMAT 424** (2 Points)  
**Electronic Materials and their Applications**  
 An introduction to electronic properties of materials and their applications. Contents include: basic theories of electrical conduction, conducting and insulating materials, semiconductor properties and materials, dielectric, magnetic, optical, thermal and sensing properties and materials, and superconductors. This course will cover the basic properties, processing methods and performance of electronic materials. The applications of electronic materials in various industries will be emphasized.
- CHEMMAT 431A** (1.5 Points)  
**CHEMMAT 431B** (1.5 Points)  
**Design Project**  
 Specification, planning and executing a specific process design project. The detailed considerations in the project to include environmental impact, safety and occupational health issues, material selection, process energy demand and efficiency, costing and economics, process start-up and operation.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 431 A and B*
- CHEMMAT 441A** (1.5 Points)  
**CHEMMAT 441B** (1.5 Points)  
**Project**  
 A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of staff.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 441 A and B*
- CHEMMAT 461** (2 Points)  
**Air Quality Engineering**  
 Physics of air-flow over land. Gaussian modelling of dispersion of fumes and dusts in air. Unit operations to achieve sorption in solids and fluids. Dust control. Work-place Exposure Standards and their attainment. Environmental standards. Management of industrial air pollution. Regional and Local Air Quality Standards. Auditing procedures. Case studies.
- CHEMMAT 462** (2 Points)  
**Technology for Sustainability**  
 Resource evaluation. Process short-listing. Materials and energy conservation. Reduction of losses due to corrosion. The application of 'exergy' and pinch-technology concepts. Water recycling. Decommissioning. Plastic and metal recycling. Design of compact process plant, its control and provision for subsequent innovation. Full economic appraisal of all constraints. Case studies.
- CHEMMAT 463** (2 Points)  
**Food Process Engineering**  
 Application of engineering principles to food processing. Thermal treatment, dehydration and separation technologies. Physical properties and microstructure of foods. Meat and dairy technology. Food engineering design.
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- CHEMMAT 712** (2 Points)  
**Chemical Engineering Seminar**  
 A graduate course on a topic or topics from the advanced fields of fluid mechanics, transport phenomena, heat transfer, particulate technology, chemical reactors and fuel technology.
- CHEMMAT 713** (2 Points)  
**Studies in Chemical Engineering**  
 An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.
- CHEMMAT 716** (2 Points)  
**Advanced High Temperature Processing**  
 A theoretical and applied treatment of selected topics related to industrial processing in New Zealand.

Examples may include: electrochemical engineering for aluminium production, reactors, heat and mass transfer in electrothermal production of metals and slags, metallurgical reactors for treatment and quality control of metals and alloys.

**CHEMMAT 717 (2 Points)**  
**Electrochemical Engineering**

The thermodynamics of aluminium electrolysis; heat and mass balance; components of the cell voltage; anode effect and its mitigation, resistance and voltage tracking; cell magnetics and magnetic modelling.

*Corequisite: CHEMMAT 718, 726, 727*

**CHEMMAT 718 (2 Points)**  
**Aluminium Reduction Process Operations**

Monitoring overall aluminium cell performance – what are the appropriate parameters to measure, how are they measured and how are they used for process control? Optimizing cell performance, scheduling of operations, dealing with process excursions, metal treatment and quality. Novel cell designs.

*Corequisite: CHEMMAT 717, 726, 727*

**CHEMMAT 721 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Materials**

A graduate course with emphasis on new developments in materials science and engineering and their impact on technology and society. Topics may be selected from: surface engineering, nanocrystalline materials and composites, rapid solidification and mechanical alloying, diffusional synthesis, processing via solid state reaction, intermetallics, amorphous alloys and superconductors.

**CHEMMAT 722 (2 Points)**  
**Materials Seminar**

A graduate course on a topic or topics in the field of materials to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

**CHEMMAT 724 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Materials Characterization**

A graduate course on modern methods for materials microstructural characterization and analysis including: electron microscopy (SEM and TEM), microanalysis and surface analysis, atomic force microscopy (AFM), scanning tunnelling microscopy (STM). The course will include both principles and practical experience of these techniques.

**CHEMMAT 726 (2 Points)**  
**The Light Metals Industry**

An overview of the light metals, Ti, Al and Mg, their chemistry, metallurgy and processing. It also deals with trends in the global light metals production and uses and recent advances in extending applications for these materials; economics of feedstock and materials selection and availability; power supply and management; efficient use of equipment and resources; and environmental issues.

*Corequisite: CHEMMAT 717, 718, 727*

**CHEMMAT 727 (2 Points)**  
**Materials Performance and Selection for Light Metals Processing**

The performance requirements of anodes, cathodes, cell refractories and other aluminium cell construction materials are assessed. Techniques for

monitoring materials performance in operation and post operation (autopsies) are discussed. This course also covers materials specifications, how well they predict performance in the aluminium cell as well as the relationship between the fabrication of the cell components and their performance. New materials.

*Corequisite: CHEMMAT 717, 718, 726*

**CHEMMAT 787 (2 Points)**

**CHEMMAT 787A (1 Point)**

**CHEMMAT 787B (1 Point)**

**Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 787 A and B, or CHEMMAT 787*

**CHEMMAT 788A (2 Points)**

**CHEMMAT 788B (2 Points)**

**Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 788 A and B*

**CHEMMAT 789 (4 Points)**

**CHEMMAT 789A (2 Points)**

**CHEMMAT 789B (2 Points)**

**Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 789 A and B, or CHEMMAT 789*

**CHEMMAT 790 (1 Point)**

**ME Research Proposal (Chemical and Materials)**

**CHEMMAT 796A (7 Points)**

**CHEMMAT 796B (7 Points)**

**ME Thesis (Chemical and Materials)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 796 A and B*

---

## Civil Engineering

---

### Part II

**CIVIL 201 (1 Point)**

**Land Information Systems**

Aspects of elementary engineering surveying as used for gathering site information for the design and setting out of works. Land information systems, modern methods of gathering, processing and presenting information for engineering purposes.

**CIVIL 210 (2 Points)**

**Structural Mechanics 1**

Appreciation of structural systems. Equilibrium, bending moment and shear force. Deformation of structures, engineering beam theory, composite beams. Plastic analysis of simple frames, shear and torsion. Elementary elasticity, stress, strain, Mohr's circle, failure theories.

**CIVIL 211 (2 Points)**

**Structural Mechanics 2**

Matrix methods of structural analysis, stiffness and flexibility methods. Structural stability, column behaviour. Further beam bending and plastic

analysis. Theory of elasticity. Practical analysis of structures using computer software.

**CIVIL 220 (1 Point)**

**Introductory Engineering Geology**

Principles of physical and structural geology. Elementary stratigraphy. Applied geomorphology. Geologic surveying and mapping. Elementary seismology; microzoning and seismotectonic hazard evaluation. Engineering properties, description and identification of geologic materials. General applications of geology to engineering.

**CIVIL 221 (1 Point)**

**Geomechanics 1**

Nature and classification of soils. Density, permeability, stress-strain relationships, shear strength. Fluid flow in soils. States of stress in soil. Compaction. Introduction to stability of soil and rock masses.

**CIVIL 230 (1 Point)**

**Fluid Mechanics 1**

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Force and momentum relationship. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to turbomachinery.

**CIVIL 250 (1 Point)**

**Civil Engineering Materials**

Properties and testing of civil engineering materials. Constructional steels, Portland cement and concretes, timber, polymers and other materials. Protection systems. Solid mechanics material models. Stress and strain.

**Part III**

**CIVIL 312 (2 Points)**

**Structural Design 1**

The preliminary design of structures in timber, concrete and steel and detailed design in timber.

**CIVIL 313 (2 Points)**

**Structural Design 2**

The design of structures using reinforced concrete and structural steel excluding seismic actions.

**CIVIL 322 (1 Point)**

**Geomechanics 2**

Stability analysis in geotechnical engineering; slope stability, soil pressures on retaining structures, bearing capacity. Consolidation and settlement.

**CIVIL 323 (1 Point)**

**Foundation Engineering**

Site investigation. Interface with engineering geology. Deep and shallow foundations – selection, design and construction. Performance of foundations. Retaining walls. Introduction to earthquake effects.

**CIVIL 331 (1 Point)**

**Hydraulic Engineering**

Pipe flow – fluid resistance, friction factor, simple pipe flow and minor losses, steady-state pipe flow and pipe networks. Open channel flow – energy and momentum, uniform flow and flow resistance, critical flow, specific energy and flow force, backwater analysis, channel transitions.

**CIVIL 332 (1 Point)**

**Fluid Mechanics 2**

Laminar and turbulent flow. Ideal fluid flows. Boundary layer theory and separation, drag and lift. River morphology and flows. River pollution. Unsteady flow in channels.

**CIVIL 360 (1 Point)**

**Transportation Engineering 1**

Impact of roads. Highway alignment geometrics, aesthetics and location impact considerations. Basis of the main pavement design techniques. Road materials. Construction and rehabilitation techniques.

**CIVIL 361 (1 Point)**

**Transportation Engineering 2**

Planning for land transport facilities and urban development. Arrangement of street networks and environmental areas. Basic operational analyses at priority and signalized intersections for vehicles and pedestrians. Highway capacity analyses. Parking design. Introduction to transportation planning modelling.

**Part IV**

**CIVIL 401 (1 Point)**

**Civil and Resource Administration**

Application of legal principles to problems in civil engineering and environmental engineering management. Contractual and project administration. Resource management.

**CIVIL 403 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Civil Engineering 1: Traffic Systems Design**

Traffic signal timing analysis. Intersection analysis of performance (priority, signalized and roundabouts). Channelisation and intersection design. Human factors. Traffic impact studies. Overview of transportation planning modeling and analyses. Computer package selection. Some statutory implementation requirements and project examples. Introduction to intelligent transport systems.

**CIVIL 404 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Civil Engineering 2**

A course on a topic in Civil Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.

**CIVIL 405 (1 Point)**

**History of Engineering**

Contributions of ancient civilisations to development of engineering. The Renaissance: architecture and building. The beginnings of the quantitative method. Seventeenth and eighteenth century European engineering. The rise of the sciences. The Industrial Revolution. Twentieth century engineering. Canals and the railway. Roading, the road vehicle. Aircraft. Communications and computers. Modern engineering and future prospects.

**CIVIL 408A (2 Points)**

**CIVIL 408B (2 Points)**

**Project**

*Restriction: CIVIL 402*

*To complete this course students must enrol in CIVIL 408 A and B*

**CIVIL 409 (2 Points)**

**Construction Management**

Understanding topics necessary for effective construction management. Using a generic

construction project life cycle, essential aspects of construction projects including client brief preparation, the tendering process, preparing tenders, tender evaluation, project planning, resource allocation, teamwork, site safety, and contract types are covered. Case studies are used to reinforce the application of theoretical ideas to the successful running of construction projects.  
*Restriction: CIVIL 404*

**CIVIL 411 (2 Points)**  
**Structural Design 3**

Structural design using structural steel and reinforced concrete with the emphasis on the design of details, the strut and tie method and continuity in structures. An introduction to design for seismic actions.

**CIVIL 416 (2 Points)**  
**Structural Mechanics 3**

Dynamics of single and multi degree-of-freedom structures. Response to ground motion and the use of response spectra. Mode superposition and spectral modal analysis. Equivalent static forces and background to the loading codes. Modern techniques of structural analysis and their application to a range of practical structural systems.  
*Restriction: CIVIL 412 and 415*

**CIVIL 420 (2 Points)**  
**Geomechanics 3**

Shear strength – triaxial testing, pore pressures. Consolidation, anisotropic behaviour, numerical solutions, radial consolidation. Stress paths, effective and total stress paths for drained and undrained loading. Earth dams, stability analysis, flow net construction, piping resistance, instrumentation. Dynamic soil behaviour, site response during earthquakes, dynamic behaviour of earth dams.

**CIVIL 451 (2 Points)**  
**Timber Engineering**

Aspects of loadings, behaviour and design of timber structures such as light timber frame buildings, industrial buildings, bridges, retaining walls and marine structures. Design of structures using plywood and laminated timber. Design of proprietary timber floor systems. Fire engineering.

**CIVIL 460 (1 Point)**  
**Traffic Systems Design**

Traffic signal timing analysis. Intersection analysis of performance. Introduction to transportation planning modelling and impact studies. Resource Management and Transit New Zealand requirements. Computer packages.

**CIVIL 461 (2 Points)**  
**Highway and Transportation Design**

Crash investigation and road safety audit, skid resistance. Environmental and economic assessment of transport projects. Pavement asset management systems. Pavement rehabilitation techniques. Use of cement/concrete and lime, heavy-duty pavements.

**CIVIL 482 (2 Points)**  
**Water Resources Engineering**

A selection from the following: reservoir design and optimization, flood control and design of flood control structures, micro to large scale hydroelectric engineering, river engineering and sedimentation. A

water resources engineering design project.

*Prerequisite: RESOURCE (ENVENG) 333 or equivalent*

*Restriction: CIVIL 480*

**Diploma Courses**

**CIVIL 660 (2 Points)**

**Traffic Engineering and Planning**

A range of selected topics in traffic engineering and transportation planning which will provide a basis for extension into further studies.

*Restriction: CIVIL 361, 460*

**CIVIL 661 (2 Points)**

**Highway and Pavement Engineering**

A range of selected topics in highway engineering and pavement materials which will provide a basis for extension into further studies.

*Restriction: CIVIL 360, 461*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**CIVIL 701 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Civil Engineering 1**

Advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.

**CIVIL 702 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Civil Engineering 2**

Advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.

**CIVIL 703 (2 Points)**

**Project Management 1**

Planning, organization and control of engineering projects.

**CIVIL 704 (2 Points)**

**Project Management 2**

Contract administration, negotiation and dispute resolution for engineering project managers.

*Prerequisite: CIVIL 703 or equivalent*

**CIVIL 710 (2 Points)**

**Structural Dynamics**

Vibration theory. Linear theory of discrete and continuous systems including the shear beam and coupled shear walls. Introduction to the non-linear theory of vibration. Response of structures to earthquake, traffic and wind loading. Response spectra concepts. Normal mode analysis. Numerical integration techniques.

*Prerequisite: CIVIL 412 and 415 or equivalent*

**CIVIL 711 (2 Points)**

**Structures Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in structural analysis and design.

**CIVIL 712 (2 Points)**

**Structural Analysis**

Analytical methods for some or all of the following structures: frames and grids, slabs, shear wall systems, shell structures, bridge superstructures. Structural optimization.

**CIVIL 714 (2 Points)**

**Aseismic Structural Design**

Techniques for the design of structures to resist earthquake loading. Derivation of design actions, alternative structural systems for resisting these

loads, design of structural components subject to cyclic inelastic actions, detailing of members and joints to enhance earthquake resistance.

*Restriction: CIVIL 413*

**CIVIL 715 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Concrete Theory**

Behaviour of reinforced and prestressed concrete components and systems under complex loading and environmental conditions. Thermal and other loading conditions in bridge structures.

*Restriction: CIVIL 414*

**CIVIL 720 (2 Points)**

**Earthquake Engineering**

The fundamentals of seismology including earthquake waves, magnitudes and felt-intensities. The damaging effects of earthquake upon land and the constructions of man. Study of some relevant historical earthquakes. Strong earthquake motions and the vibratory response of land and buildings. Fundamentals of the earthquake-resistant design of engineering structures.

**CIVIL 723 (2 Points)**

**Rock Mechanics and Excavation Engineering**

Engineering rock behaviour – strength, elasticity and role of discontinuities. Stress – strain analysis, stability assessment of rock structures and support. Theoretical, practical and environmental aspects of ground excavations including ripping, cutting and blasting.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 723*

**CIVIL 724 (2 Points)**

**Soil Behaviour**

A systematic review of the engineering properties of soils: principle of effective stress, soil types and origin, particle size distributions, plasticity and density relationships, permeability, drained and undrained behaviour, shear strength properties, compressibility models, dilatancy and pore pressure response, consolidation behaviour, time dependent soil behaviour and properties. Sedimentary and transported soils. Residual soils and weathering. Volcanically derived soils. Partially saturated soil behaviour. Models for soil behaviour.

**CIVIL 730 (2 Points)**

**Fluid Mechanics Seminar**

Special topics selected from fluid dynamics, water resources engineering, statistics and numerical methods.

**CIVIL 731 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Fluid Mechanics**

Selected topics from applied fluid mechanics and hydraulics.

**CIVIL 732 (2 Points)**

**Coastal Engineering 2**

Waves, wave theories, wave forces on structures. Breakers, tsunamis, flow-induced oscillations, resonance problems in tidal estuaries. Sediment transport by waves. Topics from coastal and harbour engineering.

*Prerequisite: CIVIL 431 or 733 or equivalent*

**CIVIL 733 (2 Points)**

**Coastal Engineering 1**

Coastal, port and ocean engineering. Theories governing waves, tides and currents. Design of structures subject to a marine environment.

*Restriction: CIVIL 431*

**CIVIL 751 (2 Points)**

**Experimental Geotechnical Engineering**

Students are required to undertake and report on experimental work carried out in the field or laboratory. The work will entail a range of soil or rock tests of a geotechnical engineering nature, such as, but not limited to, triaxial tests, ring shear, consolidation, permeability, Atterburg limits, cone penetration tests, shear wave velocity and in situ vane tests.

**CIVIL 752 (2 Points)**

**Computational Geotechnical Engineering**

Students will undertake and report on analytical work that relates to geotechnical engineering. The work will entail analysis of engineering works using state of practice techniques to throw light on geotechnical design and performance.

**CIVIL 754 (2 Points)**

**Geotechnical Modelling**

Analysis of stress and strain in two and three dimensions, idea of a constitutive law, elementary elastic and plastic models for geomaterials, soil properties as random variables, probabilistic approach to geotechnical design, stress paths applied to geotechnical construction.

**CIVIL 755 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Mechanics of Materials**

Advanced treatment of topics relating to the mechanics and properties of materials, components and systems used in civil engineering.

*Restriction: CIVIL 450*

**CIVIL 760 (2 Points)**

**Traffic Engineering**

Selected topics from: traffic signal performance measures (queues, delays, stops), coordination of signals and platoon dispersion, one-way street systems, pedestrian activity design, capacity analysis and levels of service, frontage and main shopping street developments, traffic impact assessment, travel demand management, public transport and terminal design, large-scale parking, street lighting, queuing theory and applications, simulation.

**CIVIL 761 (2 Points)**

**Transportation Engineering Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in the planning and design of transport facilities and systems.

**CIVIL 762 (2 Points)**

**Transportation Planning**

Selected topics from: land use, transport and travel, land transport strategies, policies and techniques, trip generation and parking demand, public transport usage and other modes, data surveys, forecasting techniques, analytical models for trip generation/attraction, distribution, assignment and modal split, model and network tests, operational, economic and social evaluations and assessment of environmental effects.

**CIVIL 763 (2 Points)**

**Transportation Systems Analysis**

Selected topics from transportation systems and land use planning with emphasis on analysis and evaluation.

**CIVIL 764 (2 Points)**

**Highway Safety and Operations**

Selected topics from: holistic highway geometric design, energy absorption systems, safety management, safety audit, temporary traffic management techniques, highway capacity and level of service analyses, speed prediction and vehicle operating cost modelling, passing/climbing lane evaluation, computer simulation packages, economic evaluation models and appraisal techniques.

**CIVIL 765 (2 Points)**

**Infrastructure Asset Management**

Integration of planning and infrastructure asset management, resource management, institutional issues and legal requirements. The process of undertaking asset management plans and specific asset management techniques across all infrastructural assets using the 'International Infrastructure Asset Management Manual'.

**CIVIL 766 (2 Points)**

**Road Management Systems**

The planning, administration and management of the construction and maintenance of roads and maintenance management systems. The principles, methods and techniques of pavement deterioration modelling and the multi-year programming of works using RAMM, HDM models and dTIMS.

**CIVIL 767 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Pavement Engineering**

Selected topics from: pavement construction materials, analytical and empirical pavement design methods, pavement maintenance and rehabilitation techniques, data collection methodologies for the assessment of pavement performance.

**CIVIL 768 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Transportation 1**

A range of selected topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.

**CIVIL 769 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Transportation 2**

A range of selected topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.

**CIVIL 780 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Water Resources**

Selected topics from hydrology and water resources engineering.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 780*

**CIVIL 787 (2 Points)**

**CIVIL 787A (1 Point)**

**CIVIL 787B (1 Point)**

**Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CIVIL 787 A and B, or CIVIL 787*

**CIVIL 788A (2 Points)**

**CIVIL 788B (2 Points)**

**Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CIVIL 788 A and B*

**CIVIL 789 (4 Points)**

**CIVIL 789A (2 Points)**

**CIVIL 789B (2 Points)**

**Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CIVIL 789 A and B, or CIVIL 789*

**CIVIL 790 (1 Point)**

**ME Research Proposal (Civil)**

**CIVIL 796A (7 Points)**

**CIVIL 796B (7 Points)**

**ME Thesis (Civil)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CIVIL 796 A and B*

---

**Computer Systems Engineering**

---

**Part III**

**COMPSYS 301A (1 Point)**

**COMPSYS 301B (1 Point)**

**Engineering Design 3CS**

An appreciation of the engineering design process as applied to various computer-based systems. Design skills are enhanced through a variety of engineering projects which typically include elements of: computer hardware design, computer software design, system design and control, sensing, actuation and interfacing to computers.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSYS 301 A and B*

**COMPSYS 302 (2 Points)**

**Software Design 2CS**

A project-based course with extensive hands-on programming experience emphasising problem-solving techniques and applications in computer systems engineering. Topics selected from: software design and specification, software life cycle, algorithms and data structures, programming abstractions, parsing and translation, knowledge-based systems, concurrent programming, computer communications, interfacing with devices.

---

**Part IV**

**COMPSYS 401A (1.5 Points)**

**COMPSYS 401B (1.5 Points)**

**Project**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a Computer Systems Engineering topic assigned by the Head of Department. The work shall be supervised by a member of staff.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSYS 401 A and B*

**COMPSYS 402 (2 Points)**

**Embedded Real-time Systems**

Microcontroller architectures, memory and input/output subsystems, assembly language programming, real-time programming, the development of real-time software, programmable logic controllers.

**Honours and Master's Courses****COMPSYS 701 (2 Points)****Advanced Digital Systems Design**

Hardware/software co-design. Systems on chip. Implementation technologies. Digital system verification. Hardware specification and description languages, IP cores. Case studies in digital coding, cryptography, signal processing, wireless communications, computer networks.

**COMPSYS 702 (2 Points)****Advanced Microcomputing for Embedded Systems**

Advanced microcomputer architectures for real-time systems. Digital signal processors. HW/SW trade-offs in implementing real-time systems. Topics in distributed real-time systems. Programming real-time systems. Mobile embedded systems. Internet-based embedded systems.

**COMPSYS 710 (2 Points)****Studies in Computer Systems Engineering 1**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department.

**COMPSYS 711 (2 Points)****Studies in Computer Systems Engineering 2**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department.

**COMPSYS 787 (2 Points)****Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**COMPSYS 788A (2 Points)****COMPSYS 788B (2 Points)****Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSYS 788 A and B*

**COMPSYS 789 (4 Points)****Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**COMPSYS 790 (1 Point)****ME Research Proposal (Computer Systems)****COMPSYS 796A (7 Points)****COMPSYS 796B (7 Points)****ME Thesis (Computer Systems)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSYS 796 A and B*

**Electrical and Electronic Engineering****Part I****ELECTENG 101 (2 Points)****Electrical Engineering Systems**

This is a foundation course in electrical engineering intended for all engineering students. The aim of the course is to introduce students to electrical and electronic engineering systems and technology. Topics covered include: fundamentals of electrical engineering; electronic analogue and digital systems;

power and electric machines; and communication systems.

**Part II****ELECTENG 202 (2 Points)****Circuits and Systems**

This course concentrates on three fundamental areas: DC circuit analysis, steady-state AC circuit analysis and transient analysis. Basic network theory and analysis techniques are applied to typical electrical engineering systems. The signal waveforms and network responses of such systems are investigated.

**ELECTENG 203 (1 Point)****Software Design 1E**

A project-based course with extensive hands-on programming experience. Includes the fundamentals of a high-level programming language, the development environment, programming style and use of standard libraries, and introduction to algorithms, data abstraction and elementary data structures.

**ELECTENG 204 (2 Points)****Engineering Electromagnetics 1**

Electrostatics and magnetostatics, steady electric currents, the magnetic field of steady electric currents, Ampere's law and its applications, electromagnetic induction, Faraday's law and its applications, electromagnetism, simple transmission lines, magnetic circuits, permanent magnets, inductors, transformers, introduction to electrical machines.

**ELECTENG 205 (2 Points)****Computer Systems 1E**

Switching devices, algebra of logical variables, logical functions, combinational logic, sequential logic. Memory elements and a brief introduction to programmable logic devices. Number representation systems. Adders, subtractors, multipliers, dividers, arithmetic logic units, microprogramming, an introduction to a simple microprocessor and its instruction set, assembly language programming. Microcomputer systems design.

**ELECTENG 206 (1 Point)****Engineering Design 2E**

An appreciation of the design process as applied to various electrical and electronic engineering systems. Design skills will be developed through a variety of engineering projects which will typically include elements of: electric wiring conventions, introduction to printed circuit design and CAD, design of simple electronic circuits using op-amps.

**ELECTENG 207 (1 Point)****Microelectronic Circuits**

An introduction to semiconductor devices and their applications. Topics covered include: diodes, bipolar junction transistors, field-effect transistors and operational amplifiers, device models, terminal characteristics, biasing, coupling and design techniques, application to regulators, signal amplifiers, power amplifiers, switches and special circuits.

**ELECTENG 208 (2 Points)****Electric Circuit Analysis**

An introduction to the analysis of electric circuits and systems. Topics covered include: DC and AC circuit analysis, transient and steady state response, transfer functions and frequency response, and operational amplifier circuits.

*Restriction: ELECTENG 202*

### Part III

**ELECTENG 301A** (1 Point)

**ELECTENG 301B** (1 Point)

#### Engineering Design 3E

An appreciation of the design process as applied to various electrical and electronic engineering systems. Design skills are enhanced through a variety of engineering projects which typically include elements of: analogue and digital electronic hardware design, system design and control, electronic design from concept to working prototype. *To complete this course students must enrol in ELECTENG 301 A and B*

**ELECTENG 302** (2 Points)

#### Engineering Electromagnetics 2

The basic concepts of electromagnetism are completed with a formal treatment of Maxwell's equations and their applications. The course is divided into two areas: fields (leading to electromagnetic waves and communications) and machines (leading to power circuits and devices, including transformers, motors and generators).

**ELECTENG 303** (2 Points)

#### Systems and Control

An introduction to the analysis and control of analogue and digital systems. Transfer functions, impulse response, steady-state sinusoidal response and system stability will be discussed. The fundamental theory underlying the control and enhancement of system behaviour will be presented, with specific reference to the analysis and control of electrical systems.

**ELECTENG 304** (2 Points)

#### Computer Systems 2E

Microprocessor architecture; interface standards and devices, secondary storage; sampling, A/D and D/A conversion; time critical design issues, real time executives, device drivers, applications of microcomputers in embedded systems; PLCs; field programmable logic, EPLDs and FPGAs, basic logic cells, interconnects, complex digital circuit design cycle, high-level design platforms.

**ELECTENG 305** (2 Points)

#### Electronic Devices and Technology

The operation and analysis of a range of electronic equipment and systems selected from the full spectrum of the discipline of electrical and electronic engineering will be covered. Suitable electronic equipment and systems for analysis will include examples from the fields of: energy conversion, communication systems, signal conditioning.

**ELECTENG 306** (1 Point)

#### Transmission Lines and Systems

The basic concepts of electromagnetism are completed with a formal treatment of Maxwell's equations and their applications including both transmission lines and electromagnetic waves.

### Part IV

**ELECTENG 401A** (1.5 Points)

**ELECTENG 401B** (1.5 Points)

#### Project

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department. The work shall be supervised by a member of staff.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ELECTENG 401 A and B*

**ELECTENG 411** (2 Points)

#### Power Systems

Power system network modelling, load flow analysis, fault analysis, dynamic modelling of power system components, control of real power and frequency, control of reactive power and voltage, dynamic and transient stability, economic operation, power system protection, security and contingency analysis, state estimation, HVDC transmission and power system harmonics.

**ELECTENG 412** (2 Points)

#### Communication Systems

Broadband systems: FDM, TDM, PCM. Switched telecommunication systems; traffic theory. Television. Information theory, error control coding, data networks, waveform coding and data compression, baseband data transmission, digital modulation. Digital systems: ISDN, personal communication systems, spread spectrum communications.

**ELECTENG 413** (2 Points)

#### Signal Processing

Introduction to the analytical tools required for signal and system analysis and signal conditioning. The course is broadly divided into five areas: deterministic signal processing, random signal processing, discrete (digital) signal processing, passive network synthesis and active filter synthesis.

**ELECTENG 414** (2 Points)

#### Power Electronics

Introduction to power conversion, rectifier circuits, switched-mode DC-DC power supplies, control techniques for switching converters, resonant converters, unity power factor devices, waveform generation, brushless DC motors, AC motor control.

**ELECTENG 415** (2 Points)

#### Special Topics 1

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department.

**ELECTENG 421** (2 Points)

#### Radio Systems

Transmission lines and waveguides, impedance matching, devices. Radio propagation, antennas and arrays. Radio system design - mobile, point to point, area coverage. Optical engineering, propagation in free space and fibres, introduction to laser systems and optical fibre communications.

**ELECTENG 422** (2 Points)

#### Control Systems

State space analysis, relationship to transfer function methods, controllability and observability, multivariable plant. Computer simulation. Stability considerations. State variable feedback. Digital control system, design and realization of digital

controllers, adaptive controllers. Nonlinear systems, phase-plane and describing function techniques, Liapunov's method of stability analysis, design of controllers for non-linear systems. Variable structure systems.

**ELECTENG 423 (2 Points)**  
**Computer Systems 3E**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department. It will include topics such as: advanced computer organization, CISC and RISC architectures; performance enhancement-pipelining, memory interleaving, cache memories, virtual memory; system buses (32-bit, 64-bit); backplane standards; special purpose microprocessors, eg, for signal processing. Multiprocessors, cross-bar systems, shared memory systems; local and wide area networks, the OSI model, gateways, bridges and routers.

**ELECTENG 424 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topics 2**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department.

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ELECTENG 701 (2 Points)**  
**Wireless Communication**

Aspects of the design and planning of wireless communication systems. Introduction to cellular system design. Issues related to radio propagation: multipath, path loss prediction, channel characterization. System aspects: cellular technologies, system planning and reliability estimation. Wireless systems and standards.

**ELECTENG 702 (2 Points)**  
**Applied Electromagnetics**

Selected topics in electromagnetic theory. Consideration will be given to both analytical and numerical techniques.

**ELECTENG 703 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Power Systems**

Selected topics in power systems theory. Topics covered will include: computer analysis, control and protection, state estimation, economic optimization, reliability, dynamic behaviour.

**ELECTENG 704 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Control Systems**

Theory of modern control systems with emphasis on optimization techniques for both deterministic and stochastic processes. State-space modelling of dynamic systems and choice of suitable performance criteria. Adaptive, fuzzy logic and sliding mode control systems.

**ELECTENG 705 (2 Points)**  
**Heavy Current Electronics**

Vector and scalar control of cage induction motors. PWM waveform generation and analysis. Control of brushless DC motors. Introduction to electric vehicle drive systems. Analysis and simulation of power electronic circuits. Design and application of switch-mode and resonant converters.

**ELECTENG 706 (2 Points)**  
**Digital Signal Processing**

Fast Fourier Transform algorithms, design

techniques for digital filters with finite impulse response or infinite impulse response, adaptive and multirate processing, statistical signal processing. Additionally, the following may be covered: Kalman filtering, computerized tomography, and speech recognition. Case studies. Use of commercial packages such as MATLAB.

**ELECTENG 707 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in Information Engineering**

A graduate-level course on topics in information engineering including: Artificial neural network (ANN) models, software simulation methods, hardware systems, engineering applications of ANNs, genetic algorithms, fuzzy logic systems, fuzzy logic neural networks, digital coding, variable length codes, synchronization issues, error-correcting codes, encryption techniques, public key cryptography.

**ELECTENG 709 (2 Points)**  
**Image Processing**

Digital image manipulation, enhancement and reconstruction techniques; basic tools for image processing; case studies in deconvolution and phase retrieval; studies of contemporary medical imaging systems (CAT, PET, ultrasound).

**ELECTENG 710 (2 Points)**  
**Embedded Systems**

The use of microcontrollers to add intelligence and effective user interfaces to instrumentation and control systems; the use of FPGA devices in conjunction with microcontroller systems to reduce chip count/add performance and to implement special purpose sub-systems.

**ELECTENG 711 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering D**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department.

**ELECTENG 712 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering E**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department.

**ELECTENG 713 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering F**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department.

**ELECTENG 714 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering G**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department.

**ELECTENG 715 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering H**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department.

**ELECTENG 716 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering I**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department.

**ELECTENG 787 (2 Points)**

**ELECTENG 787A (1 Point)**

**ELECTENG 787B (1 Point)**

**Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic

assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.  
To complete this course students must enrol in *ELECTENG 787 A and B*, or *ELECTENG 787*

**ELECTENG 788A** (2 Points)  
**ELECTENG 788B** (2 Points)  
**Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.  
To complete this course students must enrol in *ELECTENG 788 A and B*

**ELECTENG 789** (4 Points)  
**ELECTENG 789A** (2 Points)  
**ELECTENG 789B** (2 Points)  
**Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.  
To complete this course students must enrol in *ELECTENG 789 A and B*, or *ELECTENG 789*

**ELECTENG 790** (1 Point)  
**ME Research Proposal (Electrical and Electronic)**

**ELECTENG 796A** (7 Points)  
**ELECTENG 796B** (7 Points)  
**ME Thesis (Electrical and Electronic)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.  
To complete this course students must enrol in *ELECTENG 796 A and B*

## Engineering, General

For each of the *Special Topics in Engineering* courses, students are required to attend and participate in a specified *Engineering Short Course*. Each student will then be required to carry out a detailed study within a company or organization on the application of the engineering technique or procedure covered in the Short Course. The student must submit a report on the results of the study for assessment.

### Part I

**ENGGEN 104** (1 Point)  
**Professional Development 1**

Introduction to professional engineering; the role of professional engineers and professional bodies; professional skills including engineering documentation.

**ENGGEN 110** (1 Point)  
**Engineering Design 1A**

An introduction to engineering design and the design process. Overview of the practice of engineering design. 3-D visualisation and representation, graphical communication and graphical problem-solving. Exercises in conceptual design and computer-aided drawing.  
*Restriction: 670.102*

**ENGGEN 111** (1 Point)  
**Engineering Design 1B**

The design process and introduction to product development. Projects in preliminary design; conceptual design and 3-D solid modelling techniques.  
*Restriction: 670.102*

**ENGGEN 121** (2 Points)  
**Engineering Mechanics**

An introduction to mechanics including: planar forces, free body diagrams, planar equilibrium of rigid bodies, friction, distributed forces, internal forces, shear force and bending moment diagrams, simple stress and strain and associated material properties, kinematics and kinetics of particles, work and energy, motion of rigid bodies in a plane.

### Part II

**ENGGEN 202** (1 Point)  
**Professional Development 2**

Engineering in society. Topics include: professional ethics, cultural perspectives, critical events in engineering history, wealth creation and intellectual property, and further development of professional skills.

**ENGGEN 203** (1 Point)  
**Sustainability Engineering**

Basic principles of sustainability; issues and practices that affect the sustainable use of resources and the impact on the environment; the application of engineering to sustainability issues, and engineering solutions to achieve sustainability.

### ENGGEN 299

**ENGGEN 299A**  
**ENGGEN 299B**

#### Workshop Practice

To complete this course students must enrol in *ENGGEN 299 A and B*, or *ENGGEN 299*

### Part III

**ENGGEN 302** (2 Points)  
**Professional Development 3**

Engineering management - an introduction to modern theory and practice of management, with particular reference to engineering projects and enterprises.

*Restriction: 670.301*

### Part IV

**ENGGEN 402** (1 Point)  
**Professional Development 4**

Professional practice and related issues - the engineer's role in the profession and the community, including ethical, legal and cultural responsibilities.

*Restriction: 670.401*

### ENGGEN 499

**ENGGEN 499A**  
**ENGGEN 499B**  
**Practical Work**

To complete this course students must enrol in *ENGGEN 499A and B*, or *ENGGEN 499*

### Diploma Courses

**ENGGEN 601** (2 Points)  
**Case Studies in Engineering 1**

The case study may include aspects of design or analysis, a survey and/or evaluation of a problem in any branch of engineering. A student is required to submit a report.

**ENGGEN 602 (2 Points)****Case Studies in Engineering 2**

The case study may include aspects of design or analysis, a survey and/or evaluation of a problem in any branch of engineering. A student is required to submit a report.

**ENGGEN 611 (2 Points)****Case Studies in Operations Research**

A detailed examination of an operations research application, consideration being given to the problem formulation, modelling and solution implementation. A report must be submitted.

**ENGGEN 622 (2 Points)****Advanced Topics in Engineering 1**

Courses on topics determined each year by the Associate Dean Postgraduate in the Faculty of Engineering.

**ENGGEN 623 (2 Points)****Advanced Topics in Engineering 2**

Courses on topics determined each year by the Associate Dean Postgraduate in the Faculty of Engineering.

**Honours and Master's Courses****ENGGEN 701 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering A****ENGGEN 702 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering B****ENGGEN 703 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering C****ENGGEN 704 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering D****ENGGEN 705 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering E****ENGGEN 706 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering F****ENGGEN 707 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering G****ENGGEN 708 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering H****ENGGEN 757A (2 Points)****ENGGEN 757B (2 Points)****Project M**

A student is required to submit a report on the project carried out. The project may include a survey and evaluation of modern advances in engineering management practices, the development of new management strategies, industrial case studies or the development of an engineering management-oriented computer package.

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGGEN 757 A and B

**ENGGEN 760A (4 Points)****ENGGEN 760B (4 Points)****Project in Operations Research**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGGEN 760 A and B

**ENGGEN 790 (1 Point)****ME Research Proposal (Engineering)****ENGGEN 796A (7 Points)****ENGGEN 796B (7 Points)****ME Thesis (Engineering)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGGEN 796 A and B

**ENGGEN 798A (7 Points)****ENGGEN 798B (7 Points)****Master of Operations Research Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGGEN 798 A and B

**Engineering Science****Part I****ENGSCI 111 (2 Points)****Mathematical Modelling 1**

Introduction to mathematical modelling. Differentiation and integration (polynomials, trigonometric, exponential, logarithmic, hyperbolic and rational functions). Integration by parts, substitution and numerical integration. Relational functions. Differential equations and their solutions (including Euler's method). Complex numbers and roots of functions. Vector and matrix algebra, geometry, transformations, sets of linear equations, curve fittings. Introduction to statistics using R.

**ENGSCI 131 (1 Point)****Engineering Computing**

Introduction to computing for engineers. Problem-solving and programming using the MATLAB package.

**Part II****ENGSCI 211 (2 Points)****Mathematical Modelling 2**

First and second order ordinary differential equations and solutions. Laplace transforms. Taylor series and series in general. Multivariate and vector calculus including div grad and curl. Further linear algebra with partial pivoting. Fourier series and transforms. Application of the techniques through appropriate modelling examples.

**ENGSCI 212 (2 Points)****Mathematical Modelling 2ES**

First and second order ordinary differential equations and solutions. Laplace transforms. Taylor series and series in general. Multivariate and vector calculus including div grad and curl. Further linear algebra with partial pivoting. Fourier series and transforms. Application of the techniques through appropriate modelling examples.

**ENGSCI 231 (1 Point)****Computational Techniques 1**

Visual basic programming. Basic concepts of numerical computation. Solution of linear equations by LU factorisation, pivoting, numerical stability; ill-conditioning. Numerical integration via Trapezoidal, Simpson, Gauss and Adaptive rules. Introduction to numerical solution of ODEs via Euler and Improved Euler methods. Introduction to Lagrange interpolation and splines. Nonlinear equations via Bisection, secant, regula falsi and Newton methods. Sorting and searching.

**ENGSCI 232 (1 Point)****Computer Systems**

Introduction to digital logic, computer system design, and simple hardware interfacing. Laboratory time is used to develop hardware and software for a real-time data collection system.

**ENGSCI 255 (2 Points)****Modelling in Operations Research**

Emphasizes the relationship between business and industrial applications and their associated operations research models. Software packages will be used to solve practical problems. Topics such as: linear programming, transportation and assignment models, network algorithms, queues, inventory models, and simulation will be considered.

*Restriction: STATS 255*

**ENGSCI 261 (1 Point)****Engineering Design 2ES**

Further development of problem-solving skills and group project work. The use of computer tools in engineering design, including advanced spreadsheeting integrated with solid modelling.

**ENGSCI 262 (1 Point)****Modelling in Engineering**

Introduction to concepts of modelling of engineering problems, including model formulation, dimensional analysis, solution procedures, comparisons with reality, and shortcomings, with examples from elementary mechanics, structures, hydrostatics, one-dimensional heat, diffusion and fluid motion.

**ENGSCI 271 (1 Point)****Modelling in Bioengineering**

Introduction to concepts of modelling of bioengineering problems, including: model formulation, dimensional analysis, solution procedures, comparisons with reality, and shortcomings, with examples from elementary biomechanics, biostructures, hydrostatics, one-dimensional heat, diffusion and fluid motion.

**ENGSCI 272 (2 Points)****Bioinstrumentation 1**

Analogue circuit analysis, transducers, semiconductors, signal conditioning, data acquisition. Digital gates, combinatorial and synchronous circuits, data representation, instruction sets, memory. Measurement systems, transducer circuits (bioelectric, temperature, light, motion and force, pressure, flow, chemical). EITHER: Analogue signal processing, Fourier series, Fourier transform, Laplace transform, linear system description and solution. OR: Digital signals, FIR filters, convolution, frequency response, Z-transform, IIR filters.

**ENGSCI 274 (2 Points)****Mechanics of Biomaterials**

The principles of mechanics and the special circumstances associated with applying these principles to living and prosthetic structures will be presented. Topics include: mechanical behaviour of biomaterials, linear elasticity, stresses and strains specific to direct and torsional loading, material constitutive relationships (including anisotropy, nonlinearity, and viscoelasticity), axial and transverse loading of bone, pressure loading of cells, blood vessels, and theories of failure.

**Part III****ENGSCI 311 (2 Points)****Mathematical Modelling 3**

A selection from: ordinary differential equations. Systems of equations, analytical and numerical methods, non-linear ODEs. Partial differential equations. Separation of variables. Numerical methods for solving PDEs. Models for optimization. Industrial statistics. Data analysis, regression, experimental design reliability methods, process control.

*Restriction: STATS 255*

**ENGSCI 312 (1 Point)****Mathematical Modelling 3ES**

Mathematical modelling using ordinary and partial differential equations.

*Restriction: STATS 255*

**ENGSCI 321 (1 Point)****Probability and Statistics**

Probability. Conditional probability, common distribution models. Exploratory data analysis, confidence intervals, tests of hypothesis, t-tests, two sample tests, paired comparisons. Introduction to ANOVA. Linear regression, regression diagnostics.

**ENGSCI 331 (2 Points)****Computational Techniques 2**

Fortran programming. Linear equations. Numerical methods for ODEs. Taylor series, truncation error. Eigen problems. Gaussian quadrature. Non-linear equations: Newton's method in multidimensions. Multivariate minimization: Steepest descent, Newton's method, Levenberg-Marquardt method. Finite differences for PDEs. Explicit and implicit difference schemes for heat equation. Stability by Von Neumann approach. ADI method.

**ENGSCI 332 (2 Points)****Computer Systems and Control**

Selected topics will be covered from: real time software design and specification, programming in assembly and high level languages, control system description, time response and feedback.

**ENGSCI 341 (1 Point)****Foundations of Continuum Mechanics**

Vector calculus and integral theorems as applied to continuum field problems such as heat flow. Language, methodology and basic equations of continuum mechanics, including: the continuum hypothesis, indicial notation, basic kinematics, displacement, deformation, finite strain, small strain, plane strain, strain rate, traction, stress, plane stress, rotation of axes, transformation rules, principal directions, tensors, invariants, velocity fields, constitutive laws for a range of materials, isotropy, homogeneity, physical meaning of parameters in the constitutive equations for the isotropic elastic solid and the incompressible Newtonian fluid, derivation of Navier-Stokes and Navier's equations.

**ENGSCI 342 (2 Points)****Modelling in Continuum Mechanics**

Isotropic elasticity, homogeneous deformations, elastic moduli, plane stress and plane strain, solutions with radial symmetry. Airy stress function, compatibility and the biharmonic equation, solutions

in polar coordinates, applications including fracture and contact, mechanics. Viscous flow, simple exact solutions of the Navier-Stokes equations. Steady flow over a flat plate, boundary layers. Ideal flow, velocity potential and stream function, 2-D flows. Introduction to turbulence and aerodynamics.

**ENGSCI 361 (1 Point)**  
**Engineering Design 3ES**

Group projects are used to formulate design proposals, including costings for development and manufacture. Utilisation of 3D CAD and FEM software during both design and analysis phases.

**ENGSCI 371 (2 Points)**  
**Continuum Modelling in Bioengineering**

Isotropic elasticity, homogenous deformations, elastic moduli, plane stress and plane strain, solutions with radial symmetry. Airy stress function, compatibility and the biharmonic equation, solutions in polar coordinates, applications including fracture and contact, mechanics. Viscous flow, simple exact solutions of the Navier-Stokes equations. Steady flow over a flat plate, boundary layers. Ideal flow, velocity potential and stream function, 2-D flows. Introduction to biofluid mechanics.

**ENGSCI 372 (1 Point)**  
**Bioinstrumentation 2**

Measurement systems, transducer circuits (bioelectric, temperature, light, motion and force, pressure, flow, chemical). EITHER: Analogue signal processing, Fourier series, Fourier transform, Laplace transform, linear system description and solution. OR: Digital signals, FIR filters, convolution, frequency response, Z-transform, IIR filters.

**ENGSCI 391 (2 Points)**  
**Optimization in Operations Research**

Linear programming, the revised simplex method and its computational aspects, duality and the dual simplex method, sensitivity and post-optimal analysis. Network optimization models, maximum flow, shortest path and spanning tree algorithms. Transportation, assignment and trans-shipment models, and the network simplex method.

**Part IV**

**ENGSCI 400A (1.5 Points)**

**ENGSCI 400B (1.5 Points)**  
**Project**

An investigation carried out under the supervision of a member of staff on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Engineering Science. A written report on the work must be submitted.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGSCI 400 A and B*

**ENGSCI 401 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Science 1**

For BTEch students only

**ENGSCI 402 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Science 2**

**ENGSCI 403 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Science 3**

**ENGSCI 404 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Science 4**

Courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Engineering Science.

**ENGSCI 414 (2 Points)**  
**Mathematical Modelling 4A**

A selection of 12 lecture modules on mathematical modelling methods in engineering, including theory of partial differential equations, methods of characteristics, similarity solutions, asymptotic expressions, theory of waves, special functions, non-linear ordinary differential equations, calculus of variations, tensor analysis, complex variables, wavelet theory and other modules offered from year to year. Students select four modules.

*Restriction: ENGSCI 415*

**ENGSCI 415 (1 Point)**  
**Mathematical Modelling 4B**

Students select two modules from those offered for ENGSCI 414.

*Restriction: ENGSCI 414*

**ENGSCI 416 (1 Point)**  
**Mathematical Modelling 4C**

This course offers a selection of 12 lecture modules on advanced mathematical modelling in engineering to suit the needs of both final year engineering and postgraduate students. Some modules may be available from the MM3 options. Students select two modules.

**ENGSCI 440 (2 Points)**  
**Continuum Mechanics**

Applications of continuum mechanics and mathematical modelling to problems in biomechanics, fluid mechanics and solid mechanics. In biomechanics applications of large deformation elasticity to soft tissues will be considered. In fluid mechanics important topics in classical fluid mechanics and environmental fluid mechanics will be selected from: inviscid flow theory, compressible flows, viscous flows, meteorology, oceanography, coastal ocean modelling, mixing in rivers and estuaries. In solid mechanics applications of linear elasticity, plasticity and viscoelasticity theory will be considered in the context of engineering problems.

**ENGSCI 441 (1 Point)**  
**Bioengineering**

Biophysics of membrane channels and pumps. Mechanics of striated muscle. Cardiac electromechanics. Biomedical instrumentation and signal analysis. Body surface mapping. Forward and inverse problems of electrocardiology.

**ENGSCI 442 (1 Point)**  
**Fluid Mechanics**

Turbulence and turbulence modelling. Finite difference numerical techniques in computational fluid dynamics (CFD). Application of CFD to environmental flows and aerodynamics.

**ENGSCI 443 (1 Point)**  
**Solid Mechanics**

A variety of topics in engineering solid mechanics which could include composite materials, geomechanics, contact mechanics, fracture mechanics, rheology, constitutive theory and computational methods.

**ENGSCI 450 (2 Points)**  
**Computational Techniques 3A**

Students select four modules from topics such as finite elements, boundary elements, finite differences, C/C++ programming, network

programming, heuristics and unconstrained nonlinear optimization, AMPL modelling language.

*Restriction: ENGSCI 451*

**ENGSCI 451 (1 Point)**

**Computational Techniques 3B**

Students select two modules from those offered for ENGSCI 450.

*Restriction: ENGSCI 450*

**ENGSCI 452 (1 Point)**

**Computational Techniques 3C**

The following is explored through Matlab programming. Singular value decomposition and ill-conditioning, orthogonal factorizations, least squares. Eigenproblems. Iterative methods for linear systems. Introduction to signal analysis. Different classes of signals are designed. An explanation of how such signals interact and modulate in real world problems.

**ENGSCI 453 (1 Point)**

**Advanced Computer Systems**

Object-oriented programming and programme design. High performance computing issues including microprocessor architectures, memory organization and parallel computing.

**ENGSCI 460 (2 Points)**

**Operations Research**

Dynamic programming. Integer programming. Lagrangian relaxation. An introduction to stochastic modelling and simulation. Multi-criteria optimization.

**ENGSCI 461 (1 Point)**

**Advanced Simulation**

Builds on the simulation topics introduced in ENGSCI 460. Uniform and non-uniform random variate generation, input distribution selection, discrete-event simulation models, how discrete-event simulation software works, output analysis, variance reduction, optimization and simulation.

*Prerequisite: ENGSCI 460*

**ENGSCI 462 (1 Point)**

**Applied Statistics**

Reliability models, maintenance and inspection schemes. Statistical process control. Design and analysis of experiments for industrial applications including incomplete block, factorial, fractional factorial designs.

**ENGSCI 463 (1 Point)**

**Scheduling**

Problems in production and machine scheduling, vehicle routing, facilities layout and personnel scheduling and rostering. Models and computational methods for the solution of scheduling problems.

**ENGSCI 464 (1 Point)**

**Stochastic Programming**

Models for planning under uncertainty. Two-stage and multi-stage programs with recourse. Decomposition methods. Scenario construction and solution validation.

**ENGSCI 471 (2 Points)**

**Computational Methods for Bioengineering**

Finite element basis functions. Galerkin methods for finite elements and boundary elements. Bioengineering applications in heat flow, gas transport, linear elasticity and fluid flow.

**ENGSCI 472 (2 Points)**

**Whole Organ Modelling**

Advanced computational modelling of cells, tissues, organs, and organ systems with an emphasis on integrative physiology, coupled field problems in bioengineering, and the use of models to interpret experimental results.

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ENGSCI 701 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Engineering Science**

A graduate course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Engineering Science.

**ENGSCI 711 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Engineering Mathematics**

A graduate course in mathematics applied to engineering problems on such topics as the theory of ordinary differential equations, partial differential equations, perturbation methods, advanced numerical analysis, etc.

**ENGSCI 720 (2 Points)**

**Seminar in Stochastic Operations Research**

An advanced course in which students are required to present seminars on current developments in stochastic operations research.

**ENGSCI 721 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Numerical Methods**

An advanced course on finite elements, boundary elements and finite differences.

**ENGSCI 741 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Continuum Mechanics 1**

Graduate courses in continuum mechanics covering topics in the mechanics of solids and fluids and other continua.

**ENGSCI 742 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Continuum Mechanics 2**

Graduate courses in continuum mechanics covering topics in the mechanics of solids and fluids and other continua.

**ENGSCI 743 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Modelling**

A study of mathematical methods currently used in geothermal reservoir engineering, and an introduction to the computer modelling of geothermal flows.

**ENGSCI 744 (2 Points)**

**Bioengineering**

Biophysics of nerves and muscles, propagation of electrical signals in nerves, forces in muscle. Cellular biochemical reactions, enzyme kinetics, gene expression. Cardiac electrophysiology, initiation of the heart beat, bidomain model for electrical activity of the heart. A guide to the brain (neurons, synapses, electrical activity, signals and rhythms). The EEG. Brain dysfunction and epilepsy. Simple neural network models.

**ENGSCI 751 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Operations Research 1**

Graduate courses in recent developments in operations research and applications.

**ENGSCI 752 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Operations Research 2**

Graduate courses in recent developments in operations research and applications.

**ENGSCI 787** (2 Points)

**ENGSCI 787A** (1 Point)

**ENGSCI 787B** (1 Point)

**Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGSCI 787 A and B, or ENGSCI 787*

**ENGSCI 788A** (2 Points)

**ENGSCI 788B** (2 Points)

**Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGSCI 788 A and B*

**ENGSCI 789** (4 Points)

**ENGSCI 789A** (2 Points)

**ENGSCI 789B** (2 Points)

**Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGSCI 789 A and B, or ENGSCI 789*

**ENGSCI 790** (1 Point)

**ME Research Proposal (Engineering Science)**

**ENGSCI 791** (2 Points)

**Advanced Linear Optimization**

Techniques for basis handling in the revised simplex method, sparsity considerations, column generation and decomposition methods, interior point methods for linear programming, introduction to game theory.

**ENGSCI 792** (2 Points)

**Non-linear Optimization**

Theory of constrained and unconstrained non-linear optimization, including optimality conditions, convex optimization, Karush-Kuhn-Tucker conditions, and computational techniques for important classes of these problems including Newton-Raphson methods, Quasi-Newton methods, trust regions, penalty function methods, quadratic programming, and sequential quadratic programming.

**ENGSCI 793** (2 Points)

**Structural Optimization**

Optimal mechanical design, applications, formulation of problems, differential calculus, variational calculus, necessary and sufficient conditions for optimality, Lagrange function, limit analysis, linear programming, static analysis, Cholesky factorization, potential energy, non-linear analysis, contact analysis, sensitivity analysis, finite differences, analytical differences, limit design, duality, sequential linear programming, quadratic programming, material section.

**ENGSCI 795** (2 Points)

**Combinatorial Optimization**

An introduction to the important theoretical and computational aspects of combinatorial optimization problems. Topics include: complexity, sorting and searching algorithms, matching problems, matroids and their role in combinatorial optimization, basis reduction methods, branch and cut methods, TSP/VRP as applications.

**ENGSCI 796A** (7 Points)

**ENGSCI 796B** (7 Points)

**ME Thesis (Engineering Science)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGSCI 796 A and B*

**Energy Technology**

**Diploma Courses**

**GEO THERM 601** (2 Points)

**Geothermal Resources and Their Use**

Basic features of geothermal resources, their classification and development, assessment of reservoirs, fluid production and steamfield equipment, methods of electricity generation, reservoir engineering, environmental considerations, development planning, geothermal project economics.

**GEO THERM 602** (2 Points)

**Geothermal Energy Technology**

Background information on earth science, thermodynamics, fluid mechanics and heat transfer, field work demonstrating exploration techniques, introduction to groundwater hydrology, corrosion and scaling.

*For Diploma students only*

**GEO THERM 603** (2 Points)

**Geothermal Exploration**

Geology (mapping geothermal fields and discharge features, reservoir permeability, drillhole logging, geothermal hazards). Geochemistry (chemistry of geothermal fluids, aqueous and gaseous geothermometers, boiling and mixing effects). Geophysics (rock properties, principles of gravity, magnetic, electric, seismic and thermal methods used for geothermal exploration).

*For Diploma students only*

**GEO THERM 611** (2 Points)

**Geothermal Geology**

Principles of hydrothermal alteration, use of mineralogy to assess geothermal reservoirs, fluid-inclusion geothermometry, correlating data between drillholes, depiction of subsurface geology, integration of geological and geochemical data.

**GEO THERM 612** (2 Points)

**Geothermal Geophysics**

Interpretation of resistivity, self-potential, gravity, seismic and magnetic surveys, micro-earthquake studies, temperature surveys and geophysical drillhole logging, monitoring of mass changes in reservoirs.

**GEO THERM 613** (2 Points)

**Geothermal Geochemistry**

Interpretation of chemical and isotope data of geothermal liquids and gases, fluid-mineral equilibrium, production chemistry, environmental chemistry.

**GEO THERM 620** (2 Points)

**Geothermal Engineering**

Principles of heat and mass transfer, principles of energy cycles, well measurement and testing, basic components of fluid production and utilization,

concepts of energy conversion, optimization, criteria for good design and plant maintenance, environmental monitoring.

*For Diploma students only*

**GEOTHERM 621 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Reservoir Engineering**

Transient thermal conduction, theoretical and numerical solutions, flow in porous media, two-phase flow in wells, well testing and interpretation of measurements, interference testing, numerical reservoir simulation.

**GEOTHERM 622 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Production Engineering**

Drilling techniques and completion tests, fluid separation and transmission, single and two-phase fluid flow, design of fluid-gathering systems and their optimization, assessment of corrosion and scaling, well stimulation, safety codes and standards.

**GEOTHERM 623 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Utilization Engineering**

Review of applied thermodynamics, industrial, agricultural and domestic use of heat. Electricity production and process heat generation. Plant design criteria, optimization of plants, cascaded use, waste disposal and environmental effects of utilization schemes. Maintenance of plant. Planning of plant developments and costing.

**GEOTHERM 689 (4 Points)**

**Geothermal Project**

Students are required to submit reports on a specified field exercise, a small team pre-feasibility study for a geothermal development, and a project making some contribution in relation to a geothermal development or to geothermal science or engineering.

*For Diploma students only*

**Environmental Engineering**

**Part II**

**ENVENG 201 (2 Points)**

**Resource Engineering**

An introduction to the utilization and development of earth and water resources. Exploration, extraction and processing of minerals including industrials, base and precious metals. Concepts of water resources engineering including: water sources, hydrological cycle, rainfall/runoff reservoir design and hydro-electric engineering. Energy resources including: coal, oil, gas, hydro and geothermal. Renewable and non-renewable strategies. Design assignments with case studies related to resource development.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 201*

**ENVENG 210 (2 Points)**

**Solid Mechanics and Materials**

Elementary mechanics of materials: concepts of stress and strain, stress-strain relationships, and beam theory. Properties and testing of constructional steels, Portland cement and concretes, timber, polymers and other materials. Protection systems. Elastic and other material models.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 210*

**ENVENG 243 (1 Point)**

**Introduction to Environmental Engineering**

Water quality, water and wastewater characteristics – physical, chemical and biological treatments (unit operations and processes). Solid waste characteristics and disposal, hazardous waste treatment.

*Restriction: 695.241, RESOURCE 243*

**ENVENG 244 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Engineering 1**

Water quality, water and wastewater characteristics – physical, chemical and biological treatments (unit operations and processes). Solid waste characteristics and disposal, hazardous waste treatment. Fundamentals of chemistry for environmental engineering including: basic concepts of general, physical, equilibrium and organic chemistry, and water and wastewater analysis.

*Restriction: 695.241, 695.242, RESOURCE 244*

**Part III**

**ENVENG 324 (1 Point)**

**Slope Engineering**

Site investigation for slope assessment. Geological appraisal of slope behaviour. Failure mechanisms, shear strength of soil and rock masses. Influence of groundwater. Evaluation of stability and risk. Slope instrumentation. Remedial measures.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 324*

**ENVENG 333 (2 Points)**

**Engineering Hydrology**

Hydrologic processes. Analysis of atmospheric and surface waters. Design for atmospheric and surface waters. Occurrence of groundwater. Groundwater levels and environmental influence. Groundwater movement. Well hydraulics and design.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 333*

**ENVENG 341 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Engineering 2**

Examines natural environmental processes and their relevance to engineering. Soil and water chemistry, microbiology, biochemistry and biological processes will be examined, focusing on the application of these in engineering design, practice and management.

*Restriction: 695.340, RESOURCE 341*

**ENVENG 342A (1 Point)**

**ENVENG 342B (1 Point)**

**Environmental Engineering Design**

The applications of design practice in environmental engineering with a number of design projects. Elements of water and wastewater engineering, industrial waste management and control, site remediation. Sampling and methods of risk assessment. Economic appraisal and cost-benefit analysis.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 342*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVENG 342 A and B*

**Part IV**

**ENVENG 402 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Environmental Engineering 1**

A course on a topic in resource engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 402*

- ENVENG 403** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Environmental Engineering 2**  
 A course on a topic in resource engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.  
*Restriction: RESOURCE 403*
- ENVENG 405** (1 Point)  
**Environmental Engineering Process Design**  
 Mass balance, flow models and reactor design. Water and wastewater treatment plants, design of preliminary unit operations. Physical, chemical and biological process design. Landfill design using mathematical models. Air pollution modelling and control methods.  
*Prerequisite: ENVENG 243 or 244*  
*Restriction: ENVENG 342, RESOURCE 405*
- ENVENG 406A** (2 Points)  
**ENVENG 406B** (2 Points)  
**Project**  
*Restriction: ENVENG 401*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in ENVENG 406 A and B
- ENVENG 407** (1 Point)  
**Special Topic in Environmental Engineering 3**  
 A topic in environmental engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.
- ENVENG 419** (2 Points)  
**Design Project**  
 A design project requiring input from more than one engineering subdiscipline. The department will offer a number of projects from which the students may select. It will be possible for groups of students to work together on a project. Assessment will be based on a report and an oral presentation of the outcome of the project.  
*Restriction: RESOURCE 419*
- ENVENG 441** (2 Points)  
**Water and Wastewater Engineering**  
 Chemistry and microbiology of water and wastewater treatment, flow models and reactors. Unit operations and process analysis and design. Treatment plant design and operation. Effluent and residues disposal.  
*Restriction: RESOURCE 441*
- ENVENG 443** (2 Points)  
**Integrated Solid Waste Management**  
 Evolution of solid waste management. Sources, composition and properties of solid waste. Engineering principles. Separation, transformation and recycling of waste, materials. Integrated solid waste management. Planning issues.
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- ENVENG 701** (2 Points)  
**Studies in Environmental Engineering 1**  
 Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.  
*Restriction: RESOURCE 701*
- ENVENG 702** (2 Points)  
**Studies in Environmental Engineering 2**  
 Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering.  
*Restriction: RESOURCE 702*
- ENVENG 704** (2 Points)  
**Sustainable Resource Management**  
 Wide-ranging review of the issues and techniques required for the sustainable management of resources.  
*Restriction: ENVENG 404*
- ENVENG 741** (2 Points)  
**Hazardous Substance Management**  
 A review of topics in hazardous substance management including: substance classification, legislation and enforcement, storage and handling practices, occupational safety and health, emergency preparedness and response, risk evaluation and control.  
*Restriction: 655.741, RESOURCE 741*
- ENVENG 744** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Engineering Processes Laboratory**  
 Laboratory research methods (safety, sampling procedures, sample preservation, data analysis and report writing). Laboratory experiments exploring various physical, chemical and biological processes, such as sedimentation, chemical coagulation and precipitation, chlorination, reactor residence time distribution, activated carbon and anaerobic digestion.
- ENVENG 745** (2 Points)  
**Modelling of Groundwater Flow and Pollutant Transport**  
 Aquifer properties, principles of seepage and groundwater flow, solution techniques for two-dimensional flows, groundwater quality, contaminant transport in saturated and unsaturated media, biochemical transformation processes, multiphase flow and use of groundwater models.
- ENVENG 746** (2 Points)  
**Surface Water Quality Modelling**  
 Mass balance and steady state solutions for point and distributed loadings applied to rivers and lakes, feed-forward and feedback systems of reactors, mass transport in incompletely mixed systems, simple time-variable solutions, nutrient dynamics in water bodies and exchange with sediments, and eutrophication and toxic-substance modelling.
- ENVENG 750** (2 Points)  
**Sustainability Engineering 2**  
 An in-depth understanding of sustainability and engineering. The concept of sustainability engineering and engineering's relationship to global issues such as limitations on material and energy resources, pollution and global warming. Tools that engineers need to assist in resolving such problems, including design for environment, servicing, clean technologies and industrial ecology will be covered.
- ENVENG 751** (2 Points)  
**Sustainable Technologies and Processes**  
 Pollution prevention and clean engineering. Resource, waste and energy auditing, resource management, cost/benefit analysis of sustainable technologies, technology and process assessment and design and management of sustainable technologies and processes.
- ENVENG 752** (2 Points)  
**Sustainability and Risk Assessment**  
 Sustainability assessment of projects, products and processes, using risk analysis and assessment as a basis but also incorporating clean engineering, life

cycle analysis and impact assessment to assess long term viability and sustainability. Engineering versus management solutions to sustainability problems, system constraints, including economic, engineering and social limitations to problem resolutions, and problem framing and decision making in engineering analysis. Students will undertake a sustainability analysis for a project, process or product, assess the long term viability and sustainability of the project or product and make recommendations to reduce the risk and improve the sustainability of the project or product.

**ENVENG 753 (2 Points)**

**Sustainable Engineering Design**

The principles of sustainable design, including design for environment, design for recycling, design for duration and design for reuse. Assessment of product design, appropriate product function, level of quality and life cycle. Students will be expected to provide input into effective, efficient and sustainable product design.

**ENVENG 754 (2 Points)**

**Sustainability Engineering Seminar**

A variety of relevant and current topics relating to sustainability engineering, including the impact of information technologies, GM engineering, nanotechnologies and other new engineering initiatives on society and means of ensuring that those technologies encourage sustainability. Students will assess such issues and discuss the relevance to engineering, sustainability and future development of technology and society.

**ENVENG 787 (2 Points)**

**ENVENG 787A (1 Point)**

**ENVENG 787B (1 Point)**

**Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 787*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVENG 787 A and B, or ENVENG 787*

**ENVENG 788A (2 Points)**

**ENVENG 788B (2 Points)**

**Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 788*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVENG 788 A and B*

**ENVENG 789 (4 Points)**

**ENVENG 789A (2 Points)**

**ENVENG 789B (2 Points)**

**Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 789*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVENG 789 A and B, or ENVENG 789*

**ENVENG 790 (1 Point)**

**ME Research Proposal (Environmental)**

*Restriction: RESOURCE 790*

**ENVENG 796A (7 Points)**

**ENVENG 796B (7 Points)**

**ME Thesis (Environmental)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*Restriction: RESOURCE 796*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVENG 796 A and B*

## Mechanical Engineering

### Part II

**MECHENG 211 (2 Points)**

**Thermofluids**

The fundamentals of fluid mechanics, thermodynamics and heat transfer with practical applications to engineering devices and systems.

**MECHENG 222 (2 Points)**

**Dynamics**

Systems of forces and moments in two dimensions. Kinematics of particles, rectilinear and curvilinear motion, kinematics of rigid bodies in the plane. Kinetics of particles, systems of particles and rigid bodies. Impulse and momentum, mechanism motion in the plane. Vibration of a particle.

**MECHENG 223 (2 Points)**

**Machines and Mechanisms**

An introductory study of machines and mechanisms in terms of their function, design, manufacture and life. Aspects covered will include: gear trains, fluid power systems, electric motors, bearings, lubrication and wear, linkages, engines and manufacturing processes.

**MECHENG 232 (1 Point)**

**Engineering Design II M 1**

Sound skills and principles of mechanical engineering design. Basics of engineering drawing including: orthographic, auxiliary and sectional views, proper dimensioning and tolerancing schemes, working and assembly drawings. Introduction to Computer-aided design (CAD): geometrical and solid modelling methods, feature-based design technology, parametric design, incorporation of designer's intent into CAD model, and generation of working and assembly drawings from the CAD tool.

*Restriction: MECHENG 231*

**MECHENG 233 (1 Point)**

**Engineering Design II M 2**

Design process as a problem-solving activity and the design of simple structural and machine elements, and systems. Design as a teamwork activity. Continued application of the computer-aided design techniques and tools.

*Restriction: MECHENG 231*

**MECHENG 242 (2 Points)**

**Mechanics of Materials**

Elastic tension and shear; bending of beams, stress-moment and moment-curvature relationships, beam deflections; buckling of simple struts; shear in beams; torsion in bars and circular shafts, stress-torque and torque-twist relationships; general analysis of plane stress, failure criteria, safety factor; elastic strain energy, fracture, yield.

**Part III****MECHENG 311 (2 Points)****Thermal Engineering**

Second Law of Thermodynamics, entropy, Cycles and applications. Heat transfer, heat exchangers.

**MECHENG 312 (2 Points)****Mechatronics 1**

Overview of elements of mechatronic systems. Fundamentals of electronic devices and circuits applied to mechanical systems. Topics covered include: electromagnetics, sensors and actuators, electrical and electronic technology, signal conditioning and processing, amplifiers and power supplies, and A/D and D/A conversion.

**MECHENG 313 (2 Points)****Real Time Software Design**

An introduction into the design of real time software, addressing issues such as software design and specification, software life cycle methods, operating systems, programming in assembly and high-level languages, and simulation and analysis tools.

**MECHENG 322 (2 Points)****Control Systems**

Modelling of systems dynamics: differential equations, Laplace transforms and transfer functions; linearization. Block diagrams and feedback. Time response and feedback, step response, steady-state errors and sensitivity, root-locus method. Frequency response: Bode and Nyquist methods, stability, gain and bandwidth. Controller design.

**MECHENG 324 (1 Point)****Machine Dynamics**

Kinematics of rigid bodies: velocity and acceleration diagrams, rotating reference frames. Kinetics of rigid bodies, gyroscopic forces and moments. Transient and forced vibrations of single and two-degree of freedom systems and applications.

**MECHENG 332 (1 Point)****Engineering Design III M 1**

Good practice and standard methods in mechanical engineering design. Conceptual and detailed design in projects involving machine elements, engineering sciences and engineering mechanics. The focus is on fundamentals of mechanical engineering design.

*Restriction: MECHENG 331*

**MECHENG 333 (1 Point)****Engineering Design III M 2**

Good practice and standard methods in mechanical engineering design. Conceptual and detailed design in projects involving machine elements, engineering sciences, engineering mechanics, and manufacturing. The focus is on applications and practices of mechanical engineering design.

*Restriction: MECHENG 331*

**MECHENG 341 (1 Point)****Strength of Materials**

States of stress and strain at a point, analysis of stress under conditions of plane stress and plane strain, strain rosettes, generalized stress-strain relationships for linearly-elastic isotropic materials. Introduction to theories of failure in ductile and brittle materials.

**MECHENG 342 (1 Point)****Manufacturing Processes**

An overview of manufacturing processes; metal-forming processes; macroscopic plasticity (yield, flow rules, plastic work, strain hardening, tensile instability); extrusion, wire drawing, forging, rolling; single point cutting theory; introduction to welding, polymer processing.

**MECHENG 343 (1 Point)****Wood Physics and Mechanics**

States of stress and strain at a point, analysis of stress under conditions of plane stress and plane strain, generalized stress-strain relationships for linearly elastic, anisotropic materials. Elastic properties and ultimate strength of wood and wood products. Elementary physical and mechanical properties of wood and their variations in relation to structure. Available only to students enrolled in the Wood and Woodfibre Composites option.

**MECHENG 344 (2 Points)****Mechanical Wood Processing**

Plant layout and design. Environmental facilities design. Mechanical processing of wood. Wood product manufacturing techniques. Available only to students enrolled in the Wood and Woodfibre Composites option.

**MECHENG 351 (1 Point)****Manufacturing Systems**

An introduction to the procedures and technology aspects of typical manufacturing systems; basic concepts of plant and work design; automation; design of products; planning, implementation and monitoring of production processes; project-based introduction to the tools and techniques applied by professional engineers in modern manufacturing plants.

**Part IV****MECHENG 401 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering 1**

Courses on special topics are to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 402 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering 2**

Courses on special topics are to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 403 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering 3**

Courses on special topics are to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 404 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering 4**

Courses on special topics are to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 405 (2 Points)****Mechatronics 2**

Modelling and analysis of electro-mechanical systems. Fundamentals of digital control and systems, embedded control using FPGA/CPLDs, and microprocessors applied to mechanical systems.

Software and hardware interfacing tools and techniques and emerging sensor and actuator selection and interfacing.

**MECHENG 406** (2 Points)  
**Mechatronics Design**

A range of projects that demonstrate the application and integration of the material taught in lecture courses to create practical intelligent products and manufacturing processes.

**MECHENG 407** (1 Point)  
**Mechatronics Project 1**

An innovative mechatronics project covering the design phases of problem analysis, specification, and conceptual design.

**MECHENG 408** (2 Points)  
**Mechatronics Project 2**

Continuation of the mechatronics project started in MECHENG 407 and covering the design phases of detailed design, prototype implementation and verification.

**MECHENG 409** (2 Points)  
**Industrial Automation**

Simple and advanced automation devices for use in manufacturing processes; their selection and incorporation into systems. Topics covered include: pneumatic, hydraulic and electrical actuators, industrial and service robots, continuous and sequential control, fieldbus, industrial Ethernet and Internet communications technologies.

**MECHENG 411** (2 Points)  
**Building Services**

Principles and practice of heating, ventilation, air conditioning and refrigeration (HVAC&R); psychrometry, heating/cooling loads. Mass transfer and air quality, refrigeration/heat pump systems, chillers, cooling towers, pumps, fans, valves. Networks of pipes and ducts.

**MECHENG 412** (2 Points)  
**Aerohydrodynamics**

The study of fluid mechanics relevant to external flows, eg, windturbines, yachts, aircraft or wind loadings on buildings, boundary layers, computational fluid dynamics.

**MECHENG 413** (2 Points)  
**Industrial Process and Energy Technology**

Industrial thermodynamics and energy conversion/efficiency, power cycles, availability and irreversibility, simple combustion analysis, mass transfer, transient conduction, boiling and condensation, radiation.

**MECHENG 421** (2 Points)  
**Dynamics, Vibrations and Spectral Analysis**

Vibrations – causes and effects; multiple degree of freedom and continuous systems, modal analysis, analytical, approximate and numerical methods. Analytical mechanics, receptance modelling. Random signals, spectral analysis, digital spectral analysis, aliasing, leakage, random vibrations. Vibrations instrumentation, measurement and testing, Vibration treatment. Applications.

**MECHENG 423** (2 Points)  
**Digital and Computer Control**

The theory behind the design and implementation of discrete controllers for the control of electro-

mechanical systems. Digital systems – discretisation, time and frequency domain characteristics, identification. Digital control – design, analysis and simulation. Real-time implementation – sensors, actuators, signal processing, software and microprocessors.

**MECHENG 425** (2 Points)  
**Acoustics for Engineers**

Wave equations, sources, directionality; behaviour of sound waves. Principles of active control for sound. The ear and hearing system. Measurement of sound fields. Philosophy of annoyance. Legal and Standards requirements. Sound fields in enclosures. Mass Law. General insulation equation. Materials as absorbers and reflectors, room acoustics, requirements in auditoria, sound system design principles and transducer performance.

**MECHENG 431A** (1 Point)  
**MECHENG 431B** (1 Point)

**Engineering Design 4M**

A range of design projects using advanced engineering methods covering different application areas.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 431 A and B*

**MECHENG 441** (2 Points)  
**Composite Materials**

Mechanics of composite materials; stress, strain, Poisson's ratio, rule of mixture, modified rule of mixture; ductile, brittle and viscoelastic behaviour; analysis and design of laminates, applications to sandwich composites; finite element techniques and their applications.

**MECHENG 443** (2 Points)  
**Manufacturing Technology**

Forming components from metals and plastics; economics of machining, selection of machining parameters; sheet forming; forming paths, tensile instability, forming limit diagram, deep drawing, bending, springback, residual stresses, stretch forming; sheet forming by fluid pressure for strain hardening and viscous materials; polymer processing – methods and analyses.

**MECHENG 444** (2 Points)  
**Chemical Wood Processing**

Wood drying and preservation. Chemical processing operations important to wood-based industry. Recent advances in chemical modification of wood.

**MECHENG 445** (2 Points)  
**Woodfibre Composites**

Introduction to wood-based composite materials, their processing, properties and design issues. Glued wood products. Woodfibre reinforced polymeric composites.

*Prerequisite: MECHENG 343*

**MECHENG 446** (2 Points)  
**Management for Wood Products Manufacturing**

Relationship between a manufacturing enterprise and the business environment. Business statistics and quality control. Quality improvement. Wood products marketing. Job costing and engineering economics. Customer research methods. Wood product development.

**MECHENG 451** (2 Points)  
**Technology Management**

An appreciation of the strategic systems and technology management aspects of manufacturing systems. Industry based projects that explore the design and optimization of manufacturing operations form a major part of the course.

**MECHENG 461A** (1.5 Points)

**MECHENG 461B** (1.5 Points)  
**Project**

A comprehensive investigation leading to an oral presentation, a display and a report on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 461 A and B*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**MECHENG 701** (2 Points)

**Studies in Mechanical Engineering 1**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 702** (2 Points)

**Studies in Mechanical Engineering 2**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 703** (1 Point)

**Studies in Mechanical Engineering 3**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 704** (1 Point)

**Studies in Mechanical Engineering 4**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 711** (2 Points)

**Computational Fluid Dynamics**

The application of computational methods to fluid dynamics and heat transfer. Finite volume and finite difference methods. Convergence and stability. Mesh generation and post-processing. Application of commercial computer programs to industrial problems.

**MECHENG 714** (2 Points)

**Wind Engineering**

The wind-loading chain – planetary boundary-layer flow, extreme winds, wind structure, wind loads, dynamic response, bluff body aerodynamics, vortex shedding, aero-elasticity, wind-tunnel testing, pedestrian level winds.

**MECHENG 716** (2 Points)

**Internal Combustion Engines**

Combustion processes; calculations for Diesel and Otto cycles; ideal, fuel-air and real cycles; use of alternative fuels as supplements or replacements.

**MECHENG 718** (2 Points)

**Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer**

The application of the principles of heat and mass transfer to geothermal technology. Fluid flow in reservoirs, wells and pipes, steam-water separators, heat exchangers, condensers, waste heat rejection, economics and environmental considerations. Case studies.

**MECHENG 721** (2 Points)

**Mechanical Control Systems**

A control problem of interest to both the student and the lecturer will be identified. Appropriate techniques are then sought for its solution.

**MECHENG 723** (2 Points)

**Simulation of Mechanical Systems**

Techniques for the dynamic modelling of mechanical systems, numerical simulation, and applications.

**MECHENG 725** (2 Points)

**Structural Acoustics**

Structural vibration at higher frequencies, vibration transmission and control. Wave motion and modal analysis. Structural intensity and statistical energy analysis.

**MECHENG 727** (2 Points)

**Active Noise and Vibration Control**

The principles of active control of noise and vibration with special reference to digital control systems. Implementation considerations, sensors and actuators.

**MECHENG 729** (2 Points)

**Machine Learning and Fuzzy Systems**

The problems of learning from experimental data (support vector machines and neural networks) and the problem of embedding human knowledge into mathematical expressions (fuzzy logic) are covered. Learning from noisy sparse data patterns (examples) will be put in the rigorous framework of the theory of approximations of multivariate functions.

**MECHENG 732** (2 Points)

**Computer Graphics and Visualization**

Fundamentals of computer graphics and visualization as related to applications in engineering, such as solid and surface modelling and computational fluid dynamics. Principles of graphics programming, user interface design and implementation. Students should be familiar with C, C++ or Java.

**MECHENG 741** (2 Points)

**Advanced Mechanics of Materials**

Analytical methods of stress analysis. Airy stress functions. Torsion of prismatic bars. Bending of flat plates. Membrane and discontinuity stresses in shells.

**MECHENG 742** (2 Points)

**Advanced Materials Manufacturing**

Polymer processing – injection moulding, extrusion, rotational moulding; composites manufacturing – basic flow mechanisms, thermo-mechanical modelling; kinematic and numerical analysis; resin transfer moulding, pultrusion, composite sheet forming – theory and practice.

**MECHENG 751** (2 Points)

**Advanced Manufacturing Technology**

A study of computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM) appropriate to the needs of New Zealand industry. The course covers selected topics that deal with the integrated use of CAD/CAPP/CAM, robots, workstations, machine tools, materials handling and control systems.

**MECHENG 753** (2 Points)

**Manufacturing Information Systems**

Deals with the development of manufacturing management and information systems through the use of planning, modelling, simulation, communications and artificial intelligence computing techniques.

**MECHENG 758 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Engineering Management 1**

Distance learning graduate course for students previously or currently employed. Students can select a specific topic from those offered in the area of engineering management in consultation with the programme coordinator. Students must be enrolled in the MEMgt programme.

**MECHENG 759 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Engineering Management 2**

Distance learning graduate course for students previously or currently employed. Students can select a specific topic from those offered in the area of engineering management in consultation with the programme coordinator. Students must be enrolled in the MEMgt programme.

**MECHENG 760 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Technology Management 1**

Distance learning graduate course for students previously or currently employed. Students can select a specific topic from those offered in the area of technology management in consultation with the programme coordinator. Students must be enrolled in the MEMgt programme.

**MECHENG 761 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Technology Management 2**

Distance learning graduate course for students previously or currently employed. Students can select a specific topic from those offered in the area of technology management in consultation with the programme coordinator. Students must be enrolled in the MEMgt programme.

**MECHENG 787 (2 Points)**

**MECHENG 787A (1 Point)**

**MECHENG 787B (1 Point)**

**Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 787 A and B, or MECHENG 787*

**MECHENG 788A (2 Points)**

**MECHENG 788B (2 Points)**

**Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 788 A and B*

**MECHENG 789 (4 Points)**

**MECHENG 789A (2 Points)**

**MECHENG 789B (2 Points)**

**Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 789 A and B, or MECHENG 789*

**MECHENG 790 (1 Point)**

**ME Research Proposal (Mechanical)**

**MECHENG 796A (7 Points)**

**MECHENG 796B (7 Points)**

**ME Thesis (Mechanical)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 796 A and B*

---

## Software Engineering

---

### Part II

**SOFTENG 206A (1 Point)**

**SOFTENG 206B (1 Point)**

**Engineering Design 2**

Project work over two semesters. Software specifications, design work, development, process improvements testing, and project specifications.

*To complete this course students must enrol in SOFTENG 206 A and B*

**SOFTENG 211 (2 Points)**

**Software Engineering Theory**

Discrete mathematics. Relations and functions. Graphs and trees. Logic. Principles of counting. Mathematical induction and recursion. Algorithms. Probability and statistics. Program correctness.

**SOFTENG 250 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Software Engineering**

Introduction to Software Engineering. Software construction. Introduction to testing, debugging and performance monitoring. Abstract data types, classes and objects. Data structures and their representation as objects. Sorting and searching algorithms. Recursive structure and behaviour. Lists and trees.

**SOFTENG 251 (2 Points)**

**Software Engineering 1**

The software development process from specification to quality assurance and documentation. Issues in the design and construction of large programs using an object-oriented programming approach. An introduction to object-oriented analysis. Reliability and program testing.

**SOFTENG 252 (2 Points)**

**Computer Organization**

The organization of a computer. Processors, registers, memory and peripherals. Binary representation of instructions and textual and numerical data. The interface between hardware and software. Multi-user operating systems. Assembly language programming. Security and the Internet.

**SOFTENG 253 (2 Points)**

**Algorithms**

Algorithms and algorithm design. Trade-offs and choice of an algorithm. Formal analysis of algorithms. Algorithms and abstract data types. Engineering, measuring and improving the performance of software systems. Introduction to formal language theory and models.

---

### Part III

**SOFTENG 306A (1 Point)**

**SOFTENG 306B (1 Point)**

**Engineering Design 3**

Large group projects over two semesters. Projects will cover software applications and documentation, testing, working in team environments, project presentation, quality management and assurance, applications of software tools.

*To complete course students must enrol in SOFTENG 306 A and B*

**SOFTENG 325 (2 Points)**  
**Software Architecture**

Database systems. Client-server and other distributed systems. Taxonomy of software architectures. Component-based programming. User interfaces. Software/hardware specification for complex tasks.

**SOFTENG 350 (2 Points)**  
**Software Engineering 2**

Software life cycle models. Project management, teamwork and reviews, configuration management. Interviewing and data gathering techniques, analysis and design, modelling methods.

**SOFTENG 363 (2 Points)**  
**Computer Architecture**

The architecture of computer hardware and firmware. Digital logic design. Processor design and implementation. Pipelining. Performance evaluation. Types of computer architectures. Case studies. Impact of programming languages on computer architecture. Translation, instruction formats and microprogramming. Virtual memory and memory hierarchies. Buses, interrupts and interfacing. Engineering computer systems.

**SOFTENG 364 (2 Points)**  
**Computer Networks**

Local area networks and IEEE standards. Wide area networks and the Internet. Data communications; representation and transmission. Security, reliability and error correction. The seven layers of the OSI model. Data link layer and transport protocols. Introduction to TCP/IP, ISDN and Frame Relay. Software engineering and networks.

**SOFTENG 370 (2 Points)**  
**Operating Systems**

History of operating systems. Multi-user systems. Scheduling. Concurrent processes, threads and synchronization. Memory allocation and virtual memory. Managing files, disks and other peripherals. Security, protection and archiving. Engineering distributed systems; location, migration and replication transparency. Real-time programming and embedded systems.

---

**Part IV**

**SOFTENG 401A (1.5 Points)**  
**SOFTENG 401B (1.5 Points)**

**Project in Software Engineering**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a Software Engineering topic assigned by the Head of Department.

*To complete course students must enrol in SOFTENG 401 A and B*

**SOFTENG 450 (2 Points)**  
**Software Engineering 3**

Software process models; an introduction to formal methods, software quality assurance, estimation, metrics; document engineering and traceability; software maintenance; software tools and their

evaluation; reuse; human-computer interaction, embedded systems, concurrency and correctness; CASE software and its applications.

**SOFTENG 461 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Software Engineering 1**

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Director of Software Engineering.

**SOFTENG 462 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Software Engineering 2**

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Director of Software Engineering.

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**SOFTENG 701 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Software Engineering Development Methods**

Advanced studies in methods and techniques for developing complex software systems including topics in component based technologies, software engineering environments, tool construction, software architectures.

**SOFTENG 702 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Systems Design**

Advanced studies in the design of complex software systems and the technologies used including the design of user interfaces, middleware and databases.

**SOFTENG 710 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Software Engineering 1**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Director of Software Engineering.

**SOFTENG 711 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Software Engineering 2**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Director of Software Engineering.

**SOFTENG 790 (1 Point)**  
**ME Research Proposal (Software Engineering)**

**SOFTENG 796A (7 Points)**  
**SOFTENG 796B (7 Points)**

**ME Thesis (Software Engineering)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the Director of Software Engineering.

*To complete this course students must enrol in SOFTENG 796 A and B*

---

**Faculty of Law**

---

**Law**

**Stage 1**

**LAW 101A (1 Point)**  
**LAW 101B (1 Point)**

**The Legal System**

An introduction to theories of the nature, functions and origins of law and legal systems; the New Zealand legal system, including its sources of law, the nature of its courts and selected other legal institutions, and its operation in historical and contemporary New Zealand; Maori concepts of law and justice and their relationship to the New Zealand legal system; legal reasoning including both statutory interpretation and case-law reasoning.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 101 A and B*

**Stage II**

LAW 201A (1.5 Points)  
LAW 201B (1.5 Points)

**Criminal Law**

An introduction to the principles and practice of New Zealand criminal law; an analysis of doctrines of liability including defences to criminal charges; a study in detail of selected indictable and summary offences; and a critical survey of the chief elements of procedure relating to offences chargeable indictably or summarily. (Apart from the rules concerning burden of proof, no detailed study is made in this course of the law of evidence.)

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 201 A and B

LAW 211A (1.5 Points)  
LAW 211B (1.5 Points)

**Public Law**

The principles and workings of the New Zealand constitution; the powers, privileges and immunities of the three branches of government; the exercise and control of public power; and the relationship between the individual and the State (including the position of Maori under the Treaty of Waitangi).

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 211 A and B

LAW 221A (0.5 Points)  
LAW 221B (0.5 Points)

**Legal Research and Writing 1A**

The research and writing requirements, as determined by the Dean of the Faculty of Law, associated with courses LAW 201, 211.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 221 A and B

LAW 231A (1.5 Points)  
LAW 231B (1.5 Points)

**Law of Torts**

The general principles of civil liability for non-consensual wrongs. The principles of liability applying to selected torts, including the intentional torts such as: assault, battery, false imprisonment, intentionally inflicting emotional distress, trespass to land, wrongs to goods, negligence, strict liability, nuisance and defamation. The law relating to compensation for personal injury.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 231 A and B

LAW 241A (1.5 Points)  
LAW 241B (1.5 Points)

**Law of Contract**

The general principles of contract law including: the formation of contracts at common law, New Zealand contract legislation, breach of contract, and remedies for breach of contract. An introduction to the general principles of agency.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 241 A and B

LAW 251A (0.5 Points)  
LAW 251B (0.5 Points)

**Legal Research and Writing 1B**

The research and writing requirements, as determined by the Dean of Faculty of Law, associated with courses LAW 231, 241.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 251 A and B

**Stage III**

LAW 301A (1 Point)  
LAW 301B (1 Point)

**Land Law**

A study of the history and principles of land law including: estates and interests in land, the effect of registration and indefeasibility of title, leasehold estates, easements and profits, mortgages, and concurrent interests in land, and covenants affecting freehold land.

Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 301 A and B

LAW 306A (1 Point)  
LAW 306B (1 Point)

**Equity**

A study of the central principles and remedies of equity including: the fiduciary principle, relationships of confidence, unconscionable conduct, undue influence, estoppel, assignments, trusts (express, resulting and constructive), charities, tracing, third-party liability, the assignment in equity of choses in action, and priorities. Basic principles of the law of succession and of the administration of estates.

Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 306 A and B

LAW 311 (1 Point)

**Law of Personal Property**

Introduction to the concepts and legal rights associated with personal property, covering: possessory rights and relationships, including bailment, reservation of title and security interests in goods, and principles relevant to the transfer and acquisition of personal property.

LAW 316A (1 Point)  
LAW 316B (1 Point)

**Jurisprudence**

An introduction to the major schools of jurisprudence, the major contemporary disputes in jurisprudence and the major perspectives on law current in contemporary thought.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 316 A and B

LAW 341 (2 Points)

**Air and Space Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of international and municipal law regulating the use of airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, and persons on board such craft; the rights and obligations of states, operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft; and the role of international and regional organizations in the use of airspace and outer space.

LAW 342A (1 Point)  
LAW 342B (1 Point)

**Human Rights**

The legal modes for protection of human rights, including the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990 and the Human Rights Act 1993, freedom of expression and religion, criminal procedural rights, equality, and the prohibited grounds of discrimination.

Restriction: LAW 452

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 342 A and B

- LAW 343** (2 Points)  
**Commercial Equity and Restitution**  
 A study of ways in which the law of equity and the law of restitution impact upon commercial practices and transactions including: the fiduciary principle, the doctrine of unconscionability, the concepts of undue influence and duress, the use of equitable doctrines in insolvency and in trusts in commercial settings, recovery of mistaken payments, restitution for services given, restitution and equitable remedies, and restitution against public authorities.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 306*
- LAW 344** (2 Points)
- LAW 344A** (1 Point)  
**LAW 344B** (1 Point)  
**Consumer Law**  
 Study of the protection of consumers in sales and credit transactions including the examination of existing legislation (eg, Consumer Guarantees Act, Fair Trading Act, Credit Contracts Act) and proposals for reform.  
*Corequisite: LAW 415*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 344 A and B, or LAW 344*
- LAW 345** (2 Points)  
**Corporation Finance**  
 Problems in corporate finance law selected from the following: issues relating to the raising of equity and debt capital (including the securing of debt capital and the Securities Act 1978), the control of company distributions, company reconstructions, and the regulation of banking and finance institutions.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 417*
- LAW 346A** (1 Point)  
**LAW 346B** (1 Point)  
**Criminal Law and Policy**  
 An in-depth analysis of current issues in substantive and procedural criminal law including: the role and function of forensic experts, developments in criminal law, criminal justice theory, and criminal law reform.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 346 A and B*
- LAW 347** (2 Points)  
**Criminal Procedure**  
 A consideration of selected topics in the law of criminal procedure including: bail, right to counsel, confessions, the exclusion of illegally obtained evidence, search and seizure and the right to silence. Detailed study of the procedural guarantees of the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990.
- LAW 348** (2 Points)  
**Economic Regulation**  
 Study of the legal issues involved in regulating economic behaviour including: theories of regulation, forms of social and economic regulation, competition law, enforcement, and the effectiveness and future of regulation.
- LAW 349** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Law**  
 An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment including: dimensions of the global environmental crisis, principles and selected areas of international environmental law, environmental law in a comparative perspective, and the New Zealand Resource Management Act 1991.  
*Restriction: LAW 450*
- LAW 350** (2 Points)  
**Equality and Anti-discrimination Law**  
 A study of the nature of equality; discrimination and affirmative action and the justification for law prohibiting discrimination on certain grounds; analysis of statutory, constitutional and common law remedies for discrimination; and interaction between anti-discrimination law and rights to freedom of speech, association and religion.
- LAW 351** (2 Points)  
**Law and Computers**  
 Advanced studies in respect of information systems in legal practice and research and the impact of the law on information technology, including computer crimes, torts, intellectual property, evidence, privacy, and assistance given to lawyers by information retrieval, office management, and litigation support systems.
- LAW 352** (2 Points)  
**Law and Society**  
 A study of selected aspects of the interrelation of legal processes and social change; legislation, courts and other legal institutions, as they influence and are affected by social change; and the role of law in the modern state.
- LAW 353** (2 Points)  
**Law of International Business Transactions**  
 The law of international sales of goods (focusing on the 1980 Vienna Convention) including the carriage of goods and the financing of these transactions through the use of documentary credits and other mechanisms; and the law regulating the provision of international services and trade, including government regulation of international trade.
- LAW 354** (2 Points)  
**Law of Landlord and Tenant**  
 Studies in the law of landlord and tenant, including both commercial and residential tenancies.
- LAW 355** (2 Points)  
**Law of Secured Credit**  
 Aspects of the law relating to the taking of interests in property (including intellectual property) for securing debt repayment and the performance of other personal obligations selected from: (i) the range of possessory and non-possessory securities; (ii) registration regimes relating thereto; and (iii) options for law reform.
- LAW 356** (2 Points)  
**Legal History**  
 Historical analysis of problems currently facing the law in Aotearoa New Zealand with reference to both English sources and indigenous developments.
- LAW 357** (2 Points)  
**Legal Problems of the European Union**  
 The objectives, structures, functions and relationships of the European Union; economic, social, and environmental implications of the common market and the political union, external relations of the Union, and current trends in European and other regional arrangements.

- LAW 358** (2 Points)  
**Local Government Law**  
A study of the legal structure, powers and service delivery functions of local government selected from: the history of local government, reorganization schemes, powers and administrative principles, civil liability, elections, council procedures, staff employment, works contracts, financial accountability, land valuation, rating systems, environmental functions, bylaws and the operation of related public bodies (eg. education and health authorities).  
*Restriction: LAW 443*
- LAW 359** (2 Points)  
**Maori Land Law**  
Customary Maori land tenure and legal issues arising under Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993.  
*Restriction: LAW 444*
- LAW 360** (2 Points)  
**Maritime Law**  
A study of the law governing ships including: the ownership of and property in ships, charter parties, ship mortgages, law of carriage, shipboard crimes and torts, the law of collision, salvage, wrecks, the admiralty jurisdiction of the courts, national shipping laws, the international regulatory framework, the conflict of laws rules applicable to admiralty disputes and marine insurance.
- LAW 361A** (1 Point)  
**LAW 361B** (1 Point)  
**Media Law**  
Topics on the law governing the media and journalists including: defamation, contempt of court, breach of confidence, privacy, the broadcasting legislation, censorship and copyright.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 361 A and B*
- LAW 362** (2 Points)  
**Medico-legal Problems**  
Selected studies in the relationship between law and medicine including: the purchase and provision of health services, the relationship between health providers and consumers, professional accountability, codes of rights, legal and ethical issues at the start and end of life, and biomedical research.  
*Restriction: LAW 427*
- LAW 363** (2 Points)  
**Penology**  
A general analysis of theory and practice concerning the punishment and treatment of offenders including: sentencing theory and practice, the role of prisons and other carceral institutions, the disposition and treatment of inmates with special needs, and law reform.  
*Restriction: LAW 423*
- LAW 364** (2 Points)  
**Problems in Legal Philosophy**  
A detailed study of jurisprudential problems selected from: the nature of law, the concept of justice, the relation of law and morality, legal reasoning, the purpose of law or of central institutions of the law, and the character of particular legal concepts central to the law.
- LAW 365** (2 Points)  
**Registration of Title to Land**  
Studies in the legal problems of the Torrens system of title registration.
- LAW 366** (2 Points)  
**Restitution**  
Advanced studies in the law of restitution including: the concept of unjust enrichment, applications at law and equity of restitutionary principle to the recovery of value following a flawed or conditioned transfer, recovery outside contract for labour expended on another's behalf, and stripping wrong-doers of profits.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 231, 241*  
*Corequisite: LAW 306 A and B, 311*  
*Restriction: LAW 451*
- LAW 367** (2 Points)  
**Selected Topics in Comparative Law**  
Analysis of selected topics to compare New Zealand law and common law with other legal systems such as civil law, and indigenous and religious legal systems.
- LAW 368** (2 Points)  
**LAW 368A** (1 Point)  
**LAW 368B** (1 Point)  
**Studies in Public Law**  
Advanced studies in respect of the principles and workings of the New Zealand constitution, the powers, privileges, and immunities of the three branches of government, the exercise and control of government power, and the relationship between the individual and the state (including the position of Maori under the Treaty of Waitangi).  
*Restriction: LAW 403, 404*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 368 A and B, or LAW 368*
- LAW 369** (2 Points)  
**Studies in Torts**  
A study of policy issues in the law of tort, developments in the law of negligence, the economic torts, breach of statutory duty, invasion of privacy, informed consent, defences, and remedies.
- LAW 370** (2 Points)  
**The Law Relating to Damages**  
The principles governing damages in contract and tort, and for statutory breach.  
*Restriction: LAW 449*
- LAW 371** (2 Points)  
**The Legal Regulation of Business Activity**  
Study of the regulation of business practices by government, analysing the scope of such control, the purposes of such control and the dangers associated with it. Discussion of common law and legislative regulation of trade and commerce, the law of restraint of trade and monopolies, and restrictive trade practices.
- LAW 372** (2 Points)  
**United Nations Law and Problems of World Order**  
Critical evaluation of the past, present, and future roles of the United Nations in a rapidly changing world order, detailed analysis of the United Nations Charter, and an introduction to major international institutions.
- LAW 383A** (1 Point)  
**LAW 383B** (1 Point)  
**Studies in Contract Law**

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

Advanced studies of selected topics in contract law (and related areas), which may include consideration of the history of contract law, various jurisprudential and/or comparative approaches to contract law, various doctrines of contract law, the law of remedies, and statutory reform of contract law.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 383 A and B

**LAW 384A** (1 Point)

**LAW 384B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic: Interpretation of Statutes**

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 384 A and B

**LAW 385** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: International Human Rights Law**

Issues in international human rights law including the substantive content of selected rights, the historical and political context of their international protection, the extent to which rights derived from international instruments are cognisable in domestic courts, and the legal machinery for the promotion and enforcement of human rights.

**LAW 386** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 387** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 388** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 389** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 390** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 391** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 392** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 393** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 399** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

To be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Law.

**Stage IV**

**LAW 402** (2 Points)

**Administrative Law**

A study of the general principles of judicial review of administrative action, including the ultra vires principle, the substantive and procedural restraints on the exercise of public power, and the remedies available for breach of these principles.

*Prerequisite: LAW 211*

**LAW 403** (2 Points)

**Advanced Administrative Law**

Advanced study of selected topics in administrative law with particular emphasis on recent developments in the field and consideration of New Zealand law and practice from a comparative common law perspective.

*Prerequisite: LAW 402*

*Restriction: LAW 368*

**LAW 404**

(2 Points)

**Advanced Constitutional Law**

Studies in the law relating to the structure and functioning of the government system, including the rules which regulate relations between the different branches of government, and between the different branches of government and the individual.

*Prerequisite: LAW 211, 402*

*Restriction: LAW 368*

**LAW 405**

(2 Points)

**Advanced Contract**

An in-depth examination of various perspectives on the nature of contractual rights and obligations that may include study of the morality or utility of contract and of various doctrines of contract law.

*Prerequisite: LAW 241*

**LAW 406**

(2 Points)

**Advanced Criminal Law**

An in-depth examination of the criminal trial and certain aspects of the sentencing process; the limits of the adversarial process as a mechanism for advancing justice; the role of the Crown, the trial judge, defence counsel and important witnesses. Topics include: the role of the Crown; the abuse of process doctrine; the trial judge's ability to act as a party; ethical obligations of the defence, victims rights at trial and at sentencing; complainants in sexual assault trials; child witnesses.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201*

*Corequisite: LAW 425*

**LAW 407**

(2 Points)

**Advanced Family Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of family law.

*Prerequisite: LAW 426*

**LAW 408**

(2 Points)

**Advanced International Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of the law of nations; a critical analysis of existing and developing international law, and consideration of the relationship between law, economics, politics and international diplomacy.

*Prerequisite: LAW 435*

**LAW 409**

(2 Points)

**Advanced Taxation**

A more advanced study of tax law covering topics such as tax history; tax theory; the taxation of companies; dividends; imputation; groups; losses; qualifying companies; trusts; withholding obligations; accruals; avoidance; international tax; profit reduction techniques; transfer pricing; controlled foreign corporations (CFCs); foreign investment funds (FIFs); tax treaties.

*Prerequisite: LAW 429*

*Restriction: COMLAW 311*

**LAW 410**

(2 Points)

**Advocacy**

An introduction to the general principles of trial and appellate advocacy in civil and criminal cases, the study of trial preparation and performance with a focus on practical instruction (including demonstrations and exercises which are videotaped and critiqued) and the study of tactical and ethical issues facing litigators.

*Prerequisite: LAW 301, 306*

*Restriction: LAW 347*

- LAW 411 (2 Points)**  
**Agency and Partnership**  
 A study of the law of principal and agent, including the legal relationships between: (i) principals and third parties as created or altered by agents; (ii) agents and third parties; and (iii) principal and agent inter se. An introduction to the principles of partnership.  
*Corequisite: LAW 241 A and B*
- LAW 412 (2 Points)**  
**Air and Space Law**  
 The principles of international and municipal law regulating the use of airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, and persons on board such craft, and the rights and obligations of states, operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft. The role of international and regional organizations in the settlement of international disputes arising out of the use of airspace and outer space.
- LAW 413 (2 Points)**  
**Civil Procedure**  
 Advanced studies in procedure in civil actions and other civil proceedings with reference to the evolution and history of the present form of civil action, pleadings, discovery and other pre-trial devices; joinder of parties; jurisdiction (including equitable jurisdiction); and appellate procedure.  
*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*
- LAW 414 (2 Points)**  
**Commercial Arbitration and Dispute Resolution**  
 The law and procedure relating to the settlement of domestic and international commercial disputes including: a comparison of the primary dispute resolution processes, namely negotiation, litigation/adjudication, arbitration and mediation; detailed study of arbitration, including appointment, hearings, enforcement, judicial review, court ordered arbitration and international commercial arbitration, and the utility and working of mediation in commercial cases.  
*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*
- LAW 415 (2 Points)**  
**Commercial Law**  
 An introduction to selected areas of business law, in particular relating to the sale of goods and personal property securities, but including aspects of consumer laws and the impact of new business methods.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 241*
- LAW 416 (2 Points)**  
**Company Finance**  
 Selected problems in company finance law including: issues relating to the formation of contracts with companies for the raising of equity and debt capital, issues relating to choice of method in the raising of capital, aspects of secured debt capital, and an introductory analysis of the Securities Act 1978.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 417*
- LAW 417 (2 Points)**  
**Company Law**  
 The law relating to companies incorporated under the Companies Act 1993 including: the nature of corporate personality, pre-incorporation contracts, the rights and liabilities of promoters, an introduction to the raising of debt and equity capital and the regulation of the securities market, the rights of shareholders, and the duties of directors.  
*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*
- LAW 418 (2 Points)**  
**Comparative Law**  
 Relationship of the common law system to other contemporary legal systems of the world with particular reference to the development of civil law on the continent of Europe, the study of indigenous and religious legal systems, and the international comparison of individual legal problems such as gender issues, environmental issues and human rights.
- LAW 419 (2 Points)**  
**Competition Law**  
 A study of the principles of competition law in New Zealand including the effect on competition law of the CER Agreement with Australia. Comparison with the competition laws of other countries including the United States, the European Union and Australia.
- LAW 420 (2 Points)**  
**Conflict of Laws**  
 An introduction to private international law (ie, the body of law dealing with international civil or commercial issues or disputes that are not governed by substantive conventions) including: a study of the jurisdiction of the New Zealand courts, recognition and enforcement of foreign judgments and decrees, and choice of the governing legal system.  
*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*
- LAW 421 (2 Points)**  
**Contemporary Tiriti/Treaty Issues**  
 Contemporary legal issues arising under Te Tiriti o Waitangi.
- LAW 422 (2 Points)**  
**Creditors' Remedies - Liquidation of Company**  
 A study of the remedies available to creditors prior to judgment and the methods for the enforcement of a judgment, a review of the Insolvency Act and the liquidation provisions of the Companies Act, and insolvency reform in other jurisdictions.
- LAW 423 (2 Points)**  
**Criminology**  
 The study of major theories of criminology; the definition, nature and causes of criminal behaviour; the administration of criminal justice; and the interrelation of specific crimes and the criminal justice system.  
*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*  
*Restriction: LAW 363*
- LAW 424 (2 Points)**  
**European Union Law**  
 The law related to the European Union and its institutional, economic and social structure as well as the general economic and political implications of the present status of the European Union.
- LAW 425 (2 Points)**  
**Evidence**  
 An overview of the rules related to the presentation of proof in New Zealand courts (civil and criminal) and tribunals, including the rules relating to hearsay, opinion evidence, privilege, examination of witnesses, confessions and the exclusion of illegally obtained evidence.  
*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*
- LAW 426 (2 Points)**  
**Family Law**

The law relating to cohabitation and marriage, the establishment of parenthood, and the relationship between parent and child. Study of the inter-relationship between the state, the family and child protection and support.

**LAW 427 (2 Points)**

**Health Care Law**

An introduction to the legal and ethical issues related to health care delivery including: the purchase and provision of health services, the relationship between health providers and consumers, professional accountability, codes of rights, legal and ethical issues at the start and end of life, and biomedical research.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

*Restriction: LAW 362*

**LAW 428 (2 Points)**

**Immigration and Refugee Law**

A consideration of the basic features of the Immigration Act 1987 with emphasis on the role of administrative law in the immigration field, an introduction to the law of refugee status, and the jurisprudence of the New Zealand Refugee Status Appeals Authority.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 429 (2 Points)**

**Taxation**

A general introduction to tax law including: aspects of tax policy; the structure of the tax system; residence; source; the meaning of income; the deductibility of expenditure; the distinction between capital and revenue; depreciation; avoidance; disputes and rulings; GST.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 430 (2 Points)**

**Employment Law**

A study of the common law individual contract of employment and the mutual duties implied therein; the statutory system and the collective agreement under the Employment Relations Act and its predecessors; the impact on industrial law of specific statutory reforms such as the Human Rights Act, the Health and Safety in Employment Act, and the Parental Leave legislation; and analysis of strikes and lockouts, both as common law torts and as events subject to statutory control.

*Prerequisite: LAW 231, 241*

**LAW 431 (2 Points)**

**Insurance Law**

Introduction to the principles and practice of the law of insurance and the law regulating insurers and insurance intermediaries. Studies of selected branches of insurance including indemnity, liability, life and marine.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 432 (2 Points)**

**Intellectual Property**

Study of the laws which protect the products of intellectual endeavour including: passing-off (and section 9 Fair Trading Act), the Trade Marks Act, the Copyright Act, the action for 'breach of confidence', the Designs Act and the Patents Act.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 433 (2 Points)**

**International Environmental Law**

Concepts, principles, customs, and treaties of international law as related to the protection of the global environment including: prevention of pollution, protection of the marine environment, ozone layer protection, climate change, biodiversity, the UNCED process and the legal framework for sustainable development.

**LAW 434 (2 Points)**

**International Institutions**

The principles of international law as they relate to the structure and functioning of international institutions and regional relationships; the relationship of international and regional institutions with states, non-governmental organizations, and individuals, and the role of international and regional institutions in the settlement of international disputes.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II and LAW 435*

*Restriction: LAW 372*

**LAW 435 (2 Points)**

**International Law**

An introduction to the basic principles and nature of public international law and its role in contemporary society including an overview of the current legal framework, the sources of international law, the law of treaties, issues surrounding international personality, international dispute resolution and the use of force.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 436 (2 Points)**

**International Trade**

Study of the law relating to international trade and transnational business transactions including: contracts of sale, carriage and insurance, conflicts of laws and the law and policy surrounding the regulation of international trade.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 437 (2 Points)**

**Women and the Law**

A study of the dual role of law in addressing and maintaining gender inequality, feminist thought on the gendered nature of law, and specific legal issues relevant to the status and interests of women in society.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*

**LAW 438 (2 Points)**

**Law and Information Technology**

An introduction to the use of information systems in legal practice and research and the impact of the law on information technology including: computer crimes, torts, intellectual property, evidence, privacy, and the assistance given to lawyers by information retrieval, office management and litigation support systems.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*

**LAW 440 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Legal Ethics**

An advanced study of ethical issues which are either peculiar to, or particularly common in, legal practice, including detailed examination of both theoretical perspectives relevant to professional and legal ethics and applied questions about, for instance, the duty of zealous advocacy, conflict of interest, confidentiality, alternative dispute resolution programmes, legal aid and the lawyer's role in the adversary system.

- LAW 441 (2 Points)**  
**Legal History**  
 Historical analysis of problems currently facing the law in Aotearoa New Zealand with reference to both English sources and indigenous developments.
- LAW 442 (2 Points)**  
**Legislative Change**  
 Study of the relative effectiveness of different forms of regulatory intervention with particular reference to legislative intervention, the form and substance of legislation, judicial and other approaches to its interpretation, the process of legislative change, and the proper role for subordinate legislation.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 402*
- LAW 443 (2 Points)**  
**Local Government Law**  
 An introduction to the law relating to the structure, powers, and service delivery functions of local government including: reorganization schemes, powers and administrative principles, civil liability, elections, council procedures, staff employment, works contracts, financial accountability, land valuation, rating systems, environmental functions and bylaws. Study of related public bodies (such as education and health authorities).  
*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*  
*Restriction: LAW 358*
- LAW 444 (2 Points)**  
**Maori Land Law**  
 Customary Maori land tenure and legal issues arising under Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993.  
*Corequisite: LAW 301*  
*Restriction: LAW 359*
- LAW 445 (2 Points)**  
**Law of Family Property**  
 Advanced study of the law of property in family contexts, including trusts, succession, and matrimonial property.  
*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*
- LAW 446 (2 Points)**  
**Mining and Natural Resources Law**  
 An examination of the common law principles, legislation, and administrative controls in New Zealand relating to ownership of, prospecting for, extraction and use of, minerals (including oil and gas), alternative energy resources, forestry and fisheries resources.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*  
*Corequisite: LAW 301*
- LAW 447 (2 Points)**  
**Negotiation, Mediation and Dispute Resolution**  
 An introduction to negotiation, mediation and dispute resolution covering: (i) a conceptual study of these processes including the study of the function of law, roles of lawyer, ethics, analysis, cultural and socio-economic factors; and (ii) a practical study of these processes including criteria for choosing resolution methods, techniques, attitudes, problem solving strategies, communication techniques, and effectiveness.
- LAW 448 (2 Points)**  
**Psychiatry and the Law**  
 A general introduction to the formal relationship between psychiatry and law; the legal processes affecting compulsory assessment and treatment, including consideration of constitutional and cultural issues, patients rights and the review process; and the law and practice concerning forensic patients.
- LAW 449 (2 Points)**  
**Remedies**  
 Advanced study of civil remedies for breach of civil obligations including those arising both at common law and under statute, discretionary relief in equity and under statutes, and the assessment of damages and compensation.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 231, 241, 306*  
*Restriction: LAW 370*
- LAW 450 (2 Points)**  
**Resource Management Law**  
 An introduction to the law relating to resource management and environmental regulation including: evolution of the sustainable management concept, consideration of national objectives, application of the Treaty of Waitangi, national standards, coastal policies, regional statements and plans, district plans, designations, heritage and conservation powers, resource consent procedures, and remedial powers and enforcement procedures.  
*Restriction: LAW 349, 457*
- LAW 451 (2 Points)**  
**Restitution**  
 A study of the general principles of the law of restitution, including an analysis of the concept of unjust enrichment, selected applications of restitutionary principle for the recovery of value upon a flawed or conditioned transfer, recovery outside contract for labour expended on another's behalf, and stripping wrong-doers of profits.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 231, 241, 306, 311*  
*Restriction: LAW 366*
- LAW 452 (2 Points)**  
**Rights and Freedoms**  
 The legal modes for protection of civil rights including study of the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990, the Human Rights Act 1993, freedom of speech and religion, criminal procedural rights, equality, and the prohibited grounds of discrimination.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 211*  
*Restriction: LAW 342*
- LAW 453 (2 Points)**  
**Roman Law**  
 The significance of Roman Law as an enduring legacy from the ancient world to the modern: a study of the sources and historical development of Roman law; and a study of selected aspects of Roman law including the law of actions (procedure), the law of obligations (contract and delict), family and succession law, and criminal law.
- LAW 454 (2 Points)**  
**Vendor and Purchaser**  
 A study of the law relating to contracts for the sale and purchase of land, including the formation of the contract, the application of relevant statutes, the basic terms of such contracts and their significance, matters of title, settlement and completion, and remedies for breach.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 241, 301*
- LAW 455 (2 Points)**  
**Welfare Law**

A study of the law relating to income maintenance, physical and mental disability, housing and homelessness, and access to legal and related services.

**LAW 456 (2 Points)**  
**Supervised Research**

A research paper, approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law, written under the supervision of a teacher in the Faculty of Law.

**LAW 457 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Law for Non-lawyers**

Contemporary international and New Zealand environmental issues, policy and law; obligations of central and local governments under the Resource Management Act 1991; law and Maori; legal issues concerning sustainable management, national and coastal policy statements, regional and district plans preparation and content, resource consents, enforcement; heritage protection; the law concerning other activities affecting the environment, including hazardous and toxic substances; mining.

*Restriction: LAW 450*

**LAW 458 (1 Point)**  
**Legal Ethics**

A study of legal ethics and professional responsibility including: an introduction to ethical analysis which examines various theories of ethics; the applicability of ethical analysis to legal practice; the concept of a profession and the ethical and professional duties of practitioners (which will include, amongst other topics, conflicts of interest, confidentiality, duties to the court, duties of loyalty and fidelity); the wider responsibilities of lawyers in the community.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*

**LAW 459 (2 Points)**  
**Maritime Law**

An introduction to shipping law, including: ownership and proprietary interests in ships, ship registration, charter parties, ship mortgages, shipboard crimes and torts, the law of collisions, salvage and wrecks, the admiralty jurisdiction, enforcement of maritime liens and other maritime claims, national shipping law and policy, the international regulatory framework, and conflict of laws issues applicable to maritime disputes.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*

**LAW 480 (2 Points)**  
**Law and Policy**

An introduction to different theoretical perspectives on the role of the State and the policy-making process; the policy-making process and the techniques for analysing policy; the process, substance and effects of key policy changes since 1984.

**LAW 481 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Equitable Remedies**

**LAW 482 (2 Points)**  
**Criminal Procedure**

The rules governing the conduct of criminal trials and the investigation of crime. Changes to criminal procedure brought about by judicial interpretation of the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990. Selected topics which may include: search and seizure, name suppression, right to counsel, exclusion of evidence, bail, juries, trial delay.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*

**LAW 483 (2 Points)**  
**Privacy Law.**

An examination of the Law relating to privacy in New Zealand with special reference to the common law protection of privacy; the protection of privacy under the Broadcasting Act 1989; and the scope and application of the Privacy Act 1993.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*

**LAW 484 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Advanced Tort**

Explores in depth issues touched on in LAW 231 and introduces new causes of action. Topics will include some or all of the following: the recovery of economic loss in negligence, negligent misrepresentation, vicarious liability, factual causation, nonfeasance, the economic torts, the effect of statutes and contracts on the law of tort, and damages.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*

**LAW 485 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: International Economic Regulation**

**LAW 486 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: South Pacific Legal Studies**

**LAW 487 (2 Points)**  
**Banking Law**

Aspects of the law relating to banking transactions and practice in New Zealand. Major topics include: the nature of the role and the functions of the Reserve Bank, the banker-customer contract, legal aspects of bank accounts (eg, fund transfers, appropriations, attachment, combination, set-off, lien), safe custody and other non-account services, bank as trustee or fiduciaries, restitutionary recovery by and against banks (eg, mistaken payments), cheques and bills of exchange and lender liability.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*

*Restriction: COMLAW 308*

**LAW 488 (2 Points)**  
**Statute Law**

The nature, making and interpretation of statutes. Topics that may be covered include: the history of statutes and their interpretation, the preparation and passing of statutes, the causes of problems of statutory interpretation and their rational resolution, the role of rules of interpretation, including interpretive provisions in Human Rights statutes, and the relationship of statutory interpretation to other developed areas of the law, such as the administrative law control of statutory powers and the availability of criminal defenses.

*Prerequisite: LAW 201, 211, 231, 241*

**LAW 489 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**LAW 490 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**LAW 491 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**LAW 492 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**LAW 493 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**LAW 494 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

LAW 495 Special Topic	(2 Points)
LAW 496 Special Topic	(2 Points)
LAW 497 Special Topic	(2 Points)
LAW 498 Special Topic	(2 Points)

To be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

## LAW 499

LAW 499A  
LAW 499B

## Legal Practice

Such work and practical experience in the detailed application of the law and in relation to the provision of legal services as approved by the Faculty of Law. To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 499 A and B, or LAW 499

**Diploma Courses**

LAW 690	(4 Points)
LAW 690A	(2 Points)
LAW 690B	(2 Points)

## Dissertation

A dissertation of approximately 15,000 words resulting from original research of the student, having the scope, and depth of research, of a competent law review article. To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 690 A and B, or LAW 690

**Honours and Master's Courses**

LAW 788 Legal Research Methodology	(1 Point)
---------------------------------------	-----------

Such study of methods of legal research, and of research perspectives, as is specified by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

LAW 789 Dissertation	(4 Points)
-------------------------	------------

A dissertation of approximately 15,000 words resulting from original research of the student, having the scope, and depth of research, of a competent law review article. The topic of the dissertation needs the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

LAW 790 Dissertation	(4 Points)
-------------------------	------------

A dissertation of approximately 15,000 words resulting from original research of the student, having the scope, and depth of research, of a competent law review article.

LAW 796A	(6 Points)
LAW 796B	(6 Points)

Thesis 1

A thesis of approximately 40,000 words resulting from original research of the student, displaying at a minimum: thorough research, a competent advanced understanding of the topic studied, and an ability to present the student's understanding of that topic in an orderly way.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 796 A and B

LAW 797A	(10 Points)
LAW 797B	(10 Points)

Thesis 2

A thesis of approximately 60,000 words resulting from original research of the student, displaying comprehensive understanding of the topic studied and an ability to contribute to the better understanding of that topic.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 797 A and B

**Commercial Law****Honours and Master's Courses**

LAWCOMM 701	(4 Points)
-------------	------------

**Building and Construction Law**

Study of the law affecting buildings and the construction industry including: relevant doctrine of contract and tort, real estate, the law governing planning and design, occupational health and safety, and cultural, archaeological and environmental issues relevant to the building and construction industries.

Restriction: COMLAW 773

LAWCOMM 702	(4 Points)
-------------	------------

**Commercial Arbitration and Dispute Resolution**

A comparative study of negotiation, litigation, arbitration and mediation in commercial contexts; New Zealand law relating to arbitration, international arbitration; and the operating and utility of mediation in commercial contexts.

Restriction: LAW 703, COMLAW 729

LAWCOMM 703	(4 Points)
-------------	------------

**Commercial Crime**

A detailed study of commercial crime and of the effectiveness of the law in dealing with it.

Restriction: LAW 705

LAWCOMM 704	(4 Points)
-------------	------------

**Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to the distribution and financing of goods and services, including security devices and the rights of creditors and third persons.

Restriction: LAW 707

LAWCOMM 705	(4 Points)
-------------	------------

**Commercial Leases**

An examination and analysis of the obligations, rights and powers of parties in modern commercial leases, including problems arising from assignments, subleases, mortgages of leases, enforcement of obligations and remedies.

Restriction: LAW 708

LAWCOMM 706	(4 Points)
-------------	------------

**Competition Law**

Advanced studies in competition law and its application to international transactions and commercial relationships, with comparative study of New Zealand law with that of other countries.

Restriction: LAW 710, COMLAW 706

LAWCOMM 707	(4 Points)
-------------	------------

**Conflict of Laws**

An advanced study of private international law, including a study of the jurisdiction of the New Zealand courts and arbitrators, the recognition and

enforcement of foreign judgments and decrees and arbitral awards, and choice of the governing legal system.

*Restriction: LAW 712*

**LAWCOMM 708 (4 Points)**

**Consumer Protection Law**

Detailed study of the law governing the rights and protection of consumers in sales and credit transactions including the relevance of consumer protection to public health and protection of the environment.

*Restriction: LAW 714*

**LAWCOMM 709 (4 Points)**

**Corporations and Corporate Governance**

The principles of the law as to corporations with special reference to companies, directors' duties and the status and rights of shareholders.

*Restriction: LAW 739, COMLAW 712*

**LAWCOMM 710 (4 Points)**

**Dispute Resolution**

The history and current practice of dispute resolution outside the courtroom, dispute settlement theories, and the principles of negotiation and mediation in the context of family, commercial, environmental, international and urban community disputes.

*Restriction: LAW 717*

**LAWCOMM 711 (4 Points)**

**Equity**

A detailed study of the history and principles of equity as they impact on modern society, including: the fiduciary obligation, the nature of equitable estates and interests, equitable priorities, estoppel, oppression and unconscionable dealing, specific equitable doctrines (such as contribution and subrogation), modern uses of the trust and equitable remedies.

*Restriction: LAW 718*

**LAWCOMM 712 (4 Points)**

**Insolvency Law**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties including: study of the rights of creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation, corporate failure and re-organization, and insolvency law reform in this and other jurisdictions.

*Restriction: LAW 726, COMLAW 710*

**LAWCOMM 713 (4 Points)**

**Selected Aspects of Intellectual Property**

Aspects of the law protecting the products of intellectual endeavour selected from: the law of trade marks and passing off, the law of copyright, patent law and the law of breach of confidence.

*Restriction: LAW 728*

**LAWCOMM 714 (4 Points)**

**International Litigation and Arbitration**

The institutional and procedural framework applicable to the resolution of international civil or commercial disputes; and strategic planning in multi-jurisdictional litigation.

*Restriction: LAW 731*

**LAWCOMM 715 (4 Points)**

**International Sales and Finance Law**

Advanced study of selected topics in international trade law including: import and export of goods by sea and air, treaties affecting New Zealand's foreign

trade, and transnational aspects of doing business abroad.

*Restriction: LAW 732, COMLAW 702*

**LAWCOMM 716 (4 Points)**

**Law and Economics**

Selected topics relating to: the relevance of economic considerations in legal argument, the role of economic considerations in shaping the law, and the use of economic theory in assisting judgments about the effectiveness of laws.

*Restriction: LAW 735*

**LAWCOMM 717 (4 Points)**

**Law of Agency**

An advanced study of the principles of agency law, and selected applications thereof.

*Restriction: LAW 774*

**LAWCOMM 718 (4 Points)**

**Law of Banking**

The law and practice relating to banking with special reference to New Zealand.

*Restriction: LAW 738, COMLAW 768*

**LAWCOMM 719 (4 Points)**

**Law of Contract**

The history and principles of the law of contract, including the law as to the sale of goods, negotiable instruments, and all other special classes of contracts.

*Restriction: LAW 740*

**LAWCOMM 720 (4 Points)**

**Law of Insurance Contracts**

The principles and operation of the law relating to insurance.

*Restriction: LAW 727, COMLAW 722*

**LAWCOMM 721 (4 Points)**

**Law of Property Insurance**

Selected aspects of the law relating to property insurance.

**LAWCOMM 722 (4 Points)**

**Law of Torts**

The history and principles of civil liability for torts.

*Restriction: LAW 742*

**LAWCOMM 723 (4 Points)**

**Maritime Law**

Advanced studies in shipping law, including: ownership and proprietary interests in ships, ship registration, charter parties, ship mortgages, shipboard crimes and torts, the law of collisions, salvage and wrecks, the admiralty jurisdiction, enforcement of maritime liens and other maritime claims, national shipping law and policy, the international regulatory framework, and conflict of laws issues applicable to maritime disputes.

*Restriction: LAW 749, COMLAW 715*

**LAWCOMM 724 (4 Points)**

**Mergers and Acquisitions**

Advanced study in the law relating to business and corporate acquisitions and corporate mergers, takeovers and amalgamations, including issues affecting choice of method, directors' duties, and public and private regulation.

*Restriction: LAW 779, COMLAW 778*

**LAWCOMM 725 (4 Points)**

**Partnership**

The principles of common law and equity applicable to partnerships.

*Restriction: LAW 753*

**LAWCOMM 726 (4 Points)**

**Restitution in Commercial Contexts**

Advanced problems focusing on situations and available remedies where benefits have been wrongfully or unfairly acquired.

*Restriction: LAW 756*

**LAWCOMM 727 (4 Points)**

**Selected Issues in Property Law**

The history and principles of the law of property; contemporary issues.

*Restriction: LAW 734*

**LAWCOMM 728 (4 Points)**

**Theories of Obligations**

A study of the principles that underlie the law of civil obligations as they impact on commercial transactions.

*Restriction: LAW 758*

**LAWCOMM 729 (4 Points)**

**Transnational Civil and Commercial Litigation**

The principles and rules of private international law applicable to commercial dealings.

*Restriction: LAW 704, COMLAW 707*

**LAWCOMM 741 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**LAWCOMM 742 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**LAWCOMM 743 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**LAWCOMM 744 (4 Points)**

**Selected Topics in Taxation**

Selected topics in taxation including: works of some of the great tax theorists and their relevance to modern tax policy formulation; current debates on questions of tax policy; aspects of international taxation; aspects of international tax planning. These are examined by reference to the tax systems of a variety of jurisdictions (such as New Zealand, the UK, the USA, Hong Kong and China).

**LAWCOMM 745 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**LAWCOMM 751 (4 Points)**

**Commercial Indemnity Insurance**

Detailed study of the law relating to commercial indemnity insurance.

*Restriction: COMLAW 766*

**LAWCOMM 752 (4 Points)**

**Communications and Information Technology Law**

A study of legal issues raised by the Internet and the convergence of information and communications systems.

*Restriction: COMLAW 705*

**LAWCOMM 753 (4 Points)**

**Company Reconstructions and Receiverships**

Detailed study of the law relating to corporate collapse and rescue.

*Restriction: COMLAW 737*

**LAWCOMM 754 (4 Points)**

**Copyright Law**

Detailed study of the law of copyright.

*Restriction: COMLAW 716*

**LAWCOMM 755 (4 Points)**

**Corporate Finance**

Detailed study of the law relating to corporate finance.

*Restriction: COMLAW 711*

**LAWCOMM 756 (4 Points)**

**Electronic Trade and Finance**

A study of the methods by which transactions in trade and finance can be facilitated by use of computer and telecommunications technology.

*Restriction: COMLAW 735*

**LAWCOMM 757 (4 Points)**

**Entertainment Law**

A study of the legal protection available to those involved with entertainment and the creative arts.

*Restriction: COMLAW 779*

**LAWCOMM 758 (4 Points)**

**Franchising Law**

A study of the law relating to franchising.

*Restriction: COMLAW 731*

**LAWCOMM 759 (4 Points)**

**International Insolvency Law**

A study of the legal issues arising in the insolvency of businesses which have transnational operations and investors.

*Restriction: COMLAW 738*

**LAWCOMM 760 (4 Points)**

**Patents and Allied Rights**

A detailed study of the law of patents and allied rights.

*Restriction: COMLAW 723*

**LAWCOMM 761 (4 Points)**

**Professional Liability**

A detailed study of the liability of lawyers and other professional groups.

*Restriction: COMLAW 769*

**LAWCOMM 762 (4 Points)**

**Regulation of International Trade**

A study of the legal framework for the regulation of international trade.

*Restriction: COMLAW 713*

**LAWCOMM 763 (4 Points)**

**Sports Law**

A detailed study of legal issues relating to sport.

*Restriction: COMLAW 733*

**LAWCOMM 764 (4 Points)**

**Trade Secrets and Valuable Information**

The study of the law relating to trade secrets and the protection of valuable information.

*Restriction: COMLAW 734*

**LAWCOMM 765 (4 Points)**

**Transport and Shipping Law**

A study of the law relating to the transportation of goods by sea and air.

*Restriction: COMLAW 701*

**LAWCOMM 766 (4 Points)**

**Trademarks and Unfair Competition**

Detailed study of the law relating to trademarks and unfair competition.

*Restriction: COMLAW 736*

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

---

**Environmental Law**


---

**Honours and Master's Courses****LAWENVIR 701 (2 Points)****Biotechnology Law**

Analysis of the law relating to biotechnology and genetic engineering including the implications of the law relating to international trade and environment for the development of biotechnology (including indigenous rights), ethical dimensions of genetic engineering, studies of regulatory and other control schemes in selected jurisdictions.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 716*

**LAWENVIR 702 (4 Points)****Comparative Environmental Law**

Selected topics in environmental law from an internationally comparative perspective including: concepts of sustainable development, the precautionary principle, environmental impact assessment procedures, risk evaluation schemes and advanced environmental legislation in various jurisdictions including the United States, the European Union, Japan and New Zealand.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 701*

**LAWENVIR 703 (2 Points)****Conservation and Heritage Law**

The law and international and regional conservation conventions and treaties, relating to the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources, ie. national parks, reserves, wild flora, historic sites, cultural and natural heritage.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 702*

**LAWENVIR 704 (2 Points)****Economic Instruments and Environmental Law**

An examination of the legal and policy dimensions concerning the use of financial mechanisms and economic analysis in environmental law, eg. ecotaxes and tradable pollution permits. Special consideration will be given to commercial law issues in the environmental context, eg. insolvency and insurance law. Reference will be made to practice in New Zealand, Australia, the United States and the European Union.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 717, 721*

**LAWENVIR 705 (2 Points)****Environmental Dispute Resolution**

Analysis of ways to resolve disputes on environmental issues. Experiences with negotiation and mediation in the area of resource management and environmental law including case studies and analysis of current issues.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 703*

**LAWENVIR 706 (2 Points)****Environmental Ethics**

The theoretical framework of our interaction with the natural environment; examination of the ways in which nature has been explored and interrogated by both the sciences and humanities, including social sciences; paradigms of thinking and their implications for environmental cognition; and ecocentrism and its significance for a sustainable development of societies.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 704*

**LAWENVIR 707 (4 Points)****Environmental Law and Policy**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment including: dimensions of the global environmental crisis, principles and selected areas of international environmental law, environmental law and policy in a comparative perspective, methodological and philosophical concepts behind contemporary environmental law and policy and environmental law and policy in the New Zealand context.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 705*

**LAWENVIR 708 (2 Points)****Environmental Law Concepts**

An introduction to fundamental concepts and principles of environmental law including: the nature and purpose of environmental law, the methodology and structure of environmental law, the interrelationship between national and international environmental law and a review of key environmental policy concepts which have shaped the development of environmental law.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 705, 715, LAWENVIR 707*

**LAWENVIR 709 (2 Points)****Hazardous Substances Law**

Analysis of the legal framework for the control of hazardous substances and new organisms in New Zealand, consideration of problems arising from hazardous substances, including the scope and applications of chemical substances, and recent developments in biotechnology and genetic engineering, ethical considerations and their implications for the law, and studies of notification and control schemes in various jurisdictions.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 707*

**LAWENVIR 710 (4 Points)****International Environmental Law**

Selected problems of international law as related to the protection of the global environment including the present concept of international environmental law and current trends toward a global law of sustainable development, law on climate changes, the ozone layer, the marine environment, biodiversity, and the implications of international environmental issues for municipal law.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 708*

**LAWENVIR 711 (4 Points)****Law of the Sea**

An analysis and criticism of the legal framework governing the use and protection of the marine environment, the 1982 UN Convention on the Law of the Sea, the concept of territorial sea and zones of restricted jurisdiction over the high seas, the legal regime for the seabed and ocean floors, the control of oil spillages and other forms of marine pollution and protection of marine biodiversity including fish stocks.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 709*

**LAWENVIR 712 (2 Points)****Mining and Energy Law**

An examination of the legal principles, government policy, regulation, and administrative control relating to ownership and exploitation of minerals (including oil and gas), and alternative energy resources in New Zealand.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 710, 723, LAWENVIR 713*

- LAWENVIR 713** (4 Points)  
**Mining, Energy and Natural Resource Law**  
 Study of the common law, legislation and administrative controls in New Zealand relating to ownership of, prospecting for, extraction and use of minerals (including oils and gas), alternative energy resources, forestry and fisheries resources.  
*Restriction: ENVLAW 710, 711, 723, LAWENVIR 712, 714*
- LAWENVIR 714** (2 Points)  
**Natural Resources Law**  
 An examination of the legislative framework and legal principles relating to agriculture, forestry, and fisheries activities in New Zealand. Selected topics will include: legal ownership and interests in rural land and natural resources, the role of government, Maori claims, and resource development conflict resolution.  
*'Restriction: ENVLAW 711, 723, LAWENVIR 713*
- LAWENVIR 715** (2 Points)  
**Pollution and Waste Management Law**  
 Assessment of air and water pollution control laws and policies, and waste management regimes. Special consideration will be given to practice in New Zealand, Australia and Europe, as well as developments in international environmental law. Main topics will include: contaminated land, hazardous substances, environmental auditing, pollution licensing, pollution taxes and charges, recycling and general principles of waste management.  
*Restriction: ENVLAW 713*
- LAWENVIR 716** (4 Points)  
**Resource Management Law**  
 Studies in the New Zealand law relating to resource management and environmental regulation including: evolution of the sustainable management concept, consideration of national objectives, Treaty of Waitangi application, national standards, coastal policies, regional statements and plans, district plans, designations, heritage and conservation powers, resource consent procedures, and remedial powers and enforcement procedures.  
*Restriction: ENVLAW 712*
- LAWENVIR 717** (2 Points)  
**Water Law**  
 Study of the legislative and institutional framework for water management in New Zealand, regulations relating to the allocation of surface water and groundwater, water quality control, the common law doctrine of riparian rights, the concept of total catchment management and river basin and coastal management schemes.  
*Restriction: ENVLAW 714*
- LAWENVIR 721** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic: Wine Law**
- LAWENVIR 722** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic: Biotechnology and the Law**  
 Analysis of the law relating to biotechnology and genetic engineering including the implications of the law relating to international trade and environment for the development of biotechnology (including indigenous rights), ethical dimensions of genetic engineering, studies of regulatory and other control schemes in selected jurisdictions.  
*Restriction: COMLAW 720*
- LAWENVIR 723** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- LAWENVIR 724** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- LAWENVIR 725** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- LAWENVIR 731** (2 Points)  
**Foundations of Environmental Law**  
 Legal methodology, research and writing in the context of environmental legal studies.
- LAWENVIR 790** (4 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
 A dissertation of approximately 15,000 words resulting from original research of the student, having the scope and depth of research, of a competent law review article. The topic of the dissertation must be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.
- 
- General Law**
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- LAWGENRL 701** (4 Points)  
**Conceptual Foundations of the Law**  
 A study of theories about the nature of human action: analysis of the basic concepts used in discourse about action, including intention, negligence, reasons, responsibility and fault; and an application of such theories and analysis to legal problems.  
*Restriction: LAW 711*
- LAWGENRL 702** (4 Points)  
**Foundations of Human Rights**  
 A study of the moral and jurisprudential basis for human rights and for their protection through law including a study of the major theories of justice and rights.
- LAWGENRL 703** (4 Points)  
**History of Legal Theory**  
 A study of the history of any one or more of the following: (i) theories about the nature of law and the values to be implemented by it; (ii) the growth and development of legal systems, including the role played by the systematic study of law; (iii) the development of basic concepts and doctrines of law.
- LAWGENRL 704** (4 Points)  
**Human Agency and Criminal Liability**  
 A study of the nature of human agency and of the general conditions for holding humans responsible for their actions or inactions. A study of the specific conditions for ascriptions of responsibility in the criminal law, with particular reference to the role of intention, knowledge, recklessness, negligence, indirect fault and strict liability. A study of conditions that eliminate or reduce fault, such as lack of rational capacity, extreme provocation and lack of an opportunity for choice.
- LAWGENRL 705** (4 Points)  
**Jurisprudence**  
 The study of selected topics from theories concerning the nature of law, the relation of law and morality, the nature of legal reasoning, theories of justice and theories about the correct analysis of central legal concepts.  
*Restriction: LAW 733*

<b>LAWGENRL 706</b> <b>Law and Society</b> A study of selected aspects of the interrelation of legal processes and social change; legislation, courts, and other legal institutions as they influence and are affected by social change; and the role of law in the modern state. <i>Restriction: LAW 737</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>LAWPUBL 704</b> <b>Comparative Constitutional Law</b> Studies in the law relating to the structure and functioning of government systems, including the rules which regulate relations between the different branches of government and between the different branches of government and individuals. <i>Restriction: LAW 713</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>LAWGENRL 707</b> <b>Legal Ethics</b> The study of ethical issues arising in legal practice and of ethical theory relevant to these issues. <i>Restriction: LAW 743</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>LAWPUBL 705</b> <b>Criminal Law and Policy</b> The history and principles of criminal law, analysis of current issues in substantive and procedural criminal law, criminal justice theory, including the theory of punishment, and criminal law reform. <i>Restriction: LAW 715</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>LAWGENRL 708</b> <b>New Zealand Legal History</b> Selected topics on the evolution and development of the New Zealand legal system, major changes and reforms within the system, the influence of legal personnel, the role of the law in relations between colonists and Maori and the practical working of the system. <i>Restriction: LAW 751</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>LAWPUBL 706</b> <b>Criminology</b> The nature and extent of crime in our society, selected studies of the causes of crime, political aspects of the criminal law and study of the criminal justice system including the objectives of the system, the role of the police and a critical analysis of penal measures. <i>Restriction: LAW 716</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>LAWGENRL 709</b> <b>Roman Law</b> Study of the law of ancient Rome, as transmitted through the sixth century, Justinianic codification and its impact on European legal thinking.	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>LAWPUBL 707</b> <b>Employment Law</b> Selected and comparative studies in employment law. <i>Restriction: LAW 725</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>LAWGENRL 711</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>LAWPUBL 708</b> <b>Family Law</b> Advanced studies in the law relating to husband and wife, parent and child, and family relationships generally. <i>Restriction: LAW 719</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>LAWGENRL 712</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>LAWPUBL 709</b> <b>Global Legal Issues</b> The impact of globalization on nation-state sovereignty and national legal systems, the role of international financial institutions, models of regional integration and their effects, the liability of transnational corporations, the role of international agreements on economic, indigenous, social and environmental issues including their effect on Aotearoa New Zealand. <i>Restriction: LAW 720</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>LAWGENRL 713</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>LAWPUBL 710</b> <b>Healthcare and Patients' Rights</b> A detailed study of the law and ethics related to health care delivery including: the purchase and provision of health services, the relationship between health providers and consumers, professional accountability, codes of rights, legal and ethical issues at the start and end of life, and biomedical research. <i>Restriction: LAW 721</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>LAWGENRL 714</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>LAWPUBL 711</b> <b>Immigration and Refugee Law</b> Basic features of immigration law in New Zealand including: the process of admission to New Zealand, the process of deportation, the relationship between immigration and family law, legal status of aliens and the protection of refugees from persecution abroad. <i>Restriction: LAW 723</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>LAWGENRL 715</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>		
<hr/> <b>Public Law</b> <hr/>			
<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>			
<b>LAWPUBL 701</b> <b>Administrative Law</b> Advanced study of the principles of administrative law, comprising judicial review of administrative action and other mechanisms of accountability with emphasis on theoretical advances in the area, recent developments, and a comparative common law perspective. <i>Restriction: LAW 701</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>		
<b>LAWPUBL 702</b> <b>Common Law Theory and Practice</b> The history, nature and evolution of the Common Law; common law legal reasoning; the interaction of case law and legislation in a common law system. <i>Restriction: LAW 777</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>		
<b>LAWPUBL 703</b> <b>Comparative Law</b> Analysis of selected topics to compare New Zealand law and common law with other legal systems such as civil law, and indigenous and religious legal systems. <i>Restriction: LAW 709</i>	<b>(4 Points)</b>		

- LAWPUBL 712 (4 Points)**  
**International Economic Organizations and Agreements**  
 Explores the expanding inter-governmental framework of international economic law, with particular reference to the history, structure and procedures of the major international economic institutions and agreements, the major challenges which currently confront them and the tension between law and policy-making at the global and national levels.  
*Restriction: LAW 775*
- LAWPUBL 713 (4 Points)**  
**International Family Law**  
 Study of the principles and practice of Family Law that transcend national boundaries.  
*Restriction: LAW 770*
- LAWPUBL 714 (4 Points)**  
**Internationalization of Domestic Law**  
 The impact of international law and international legal instruments on domestic law in New Zealand and other common law jurisdictions.  
*Restriction: LAW 778*
- LAWPUBL 715 (4 Points)**  
**Law and Economic Regulation**  
 Legal aspects of the process of economic regulation from both a conceptual and comparative perspective. Covers the differing approaches taken to economic regulation, the relationship of regulatory techniques to principles of competition law and administrative law, and the approaches adopted in this area in the United States, United Kingdom and in the European Union. Aspects of the distinctive New Zealand approach to economic regulation in areas such as telecommunications, power and energy, state owned enterprises and recent deregulatory initiatives are examined in detail.  
*Restriction: LAW 776*
- LAWPUBL 716 (4 Points)**  
**Law and Policy**  
 Study of the policy-making process and the role of law in the shaping and implementation of policy.  
*Restriction: LAW 771*
- LAWPUBL 717 (4 Points)**  
**Law of Evidence**  
 The principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases.  
*Restriction: LAW 741*
- LAWPUBL 718 (4 Points)**  
**Legal Problems of the European Union**  
 The objectives, structures, functions and relationships of the European Union; economic, social, and environmental implications of the common market and the political union, external relations and current trends in European and other regional arrangements.  
*Restriction: LAW 745*
- LAWPUBL 719 (4 Points)**  
**Legislation and Statutory Interpretation**  
 The relative effectiveness of different forms of regulatory intervention with particular reference to legislative intervention, the form and substance of legislation, judicial and other approaches to its interpretation, the process of legislative change, and the proper role for subordinate legislation.  
*Restriction: LAW 746*
- LAWPUBL 720 (4 Points)**  
**Local Government Law**  
 The law relating to the structure, powers and service delivery functions of local government including: the history of local government, reorganization schemes, powers and administrative principles, civil liability, elections, council procedures, staff employment, works contracts, financial accountability, land valuation, rating systems, environmental functions and bylaws. Consideration of related public bodies, eg, education and health authorities.  
*Restriction: LAW 747*
- LAWPUBL 721 (4 Points)**  
**Maori Land Law**  
 Examination of tikanga whenua, ie, Maori concepts relating to land tenure, important cases and statutes defining Maori land tenure, the provisions of Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993 for a dual system of land tenure of Maori freehold land, and the effect of the Resource Management Act 1991 and the Crown Minerals Act 1991 on land held in Maori freehold title.  
*Restriction: LAW 748*
- LAWPUBL 722 (4 Points)**  
**Media Law**  
 The law relating to the media, including freedom of the press, broadcasting regulations, political and election broadcasting, defamation law, contempt of court, copyright and the rights of journalists and broadcasters.  
*Restriction: LAW 750*
- LAWPUBL 723 (4 Points)**  
**New Zealand Bill of Rights**  
 The interpretation and application of the New Zealand Bill of Rights in comparative and international context.  
*Restriction: LAW 772*
- LAWPUBL 724 (4 Points)**  
**Pacific Legal Studies**  
 Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.  
*Restriction: LAW 752*
- LAWPUBL 725 (4 Points)**  
**Privacy Law**  
 The law governing data surveillance and techniques of social control through the use of information technology, privacy aspects of the prevention of credit and insurance fraud, criminal investigation and the balance between individual rights and commercial and/or public interests.  
*Restriction: LAW 754. COMLAW 739*
- LAWPUBL 726 (4 Points)**  
**Public International Law**  
 The principles of international law and their application to municipal law.  
*Restriction: LAW 729*
- LAWPUBL 727 (4 Points)**  
**Public Utilities**  
 A study of the law relating to the establishment, operation and regulation of public utilities, primarily those in the business of producing and/or distributing water, gas, electricity, telephone and other telecommunication services.  
*Restriction: LAW 755*

- LAWPUBL 728** (4 Points) *Restriction: LAW 736*  
**Social and Economic Regulation**  
 Study of the legal issues involved in regulating social and/or economic behaviour including: theories of regulation, forms of social and economic regulation, enforcement, competition law and the effectiveness and future of regulation.  
*Restriction: LAW 757*
- LAWPUBL 729** (4 Points)  
**Welfare Law**  
 A study of the law relating to the provision of welfare grants and services by the State including: the development of the welfare state, the reasons for the provision of welfare and the practical operation of the welfare system.  
*Restriction: LAW 759*
- LAWPUBL 731** (4 Points)  
**Comparative Human Rights Law**  
 A comparative study of the role of constitutions and judicial review in the protection of human rights, including: freedom of expression, association, equality and minority rights.  
*Restriction: LAW 722*
- LAWPUBL 732** (4 Points)  
**Comparative Indigenous Rights Law**  
 Study of the nature and legal protection of the rights of indigenous persons and groups in international and comparative perspective, including rights to self-government, cultural, religious and linguistic rights.
- LAWPUBL 733** (4 Points)  
**Equality and Anti-discrimination Law**  
 Study of the nature of equality and its legal protection through international, constitutional and domestic instruments, including study of anti-discrimination law and practice.
- LAWPUBL 734** (4 Points)  
**Group and Indigenous Rights**  
 The moral and jurisprudential basis of group and indigenous rights and their legal protection in international, constitutional and domestic instruments.
- LAWPUBL 735** (4 Points)  
**Indigenous Sovereignty and Self-determination**  
 Issues relating to indigenous peoples' struggle for legal recognition of their rights to determine their own future and government responses to these.  
*Restriction: LAW 724*
- LAWPUBL 736** (4 Points)  
**International Law of Human Rights**  
 Study of international conventions and customary international law on human rights, including: free speech, exercise of religion, privacy and non-discrimination, enforcement mechanisms, human rights theories in international law, third generation human rights including rights to development and a functioning environment, and the recognition of these in international law.  
*Restriction: LAW 730*
- LAWPUBL 737** (4 Points)  
**Law and Gender**  
 Advanced studies in the role of law in addressing and maintaining gender inequality, including examination of feminist thought on the gendered nature of law.
- LAWPUBL 738** (4 Points)  
**Legal Issues in Relation to Children**  
 A detailed study of the law as it affects the well-being and governance of children.  
*Restriction: LAW 744*
- LAWPUBL 739** (4 Points)  
**Maori and the Law – Contemporary Developments**  
 An examination of contemporary issues relating to Maori and the law. Recent developments in environmental/land and fisheries law. Includes analysis of Maori concepts used in modern legal discourse, Maori relationships to natural resources and the environment, particularly fisheries.  
*Restriction: LAW 773*
- LAWPUBL 741** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- LAWPUBL 742** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- LAWPUBL 743** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- LAWPUBL 744** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- LAWPUBL 745** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- 
- Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences**
- 
- Anatomy with Radiology**
- 
- Stage II**
- ANATOMY 201** (2 Points)  
**Human Biology – Structure and Function**  
 Presents the structure of biological systems with special reference to human biology, from the levels of histology through to gross anatomy. Specific examples of the correlation between structure and function will be considered. An introduction to current techniques for the visualization of biological structure will be presented.  
*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 107, and HUMANBIO 142 or 405.105*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- ANATOMY 702** (2 Points)  
**Biology of Connective Tissue**  
 A study of the components that make up the extracellular matrix of tissues and the roles that they play in controlling cell growth, organ development and the physical properties of tissues.
- ANATOMY 703** (2 Points)  
**Biology of Connective Tissue Diseases**  
 A study of the role of the extracellular matrix in disease processes with special emphasis on heritable disorders such as osteogenesis imperfecta, and on chronic degenerative diseases such as atherosclerosis, osteoarthritis and fibrosis.  
*Prerequisite: ANATOMY 702*
- ANATOMY 704** (2 Points)  
**Current Topics in Anatomical Research 1**  
 Recent advances in anatomy. Topics include the

structure and function of tissues at the gross, macroscopic, cellular and molecular levels. Emphasis is placed on critical analysis of current research.

**ANATOMY 705 (2 Points)**

**Current Topics in Anatomical Research 2**

Recent advances in anatomy. Topics include: the structure and function of tissues at the gross, macroscopic, cellular and molecular levels. Emphasis is placed on critical analysis of current research.

**ANATOMY 751 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Biomedical Imaging**

Theory and practice of biomedical imaging with specific emphasis on recent developments in the field. Principles of digital image-processing (including quantitative morphology), computed tomography and volume analysis. Imaging modalities including light microscopy, electron microscopy, x-ray, ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging.

**Audiology**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**AUDIOL 701 (2 Points)**

**Auditory Neuroscience**

The anatomy and physiology of the auditory system, concentrating on the peripheral system. Topics include: the anatomy and neuroanatomy of the ear, the role of the middle ear, cochlear mechanics and micromechanics, transduction in the cochlea and vestibular system, responses of the auditory nerve and cochlear homeostasis. Emphasis will be placed on critical assessment of literature.

**AUDIOL 702 (2 Points)**

**Basic Diagnostic Audiology**

The basic principles and techniques of diagnostic audiology in adults. Topics studied include: basic audiometric techniques (pure tone audiometry, speech audiometry, immittance audiometry, traditional site-of-lesion tests, non-organic hearing loss, history-taking). The course involves practicals and emphasis is placed on critical assessment of current literature.

**AUDIOL 703A (2 Points)**

**AUDIOL 703B (2 Points)**

**Basic Clinical Audiology**

The basis of clinical audiology and hearing disorders. Topics include: the nature of hearing disorders, diseases of the ear, technical aspects of hearing aids, child development, paediatric hearing assessment, occupational hearing conservation and clinical instruction in clinical audiology.

*To complete this course students must enrol in AUDIOL 703 A and B*

**AUDIOL 704 (2 Points)**

**Central Auditory Function**

The neuroanatomy and neurophysiology of central auditory pathways, psychoacoustics, and speech and language. Topics include: the anatomy and physiology of the auditory nuclei in the mammalian brain, basic psychoacoustics and central processes involved in speech and language.

**AUDIOL 705 (2 Points)**

**Acoustics for Audiology**

The physics of sound, and instrumentation and principles of digital signal processing involved in audiological research. Topics include: the physics of sound waves, room acoustics, measurement of reverberation time, calibration of audiological instruments, instrumentation in audiology (digital systems and data acquisition, frequency and time-domain analysis of digital signals). The approach is practical and utilizes computer programmes.

**AUDIOL 711 (2 Points)**

**Physiological Measures of Auditory Function**

Advanced study of the auditory system using physiological measurements of auditory function. Topics include: auditory evoked potentials, otoacoustic emissions, vestibulometry, and electrocochleography. The course is based on assessment of current literature and practical projects.

**AUDIOL 712A (2 Points)**

**AUDIOL 712B (2 Points)**

**Advanced Clinical Audiology**

Rehabilitation and management of the deaf and hearing-impaired. Topics include: educational and paediatric audiology – amplification strategies (including hearing aids, cochlear implants and assistive listening devices), aural rehabilitation and counselling. The course involves extensive clinical instruction and the critical assessment of current literature.

*To complete this course students must enrol in AUDIOL 712 A and B*

**AUDIOL 790A (4 Points)**

**AUDIOL 790B (4 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in AUDIOL 790 A and B*

**Behavioural Science**

**Stage II**

**BEHAVSCI 202 (2 Points)**

**Community and Cultural Development**

Taking a strengths-based approach, students are introduced to socio-ecological understandings of health development. The notion of development is elaborated by application to personal, community and cultural health. Real world examples of effective practice will demonstrate the interdependence of theory, research and practice in health development.

*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 102*

**BEHAVSCI 203 (2 Points)**

**Mental Health Development**

Mental health is defined holistically and examined in a way that incorporates social, community and individual elements. Contemporary theory and research on mental health will be reviewed in relation to detailed discussion of strategies for promoting mental well-being. Students are presented with applications of health promotion and community development strategies for enhancing mental health.

*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 102*

**BEHAVSCI 301 (2 Points)**

**Health Promotion 2**

Through case studies of the applications of the principles and practices of health promotion,

students gain insight into the practical effects of health promotion. Working in groups, students design and evaluate a health promotion intervention that integrates nutrition and exercise at the community level.

*Prerequisite:* COMHLTH 204, BEHAVSCI 202, 203

**BEHAVSCI 302 (2 Points)**

**Communities and Addictions**

Examines how addictions such as tobacco, alcohol, drugs and gambling seriously undermine the health of individuals and the communities in which they live and/or work. Case studies are used to understand the primary elements of community and cultural health development.

*Prerequisite:* COMHLTH 204, BEHAVSCI 202, 203

**Diploma Courses**

**BEHAVSCI 601 (2 Points)**

**Approaches to Addiction**

The main theoretical dilemmas shaping approaches to addiction are critically reviewed, including approaches to prevention, intervention and treatment. Trends in international research are examined in terms of their applicability to the New Zealand context.

*Restriction:* BEHAVSCI 721

**BEHAVSCI 602 (2 Points)**

**Project Planning on Lifestyle Change**

Exploration of lifestyle behaviours that have significant implications for health, including behaviour regarding alcohol and other drugs, protective sex, exercise and diet, management of stress, and adherence to treatment and rehabilitation programmes. Strategies to facilitate lifestyle change are examined.

*Restriction:* BEHAVSCI 722

**BEHAVSCI 603 (2 Points)**

**Promoting Mental Health**

The concept of mental health promotion in terms of both general social issues around mental and social health (eg, youth suicide) and more specific personal and community issues (eg, children's health, mental and social development), geared towards what can be done in a professional and practice setting. Mental health promotion concepts and skills, with a particular emphasis on community applications.

*Restriction:* BEHAVSCI 729

**BEHAVSCI 604 (2 Points)**

**Spirituality as a Practical and Mental Health Issue**

Explores the concept of spirituality as it applies in health and mental health settings including how it is useful, if not essential, for practitioners to factor it into their work, showing how an appreciation of people's spirituality, and one's own, can be used in an appropriate way in a helping or community action setting.

*Restriction:* BEHAVSCI 730

**BEHAVSCI 605A (2 Points)**

**BEHAVSCI 605B (2 Points)**

**Intervention Planning with Addictions**

Theory and application of techniques for assessing and intervention planning with alcohol, drug and other addictive behaviours, including practical tuition in assessment strategies. Students are required to work with clients with addiction issues, under individual supervision.

*Restriction:* BEHAVSCI 736

To complete this course students must enrol in BEHAVSCI 605 A and B

**BEHAVSCI 606 (2 Points)**

**Social Research Methods in Health Contexts**

The use of both qualitative and quantitative methods in researching health and mental health issues. The conceptual foundations of different approaches to research are reviewed. Students will be expected to critically examine details in the design, measurement and analysis reported in research studies.

*Restriction:* BEHAVSCI 758

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**BEHAVSCI 700A (2 Points)**

**BEHAVSCI 700B (2 Points)**

**Interventions for Mental Health**

The design of appropriate interventions in the community and a variety of applied contexts, using mental health development principles.

To complete this course students must enrol in BEHAVSCI 700 A and B

**BEHAVSCI 710 (2 Points)**

**Effective Counselling in Mental Health**

The theory, research and practice regarding counselling and psycho-therapeutic approaches used in mental health and addiction service contexts. Approaches will be critically examined in terms of history, theory, social context and trends in research. Particular attention will focus on counselling methods currently in use within services.

**BEHAVSCI 717 (2 Points)**

**Mental Health Development: Theory and Principles**

Introduces the philosophy of mental health from a mental health development perspective in an imaginative and practical way. Major conceptual issues are raised: What is mental health? What is good research? What are the goals of psychiatry and other approaches to mental health? These are explored by means of key theories, principles and case studies. These are presented by lecturers with backgrounds in mental health practice, and students are encouraged to think critically about their content.

**BEHAVSCI 721 (2 Points)**

**Alcohol, Tobacco and Other Drug Studies**

Provides an introduction and overview to studies on alcohol and other drugs. Incorporates theory and research developed within public health, mental health, and specialized treatment frameworks. Topics will include: coverage of historical developments, a review of major theoretical issues and an overview of current trends.

*Restriction:* 575.706

**BEHAVSCI 722 (2 Points)**

**Interventions for Lifestyle Change**

Focuses on the use of early and brief intervention strategies in addressing lifestyle issues with health consequences, particularly the use of alcohol, tobacco and other drugs. Students will work in project teams to develop a lifestyle intervention strategy for use in a particular health context. Interventions will include those occurring in hospitals, primary and mental health care settings, workplaces, and educational institutions.

*Restriction:* 575.706

**BEHAVSCI 729 (2 Points)****Mental Health Promotion**

Explores the emerging field of mental health promotion (MHP), which has its roots in both health promotion and the mental/social health field. Combines individual, community and public health dimensions, with a central emphasis on a people perspective, empowering community development and major public health issues like youth suicide, violence and depression. Also considers issues of culture, quality of life and the kind of society we want.

*Restriction: 575.707*

**BEHAVSCI 730 (2 Points)****Spirituality and Health**

This course takes the concept of spirituality, often mentioned but rarely explored in the health and mental health field, and attempts to clarify what it means and how it can be used. Personal, community, societal and cultural perspectives are covered, and the contributions of different disciplines are considered.

*Restriction: 575.707*

**BEHAVSCI 736A (2 Points)****BEHAVSCI 736B (2 Points)****Assessment and Intervention with Addiction**

Aims to provide trainees with understanding and competency in assessment and intervention work with alcohol and drug affected clients. It is divided into a series of training modules focusing on comprehensive assessment, effective clinical interventions, drug specific interventions and approaches within families and communities. It will involve regular case-based supervision.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BEHAVSCI 736 A and B*

**BEHAVSCI 737 (2 Points)****Dual Diagnosis 1**

This course is suitable for students who work within both the mental health and the alcohol and drug services. It introduces students to research and theory on coexistent disorders and examines recent developments in intervention strategies.

**BEHAVSCI 738 (2 Points)****Interventions in Problem Gambling**

Provides an historical and sociological overview of gambling in New Zealand. It examines the emergence of gambling problems and reviews research and theory on service strategies at the level of prevention, intervention and treatment.

**BEHAVSCI 739 (2 Points)****Dual Diagnosis 2**

Develops the ideas of theory and practice introduced in Dual Diagnosis 1. Additionally, students have an opportunity to reflect on the organization of services to people with a dual diagnosis and the best practice that is offered within them.

*Prerequisite: BEHAVSCI 737*

**BEHAVSCI 758 (2 Points)****Foundations of Social Research in Health**

This course is directed at students engaging with social science research in relation to health. It provides a review of the principal methods (quantitative and qualitative) used in the design, conduct and analysis of social science studies of health, including an examination of the conceptual foundations of the methods and guidelines for

informed appraisals of published findings.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 731*

**BEHAVSCI 759 (2 Points)****Qualitative Research in Health**

Provides practical experience in the appraisal and use of qualitative methods in research on health. The development of studies from research questions through design, conduct, analysis and interpretation of such studies is examined in detail. Students are required to prepare, present and defend a proposal for qualitative research on a health issue.

*Prerequisite: BEHAVSCI 758 or COMHLTH 710*

**BEHAVSCI 770 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Department, Applied Behavioural Science.

**BEHAVSCI 771 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Department, Applied Behavioural Science.

---

**Community Health**

---

**Stage I****COMHLTH 101 (2 Points)****Health Systems 1**

Provides an overview and understanding of the New Zealand health system, including: history of health and health service delivery in New Zealand; the role and functioning of hospitals; primary care; purchasers and funders of health services; the role of insurance and private health care providers.

*Restriction: COMHLTH 201*

**COMHLTH 102 (2 Points)****Health and Society**

A description and analysis of the influence of social factors on health and health care, with special emphasis on the social structure, community, the health professions and governments.

**COMHLTH 103 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Department, Community Health.

---

**Stage II****COMHLTH 203 (2 Points)****Research Methods in Health**

A review of the different ways of approaching, designing and undertaking social science research in the health field, covering research paradigms and methodologies, including both quantitative and qualitative methods.

**COMHLTH 204 (2 Points)****Health Promotion: Philosophy and Practice**

Explains the theoretical basis of health promotion. The programme introduces conceptual analysis and applies it to the Ottawa Charter. It is explained that all health promotion rests on values, and that health promotion practice is inspired by political outlooks. Because of this it is essential that health promoters consciously adopt an explicit theory of health promotion. A theory is offered and applied to practical health promotion tasks.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 201*

**COMHLTH 205 (2 Points)****Health Care Ethics**

An introduction to health care and medical ethics. A theoretical foundation of ethics in addition to the practical ethical issues relevant to healthcare professionals.

**COMHLTH 206 (2 Points)****Communication and Health Promotion**

An understanding of the psychological aspects of illness and health behaviours. Special attention is paid to the components of effective interventions toward changing health related behaviours and conflict resolution.

*Prerequisite:* COMHLTH 102

**COMHLTH 207 (2 Points)****Life Cycle Nutrition**

Provides students with a general background and introduction to: the New Zealand diet; food preparation and meal patterns; dietary requirements during pregnancy and lactation, childhood and adolescence, lifestyle changes, maturity and ageing.

**Stage III****COMHLTH 301 (2 Points)****Health Systems 2**

The New Zealand health system in an international context. Health system reform, priority setting and rationing. Managed care and health integration. The future of health care in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite:* COMHLTH 201, 203

**COMHLTH 302 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Health Services**

This course requires students to examine or research a contemporary issue in health services, health management or health systems, and present their findings in an extended essay.

*Prerequisite:* COMHLTH 201, 203

**COMHLTH 303 (2 Points)****Health Informatics**

This course examines the health information and information systems requirements of contemporary health care services in New Zealand. It draws together material covered in a number of the courses taken earlier in the programme.

*Prerequisite:* COMHLTH 201, 203

**COMHLTH 304 (2 Points)****Applied Epidemiology**

Provides students with an understanding of the practical applications of epidemiology. Students will gain experience in analysing epidemiological data on a number of topical studies relevant to New Zealand, including nutrition and chronic disease.

*Prerequisite:* HUMANBIO 111, COMHLTH 203, STATS 102

**COMHLTH 305 (2 Points)****Community Nutrition**

Provides students with an understanding of the nutritional practices and requirements in different sectors of the New Zealand population. Includes: socio-economic factors related to dietary habits; the health impacts of Maori and Pacific dietary habits; the relationship between diet, health, malnutrition and nutrition-related diseases; and the importance of nutrition education programmes.

*Prerequisite:* HUMANBIO 111, COMHLTH 207

**Diploma Courses****COMHLTH 601 (2 Points)****Health Promotion: Strategies and Applications**

Application of health promotion principles in terms of designing projects and interventions and evaluating them.

*Restriction:* COMHLTH 714

**COMHLTH 602 (2 Points)****Health Promotion: Practice**

Supervised experience of health promotion practice, with academic input and support, using the student's own work situation or other applied health promotion setting.

*Restriction:* COMHLTH 743

**Honours and Master's Courses****COMHLTH 701 (2 Points)****Statistics in Health Science**

An introduction to statistics and statistical methods for health scientists.

**COMHLTH 703 (2 Points)****Epidemiology**

An introduction to epidemiological study design, measures of effect, screening, basic statistics for epidemiology and critical appraisal.

*Restriction:* 515.702

**COMHLTH 704 (2 Points)****Health and Society**

An introduction to key concepts in the social analysis of health and health care, with special reference to New Zealand institutions.

**COMHLTH 705 (2 Points)****Health and Public Policy**

Analysis of the policy process in New Zealand with special reference to issues of health and health care.

**COMHLTH 707 (2 Points)****Health Economics**

An introduction to basic concepts in economics and their application to health care, including the economic incentives associated with different methods of financing and organizing health systems.

**COMHLTH 708 (2 Points)****Economic Evaluation**

The application of economic methods to the evaluation of health services and programmes. The principles and techniques of economic evaluation, the process of measuring costs and benefits of health services, quality of life measurement.

**COMHLTH 710 (2 Points)****Evaluation Research Methods**

Provides an overview of evaluation research in health including evaluation research designs and assessment of economic costs and benefits. It covers both quantitative and qualitative methods. Complements topics covered in COMHLTH 744.

**COMHLTH 713 (2 Points)****Health Promotion – Theory and Models**

The concept and scope of health promotion. The history, philosophy and values of health promotion in terms of various theoretical and practice models. The emphasis is on practical applications in a variety of settings.

- COMHLTH 714 (2 Points)**  
**Health Promotion Strategies**  
 An overview of approaches and key strategies employed to promote health, with an emphasis on public policy, community action and advocacy. Practical application of the principles and techniques of design, implementation and evaluation of health promotion programmes.
- COMHLTH 715 (2 Points)**  
**Health Management**  
 The application of general management principles to the health field, with particular reference to the nature of health organizations, leadership, managing change and managing with professionals in a turbulent environment.
- COMHLTH 716 (2 Points)**  
**Health Care Organization**  
 The principles, structure, organization and funding of health systems. Special reference to how the New Zealand health system operates, and to current issues from an international perspective.
- COMHLTH 717 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Health**  
 Introduction to the mechanisms behind environmental hazards causing damage to human health. Links between industrial and agricultural development, environmental change and public health at local, national and global levels. The role of policies, legislation and public health actions in reducing environmental health risks.
- COMHLTH 718 (2 Points)**  
**Health Protection**  
 Principles of health protection as an element of public health at local and national levels. Applications to environmental health, occupational health and communicable diseases. Identification of health hazards, development of prevention strategies, and field implementation methods. Food and drinking water monitoring. Screening for exposure and early diagnosis. Immunization and quarantine programmes.
- COMHLTH 720 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care**  
 The application of epidemiological principles to clinical and other health care decision-making.
- COMHLTH 722 (2 Points)**  
**Statistics in Health Science 2**  
 Develops and builds on elementary statistical methods and prepares the student for advanced epidemiological and statistical analysis.  
*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 701*
- COMHLTH 723 (2 Points)**  
**Quality in Health Care**  
 Quality health care is examined, with an emphasis on measurement and strategies that enable health care organizations to sustain performance improvement. The course's major assignment allows students to explore the application of quality principles to an area of their own choice.
- COMHLTH 724 (2 Points)**  
**Health Information**  
 Exploration of the potential for information and information technology to assist those in health and health care to better meet their objectives by drawing together various aspects of information, technology and management.
- COMHLTH 725 (4 Points)**  
**Foundations of Public Health**  
 The scope, key themes, methods and strategies of public health. Health is presented in its broader societal context as well as from an epidemiological perspective. Areas covered in some depth include basic epidemiology, determinants of health, and health services. Environmental and occupational health, Maori health and health promotion are dealt with at an introductory level only.
- COMHLTH 731 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Economics**  
 The application of economic methods in clinical decision-making and clinical resource allocation. Key areas covered include: cost-effectiveness, cost-benefit and cost-utility analyses, decision analysis, Markov modelling and outcomes/quality of life research.
- COMHLTH 732 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Trials Design, Analysis and Management**  
 An introduction to the methodological and practical aspects of clinical trial design, analysis and management. Participants will develop the skills to evaluate research findings and design and conduct a randomized clinical trial.  
*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 720 or equivalent experience*
- COMHLTH 733 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Practice Guidelines Development and Implementation**  
 An introduction to explicit, evidence-based guideline development and evaluation. Covers the process developed by Group Health Cooperative in Seattle and used, as the recommended framework for guidelines by the New Zealand Guideline Group of the National Health Committee.
- COMHLTH 734 (2 Points)**  
**Management with Health Professionals**  
 Examines health care organizations and their cultures and subcultures, with particular reference to managing in a professional environment. The issue of implementation of evidence-based clinical practice is considered in detail.
- COMHLTH 735 (2 Points)**  
**Risk Assessment and Management**  
 Concepts and methods for quantitative assessment of health risks from environmental hazards. Application to public health practice and decision-making for resource management in case studies. The use of risk assessment in risk communication and risk management.
- COMHLTH 736 (2 Points)**  
**Traditional Medicine in New Zealand**  
 Use of traditional medicine and therapeutic medications in New Zealand. Investigation of use in a cultural context. Students will complete a small research project.
- COMHLTH 738 (2 Points)**  
**Research Project in Public Health**
- COMHLTH 739 (2 Points)**  
**Systematic Reviews and Meta-analysis**  
 An introduction to the principles and critical appraisal of systematic reviews and meta-analysis

and their role in evidence-based practice. Topics include: protocol development, question formulation, identification of evidence, selection of studies for inclusion, appraisal and quality of included studies, extraction and recording of data, synthesis (meta-analysis) and interpretation of results, and application.

*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 720 or equivalent experience*

**COMHLTH 741** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Public Health**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Community Health.

**COMHLTH 742** (2 Points)

**Principles of Health Informatics**

Scope and purpose of health informatics. Study of the technology and the information management concepts needed to deliver high quality and cost-effective healthcare. Theoretical framework needed to assess the ethical aspects of computerized clinical care.

*Restriction: INFORM 615, COMHLTH 724*

**COMHLTH 743** (2 Points)

**Health Promotion – Practicum**

Theoretical and practice principles of health promotion processes, combined with practical experience, in the context of relevant organizations, community groups and research projects.

**COMHLTH 744** (2 Points)

**Research Methods for Health Professionals**

Provides students with the skills to plan and carry out small-scale research projects. Both qualitative and quantitative research skills will be covered, with illustrative examples from a range of health services.

**COMHLTH 745** (2 Points)

**Child Health**

Need, assessment and evaluation of programmes concerning the health of infants and children and their families. Specific examples include injury and infection prevention, and child advocacy.

**COMHLTH 746** (2 Points)

**Youth Health**

Youth injury prevention, resiliency factors and reproductive issues, and advocacy for young people.

**COMHLTH 747** (2 Points)

**Healthcare Decision Support Systems**

Familiarizes students with the main developments of decision support systems in healthcare. The theoretical concepts and the technology including data mining, clinical decision support systems, diagnostic systems and decision support in managed care. Ethical issues are also addressed.

**COMHLTH 748** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Public Health**

**COMHLTH 749** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Public Health**

**COMHLTH 750** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Public Health**

**COMHLTH 790A** (3 Points)

**COMHLTH 790B** (3 Points)

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMHLTH 790 A and B*

**COMHLTH 796A** (7 Points)

**COMHLTH 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMHLTH 796 A and B*

---

**General Practice**

---

**Diploma Courses**

**GENPRAC 610** (2 Points)

**Primary Health Care Management 1**

Exploring the dynamics of managing primary health care, in particular, general practice. The theoretical and practical principles of management tools. Working in the community, in particular, with Maori and peoples of the Pacific. Exploring the ethics and history of primary health to assist with managing and leading health professionals.

**GENPRAC 611** (2 Points)

**Primary Health Care Management 2**

Developing quality improvement processes within primary health care. Topics include: integrated care, patient and community input into service provision. Introduction to research skills, resource planning, population analysis and project management, managing health professionals, the manager's role as a trainer, and influencing health policy.

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**GENPRAC 701** (2 Points)

**Special Topics in General Practice**

**GENPRAC 702** (2 Points)

**Philosophy of General Practice**

An exploration of general practice as a unique discipline within medicine with its own skills, methods and research principles. A survey of the history of general practice and its effect on our present day situation including the shift from a purely biomedical model to include the psychosocial aspect of general practice. Will be explored in terms of undergraduate and postgraduate training, personal preparation and political leadership.

**GENPRAC 703** (2 Points)

**Communication Skills for Health Professionals**

Critically analyses patient-centred approaches to communication. There will be a strong practical emphasis to the study of communication skills, including exploring participants' own styles using video analysis. Topics include: motivational interviewing for health behaviour change, handling challenging situations, assertiveness, resolving conflict, communication within the practice team, and looking after one's own needs. Introduces counselling, and reviews communicating with adolescents, Maori and peoples of other cultures, people who are mentally ill, minority and disadvantaged groups.

**GENPRAC 704** (2 Points)

**Research Methods in General Practice**

An in-depth exploration of: the asking of a research question, literature searching, study design, questionnaire development, measurement, management of data, analysis of data and publication as applicable to research in general

practice. Also included will be a study of qualitative methodologies and ethical issues in relation to general practice research.

**GENPRAC 705 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Teaching and Learning**

Covers the basic principles of adult education and the ways they can be applied to promote effective learning in the clinical setting, for example the application of learning styles theory to selection of teaching methods. The same principles will apply to all education including patient education.

**GENPRAC 706 (2 Points)**  
**Health Educational Programme Planning and Evaluation**

Deals with the planning activities necessary to bring about specific learning outcomes in students. The influences on these activities, together with approaches to and constraints on implementation of the programme, are considered. Methods of programme evaluation, together with their strengths and weaknesses, are covered.

**GENPRAC 707 (2 Points)**  
**Guideline Theory and Practice**

The components of guideline development and implementation are covered in this course including: problem identification, suitability screening, data acquisition and literature evaluation, use of the balance sheet, guideline writing, implementation and evaluation. This course will include practical examples and will prepare students for facilitating guideline development and implementation.

**GENPRAC 708 (2 Points)**  
**Quality and Health Outcomes**

A study of the different models for defining quality in health care, followed by an exploration of the parameters of quality in general practice. The role of the various quality processes such as total quality management, continuous quality improvement, use of audit tools and the place of minimum standards. The use of quality measurements of structure, process and health outcomes.

**GENPRAC 709 (2 Points)**  
**Practice Management and Organization**

The organization of general practice is a constant challenge to general practitioners. The role of strategic planning, management structure and function, staff management and relations, teamwork and leadership, marketing, management accounting, information systems and the external environment as a means to improve practice delivery.

**GENPRAC 710 (2 Points)**  
**Principles of Dermatological Practice**

Structure and function of the skin, principles of diagnosis, diagnostic procedures, medical therapy (systemic and topical) and surgical therapy including cryosurgery.

**GENPRAC 712 (2 Points)**  
**Paediatric Dermatology**

Common cutaneous infections: bacterial, fungal, viral (including exanthems), bites and infestations, naevi, atopic dermatitis, acne, rashes in babies.

**GENPRAC 721 (2 Points)**  
**Primary Mental Health 1**

The common mental health presentations of general practice: mood disorders, sleep disturbance, fatigue,

somatization/unexplained physical symptoms, anxiety disorders, detection and management of psychoses, comorbidity and management of psychiatric emergencies. Includes: mental health epidemiology, recognition, assessment and diagnosis of these disorders.

**GENPRAC 722 (2 Points)**  
**Primary Mental Health 2**

The recognition, assessment and brief intervention in disorders of alcohol and substance abuse and gambling. An introduction to the management of eating disorders, sexual abuse, impulse control disorders, anger and aggression. Cultural aspects of mental health, particularly in relation to the Treaty of Waitangi and new migrants.

**GENPRAC 723 (4 Points)**  
**Mental Health Therapeutics**

The practical skills of assessment, problem solving, cognitive therapy, stress reduction techniques, case management and family therapy. Evidence-based prescribing of psychotropic agents. Students will be expected to participate in a number of community clinical experiences (including emergency care and community mental health clinics) and complete a logbook of clinical activities.

**GENPRAC 730 (2 Points)**  
**Management of Opioid Dependency**

This course takes a harm-reduction approach in reviewing current treatment protocols and recent developments in research on options for treating opioid dependency. Content will include a detailed analysis of the use of opioid substitutes such as methadone, LAAM and buprenorphine. It will examine the theoretical and evidential base for these strategies and will include teaching on the pharmacology, case management and counselling approaches with this group. It is designed primarily for general practitioners who are prescribing opioid substitutes and for other health professionals working with opioid-dependent clients.

**GENPRAC 735 (2 Points)**  
**Health and Lifestyle**

Theory and research regarding lifestyle issues influencing health and the information base for the delivery of health advice. Topics include: the epidemiology of risk and protection factors affecting physical and mental health; responses to alcohol, tobacco, gambling and other drug issues; reproductive health and the evidence on other lifestyle behaviours affecting health.

**GENPRAC 736 (2 Points)**  
**Health Promotion and Education**

The delivery of health interventions and the development of the processes used in providing health advice and education. Critical appraisal of the effectiveness of strategies for assisting lifestyle changes such as weight reduction, substance use and increasing exercise. Students will examine the issues and practicalities associated with introducing health interventions into primary health contexts.

**GENPRAC 737 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Department, General Practice.

- GENPRAC 738** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
 As prescribed by the Head of Department, General Practice.
- GENPRAC 739A** (2 Points)  
**GENPRAC 739B** (2 Points)  
**Managing Lifestyle Change**  
 Develops the clinical skills required in the management of lifestyle choices. Lifestyle assessment and intervention planning, forms of recording and office systems, techniques of early recognition and identification, strategies for brief counselling and other brief interventions, and advanced skills in motivational interviewing.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GENPRAC 739 A and B*
- GENPRAC 740** (2 Points)  
**Travel Medicine**  
 Proactive travellers' health care. Aspects of: the influence of travel and disease, travellers' health, risks and illnesses, immunization theory and available vaccines, informatics of travellers' health (running a travel health service), generic health advice (mosquito protection, safe water, medical kits, insurance, air travel, sea travel, problem travellers and fitness to travel, extreme travellers, injury, sexually transmissible diseases and travel, HIV infection and the international traveller, the returning traveller, safety and security).
- GENPRAC 741** (2 Points)  
**Tropical Medicine**  
 Proactive and preventative management of tropical diseases. Aspects of: diseases spread by food, water, and soil, travellers' diarrhoea, diseases transmitted through person to person contact, vector-borne diseases, diseases spread by animals, malaria, diseases commonly presenting as fevers, diseases commonly presenting as diarrhoea, parasitic worms, anaemia in the tropics, skin conditions in the tropics, poisonous bites and plants.
- GENPRAC 742** (2 Points)  
**International Mobility and the Control of Diseases**  
 Consideration of the theory and clinical practice of migration medicine. The impact of international mobility on the health of travellers and migrants, common diseases of migrants, the medical assessment and screening of migrants and refugees, the work of humanitarian organizations, refugees in the face of war, relief workers in a field of conflict, migrant post-traumatic stress disorder, special immigration problems and legal issues relating to refugees.
- GENPRAC 743** (2 Points)  
**Current Topics in Travel and Tropical Medicine**  
 In-depth examination of the literature relating to specified topics in current travel and tropical medicine. Directed reading of research publications with emphasis placed on critical analysis of the development of key concepts and techniques.
- GENPRAC 749** (2 Points)  
**Acute Orthopaedics**  
 Assessment and management of injuries and acute conditions of the musculoskeletal system. Includes: clinical examination techniques, radiological features, management of a wide assortment of sprains and fractures, acute arthritis and paediatric orthopaedic conditions.  
*Restriction: GENPRAC 751*
- GENPRAC 750** (2 Points)  
**Acute Plastics**  
 Assessment and management of acute plastic surgical conditions. Includes: assessment and management of hand, facial and dental injuries, burns, a wide variety of wounds, tetanus prophylaxis and wound infections.  
*Restriction: GENPRAC 751*
- GENPRAC 753** (2 Points)  
**Practical Orthopaedics and Plastics**  
 Specific practical skills including: joint and limb examination skills, common joint reductions, splint and plaster application, wound repair, x-ray diagnosis. A log book of attendance at specialist clinics and practical work experience is required.  
*Prerequisite: GENPRAC 749 and 750*  
*Restriction: GENPRAC 603 and 751*
- GENPRAC 754** (2 Points)  
**Acute Medical**  
 Assessment and management of a broad range of acute conditions and related issues including: chest pain, dyspnoea, collapse, coma, anaphylaxis, diabetes, toxicology, psychiatry, genito-urinary conditions, domestic abuse, medico-legal and forensic issues. In addition, a log-book of practical work experience is required.  
*Restriction: GENPRAC 752*
- GENPRAC 755** (2 Points)  
**Acute Surgical**  
 Assessment and management of a broad range of acute conditions and related issues including: generalized trauma, head injury, fluid resuscitation, abdominal pain, ophthalmology, ENT, gynaecology, pregnancy, near-drowning and diving-related conditions. In addition, a log-book of practical work experience and supervised practical skills requires completion.  
*Restriction: GENPRAC 752*
- GENPRAC 756** (2 Points)  
**Immediate Care**  
 Assessment and management of emergencies in the field. Includes: airway management, initial stabilization, transport systems, care of the patient in transit, disaster medicine and mass incident management.
- GENPRAC 760** (2 Points)  
**Ethics, Culture and Societal Approaches to Death**  
 Approaches to death by Maori and other cultures. Resource and legal issues in the New Zealand context. Ethical issues: euthanasia versus palliative care, privacy, living wills and end of life medical decision-making, particularly treatment abatement. Duties after death, the nature of teamwork, the multidisciplinary nature of palliative care, the role of volunteers, emotional self care for palliative care providers, and home versus residential care.
- GENPRAC 761** (2 Points)  
**Psychosocial Issues in Palliative Care**  
 The psychological and social study of patients with cancer or active, progressive disease, unresponsive to curative treatment. Existential philosophy and models of coping with suffering, communication in palliative care, psychiatric disorders in palliative care, and bereavement.

**GENPRAC 762 (2 Points)****Clinical Symptom Management in Palliative Care 1**

Management of pain, nausea and vomiting, respiratory symptoms, bowel care, mouth and skin care, cognitive mood and sleep disorders, oncological emergencies, palliative care for non malignant conditions, HIV/AIDs, and paediatric palliative care.

**GENPRAC 763 (2 Points)****Reflective Practice in Palliative Care**

Advanced study in an appropriate area of palliative care that is of special interest to the student as approved by the Head of Division.

**GENPRAC 770 (2 Points)****Principles of Gerontology**

The basic biology, demographics, social policy, sociology, psychology and economics of ageing.

*Restriction: GENPRAC 605*

**GENPRAC 771 (2 Points)****Health Services for Elderly People**

Regulatory and accreditation requirements for facilities caring for the elderly in a wide variety of organizations and models of care for the elderly. Critical review of innovative services in elderly care.

*Restriction: GENPRAC 605*

**GENPRAC 772 (2 Points)****Mental Health in Old Age**

The psychological aspects of ageing, common psychiatric presentations in the elderly, sleep disturbance, grief and loss, anxiety disorders, drug and alcohol abuse, depression, delirium, dementia, behavioural disorders, psychosis, and medico-legal aspects.

*Restriction: GENPRAC 606*

**GENPRAC 773 (2 Points)****Rehabilitation in Later Life**

The rehabilitation of elderly people having suffered from stroke, amputation, fractures and invasive procedures. Includes a practical attachment to a rehabilitation unit for the elderly.

**GENPRAC 774 (2 Points)****Medical Care of the Elderly 1**

The clinical pharmacology, altered disease presentation, interpretation of laboratory data, surgical and anaesthetic risk, analgesia, infections, falls, vascular disease, oral and dental disorders commonly seen in the elderly.

*Restriction: GENPRAC 606*

**GENPRAC 775 (2 Points)****Medical Care of the Elderly 2**

Ophthalmic disease, respiratory disease in the elderly, orthopaedic disorders, rheumatic disorders, health issues of the elderly male and female, sexually transmitted diseases and the utility of medical imaging procedures in the care of the elderly.

**GENPRAC 776 (2 Points)****Medical Care of the Elderly 3**

Medical aspects of assessment of the psycho-geriatric patient, psychopharmacology, medical matters in the depressed and anxious patient, depression and bipolar affective disorder, differential diagnosis of delirium and dementia and its medical and pharmacological management, treatment of psychotic disorders, Parkinson's disease and Parkinsonism, and gait disorders.

**GENPRAC 777 (2 Points)****Sociology and Psychology of Ageing**

Exploration and review of sociological and psychological theoretical concepts relating to the ageing process, and the assimilation of this knowledge with key stages of development in later life. Draws on theories and concepts surrounding personality development.

**GENPRAC 778 (2 Points)****Biology of Ageing**

The systematic analysis of the physiological changes in ageing and the relationship of these changes to current beliefs and theories around the ageing process. Current issues around biogerontology are discussed.

**GENPRAC 780 (2 Points)****Upper Limb and Spine**

The management of acute and chronic sporting injuries of the upper limb and spine including: initial management, surgical intervention, and rehabilitation.

*Restriction: 520.608, GENPRAC 758*

**GENPRAC 781 (2 Points)****Lower Limb and Physiotherapy**

The management of acute and chronic sporting injuries of the lower limb including: initial management, surgical intervention, and rehabilitation. Physiotherapy principles in relation to diagnosis, management and rehabilitation are covered.

*Restriction: 520.608, GENPRAC 758*

**GENPRAC 782 (2 Points)****Sports Medicine in the Community**

The role of the doctor and physiotherapist in community settings including: their role in team sports, community sports event medical cover, environmental medicine, exercise for health, exercise physiology and sports psychology.

*Restriction: 520.607, GENPRAC 757*

**GENPRAC 783 (2 Points)****Medical Issues in Sport**

Management of medical conditions in sports people and the interaction of exercise and medical conditions, including diabetes, asthma and infections. Other topics covered include: pain management, immunology, rheumatology, ENT, the female athlete, haematology, pharmacology and drugs in sport.

*Restriction: 520.607, GENPRAC 757*

**GENPRAC 784A (3 Points)****GENPRAC 784B (3 Points)****Practical Sports Medicine**

Application of the academic learning of courses GENPRAC 780, 781, 782 and 783 through clinical attachments with leading practitioners in the fields of orthopaedics, sports medicine, physiotherapy and podiatry.

*Corequisite: GENPRAC 780, 781, 782, 783*

*Restriction: GENPRAC 609*

*To complete this course students must enrol in GENPRAC 784 A and B*

**GENPRAC 785 (2 Points)****Clinical Symptom Management in Palliative Care 2**

Advanced concepts of the management of symptoms in a variety of palliative care situations.

**GENPRAC 786 (2 Points)****Child and Adolescent Palliative Care**

An examination of specific palliative care issues related to the care of children, adolescents, and their families.

**GENPRAC 787 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Palliative Care**

As prescribed by the Head of Department, General Practice and Primary Health Care.

**Health Management****Honours and Master's Courses****HLTHMGT 790A (2 Points)****HLTHMGT 790B (2 Points)****Dissertation**

A topic related to health management or organization. To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHMGT 790 A and B

**Health Psychology****Stage I****HLTHPSYC 102 (2 Points)****Introduction to Health Care Ethics**

Using a succession of cases from health care practice this course enhances practical reasoning skills. Basic techniques of philosophical analysis, theories of ethics and the principles of health care ethics are explained and discussed.

Restriction: PSYCHIAT 102

**Honours and Master's Courses****HLTHPSYC 714 (2 Points)****Health Psychology**

A review of the psychological factors involved in health and illness. Topics include: the understanding of patient behaviour in medical settings, preventative health behaviour, cognitive models of illness, stress and illness, communication and adherence to treatment, the psychology of physical symptoms and coping with chronic disease.

**HLTHPSYC 715 (2 Points)****Research Methods in Health Psychology**

A review of the principal methods used in the design, conduct and analysis of studies in the health psychology area. This will focus on quantitative research, but qualitative methodologies will also be addressed.

**HLTHPSYC 716 (2 Points)****Psychoneuroimmunology**

Outlines the nature of the human immune system, its measurement and limitations of current practices and models. The main focus of the course is the extent to which psychological processes such as stress, emotions, and social interactions have been found to influence immune behaviour and the implications of these findings for health and wellbeing. Various theoretical frameworks through which psycho-immune relationships might be understood are presented and discussed.

**HLTHPSYC 742A (2 Points)****HLTHPSYC 742B (2 Points)****Professional Practice in Health Psychology**

Focuses on the professional intervention skills necessary to practice health psychology. Topics include: interviewing and assessment skills, formulation of problems, design and evaluation of interventions and models for interdisciplinary and multidisciplinary functioning. Relevant contexts include: hospitals, hospices, consultancies, general practice, etc.

To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHPSYC 742 A and B

**HLTHPSYC 743 (2 Points)****Psychopathology and Clinical Interviewing**

Common psychological disorders encountered in clinical practice and health settings. Practical teaching of clinical interview and diagnostic skills is completed in class.

**HLTHPSYC 744 (2 Points)****Research Topic in Health Psychology**

This course offers the opportunity for academic staff to provide a specific course of study for one or several students. It is available only by arrangement between the staff member(s) and students.

**HLTHPSYC 745A (5 Points)****HLTHPSYC 745B (5 Points)****Practicum in Health Psychology**

A practical component of supervised applied work of not less than 1,500 hours in approved health settings, and other work as required. A detailed written report of the work undertaken will be required of the student.

To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHPSYC 745 A and B

**HLTHPSYC 756 (2 Points)****Self-organizing Systems in Biology and Health**

The nature of self-organization in living systems will be addressed. Examines how the principles of self-organization apply at molecular, cellular and organismal levels and that by exploring these we can better understand what constitutes health and illness.

**HLTHPSYC 757 (2 Points)****Psychosomatic Processes**

Focuses on the psychological, social and biological mechanisms behind illnesses that present with medically unexplained symptoms. Such illnesses include: chronic fatigue syndrome, chronic pain, irritable bowel syndrome and the somatoform disorders. The diagnostic controversy surrounding these disorders and treatment approaches for these conditions will be addressed.

**HLTHPSYC 758 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Health Psychology****HLTHPSYC 796A (7 Points)****HLTHPSYC 796B (7 Points)****MSc Thesis in Health Psychology**

To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHPSYC 796 A and B

**Health Sciences****Diploma Courses****HLTHSCI 600 (2 Points)****Research Essay**

A substantial supervised essay centred in a culture of practice and written on a topic approved by the Director of the Graduate Diploma in Health Sciences Programme. The student is required to demonstrate mastery of the relevant subject matter; to evaluate the findings and discussions in the literature; to research, analyse and argue from evidence; to apply the knowledge gained; and to engage in rigorous intellectual analysis.

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

HLTHSCI 790A (3 Points)

HLTHSCI 790B (3 Points)

#### Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHSCI 790 A and B

HLTHSCI 796A (7 Points)

HLTHSCI 796B (7 Points)

#### Thesis

To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHSCI 796 A and B

---

## Human Biology

### Part I

*Note: These Part I courses are available for students within the overlapping Year 1 scheme. Students intending to apply for medicine must enrol in courses from the BHSc or BSc in Biomedical Science, as outlined in the MBChB regulations.*

HUMANBIO 111 (2 Points)

#### Population Health

Introduction to the principles and uses of epidemiology, which is the major population-based science of public health and health care. Description and analysis of the influence of socio-economic factors on health and health care.

HUMANBIO 122 (2 Points)

#### Behaviour, Health and Development

Introduction to the relationship between behaviour and the major biological, cognitive and social-emotional processes, applying them to health and development across the life span. Focuses on aspects of behaviour and development particularly relevant for the health care professional.

HUMANBIO 142 (2 Points)

#### Biology for Biomedical Science: Organ Systems

Introduction to human biology with particular emphasis on integrated organ function. The course will deal with: structures and processes associated with the function of the nervous, locomotor, cardiovascular, respiratory, digestive, renal, endocrine and reproduction systems.

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

HUMANBIO 790A (4 Points)

HUMANBIO 790B (4 Points)

#### Honours Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in HUMANBIO 790 A and B

---

## MBChB

### Part II

*Note: MBChB students must complete 14 points in Part I before enrolling in Part II.*

MBChB 201 (2 Points)

#### Disease Processes and Therapeutic Principles

Introduction to the description and pathogenesis of general disease processes as a basis for the systematic study of human disease. General principles and mechanisms of drug action and therapeutic intervention in the management of human illness.

MBChB 202 (2 Points)

#### The Cardiovascular System

Multidisciplinary approach to the scientific basis of normal and abnormal structure and function of the human cardiovascular system. This is focused around clinically important cardiovascular diseases and includes relevant clinical examination skills. Population and behavioural perspectives of cardiovascular health will also be considered.

MBChB 203 (2 Points)

#### The Musculoskeletal System

Integrated study of the human musculoskeletal system with emphasis on the structural and functional aspects that underpin common clinical problems such as: fractures; soft tissue, nerve and joint injuries; hernias; osteo- and rheumatoid-arthritis; and osteoporosis. Practical work links anatomy, radiology, physiology and pathology and includes appropriate clinical skills.

MBChB 204 (2 Points)

#### The Respiratory System

Integrated approach to the normal and abnormal structure and function of the airways, lungs and respiratory pump and an introduction to common diseases that affect the human respiratory system.

MBChB 205 (2 Points)

#### Gastroenterology and Nutrition

Multidisciplinary study of digestion and absorption of food components, their metabolic roles and actions. Nutritional significance of macro- and micro-nutrients. The structure and function of the gastrointestinal system in health and disease, with relevant clinical examples. Includes fundamental anatomical, biochemical and pathological principles of gastrointestinal structure, digestion and nutrition.

MBChB 206 (2 Points)

#### The Genito-urinary System

Multidisciplinary approach to the normal and abnormal structure and function of the renal and genital systems, including an overview of important diseases, their therapy, and population and behavioural perspectives. Clinically important examples and relevant clinical examination skills will be taught.

MBChB 207 (1 Point)

#### Practitioner Development 1

Multidisciplinary approach to personal and professional development. Topics include: ethics, communication skills, personal development, health promotion and consideration of cultural issues, with emphasis on clinical interactions and the development of professional skills for medical practitioners.

MBChB 208 (1 Point)

#### Medical Humanities Electives

A variety of options from the study of medical humanities.

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

**Part III****MBCHB 301 (1 Point)****Special Senses**

Multidisciplinary approach to scientific basis of normal and abnormal structures and functions of the systems of the head and neck. Emphasis is placed on the major structures and those of particular clinical relevance. Each major component such as cranium, meninges, face and neck, orbit and eye, ear, nose and smell, throat and taste sensation, pharynx, larynx, thyroid and salivary glands, and the cranial nerves, face and neck are described. Clinically important examples and clinical examination skills will be taught during this course.

**MBCHB 302 (2 Points)****Medical Neuroscience**

A coordinated, multidisciplinary approach to the central and peripheral nervous systems. Provides a firm scientific understanding of the structure and function of the nervous system with particular emphasis on clinical problem solving, clinical examination skills and clinically important aspects of the nervous system.

**MBCHB 303 (2 Points)****Reproduction, Development and Ageing**

An integrated study of the biology of reproduction, development and ageing. Emphasis is placed on understanding the endocrine regulatory mechanisms of the hypothalamic/pituitary/gonadal axis and the control of oogenesis and spermatogenesis, on the endocrinology and physiology of the menstrual cycle and pregnancy, and on the control of growth, development and ageing from conception through puberty, menopause and beyond. Aspects of metabolic endocrinology are also covered and include glucose and calcium metabolism, and thyroid and adrenal function. Throughout there is a strong emphasis on clinical relevance and clinical sessions are an important component of the course.

**MBCHB 304 (1 Point)****Medical Genetics**

The application of genetics and genomics in medicine. Genome structure, transcription and the proteome will be reviewed in the context of technologies that have been developed for their analysis. Clinical examples and leading research will be used to explore the fields of disease gene discovery (including complex genetic disorders), prenatal diagnosis, molecular diagnostics in microbiology and cancer genetics. New therapeutic opportunities, including gene therapy, will be discussed, along with consideration of ethical issues that surround the field of molecular medicine.

**MBCHB 305 (2 Points)****Regulation of Body Function**

An integrated treatment of the regulation of human body function and its modification by drugs. Topics include: the regulation of gastrointestinal function; electrolytes and fluid volume; cardiovascular function; respiration; energy balance and body weight; body temperature; and the physiology of exercise. Clinical problem sessions are an important component of this course. Common illnesses are analysed in detail to demonstrate that knowledge of normal function provides a basis for understanding and managing these disorders.

**MBCHB 306 (2 Points)****Blood, Immunity and Infection**

An integrated and multidisciplinary approach to the normal and abnormal function of the haematopoietic and immune systems, and how bacteria and viruses produce infections. Teaching and learning will be based around clinical examples, and will include instruction in relevant examination skills.

**MBCHB 307 (1 Point)****Practitioner Development 2**

A continuation of the coordinated multidisciplinary approach to personal and professional development, with an increasing emphasis on the clinical context. Topics include: ethics, communication skills, personal development, health psychology and consideration of cultural issues. Teaching will be focused around clinical interactions and the development of professional skills.

**MBCHB 308 (1 Point)****Part III Option 1**

A variety of options, including opportunities for research experience and the study of humanities and medicine, will be offered.

**MBCHB 309 (1 Point)****Part III Option 2**

A variety of options, including opportunities for research experience and the study of humanities and medicine, will be offered.

**MBCHB 310 (1 Point)****Clinical Methods**

An introduction to clinical medicine during which knowledge, attitudes and core procedural skills necessary to work in a clinical environment will be covered. Students will further develop skills in obtaining a history from and examining patients. This course is undertaken in both the medical school and the hospital environments.

**Part IV****MBCHB 401A (7 Points)****MBCHB 401B (7 Points)****MBChB Part IV**

Students spend thirty weeks in seven clinical attachments, in emergency medicine, anaesthesia, musculoskeletal medicine, psychiatry, family medicine, medicine and surgery. These attachments are complemented by six weeks of topic teaching on campus. There is also a compulsory Maori and Pacific Health module.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MBCHB 401 A and B*

**Part V****MBCHB 501A (7 Points)****MBCHB 501B (7 Points)****MBChB Part V**

Students spend a further thirty weeks in clinical attachments. These are obstetrics and gynaecology, specialty medicine, geriatric medicine, paediatrics, family medicine, and specialty surgery. There is a four week selective experience and projects in professional development to be completed. There are five weeks of topic teaching on campus.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MBCHB 501 A and B*

**Part VI****MBCHB 551A** (7 Points)**MBCHB 551B** (7 Points)**MBChB Part VI**

The 52-week trainee intern year is divided into four quarters of 12 weeks each and includes four weeks' holiday. One quarter is an "elective" period when students may undertake optional training in an area of medicine of their choice. The remaining 36 weeks are spent participating under supervision, in the care of sick people in hospitals, community facilities and the home. Students undertake patient care in the disciplines of: medicine, surgery, psychiatry, general practice, paediatrics, and obstetrics and gynaecology.

To complete this course students must enrol in MBCHB 551 A and B

**Medicine****Honours and Master's Courses****MEDICINE 703** (2 Points)**Special Topics in Medicine**

Advanced study in a specific area usually related to the field of study of the thesis.

**MEDICINE 706** (2 Points)**Occupational Medicine**

Occupational Medicine practice, management and industrial relations, and principles of workplace assessment. Also includes: occupational toxicity, rehabilitation, health surveillance, occupational hygiene, risk management, occupational psychological medicine, occupational epidemiology, statistics and research practice in occupational medicine.

Restriction: MEDICINE 601

**MEDICINE 707** (2 Points)**Clinical Occupational Medicine 1**

Diagnosis and management in occupational medicine. Topics include: noise and vibration, occupational cancers, cardiovascular fitness, environmental health hazards, occupational respiratory diseases, vision in the workplace, and illness and injuries from flying and diving. This course is run in the inter-semester break.

Prerequisite: MEDICINE 706

Restriction: MEDICINE 602

**MEDICINE 708** (2 Points)**Clinical Occupational Medicine 2**

Diagnosis and management in occupational medicine. Topics include: noise and vibration, occupational cancers, cardiovascular fitness, environmental health hazards, occupational respiratory diseases, vision in the workplace, and illness and injuries from flying and diving.

Prerequisite: MEDICINE 706, 707

Restriction: MEDICINE 603

**MEDICINE 709A** (1 Point)**MEDICINE 709B** (1 Point)**Project: A Rehabilitation Programme**

The student will nominate a specific workplace in the area in which they live, approved by the Head of Discipline and the workplace management. The student is required to design a rehabilitation programme for the nominated workplace.

Prerequisite: MEDICINE 706, 707, 708 or NURSING 711, 712, 713

Restriction: MEDICINE 604, 730

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDICINE 709 A and B

**MEDICINE 710A** (1 Point)**MEDICINE 710B** (1 Point)**Project: A Health Surveillance System**

The student will nominate a specific workplace in the area in which they live, approved by the Head of Discipline and the workplace management. The student is required to design a health surveillance system for the nominated workplace.

Prerequisite: MEDICINE 706, 707, 708 or NURSING 711, 712, 713

Restriction: MEDICINE 605, 730

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDICINE 710 A and B

**MEDICINE 711A** (1 Point)**MEDICINE 711B** (1 Point)**Project: A Hazard Control System**

The student will nominate a specific workplace in the area in which they live, approved by the Head of Discipline and the workplace management. The student is required to design a hazard control system for the nominated workplace.

Prerequisite: MEDICINE 706, 707, 708 or NURSING 711, 712, 713

Restriction: MEDICINE 606, 730

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDICINE 711 A and B

**MEDICINE 712A** (1 Point)**MEDICINE 712B** (1 Point)**Project: A Reactive Health Service**

The student will nominate a specific workplace in the area in which they live, approved by the Head of Discipline and the workplace management. The student is required to design a reactive health service for the nominated workplace.

Prerequisite: MEDICINE 706, 707, 708 or NURSING 711, 712, 713

Restriction: MEDICINE 607, 730

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDICINE 712 A and B

**MEDICINE 713** (2 Points)**Cardiovascular Medicine**

Cardiovascular anatomy and physiology with a detailed study of the pathophysiology of common cardiovascular conditions and management principles. Areas of study include atherosclerosis, hypertension, coronary artery disease and heart failure.

Restriction: MEDICINE 701

**MEDICINE 714** (2 Points)**MEDICINE 714A** (1 Point)**MEDICINE 714B** (1 Point)**Health Surveillance of Divers and Hyperbaric Workers**

Health surveillance practice in Occupational Medicine and specifically for diving and hyperbaric workers. Physics, physiology and medicine of hyperbaria and immersion. Recognition, assessment and explanation of risk for an individual in diving and other hyperbaric work.

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDICINE 714 A and B, or MEDICINE 714

**MEDICINE 715** (2 Points)

**MEDICINE 715A** (1 Point)

**MEDICINE 715B** (1 Point)

**Physiology and Medicine of Diving**

The physics, physiology and medicine of hyperbaria and immersion. Common dysbaric illnesses and injuries. Dangerous marine animals. Causes, recognition and management of these and other diving related health problems.

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDICINE 715 A and B, or MEDICINE 715*

**MEDICINE 716** (2 Points)

**MEDICINE 716A** (1 Point)

**MEDICINE 716B** (1 Point)

**Hyperbaric Medicine**

The evolution and biology of oxygen. The theoretical basis and clinical experience of the application of oxygen to the management of disease and injury.

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDICINE 716 A and B, or MEDICINE 716*

**MEDICINE 717** (4 Points)

**MEDICINE 717A** (2 Points)

**MEDICINE 717B** (2 Points)

**Clinical Diving and Hyperbaric Practice**

Logbook-based assessment of clinical training competencies in diving and hyperbaric medicine at a hyperbaric unit approved by the Department.

*Prerequisite: MEDICINE 714, 715, 716*

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDICINE 717 A and B, or MEDICINE 717*

**MEDICINE 718** (4 Points)

**MEDICINE 718A** (2 Points)

**MEDICINE 718B** (2 Points)

**Research Essay in Diving and Hyperbaric Medicine**

A research essay on a subject relevant to diving and hyperbaric medicine. Can be based on a literature review, providing the review is extensive and critical. Topics for the research essay require Departmental approval.

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDICINE 718 A and B, or MEDICINE 718*

**MEDICINE 719** (8 Points)

**MEDICINE 719A** (4 Points)

**MEDICINE 719B** (4 Points)

**Research Project in Diving and Hyperbaric Medicine**

A supervised research project on a subject relevant to diving and hyperbaric medicine. Topics for the research project require Departmental approval.

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDICINE 719 A and B, or MEDICINE 719*

**MEDICINE 720** (2 Points)

**Work Shifts, Fatigue and Performance**

Changes in human performance potentials across the 24-hour day as a function of sleep regulation processes and circadian rhythms are examined. Workplace consequences are considered in terms of stress, fatigue and shiftwork. Attention is given to good roster design principles, workplace fatigue management strategies and the relationship to occupational health and safety legislation in New Zealand.

**MEDICINE 730A** (2 Points)

**MEDICINE 730B** (2 Points)

**Project: A Comprehensive Workplace Assessment**

The student will nominate a specific workplace in the area in which they live, approved by the Head of Discipline and the workplace management. The student is required to design a comprehensive workplace health and safety plan, that includes identification of hazards, a health surveillance system, a reactive health system and a workplace rehabilitation plan.

*Prerequisite: MEDICINE 706, 707, 708 or NURSING 711, 712, 713*

*Restriction: MEDICINE 604, 605, 606, 607, 709, 710, 711, 712*

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDICINE 730 A and B*

**MEDICINE 731** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Occupational Health**

Advanced study in a specific area of occupational health as approved by the Head of Discipline.

**MEDICINE 732** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Occupational Health**

Advanced study in a specific area of occupational health as approved by the Head of Discipline.

**MEDICINE 733** (2 Points)

**MEDICINE 733A** (1 Point)

**MEDICINE 733B** (1 Point)

**Research Project in Occupational Health**

Supervised research on a topic approved by the Head of Discipline.

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDICINE 733 A and B, or MEDICINE 733*

**MEDICINE 734** (2 Points)

**MEDICINE 734A** (1 Point)

**MEDICINE 734B** (1 Point)

**Research Project in Occupational Health**

Supervised research on a topic approved by the Head of Discipline.

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDICINE 734 A and B, or MEDICINE 734*

**MEDICINE 737** (4 Points)

**Aviation Medicine**

Diagnosis and management of conditions relevant to, and examination of regulatory and research issues in, aviation medicine. Topics include: the role of the Aviation Medical Examiner (levels I & II), aviation-related functional assessments, the aviation safety audit process, New Zealand regulatory requirements, and medically relevant Aviation Human Factors issues, including accident investigation.

---

**Medical Science**

*Diploma Courses*

**MEDSCI 691A** (2 Points)

**MEDSCI 691B** (2 Points)

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Medical Science)**

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDSCI 691 A and B*

---

*Honours and Master's Courses*

**MEDSCI 790A** (4 Points)

**MEDSCI 790B** (4 Points)

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDSCI 790 A and B

**MEDSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**MEDSCI 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDSCI 796 A and B

**Special Topics**

**MEDSCI 896A (7 Points)**

**MEDSCI 896B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDSCI 896 A and B

**Managed Care**

**Stage II**

**MGCARE 201 (2 Points)**

**Habilitation and Rehabilitation**

Basic concepts of habilitation and rehabilitation, including: approaches taken in New Zealand and internationally toward current best practice and trends; discussion and definitions of terms commonly used such as impairment, disability and handicap; major players in the rehabilitation area, including the role for each group; people living with disability.

*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 101*

**Stage III**

**MGCARE 301 (2 Points)**

**Society and Coordinated Care**

The experience of people who live with disability, including the importance of vocational training and rehabilitation, the educational needs for children living with disability and the educational requirements relating to rehabilitation.

*Prerequisite: MGCARE 201*

**MGCARE 302 (2 Points)**

**Assessment of Disability**

Methods of assessing impairment, disability and handicap. Strategies for selecting and implementing interventions, including gaining the Cupertino and support of all parties to a treatment or rehabilitation plan. Factors that influence rehabilitation and how to intervene when rehabilitation is not progressing as expected. Discussion of the process used in planning, implementing and assessing care provided and assessing the cost effectiveness.

*Prerequisite: MGCARE 201*

**Diploma Courses**

**MGCARE 611A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 611B (1 Point)**

**Introduction to Legislation and Managed Care**

The practice of managed care in the context of New Zealand legislation. Students will be introduced to health models, occupational and domestic sources of morbidity in the community, techniques for disability assessment, principles of rehabilitation, cultural safety and industrial relations.

*Restriction: 517.601 and MGCARE 701*

To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 611 A and B

**MGCARE 612A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 612B (1 Point)**

**Introduction to Case Management**

Models of managed care. Subjects included are: personal requirements for health case managers, models of managed care and contributory subjects such as team management and leadership techniques, and methods of counselling, mediation and conflict resolution.

*Restriction: 517.602 and MGCARE 702*

To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 612 A and B

**MGCARE 613A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 613B (1 Point)**

**Introduction to the Management of Disability**

Management of disability. Subjects will include the common accidental causes of occupational, recreational, vehicular and domestic morbidity in New Zealand, and introduces students to methods of assessing function and managing disability.

*Restriction: 517.603 and MGCARE 703*

To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 613 A and B

**MGCARE 614A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 614B (1 Point)**

**First Principles of Rehabilitation**

Rehabilitation practice as it has and could evolve in NZ. Subjects include various approaches to rehabilitation practice and special interest areas such as head injury, spinal cord injury and pain management.

*Restriction: 517.604 and MGCARE 704*

To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 614A and B

**MGCARE 615A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 615B (1 Point)**

**Introduction to Health Systems in New Zealand**

Existing health systems in NZ. Subjects include health and safety related legislation and the NZ health and safety culture. Health services in NZ, health surveillance, methods of hazard and risk management, principles of toxicology and environmental medicine and ergonomics.

*Restriction: 517.605 and MGCARE 705*

To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 615A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**MGCARE 701A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 701B (1 Point)**

**Legislation and Managed Care**

The New Zealand legislation that is relevant to managed care and especially that related to health and disability, health and safety in employment, human rights, privacy, unemployment and accident rehabilitation and compensation.

*Restriction: 517.601*

To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 701 A and B

**MGCARE 702A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 702B (1 Point)**

**Principles of Case Management**

Concentrates on models of managed care. Subjects include: personal requirements for health case managers and models of managed care as well as contributory subjects such as team management

Course Prescriptions  
For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

and leadership techniques, and methods of counselling, mediation and conflict resolution.

*Restriction: 517.602*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 702 A and B*

**MGCARE 703A** (1 Point)  
**MGCARE 703B** (1 Point)

#### Assessment and Management of Disability

Concentrates on the assessment and management of disability. Subjects include: the common accidental causes of occupational, recreational, vehicular and domestic morbidity in New Zealand and an introduction to methods of assessing function and managing disability.

*Restriction: 517.603*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 703 A and B*

**MGCARE 704A** (1 Point)  
**MGCARE 704B** (1 Point)

#### Rehabilitation Practice

Concentrates on rehabilitation practice as it has, and could, evolve in New Zealand. Subjects include: various approaches to rehabilitation practice and special interest areas such as head injury, spinal cord injury and paid management. Students will be expected to think strategically about the development of high quality rehabilitation services in New Zealand.

*Restriction: 517.604*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 704 A and B*

**MGCARE 705A** (1 Point)  
**MGCARE 705B** (1 Point)

#### Health Systems in New Zealand

Concentrates on the existing health systems in New Zealand. Subjects include: health and safety-related legislation in New Zealand, principles of health surveillance, methods of hazard and risk management, principles of toxicology and environmental medicine and ergonomics.

*Restriction: 517.605*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 705 A and B*

**MGCARE 706A** (2 Points)  
**MGCARE 706B** (2 Points)

#### Rehabilitation Case Studies

This course is based on two health case studies that involve or should have involved some form of managed care. The student may or may not have been directly involved. Each case report is expected to be appropriately referenced to include the case history – a review of the underlying health problem including aetiology, pathology, clinical features, management and prognosis. The report should also include an assessment of the case management including the identification of strengths and weaknesses, and an outline of ideal management should such a person present again.

*Restriction: 517.606*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 706 A and B*

---

## Molecular Medicine

---

### Stage II

**MOLMED 201** (2 Points)  
**Microbiology and Immunology**

An introduction to the nature and roles of bacteria, viruses, fungi and parasites as the causative agents of human diseases. Topics include: the defence mechanisms of the body, the immune system including autoimmunity and allergy, control of disease by antimicrobials, sterilization, disinfection and infection control practice.

*Prerequisite: 2 points from BIOSCI 101, BIOSCI 102, BIOSCI 106, BIOSCI 107*

*Restriction: OPTOM 241, PHARMACY 203*

---

## Honours and Master's Courses

**MOLMED 701** (2 Points)  
**Developmental Biology**

An examination of contemporary issues in developmental biology, using various model systems. Concepts of fate decision, lineage commitment and regulation of these processes will be explored. Experimental approaches used to address questions in developmental biology will be examined.

**MOLMED 707** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Molecular Medicine**

An in-depth analysis of a topic related to that in which the student is undertaking thesis research.

**MOLMED 708** (2 Points)  
**Infection, Immunity and Disease**

The ways in which host immune mechanisms control infection, infectious organisms evade defence mechanisms, and the consequences of these processes. Examples of human infectious diseases with interesting biology will include: HIV, hepatitis B, influenza, tuberculosis and meningococcal infections. Consideration of the consequences of infection will incorporate discussion of immune self/non-self discrimination, immune tolerance and autoimmune mechanisms, including the impact of response against infections on autoimmunity.

**MOLMED 710** (2 Points)  
**Genetic Disease**

Examines a range of medical genetic disorders that illustrate principles of disease mechanisms, diagnosis and management. These will include: haemophilia, familial cancer, late-onset neurological disorders and mitochondrial disease.

**MOLMED 711** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Medical Microbiology**

The dynamic interaction between pathogenic microorganisms and humans will be explored. Examines the molecular mechanisms which enable microbes to survive, proliferate and cause disease; to evolve and acquire new genes; and to control the expression of their genes. Emphasis will be placed on recent advances in the understanding of major human microbial diseases.

**MOLMED 712** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Immunology**

Recent advances in immunology including: the genes and proteins involved in the innate and adaptive immune response, intracellular signalling mechanisms that determine immune outcomes, and the mechanisms by which the immune system learns 'self' from 'non-self'. Examines a range of inflammatory disorders including multiple sclerosis and atherosclerosis. Examines tumour immunology and immunological approaches to combat cancer.

## Maori and Pacific Health

### MPHEALTH 10H (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Human Biology

An introduction to human biology through a study of the structure and function of mammalian organ systems with special reference to humans.

### MPHEALTH 11H (2 Points)

#### MPHEALTH 11HA (1 Point)

#### MPHEALTH 11HB (1 Point)

#### Introduction to Physical Sciences for Health

Covers the basic physico-chemical principles and concepts relevant to an understanding of biological systems.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MPHEALTH 11H A and B, or MPHEALTH 11H*

### MPHEALTH 12H (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Social Sciences in Health

An introduction to the study of individuals, groups and people and the application of such studies in health care.

### MPHEALTH 13H (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Maori Health

Maori models and values for health, current policies for improved Maori health, Maori health priorities and tikanga Maori for improved health services and health outcomes for Maori will be studied.

### MPHEALTH 14H (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Pacific Health

Pacific models and values for health, current policies for improved Pacific health, health factors affecting the health status of Pacific people, health priorities for improved health services and health outcomes for Pacific people will be studied.

### MPHEALTH 15H (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Chemistry

Fundamentals of chemistry are explored with a view to enhancing appreciation of the chemical nature of the world around us as well as providing the foundation for further study in chemistry. Special attention is paid to familiarization with the language of chemistry and the chemist's perspective of the properties of matter and its transformations.

### MPHEALTH 16H (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Physics

Covers topics relevant to biological systems: mechanics, optics, waves, radiation and electricity.

### MPHEALTH 17H (2 Points)

#### Personal and Professional Development

Additional study, academic and health skills for Maori and Pacific students interested in tertiary studies and careers in the health sector. Topics covered include: statistics for health studies, time management, note taking, essay writing, test/exam preparation and Treaty of Waitangi.

## Stage II

### MPHEALTH 20I (2 Points)

#### Maori and Pacific Health

The history of Maori and Pacific health development, traditional health modalities, health status and current health policy, public health and personal health practices.

## Honours and Master's Courses

### MPHEALTH 710 (2 Points)

#### Maori Concepts of Health and Mental Illness

Explores Maori understandings of mental illness within the framework of Maori conceptualizations of health, such as Whare Tapa Wha. Other cultural frameworks of health and mental illness such as DSM IV and the biopsychosocial model of well-being will be examined.

### MPHEALTH 711 (2 Points)

#### Maori Mental Health Development

Reviews the social, political, economic and cultural influences on Maori mental health. Policy developments and projects for the promotion of Maori mental health will be assessed within a public health perspective and in relation to Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

### MPHEALTH 712 (2 Points)

#### Maori Models of Health Practice

Maori models of assessment, treatment, healing and health. Students will carry out assessments with Maori clients, whanau, and communities to achieve improved treatment, recovery and health outcomes for Maori. Students will recognize the diversity of Maori clients and will be able to work individually and collectively with different Maori groups to achieve the requested outcomes.

### MPHEALTH 713 (2 Points)

#### Case Studies in Maori Health

A practicum incorporating different Maori treatment, healing and public health perspectives. Students will become involved in assessing the needs of different Maori clients and whanau in relation to age, gender, diagnosis, whanau support, socioeconomic circumstances and involvement in Maori culture.

### MPHEALTH 714 (2 Points)

#### Practicum: Non-clinical Placement

The opportunity to develop social assessment and critical analysis skills through the documentation of an approved practicum. Students will be expected to be able to use and demonstrate knowledge of different Maori views, concepts and frameworks. Each student will have supervision and practicum developed appropriate to their learning interests.

### MPHEALTH 715 (2 Points)

#### Maori Health Promotion and Early Intervention

This course will discuss the importance of health promotion and early intervention for Maori. Models of health promotion used by different Maori providers will be presented as well as assisting students to design and implement health promotion and interventions which are likely to be effective for Maori individuals, families, and communities.

### MPHEALTH 718 (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Maori Health

Reviews the history of Maori health and contemporary health developments in the Maori community.

*Restriction: COMHLTH 711*

### MPHEALTH 719 (2 Points)

#### Maori Health: Policies and Outcomes

Examines current policies for Maori health and Maori responses to them.

*Restriction: COMHLTH 712*

**MPHEALTH 720 (2 Points)****Pacific Islands: Environment, Health and Society**

The historical and contemporary physical and social environments leading to the health situations of Pacificans. This provides the context for identifying and discussing present and future Pacific health issues.

**MPHEALTH 721 (2 Points)****Clinical Practicum in Pacific Health**

This practicum allows clinicians and health professionals to work under supervision within a Pacific-specific clinical service. A course of study relevant to the area of placement will also be prescribed.

*Only students holding current registration as a health professional may enrol in this course*

**MPHEALTH 722 (2 Points)****Non-clinical Practicum in Pacific Health**

Non-clinical supervised experience for students in a Pacific-specific non-clinical service (eg, interpretation or social service). A course of study relevant to the area of placement will be provided.

**MPHEALTH 723 (2 Points)****Food, Nutrition and Development**

Food security, preparation, use and production among Pacificans and the effects on their socio-economic development in New Zealand and the Pacific. This will provide a platform for policies and strategies for healthy development of Pacificans.

**MPHEALTH 724 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Department, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 725 (2 Points)****Pacific Health Research Practicum**

Data analysis, development and production of a research paper suitable for publication in a health journal, either from an existing database or a new research project. An oral presentation of the research, and critique of the research paper will be required.

**MPHEALTH 726 (2 Points)****Health Promotion in Pacific Community Development**

This course is about health promotion concepts in the Pacific from a Pacific perspective. It addresses planning, implementation and evaluation of the programmes to meet the health needs of Pacific people.

**MPHEALTH 727 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Pacific Health**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 728 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Pacific Health**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 729 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Pacific Health**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 730 (2 Points)****Introduction to Pacific Health**

Issues in the health of Pacific people in New Zealand and the Pacific. The application of these issues to

improve health and health services of Pacific populations.

*Restriction: COMHLTH 730*

**Nursing****Stage I****NURSING 101 (2 Points)****Introduction to Nursing**

An introduction to the nursing profession, nursing practice and the role of nursing in the New Zealand health and disability support services. The theoretical basis for nursing practice and legal and ethical boundaries for practice are introduced. The focus of this course is on the role of the nurse in health maintenance and health promotion.

**NURSING 102 (2 Points)****Introduction to Professional Nursing Practice**

An introduction to clinical nursing practice, the parameters surrounding nursing practice and the development of clinical and communication skills. Skills in assessment of clients and planning client care are introduced. Students undertake a clinical attachment.

**NURSING 104 (2 Points)****Applied Science for Nurses**

Application of selected topics from the biological and physical sciences to beginning nursing practice.

**Stage II****NURSING 201 (7 Points)****Nursing Clients with a Pathophysiological Problem**

A problem-based course where students acquire the skills associated with nursing clients requiring medical and surgical interventions and subsequent rehabilitation. Understanding the mechanisms of disease and prevention of such diseases is the basis for the course. The student is introduced to the principles of pharmacology and pharmacokinetics. Issues such as caring for clients with chronic pain and an understanding of death and grief are included. Practicums and teaching take place in a variety of clinical settings.

**NURSING 202 (7 Points)****Nursing Clients in Mental Health and Disability**

This course allows students to understand perspectives of mental health and illness, the crisis nature of mental illness and the therapeutic models of mental health management. Students acquire the specific nursing skills required to care for people with mental health problems and also those who have a long-term disability. Students undertake a range of clinical attachments in hospital and community settings.

**Stage III****NURSING 301 (7 Points)****Child and Family Health Nursing**

An understanding of concepts related to family women's and child health. The focus is on childbirth as a healthy event in the life of a family, care in the community, together with then nursing care of children suffering illness in a hospital setting. Clinical attachments are in a variety of clinical and community settings.

- NURSING 302** (7 Points)  
**Professional Nursing Practice**  
 Designed to facilitate the transition from student to professional nurse. A period of practice in an elected area of clinical speciality is included. Issues such as: the development of nursing knowledge, autonomy of practice, accountability for practice, and the legal and ethical parameters of competency as a nurse are emphasized.
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- NURSING 701** (4 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
 A dissertation on a topic related to the student's area of speciality nursing practice.
- NURSING 702** (4 Points)  
**NURSING 702A** (2 Points)  
**NURSING 702B** (2 Points)  
**Developing Nursing Practice**  
 Allows students to extend their nursing knowledge and skills in a speciality practice area. The student's focus will include recognition of the contextual factors that impact on the practice area and a critique and analysis of their practice.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 702 A and B, or NURSING 702*
- NURSING 704** (2 Points)  
**Applied Science for Registered Nurses**  
 Nurses' knowledge, understanding and application of scientific concepts is extended in order to assist registered nurses to safely plan and deliver care for clients. Students have the opportunity to apply concepts to their own area of practice.
- NURSING 705** (2 Points)  
**Health Assessment and Diagnostic Reasoning**  
 A practically-based course that focuses on the knowledge and skill required to undertake comprehensive assessment of clients. Explores the ordering and interpretation of diagnostic tests and the use of assessment data to guide the diagnostic decision-making process. Course is delivered in adult and child health streams.
- NURSING 706** (2 Points)  
**Principles of Pharmacology and Pharmacokinetics**  
 Drug therapy for advanced nursing practice is introduced through the study of the principles of pharmacology and pharmacokinetics.
- NURSING 707** (2 Points)  
**Adult Acute Care Nursing**  
 Provides the basis for advanced/specialist nursing practice for nurses who work in complex acute care and emergency settings with adult clients and their families.
- NURSING 708** (2 Points)  
**Community and Primary Health Care Nursing**  
 The basis for specialist and advanced nursing practice for nurses who work in community and primary health care settings. Explores current policy and practice issues affecting nursing in these settings.
- NURSING 709** (2 Points)  
**Clinical Teaching**  
 Explores theoretical and practical approaches to clinical teaching and learning within the health professions.
- NURSING 710** (2 Points)  
**Special Studies in Nursing**  
 As prescribed by the Head of the School of Nursing.
- NURSING 711** (2 Points)  
**Occupational Health Nursing at an Advanced Level**  
 Specific topics covered include: industrial relations and relevant workplace legislation, principles of rehabilitation and return to work, ergonomics, health surveillance and risk management, occupational hygiene, statistics and research in occupational health, occupational toxicity and psychological health issues.
- NURSING 712** (2 Points)  
**Clinical Occupational Health Nursing 1**  
 The focus is on body systems and the effects of occupational diseases. Health and safety issues and environmental health hazards are included, together with specialist subjects such as aviation, diving injuries and occupational cancers.
- NURSING 713** (2 Points)  
**Clinical Occupational Health Nursing 2**  
 The focus is on body systems and the effects of occupational diseases. Health and safety issues and environmental health hazards are included, together with specialist subjects such as aviation, diving injuries and occupational cancers. This course builds on and adds to the content of NURSING 712.  
*Prerequisite: NURSING 711 and 712*
- NURSING 714** (2 Points)  
**Nursing Practicum 1**  
 The articulation and demonstration of advanced nursing knowledge and skills within a specialist clinical area. Students work with an academic and clinical adviser to develop an individual learning contract. Students may build on this course in NURSING 728 Nursing Practicum 2.
- NURSING 715** (2 Points)  
**Long Term Nursing Care**  
 The basis for specialist and advanced nursing practice for nurses who work with clients who have long term health problems.
- NURSING 716** (2 Points)  
**Primary Health Care of Children**  
 The development of nursing knowledge specific to advanced nursing practice in a child health setting. Focuses on the primary health care of children, throughout childhood and adolescence, including health promotion and maintenance of the well child and family.
- NURSING 717** (2 Points)  
**Special Clinical Nursing Project**  
 The development of nursing knowledge specific to professional nursing practice in a clinical speciality area. This course may only be taken by arrangement with the Head of the School of Nursing.
- NURSING 718** (2 Points)  
**Context of Advanced Nursing Practice**  
 Nurses are assisted to explore the nature, purpose and context of advanced practice nursing, and develop and expand their own practice in order to improve the health outcomes for clients, within a given set of health circumstances.

- NURSING 719 (2 Points)**  
**Specialty Nursing Knowledge and Practice**  
 Extend nursing knowledge and skill related to the management of clients in specialty based clinical practice. Available in various specialty practice streams.
- NURSING 720 (2 Points)**  
**Evidence-based Nursing**  
 A guide to nurses' clinical decision-making and the consideration of the clinical effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of practice, as well as client preference and practitioner expertise.
- NURSING 721 (2 Points)**  
**Nurse Prescribing Practicum**  
 Detailed knowledge of the medicines applicable to the nurse's prescribing scope are developed. Through case studies and practical experience the nurse will have supervision of their knowledge and skills in their identified prescribing scope.  
*Prerequisite: NURSING 722*
- NURSING 722 (2 Points)**  
**Principles of Therapeutics for Advanced Nursing**  
 The principles of therapeutics and mechanisms necessary for prescribing to be safe and effective.  
*Prerequisite: NURSING 706*
- NURSING 723 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Scholarship**  
 Dominant themes and concepts in contemporary nursing knowledge are explored and reflected upon within the context of the student's clinical area. Broader issues within nursing practice are addressed, such as the nurse-patient relationship, ethical issues, team collaboration, the patient's reality, clinical governance.
- NURSING 724 (2 Points)**
- NURSING 724A (1 Point)**
- NURSING 724B (1 Point)**  
**Occupational Health Nursing Project**  
 Supervised research on a topic approved by the Head of Discipline.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 724 A and B, or NURSING 724*
- NURSING 725 (2 Points)**  
**New Graduate Practice**  
 For early career nurses with clear focus on developing knowledge and skill in a specialty practice area.
- NURSING 726 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Nursing**
- NURSING 727 (2 Points)**  
**Partnerships in Chronic Care**  
 A case study approach is used to explore current issues, for example depression, diabetes and HIV/AIDS, and innovative ways to deliver services in partnership with clients, so that nursing can contribute to improving health outcomes including independence and quality of life.
- NURSING 728 (2 Points)**  
**Nursing Practicum 2**  
 Builds on the advanced practice skills developed in NURSING 714 Nursing Practicum 1. The Nurse Practitioner competencies developed by the Nursing Council of New Zealand are used as a framework to
- guide the student toward advanced practice roles/Nurse Practitioner status. Students develop learning contracts and work with academic and practice advisors to develop the Nurse Practitioner role.
- NURSING 729 (2 Points)**  
**Nurse Leadership in Health Services**  
 Nursing and related workforce and professional development issues are addressed, including acuity and workload management, risk management, retention and turnover, skill mix, interdisciplinary/professional, power and decision-making uses and international trends.
- NURSING 730A (2 Points)**
- NURSING 730B (2 Points)**  
**Knowledge/Science in Specialty Nursing**  
 Extends knowledge and understanding of biomedical and social science concepts related to an identified specialty area and covers specialty-based practice knowledge required to care for clients in specialty practice streams.  
*Restriction: NURSING 704, 719*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 730 A and B*
- NURSING 731 (2 Points)**  
**Nursing the Hospitalized Child**  
 Nursing knowledge related to themes and current issues central to caring for hospitalized children. Topics include: developmental issues, family centred care, advocacy, family/environmental assessment, epidemiology and government strategies.
- NURSING 732A (2 Points)**
- NURSING 732B (2 Points)**  
**Nursing Leadership Practicum**  
 Theoretical and practice principles of leadership and management in the context of health care organizations. Utilizes an action based learning model, mentorship and project work.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 732 A and B*
- NURSING 733 (2 Points)**  
**Special Studies in Nursing**
- NURSING 734 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Nursing**
- NURSING 735A (2 Points)**
- NURSING 735B (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Education Practicum**  
 Application and critical analysis of educational theories and concepts in a clinical learning environment. Utilizes an action based learning model and project work.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 735 A and B*
- NURSING 736 (2 Points)**  
**Health Policy and Nursing**  
 Health policy planning and development in New Zealand. Understanding policy theory, process policy formation and agenda setting. Analyses cases in New Zealand health and the role of nursing as an interest group in policy community.
- NURSING 750 (2 Points)**  
**Social Context: Mental Health Nursing Practice**  
 A critical analysis of socio-political issues in mental health nursing practice including the history, scope

and context of practice, the construction of nursing knowledge, consumer issues, cultural safety and the Treaty of Waitangi.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 750*

**NURSING 751 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Practice in Mental Health Nursing**

An exploration of the conceptual, clinical and professional basis for advanced practice including supervision, mentorship, clinical teaching, development of standards and clinical audit. Students focus on their area of specialist practice.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 751*

**NURSING 752 (2 Points)**

**Narrative Case Studies**

Focuses on the narrative tradition within mental health nursing, emphasising reflection, critical thinking, self-awareness, ethical deliberation, recovery concepts and clinical expertise. These core themes are explored using exemplars, a reflective diary, a case study and narrative case study.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 752 A and B*

**NURSING 753 (4 Points)**

**NURSING 753A (2 Points)**

**NURSING 753B (2 Points)**

**Specialty Practice in Mental Health Nursing**

Focuses on the first year of clinical practice in mental health nursing. Students extend their understanding and clinical skills in assessment, interventions, care and treatment of people with mental distress/illness. Students actively participate in case presentations, reflection on practice and critical analysis. Preceptorship and supervision are aimed at enhancing professional practice.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 753*

*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 753 A and B, or NURSING 753*

**NURSING 754 (2 Points)**

**Legal Issues in Mental Health Nursing**

Critical reflection on legal issues related to mental health nursing practice. Topics include: analysis of nurses' involvement in compulsory treatment; consent, compliance and issues related to the Mental Health (Compulsory Assessment and Treatment) Act and other relevant legislation.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 754*

**NURSING 755 (2 Points)**

**Mental Health Nursing Assessment**

An exploration of assessment in mental health nursing. Students undertake a variety of clinical assessment tasks and critique the models and evidence for assessment used in clinical practice.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 755*

**NURSING 756A (2 Points)**

**NURSING 756B (2 Points)**

**Mental Health Nursing Concepts**

Focuses on the integration of theory and practice of mental health nursing in the first year of clinical practice. Students extend their theoretical understanding and clinical skill in assessment, care and treatments of people with mental distress and illness and participate in preceptorship and supervision aimed at enhancing their professional practice in mental health nursing.

*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 756 A and B*

**NURSING 757 (2 Points)**

**Evidence-based Case Studies**

Focuses on the evidence-based tradition within mental health nursing, emphasizing classification, psychopathology and the descriptive case study. Emphasizes some of the pivotal clinical skills required for working within the evidence-based tradition: namely interviewing, assessment, planning and writing and presenting case studies.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 752*

**NURSING 758 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Mental Health Nursing**

**NURSING 759 (2 Points)**

**Service Delivery in Mental Health Nursing**

Service delivery systems adopted in mental health. Considers delivery systems such as case management, case coordination, key-worker models and the role of responsible clinician. There is a focus on clinical decision-making and leadership within multidisciplinary teams.

**NURSING 760 (2 Points)**

**Cognitive and Behavioural Therapy in Nursing Practice**

The application of principles of cognitive and behavioural therapy (CBT) in mental health settings. Critiques the use of cognitive tools and techniques within the nurse-client relationship.

**NURSING 761 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Mental Health Nursing**

**NURSING 762 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**NURSING 795 (6 Points)**

**NURSING 795A (3 Points)**

**NURSING 795B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 795 A and B, or NURSING 795*

**NURSING 796A (7 Points)**

**NURSING 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 796 A and B*

**NURSING 797A (7 Points)**

**NURSING 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

Comprises two to three substantial research projects or essays which form a coherent whole.

*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 797 A and B*

---

**Nutrition**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**NUTRN 700 (2 Points)**

**Nutrition in Health and Disease**

The influence that dietary patterns, foods and food components have on the promotion and protection against the common nutrition-related diseases in New Zealand. The relevant epidemiological, clinical, and biochemical/physiological aspects of each disease are covered.

**NUTRN 701 (2 Points)****Nutrition Mechanisms**

The mechanisms by which food and food components can influence disease processes. Topics covered include: the interaction between genotype and nutrition, antioxidants and oxidation protection mechanisms, dietary toxicology, the process of atherosclerosis, and the influence of the intra-uterine environment on growth and disease.

**NUTRN 702 (2 Points)****Clinical Nutrition**

Prevention of malnutrition and maintenance of nutritional status during acute and chronic illness through 'artificial' or 'interventional' means. Diagnosis and quantitation of malnutrition, and monitoring of nutrition support therapy. Practical techniques, common complications and quality assurance through a multidisciplinary team approach. Includes treatment of anorexia nervosa and cancer cachexia.

**NUTRN 703 (2 Points)****Critical Evaluation of Nutritional Therapies**

The suggested roles for micronutrients, 'nutriceuticals' and functional foods in general health, exercise performance and disease are evaluated using an evidence-based approach. The roles of micronutrients as dietary supplements and the potential actions of nutriceuticals and functional foods are also critically evaluated. Regulatory and ethical issues in the use of nutritional remedies are considered, including their use as supplements in chemotherapy or other conventional therapies, or in individuals with no symptoms.

**NUTRN 704 (2 Points)****Special Studies In Nutrition**

As prescribed by the Head of Discipline, Nutrition. Selected topics in nutrition will provide an advanced course of study in nutrition.

---

**Obstetrics and Gynaecology**


---

**Stage III****OBSTGYN 351 (2 Points)****Reproductive Biology**

Aspects of reproductive biology including: regulation of gonadal function, the menstrual and oestrus cycles, ovulation spermatogenesis, feto-maternal physiology including placental function, animal reproduction and assisted reproductive technologies.

*Prerequisite: 405.105 or BIOSCI 107 or HUMANBIO 142 or BIOSCI 203*

**Diploma Courses****OBSTGYN 601A (7 Points)****OBSTGYN 601B (7 Points)****Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology**

This course covers: the anatomy, physiology, pathology and management of normal and abnormal pregnancy, labour and puerperium, including the care of the newborn in the first month of life. It will also cover: the physiology and pathology of medical gynaecology, including abnormal menstruation, amenorrhoea, and dysmenorrhoea, endocrine therapy, abortion, infertility, contraception, ectopic and molar pregnancies, vaginal discharge, the

diagnostic facets of malignancy, and such minor surgical procedures as may be encountered in a predominantly obstetric practice.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OBSTGYN 601 A and B. Contact Division for prospectus including information on Special Topics*

**Honours and Master's Courses****OBSTGYN 705 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Obstetrics and Gynaecology**

Advanced study of specific aspects of obstetrics, gynaecology, or reproductive science, usually related to the field of study of the thesis research.

**OBSTGYN 706 (2 Points)****Reproductive Science**

Molecular regulation and coordination of normal reproduction. The reproductive disorders that arise when normal biological processes are disrupted. Recent molecular methods have enabled us to study these processes and to understand how they can go wrong. Genomic and proteomic approaches to the understanding of reproduction and reproductive disorders will be presented. Examination of the new technologies that allow us to overcome some of these reproductive problems.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 or 202 or 203 or 204 or 351 or 353 or 356*

**OBSTGYN 707 (2 Points)****Reproductive Medicine**

Understanding normal reproductive events and how normal biological process are disrupted to cause medical problems. A range of specific disorders of reproduction (Pre-eclampsia, polycystic ovarian syndrome, endometriosis), including infertility and gynaecological cancer, will be discussed. Attention will be given to the recent advances in understanding of disease at a molecular level and how they translate to become a clinical disorder.

*Prerequisite: OBSTGYN 706*

**OBSTGYN 712A (1 Point)****OBSTGYN 712B (1 Point)****Contraception and Pre- and Early Pregnancy Care**

An evidence-based approach to contraception, pre-pregnancy and early pregnancy care. Mechanisms, side effects and contraindications of methods of contraception. Pre-pregnancy care includes counselling prior to conception and psychosocial aspects such as the effects of drugs, alcohol, smoking and travel. Best practice and referral guidelines for early pregnancy antenatal care includes pre-natal genetic diagnosis, diagnosis and management of early pregnancy problems, recurrent miscarriage, ectopic pregnancy, gestational trophoblastic disease and hyperemesis.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OBSTGYN 712 A and B*

**OBSTGYN 713A (1 Point)****OBSTGYN 713B (1 Point)****Pregnancy and Postnatal Care**

The anatomy, physiology, pathology and management of normal and abnormal pregnancy, labour and puerperium. This includes the care of the newborn in the first month of life. Effective use of ultrasound, medical disorders in pregnancy, fetal abnormalities and fetal growth disorders.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OBSTGYN 713 A and B*

**OBSTGYN 715A** (1 Point)

**OBSTGYN 715B** (1 Point)

**Medical Gynaecology**

Women's health and sexually transmitted diseases, medical decision making, menstrual disorders, pelvic pain and dyspareunia, vulval problems and vaginal discharge, adolescent gynaecology and domestic violence.

To complete this course students must enrol in OBSTGYN 715 A and B

**OBSTGYN 716A** (1 Point)

**OBSTGYN 716B** (1 Point)

**Special Topics in Gynaecology**

Pathophysiology and clinical management of infertility, gynaecological malignancies, the physiology and pathology of the climacteric and management of clinical complications. Pathophysiology, investigation and management of female urinary tract dysfunction.

To complete this course students must enrol in OBSTGYN 716 A and B

**OBSTGYN 717A** (2 Points)

**OBSTGYN 717B** (2 Points)

**Practical Obstetrics and Gynaecology**

Practice of obstetrics and medical gynaecology, practical procedures in obstetrics and gynaecology including competency in examinations, cervical smear taking, and insertion of intrauterine contraceptive devices. Competency in normal labour and delivery and minor surgical procedures encountered in obstetric practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in OBSTGYN 717 A and B

**OBSTGYN 718** (2 Points)

**Obstetrics Residential**

A residential course covering attitudes to women's health, cultural issues, ethics, history taking and minor procedures.

Restriction: OBSTGYN 721

**OBSTGYN 719** (2 Points)

**Gynaecology Residential**

A residential course covering approaches to women's health issues, history and examination principles and procedures, issues of screening, hormone replacement therapy and case-based studies. This is a prerequisite for completing the requirements for the Diploma of Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology.

Restriction: OBSTGYN 722

**OBSTGYN 720** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**OBSTGYN 721** (1 Point)

**Obstetrics Residential**

Attitudes to women's health, cultural issues, ethics, history taking and minor procedures.

Restriction: OBSTGYN 718

**OBSTGYN 722** (1 Point)

**Gynaecology Residential**

Approaches to women's health issues, history and examination principles and procedures, issues of screening, hormone replacement therapy and case-based studies.

Restriction: OBSTGYN 719

**Paediatrics**

**Diploma Courses**

**PAEDS 601A** (7 Points)

**PAEDS 601B** (7 Points)

**Diploma in Paediatrics**

This course covers: genetic and antenatal factors in development, neonatal paediatrics, assessment of a child's physical, intellectual, emotional and social needs, epidemiology of childhood disease, cultural factors and child health, general and preventative paediatrics, management of common disorders of childhood, and the practical working of the statutory and voluntary services available in New Zealand for the care of children.

To complete this course students must enrol in PAEDS 601 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PAEDS 704** (2 Points)

**Special Topics in Paediatrics**

Advanced study in a specific area, usually related to the field of study of the thesis.

**PAEDS 711A** (1 Point)

**PAEDS 711B** (1 Point)

**Paediatrics and Child Health**

Common paediatric problems (including iron deficiency anaemia, allergy, eczema, urinary tract infection) and well childcare (nutrition, growth and development, breastfeeding, immunization) are explored in detail.

To complete this course students must enrol in PAEDS 711 A and B

**PAEDS 712** (2 Points)

**Youth Health 1**

Discusses the biological, psychological and social aspects of normal adolescent growth and development as a framework for understanding adolescent health problems. Addresses issues such as adolescent sexuality and youth suicide.

**PAEDS 713** (2 Points)

**Respiratory Disease in Childhood**

Asthma is the most common chronic disease in childhood affecting almost one in four children. Death and morbidity from pneumonia in New Zealand is higher than many other developed countries. This course discusses the major respiratory diseases in childhood.

**PAEDS 714** (2 Points)

**Emergency Paediatrics**

Combines theoretical knowledge with clinical practice. Medical practitioners will learn how to manage the major paediatric medical and surgical emergencies until transfer.

**PAEDS 715** (2 Points)

**Childhood Communicable Diseases**

Discusses the major infectious diseases in childhood and their prevention. Addresses the concern that despite antibiotics and immunizations infectious diseases continue to be a major health problem in New Zealand.

**PAEDS 716** (2 Points)

**Behavioural Paediatrics**

Concentrates on the diagnosis, aetiology and management of common behavioural problems and the recognition of serious mental illness in childhood.

**PAEDS 717 (2 Points)**

**Child Protection and Injury**

Examines the complex problem of child abuse and injury. The nature and prevalence of various types of child abuse are examined. Road traffic injuries, poisoning and drowning each affect different age groups. These conditions will be discussed with special emphasis on the child's developmental age. Prevention strategies are explored and evaluated.

**PAEDS 718 (2 Points)**

**Paediatric Disability and Chronic Diseases**

Disability is common and with the shift from residential to community care, health professionals need skills in addressing their special needs. This course addresses the causes and problems faced by children with disability and chronic diseases. The biological and social factors are also discussed.

**PAEDS 719 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Department, Paediatrics.

**PAEDS 720 (2 Points)**

**Youth Health 2**

Provides an advanced analysis of contemporary youth health issues and leadership development. Students will be expected to produce a high quality youth development project in a chosen area of adolescent health.

**Pathology**

**Stage II**

**PATHOL 251 (2 Points)**

**Mechanisms of Disease**

Pathogenesis of various types of disease at the molecular, cellular and tissue levels. Provides an introduction to: cell injury, inflammation, healing, neoplasia and circulatory disturbances, and includes the pathogenesis of selected specific diseases which are common in New Zealand or are the focus of current biomedical research.

*Prerequisite: 405.105 or BIOSCI 107 or HUMANBIO 142*

**Stage III**

**PATHOL 301 (2 Points)**

**Organ and Systems Pathology**

An introduction to organ and systematic pathology, with detailed study of the nature of selected diseases of the cardiovascular, respiratory, renal, endocrine, musculoskeletal and nervous systems which are common in the Western world.

*Prerequisite: PATHOL 251*

**PATHOL 302 (2 Points)**

**Cancer Biology I**

A study of the scientific basis of cancer including: mechanisms underlying the pathogenesis of cancer, carcinogenesis, DNA damage and repair, properties of cancer cells (including abnormalities of growth and cell cycle control), the growth of tumours, the classification and histopathology of cancers, and an introduction to therapeutic strategies.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 356 or PATHOL 251*

*Restriction: PATHOL 705*

**PATHOL 303 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Factors in Disease**

Study of the pathogenesis of diseases in which the precipitating or contributing causes are changes in the environment of human beings, or of their cells and tissues. Aetiological factors considered will include: physical agents (pressure, temperature, inhaled particles), chemical pollutants (gases, metals), biological agents (nutritional and microbial). Carcinogenic influences present in the environment will be considered.

*Prerequisite: PATHOL 251*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PATHOL 703 (2 Points)**

**Special Topics in Pathology**

An examination of a selection of topics in pathology that are of current research interest.

**PATHOL 704 (2 Points)**

**Principles of Cancer Therapy**

The course examines: the molecular and cellular processes underlying cancer treatment and the development of tumour-selective therapy; the principles of radiotherapy and chemotherapy; DNA and the basis for its interactions with anticancer drugs; recognition of DNA by proteins; exploitation of these processes by anticancer drugs, oncogenes and other regulatory gene products; signal transduction mechanisms and strategies for changing cell cycle control; cytokines and the role of host responses in cancer therapy; new approaches to cancer therapy including gene therapy and photodynamic therapy.

*Prerequisite: PATHOL 302*

**PATHOL 705 (2 Points)**

**Cancer Biology 2**

Advanced studies of concepts related to the biology of cancer. These will include: molecular mechanisms, signal transduction pathways, genomic instability, telomeres and telomerase, aneuploidy, DNA damage sensing mechanisms, and hypoxia and tumour progression.

*Prerequisite: PATHOL 302*

**Pharmacology**

**Stage II**

**PHARMCOL 201 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Pharmacology**

An introduction to the principles of pharmacology with particular reference to humans. Topics include: the fate of drugs within the body, pharmacodynamics (including receptor structure and function), drug development (including clinical trial design), pharmacoeconomics and poisoning.

**Stage III**

**PHARMCOL 301 (2 Points)**

**Principles of Pharmacology**

Topics covered are: passage of drugs across membranes; drug absorption, distribution, metabolism, excretion and elimination; pharmacokinetics; pharmacogenetics; mechanism of drug action; drug development and analysis; and novel drug delivery.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 302 (2 Points)****Molecular Pharmacology**

Considers the modification by drugs of human peripheral physiological and pathological functions. The cellular and molecular mechanisms of drugs at receptors, ion channels, enzymes and intermediate messengers are covered. The modification by drugs of peripheral neurotransmission and the actions of local hormones are reviewed.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 303 (2 Points)****Applied Pharmacology and Chemotherapy**

Applied pharmacology relates the principles of pharmacology to the development and therapeutic use of drugs. Emphasis is placed on the application of pharmacology to human therapeutics and chemotherapy of infection and cancer.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 304 (2 Points)****Systematic Pharmacology**

Considers the modification by drugs of human systems under physiological and pathological conditions. Systems that will be considered include the cardiovascular, gastrointestinal, reproductive and respiratory. The cellular and molecular mechanisms of the drugs are considered.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 305 (2 Points)****Introduction to Toxicology**

This introductory course considers the basic principles and concepts in toxicology. It addresses: biochemical pathways and targets in the toxicity of chemicals, the observed effects, eg. cell death, cancer and hypersensitivity, as well as the basis for cell and organ-selective toxicity. Drugs, occupational and environmental toxicants are discussed.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 306 (2 Points)****Neuropharmacology**

An introduction to the principles and concepts involved in neuropharmacology. The course covers: the anatomy, neurochemistry and pharmacology of the normal and diseased human brain; the biochemical causes of psychiatric and neurological diseases; and the types and mechanisms of action of drugs used to treat brain disorders.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201, and PHYSIOL 210 or 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**Diploma Courses****PHARMCOL 690A (2 Points)****PHARMCOL 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Pharmacology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMCOL 690 A and B*

**PHARMCOL 691A (2 Points)****PHARMCOL 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Pharmacology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMCOL 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses****PHARMCOL 710 (2 Points)****Special Topics**

The study of selected fields of pharmacology at advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. Possible topics include: anaesthetics, pain management, oncology, clinical pharmacology, toxicology, cardiovascular pharmacology and reproductive pharmacology.

*Prerequisite: Divisional consent required*

**PHARMCOL 711 (2 Points)****Toxicology**

An evaluation of types of toxic effects. The course covers: mechanisms of toxicity, including delayed, environmental, food and clinical toxicity.

**PHARMCOL 712 (2 Points)****Drug Disposition and Action**

Advanced study of: the absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of drugs; cellular and molecular sites and mechanisms of drug action; and analysis of these processes. Also included are *in vivo*/*in vitro* techniques in drug disposition studies and drug analysis in biological matrices.

**PHARMCOL 713 (2 Points)****Neurobiology and Neuropharmacology**

An advanced treatment of current research in neuroscience. Involves critical analysis of the literature within the context of a series of major research themes that encompass models from molecular through to systems level neuroscience. Themes will be selected from the following areas: neurogenesis, neurodegeneration and/or addiction.

**PHARMCOL 714 (2 Points)****Cardiovascular Pharmacology**

A study of the mechanism of action of drugs on the cardiovascular system. Drugs used to treat hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, angina pectoris and heart failure; and the drugs affecting blood coagulation.

**PHARMCOL 715 (2 Points)****Pharmacology of Anaesthetics and Analgesics**

General aspects of anaesthetics and analgesics.

**PHARMCOL 716 (2 Points)****Pharmacometrics**

An introduction to the application of mathematical models used in the interpretation of pharmacological observations. Computer-based analysis methods are investigated using individual and population-oriented approaches.

**PHARMCOL 717 (2 Points)****Biochemical Endocrinology**

An introduction to nomenclature, biosynthesis, metabolism and mechanisms of action of protein, steroid and other lipid hormones. Also covers interactions with receptors and intracellular signalling.

**PHARMCOL 719 (2 Points)****Biomedical Research Techniques**

An introduction to a broad base of research techniques ranging from tissue culture through microscopy to gene expression and cloning. Emphasis is placed on practicalities.

- PHARMCOL 721** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Toxicology**  
 The course covers: major classes of toxic chemicals, testing and monitoring of potentially toxic agents, and assessment of toxic risk.
- PHARMCOL 722** (2 Points)  
**Clinical Pharmacology**  
 The disposition and action of drugs in the elderly, young and in pregnancy will be considered, as well as therapeutic drug monitoring, pharmacoeconomics, adverse drug reactions, ethnic differences in PK's and PD's, evaluation of clinical trials and population kinetics. Emphasis is placed on the use of medicines in humans.
- PHARMCOL 723** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Molecular Neuropharmacology**  
 An advanced course focusing on topics relevant to students pursuing research in molecular neuropharmacology, including neuronal signalling cascades involved in neurotoxicity and neuroplasticity.
- PHARMCOL 724** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Cardiovascular Pharmacology**  
 Advanced studies of topics in cardiovascular pharmacology relevant to students wishing to undertake research in this area.
- PHARMCOL 725** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Anaesthetics and Analgesics**  
 The focus is on special topics in anaesthetics and analgesics relevant to students wishing to undertake research in this field.
- PHARMCOL 726** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Pharmacometrics**  
 An examination of various classes of models in detail. Typical classes of model include: delayed drug effects, tolerance, physiological-pharmacokinetic, pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic, agonist/antagonist and time-variant models.
- PHARMCOL 727** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Reproduction**  
 Major physiological processes in reproduction and important associated pathologies. An integrated approach will be applied, describing the underlying biochemical/molecular basis and the physiological symptoms and outcomes.
- PHARMCOL 728** (2 Points)  
**Cancer Pharmacology**  
 The pharmacological basis of the action of anti-tumour drugs relevant to human cancer therapy, emphasizing the variability of chemotherapy effects, interactions between anti-cancer agents and early phase clinical trials.
- PHARMCOL 729** (2 Points)  
**Pharmacoeconomics and Clinical Economics**  
 An introduction to methods and application of economic evaluation to clinical decision-making and purchasing. These methods will enable identification of sources of economic information, evaluation and development of economic arguments, use of simple economic decision analytic tools, presentation of cogent clinicoeconomic arguments, and advice on clinical and purchasing decisions on resource allocation.
- PHARMCOL 789** (4 Points)  
**PHARMCOL 789A** (2 Points)  
**PHARMCOL 789B** (2 Points)  
**BSc(Hons) Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMCOL 789 A and B, or PHARMCOL 789*
- PHARMCOL 796A** (7 Points)  
**PHARMCOL 796B** (7 Points)  
**MSc Thesis in Pharmacology**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMCOL 796 A and B*
- 
- Pharmacy**
- 
- Stage I**
- PHARMACY 101** (2 Points)  
**Pharmacy Practice 1**  
 The role of medicines in society (including complementary and alternative medicines), the legal definition of a medicine and the regulatory requirements for licensing, sale and supply. The evolution and role of the pharmacist as a health care professional, pharmacy organizations and sources of pharmaceutical information and professional communication.
- 
- Stage II**
- PHARMACY 201** (2 Points)  
**Pharmacy Practice 2**  
 The processes of drug therapy, pharmaceutical formulations and the concept of pharmaceutical care. The course covers: dispensing of prescriptions, pharmaceutical calculations, and preparation of extemporaneous medicines in common use. Development of the knowledge, skills and attitudes required for communicating with other health professionals and patients on the effective use of medicines.
- 
- PHARMACY 202** (2 Points)  
**Pharmaceutics 1**  
 The physical and chemical properties of materials used in the design of medicinal dosage forms. The application of these principles in the formulation and evolution of medicines is considered.
- 
- Stage III**
- PHARMACY 301** (2 Points)  
**Pharmacy Practice 3**  
 Systematic methods for the identification of medication problems, patient needs and risk assessment and pharmaceutical care planning; including interviewing, counselling and problem-solving skills. Effective pharmaceutical information management, including record systems, search strategies, evaluation methods and reporting (written and verbal). Application in the sale and supply of both prescription and over the counter medicines (OTC) is demonstrated in a simulated general practice pharmacy and on practice placements.
- PHARMACY 302** (4 Points)  
**PHARMACY 302A** (2 Points)  
**PHARMACY 302B** (2 Points)

**Pharmacotherapy**

Mechanisms of action and therapeutic use of drugs with reference to the following systems and disorders: cardiovascular system disorders and risk management, respiratory system, endocrine system, central nervous system and mental health, gastrointestinal and hepatic disorders, common bacterial, viral and fungal infections, skin disorders, rheumatic disorders, haematopoietic and malignant disorders and pain control.

To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMACY 302 A and B, or PHARMACY 302

**PHARMACY 303 (2 Points)**  
**Pharmaceutics 2**

The course covers: formulation, manufacture, quality control and assurance of sterile and non-sterile products, including: preformulation studies, tablet processing, semi-solid formulation, processing of injectables, environmental monitoring, the role of good manufacturing practice and the role of the qualified person.

**Stage IV**

**PHARMACY 401 (4 Points)**

**PHARMACY 401A (2 Points)**  
**PHARMACY 401B (2 Points)**

**Applied Pharmacotherapy/Pharmaceutical Care**

Through practice placements and case study work in a variety of practice settings, pharmacotherapeutic and pharmaceutical care principles are applied to: cardiovascular disease, asthma, diabetes, mental health (and drug abuse), cancer care, infections and other conditions and special populations. The role of the pharmacist as a prescribing adviser and provider of primary health care advice and promotion is explored.

To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMACY 401 A and B, or PHARMACY 401

**PHARMACY 404 (2 Points)**  
**Pharmaceutics 3**

Examines a range of specialized drug delivery systems in current clinical practice and research together with pharmaceutical factors in the production and use of biotechnological medicines.

**PHARMACY 405 (4 Points)**

**PHARMACY 405A (2 Points)**  
**PHARMACY 405B (2 Points)**

**Research Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMACY 405 A and B, or PHARMACY 405

**PHARMACY 406A (2 Points)**  
**PHARMACY 406B (2 Points)**

**Pharmacy Practice 4**

The current and future development of pharmaceutical services will be considered alongside the regulatory and legislative requirements that impact on pharmacy practice. Dispensing practice, including sterile and aseptic dispensing, will be highlighted as well as the pharmacist's role in primary health care and optimization of drug therapy.

To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMACY 406 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PHARMACY 700 (2 Points)**

**Critical Evaluation of Complementary Medicinal Products**

A critical review of the evidence in the biomedical literature and other sources concerning a range of complementary medicinal products including herbals, homoeopathics and ethnopharmaceuticals. Includes consideration of efficacy, safety and interactions with conventional medicines.

**PHARMACY 712 (4 Points)**

**PHARMACY 712A (2 Points)**  
**PHARMACY 712B (2 Points)**

**Clinical Pharmacy Practice**

Enhances key pharmaceutical knowledge and skills for effective practice in community and hospital settings, including oral and written communication, critical literature appraisal, review of patient medication and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans.

To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMACY 712 A and B, or PHARMACY 712

**PHARMACY 720 (2 Points)**

**Issues in Concordance**

Factors influencing the prescribing and recommendation of drug therapy and those which influence patients in their use of medicines. Addresses the issue of an ethical framework for prescribing and strategies to promote effective use of medicines by patients.

**PHARMACY 730 (2 Points)**

**Cardiovascular Pharmacotherapy**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of cardiovascular disease. The critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with cardiovascular disease.

**PHARMACY 731 (2 Points)**

**Respiratory Pharmacotherapy**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of respiratory disease. The critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with respiratory disease.

**PHARMACY 732 (2 Points)**

**Endocrine Pharmacotherapy**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of endocrine disorders and in regard to reproduction. Critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with endocrine disorders.

**PHARMACY 733 (2 Points)**

**GIT/Rheumatology Pharmacotherapy**

Application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of gastrointestinal disease and rheumatic disorders. Critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with gastrointestinal disease and rheumatic disorders.

- PHARMACY 734 (2 Points)**  
**Pharmacotherapy of Infections**  
 Application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy and vaccination in the management of infectious diseases. Critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with infectious diseases.
- PHARMACY 735 (2 Points)**  
**Pharmacotherapy in Psychiatry**  
 Application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of psychiatric disorders. Critical review of the relevant literature, the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans, and address the role of drug therapy in the overall management of psychiatric disorders.
- PHARMACY 736 (2 Points)**  
**Pharmacotherapy in Dermatology**  
 Application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of preparations and drug therapy in the management of dermatological conditions. Critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with dermatological conditions.
- PHARMACY 737 (2 Points)**  
**Pharmacotherapy in Oncology**  
 Application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of cancer and the care of the terminally ill patient. Critical review of the relevant literature, the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for cancer and terminally ill patients, and address the role of drug therapy in the treatment of neoplastic disease.
- PHARMACY 740 (2 Points)**  
**Evidence-based OTC Prescribing**  
 Examines the evidence base for the use of OTC medicines in the management of minor disease states. Includes a critical review of the relevant literature and addresses the issues of advice and recommendations when responding to patient symptoms.
- PHARMACY 741 (2 Points)**  
**Pharmacotherapy in the Elderly**  
 Examines patient factors that influence drug use in elderly patients. It will address the issues of dosage modifications, polypharmacy and medicine management in elderly patients, and include a critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for elderly patients.
- PHARMACY 742 (2 Points)**  
**Paediatric Pharmacotherapy**  
 Examines patient factors that influence drug use in the new born through to adolescence. Addresses the issues of dosage modifications, appropriate drug formulations and the use of unlicensed medicine in paediatric patients, and includes a critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for paediatric patients.
- PHARMACY 743 (2 Points)**  
**Nutrition for Pharmacists**  
 Examines nutritional requirements in pregnancy and lactation, in infants and the elderly and in relation to specific disease states. Includes a critical review of the relevant literature and the determination of patient requirements in respect of parenteral feeding.
- PHARMACY 750 (4 Points)**  
**Pharmaceutical Formulation**  
 Physiological and physicochemical factors in drug delivery and formulation of pharmaceutical products. Consideration of both traditional (eg, solutions, semi-solids, solids, aerosols) and novel (eg, liposomal) drug delivery systems based on the experimental literature.
- PHARMACY 751 (4 Points)**  
**Pharmaceutical Techniques**  
 Experimental and analytical techniques in the assessment of pharmaceutical products and of drug action in biological systems. Consideration of pharmacopoeial and official standards, drug stability and drug metabolism.
- PHARMACY 752 (2 Points)**  
**Pharmaceutical Quality Assurance**  
 Principles of good manufacturing practice (GMP), quality assurance and quality control as applied to pharmaceutical products and processes. Consideration of relevant industrial processes, legislation, safety issues, packaging, labelling, stability and regulatory requirements.
- PHARMACY 753 (2 Points)**  
**Regulatory Affairs**  
 National and international requirements pertaining to the registration, licensing and distribution of pharmaceutical products. Consideration of the legal framework, pre-clinical testing, clinical trials, pharmacovigilance, role of statutory authorities, pharmaco-economic data and the role of health professionals.
- PHARMACY 754 (2 Points)**  
**Pharmaceutical Science Research Proposal**  
 A comprehensive critical study of the literature pertaining to the proposed thesis research. This will include a review of the relevant methodologies, the analysis of research results and the relationship of published work to the proposed research.
- PHARMACY 792 (6 Points)**  
**PHARMACY 792A (3 Points)**  
**PHARMACY 792B (3 Points)**  
**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMACY 792 A and B, or PHARMACY 792*
- PHARMACY 796A (7 Points)**  
**PHARMACY 796B (7 Points)**  
**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMACY 796 A and B*
- 
- Special Topics**
- PHARMACY 801 (7 Points)**  
**Evidence-based Pharmacotherapy**  
 Principles and techniques of evidence-based

medicine and pharmacotherapy (EBM and EBP) including meta-analyses, systematic reviews and international collaborations (eg, Cochrane Collaboration). Application of EBP (eg, guidelines, protocols, academic detailing) including limitations. Role of health professionals in EBP, with an emphasis on pharmacy. Research project in a selected application of EBP.

**PHARMACY 802 (7 Points)**

**Applied Pharmacoeconomics**

Principles and techniques of pharmacoeconomics in the context of pharmaceutical management in New Zealand. Application of cost-minimization, cost-benefit, cost-effectiveness and cost-utility analyses in policy development and medicines use. Research project in a selected application of pharmacoeconomic analysis.

**PHARMACY 803 (7 Points)**

**Management of Pharmaceuticals**

National and international strategies in the management of pharmaceuticals. Consideration of supply-side (eg, pharmaceutical subsidisation) and demand-side (eg, prescriber education) initiatives. The role of industry, regulatory authorities and government agencies and of health professionals with an emphasis on pharmacy. Pharmacy initiatives including drug-use evaluation and pharmaceutical care. Research project in a selected application of pharmacy intervention.

**PHARMACY 804 (7 Points)**

**Philosophical Basis of Pharmacy Practice**

Development of pharmacy from compounding and dispensing medicines to a knowledge system which renders a health service. Pharmacy's societal purpose. Evolving concepts of product-orientation, patient-orientation and pharmaceutical care. Development of pharmacy values. Interaction of pharmacy developments with evolving models of health care. Predictions for future models of pharmacy practice. Reflective project to identify the student's analysis of personal development and vision for the future.

**PHARMACY 896 (28 Points)**

**Practice Research Thesis**

**Physiology**

**Stage II**

**PHYSIOL 210 (2 Points)**

**Human Physiology: The Survival Machine**

An integrative approach is used to study fundamental physiological processes which enable the body to overcome the challenge of life. Drawing on examples of normal and abnormal function, the course examines the interaction of vital physiological processes, from cellular control mechanisms to multiple organ systems. Topics include: energy use, control of fluid and electrolytes, delivery of oxygen and metabolites. The cardiovascular system will receive special attention as an example of a highly integrated physiological system which accurately meets a wide range of challenges in day to day survival.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points from 405.105, BIOSCI 107, HUMANBIO 142

*Restriction:* 570.202

**PHYSIOL 220 (2 Points)**

**Human Physiology: The Neural Machine**

The impact of the neuroscience revolution on our understanding of human physiology. Topics include: mechanisms of neurotransmission, learning, memory and sensory perception (vision, hearing, touch and smell). Special emphasis is placed on the integration and control of physiological function by the nervous system. Examples include: control of movement and coordination, regulation of reproduction, blood pressure, breathing, digestion and body weight. Developmental neuroscience is also considered. Laboratory exercises will provide insight into neural function.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points from 405.105, BIOSCI 107, HUMANBIO 142

*Restriction:* 570.201

**Stage III**

**PHYSIOL 301 (2 Points)**

**Molecular Physiology**

Considers the molecular basis of the physiology of cellular homeostasis and signalling, and the implementation of advanced techniques in molecular neurobiology and neuroscience associated with understanding the physiological significance of ion channels, gap-junctions, membrane transporters and second-messenger coupled receptor pathways. Emphasis is placed on functional studies (such as applications in neurotransmission, hearing, vision and weight control), which combine molecular biological and electrophysiological techniques. The analysis extends to the use of recombinant DNA technology and physiological imaging to study protein trafficking and regulation of gene expression, including gene therapy applications. The laboratory exercises focus on using current techniques for analysis of gene expression and gene cloning, including the polymerase chain reaction (PCR).

*Prerequisite:* 570.201 or PHYSIOL 220, and 570.202 or PHYSIOL 210

**PHYSIOL 302 (2 Points)**

**Biophysics of Nerve and Muscle**

An advanced treatment of the physiology of excitable cells. Topics include: the biophysical basis of membrane potential, the spread of electrical activation and synaptic transmission, structure, excitation, mechanics and energetics of muscle and functional differences among muscle types. The approach is quantitative with particular emphasis on current advances in the field.

*Prerequisite:* 570.201 or PHYSIOL 220, and 570.202 or PHYSIOL 210

**PHYSIOL 303 (2 Points)**

**Physiology of the Brain**

The role of the central nervous system and the general pattern of its structure and functional organization. The processing of sensory information, motor outputs and their control, the integrative functions of the central nervous system and techniques used to study brain structure and function are covered at an advanced level.

*Prerequisite:* 570.201 or PHYSIOL 220, and 570.202 or PHYSIOL 210

**PHYSIOL 304 (2 Points)****Cardiovascular Biology**

An advanced treatment of the human cardiovascular system that provides an integrated framework for understanding the structure, function and regulation of the heart and circulation, and their modification by drugs. Topics include: the energetics and mechanics of the heart, the regulation of heart rhythm and the control of blood pressure and the regulation of flow through the microcirculation. The course is illustrated using examples drawn from current research in the field and from representative disease states.

*Prerequisite: 570.202 or PHYSIOL 210*

**PHYSIOL 305 (2 Points)****The Biology of Fetal and Postnatal Growth**

Normal growth and metabolism is of paramount importance to survival and normal development. This course studies the biochemistry and physiology of prenatal and postnatal mammalian development and growth with particular emphasis on the role of endocrine regulation and environmental influences. The topics include: development, growth and function of organs and tissues from implantation until adulthood.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 203, PHYSIOL 210*

*Restriction: PAEDS 301*

**Diploma Courses****PHYSIOL 690A (2 Points)****PHYSIOL 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Physiology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSIOL 690 A and B*

**PHYSIOL 691A (2 Points)****PHYSIOL 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Physiology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSIOL 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses****PHYSIOL 701 (2 Points)****Experimental Design**

Principles of experimental design and data analysis in physiological research. Topics include: analysis of variance, post-hoc multiple comparisons, non-linear and multiple linear regression, analysis of covariance and statistical power. The approach is practical and computer statistical packages are used.

**PHYSIOL 702 (2 Points)****Measurement in Biomedical Science**

Principles of instrumentation and digital signal processing used in biomedical research. Topics covered include: signals and systems analysis, instrumentation systems, computers and data acquisition, frequency and time-domain analysis of digital signals, and digital filters. The approach is practical and computer digital signal processing packages are used.

**PHYSIOL 703 (2 Points)****Neurobiology: Sensory and Motor Systems**

An advanced treatment of current research in neuroscience. Involves critical analysis of the literature within the context of a series of major research themes that encompass models from molecular through to systems level neuroscience. Themes will be selected from the following areas: general and special senses, motor and autonomic

control and related pathologies such as Parkinson's disease and spinal cord diseases.

**PHYSIOL 705 (2 Points)****Contractile Function**

Recent advances in understanding of the structure, excitation, activation, mechanics, energetics and thermodynamics of contractile tissue. The course centres on rigorous assessment of current research in the field with particular emphasis on critical analysis of the methodologies involved.

**PHYSIOL 706 (2 Points)****Physiology of Rest and Exercise**

Recent advances in understanding of human physiological responses and adaptations to physical activity, including maximal exertion, occasional and habitual exercise, exercise under special conditions (heat, cold stress, alterations in oxygen supply), and the effects of prolonged inactivity.

*Restriction: SPORTSCI 706*

**PHYSIOL 707 (2 Points)****Topics in Current Physiology Research**

An in-depth examination of the literature relating to specified topics in current physiology research. This course involves directed reading of research publications with emphasis placed on critical analysis of the development of key concepts and techniques.

**PHYSIOL 708 (2 Points)****Current Research in Fetal and Postnatal Growth Biology**

The fetal environment has long-term consequences for the developing phenotype. This advanced course offers topics that cover a wide range of related research themes including: placental development, fetal physiology, fetal origins of adult disease, and postnatal growth and development. Research topics include endocrine regulation and metabolic function during fetal and postnatal life.

*Restriction: PAEDS 701, 702, 703*

**PHYSIOL 789 (4 Points)****BSc(Hons) Dissertation****PHYSIOL 796A (7 Points)****PHYSIOL 796B (7 Points)****MSc Thesis in Physiology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSIOL 796 A and B*

**Psychiatry****Honours and Master's Courses****PSYCHIAT 713A (2 Points)****PSYCHIAT 713B (2 Points)****Special Topic in Mental Health**

This course offers the opportunity for academic staff to provide a specific course of study for one or several students. It is available only by arrangement between the staff member(s) and students.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 713 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 718 (2 Points)****Clinical Academic Psychiatry 1**

Descriptive psychopathology and the characteristics of the major mental disorders. The assessment, diagnosis, and measurement of symptom severity in psychiatry focusing on clinically relevant symptoms and signs.

*Restriction: 575.701*

**PSYCHIAT 720 (2 Points)****Liaison Psychiatry**

Liaison psychiatry is the practice of psychiatry in general hospitals and deals with people who have a mixture of physical and psychological/psychiatric problems. This course provides students with a knowledge of the academic and theoretical basis of the practice of liaison psychiatry and includes deliberate self-harm, somatization, coping with illness, depression in the physically ill, and delirium. A major part of the course will be the principles of psychological intervention in this group of patients.

**PSYCHIAT 731 (2 Points)****Evidence-based Mental Health Care 1**

This course is intended for students who will work within the health care system and provides an introduction to the evidence-based mental health care perspective. Students will learn how to (i) frame relevant and answerable questions, (ii) search the literature, (iii) critically appraise the literature, and (iv) apply the results to the mental health context. Emphasis will be placed on questions related to diagnosis, prognosis, aetiology and treatment effectiveness.

*Restriction: 575.709 and BEHAVSCI 758*

**PSYCHIAT 732 (2 Points)****Evidence-based Mental Health Care 2**

Introduces students to the conduct of clinical research in mental health care settings. Students will be taught how to design and conduct research studies about diagnosis, prognosis, aetiology and treatment effectiveness. The aim of the project is to produce a research protocol suitable for funding.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 731*

*Restriction: 575.709*

**PSYCHIAT 733 (2 Points)****Psychosocial Aspects of Ageing**

Explores gerontological issues which affect the health and wellbeing of older people. Ageing is approached from a psychosocial and developmental perspective. Intergenerational, family and caregiving issues are discussed during the course, together with exploration of the important life changes that occur with ageing such as loss, loneliness and bereavement.

**PSYCHIAT 734 (2 Points)****Old Age Psychiatry**

The study of mental disorders in late life from a mental health and psychiatry perspective. This will include: epidemiology, aetiology, phenomenology, and treatment of major disorders and their complications from a biopsychosocial perspective.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 733*

*Restriction: 575.712*

**PSYCHIAT 740 (2 Points)****Child and Adolescent Psychopathology**

Includes teaching on conceptualization of mental disorder in children and adolescents, specifically considering the benefits and pitfalls of an illness model. The major focus will be a biopsychosocial and developmental perspective and there will be specific teaching focusing on the DSM IV classification in child and adolescent psychiatry.

**PSYCHIAT 741 (2 Points)****PSYCHIAT 741A (1 Point)****PSYCHIAT 741B (1 Point)****Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Theory**

Covers the range of treatment modalities used in child and adolescent mental health. Rationale and nature of current therapies will be covered. Students will undertake critical appraisal of the evidence base for therapy pertinent to specific clinical situations.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 740*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 741 A and B, or PSYCHIAT 741*

**PSYCHIAT 742 (2 Points)****PSYCHIAT 742A (1 Point)****PSYCHIAT 742B (1 Point)****Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Practice**

Includes the practical application of major therapies required in clinical practice. Students will see children and adolescents and their families in a clinical setting and under supervision. Students will be required to complete a logbook of specific cases and write up two of these cases with a clinical appraisal of the relevant literature and evaluation of therapies.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 741*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 742 A and B, or PSYCHIAT 742*

**PSYCHIAT 745 (2 Points)****Suicide Studies**

Epidemiology and possible causes of suicide and deliberate self-harm (attempted suicide). Evaluation of suicide risk and self-harm in individuals. The consequences of suicide at an individual and systemic level.

**PSYCHIAT 746 (2 Points)****Research Topic in Forensic Psychiatry**

A detailed research study of key issues in forensic psychiatry.

**PSYCHIAT 747 (2 Points)****Child and Adolescent Development**

Evaluation of research support for major conceptual and theoretical frameworks for understanding development will be addressed. There will be a focus on specific aspects of development in relation to mental health in childhood and adolescence. These will include: theories of attachment, cognitive development, and social and emotional development in the context of the family; and identity and self-concept issues in adolescence.

*Restriction: 575.620*

**PSYCHIAT 748A (1 Point)****PSYCHIAT 748B (1 Point)****Child, Adolescent and Family Assessment**

Recognition of normal and abnormal development, psychopathology and ability to assess family function in a culturally appropriate way will be the major focus of the course. Critical analysis of validity and reliability of methods of assessment in children, adolescents and their families, communication skills with children and adolescents, legal issues, assessment of risk of self-harm, harm to others, and abuse will be addressed.

*Restriction: 575.621*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 748 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 749A (1 Point)****PSYCHIAT 749B (1 Point)****Case Studies in Child and Adolescent Mental Health**

This course will be a practicum in which students will be asked to assess (under supervision) and write up cases. A formulation of the clinical problem, a management plan and a critical review of the literature pertaining to one aspect of the case will be expected.

*Restriction: 575.622*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 749 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 760 (2 Points)**

**Legal Issues in Psychiatry**

An overview of the key issues in the interface between the law and psychiatry, including issues in criminal law (legal insanity, fitness to stand trial, sentencing issues of mentally abnormal offenders), mental health law and civil forensic psychiatry. Report writing and the principles of expert testimony will be addressed.

**PSYCHIAT 761 (2 Points)**

**Clinical Forensic Psychiatry 1**

Addresses the major clinical themes of forensic psychiatry. Students will develop an understanding of the relationship between mental disorder and dangerous behaviour, the principles of risk assessment and management, and the service needs of mentally abnormal offenders.

**PSYCHIAT 762 (2 Points)**

**Clinical Forensic Psychiatry 2**

Examines the literature in detail in relation to key forensic psychiatric issues including: the assessment of risk of violence, the impact of treatment services, the nature and application of the concept of psychopathy, and the role and directions of forensic psychiatric research.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 761*

**PSYCHIAT 763 (2 Points)**

**Psychiatric Epidemiology and Social Psychiatry**

Covers key topics in psychiatric epidemiology and social psychiatry. It will cover major research themes, such as: the determination of prevalence and incidence of mental disorder, mental health service use, and biological, psychological and social risk factors for mental disorder. Emphasis will be placed on the definition of 'caseness', and the measurement of explanatory and outcome variables in psychiatric epidemiology studies.

*Prerequisite: 515.702 or COMHLTH 720 or PSYCHIAT 731 or equivalents*

**PSYCHIAT 764 (2 Points)**

**Clinical Academic Psychiatry 2**

Prognosis and treatment of the major mental disorders from an evidence-based perspective. Pharmacological and psychosocial interventions for the major mental disorders. Measurement of the process of care and treatment outcome.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 718, 731*

**PSYCHIAT 766 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Psychiatry.

**PSYCHIAT 767 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Psychiatry.

---

## Faculty of Science

---

### Bioinformatics

---

**BSc Honours Courses**

**BIOINF 789A (2 Points)**

**BIOINF 789B (2 Points)**

**Project in Bioinformatics**

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 359 and approval of Programme Director*

*Restriction: BIOSCI 789, COMPSCI 789, STATS 789*

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOINF 789 A and B*

---

### Biological Sciences

**BIOSCI 91W (2 Points)**

**Foundation Biology 1**

Introduces students to the fundamentals of biology. Content focuses on cell structure and function, biochemistry, genetics and evolution. Supporting laboratories include techniques in genetics, microscopy, cell development, including meiosis and mitosis, and electrophoresis. Students are also introduced to electronic resources and presenting numeric data.

**BIOSCI 92W (2 Points)**

**Foundation Biology 2**

Principles of classification, micro-organisms, animals, plants, current issues in biology, ecology and conservation. Laboratories cover taxonomic keys, microbial products, such as yoghurt, animal diversity, sheep's heart and lungs, earthworm dissection, plant taxonomy, plant form and function, transpiration, finding scientific information on the web, ecological sampling and data processing.

*This course requires prior enrolment in BIOSCI 91W.*

---

### Stage I

**BIOSCI 100 (2 Points)**

**Antarctica: The Frozen Continent**

A general introduction to Antarctica and its environs including the Southern Ocean and the sub-Antarctic islands. Emphasis will be placed on the evolution of Antarctica and how resident plants, animals and micro-organisms are adapted to cope with the extreme environment. Specific topics to be addressed include: the history of Antarctic exploration and its impact on the development of Antarctic science, Antarctic ecosystems, Antarctica as a wilderness region, and the impact of humans including the exploitation of resources and the effects of pollution. This course is suitable for students with both science and non-science backgrounds.

**BIOSCI 101 (2 Points)**

**Essential Biology: From Genomes to Organisms**

An introduction to the structures and processes which are common to micro-organisms, animals and plants at the cellular, molecular and biochemical levels. Genetic principles and processes and an overview of evolution and evolutionary concepts are included.

*This course assumes a knowledge of Year 13 Biology and at least Year 12 Chemistry.*

**BIOSCI 102 (2 Points)****Plants, Microbes and Society**

A multidisciplinary approach is taken to studying the relationships between plants, microbes and humans. The course begins with an introduction to the key characteristics of plants and microbes and then goes on to show how they are used for food and pharmaceuticals. The impact of plants and microbes on human health, as well as their role in a variety of industrial and biotechnological processes, will be highlighted.

**BIOSCI 103 (2 Points)****Comparative Animal Biology**

A comparative approach to the study of animals, focusing on the processes which underlie and unite all animal life. Emphasis will be placed on evolutionary relationships and history, and on the relationship between form and function and the predictability of animal design. Reference will be made to the New Zealand fauna and to other animals of economic or evolutionary importance, where appropriate.

**BIOSCI 104 (2 Points)****New Zealand Ecology and Conservation**

An introduction to the diversity of animals and plants in New Zealand including endemic, native and introduced species, biogeographical and evolutionary relationships, community structure and interrelationships, behaviour and ecology. Maori perspectives in biology, and current conservation, environmental, social, animal welfare, and economic issues relevant to New Zealand biology.

**BIOSCI 106 (2 Points)****Foundations of Biochemistry**

Biochemical reactions as essential elements of life processes with reference to the genes that control them. Material covered includes: the molecular structure and action of proteins, the synthesis and metabolism of carbohydrates and fats in the fed and starved states, and elements of enzymology, energetics, metabolism, nutrition and hormonal control in health, physical performance and disease. Reference will be made to specific biomedical examples, where appropriate.

**BIOSCI 107 (2 Points)****Biology for Biomedical Science: Cellular Processes and Development**

The cellular basis of mammalian form and function including embryology and development. Particular emphasis will be placed on the cellular components of the blood, neural, muscular, reproductive, immune and supporting systems, and how they contribute to the structure and function of the body as a whole.

**Stage II****BIOSCI 200 (2 Points)****Current Topics on the Biology of Humans**

A moderate and broadly-based knowledge of biology is assumed for this course. It examines topics such as: human evolution, development and genetic disorders; the immune system and a variety of diseases; ageing and afflictions of old age.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points from Biology or Departmental Consent

*Restriction:* Any other Stage II or III course in Biology. This course is for students not intending to progress in other Stage II courses within the School of Biological Sciences.

**BIOSCI 201 (2 Points)****Cellular and Molecular Biology**

The basic structures of biomolecules, the evolution and structure of cells and their organization into tissues and organs are examined first. This is followed by a study of the nucleus, the regulation of gene expression, and DNA, RNA and protein synthesis. Further sections deal with cell behaviour, development, cancer and the basis of immunity.

*Prerequisite:* BIOSCI 101 and 107, and 2 points from either CHEM 110 or 120

**BIOSCI 202 (2 Points)****Genetics**

The basic principles of mutation, recombination and genetic mapping are established in this course. These principles are developed in a variety of prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms. Laboratory work uses molecular, microbial and eukaryotic material to explore the key features of heredity.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points from Stage I Biological Sciences including BIOSCI 101

**BIOSCI 203 (2 Points)****Biochemistry**

Presents core areas of modern animal and plant biochemistry. Emphasis is on macromolecular (protein, enzyme and membrane) structure and function, central metabolism, including metabolic integration and control, and signal transduction in hormone action and vision. Plant biochemistry includes nitrogen fixation, photosynthesis and cell-wall structure.

*Prerequisite:* BIOSCI 101, 106 and 2 points from either CHEM 110 or 120

**BIOSCI 204 (2 Points)****Applied and Environmental Microbiology**

Functions and behaviour of micro-organisms (prokaryotes, eukaryotes and viruses) as individuals and in communities. The fundamental role of micro-organisms in ecosystems. Application of microbial capabilities to biotechnology, food production, agriculture and industry. Methods for the isolation, culture and study of micro-organisms.

*Prerequisite:* BIOSCI 101 and at least 2 points from BIOSCI 102, 106, 107

**BIOSCI 205 (2 Points)****Plants: Specialization Through Design**

A foray into the spectacular diversity in plant architecture and function, integrating the research findings from molecular biology, cell biology, plant development, systematics and ecology. This course shows how internal control mechanisms work in concert with the environment to generate plant form, optimise growth and generate diversity.

*Prerequisite:* BIOSCI 101 and 102

**BIOSCI 206 (2 Points)****Ecology and Biodiversity**

Ecological principles and how they influence the biodiversity of the world's biomes are detailed. The relationships between an organism and its environment, population biology, the role of behaviour, the determinants of population growth and abundance, the structure and properties of

communities. Field courses involve either marine ecology and terrestrial plant ecology, or behavioural ecology. Students advancing in Ecology must take BIOSCI 209.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101, and 102 or 103 or 104*

*Corequisite: BIOSCI 209*

**BIOSCI 207 (2 Points)**

**Evolutionary Form and Function in Animals**

Animals are found in almost all habitats on Earth, from the abyssal depths of the oceans to the tops of mountains. How have morphology, behaviour and physiology evolved to enable animals to occupy these different habitats? The course focuses on comparative examples that are presented in an evolutionary framework. The approach examines animal senses in relation to behaviour and animal function in relation to morphological structure. The practical course involves predominantly the use of invertebrate models to investigate behaviour, orientation, and sensory systems. The course serves as a basis for advanced courses in ecophysiology, fish biology and behavioural ecology.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101, and 102 or 103 or 104 or 106 or 107*

**BIOSCI 208 (2 Points)**

**Invertebrate Diversity**

Invertebrates make up over 95 per cent of animal species. This course explores the biology of invertebrates with an emphasis on structure, function, life histories, behaviour and ecology. Invertebrate diversity is examined in a variety of environments, using New Zealand examples where possible, and provides the basis for advanced courses in conservation and marine ecology.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101 and 103*

**BIOSCI 209 (2 Points)**

**Biometry**

Understanding the logic of statistical techniques. The topics covered include: data description, simple probability and probability distributions, hypothesis testing, correlation and regression, one and two-way analysis of variance, goodness of fit tests and simple non-parametric methods. A knowledge of Year 13 mathematics is strongly recommended.

*Prerequisite: 8 points in Stage 1 Science courses including 4 points at Stage 1 in Biological Sciences and/or Geography*

**Stage III**

**BIOSCI 320 (2 Points)**

**Pure and Applied Entomology**

An introduction to the systematics of insects describing the characters that define the major lineages, discussion of the role insects play in different ecological systems, and insect anatomy, physiology, and genetics. Their impact on agriculture and as disease vectors is discussed with descriptions of various control methods for insect pests and how these methods are integrated. Students wishing to complete a course in plant protection should take both BIOSCI 320 and 321.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 103 and 2 points from Stage II Biological Sciences courses*

**BIOSCI 321 (2 Points)**

**Plant Pathology**

Micro-organisms are of major importance to agriculture. This course will examine the biology of

plant pathogens, plant-microbial interactions at the cellular and sub-cellular level, and the epidemiology and control of plant diseases. Practicals will focus on techniques for isolation, culture, identification and study of plant pathogens.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 204 or 205*

**BIOSCI 322 (2 Points)**

**Evolution of Genes, Populations and Species**

Fundamentals of molecular evolution, population genetics, phylogenetic and organismal evolution. Examples from animals, plants and microbes, as well as current issues, including speciation, adaptation, co-evolution, conservation, genomics, biotechnology and human disease, will be considered.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 202*

**BIOSCI 328 (2 Points)**

**Fisheries and Aquaculture**

Harvest and capture of aquatic organisms and inter-relationships with aquaculture. Fisheries and aquaculture are treated not as distinct disciplines but in the context of integrating exploitation and sustainable environmental integrity. Case studies include deepsea and coastal fisheries, and shellfish culture.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 207 or 208*

**BIOSCI 329 (2 Points)**

**Biology of Fish**

A comprehensive coverage of the biology of fish including their evolution, diversity and organism biology. Coverage includes habitats of particular interest to New Zealand such as Antarctica, the deepsea, coral and temperate reefs, and New Zealand's lakes and rivers.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 207 or 208*

**BIOSCI 330 (2 Points)**

**Freshwater and Estuarine Ecology**

The structure, biodiversity and ecology of lakes, streams, wetlands and estuaries. The linkages between human activities and ecosystem dynamics will be explored. Topics also include the management of fresh and estuarine waters, including methods used to assess and monitor ecological health.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 206 and 209*

**BIOSCI 333 (2 Points)**

**Marine Ecology**

Patterns and processes in the ecology of benthic and pelagic organisms, including algae, invertebrates and fish. Emphasis is placed upon the quantitative description of patterns in distribution and abundance, and the experimental techniques used to elucidate causative processes. The relationship between the ecology and physiology of selected organisms is also discussed.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 206 and 209, and one of BIOSCI 205 or 208*

**BIOSCI 335 (2 Points)**

**Ecological Physiology**

Focuses on the strategies used by animals to cope with physical and biological challenges in the environment. Accordingly, we work at the level of the individual and the interface between physiological, biochemical or molecular approaches on the one hand, and ecology on the other. The adaptive strategies employed by a range of species, with an

emphasis on aquatic organisms, in response to physical factors such as temperature, oxygen and food availability, are considered. Energetics and nutrition are emphasized. The course aims to meet the needs of students with ecological interests wishing to recognize the experimental approach to solving problems in environmental biology. The practical work is project oriented rather than laboratory based.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 207 or 208*

**BIOSCI 337 (2 Points)**

**Animal Behaviour**

Proximate and ultimate causes of behaviour are investigated experimentally in the field and the laboratory. Responses by animals to variations in the physical environment and to other organisms are studied. The development and organization of behaviour and the theoretical background to topics of current interest are covered, using both New Zealand and overseas examples. A knowledge of BIOSCI 206 and 207 is recommended.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 209 or STATS 201*

**BIOSCI 340 (2 Points)**

**Plant Physiology and Development**

Selected topics, illustrating experimental approaches ranging from in vitro molecular studies to whole plant ecophysiology.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 205*

**BIOSCI 349 (2 Points)**

**Biomedical Microbiology**

The major biochemical, physiological and genetic systems involved in the biology of micro-organisms affecting human health. Properties of micro-organisms important in pathogenesis and virulence, and examples of infectious diseases. The molecular response of the host cells during infection; the molecular basis for antimicrobial therapy, acquisition of resistance, and vaccination; use of micro-organisms in medical biotechnology.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 204 or MOLMED 201 or PHARMACY 203*

**BIOSCI 350 (2 Points)**

**Protein Structure and Function**

The relationship of molecular structure to protein function will be emphasized. Techniques for the purification, characterization, production of native and recombinant proteins and three-dimensional structure determination will be combined with a description of protein structure. Specific groups of proteins will be selected to illustrate structure/function relationships and protein evolution.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 and 203*

**BIOSCI 351 (2 Points)**

**Molecular Genetics**

The analysis of genetic material in prokaryotes, viruses, yeast, plants and humans is addressed. The means by which genetic information is transferred and the mechanisms underlying genome diversity will be examined, together with the study of eukaryote genomes at the level of chromosome structure and organization. The molecular mechanisms underpinning selected inherited human disorders will be discussed as well as the role of model species in understanding normal and perturbed biological pathways.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 and 202*

**BIOSCI 352 (2 Points)**

**Applied and Food Microbiology**

Physiological and behavioural ecology of micro-organisms, and microbial communities in food and natural environments including plants, animals and water. Applications of biotechnology in waste management. Bacterial signalling systems, inducible responses, biofilm formation, microbial interactions and genetics. Molecular approaches to the study of micro-organisms and the use of phylogenetic methods. Relevant national and international policy and legislation governing the occurrence and use of micro-organisms.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 204 or PHARMACY 203 or MOLMED 201*

**BIOSCI 353 (2 Points)**

**Molecular and Cellular Regulation**

The molecular mechanisms which mediate intracellular sorting and targeting of biologically active molecules and the networks of intracellular and extracellular signals which regulate cell function form the focus of this course. The roles of growth factors, oncogenes, plasma membrane receptors, nuclear receptors, ion channels and membrane transporters are emphasized.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 and 203*

**BIOSCI 354 (2 Points)**

**Gene Expression and Gene Transfer**

Molecular biology of plant and animal cells is stressed in topics covering gene expression, and genetic engineering. These include: methods of gene isolation, transcription factors and the control of gene expression, animal viruses as gene vectors, gene therapy in humans and genetic engineering of livestock, methods of gene transfer in plants, and examples of genetic engineering for crop improvement.

*Prerequisite: One of BIOSCI 201-203*

**BIOSCI 356 (2 Points)**

**Developmental Biology and Cancer**

Molecular, cellular and genetic aspects of normal and abnormal development focusing on a variety of model systems including drosophila, the zebrafish and the mouse. Molecular events underlying the development of body form, the differentiation of specific tissues such as the blood, and abnormalities of development which contribute to diseases of the body such as cancer. Implications of transgenic techniques on development.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 and 202*

**BIOSCI 357 (2 Points)**

**Immunology**

The biology and molecular events underlying the immune response. The structure and synthesis of antibodies and the cellular nature of the immune response. The relationship of the immune response to the activities and strategies of pathogenic organisms. Genetics, structure and function of antibodies, T cell receptors, histo-compatibility antigens, cytokines, and adhesion molecules. Applied immunology including biotechnology and diagnostic tools. Disorders of immunity including allergy, AIDS and autoimmune disease. In addition to lectures, this course includes practical classes, tutorials and computer-aided learning programmes.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 or MOLMED 201*

**BIOSCI 358 (2 Points)****Nutritional Science**

The scientific basis of nutrition focusing on its biochemistry and physiology in health and disease. Nutritional aspects of carbohydrates, fats, proteins, vitamins and trace nutrients are covered in an integrated manner. The methodologies which underpin nutritional science and its applications are included. Reference will be made to a broad range of examples, and a number of specific nutritional topics of current interest will also be included.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 203*

**BIOSCI 359 (2 Points)****Bioinformatics**

An overview of the methods and applications of computational biology with specific reference to: Internet-accessible database technology, technology and database mining, search algorithms, applications for gene and protein sequence analysis, phylogenetic analyses, and three-dimensional protein prediction methods.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 220 and 2 points from Biological Sciences and 2 points from Mathematics or Statistics*

**BIOSCI 393 (2 Points)****Ecological Restoration and Management**

The application of ecological principles to restoration. Principles of ecosystem and landscape management, project management and the integration of ecosystem services into productive landscapes. Policy and planning for mainland and island restoration; evaluation of pest and weed impacts and priorities for control as well as cultural, social and economic considerations.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in either Biological Sciences or Geography*

**BIOSCI 394 (2 Points)****Conservation Ecology**

Conservation of species and ecosystems. Population ecology, population growth, harvesting and pest control, marine and terrestrial conservation practice, forest and fisheries management. Impacts and control of invasive species. Population viability analysis and case studies in the conservation of threatened species. International conservation.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in either Biological Sciences or Geography*

**BIOSCI 395 (2 Points)****Pacific Biogeography and Biodiversity**

Island biogeography and insular biodiversity across the Pacific. A multi-disciplinary approach involving the study of both plant and animal systematics and biogeography.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in either Biological Sciences or Geography*

**BIOSCI 396 (2 Points)****Terrestrial Population and Community Ecology**

Experimental and theoretical population and community ecology focusing on the interactions and environmental forces controlling the distribution and abundance of terrestrial populations of plants and animals. Both New Zealand and international examples will be used to explain the fundamental processes shaping ecological systems throughout the world.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 209 and 206, or BIOSCI 104 and 205 or 207 or 208*

---

**Diploma Courses****BIOSCI 690A (2 Points)****BIOSCI 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Biological Sciences)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 690 A and B*

**BIOSCI 691A (2 Points)****BIOSCI 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Biological Sciences)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 691 A and B*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses****BIOSCI 724 (2 Points)****Marine Ecology**

Current topics in marine ecology at the population, community and ecosystem level. Seminars focus on ecology and evolution in a life-history context, including topics on fertilization, larval development and recruitment.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 710*

**BIOSCI 725 (2 Points)****Ecological Physiology**

The adaptive physiological and biochemical strategies of organisms, especially aquatic and marine animals, that enable them to cope with physical and biological challenges in the environment. Focus is given to the demands of inshore, coastal and marine environments in tropical, temperate and Antarctic regions.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 711*

**BIOSCI 727 (2 Points)****Marine and Freshwater Aquaculture**

Current assessment of the national and global status of aquaculture and fisheries including consideration of future prospects. Examples of algal, invertebrate and fish aquaculture in New Zealand, and a review of general environmental and biological problems and the role of scientific knowledge in aquaculture management. Coverage of factors contributing to wild fisheries management including spawning, larval survival, recruitment, principles of stock assessment and fisheries modelling.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 712, 726*

**BIOSCI 728 (2 Points)****Neuroethology**

The experimental study of the neural basis of behaviour, including current topics in sensory systems (eg. vision, olfaction, audition, lateral line, electro- and magneto-reception) together with neural mechanisms underlying biological rhythms. The application of neuroethology to biomimetic systems will also be discussed.

**BIOSCI 729 (2 Points)****Evolutionary Biology**

A contemporary approach to central issues in evolutionary biology including mechanisms that produce macroevolutionary patterns. Current research using phylogenetic methods for testing evolutionary hypotheses will be discussed, encompassing the role of selection, the origin of mutations, and concepts of heredity.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 706*

**BIOSCI 730 (2 Points)****Entomology and Biosecurity**

More than half of all described species are insects, and there are many times more species awaiting discovery and description. Insects at every trophic level above plants dominate terrestrial and freshwater food chains. Examines the evolution of insects, the importance of their role in terrestrial ecosystems, and the problems posed by insects as biosecurity invaders in non-native environments.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 708*

**BIOSCI 731 (2 Points)****Biogeography**

Examines the patterns of animal and plant distribution, and the processes that influence these patterns. Topics covered include equilibrium theory, island succession, vicariance and dispersal, insular speciation, and human migration and colonization.

**BIOSCI 733 (2 Points)****Molecular Ecology and Evolution**

Interpreting the molecular archive by reconstructing the branching history of inheritance and its relationship to genetic diversity within and between species. Topics may include the neutral theory of molecular evolution, rates of molecular evolution, molecular systematics, genome change and speciation, molecular identification of species, gene flow and population structure, selection at the molecular level, inbreeding depression and mutational load, and the use of molecular markers for estimation of kinship and the description of mating systems.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 719*

**BIOSCI 734 (2 Points)****Population Genetics**

The principles of population and evolutionary genetics. Topics covered include the relationship between population dynamics and genetics, genetics and disease, genealogical inference in population genetics, loss of genetic diversity, and population genetics and conservation biology.

**BIOSCI 735 (2 Points)****Advanced Behavioural Ecology**

Focuses on organisms interacting in natural environments. Both the mechanistic underpinnings of behaviour and the fitness consequences of such behavioural traits will be examined. Behavioural ecology is not limited to questions of behaviour, but draws in issues of energetics and physiology as these factors are often used as proxies for fitness traits such as differences in survival and reproduction.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 723*

**BIOSCI 736 (2 Points)****Advanced Microbial Genetics**

Cross-disciplinary issues examining how genetic mechanisms influence diverse biochemical, evolutionary and ecological phenomena. The genetic basis of microbial interactions and horizontal gene transfer, the effect of stress and mutation on microbial evolution and how genetic networks influence phenotypic responses to environmental change.

**BIOSCI 739 (2 Points)****Dialogues in Biology**

Cross-disciplinary issues in biology will be debated and explored including ethical and commercial issues underpinning science as a vocation; genetic engineering; development, and evolution versus genetic reductionism; environmentalism, conservation and biodiversity, the role of taxonomy, the history and philosophy of biological science.

**BIOSCI 741 (2 Points)****Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology**

Historical overview of the development of industrial microbiology. Diversity of applications and their level of complexity. Biodiversity of fermentations. Microbial metabolism and the assimilation of carbon, nitrogen and sulphur. Interconnections between catabolic and biosynthetic pathways. Metabolic considerations in continuous culture. Selection, isolation and construction of useful organisms. Manipulation of growth conditions to optimise process yield. Contemporary examples of industrial processes using microbes.

**BIOSCI 742 (2 Points)****Bioinformatics and Computational Biology**

The methods and applications of computational biology with specific reference to: Internet-accessible database technology and database mining, search algorithms, applications for gene and protein sequence analysis, phylogenetic analyses, plus three-dimensional protein prediction methods.

**BIOSCI 743 (2 Points)****Advanced Bioinformatics 1**

Biological sequence analysis focussing on RNA, DNA, genes and proteins. Students will be introduced to advanced probabilistic and computational methods of alignment, phylogenetic reconstruction, gene discovery and structural prediction. The use of genetic markers as disease correlates, and the analysis of quantitative trait loci will also be covered.

**BIOSCI 744 (2 Points)****Advanced Bioinformatics 2**

Introduction to structural, functional and comparative genomic analysis, and the analysis of micro-array and gene expression data. Also surveys recent developments in bioinformatics.

**BIOSCI 745 (2 Points)****Biotechnology and Bioentrepreneurship**

Biotechnology and its commercial significance in the emerging knowledge economy. Includes strategies and scientific platforms used in biotechnology companies, analysis of routes towards commercialization, and local and global case studies of 'Biotechnology in action'. Material relevant to both students and practitioners of science or business will be presented.

**BIOSCI 749 (2 Points)****Ecology of Microbial Interactions**

The associations of micro-organisms with their immediate environment are considered. Topics include microbial communities and their survival strategies in natural and artificial systems.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 722*

**BIOSCI 750 (2 Points)****Techniques in Microbial Discovery**

Molecular and serological techniques for investigation of microbes (bacteria, fungi and

viruses) in various environments will be investigated. Topics include detection and diagnosis of causal organisms of plant diseases and techniques used to discover the nature and diversity of organisms in complex environments (ie, non-culturable and novel organisms). Includes a two day practical workshop where students will gain hands-on experience.

**BIOSCI 751 (2 Points)**

**Molecular Plant Pathology**

Addresses selected topics in molecular plant pathology. Modern research on issues relating to plant disease spread (epidemiology) and plant pathogen interactions (disease resistance and susceptibility) will be investigated and discussed.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 703*

**BIOSCI 752 (2 Points)**

**Plant Functional Genomics**

An analysis of plant genomes and genes and their mode of action. Topics may include: inferences from the completed Arabidopsis genomic sequence; molecular plant breeding using natural genetic variation; model systems (yeast, oocytes, plant knockouts, over-expression lines) for functional analysis of genes involved in transport or flowering.

**BIOSCI 753 (2 Points)**

**Plant Biochemistry**

A selection of contemporary topics in the field of plant biochemistry, including molecular aspects. Topics may include: biosynthesis of cell-wall components, including cellulose and lignin; metabolism of nitrogen as an essential macronutrient; free radicals in plant biology.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 721*

**BIOSCI 754 (2 Points)**

**Plant Molecular Signalling**

Coverage of recent molecular progress in how plant cells communicate. Topics may include: cell-to-cell and systemic movement of RNAs, proteins and other signalling biomolecules; gene silencing and RNA interference; movement and perception of plant hormones; receptors and ligands involved in signalling.

**BIOSCI 755 (2 Points)**

**Genomics and Gene Expression**

The analysis of genomes and gene expression as a means of understanding biological processes. Aspects of functional and chemical genomics will be presented, as well as gene expression profiling using microarray technology. In terms of the latter, features of experimental design and data analysis will be discussed in the context of disease and developmental processes.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 714*

**BIOSCI 756 (2 Points)**

**Proteomics and Protein Interactions**

Proteomics describes a field of research concerned with the large-scale study of protein expression and function. Highlights biochemical approaches used to link protein sequence and function. The application of proteomics to drug action, discovery and toxicology will be included.

**BIOSCI 757 (2 Points)**

**Structural Biology**

A selection of contemporary topics in the field of

structure and function of important biomolecules and cellular activities. Topics may include: protein folding in the cell; motor proteins; influenza and HIV; protein structure determination; protein structure and function from genomic data.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 717*

**BIOSCI 758 (2 Points)**

**Development, Differentiation and Disease**

A critical analysis of normal and perturbed gene expression in selected model organisms as a means of understanding biological pathways and disease processes. Includes the development and use of transgenic organisms as models for human disease.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 714, BIOSCI 740*

**BIOSCI 759 (2 Points)**

**Molecular Cell Biology and Biomedicine**

Explores recent advances in cell biology that have led to a greater understanding of a variety of cellular processes at the molecular level. Emphasis will be placed on biochemical and genetic approaches to understand disease mechanisms at the cellular level.

**BIOSCI 761 (2 Points)**

**MSc Thesis Proposal**

An extensive review of background material associated with the thesis topic, and a detailed outline of the proposed research and its significance. Students will also be required to present an overview of the proposal in a seminar.

**BIOSCI 762 (2 Points)**

**BIOSCI 762A (1 Point)**

**BIOSCI 762B (1 Point)**

**BSc(Hons) Dissertation Proposal**

A review of the literature associated with the dissertation topic and an outline of the proposed research and its significance. Students will also be required to present an overview of the proposal in a seminar.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 762 A and B, or BIOSCI 762*

**BIOSCI 789A (2 Points)**

**BIOSCI 789B (2 Points)**

**BSc (Hons) Dissertation in Biological Sciences**

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 789 A and B*

**BIOSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**BIOSCI 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Biological Sciences**

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 796 A and B*

---

**Biomedical Science**

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**BIOMED 790A (7 Points)**

**BIOMED 790B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio in Biomedical Science**

An integrated combination of research in an advanced biomedical science research option, consisting of supervised practical work and independent critical analysis of research in the field.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOMED 790 A and B*

## BTEch Projects

### Stage IV

*Note: Project topics to be chosen in conjunction with the Coordinator of the Programme.*

**BTECH 430** (4 Points)

**BTECH 430A** (2 Points)

**BTECH 430B** (2 Points)

### Project in Biotechnology

The study of a selected field in biotechnology at an advanced level.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BTECH 430 A and B, or BTECH 430*

**BTECH 432** (2 Points)

### Biotechnology Research Proposal

A review of background literature relevant to the project topic and a detailed outline of the proposed research and its significance.

**BTECH 440** (4 Points)

**BTECH 440A** (2 Points)

**BTECH 440B** (2 Points)

### Project in Industrial Mathematics

The study of a selected field in industrial mathematics at an advanced level.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BTECH 440 A and B, or BTECH 440*

**BTECH 450** (4 Points)

**BTECH 450A** (2 Points)

**BTECH 450B** (2 Points)

### Project in Information Technology

The study of a selected field in information technology at an advanced level.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BTECH 450 A and B, or BTECH 450*

**BTECH 460A** (2 Points)

**BTECH 460B** (2 Points)

### Project in Materials

The study of a selected field in materials at an advanced level.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BTECH 460 A and B*

**BTECH 470A** (2 Points)

**BTECH 470B** (2 Points)

### Project in Optoelectronics

The study of a selected field in optoelectronics at an advanced level.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BTECH 470 A and B*

**BTECH 480** (4 Points)

### Project in Multimedia

The study of a selected field in multimedia at an advanced level.

## Chemistry

**CHEM 91W** (2 Points)

### Foundation Chemistry 1

Introduction to elements, compounds, the periodic table, atomic structure, covalent bonding, molecular shape and polarity. Quantitative chemistry, including balancing equations, calculating amount in moles, calculation of concentration. Energy and

thermo-chemistry. Laboratories include practical skills and qualitative analysis, and simple modelling.

**CHEM 92W** (2 Points)

### Foundation Chemistry 2

Introduces further principles of chemistry. Physical chemistry and qualitative inorganic analysis, including chemical kinetics and chemical equilibrium. Organic chemistry, including hydrocarbons, oxygen-containing functional groups, isomerism. Acid-base reactions, buffer solutions and titrations. Laboratories include reactions of hydrocarbon and oxygen-containing organic compounds, chromatography, testing for anions and cations in solution, acid-base titrations.

*This course requires prior enrolment in CHEM 91W.*

### Stage I

*Note: For students who have not had the opportunity to study Chemistry previously, or wish to refresh their knowledge, attention is drawn to the Preparatory Chemistry course offered by the Department of Chemistry at the start of each academic year. For exceptionally well qualified students, Stage I requirements may be waived.*

**CHEM 100** (2 Points)

### Chemistry in Society

For students interested in the role of chemistry in contemporary society. Considers chemical science in the context of development and/or control of technologies such as the use of plastics and pesticides, which can elicit a range of public responses, and ways in which conflicting information on such topics can be evaluated. Modules, which will change from year to year, will cover selected topics from a scientific point of view. Not intended as background for other chemistry courses.

*Prerequisite: No formal prerequisite, but the course assumes a science background at Year 11 level or higher*

**CHEM 110** (2 Points)

### Chemistry of the Living World

A foundation for understanding the chemistry of life is laid by exploring the diversity and reactivity of organic compounds. A systematic study of reactivity focuses on the site and mechanism of reaction including application of chemical kinetics. A quantitative study of proton transfer reactions features control of pH of fluids in both living systems and the environment.

*It is recommended that students with a limited background in chemistry take CHEM 150 prior to CHEM 110.*

*Restriction: CHEM 195*

**CHEM 120** (2 Points)

### Chemistry of the Material World

The chemistry of the elements and their compounds is explored using themes relating to the world and its sustainability. The relationship between molecular structure and reactivity, the role of energy, concepts of bond formation and chemical equilibrium are discussed. Topics covered include green chemistry, radioactivity, solution chemistry, batteries and fuels, useful transition metal compounds and the creation of new materials.

*It is recommended that students with a limited background in chemistry take CHEM 150 prior to CHEM 120.*

**CHEM 150** (2 Points)

### Concepts in Chemistry

The fundamentals of chemistry are explored with a view to enhancing appreciation of the chemical nature of the world around us as well as providing the foundation for further study in chemistry. Special attention is paid to familiarization with the language of chemistry and the chemist's perspective of the properties of matter and its transformations. *It is recommended that students with a limited background in chemistry take this course prior to CHEM 110 or CHEM 120.*

*Restriction: May not be taken with or after any other Chemistry course.*

### Stage II

#### CHEM 210 (2 Points)

##### Physical and Materials Chemistry

Physical chemistry is essential for developing and interpreting the modern techniques used to investigate the structure and properties of matter. Materials chemistry is an increasingly important subject aimed at producing new or improved materials for a variety of practical applications. Covers topics involving the application of physical chemistry to the study of modern materials: polymer chemistry, thermodynamics of pure and composite materials, electrochemistry and energy storage, the electrical properties of solids.

*No formal prerequisite. Knowledge of physical chemistry & basic lab practice at the level covered in CHEM 110 & 120 will be assumed. An understanding of basic maths at the level covered in MATHS 102 will also be assumed. Restriction: CHEM 201, 208*

#### CHEM 220 (2 Points)

##### Inorganic Compounds: Structure, Bonding and Reactivity

Modern inorganic chemistry encompasses the study of compounds with a broad diversity of reactivities, structures and bonding types. Often these have widespread relevance for many other areas of science and technology. Fundamental concepts in atomic and molecular structure will be provided to give a foundation for examples drawn from coordination, bioinorganic, organometallic and main group chemistry. The associated laboratories provide complementary experience in synthesis and measurement of physical properties for selected inorganic compounds.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of inorganic chemistry and basic laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 120 will be assumed. Restriction: CHEM 202*

#### CHEM 230 (2 Points)

##### Molecules for Life: Synthesis and Reactivity

Students will build on their repertoire of fundamental reaction types that have previously been encountered with the introduction of new reactions and their application to more complex molecules of biological and medicinal importance. The laboratory course is an integral component of the course that emphasizes preparative chemistry and the use of modern spectroscopic methods for structure determination.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of organic chemistry and basic laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 110 will be assumed. Restriction: CHEM 203*

#### CHEM 240 (2 Points)

##### Measurement and Analysis in Chemistry and Health Sciences

An introduction to the physico-chemical principles and techniques underlying a wide range of modern analytical methods used in chemistry and the biomedical sciences. Topics include chromatographic methods for the separation of complex mixtures, the application of modern electrochemical and spectroscopic techniques to analytical problems, and methods for assessing the reliability of results. Experiments illustrating these principles are an integral part of this course.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of aspects of chemistry and laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 110, and an understanding of basic mathematics at the level covered in MATHS 102 will be assumed*

*Restriction: CHEM 204, 209*

#### CHEM 270 (2 Points)

##### Environmental Chemical Processes

Sediment processes and transport in air, soil, sediments and water. Global biogeochemical cycles. Equilibrium and rate in natural systems. Environmental analysis and modelling. Radionuclides and trace metals in the natural environment.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of aspects of chemistry and laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 110 and 120 will be assumed*

*Restriction: CHEM 207*

### Stage III

#### CHEM 310 (2 Points)

##### Structural Chemistry and Spectroscopy

Molecular structure is fundamental to the understanding of modern chemistry. Molecular spectroscopy provides an important method for probing the structure of molecules, and the following aspects of this subject will be presented: molecular energies and molecular spectra, molecular symmetry and spectroscopy, surface spectroscopy and the structure and chemistry of surfaces.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of appropriate material at the level covered in CHEM 201 or 202 or 210 or 220 will be assumed*

*Restriction: CHEM 301*

#### CHEM 320 (2 Points)

##### Design and Reactivity of Inorganic Compounds

A selection of the most recent developments in contemporary inorganic chemistry will be covered. These will include ligand design and reactivity in coordination chemistry, macrocyclic chemistry, redox chemistry, photochemistry, construction of devices, organometallic chemistry, catalysis, and main group rings, chains, clusters and polymers. The laboratories provide complementary experience in synthesis and measurement of physical properties for selected inorganic compounds.

*Prerequisite: CHEM 220 or 202*

*Restriction: CHEM 302*

#### CHEM 330 (2 Points)

##### Contemporary Organic Chemistry

Topics in advanced organic chemistry, including the synthesis, reactions and uses of compounds containing phosphorus, selenium, boron and silicon. Organotransition metal chemistry. Asymmetric synthesis. Heterocyclic chemistry and pericyclic reactions. Laboratories emphasize synthetic and structural methods.

*Prerequisite: CHEM 230 or 203*

*Restriction: CHEM 303*

**CHEM 340 (2 Points)****Advanced Analytical Chemistry**

Principles and applications of modern instrumental analytical chemistry. Statistical methods, quality control and assurance, sampling, instrumentation, chromatographic and other separation methods, spectrophotometric methods, electro-analytical methods.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of analytical chemistry and laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 240 or 204 or 209 will be assumed*

*Restriction: CHEM 304*

**CHEM 350 (2 Points)****CHEM 350A (1 Point)****CHEM 350B (1 Point)****Topics in Chemistry**

Topics in modern chemistry. Students will select three of the modules offered, details of which are available in the *Department of Chemistry Undergraduate Handbook*.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of appropriate aspects of Stage 2 chemistry will be assumed*

*Restriction: CHEM 305*

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 350 A and B, or CHEM 350*

**CHEM 370 (2 Points)****Environmental Chemistry**

Anthropogenic chemicals in the environment and their influence on environmental systems and processes, including the chemistry of waste water, marine pollutants, pesticides, CFC's, geothermal effluents and ozone.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of environmental chemistry and laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 270 or 207 will be assumed*

*Restriction: CHEM 307*

**CHEM 380 (2 Points)****Materials Chemistry**

Synthesis, properties characterization and applications of advanced materials. Includes a review of current trends in materials research. Important aspects of solid inorganic materials and organic polymers are covered.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of materials chemistry and laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 210 or 201 will be assumed*

*Restriction: CHEM 308*

**CHEM 390 (2 Points)****Medicinal Chemistry**

Nature of cellular targets for drug action – lipids, proteins, enzymes, DNA. Principles of molecular recognition. Enzymes and receptors as targets for drug action. DNA as a target for drug action. An overview of approaches to drug discovery and development. Structure-activity relationships, stereochemistry and drug action, prodrugs, drug metabolism and pharmacokinetics, physicochemical properties and drug action, drug resistance. Laboratories focus on the synthesis, computer modelling and biological testing of drugs.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of organic chemistry and laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 230 or CHEM 203 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: CHEM 309*

**CHEM 392 (2 Points)****Issues in Drug Design and Development**

Intellectual property and patent law in the

pharmaceutical industry. An overview of the legal and regulatory framework for drug design and development. Clinical trials: formulation of a drug; phase I, phase II and phase III protocols. An introduction to the principles involved in the Codes of Good Manufacturing Practice and Good Laboratory Practice (quality control and quality assurance procedures) as applied to the manufacture of drug products and the quantification of drugs and metabolites in biological fluids. Occupational health and safety issues. Examples of drug development. Case studies of selected drugs from design to release.

**Diploma Courses****CHEM 690A (2 Points)****CHEM 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Chemistry)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 690 A and B*

**CHEM 691A (2 Points)****CHEM 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Chemistry)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses****CHEM 710 (2 Points)****Structural and Computational Chemistry**

Solid state chemistry. Symmetry in the solid state. Electronic band structure of solids. Statistical thermodynamics: the relationship between molecular structure and bulk properties of matter. The quantum mechanics of magnetic resonance: theory and applications of nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) and electron paramagnetic resonance (EPR) spectroscopy in structural chemistry.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of physical chemistry at the level covered in CHEM 310 or 301 and of basic calculus will be assumed.*

*Restriction: CHEM 711*

**CHEM 720 (2 Points)****Advanced Inorganic Chemistry**

The topics covered are chosen from areas of current research in inorganic chemistry, and will include functional supramolecular devices, organometallic and inorganometallic chemistry, and main group element multiple bonding.

*No formal prerequisites, but knowledge of inorganic chemistry at the level covered in CHEM 320 or 302 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: CHEM 721*

**CHEM 730 (2 Points)****Modern Methods for the Synthesis of Bioactive Molecules**

The use of modern methods for the construction of complex molecules with an emphasis on carbon-carbon bond formation and control of stereochemistry. Principles and practice of synthesis design based on retrosynthetic analysis. Each student will present and discuss a recent synthesis of a complex bioactive organic compound.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of organic chemistry at the level covered in CHEM 330 or 303 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: CHEM 731*

**CHEM 735 (2 Points)****Advanced Medicinal Chemistry**

Anticancer agents. Metals in medicine. Contemporary topics in medicinal and/or bioorganic chemistry.

**CHEM 740** (2 Points)

**Current Topics in Analytical Chemistry**

Principles and applications of modern analytical chemistry. Emphasis will be on the solution of problems met by analytical chemists, including a study of the development of instrumentation, and a study of current trends in analytical research.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of analytical chemistry at the level covered in CHEM 340 or 304 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 750** (2 Points)

**CHEM 750A** (1 Point)

**CHEM 750B** (1 Point)

**Advanced Topics in Chemistry 1**

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 750 A and B, or CHEM 750*

**CHEM 751** (2 Points)

**CHEM 751A** (1 Point)

**CHEM 751B** (1 Point)

**Advanced Topics in Chemistry 2**

A modular course comprising topics in physical, inorganic, organic and analytical chemistry related to departmental research interests, which will vary from year to year. Students satisfactorily completing three modules will be awarded CHEM 750. Students satisfactorily completing an additional three modules will be awarded CHEM 751.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 751 A and B, or CHEM 751*

**CHEM 770** (2 Points)

**Advanced Environmental Chemistry**

Selected current research topics in environmental chemistry. Examples include: Antarctic meltwater chemistry, impacts of geothermal energy and earth resource exploitation, trace metal fingerprinting, trace metal speciation modelling, persistent organic contaminants, indoor air chemistry and the atmospheric impact of aircraft emission.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of environmental chemistry at the level covered in CHEM 370 or 307 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 780** (2 Points)

**Advanced Materials Chemistry**

A selection of topics on the chemistry of advanced materials, including novel polymeric materials and materials characterization and analysis.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of materials chemistry at the level covered in CHEM 380 or 308 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 790** (2 Points)

**MSc Thesis Proposal in Chemistry**

A comprehensive computer-prepared review of the background literature material relevant to a thesis topic, including the significance of the topic, and the relationship of the published work to the research proposed. Candidates will also be required to have an oral examination.

**CHEM 792** (6 Points)

**CHEM 792A** (3 Points)

**CHEM 792B** (3 Points)

**BS(Hons) Dissertation in Chemistry**

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 792 A and B, or CHEM 792*

**CHEM 796A** (7 Points)

**CHEM 796B** (7 Points)

**MSc Thesis in Chemistry**

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 796 A and B*

## Computer Science

### Stage I

**COMPSCI 101** (2 Points)

**Principles of Programming**

An introduction to computers and computer programming in a high-level language. The role of computers and computer professionals in society is also introduced. The course is intended for students who may wish to advance in Computer Science or in Information Systems and Operations Management.

*Restriction: 415.114, 415.115*

**COMPSCI 105** (2 Points)

**Principles of Computer Science**

Extends the programming skills of COMPSCI 101, covering more advanced data structures and their representation and manipulation. Topics include: pointers, dynamic data structures (lists, queues, stacks, trees), recursion, sorting and searching, data representation and machine-level concepts.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101*

**COMPSCI 111** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Computing and the Internet**

An introduction to practical computing that focuses on the Internet and world wide web. Topics include: web design and development, digital images and sound, multimedia presentations, using the Internet as a communication medium, and programming.

*Restriction: 636.101, INFOSYS 110. May not be taken with or after any other Computer Science course*

### Stage II

**COMPSCI 210** (2 Points)

**Computer Systems**

Computer systems, as viewed at the interface between computer hardware and software. Representation of data in terms of bit patterns, a case study of the architecture of a particular computer, assembly language programming, input/output, operating system software and hardware support.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101 and 105*

*Restriction: 415.212*

**COMPSCI 220** (2 Points)

**Algorithms and Data Structures**

An introduction to the analysis of algorithms, graph algorithms and automata theory. Complexity analysis (Big-Oh notation). Complexity of sorting and searching algorithms. Depth-first and breadth-first search and applications. Graph optimization problems. Regular expression and finite state automata. Context-free grammars.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101, 105, and one of MATHS 108, 130, 150, 151*

*Restriction: 415.231, 415.233*

**COMPSCI 225** (2 Points)

**Discrete Structures in Mathematics and Computer Science**

An introduction to logic, principles of counting, mathematical induction, recursion, relations and functions, graphs and trees, and algorithms. This course is suited to students who are interested in the foundations of computer science, mathematics and logic.

*Restriction: 445.225*

**COMPSCI 230 (2 Points)**  
**Software Design and Construction**

Issues in the design and construction of large programmes. Advanced object-oriented programming. The software development process. An introduction to object-oriented analysis. Programme testing.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101, 105, and 2 points at Stage I in Maths*

*Restriction: 415.232, 415.234*

**COMPSCI 280 (2 Points)**  
**Applications Programming**

A programming course principally for BCom students specializing in Information Systems and Operations Management. It continues on from COMPSCI 101 in developing practical programming skills, but with a focus on using component-based approaches and object-oriented programming. The course offers an introduction to graphical user interfaces, client-server architectures, and techniques for integrating applications with databases and the web/Internet.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101, and COMPSCI 105 or INFOSYS 110. Normally for BCom students only.*

**Stage III**

**COMPSCI 313 (2 Points)**  
**Computer Organization**

The functioning and organization of modern computer systems. Architecture of computers and computer systems. Processor organization and implementation. Data representation and instruction formats, microprogramming, input/output systems, virtual memory and hierarchical memory systems.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 210 and PHYSICS 243*

*Restriction: 415.310*

**COMPSCI 314 (2 Points)**  
**Data Communications Fundamentals**

The structure of data communications and networks, particularly the lower levels of the communications architecture hierarchy. The OSI communications model, data transmission and coding, link-level protocols, local area networks, wide area networks and internetworking, transport protocols, introduction to ISDN, BISDN, Frame Relay.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage II Computer Science courses, including COMPSCI 210*

**COMPSCI 320 (2 Points)**  
**Algorithmics**

Further development of problem-solving and algorithm design methods, including: induction, divide-and-conquer, dynamic programming, greedy algorithms and graph algorithms. New topics such as: proof of correctness, amortised complexity, complexity lower bounds, decision trees, backtracking, branch-and-bound, probabilistic algorithms, advanced information structures and NP-completeness.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 220 and COMPSCI 225*

**COMPSCI 330 (2 Points)**

**Language Implementation**

The compilation and interpretation of computer languages, lexical analysis, top-down and bottom-up parsing, interpreters, procedure call conventions, symbol table analysis, code generation for control structures and expressions, attribute grammars.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 210 and 230*

*Restriction: 415.333*

**COMPSCI 334 (2 Points)**  
**Internet Programming**

Covers the programming and configuration aspects of the Internet, specifically programming with various protocols and programming for dynamic web content generation. Specific areas covered will include: HTTP, web servers, proxies and caches, performance and security aspects of servers and server-client interaction, scripting languages such as JavaScript and PHP, programming for dynamic content generation with scripting languages, and programming Internet applications such as search engines and shopping carts.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 230 and two further points at Stage II or III in Computer Science, or COMPSCI 105 and 280 and INFOSYS 222*

**COMPSCI 335 (2 Points)**  
**Distributed Objects and Web Services**

This course gives an appreciation of modern client-server development, based on distributed objects and their integration with databases and the web. A comparative study of relevant technologies such as RMI, CORBA and DCOM.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage II Computer Science courses including COMPSCI 230, or COMPSCI 280 and INFOSYS 222*

**COMPSCI 340 (2 Points)**  
**Operating Systems**

What is an operating system? Operating system principles: concurrent processes, processor management, memory management, disk management, management of other peripherals, computer security. Interacting with people: system implementation and job-control languages.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 210 and 230*

*Restriction: 415.341*

**COMPSCI 345 (2 Points)**  
**Human-computer Interaction**

Provides the necessary knowledge and skills to design, build, test and evaluate human-computer interfaces, including user documentation.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 220 and 230*

*Restriction: COMPSCI 370*

**COMPSCI 350 (2 Points)**  
**Mathematical Foundations of Computer Science**

The aim is to create a mathematical model for computers and computation, and to derive results about what can and cannot be computed. The course deals with idealized computers (automata) which operate on idealized inputs and outputs (formal languages).

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 220, and 225 or PHIL 201*

**COMPSCI 360 (2 Points)**  
**Functional and Logic Programming**

A practical introduction to programming in functional and logic programming languages. In

particular, the course introduces a declarative style of programming, in which the emphasis is placed more on what a programme achieves than how it is to achieve it.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 220 and 230

**COMPSCI 366 (2 Points)**

**Foundations of Artificial Intelligence**

An introduction to the basic concepts of artificial intelligence from the analytical point of view, using intelligent agents as the main focus point. Introduces some of the foundations of artificial intelligence, such as the well-known A\* algorithm, reasoning techniques based on logic and constraints, techniques for reasoning under uncertainty, and planning methods.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 220 and 225

*Restriction:* COMPSCI 365

**COMPSCI 367 (2 Points)**

**The Practice of Artificial Intelligence**

An introduction to the basic concepts of artificial intelligence from the empirical point of view, using intelligent systems as the main focus point. Introduces some of the foundations of artificial intelligence, such as rule-based reasoning, techniques based on knowledge engineering and representation, and neural and evolutionary models of computation and their application.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 220 and 225

*Restriction:* COMPSCI 365

**COMPSCI 372 (2 Points)**

**Computer Graphics**

An introduction to 3-D computer graphics using a standard graphics programming interface, such as OpenGL, as a focus. The course covers: graphics systems, geometric transformations, viewing and projection, polygon rendering, ray tracing and basic geometric modelling.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 220 and 230

*Restriction:* COMPSCI 370

**COMPSCI 375 (2 Points)**

**Picture Processing and Analysis**

Introduction to analog image quantization, digital images, digital image topology and geometry, and image binarization. Analysis of image regions and of point patterns (contour tracking, contour approximation, convex hull computation, Hough transform, Voronoi and Delaunay diagram), classification (statistical pattern analysis, neural networks), image processing operators, (Fourier transform, image filtering), and image compression.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 210 and 230, and MATHS 108 or 130 or 150 or 151

**COMPSCI 378 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Multimedia**

An advanced course in the integration of multi-dimensional material into multimedia presentations using advanced delivery tools and techniques. Includes the development, design and commissioning of multimedia projects.

**COMPSCI 380 (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 380A (1 Point)**

**COMPSCI 380B (1 Point)**

**Undergraduate Project in Computer Science**

Each student taking one of these courses will be expected to do an individual practical project under

the supervision of a member of staff. Only students with excellent academic records will be allowed to take these courses, and only after a supervisor and topic have been agreed upon by the Head of Department.

*Prerequisite:* Approval of Head of Department

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 380 A and B, or COMPSCI 380

**COMPSCI 390 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Computer Science 1**

**COMPSCI 391 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Computer Science 2**

**COMPSCI 392 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Computer Science 3**

**COMPSCI 393 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Computer Science 4**

---

**Diploma Courses**

**COMPSCI 690A (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 690B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Computer Science)**

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 690 A and B

**COMPSCI 691A (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Computer Science)**

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 691 A and B

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

The content of the Advanced Topic courses is liable to vary from one year to the next, depending on the research interests of staff and visitors. Consult the Department for information about which courses are being offered, and their content.

**COMPSCI 701 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science 1**

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 702 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science 2**

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 703 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science 3**

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 704 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science 4**

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 705 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science 5**

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 706 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science 6**

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 707 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science 7**

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 708 (2 Points)**

**Multimedia and Hypermedia Systems**

Multimedia and hypermedia systems in general: a survey of ideas, applications and typical systems.

current research issues; technical aspects, standards, information system and database aspects, networked systems. Project(s).  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 334*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 709 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Topic in Computer Science 8**  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 711 (2 Points)**  
**Parallel and Distributed Computing**  
 Computer architectures and languages for exploring parallelism, conceptual models of parallelism, principles for programming in a parallel environment, different models to achieve interprocess communication, concurrency control, distributed algorithms and fault tolerance.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 313 and 340*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 715 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Computer Graphics**  
 An advanced look at current research issues in computer graphics. Typical topics include: ray-tracing acceleration methods; radiosity; subdivision surfaces; physically-based modelling; animation; image-based lighting and rendering; non-photorealistic rendering; advanced texturing. The precise content may vary from year to year. Consult the department for details.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 372, and MATHS 152 or 250*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 716 (2 Points)**  
**Visualization**  
 Computer graphics and image processing algorithms for visualizing complex 3-D data sets in engineering, biomedicine and other applications. Topics include the preprocessing of data, modelling and reconstruction, mapping data onto visualization icons, and visual perception. Involves student projects and lectures.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 372 and 375*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 720 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Design and Analysis of Algorithms**  
 Techniques for solving hard combinatorial optimization problems including: backtracking, branch-and-bound, hill-climbing, simulated annealing and genetic algorithms. Enumeration algorithms; advanced topics in graph algorithms, amortised analysis of algorithms; algorithms in computational biology.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 320*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 725 (2 Points)**  
**Software Security**  
 Denial of service, privacy violations, primary and collateral damage. Eavesdropping, playback, binary tampering during delivery, introduction of hostile code, malicious hosts. Unauthorized use by copying, dongle mimicry, decompilation and recompilation, reverse engineering. Software patents, copyrights, trade secrets. Sandbox, blackbox, and cryptographic security. Steganography. Obfuscation, robust and fragile watermarks, fingerprints.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 330, and 320 or 340*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 730 (2 Points)**  
**Programming Language and Compiler Design**  
 Advanced topics in language implementation, including, attribute grammars, compiler-compilers, code generation issues, inter- and intra-procedural code optimization, parallel compilation, parallelizing compilers, implementation of novel programming languages and language constructs.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 313 and 330*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 731 (2 Points)**  
**Language Design and Definition**  
 An examination of the issue of what a programming language construct really means. Topics include: operational and denotational semantics; semantics of a variety of major language styles, including functional, parallel, logic and object-oriented; types and language design.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 313 and 330*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 732 (2 Points)**  
**Software Tools and Techniques**  
 An advanced course examining research issues related to tools and techniques for software design and development. Typical topics include: techniques for data mapping and data integration, software architectures for developing software tools, issues in advanced database systems. The precise content may vary from year to year. Consult the department for details.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 335*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 734 (2 Points)**  
**Pervasive Computing and the Enterprise**  
 Examines advanced and emerging software architectures at the confluence of XML, web services, distributed systems, and databases. Includes advanced topics in areas such as: mobile computing, remoting, web services for enterprise integration, workflow orchestrations for the enterprise, peer-to-peer computing, grid computing.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 335*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 740 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Operating Systems**  
 An advanced course in operating systems, covering topics such as: process scheduling, interprocess communication mechanisms, and distributed operating systems. Case studies of one or more operating systems.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 313 and 340*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 742 (2 Points)**  
**Data Communications and Networks**  
 The protocols and performance of local area networks. The special requirements of very high speed networks (100 Mb/s and higher). Asynchronous transfer mode (ATM) and its relation to other protocols. The TCP/IP suite.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 314*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval*

**COMPSCI 750 (2 Points)**  
**Computational Complexity**  
 Definitions of computational models and complexity classes: time complexity (eg, P and NP), space complexity (eg, L and PSPACE), circuit and parallel

complexity (NC), polynomial-time hierarchy (PH), interactive complexity (IP), probabilistic complexity (BPP), and fixed-parameter complexity.

*Recommended preparation:* COMPSCI 320 or 350

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 755 (2 Points)**

**Unconventional Models of Computation**

The conventional trend of computation is approaching a critical phase and new technologies are required to provide significant further progress. The course will focus on three new categories of unconventional models: quantum computation, biologically-inspired computing and reversible models of computation. A key objective will be the search for efficient solutions for problems that are difficult or impossible to solve using classical (Turing or equivalent) models.

*Recommended preparation:* 6 points from Stage III Computer Science courses including COMPSCI 320 or 340 or 350

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 760 (2 Points)**

**Datamining and Machine Learning**

An overview of the learning problem and the view of learning by search. Techniques for learning such as: decision tree learning, rule learning, exhaustive learning, Bayesian learning, genetic algorithms, reinforcement learning, neural networks, explanation-based learning and inductive logic programming. Experimental methods necessary for understanding machine learning research.

*Recommended preparation:* COMPSCI 366 or 367

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 765 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Artificial Intelligence**

A selection of one or two research issues in artificial intelligence, such as the technique of constraint satisfaction, or temporal/spatial reasoning. The precise content may vary from year to year. Consult the Department for details.

*Recommended preparation:* COMPSCI 366 or 367

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 767 (2 Points)**

**Intelligent Software Agents**

An introduction to the design, implementation and use of intelligent software agents (eg, knowbots, softbots, etc). Reviews standard artificial intelligence problem-solving paradigms (eg, planning and expert systems) and knowledge representation formalisms (eg, logic and semantic nets). Surveys agent architectures and multi-agent frameworks.

*Recommended preparation:* COMSPSCI 366 or 367

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 773 (2 Points)**

**Vision Guided Control**

A study of the computing and engineering aspects of controlling robotic and autonomous systems using computer mono and stereo vision (eg, hand gestures or facial expression recognition). Involves student projects and lectures.

*Recommended preparation:* COMPSCI 375 and 2 points at Stage II in Mathematics

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 775 (2 Points)**

**Computer Vision**

Introduction to digital images, and 3-D image analysis. Image acquisition and camera calibration, stereo image analysis, motion analysis (3-D motion

and 2-D displacement, optical flow, Horn-Schunck algorithm), shading-based shape reconstruction (surface models, gradient space, shape from shading, photometric stereo), 3-D object segmentation, and 3-D object analysis.

*Recommended preparation:* COMPSCI 372 or 375 and MATHS 208 or 230

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 777 (2 Points)**

**Computer Games Technology**

An advanced course looking at some of the computer graphics and artificial intelligence technology involved in computer games. Typical topics are: an introduction to the gaming industry; commercial modelling and animation software; maximizing graphics performance, including such techniques as visibility preprocessing, multiple levels of detail, space subdivision, fast collision detection, direct programming of the graphics card; AI for computer games, including decision trees, rule-based systems, path planning, flocking behaviours, intelligent agents; research issues, such as physically-based modelling, terrain generation, computer learning.

*Recommended preparation:* COMPSCI 372, and COMPSCI 366 or 367

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 780 (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 780A (1 Point)**

**COMPSCI 780B (1 Point)**

**Postgraduate Project in Computer Science**

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 780 A and B, or COMPSCI 780

**COMPSCI 789A (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 789B (2 Points)**

**BSc(Hons) Dissertation**

*Prerequisite:* Approval of Head of Department

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 789 A and B

**COMPSCI 790 (2 Points)**

**History of Computing and Computers**

A survey of the historical context of modern computing and information technology. History of computing and computing devices prior to the computer age. Developments in computing since the introduction of electronic computers. Significant software developments and applications of computers.

*Recommended preparation:* 8 points from Stage III Computer Science courses

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**COMPSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**COMPSCI 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Computer Science**

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 796 A and B

*Prerequisite:* Departmental approval

**Electronics and Computing**

**Diploma Courses**

**ELECCOMP 692A (2 Points)**

**ELECCOMP 692B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Electronics and Computing)**

To complete this course students must enrol in ELECCOMP 692 A and B

---

## Environmental Management

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

ENVMGT 691A (2 Points)

ENVMGT 691B (2 Points)

PG Diploma Dissertation (Environmental Management)

To complete this course students must enrol in ENVMGT 691 A and B

ENVMGT 741 (2 Points)

**Social Change for Sustainability**

How social change happens and how to improve the uptake of sustainability. Covers the theoretical frameworks that contribute to our understanding of how social change occurs, and their use in the development of sustainability programmes. Includes the methodologies used to gain insight into attitudes, behaviour and values, and their use as a basis for decision-making in environmental management.

ENVMGT 742 (2 Points)

**Environmental Processes**

The natural biogeochemical processes that provide the physical context for environmental management. Outlines the concept of ecosystem services, their processes, value and current management, water, chemical and climate cycles and their relevance and management, and the scientific basis of sustainability.

ENVMGT 743 (2 Points)

**Environmental Policy and Governance**

Examines the crucial role of institutions in implementing sustainable development. Highlights the role of science and information in the development of policies for environmental management at a local, regional, national and international level. Explores how best to integrate the environment into policy and decision-making and strengthen institutional capacity, including such means as education, subsidies and economic incentives.

ENVMGT 745 (2 Points)

**Ecotourism**

Interactions between tourism, recreation and the environment. Includes: definitions, models and organization of the ecotourism industry, evaluation of tourism and recreation resources, environmental factors important for tourism development, visitor motivation and behaviour, assessment of environmental and sociological impacts, and the role of government agencies.

Restriction: ENVMGT 662

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

ENVMGT 796A (7 Points)

ENVMGT 796B (7 Points)

MSc Thesis in Environmental Management

To complete this course students must enrol in ENVMGT 796 A and B

---

## Environmental Science

---

### Stage I

ENVSCI 101 (2 Points)

**Environment, Science and Management**

Key environmental debates are explored to identify

the challenges of understanding underlying scientific principles and effective environmental management. Case studies highlight the complexity of environmental problems and the difficult task of integrating science, knowledge and values in their resolution.

---

### Stage II

ENVSCI 201 (2 Points)

**Sustaining our Environment**

An examination of the local, regional and global environmental effects arising as a consequence of developed world lifestyles, such as waste production, water resource overuse and pollution, non-renewable energy use and air pollution. Sustainable alternatives are identified and the standard tools and methodologies of interdisciplinary environmental science and management are introduced. Includes tutorials and a one-day field trip.

No formal prerequisite but an understanding of Stage I science and the material covered in ENVSCI 101 will be assumed.

---

### Stage III

ENVSCI 301 (2 Points)

**Environmental Effects and Management**

Effective management of the environmental effects of human activities depends upon a sound basis of environmental science. The effects of industrial production and resource usage are used to illustrate the requirements humans place on the environment. A key theme is the use of tools, derived through environmental research, to effect sustainable management of the environment whilst satisfying human needs. The examples used relate to issues of local, national and international significance.

No formal prerequisite but knowledge of those aspects of environmental science covered in ENVSCI 201 will be assumed.

Restriction: 425.301

ENVSCI 310 (2 Points)

**Modelling Environmental Systems**

An introduction to how models are used in the study and management of environmental impacts in a range of natural environments (eg. terrestrial, fluvial, atmospheric, subterranean, coastal, etc). Developing skills in designing and critically assessing ecological, geochemical, chemical, physical and numerical models of the environment. No formal prerequisite but an understanding of data analysis is assumed.

Restriction: 422.310

---

### Diploma Courses

ENVSCI 696A (2 Points)

ENVSCI 696B (2 Points)

Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Environmental Science)

Restriction: 423.690, 423.692, 423.694

To complete this course students must enrol in ENVSCI 696 A and B

ENVSCI 697A (2 Points)

ENVSCI 697B (2 Points)

PG Diploma Dissertation (Environmental Science)

Restriction: 423.691, 423.693, 423.695

To complete this course students must enrol in ENVSCI 697 A and B

COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

**Honours and Master's Courses****ENVSCI 701 (2 Points)****Research Planning and Communication**

An introduction to the methodologies of establishing an interdisciplinary research programme. This will include: an extensive literature review, how to identify potential end users and their needs, an evaluation of potential research methods and an understanding of ways to communicate effectively with different stakeholders. Students will be required to present an overview of their research proposal in a seminar.

*Restriction: 422.701*

**ENVSCI 702 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Environmental Science**

Seminars, lectures, laboratories and field work as prescribed by the Head of the School.

**ENVSCI 703 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Environmental Science**

Seminars, lectures, laboratories and field work as prescribed by the Head of the School.

**ENVSCI 704 (2 Points)****Analysis and Modelling of Environmental Systems**

Developing skills in the quantitative analysis and display of environmental data. Practical exercises processing and displaying data (eg, using Matlab), managing large databases, handling data gaps, filtering and spectral analysis and statistical treatment. An introduction to modelling and simulation, and result communication. Example datasets from environment monitoring, climatology, satellites, etc.

*No formal prerequisite but a knowledge of statistics and data analysis to at least Stage II is assumed*

**ENVSCI 710 (2 Points)****Environmental Science**

An overview of the principles, knowledge base and methods of interdisciplinary environmental science. An examination of fundamental tools, technologies and techniques used in interdisciplinary approaches to prevention, mitigation and remediation of environmental problems. Includes case studies and practical work.

*Restriction: 425.701*

**ENVSCI 711 (2 Points)****Assessing Environmental Effects and Change**

The role of science in the assessment of environmental change, including an examination of the importance of science-based AEE in the RMA resource consent application and award procedure in New Zealand. Methodology for the assessment and monitoring of environmental effects and trends. Risk assessment. Selection and use of environmental indicators on local, national, regional and global scales. Standards and criteria for the assessment of environmental quality. Includes a case study of a large industrial activity, with in-depth examination of related issues and field visit.

*Restriction: 425.741*

**ENVSCI 713 (2 Points)****Air Quality Science and Technology**

Natural processes operating in the atmosphere. Interactions between air quality and human activities in indoor and outdoor environments.

Monitoring procedures and equipment. Dispersion modelling. Air quality standards and guidelines. Applications of science and technology to indoor and outdoor air pollution prevention, mitigation and remediation. Case studies, and practical work related to monitoring and modelling air quality.

*Restriction: 425.728*

**ENVSCI 714 (2 Points)****Water Quality Science**

Water contaminants, monitoring techniques and modelling systems for impact prediction and assessment of effects for both point and non-point sources. Application of science and technology to water pollution prevention, mitigation and remediation. Case studies and practical work.

*Restriction: 425.729*

**ENVSCI 715 (2 Points)****Cleaner Production and Waste Management**

Waste composition and characterization including solid, liquid, hazardous and special wastes including contaminated site assessment. Technologies used in cleaner production, waste treatment and waste disposal. Case studies and practical work.

*Restriction: 420.664, 425.730*

**ENVSCI 716 (2 Points)****Environmental Risk Assessment**

A project-based course focusing on the production of a high-quality risk assessment. Topics covered include environmental, human health, ecological, and industrial risk assessments, relevant policy, strategic and legislative contexts, basic risk assessment framework, risk perception, and risk management. Course includes case studies and fieldwork.

*Restriction: 425.742*

**ENVSCI 722 (2 Points)****Environmental Biogeochemistry**

The interaction between geochemical and biochemical processes in natural and anthropogenically affected environments. Consists of a series of research case studies demonstrating the important role biological processes can play in the perturbation of geochemical reactions, cycles and their products.

*Restriction: 424.712*

**ENVSCI 726 (2 Points)****Principles and Dynamics of Marine Reserves**

The application of biogeographical and ecological principles to the design of marine reserve systems. Topics will include: network design, scientific controls, conservation of biological diversity, support for fisheries, case studies, existing and future policies with examples from New Zealand and overseas.

*Restriction: 424.721*

**ENVSCI 733 (2 Points)****Biodiversity Management and Conservation**

Management techniques for ecosystems, threatened species, and conservation areas, including potential synergies and conflicts with the management of historic resources, Bio-security and pest management for conservative purposes. National and international mechanisms for the effective and sustainable management of natural resources.

No formal prerequisite but an understanding equivalent to BIOSCI 394 is assumed.

Restriction: 420.661, 422.720, 422.742

**ENVSCI 734 (2 Points)**

**Landscape and Restoration Ecology**

The integration of ecological principles and ecological services at the landscape level for both management and restoration. Topics include: the ecology of fragmented ecosystems such as demography, metapopulation issues, ecological genetics, biota-physical environment interactions, the consequences and techniques for restoration of damaged ecosystems and mitigation of the effects of development. Emphasis will be on sustainable solutions including biophysical, legal, social, cultural and economic considerations.

No formal prerequisite but an understanding equivalent to BIOSCI 393 is assumed.

Restriction: 422.722, 422.743, 422.744

**ENVSCI 735 (2 Points)**

**Maori Resource Management**

An introduction to cultural concepts and practices concerning the environment and resource management. Consideration of the ways in which the indigenous peoples of Australia and North America have cared for and managed their resources will provide a comparative context for a more detailed study of traditional Maori-environment relationships. Particular attention will be given to kaitiakitanga and how natural resources were traditionally managed. Modern approaches incorporating both traditional ecological knowledge (TEK) and Western science will then be discussed.

Restriction: 422.720, 422.745

**ENVSCI 736 (2 Points)**

**Sustainable Production and Consumption Systems**

Analyses current trends in production and consumption systems, including economic, legal, political and other contributing social factors, the government, business and community programmes that encourage sustainability, and their integration. Cleaner production and similar concepts, to eliminate or minimise waste production.

Restriction: ENVMGMT 665

**ENVSCI 737 (2 Points)**

**Forest Ecology and Management**

The dynamics of change in forest ecosystems, with emphasis on the effects of climate change. Plantation forestry. Influences and management of pests, especially herbivores and weeds. Sustainable management, conservation and community restoration in New Zealand. Techniques in vegetation reconstruction, assessment and monitoring. Students are expected to participate in field exercises.

Restriction: ENVSCI 732

**ENVSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**ENVSCI 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Environmental Science**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENVSCI 796 A and B

**Ergonomics**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ERGONOM 796A (7 Points)**

**ERGONOM 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Ergonomics**

Prerequisite: Permission of Chair of Board of Studies

To complete this course students must enrol in ERGONOM 796 A and B

**Food Science**

**Stage II**

**FOODSCI 201 (2 Points)**

**Foundations of Food Science**

The aim of this course is to give the student a general appreciation of the composition and structure of food. Material covered includes the molecular structure of the major food components and how they are altered by processing and preservation. Common foods will be studied in order to understand the complex relationships between food molecules and the physical structure of foods. Topical issues such as genetically modified foods and food irradiation will be included.

Recommended preparation: BIOSCI 101.106 and CHEM 110

**Stage III**

**FOODSCI 301 (2 Points)**

**Food Quality Attributes**

Attributes that make food attractive, such as colour, flavour and texture, and how they alter during processing are studied. Texture measurement and sensory science are major components of this course. Methods of studying food structure will be discussed. Lectures will be given on non-destructive testing of food.

Recommended preparation: FOODSCI 201, BIOSCI 203 and 204.

**FOODSCI 302 (2 Points)**

**Food Preservation**

The fundamental principles of freezing and thawing, thermal processing and canning, fermentation and dehydration are studied. Consideration is also given to emerging technologies, with an eye to methods of most interest to New Zealand food industries. An overview of the major causes of food degradation, from microbiological to chemical, is presented. Methods of shelf-life testing are introduced with an emphasis on the maintenance of the nutritive value, safety of the food product and appeal to the consumer.

Recommended preparation: FOODSCI 201, BIOSCI 204 and CHEMMAT 211

**FOODSCI 303 (2 Points)**

**Sensory Science**

Human perception and preference of food products. Design of experiments, statistical methodologies and applications in industry and research. Sampling of foods is undertaken in this course.

Prerequisite: FOODSCI 201

**FOODSCI 304 (2 Points)**

**Food Product Development**

Development and evaluation of new products from

raw ingredients through a thorough understanding of the physical and chemical properties of materials. Sensory evaluation will be a component. Sampling of food products is therefore undertaken in this course.  
*Prerequisite: FOODSCI 201*

### Diploma Courses

**FOODSCI 691 (4 Points)**

**FOODSCI 691A (2 Points)**

**FOODSCI 691B (2 Points)**

#### PG Diploma Dissertation (Food Science)

*To complete this course students must enrol in FOODSCI 691 A and B, or FOODSCI 691*

### Honours and Master's Courses

**FOODSCI 703 (2 Points)**

#### Food Processing

Preservation of food by standard methods including freezing, dehydration and thermal processing. New developments in food preservation. Unit operations, mass and energy balance, and heat transfer are covered. Chemical and physical changes food undergoes during processing.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*Restriction: 426.702*

**FOODSCI 704 (2 Points)**

#### Food Biotechnology

Bioprocess engineering fundamentals, fermentation processes, fermenter design and operation, bioseparations, food biotechnology.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*Restriction: 426.702*

**FOODSCI 705A (1 Point)**

**FOODSCI 705B (1 Point)**

#### Project in Food Science

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*To complete this course student must enrol in FOODSCI 705 A and B*

**FOODSCI 706 (2 Points)**

#### Food Safety

The understanding of the changing regulations that apply to the New Zealand food industry is of paramount importance. The Food Amendment Act of 1996 which allows the Australia New Zealand Joint Food Standards Agreement to come into force will be examined in detail. HACCP and risk management plans will be generated.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Programme Director*

**FOODSCI 707 (2 Points)**

#### Food Science

Chemical, biological and physical aspects of foods. The decomposition of food due to lipid oxidation, enzymic and non-enzymic browning. Emulsions and foams. Integrated study of selected basic foods.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*Restriction: 426.701*

**FOODSCI 708 (2 Points)**

#### Advanced Food Science

The functions and properties of food additives. Food attributes including colour, flavour and texture. Sensory science. Introduction to the Food Regulations. Interaction of macromolecules.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*Restriction: 426.701*

**FOODSCI 709 (2 Points)**

**FOODSCI 709A (1 Point)**

**FOODSCI 709B (1 Point)**

#### Selected Topics in Food Science and Technology

Modules will be organized by the staff and invited lecturers. Topics offered will usually be based on the specialist interests of the lecturers, although controversial issues may be included (for example, genetically modified food, irradiated food). Students may be required to participate actively by contributing seminars. Topics may vary from year to year.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FOODSCI 709 A and B, or FOODSCI 709*

**FOODSCI 710 (2 Points)**

#### Industrial Internship

The industrial internship is an opportunity for students to experience the food industry at first hand. While the placement would normally be in New Zealand, overseas internships are possible. The student will work in the food organization on a defined project under the supervision of a suitably qualified person. A detailed written report on the assignment must be submitted.

**FOODSCI 789A (3 Points)**

**FOODSCI 789B (3 Points)**

#### BSc(Hons) Dissertation in Food Science and Technology

A research proposal will be prepared on the dissertation topic. Students will be required to present an overview of the proposal in a seminar. Students will participate in the critical analysis of scientific papers. The student will carry out an original piece of research. The results will be presented and discussed in a dissertation. A seminar based on the research will be given.

*To complete this course student must enrol in FOODSCI 789 A and B*

**FOODSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**FOODSCI 796B (7 Points)**

#### MSc Thesis in Food Science

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*To complete this course student must enrol in FOODSCI 796 A and B*

## Forensic Science

### Honours and Master's Courses

**FORENSIC 701 (2 Points)**

#### Fundamental Concepts in Forensic Science

Ethics and quality assurance in forensic science. Principles of criminal law, principles of evidence and procedure, expert evidence, interpretation of scientific evidence, probability and statistics. Forensic pathology, psychology and psychiatry.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 702 (2 Points)**

#### Introduction to Forensic Science

Forensic biology, documents, fingerprints, physical evidence, toolmarks, fire examination, explosives, hairs and fibres, drugs, toxicology, alcohol (including blood and breath alcohol), crime scene examination, firearms identification.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 703 (2 Points)**

#### Statistics and Biology for Forensic Science

Statistics: data summarization and reduction, laws of probability, conditional probability, likelihood ratios and Bayes theorem. Interpretation of statistical results. Forensic biology: basic principles of population genetics, genomic structure, conventional blood grouping, DNA profiling; structure, enzymology and basic chemistry of nucleic acids, RFLP analysis, PCR and microsatellites, interpretation of DNA profiles.  
*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 704 (2 Points)****Techniques and Applications for Forensic Science**

Analytical techniques: GC, HPLC, GC-MS chromatography, IR and UV spectroscopy. Applications: toxicology, illicit drugs, sports drugs, racing chemistry. Physical and trace evidence.  
*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 705A (1 Point)****FORENSIC 705B (1 Point)****Project in Forensic Science**

A research essay on an aspect of forensic science.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Programme Director*

To complete this course students must enrol in FORENSIC 705 A and B

**FORENSIC 706 (2 Points)****Environmental Forensic Science**

Concepts of environmental science. Environmental monitoring and spill analysis, environmental legislation, criminal and environmental law. Case studies and practical work.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 796A (7 Points)****FORENSIC 796B (7 Points)****MSc Thesis in Forensic Science**

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Programme Director*

To complete this course students must enrol in FORENSIC 796 A and B

**Geography****GEOG 91W (2 Points)****Foundation Geography 1**

Introduces population and development themes, including global and regional patterns of population growth, overpopulation, migration, urbanization, city planning issues, uneven patterns of economic growth and human well-being, and sustainable development.

**GEOG 92W (2 Points)****Foundation Geography 2**

Focuses on the relationship between humans and the environment, emphasizing long-term trends in resource use, human impacts in the environment, sustainable resource management and environmental hazards.

*This course requires prior enrolment in GEOG 91W.*

**Stage I****GEOG 101 (2 Points)****Geography of the Natural Environment**

Examines the interrelationships between various components of the natural environment and includes: climate, hydrology, coastal and fluvial geomorphology, and biogeography using environmental processes as an integrating theme.

Topics include: the atmospheric and hydrological systems, channel processes and stream patterns, physical forces shaping the coast, glacial processes and environmental change.

*Restriction: GEOG 151*

**GEOG 102 (2 Points)****Geography of the Human Environment**

Examines the relationships among personal geographies and global geographies of uneven development, economic, environmental and socio-cultural change. Using a variety of examples from New Zealand and the world we illustrate the connection between local places and global issues.

*Restriction: GEOG 152*

**GEOG 103 (2 Points)****Digital Worlds**

Introduction to space-modifying technologies such as GIS, transport and communications, and their historical significance. Practical exposure to current digital technologies through laboratories, txtng and web interaction and an introduction to the social impact of the technologies through media such as cyberspace, cellular phones and location based systems. Critical perspectives on new technologies and space, and the representation of such technologies in popular and academic writing.

**Stage II**

*Students majoring in Geography should note the regulations for the Geography Major; in particular, they must complete GEOG 204.*

**GEOG 201 (2 Points)****Processes in the Natural Environment**

Selected topics in climatology, hydrology, biogeography, and geomorphology. The course focuses on near-surface processes in the physical environment, explored using a range of conceptual approaches and research methods.

*Restriction: GEOG 251*

**GEOG 202 (2 Points)****Geography of Social and Economic Change**

A critical examination of the geographic processes and consequences in contemporary society. Topics are selected from the instructors' research interests, which include: the transformation of urban places and spaces; the forms and location of industries and retailing; social geographies of the city; New Zealand's linkages with the global economy and society; urban historical geographies; and demographic and social changes in New Zealand and the Pacific region. The course is developed around the core themes of production, consumption and identity as important focuses for the examination of society.

*Restriction: GEOG 252*

**GEOG 204 (2 Points)****Geographic Data Analysis**

Introduces a range of techniques employed in geographical analysis, focusing on data analysis and display. The course covers instruction in the use of computer applications, cartography, introductory geographic information systems (GIS), remote sensing and statistical analysis. It caters for students with all levels of mathematical background but assumes that students have some familiarity with computers from the Stage I Geography courses.

and at some stage have done a course in basic statistical methods.

**GEOG 205 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Processes and Management**

Provides a foundation for understanding the complex mix of human and physical factors that must be considered by those involved in environmental management. Key concepts are introduced, and a variety of contemporary case studies explored to illustrate how decisions are made in practice.

*Restriction: GEOG 255*

**GEOG 207 (2 Points)**

**Field Studies in Environment and Community**

Connections between environment and community in New Zealand are explored on the ground through consideration of topics from among the following themes: biodiversity and vegetation change; land transformation; heritage values; environmental management; Maori resource management; coastal and fluvial geomorphology; regional economics; community development and planning; tourism development; and government policy. The course involves a one week field trip.

**GEOG 208 (2 Points)**

**GIS and Human Environments**

Introduces key concepts of geographic information science as applied to human activity including retailing, population and health, tourism, consumer behaviour and planning. Covers techniques for describing human artifacts and activities, ways of analysing and visualizing activity in space, spatial analysis of census data, consumption, individual accessibility and activities in time, monitoring devices including remote imagery, locational technology and privacy.

**GEOG 209 (2 Points)**

**Environmental GIS**

Introduction to the key concepts of geographic information science as applied to the physical environment, and as made operational through remote sensing and geographic information systems. Covers basic principles of photogrammetric measurement and image processing as applied to remotely sensed images, the properties of remote sensing platforms and applications to land cover analysis, and the modelling of terrain and animal movements.

**Stage III**

*Students majoring in Geography should note the regulations for the Geography Major; in particular, they must complete one of GEOG 315, 330.*

**GEOG 302 (2 Points)**

**Regions, Industries and Enterprises**

Examines economic, social and political processes underpinning recent transformations in the global economy. Debates concerning the transition from Fordism to post-Fordism and flexible accumulation are examined in conjunction with an analysis of the role of firms, industries, nation-states and supra-national organizations in changing the character of regions.

**GEOG 305 (2 Points)**

**Population, Health and Society**

A survey of major themes in population, health and social geography. An examination of the dynamics of

population complements analyses of health and health care, the education sector, the welfare state, and the changing character of urban places.

**GEOG 307 (2 Points)**

**Urban Geography**

Analysis of key processes shaping socio-cultural geographies of contemporary cities. Using international and local examples, issues such as the economy of cities, the culture of cities, home and housing, segregation and polarisation, the imaging of cities and sustainability are explored.

**GEOG 312 (2 Points)**

**Geographies of Pacific Development**

Examines development processes and issues in the countries of the Pacific. Themes will include development theory, colonialism, environment, population, economic systems, migration, gender, ethnicity and identity, geopolitics and international linkages, and development strategies.

**GEOG 313 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Analytical Methods in Geography**

An introduction to multivariate statistical methods and their application to model building and systems analysis.

**GEOG 315 (2 Points)**

**Research Design and Methods in Human Geography**

A lecture, practical and field course, the focus of which is a residential field section during the mid-semester study break. The course provides students with experience in designing and executing a research project. It is designed both to prepare students for the increasing number of jobs that require these research skills and as an introduction to research for those proceeding to higher degrees.

**GEOG 317 (2 Points)**

**Remote Sensing of the Environment**

An introduction to the basic concepts and theories in aerial photography, remote sensing from space, and image analysis. The characteristics of a wide variety of remote sensing images are examined. The course also includes the development of image interpretation skills and mastering of various interpretation instruments. Emphasis is on the proper use of remotely-sensed material.

**GEOG 318 (2 Points)**

**Geographic Information Analysis**

An introduction to a range of basic concepts and methods involved in using geographic information systems (GIS). The course covers the analytical and display capabilities of GIS, with a practical emphasis on non-programmable solutions.

*Restriction: 430.314*

**GEOG 319 (2 Points)**

**Adapting GIS for Analysis**

An extension of the material presented in GEOG 318, furthering the knowledge of the theory and practice of geo-spatial analysis and culminating in a practical GIS project. The lectures develop conceptual and technical material associated with GIS, covering a wide range of object and field-based spatial data models for GIS. The laboratory sessions serve as an introduction to various customization languages, one of which will then be practised in-depth in a GIS project in an area identified by the student.

*Restriction: 430.314*

**GEOG 320 (2 Points)****Resources and Environmental Management**

Examines the development and conservation of the environment in its use as a resource base, with particular reference to the way in which institutional structures in society determine provision and allocation. Attention is balanced between international experience and the policy framework in New Zealand. The course provides an understanding of key concepts, practices and methods.

**GEOG 322 (2 Points)****Culture and Environment in East Asia**

This course takes a topical and regional approach to the geography of East Asia. The unity and diversity of East Asia, environment and cultural development, industrialization and urbanization, population problems, and environmental management are emphasized.

**GEOG 330 (2 Points)****Research Methods in Physical Geography**

Research design and associated research methods from the component fields of physical geography. A residential field trip forms a focus for the course. On this trip, students will work under supervision in small groups and apply selected research methods and techniques to a research project. Fieldwork will be followed by the development and presentation of the research project.

**GEOG 331 (2 Points)****Hydrology and Fluvial Geomorphology**

An integrated study of hydrological and fluvial processes in a river basin context. Content includes: examination of the water balance, run-off generating processes and river hydrology, integrated with investigation of sediment sources and transport and resulting deposits. Scientific principles are applied to selected practical problems.

**GEOG 332 (2 Points)****Topics in Physical Geography**

Reviews concepts and methods in climatology and geomorphology. Examines atmosphere-environment relationships with reference to agriculture, buildings, thermal comfort, tourism, planning, climate resource assessment and climate change, and with attention to atmospheric processes near the ground. Considers the evolution of selected landforms and landscapes, and evidence of and methods for interpreting environmental change, with a focus on key changes.

**GEOG 333 (2 Points)****Topics in Geography**

*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*

**GEOG 351 (2 Points)****Coastal and Marine Geography**

An investigation of natural processes and mechanisms operating at a range of scales in coastal and marine environments, with an emphasis on estuaries and open coast sandy beaches. This provides the basis for discussion of applications in modelling and resource management.

**GEOG 352 (2 Points)****Landscape, Environment and Heritage**

The historical and cultural processes of environmental transformation, landscape and

heritage making and representation are examined. Attention is directed to theories of and approaches to landscape and environment including Maori ideas of human-environment relations. The course explores how ideas about environment and landscape shape places.

---

**Diploma Courses****GEOG 690A (2 Points)****GEOG 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Geography)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 690 A and B*

**GEOG 691 (4 Points)****GEOG 691A (2 Points)****GEOG 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Geography)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 691 A and B, or GEOG 691*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses****GEOG 701 (2 Points)****Theory and Practice of Geography**

The discipline of geography is shaped within a dynamic philosophical and methodological context. Sub-disciplinary research foci reflect both a history of ideas and a fusion of contemporary debates. The historical and philosophical context of contemporary geography, plus issues relating to research methods, are addressed.

**GEOG 711 (2 Points)****Regions, Networking and Governance**

The changing geography of growth and globalization in the contemporary world economy, as a context for enterprise strategy, governance arrangements, economic and environmental transformation and regional change.

**GEOG 712 (2 Points)****Society and Culture**

Contemporary geographic perspectives on society and culture, focusing on constructions of place and environment, ethnicity, gender and identity.

**GEOG 718 (2 Points)****Modern Historical Geographies**

Examines the historical geography of the modern by focusing on the generation of new locales, localities, territories and networks. Despite resistance, everyday life was made modern as modern states, societies and enterprises developed in the contexts of globalization, urbanization, industrialization, imperialism and land transformation. Historical geographies of the modern are considered with reference to New Zealand as well as other countries 1750–1940.

**GEOG 721 (2 Points)****Place and Transformations in the Pacific**

Economic, socio-cultural, geopolitical and environmental transformations of Pacific Island nations and societies are considered in their historical context, but with a focus on the contemporary implications of change. The study of place ranges from the meaning of land to the international linkages which are increasingly important in mediating change.

- GEOG 723 (2 Points)**  
**Cultural Geography**  
 A review of traditional and new cultural geographic approaches and an examination of topics in cultural landscape as text, genomentality, ethnogeography, place and folklore.
- GEOG 724 (2 Points)**  
**Geography of Production and Trade**  
 Focuses upon the role of production-consumption systems in the formation of regional economies. Attention is given to the characteristics of the firms and industries that comprise these systems, and to the global capitalist economy in which they operate.
- GEOG 725 (2 Points)**  
**Population Studies**  
 Explores the changing nature of human populations in New Zealand, the Pacific and worldwide. The theories and methods of population studies are reviewed, but the focus is on the implications of these changes for contemporary societies.
- GEOG 726 (2 Points)**  
**Geographies of Health and Place**  
 An exploration of the contested concept of place and relationships between place and identity, health status and service provision.
- GEOG 727 (2 Points)**  
**Geography of the Built Environment**  
 The built environment is both a locus of social interaction and a medium of investment. The dynamic interrelationships between economic social processes and the built environment of developed economies are considered. Topics covered include: housing issues (privatization and gentrification), office development processes, 'selling cities' and planning issues.
- GEOG 731 (2 Points)**  
**Earth Surface Processes**  
 Contemporary processes operating at or near the earth's surface. The emphasis is on those processes, and their measurement and evaluation, which are common to investigations within the fields of biogeography, climatology, hydrology, geomorphology and pedology.
- GEOG 732 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Change**  
 The character and causes of environmental change at various time scales. Present understanding will be reviewed in the context of theory, field evidence and research techniques. Emphasis will be on past and present climate, sea-level, landform and biotic changes, but projections of future environmental change will also be considered.
- GEOG 738 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**
- GEOG 739 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**
- GEOG 741 (2 Points)**  
**Biogeography**  
 Theory and quantitative methods (especially ordination and classification) for analysis of biodiversity, community species composition, and species-environment relationships. Methods for mapping species distributions, modelling habitat relationships, and conducting biological gap analyses are examined. Quantifying the effect of landscape spatial structure on species distributions and metapopulations is an underlying theme.
- GEOG 742 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Climatology**  
 Study of the atmosphere as environment. The focus is on the interplay between climate and human systems. Themes include: climate change, climate resource evaluation, impact assessment, climate and planning, recreation climates, thermal comfort, atmospheric hazards, and other topics in environmental climatology. Special consideration is given to human dimensions of climate.
- GEOG 743 (2 Points)**  
**Geomorphology**  
 An analysis of major ideas in systematic and regional geomorphology, with examples from the Southwest Pacific and New Zealand. Topics covered include: tectonic geomorphology, estimating erosion, uplift and incision rates, glacial and eustatic influences on landscape development, karst and dating techniques. Associated fieldwork in New Zealand.
- GEOG 744 (2 Points)**  
**Hydrology**  
 An advanced study of hydrological processes with application to environmental problems. Emphasis is on understanding surface and near-surface processes.
- GEOG 745 (2 Points)**  
**Fluvial Geomorphology**  
 The transport of sediment in rivers. Theoretical foundations and quantitative analyses of open channel flow, movement of sediment, river morphology and channel types are explored.
- GEOG 746 (2 Points)**  
**Coastal Dynamics**  
 An advanced study of the driving mechanisms and associated processes which shape coastlines and inner continental shelf environments. Morphodynamics is a unifying theme. The emphasis is on sand shorelines, but consideration is given to other coastal environments. Fieldwork is an essential part of the course.
- GEOG 747 (2 Points)**  
**Coastal Evolution**  
 The evolution of coastal environments is examined, with particular reference to the primary variables that control landform development on the coast. Field investigations are used to demonstrate the interpretation of coastal evolution.
- GEOG 748 (2 Points)**  
**Coastal Management**  
 Environmental management principles and practices are combined with our knowledge of the physical operation of coasts to consider coastal management. Particular emphasis is placed on recent developments in New Zealand, and includes current case studies.
- GEOG 751 (2 Points)**  
**Resource Management**  
 A review of advanced management principles and concepts relating to New Zealand's resources and

environment. A pragmatic examination of ethical thought on human-environment relations and use of the environment as a resource. Interpretations of sustainability and sustainable development in the context of resources and the environment.

**GEOG 753** (2 Points)

**Environmental Management**

A critical review of environmental management grounded in the policy requirements for sustainable development. Examples from New Zealand explore social and environmental outcomes of management approaches. This analysis includes: consideration of agendas that potentially compete with environmental management: property rights, Maori heritage values, Treaty of Waitangi settlements and the call for environmental justice.

**GEOG 759** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Geography**

**GEOG 771** (2 Points)

**Spatial Analysis**

Applications in human and physical geography are used to review theories and methods for quantitative analysis of spatial data. Software tools from spatial statistics, geostatistics, GIS and morphometry are used to analyse phenomena such as autocorrelation, clustering, and the modifiable areal unit problem.

**GEOG 772** (2 Points)

**Remote Sensing**

In-depth examination of various components of digital image analysis, including image enhancement, rectification, classification, integration of remotely sensed data with GIS. Use of an image processing system. Development of research skills through completion of a project.

**GEOG 773** (2 Points)

**GIS: Advanced Query and Display Systems**

The issues of query and display of geographic data are explored with particular emphasis on interactive cartography, visualization tools, the map user interface, spatio-temporal queries and decision support. The needs of different users of geographic information are stressed and a project forms the basis for developing and evaluating specific aspects of interactive query and display.

**GEOG 774** (2 Points)

**GIS and Modelling**

This course is on advanced spatial modelling with both GIS and other tools of geo-computation. Conceptual models in geography and neighbouring disciplines are examined leading towards an analysis of their possible implementation. At the end of the course, successful participants are expected to be able to argue for the 'G' in GIS. The contents will reflect the latest developments in cybernetics and geography.

**GEOG 779** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**GEOG 789A** (2 Points)

**GEOG 789B** (2 Points)

**Honours Dissertation in Geography**

To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 789 A and B

**GEOG 796A** (7 Points)

**GEOG 796B** (7 Points)

**Master's Thesis in Geography**

To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 796 A and B

**Geology**

**Stage I**

**GEOLOGY 101** (2 Points)

**Principles of Earth Science**

Fundamental principles of Earth Science, the formation of igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic minerals and rocks, geological mapping, weathering and deposition, earth deformation, geological environments.

*Restriction: GEOLOGY 111*

**GEOLOGY 102** (2 Points)

**Understanding Earth and the Solar System**

Formation of the Earth and other planetary bodies, Earth's interior, plate tectonics, volcanoes, fossil life in the solar system, dinosaur-bird relations, mass extinctions, mountain building and catastrophic events.

*Restriction: GEOLOGY 112*

**GEOLOGY 110** (2 Points)

**Earth's Hazards and Resources**

Earth's hazards and their impact on society, including earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, landslides, climate change, flooding and erosion. The use of earth's resources including minerals, rocks, water and energy, and its environmental impact.

**Stage II**

For those majoring in Geology the field courses GEOLOGY 201 and 301 are compulsory.

**GEOLOGY 201** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Field Geology**

An introduction to basic techniques of geological field work and mapping. Focuses on the compulsory seven days of field work during which each student will be required to produce a geological map and supporting field records, rocks, fossils and a brief report based on a field mapping exercise. Field trip: refer to Department for details.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 101, and either GEOLOGY 102 or 110*

**GEOLOGY 202** (2 Points)

**Earth History**

Geological time and sedimentary records. Global cycles, extraterrestrial impacts and biotic events. Modern, integrative stratigraphic principles and paleontology. Historical development of landscapes. Earth and life history, both global and New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: Any 10 points*

**GEOLOGY 203** (2 Points)

**Earth Materials**

Principles of crystallography, optical mineralogy, identification of minerals in thin section, classification of rocks, interpreting rock textures, rock forming processes.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 111 or 101*

**GEOLOGY 204** (2 Points)

**Earth Structure**

Methods of structural geology, analysing sequences of deformation, introduction to applied geophysics, geophysics of plate boundaries and lithosphere.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 112 or 101*

**GEOLOGY 205 (2 Points)**

**Dynamic Geology and Biota of New Zealand**

Faults and earthquakes in central and southern New Zealand, volcanism in the North Island, Gondwanan and New Zealand flora, evolution of New Zealand biota, development of the New Zealand land mass, New Zealand in the South-West Pacific.

*Prerequisite: Any 10 points*

**Stage III**

**GEOLOGY 301 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Field Geology**

Introduction to photogeology and advanced field techniques. Students will be required to undertake a variety of field studies and produce field reports and geological maps of selected areas.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 201 and 4 points from GEOLOGY 202-204*

**GEOLOGY 302 (2 Points)**

**Introductory Geochemistry and Hydrogeology**

Geochemical tools used to solve problems in earth sciences. Introductory hydrogeology. Integrated case histories. Laboratories include problem sets, alteration petrology and hydrogeology.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 201 and 203*

*Restriction: 435.341*

**GEOLOGY 303 (2 Points)**

**Paleoenvironments and Paleoecology**

Investigation and interpretation of past environments, illustrated with case studies from the fossil record and Quaternary sediments. Examination of the high-resolution records of Quaternary environments, as well as the dynamic signatures of evolution, paleobiology and paleoecology.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Geology, Geography or Biological Sciences*

*Restriction: 435.321, 435.373*

**GEOLOGY 304 (2 Points)**

**Magma, Metamorphism and Volcanism**

Magmatic systems and processes, metamorphic reactions and processes and their role in the evolution of the crust.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 201 and 203*

*Restriction: 435.351, 435.354*

**GEOLOGY 305 (2 Points)**

**Tectonics and Crustal Evolution**

Global mass balances, tectonics, basin analysis, rock associations and plate tectonics. Geochemical evolution of the lithosphere through geologic time.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 201 and 204*

*Restriction: 435.311*

**GEOLOGY 340 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Mineral Deposits**

An introduction to the recognition of geological settings, use and assessment of fossil fuel, metallic and industrial mineral deposits. Environmental impact of resource extraction and use. Each student will be required to attend a one-day field class, usually arranged at a weekend during the semester.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 301*

*Restriction: 435.241*

**GEOLOGY 361 (2 Points)**

**Applied Geophysics**

Geophysical techniques and their application to geological investigations, including the design and execution of field surveys, critical assessment of data, data processing, computer modelling and interpretation. Each student will be required to attend a total of three days of field classes, arranged during the mid-semester break and a weekend during the semester.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 204 or PHYSICS 230*

**GEOLOGY 372 (2 Points)**

**Case Histories in Engineering Geology**

The geology of dams, canals, tunnels, roads, viaducts, waste management and land development. Geotechnical hazards, seismotectonic hazard evaluation, photogeology, core logging and outcrop mapping. Site investigation methods. Each student will be required to attend two one-day field classes, usually arranged at weekends during the semester.

*Prerequisite: Either CIVIL 220 or GEOLOGY 201*

**GEOLOGY 381 (2 Points)**

**Topics in Geology 1**

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of Department*

*Restriction: GEOLOGY 302, 303, 304, 305*

**GEOLOGY 382 (2 Points)**

**Topics in Geology 2**

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of Department*

**Diploma Courses**

**GEOLOGY 690A (2 Points)**

**GEOLOGY 690B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Geology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 690 A and B*

**GEOLOGY 691A (2 Points)**

**GEOLOGY 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Geology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 691 A and B*

**GEOLOGY 693A (2 Points)**

**GEOLOGY 693B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Applied Geology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 693 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**GEOLOGY 701 (2 Points)**

**Engineering Geological Mapping**

A field-based course which provides hands-on experience in outcrop mapping, geomorphic mapping, and simple field testing of rocks and soils for geotechnical purposes.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 372*

**GEOLOGY 703 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**GEOLOGY 704 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**GEOLOGY 705 (2 Points)**

**Geological Hazards**

Principles of hazard assessment, risk evaluation and hazard mapping from a geological perspective. Examples from the literature and local experience of volcanic, seismic, tectonic, landslide and coastal

zone hazards. Consideration of the type of hazard, magnitude, frequency, consequences and relation to risk assessment.

**GEOLOGY 706** (4 Points)  
Special Topic

**GEOLOGY 707** (4 Points)  
Special Topic

**GEOLOGY 708** (1 Point)  
Research Methods and Current Issues in Geology 1  
Current issues in geological sciences. Analytical tools and geological techniques essential for research in geological sciences.

**GEOLOGY 709** (1 Point)  
Research Methods and Current Issues in Geology 2  
Current issues in geological sciences. Analytical tools and geological techniques essential for research in geological sciences.

**GEOLOGY 712** (2 Points)  
Advanced Structural Geology and Tectonics  
Advanced methods and new developments in structural geology. Structural geology in the applied sciences (eg, engineering geology, mineral deposits, hydrology, etc). Recent results in global and extraterrestrial tectonics. West Pacific tectonics.  
*Prerequisite: A major in Geology or Geophysics including GEOLOGY 204*

**GEOLOGY 721** (2 Points)  
Paleontology: Principles and Practice  
Advanced paleontology and palaeoecology. Methods and various current topics, such as life in extreme environments, use of trace fossils in paleoenvironmental and basin analysis, anoxia signatures in past ocean basins, early life, reefs through time, biometric analysis of fossils.

**GEOLOGY 731** (2 Points)  
Environmental Geochemistry  
Aqueous geochemistry, speciation, metal transport and solubilities in surface waters. Surface properties including colloids and weathering of minerals. Atmospheric chemistry. Geochemical cycles.  
*A knowledge of chemistry equivalent to that of GEOLOGY 302 will be assumed.*

**GEOLOGY 732** (2 Points)  
Mineralogy  
Instrumental methods for physical and chemical analysis of minerals. Minerals as reactants and products in geochemical reactions.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 203*

**GEOLOGY 741** (2 Points)  
Geochemistry of Ore Deposits  
Geochemistry of hydrothermal systems and fluids.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 302*

**GEOLOGY 742** (2 Points)  
Advanced Ore Deposit Models  
Genesis of ore deposits. Models and case studies.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 340*

**GEOLOGY 751** (2 Points)  
Igneous Processes  
The petrology of the major igneous associations and their role in the development and evolution of the earth's crust, with particular emphasis on igneous associations in New Zealand.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 304*

**GEOLOGY 752** (2 Points)  
Volcanology  
Volcanic eruption processes, methods of study of volcanic products, the interpretation of volcanic deposits, structure of volcanoes, volcanic hazards and their mitigation.

**GEOLOGY 753** (2 Points)  
Metamorphic Processes  
Processes of rock alteration, recrystallization and material migration in the crust and lithosphere. Metamorphic phase equilibria and pressure-temperature-time-deformation relations, with examples from various metamorphic belts.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 304 or 305*

**GEOLOGY 754** (2 Points)  
Sedimentary Processes  
Development of sedimentary basins. Global versus local inputs. Fluid movement. Diagenesis.

**GEOLOGY 771** (2 Points)  
Engineering Geology  
Geology applied to engineering construction and land development, geotechnical hazard assessment, waste disposal and the geotechnical aspects of resource management. Case studies and a field project.  
*No formal prerequisite but knowledge of engineering geology and practical methods at the level of GEOLOGY 372 will be assumed.*

**GEOLOGY 772** (2 Points)  
Hydrogeology and Ground Water Resources  
Principles of hydrogeology, the practice and methods of defining and managing groundwater resources and water quality.

**GEOLOGY 773** (2 Points)  
Quaternary Geology  
Glacial-interglacial sequences, sea-level change, paleoclimates, correlation (isotopes, tephra, palynology etc), neotectonics, landscape evolution and paleoenvironmental reconstruction, human impact. Case Studies.

**GEOLOGY 789** (4 Points)  
**GEOLOGY 789A** (2 Points)  
**GEOLOGY 789B** (2 Points)  
BSc(Hons) Dissertation in Geology  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 789 A and B, or GEOLOGY 789*

**GEOLOGY 795A** (7 Points)  
**GEOLOGY 795B** (7 Points)  
MSc Thesis in Applied Geology  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 795 A and B*

**GEOLOGY 796A** (7 Points)  
**GEOLOGY 796B** (7 Points)  
MSc Thesis in Geology  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 796 A and B*

## Geophysics

### Stage III

**GEOPHYS 330** (2 Points)  
Solid Earth and Applied Geophysics  
Discussion of the physics of the solid earth, includes: the gravitational field, the rotation and

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

figure of the earth, seismology and the internal structure of the earth, the earth's internal heat, the geomagnetic field, paleomagnetism and geodynamics. The applied geophysics section covers the theoretical basis of geophysical exploration techniques, including seismic, potential field and electrical methods.

*No formal prerequisite, but it will be assumed that students have either passed PHYSICS 213, 230 and 2 points in Geology, or GEOLOGY 204, and PHYSICS 111 or MATHS 150 or 151, and 2 other points in Physics.*

*Restriction: 453.330*

**GEOPHYS 331 (2 Points)**

**Physics of the Atmosphere and Ocean**

The application of fluid dynamics to the motion of the atmosphere and oceans. Marine topics include: ocean structure, oceanic circulation, underwater acoustics, tides and waves. Atmospheric topics include: boundary layer meteorology and the microphysics of clouds and precipitation. A weekend field trip is a component of the course.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 213, and 230 will be assumed*

*Restriction: 453.331, GEOPHYS 332, 333*

**GEOPHYS 332 (2 Points)**

**Physics of the Ocean**

The principles of physics governing ocean circulation with emphasis on the effects of the earth's rotation on fluid motion. Topics include: properties of seawater, underwater acoustics, geostrophic flow, global wind and density driven circulation, planetary waves, El Nino, air-sea interaction, tides, and coastal and estuarine dynamics.

*No formal prerequisite but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 213 and 230 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: 453.331*

**GEOPHYS 333 (2 Points)**

**Physics of the Atmosphere**

The application of physics to describing atmospheric composition, motion and energy transfers. Vertical structure, moisture, and stability are treated together with radiative driving to provide a context for discussion of large-scale systems such as cyclones and fronts.

*No formal prerequisite but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 213 and 230 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: 453.331*

**Diploma Courses**

**GEOPHYS 690A (2 Points)**

**GEOPHYS 690B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation in Geophysics**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOPHYS 690 A and B*

**GEOPHYS 691A (2 Points)**

**GEOPHYS 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation in Geophysics**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOPHYS 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**GEOPHYS 761 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Applied Geophysics 1**

The theory and practice of seismic and ground-penetrating radar methods. Topics include: basic

theory, theory of methods, data acquisition, data processing, and interpretation. Students are required to select four of the five topics.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 361 and 330*

*Restriction: GEOPHYS 763*

**GEOPHYS 762 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Applied Geophysics 2**

The theory and practice of potential field, electrical and electro-magnetic methods. Topics include: basic theory, theory of methods, data acquisition, data processing and interpretation of gravity and magnetic data and of electrical data. Students are required to select four of the five topics.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 361 and 330*

*Restriction: GEOPHYS 763*

**GEOPHYS 763A (1 Point)**

**GEOPHYS 763B (1 Point)**

**Advanced Applied Geophysics 3**

A selection of four of the topics in GEOPHYS 761 and 762. Either the physical principles of applied geophysical methods, or the practice of applied geophysical methods, including data acquisition, data processing, and interpretation.

*Prerequisite: Either 2 points in Stage III Physics or Geophysics, or GEOLOGY 361*

*Restriction: GEOLOGY 761, 762*

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOPHYS 763 A and B*

**GEOPHYS 796A (7 Points)**

**GEOPHYS 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Geophysics**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOPHYS 796 A and B*

---

**Marine Science**

**Stage II**

**MARINE 202 (2 Points)**

**Principles of Marine Science**

An introduction to the physical and biological structure of the oceans, sea floor, coastlines and the biological communities that inhabit them. Subject matter includes an overview of the nature and scope of marine science globally and within the New Zealand and Auckland contexts. A wide coverage of marine science issues are presented with an emphasis on multidisciplinary examples.

*No formal prerequisite although an understanding of Stage I level science is assumed*

*Restriction: 423.202, 424.201, ENVSCI 202*

**Stage III**

**MARINE 302 (2 Points)**

**Dynamics of Marine Systems**

Fundamental processes in the marine environment with an emphasis on interdisciplinary linkages in the functioning of marine ecosystems. Topics include: the role of fluid dynamics in the lives of marine animals and in the shaping the physical marine environment, and interdisciplinary studies of marine ecosystems.

*No formal prerequisite although an understanding of marine science to the level of MARINE 202 will be assumed*

*Restriction: 423.302, 424.301, ENVSCI 302*

**Honours and Master's Courses****MARINE 701 (2 Points)****Selected Topics in Marine Science**

Interdisciplinary case studies in marine science including: the role of hydrodynamic processes in biological processes such as larval dispersal and fertilization; the importance of chemical processes in biological productivity and ecological interactions in the sea; geomorphological processes and their interactions with the physical and biological environment in both coastal and the deep sea environments.

**MARINE 796A (7 Points)****MARINE 796B (7 Points)****MSc Thesis in Marine Science**

To complete this course students must enrol in MARINE 796 A and B

**Mathematics****MATHS 91W (2 Points)****Foundation Mathematics 1**

An understanding of arithmetic, including number work and estimation; ratio, proportion and percentage; and the metric system, as well as probability and statistics with interpretation of graphs. Algebra, including solving linear equations and inequalities is introduced. Emphasizes numeracy and skills. Students become confident users of technology, and develop their problem-solving abilities.

**MATHS 92W (2 Points)****Foundation Mathematics 2**

An understanding of elementary geometry and trigonometry in relation to right-angled triangles. Linear graphs lead to an in-depth study of coordinate geometry, including problem solving and proofs. Linear graphs are also the beginning point for an introduction to functions, in particular, quadratic and exponential functions, followed later by trigonometric functions. Applications to science and commerce are considered.

*This course requires prior enrolment in MATHS 91W.*

**MATHS 93W (2 Points)****Foundation Extension Mathematics 1**

An understanding of number work and estimation, with emphasis on the structure of the number system, ratio, proportion and percentage in relation to growth functions, and the metric system. Other topics include probability with problem solving and statistics with interpretation of graphs, as well as algebra including manipulation of algebraic expressions, solution of linear and quadratic equations and investigation of linear inequalities.

**MATHS 94W (2 Points)****Foundation Extension Maths 2**

An understanding of elementary geometry and trigonometry, both in relation to right-angled triangles, and in terms of trigonometric functions and graphs. Linear graphs lead to an in-depth study of coordinate geometry including problem solving and proofs. Linear graphs are also the foundation for a study of functions, including quadratic, cubic, and exponential functions and their graphs. Sequences and series are linked to functions.

Algebraic skills are extended, and there is an introduction to differential calculus with applications to optimization problems.

*This course requires prior enrolment in MATHS 93W.*

**Stage 1**

*Students who do not have a strong background in Mathematics should contact the Student Learning Centre for details of its Maths Workshops.*

**MATHS 101 (2 Points)****Mathematics 1**

Aims to build confidence in using mathematics in practical situations. Various pre-calculus topics are used to analyse problems in medicine, packaging, maps, patterns, chance and the environment.

*For students who have not studied Mathematics at NCEA Level 3 (or equivalent). This course may not be taken with or after any other Mathematics course at Stage 1 or above.*

**MATHS 102 (2 Points)****Mathematics 2**

A course for students whose mathematical background precludes entry to the courses MATHS 108 and 150. Syllabus includes: mathematical modelling; graphs and calculus of polynomial, trigonometric, exponential and logarithmic functions; graphs of rational and piecewise-defined functions; trigonometry; mathematical induction.

*For students who have achieved fewer than 12 credits in Calculus or Statistics at NCEA Level 3, or who have achieved at least 18 credits in Mathematics at NCEA Level 2 (or equivalent). This course may not be taken with or after any other Mathematics course at Stage 1 or above except MATHS 101.*

**MATHS 108 (2 Points)****General Mathematics 1**

Selected topics in algebra and calculus and their applications including: sets, real numbers, integers; linear algebra including matrices, linear functions, linear equations; functions, equations and inequalities; limits and continuity; differential calculus of one and several variables; integral calculus of one variable.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 102 or at least 12 credits in Calculus or Statistics at NCEA Level 3 (or equivalent).*

*Restriction: ENGSCI 111, MATHS 130, 150, 151, PHYSICS 111*

**MATHS 150 (2 Points)****Advancing Mathematics 1**

The standard entry-level course for students who have scored well in Bursary Mathematics and are planning to major or minor in Mathematics. Lines and planes in two and three dimensions, dot and cross product, linear equations, matrix algebra, determinants, eigenvalues and eigenvectors. Functions, limits, differentiation. Antiderivatives, integration, logarithmic, exponential and trigonometric functions. Applications.

*Recommended preparation: B+ in MATHS 102, or at least 18 credits in Calculus at NCEA Level 3 (or equivalent).*

*Restriction: MATHS 108, 109, 151, 130, 230 ENGSCI 111, PHYSICS 111*

**MATHS 153 (2 Points)****MATHS 153A (1 Point)****MATHS 153B (1 Point)****Accelerated Mathematics**

A version of MATHS 150 for high achieving seventh form students. Enrolment requires permission from Department.

*Enrolment requires permission from Department*

*Restriction: ENGSCI 111, MATHS 108, 109, 130, 150, 151, 152, PHYSICS 111, 112*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 153 A and B, or MATHS 153*

**MATHS 162 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Applied and Computational Mathematics**

An introduction to mathematical techniques and computer programming for modelling in the physical and non-physical sciences. Included are scientific computing, applications of algebra and calculus, Monte Carlo simulation, and mathematical modelling. Concurrent or prior enrolment in one of MATHS 108, 130, 150 or 151 is recommended.

**Stage II**

**MATHS 202 (2 Points)**

**Tutoring in Mathematics**

A mainly practical course in which selected students learn mathematics tutoring skills in a first-year university mathematics classroom situation, following five weeks of lectures.

*Prerequisite: Departmental consent required*

**MATHS 208 (2 Points)**

**General Mathematics 2**

A sequel to the course MATHS 108 covering: further matrix and vector algebra (solution of linear systems, least squares, eigenvalues, vector spaces), calculus of series and Taylor approximation, multivariable calculus and optimization, differential equations and difference equations, and the use of symbolic computing with applications.

*Prerequisite: ENGSCI 111 or PHYSICS 111 or MATHS 108 or 150 or 151*

*Restriction: MATHS 230, PHYSICS 211, cannot be taken after MATHS 253*

**MATHS 210A (1 Point)**

**MATHS 210B (1 Point)**

**Contemporary Topics in Maths**

A selection of six topics from various branches of the mathematical sciences, for students interested in teaching or in pursuing mathematics to graduate level. Further information about this course may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 109, 130, or 152 and concurrent enrolment in at least one other Stage II course in Mathematics.*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 210 A and B*

**MATHS 250 (2 Points)**

**Advancing Mathematics 2**

Vector spaces and subspaces, linear transformations, linear independence, bases, coordinates. Eigenvalues. Complex numbers. Derivatives and integrals of inverse trigonometric functions, L'Hospital's- rule, improper integrals. Applications. Parametric curves. Power series, Taylor and Maclaurin expansions. Partial derivatives, tangent planes, linear approximation, gradient.

*Prerequisite: ENGSCI 111 or MATHS 150 or 151, or PHYSICS 111 or a B pass in MATHS 108*

*Restriction: MATHS 109, 152, 230, PHYSICS 112, 210*

**MATHS 253 (2 Points)**

**Mathematics 5**

Inner product spaces and applications. Orthogonal diagonalization and quadratic forms. Differential calculus for functions of several variables. Multiple integrals. Vector valued functions and space curves. Vector calculus. Green's theorem. Series.

*Prerequisite: MATHS 152 or 250, or PHYSICS 112 or 210, or a B pass in MATHS 208*

*Restriction: MATHS 230, PHYSICS 211*

**MATHS 255 (2 Points)**

**Principles of Mathematics**

An introduction to logic and proof; sets, relations and operations on sets; natural numbers, congruences; algebra of polynomials; complex numbers; examples of groups. Fundamental concepts of calculus in a rigorous setting; real numbers, sequences and convergence, continuity, uniform continuity, theorems on derivatives, Taylor's theorem.

*Prerequisite: MATHS 152 or 250, or PHYSICS 112 or 210, or a B pass in MATHS 208*

*Restriction: MATHS 230, PHYSICS 211*

**MATHS 260 (2 Points)**

**Differential Equations**

Methods for the solution of ordinary differential equations, including the solution of differential equations in terms of elementary functions, and qualitative and elementary numerical methods for gaining information about solutions. Applications of differential equations to scientific modelling. Concurrent or prior enrolment in MATHS 253 or its equivalent is strongly recommended.

*Restriction: MATHS 267, PHYSICS 211*

**MATHS 267 (2 Points)**

**Applied and Computational Mathematics**

Development and solution of mathematical models with examples from economics, environmental systems and industry. These models are often in the form of differential or difference equations and the course considers methods for their solution using symbolic and numerical computation.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 162 and concurrent or prior enrolment in MATHS 208 or its equivalent.*

*Restriction: MATHS 260, 270*

**MATHS 270 (2 Points)**

**Numerical Computation**

An introduction to algorithms that are used to solve frequently-occurring problems in computation. The problems covered include linear and nonlinear systems of equations, interpolation, quadrature and ordinary differential equations. The use of a high-level programming language in scientific computing is also taught.

*Recommended Preparation: MATHS 109, 152 or 250 and a computing course such as COMPSCI 101 or MATHS 162.*

*Restriction: MATHS 267*

**Stage III**

**MATHS 302 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Mathematics Education**

A broad-based study of mathematics education in New Zealand which includes: social-political, gender, curriculum, assessment, technology and physiological issues in mathematics teaching and learning.

*Recommended preparation: at least 6 points from courses in Mathematics or Statistics.*

*Restriction: 165.394*

**MATHS 307 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Mathematics Education 1****MATHS 308 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Mathematics Education 2**

Both MATHS 307 and 308 deal with some special topic(s) of contemporary interest in mathematics education.

**MATHS 310 (2 Points)****History of Mathematics**

A study of some of the topics occurring in the history of mathematics which facilitate the understanding of modern mathematics. These include: concepts of number, geometry, algebra, and the differential and integral calculus.

*Corequisite: At least 4 points at Stage III in Mathematics*

**MATHS 315 (2 Points)****Mathematical Logic**

Semantic and syntactic approaches to propositional logic, introduction to set theory and formal systems, first-order predicate logic, soundness and completeness of predicate calculus, an introduction to model theory, Gödel's incompleteness theorem.

*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 225 or MATHS 225, and MATHS 255.*

**MATHS 320 (2 Points)****Algebraic Structures**

An introduction to modern algebra through the study of groups, rings, fields, and other algebraic structures. Concepts such as those of a normal subgroup, homomorphism and isomorphism, direct products, quotients and extension fields, are illustrated with numerous examples.

*Prerequisite: MATHS 255 or 328*

**MATHS 326 (2 Points)****Combinatorial Computing**

Aspects of the representation and generation of discrete mathematical structures, searching and sorting methods, graph algorithms, block designs, coding theory, and computational complexity (in a combinatorial setting). Some use of computer packages may be included.

*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 225 or MATHS 225, and COMPSCI 101 or 111 or 114 or MATHS 162.*

**MATHS 328 (2 Points)****Algebra and Applications**

Introduction to modern algebra, number theory and combinatorics and some of their applications to information theory. Cryptography, error-correction, secret-sharing, fingerprinting (watermarking).

*Prerequisite: MATHS 255 or COMPSCI 225*

*Restriction: MATHS 381*

**MATHS 332 (2 Points)****Real and Complex Analysis**

The real and complex fields. Limits and continuity. Riemann integrals. Differentiating real and complex functions. Theorems of Cauchy and Goursat. Cauchy integral formulas. Real and complex power series. Laurent series. Residues.

*Prerequisite: MATHS 255*

*Restriction: MATHS 330, 345*

**MATHS 333 (2 Points)****Multivariable Analysis**

Finite dimensional vector spaces, norms, general metric spaces. Continuity, compactness, continuous functions on a compact metric space with sup norm.

Completeness, connectedness. Differentiation and integration of power series. Linear and bilinear maps. Derivatives and second derivatives. Exponential, inverse, determinant of operators. Implicit and inverse function theorems.

*Prerequisite: MATHS 255*

*Restriction: MATHS 331, 335*

**MATHS 340 (2 Points)****Multivariable Calculus**

Differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables: partial and directional derivatives, chain rule, divergence and gradient, maxima and minima, multiple and repeated integrals, Green's theorem, surface integrals, the Gauss divergence theorem and Stokes' theorem, applications.

*Prerequisite: MATHS 230 or 253*

*Restriction: MATHS 331, 333, 347*

**MATHS 347 (2 Points)****Advanced Calculus**

Differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables; complex numbers and functions of a complex variable. Topics include partial and directional derivatives, chain rule, divergence and gradient, multiple and repeated integrals, surface integrals, Green's theorem, Gauss' theorem and Stokes' theorem; differentiating real and complex functions, Cauchy-Riemann equations, Cauchy's integral theorem, Cauchy integral formulas, Laurent series, residues and applications.

*Restriction: MATHS 331, 332, 340, 345, 362*

**MATHS 353 (2 Points)****Geometry and Topology**

A selection of topics providing an introduction to a range of concepts in geometry and general topology, with emphasis on visualizable aspects of these subjects. Topics include: some or all of the following: axiom systems, affine geometry, Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, projective geometry, symmetry, convexity, the geometric topology of manifolds, and algebraic structures associated with topological spaces.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 255.*

*Restriction: 445.350, 445.355*

**MATHS 361 (2 Points)****Advanced Methods in Applied Mathematics 1**

Differential equations and differential calculus of Applied Mathematics: vector calculus; classification and methods for solution of partial differential equations; special solutions to wave, diffusion, and Laplace equations; special functions; qualitative analysis of systems of nonlinear ordinary differential equations.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 230 or 253, and MATHS 260.*

**MATHS 362 (2 Points)****Advanced Methods in Applied Mathematics 2**

Further mathematical methods for Applied Mathematics. Topics include: an introduction to the calculus of variations; orthogonal polynomials and applications; solutions of the diffusion and wave equations using Fourier series; Fourier transforms and their approximation by discrete Fourier transforms; other integral transforms.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 361.*

*Restriction: MATHS 347*

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

<b>MATHS 363</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Computational Maths and Modelling</b>	
Numerical methods and their application to a variety of mathematical models (typical examples include: traffic flow, inverse problems, image reconstruction and nonlinear waves in biology). Numerical linear algebra. Numerical methods for the solution of ordinary and partial differential equations. Stochastic models. Use of Matlab and Maple.	
<i>Prerequisite: MATHS 260 and either 270 or 267 or B+ pass or better in MATHS 260 or 267</i>	
<i>Restriction: MATHS 367</i>	
<b>MATHS 367</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Advanced Applied and Computational Mathematics</b>	
Development and solution of models related to a variety of industrial problems. Methods for the solution of ordinary differential equations and partial differential equations, including numerical methods, are considered.	
<i>Recommended preparation: MATHS 260, 267 or 270.</i>	
<i>Restriction: MATHS 363, 370</i>	
<b>MATHS 372A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>MATHS 372B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Industrial Mathematics Clinic</b>	
An industrial case study involving the formulation, solution and interpretation of a problem presented by an industrial client. Field work, team effort, project presentation and report writing are emphasized.	
<i>Recommended preparation: MATHS 267.</i>	
<i>Prerequisite: Departmental consent required</i>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 372 A and B</i>	
<b>MATHS 381</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic in Mathematics 1</b>	
<b>MATHS 382</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 382A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>MATHS 382B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Special Topic in Mathematics 2</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 382 A and B, or MATHS 382</i>	
<b>MATHS 383</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic in Mathematics 3</b>	
<b>MATHS 384</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic in Mathematics 4</b>	
Each of these courses (381–384) deals with some special topic(s) of contemporary interest in pure mathematics. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.	
<b>MATHS 386</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 386A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>MATHS 386B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Special Topic in Applied Mathematics 1</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 386 A and B, or MATHS 386</i>	
<b>MATHS 387</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic in Applied Mathematics 2</b>	
<b>MATHS 388</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic in Applied Mathematics 3</b>	
<i>Recommended preparation: MATHS 361 and concurrent or prior enrolment in MATHS 347.</i>	

<b>MATHS 389</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic in Applied Mathematics 4</b>	
Each of these courses (386–389) deals with some special topic(s) of contemporary interest in applied and computational mathematics. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.	

---

**Diploma Courses**

<b>MATHS 690</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 690A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 690B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Mathematics)</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 690 A and B, or MATHS 690</i>	
<b>MATHS 691</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 691A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 691B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>PG Diploma Dissertation (Mathematics)</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 691 A and B, or MATHS 691</i>	
<b>MATHS 692</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 692A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 692B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Applied Mathematics)</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 692 A and B, or MATHS 692</i>	
<b>MATHS 693</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 693A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>MATHS 693B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>PG Diploma Dissertation (Applied Mathematics)</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 693 A and B, or MATHS 693</i>	

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

<b>MATHS 701</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Research Issues in Mathematics Education</b>	
Research methodology for mathematics and statistics education, designed to meet the needs of students planning a Master's level dissertation in mathematics education.	
<b>MATHS 702</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Mathematics Curriculum</b>	
The historical development, current trends, theories and practice of the mathematics and statistics curricula, and the interconnections between curriculum development and other mathematics education issues.	
<b>MATHS 703</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Assessment in Mathematics Education</b>	
The historical background, theories and recent research into the ways in which learners are assessed in mathematics and statistics education. This includes a focus on both theoretical and practical aspects of assessment in the mathematics classroom, and examination of the relationship between assessment and curriculum in the wider sense.	
<b>MATHS 705</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Socio-political Issues in Mathematics Education</b>	
A selection of topics from cultural, social, historical and political issues arising in mathematics	

education. Critical examination of theories and current literature will be made, within a case-study approach.

*Restriction: 780.765*

**MATHS 706 (2 Points)**

**Technology in Mathematics Education**

The use of computers and calculators in mathematics education, with a focus on both theoretical and practical aspects of the use of computers in the mathematics classroom. The pedagogical implications of computers for the present and the future of mathematics education are discussed.

**MATHS 707 (2 Points)**

**Special Topics in Mathematics Education 1**

**MATHS 708 (2 Points)**

**Special Topics in Mathematics Education 2**

**MATHS 709 (2 Points)**

**Special Topics in Mathematics Education 3**

**MATHS 710 (2 Points)**

**Special Topics in Mathematics Education 4**

**MATHS 711 (4 Points)**

**MATHS 711A (2 Points)**

**MATHS 711B (2 Points)**

**Special Topics in Mathematics Education 5**

Each of these courses (707–711) deals with some special topic(s) of contemporary interest in Mathematics Education. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 711 A and B. or MATHS 711*

**MATHS 712 (2 Points)**

**Mathematics and Learning**

An examination of a mathematical topic up to undergraduate level in the light of current research. The focus will be on investigating how that topic may be effectively learned at senior levels. Students taking this course should normally have studied mathematics or statistics at Stage II level.

*Restriction: MATHS 704*

**MATHS 713 (2 Points)**

**Logic and Set Theory**

A study of the foundations of pure mathematics, formalizing the notions of mathematical proof and mathematical structure through Predicate Calculus and Model Theory. Includes an exploration of the limits of these formalizations (including Godel's incompleteness theorems), and a study of Axiomatic Set Theory (including a discussion of consistency and independence). Offered every second (even) year.

**MATHS 714 (2 Points)**

**Number Theory**

A broad introduction to aspects of elementary, analytical and computational number theory, including some or all of the following: primitive roots, quadratic residues, Diophantine equations, primality testing (and applications to cryptology), the two and four-squares theorems, arithmetical functions, Diophantine approximation, distribution of primes. Offered every second (odd) year.

**MATHS 715 (2 Points)**

**Graph Theory and Combinatorics**

Theory and applications of combinatorial graphs (networks), block designs, and error-correcting codes. Topics include: graph connectivity, trees, colourings, embeddings, digraphs, matchings, incidence matrices, eigen value methods, Steiner systems, perfect and linear codes.

**MATHS 720 (2 Points)**

**Groups, Fields and Galois Theory**

Fundamentals of group theory (including isomorphism, group presentations, group actions, Sylow's theorems, subnormal series and solubility), and the application of group theory to the study of fields and field extensions via the Galois group of a polynomial.

**MATHS 721 (2 Points)**

**Rings, Modules, Algebras and Representations**

A sequel to the course MATHS 320, investigating the properties, extensions and applications of further algebraic structures (such as modules and other algebras), and the representation of algebras in terms of matrices.

**MATHS 730 (2 Points)**

**Measure Theory and Integration**

Concepts, examples and properties of measures of sets, with emphasis on the Lebesgue and Lebesgue-Stieltjes measures, the Lebesgue integral, measure spaces, the Fubini theorems, signed and complex measures, the Lebesgue-Radon-Nikodym theorem, the Vitali system, absolutely continuous functions, and the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus.

**MATHS 731 (2 Points)**

**Functional Analysis**

Normed linear spaces, Banach spaces and Hilbert spaces, and some of the main developments in these areas. Highlights include: the Hahn-Banach theorem, the Banach-Steinhaus theorem, the Riesz Representation theorem, Fourier series, and the spectral theorem.

**MATHS 735 (2 Points)**

**Analysis on Manifolds and Differential Geometry**

An introduction to differential geometry via the study of differentiable manifolds, tangent spaces and vector fields, differential forms, Stokes theorem, Frenet formulae, quadratic forms on surfaces, and the Gauss-Bonnet theorems.

**MATHS 737 (2 Points)**

**Topic(s) in Analysis**

A number of advanced or special topics in analysis. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 740 (2 Points)**

**Complex Analysis**

Analytic and harmonic functions, complex integration, hyperbolic geometry, conformal mappings, normal families, the Riemann mapping theorem, Mittag-Leffler and Weierstrass Theorems.

**MATHS 745 (2 Points)**

**Chaos, Fractals and Bifurcation**

Chaos, fractals and bifurcation, and their commercial, medical and scientific applications. Discrete iterations, including the Julia and

Mandelbrot sets, iterated function systems and higher-dimensional strange attractors. Quantum chaos and complexity theory are also discussed. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 747 (2 Points)**

**Topic(s) in Complex Analysis**

A number of advanced or special topics in complex analysis. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 750 (2 Points)**

**Topology**

Aspects of general, set-theoretic and algebraic topology including: properties and construction of topological spaces, continuous mappings, axioms of separation, countability, connectivity and compactness, metrization, covering spaces, the fundamental group, homology groups, fixed-point theorems, and applications.

**MATHS 755 (2 Points)**

**Topic(s) in Geometry**

A number of advanced or special topics in geometry. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 757 (2 Points)**

**Topic(s) in Topology**

A number of advanced or special topics in topology. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 761 (2 Points)**

**Ordinary Differential Equations and Dynamical Systems**

Qualitative properties of nonlinear ordinary differential equations. Topics covered include: recurrent dynamics, asymptotic stability, structural stability, the Smale horseshoe, chaos, local and global bifurcations. This course is taught jointly with the Physics Department.

**MATHS 763 (2 Points)**

**Partial Differential Equations**

A study of partial differential equations frequently arising in applications. Topics include: classification of partial differential equations as hyperbolic, parabolic, or elliptic equations, Hilbert space and approximate methods for analytic and numerical solution. This course is taught jointly with the Physics Department.

**MATHS 770 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Numerical Analysis**

Advanced techniques in numerical linear algebra, numerical ordinary and partial differential equations and numerical quadrature. The construction and analysis of algorithms for the solution of numerical problems. Introduction to numerical methods for integral equations, functional differential equations and differential algebraic equations.

**MATHS 775 (2 Points)**

**Mathematical Software**

The use of mathematical software in scientific computation. Topics include: the organization of

software libraries, the selection of the appropriate software, documentation, techniques to ensure the software is used correctly, the verification of the results, and the influence of different computer architectures.

**MATHS 781 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Mathematics 1**

**MATHS 782 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Mathematics 2**

**MATHS 783 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Mathematics 3**

**MATHS 784 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Mathematics 4**

Each of these courses (781–784) deals with some special topic(s) from pure mathematics. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 786 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics 1**

**MATHS 787 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics 2**

**MATHS 788 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics 3**

**MATHS 789 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics 4**

Each of these courses (786–789) deals with some special topic(s) from applied and computational mathematics. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 791 (2 Points)**

**Project in Mathematics 1**

**MATHS 792 (4 Points)**

**Project in Mathematics 2**

**MATHS 793 (2 Points)**

**Project in Mathematics 3**

**MATHS 794 (4 Points)**

**Project in Mathematics 4**

Each of these courses (791–794) involves participation in a research project or investigation in some topic from pure or applied mathematics, under the supervision of one or more staff members, and presentation, by the student, of the results in a seminar; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 795A (7 Points)**

**MATHS 795B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Applied Mathematics**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 795 A and B*

**MATHS 796A (7 Points)**

**MATHS 796B (7 Points)**

**Master's Thesis Mathematics**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 796 A and B*

**MATHS 797A (7 Points)**

**MATHS 797B (7 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in Mathematics**

An integrated combination of courses, research projects and investigations in a selection of topics in

mathematics, designed to meet the requirements of each individual student. The selection is subject to approval by the Head of Department of Mathematics.

To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 797 A and B

## Optometry and Vision Science

### Part I

**OPTOM 110** (2 Points)

#### Optics of the Eye

Evolution and optics of the vertebrate and invertebrate eye. Schematic eyes. Ocular ametropia, mechanisms of accommodation. Light transmission in the eye. Aspherical and gradient index structures in the eye. Ocular aberrations. Measurement of ocular dimensions. Refractive errors of the human eye. Optical correction of refractive errors.

**OPTOM 151A** (2 Points)

**OPTOM 151B** (2 Points)

#### Anatomy and Physiology of Vision

The specialized anatomy, histology, physiology and biochemistry that is relevant to optometry and that is necessary for an understanding of the normal processes that mediate vision. Covers topics ranging from the composition and structure of the tear film, through to the electrophysiological responses of neurons in the visual cortex of the brain. Clinical relevance of the material is discussed, and provides students with a sound understanding of the structure and function of the important components of the eye and the visual pathways.

Restriction: OPTOM150

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 151 A and B

**OPTOM 161** (2 Points)

#### Optics of Lenses and Lens Systems

Optics relevant to optometry, but of interest to other science students seeking a background in geometrical optics. Includes a study of the principles of image formation by lenses and lens systems, mirrors and prisms. In addition to an introduction to ophthalmic lenses, includes basic instruments such as telescopes, microscopes and projection systems.

Restriction: OPTOM160

**OPTOM 165** (2 Points)

#### Physical Optics

Includes physical optics relevant to optometry but is also directed towards students taking other science courses. Gives an understanding of the basic principles of physical optics and will involve a study of phenomena including interference, diffraction and polarization.

Restriction: OPTOM160

**OPTOM 170** (2 Points)

#### Visual Science 1

Light and vision, form vision, motion perception, colour vision, visual psychophysical measurements, eye movements and binocular vision.

**OPTOM 191** (2 Points)

**OPTOM 191A** (1 Point)

**OPTOM 191B** (1 Point)

#### Issues in Optometry

Topics of special interest to students entering Optometry from overseas and from the graduate entry quota.

Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 191 A and B, or OPTOM 191

### Part II

**OPTOM 211A** (2 Points)

**OPTOM 211B** (2 Points)

#### Optometry

The history and development of optometry as a health care profession, scope of optometric practice. Introduction to the optometric examination: vision and visual acuity, contrast sensitivity, visual fields, colour vision, slit lamp biomicroscopy, ophthalmoscopy, objective and subjective examination, near visual examination, routine binocular vision examination, history taking, communication skills, clinical problem-solving.

Restriction: 450.210, 450.220

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 211 A and B

**OPTOM 245A** (1 Point)

**OPTOM 245B** (1 Point)

#### Principles of Ocular Pharmacology

General principles of pharmacology. Pharmacodynamics. Drug absorption, distribution and metabolism. Mechanism of drug action at receptors. Drugs and their application on ophthalmic practice. The autonomic nervous system: anatomy and physiology. Mechanisms of action of ocular pharmaceutical agents. Principles of pharmacological treatment of ocular disease. Drug interactions. Legislation on use of ocular pharmaceutical agents by optometrists in New Zealand and internationally. Introduction to therapeutic agents in optometric practice. Scope of treatment. Shared care.

Prerequisite: OPTOM 151

Restriction: OPTOM 241, 361

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 245 A and B

**OPTOM 251A** (1 Point)

**OPTOM 251B** (1 Point)

#### Ocular Pathology

Pathophysiology of the eye. Histopathology of eye disease. Pathology of orbit, lacrimal system, conjunctiva, cornea, uvea, lens and retina. Developmental anomalies of the eye.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 251 A and B

**OPTOM 260** (2 Points)

#### Applied Optics and Dispensing

Optics of ophthalmic lenses, ophthalmic lens materials, strength of materials, ophthalmic prisms, tinted lenses, coatings, multifocal and progressive addition lenses, special lens designs, diffractive ophthalmic lenses, magnification, isogonal and isekonic lens design. Finite ray tracing, optical design, chromatic and monochromatic aberrations of ophthalmic lenses. Ophthalmic dispensing, fabrication of ophthalmic aids. Principles of optical instruments.

**OPTOM 270** (2 Points)  
**Visual Science 2**  
 Models of spatial vision. Velocity perception. Signal detection theory. Theories of colour vision, defective colour vision. Visually evoked potentials. Binocular space perception. The development of vision. Recent advances in visual science. Aetiology of refractive errors – hereditary factors, environmental factors. Prevalence of ametropia and changes with age.

### Part III

**OPTOM 311A** (2 Points)  
**OPTOM 311B** (2 Points)

#### Clinical Optometry

The routine optometric examination, diagnosis and management of disorders of the visual system, case analysis. Myopia control: Examination and treatment of patients in the Optometry Clinic under supervision.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 311 A and B*

**OPTOM 330A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 330B** (1 Point)

#### Contact Lens Practice

Examination procedures for contact lens practice. Principles of contact lens fitting. Optics of contact lenses. Complications of contact lenses. Materials used in contact lens manufacture. Designs of contact lenses. Scleral lens impressions. Recent advances in contact lenses. Practical sessions in contact lens fitting, verification techniques and patient care.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 330 A and B*

**OPTOM 340A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 340B** (1 Point)

#### Paediatric and Geriatric Optometry

Developmental aspects of vision in children. Investigation of vision in children. Disorders of binocular vision, visual training, sports optometry, visual aspects of learning disabilities, aniseikonia. Ocular and vision problems of the elderly. Low vision, interdisciplinary rehabilitation resources, counselling and referral. Optics of low-vision appliances. Optometric management of low-vision patients.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 340 A and B*

**OPTOM 350A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 350B** (1 Point)

#### Diseases of the Eye

Diseases of the eye and ocular adnexa. Signs of systemic disease. Management of patients with visual disorders. Examination of patients in the optometry clinic, hospital eye departments and other sites.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 350 A and B*

**OPTOM 355A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 355B** (1 Point)

#### Management of Eye Disease

The principles and actions of therapeutic pharmacological agents and the management of patients with ocular disease. Development of knowledge and skills to safely use therapeutic agents within a defined scope of practice. Examination of and therapeutic management of patients.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 355 A and B*

**OPTOM 372A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 372B** (1 Point)

#### Visual Science 3

To provide an understanding of visual information processing by the visual pathways (retinogeniculate-striate system) and the physiology of other ocular components. A problem-oriented approach, which develops students' skills in reading, analyzing and debating scientific papers in the vision sciences, will be used to achieve a high level of critical thinking and problem solving skills. It is expected that students will acquire the ability to seek, evaluate and retrieve scientific information on which to base their clinical practice. Clear and concise communication of scientific information both written and oral form will be required.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 372 A and B.*

### Part IV

**OPTOM 410A** (2 Points)  
**OPTOM 410B** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Clinical Optometry 1

Clinical work with responsibility, under supervision, for patients.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 410 A and B*

**OPTOM 420A** (2 Points)  
**OPTOM 420B** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Clinical Optometry 2

Clinical work with greater emphasis on particular areas in optometry including: contact lenses, low vision, binocular vision, paediatric optometry and practice management.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 420 A and B*

**OPTOM 461A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 461B** (1 Point)

#### Specialist Optometry

Supervised clinical work in external clinics, which may include: private optometric practice, hospital eye departments, overseas institutions, or experience in some other approved locations.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 461 A and B*

**OPTOM 470A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 470B** (1 Point)

#### Project

Supervised investigation into an approved topic relating to optometry or visual science, including clinical and applied research. Experimental design in research projects, report writing, ethics.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 470 A and B*

**OPTOM 480A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 480B** (1 Point)

#### Advanced Optometric Science

Anatomy and physiology, contact lenses, ocular pharmaceutical agents, ophthalmic disease, visual science and optics. Both established work from previous academic teaching and recently published research papers will be reviewed.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 480 A and B*

**Diploma Courses****OPTOM 681** (2 Points)**Ocular Pharmacology**

The principles and actions of diagnostic and therapeutic pharmacological agents. Development of knowledge and skills to safely use diagnostic and therapeutic agents within a defined scope of practice.

**OPTOM 691A** (2 Points)**OPTOM 691B** (2 Points)**PG Diploma Dissertation (Optometry)**

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 691 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses****OPTOM 711A** (2 Points)**OPTOM 711B** (2 Points)**Advanced Visual Optics**

Deals with the optics of the vertebrate eye, with emphasis on current methods of measurement of the ocular refracting surfaces, determination of the gradient refractive index of the crystalline lens, ocular aberrations and adaptive optics.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 711 A and B

**OPTOM 750A** (1 Point)**OPTOM 750B** (1 Point)**Tools for Vision Research**

Procedures for generation and calibration of visual stimuli. Techniques for measurement and analysis.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 750 A and B

**OPTOM 754A** (2 Points)**OPTOM 754B** (2 Points)**Anatomy and Physiology of Vision**

A guided course of advanced study in topics selected from the following areas: cornea and sclera; lacrimal apparatus and tears; crystalline lens and accommodation; pupillary physiology and pharmacology; aqueous humour and intra-ocular pressure; photoreceptors and the retina; neurophysiology of the retina, visual pathways and visual cortex.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 754 A and B

**OPTOM 756A** (2 Points)**OPTOM 756B** (2 Points)**Special Topic in Vision Science**

The study of selected fields in vision science at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 756 A and B

**OPTOM 757A** (2 Points)**OPTOM 757B** (2 Points)**Special Topic in Optometry 1**

The study of selected fields of clinical optometry at an advanced level with detailed study of the particular field. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 757 A and B

**OPTOM 758A** (2 Points)**OPTOM 758B** (2 Points)**Special Topic in Optometry 2**

The study of selected fields of clinical optometry at an advanced level with detailed study of the particular field. The topics will be prescribed by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 758 A and B

**OPTOM 770A** (2 Points)**OPTOM 770B** (2 Points)**Vision Science**

Includes a review of light and the eye. Spatial vision, temporal vision, colour vision, models of visual perception, neural basis of vision, visual electrophysiology, binocular vision and space perception, stereopsis, development of vision. Advanced methods for analysis of vision. In-depth consideration of current topics.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 770 A and B

**OPTOM 796A** (7 Points)**OPTOM 796B** (7 Points)**MSc Thesis in Optometry**

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 796 A and B

**Pharmacology**

Prescriptions for Pharmacology courses are listed under the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences starting at PHARMCOL.

**Physics****PHYSICS 91W** (2 Points)**Foundation Physics 1**

An introductory course for students who have not previously studied physics. Topics include the nature of light; wave motion; basic mechanics of motion in a straight line; including the concepts of momentum and energy; an introduction to heat.

**PHYSICS 92W** (2 Points)**Foundation Physics 2**

A second foundation course for students who understand the basic mechanics of motion in a straight line. Further mechanics, including equilibrium, projectile motion, rotational motion and gravitation. Electromagnetism, including electrostatics, elementary circuits and the effects of magnetic fields.

This course requires prior enrolment in PHYSICS 91W.

**Stage I****PHYSICS 102** (2 Points)**Basic Concepts of Physics**

A non-advancing course in physics for students interested in understanding the physics of everyday phenomena. The course requires a minimal background in mathematics and physics, and will stress the conceptual understanding of important physical ideas. Demonstration experiments are a major feature.

Restriction: Cannot be taken either with or after any of PHYSICS 120-160

**PHYSICS 107 (2 Points)****Planets, Stars and Galaxies**

A non-advancing course in physics for students interested in astronomy. Topics include a survey of astronomical objects in the universe, the tools of observational astronomy, stellar evolution, quasars and black holes, cosmology. This course does not require a formal background in mathematics or physics.

**PHYSICS 111 (2 Points)****Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 1**

Covers analytical techniques associated with Stage I physical science courses, relating the associated mathematical framework to physical systems and including laboratory work. Topics include: scalar and vector physical observables, waves, time development of physical and chemical systems and first order differential equations, applications of complex numbers and matrices in electrical circuits, applications of calculus to physical systems, error analysis.

*For students in experimental sciences. Provides a minimal preparation in mathematical techniques for Stage II Physics courses.*

*Restriction: MATHS 108, 130, 150, 151, ENGSCI 111*

**PHYSICS 120 (2 Points)****Physics of Energy**

A course designed for students either advancing in physical science or with a major interest in field studies offered at both campuses. It covers motion and its causes, as well as the production, transformation and propagation of energy in its thermal and mechanical forms. Physics and mathematics at NCEA Level 3 or equivalent or a pass in PHYSICS 102 are recommended for students intending to enrol in this course.

*Restriction: PHYSICS 160*

**PHYSICS 130 (2 Points)****Properties of Matter**

Static equilibrium of solids and fluids with an introduction to fluid mechanics. The physical properties of condensed matter including strength, elasticity, and other mechanical characteristics. The electrical, optical and thermal characteristics of materials with technological applications including alloys, ceramics, polymers, glasses and plastics. Physics and mathematics at NCEA Level 3 or equivalent, or a pass in PHYSICS 102 are recommended for students intending to enrol in this course.

*Restriction: CHEMMAT 121*

**PHYSICS 150 (2 Points)****Physics of Technology**

Prescribed for students advancing either in the physical sciences or in the special science and technology programmes offered on both campuses. It covers basic aspects of circuits, fields, optical systems and quantum effects common to modern communication systems and devices. Physics and mathematics at NCEA Level 3 or equivalent, or a pass in PHYSICS 102 are recommended for students intending to enrol in this course.

**PHYSICS 160 (2 Points)****Physics for the Life Sciences**

Designed for students intending to advance their studies in the life sciences. Topics covered will be especially relevant to biological systems: mechanics, thermal physics, wave motion, electricity and

instrumentation. This course requires a knowledge of physics and mathematics to at least NCEA Level 2.

*Restriction: PHYSICS 120*

**Stage II**

**Note:** *For the purposes of recommended preparation for Stage II Physics courses: PHYSICS 120 and 160 are equivalent; PHYSICS 111, MATHS 107, 108, 130, 150 and 152 are equivalent; PHYSICS 210 and MATHS 250 are equivalent; and COMPSCI 101 and INFOSYS 110 are equivalent.*

**PHYSICS 210 (2 Points)****Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 2**

Supplementary mathematical techniques associated with physical science courses. Relates the associated mathematical framework to physical systems and includes laboratory work. Vector spaces and linear transformations, sequences and series, multivariable integral and differential calculus, vector functions.

*Prerequisite: PHYSICS 111 or MATHS 150 or 108. In conjunction with PHYSICS 111 this course provides access to Stage II Mathematics courses. Students majoring in Physics may take this course in the second semester of their first year*

*Restriction: MATHS 109, 208, 250*

**PHYSICS 211A (1 Point)****PHYSICS 211B (1 Point)****Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 3**

Covers analytical techniques associated with Stage II Physics courses, relating appropriate mathematical concepts to various physical systems and including laboratory work. Provides a minimal preparation in mathematical techniques for Stage III Physics courses. Topics include: oscillations and waves, numerical and analytical solution of differential equations describing physical systems, vector calculus, description of physical systems by sets of linear equations.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 210 will be assumed*

*Restriction: MATHS 208, 230, 250, 253, 260*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 211 A and B*

**PHYSICS 213 (2 Points)****The Geophysical Environment**

An understanding of the atmospheric, oceanic and solid earth environment in terms of physical principles. Topics include: the shape of the Earth, gravitational variations, seismic waves, global heat balance and atmospheric dynamics, ocean waves and tides, and general properties of fluids applied to the environment.

*No formal prerequisite but an understanding of Stage I level Physics and Mathematics will be assumed.*

**PHYSICS 219A (1 Point)****PHYSICS 219B (1 Point)****Computer Electronics**

Provides an introduction to digital computer hardware, interfacing and communication systems, and how these elements interact with, and are controlled by software. Lectures will be supplemented by laboratory experiments designed to illustrate the principles discussed.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in COMPSCI 101 and PHYSICS 150 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: PHYSICS 243, 453.246 and 453.294*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 219 A and B*

**PHYSICS 220 (2 Points)****Electromagnetism and Thermal Physics**

Develops the principles of electric and magnetic field phenomena and magnetism and introduces the mathematical formalisms used. It covers the electrical and magnetic properties of materials. It also provides an introduction to the laws of thermodynamics and their application to the properties of materials and technology.

*No formal prerequisite but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111, 120 and 150 will be assumed.*

**PHYSICS 230 (2 Points)****Materials and Waves**

Classical mechanics including combined rotational and translational motion and rotating reference frames. The properties of materials including fluid statics and dynamics, and elasticity. Travelling and standing waves on a string; wave propagation in fluids and solids.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111 and 120 will be assumed.*

**PHYSICS 240 (2 Points)****Electronics and Optics**

Covers AC circuit theory with phasors and complex operators, semiconductor devices treated as circuit elements and active and passive circuit analysis. The principles of classical and modern optics are developed, including advanced geometrical optics, polarization, interference and diffraction.

*No formal prerequisite but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111, 120 and 150 will be assumed. Restriction: PHYSICS 242 and 453.241*

**PHYSICS 242 (2 Points)****Electronic Systems**

A selection of topics on electric circuit theory, semiconductor devices, optical systems and detectors, signal processing, and digital communication.

*No formal prerequisite but an understanding of the material in MATHS 108 and PHYSICS 150 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: PHYSICS 240 and 453.241, 453.246*

**PHYSICS 243 (2 Points)****Digital Electronics and Instrumentation**

This is an introduction to the principles of digital logic, circuit design, and measurement techniques. Digital logic elements, instrumentation, and their practical uses with various physical transducers are presented.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in MATHS 108 and PHYSICS 150 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: PHYSICS 219, 453.246 and 453.294*

**PHYSICS 250 (2 Points)****Quantum Physics**

An introduction to quantum behaviour and microscopic physics. The Schrödinger equation is used to treat one-dimensional bound systems and quantum tunnelling and also the three-dimensional hydrogen atom, which is extended to include a first treatment of angular momentum and spin. Further topics comprise the periodic table, molecules, solids, nuclei and particles.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111, 120 and 150 will be assumed.*

**PHYSICS 270 (2 Points)****Astrophysics**

Techniques of optical and radio astronomy; determination for the solar system and stars of such properties as distance, radius and mass; the Hertzsprung-Russell diagram; equations of stellar structure, energy production and transport; introduction to stellar evolution, galactic structure and cosmology.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 120 or 150 or 160, and MATHS 152 or PHYSICS 111 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: 453.370*

**Stage III**

*Note: For the purposes of recommended preparation for Stage III Physics courses: PHYSICS 211 is equivalent to the combination MATHS 253 and 260; MATHS 208 and 253 are equivalent; and MATHS 260 and 267 are equivalent.*

**PHYSICS 315A (1 Point)****PHYSICS 315B (1 Point)****Classical and Statistical Physics**

Statistical physics topics emphasize the description of macroscopic properties using microscopic models and include: temperature, the partition function and connections with classical thermodynamics, paramagnetic solids, lattice vibrations, indistinguishable particles, classical and quantum gases. Classical mechanics topics include: vector mechanics, coordinate transformations, rotating frames, angular momentum, rigid body dynamics, variational formulation, constraints, Lagrange equations, Hamiltonian mechanics and relationships with quantum mechanics.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 220 and 230 will be assumed. Restriction: PHYSICS 310*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 315 A and B*

**PHYSICS 325 (2 Points)****Electromagnetism and Optics**

A systematic development of Maxwell's theory of electromagnetism and its applications to optics. Topics include: electrostatics, dielectrics, polarization, charge conservation, magnetostatics, scalar and vector potentials, magnetic materials, Maxwell's equations, the wave equation. Propagation of electromagnetic waves in vacuum, dielectrics, conducting media and waveguides. Energy and momentum in electromagnetic waves, interaction of light with atoms, origin of the refractive index.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 220 and 240 will be assumed. Restriction: PHYSICS 320*

**PHYSICS 326 (2 Points)****Laser Physics and Electronics**

Lasers: electron oscillator model, rate equation model, Einstein coefficients, Fabry Perot etalons and resonators, optimum output coupling, reflection at a dielectric surface, waveguide theory, thin films, matrix techniques for optical elements, Gaussian beams and applications. Electronics: characteristics and modelling of electronic devices, ac and dc operating parameters, differential amplifiers, photo diodes, LED's and laser diodes.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 220 and 240 will be assumed. Concurrent enrolment in one of PHYSICS 390-396 is recommended.*

*Restriction: PHYSICS 321*

**PHYSICS 340 (2 Points)****Circuits, Systems and Signals**

Describes the physical principles involved in the operation of electronic circuits and computer algorithms for processing information, and is essential for experimental physicists. Topics include: electronic circuits as linear systems, analytical and numerical network analysis, steady-state (AC) and transient response of networks, stability of systems, feedback and oscillation, transmission lines, introduction to digital signal processing concepts and techniques.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211 and 240 will be assumed. Concurrent enrolment in one of PHYSICS 390-396 is recommended.*

**PHYSICS 350A (1 Point)****PHYSICS 350B (1 Point)****Quantum Mechanics and Atomic Physics**

Non-relativistic quantum mechanics will be developed using the three-dimensional Schrödinger equation, and will be applied particularly to the physics of atoms and molecules. The interaction of like particles and the quantisation of angular momentum will be studied.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111, 210, 211 and 250 will be assumed.*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 350 A and B*

**PHYSICS 355 (2 Points)****Condensed Matter and Sub-atomic Physics**

An introduction to the quantum and statistical mechanical foundation of modern studies in condensed matter and sub-atomic physics. Topics include: quasiparticles, the band theory of electronic structure, semiconductors, magnetism, superconductivity, the fundamental particles and their interactions within the standard model, the systematic behaviour of nuclei, fission and fusion.

*No formal prerequisite, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211 and 250 will be assumed. Concurrent enrolment in one of PHYSICS 390-396 is recommended.*

*Restriction: PHYSICS 351*

**PHYSICS 390 (2 Points)****Experimental Physics 1**

Students may select experiments from a wide spectrum of physics that are appropriate to the lecture courses being taken from PHYSICS 315-355.

*No formal prerequisite, but concurrent enrolment in one or more of Physics 315-355 is recommended.*

**PHYSICS 391 (2 Points)****Experimental Physics 2**

Experimental work as for PHYSICS 390.

*No formal prerequisite, but concurrent enrolment in one or more of PHYSICS 315-355 is recommended.*

**PHYSICS 395 (1 Point)****Experimental Physics 3**

A limited programme of experimental work, otherwise as specified in the prescription for PHYSICS 390.

*No formal prerequisite, but concurrent enrolment in one or more of PHYSICS 315-355 is recommended.*

**PHYSICS 396 (1 Point)****Experimental Physics 4**

A limited programme of experimental work, otherwise as specified in the prescription for PHYSICS 390.

*No formal prerequisite, but concurrent enrolment in one or more of PHYSICS 315-355 is recommended.*

**Diploma Courses****PHYSICS 690A (2 Points)****PHYSICS 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Physics)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 690 A and B*

**PHYSICS 691A (2 Points)****PHYSICS 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Physics)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses****PHYSICS 701 (2 Points)****Linear Systems**

Many physical situations are treated by making linear approximations to actual behaviour and analysing the resulting systems. Topics include: generalized functions, Green's function, convolution, sampling theory, Fourier, Laplace and Hilbert transforms, with applications to statistics, optics, solution of differential equations, filtering and digital signal processing.

**PHYSICS 703 (2 Points)****Quantum Mechanics**

Includes a review of the general formalism of quantum theory, making use of: Dirac notation, scattering theory, time-dependent perturbation theory, relativistic quantum mechanics and spin, many-body quantum mechanics, rotations and other symmetry operations, quantum theory of radiation and introductory quantum field theory. Applications are taken from atomic, nuclear and particle physics.

**PHYSICS 705 (2 Points)****Advanced Electromagnetism and Special Relativity**

An introduction to tensors, development of the Special Theory of Relativity including kinematics, dynamics, properties of waves and a covariant formulation of electrodynamics. Charges, currents and fields in different inertial frames, electromagnetic wave propagation in media and radiation from moving charges.

**PHYSICS 706 (2 Points)****Quantum Field Theory**

Follows on from PHYSICS 703 Quantum Mechanics. The first part treats relativistic generalizations of the Schrödinger equation and many-particle quantum mechanics. The second part is an introduction to quantum electrodynamics, using Feynman diagram techniques. Applications are made to atomic, condensed matter and particle physics.

**PHYSICS 707 (2 Points)****Inverse Problems**

Inverse problems involve making inferences about physical systems from experimental measurements. Topics include: Bayes' theorem, prior and posterior probabilities, inference, multivariate Gaussian processes, model fitting, parameter estimation in

noise, matched filters, maximum likelihood techniques, the linear inverse problem, regularization, the Kalman filter and an introduction to multidimensional optimization.

**PHYSICS 708 (2 Points)**  
**Statistical Mechanics and Stochastic Processes**

Lectures on phase transitions and critical phenomena, stochastic methods, master equations, Fokker-Planck equations and stochastic differential equations.

**PHYSICS 726 (2 Points)**  
**Optoelectronics**

Discusses selected topics in laser physics including a discussion of resonator theory and laser beam diagnostics, together with mode-locked lasers, frequency stabilized lasers, non-linear optics and interferometry.

**PHYSICS 727 (2 Points)**  
**Optoelectronics and Communications**

Topics covered include: optical data storage systems, scanners and printers, propagation in optical waveguides, non-linear effects in optical fibres, amplifiers, semiconductor laser sources, LEDs and the detection of optical radiation, optical communication systems architecture and an introduction to network topology.

**PHYSICS 731 (2 Points)**  
**Wave Propagation**

A general treatment of wave propagation including rays, normal modes and reflection coefficients, with applications principally to underwater acoustics, seismology and electromagnetic waves.

**PHYSICS 732 (2 Points)**  
**Fluid Mechanics and Applications**

Principles and phenomena of fluid dynamics, including the Navier-Stokes equations, viscous flow and non-viscous flow, with applications in areas including geophysics, medical physics and soft materials.

**PHYSICS 750 (2 Points)**  
**Nuclear Physics**

Topics covered may include: the general properties of nuclei as described by the Liquid Drop and Fermi Gas and Shell models; properties of beta decay, and recent developments in neutrino mass theory and experiments; relativistic nuclear collisions, and recent theory and experiments of highly compressed nuclear matter leading to the quark-gluon plasma.

**PHYSICS 754 (2 Points)**  
**Condensed Matter Physics**

Modern aspects of condensed matter physics including liquids, glasses, amorphous solids, soft matter and low dimensional systems.

**PHYSICS 755 (2 Points)**  
**Particle Physics**

An introduction to some ideas in particle physics: the particles and their interactions, QED and field theory, gauge invariance (consequences, its role in particle physics), electroweak interaction (left-handed neutrinos, W and Z, bosons, neutrino mass) and strong interaction (quark model, problems, colour, confinement and QCD compared with QED).

**PHYSICS 760 (2 Points)**  
**Quantum Optics**

Lectures in light, non-classical, squeezed and anti-bunched light, quantum theory of the interaction of light with atoms, manipulations of atoms by light.

**PHYSICS 791 (2 Points)**  
**Selected Topics 1**

As for PHYSICS 792, the choice of subject will depend on the availability of a suitable visiting lecturer or on the needs of particular students.

**PHYSICS 792 (2 Points)**  
**Selected Topics 2**

**PHYSICS 796A (7 Points)**  
**PHYSICS 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Physics**

To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 796 A and B

**Physiology**

Prescriptions for Physiology are listed under Medical and Health Sciences starting at PHYSIOL.

**Polymers and Coatings Science**

**Diploma Courses**

**POLYMER 692A (3 Points)**  
**POLYMER 692B (3 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Polymers and Coatings Science)**

To complete this course students must enrol in POLYMER 692 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**POLYMER 701 (2 Points)**  
**Polymer Science**

Polymer structures, polymerization processes, polymer solutions and polymer characterization. Bulk properties of thermoplastic polymers, network polymers and elastomers.

Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director

**POLYMER 702 (2 Points)**  
**Synthetic Resin Technology**

The chemistry of synthetic resins used in adhesive, ink and surface coatings applications. The aim is to provide the student with the knowledge to formulate resins for specific applications.

Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director

**POLYMER 711 (2 Points)**  
**Interfacial Science and Coatings Technology**

Principles of surface and interfacial science and modification of surfaces by coatings. Coatings manufacture and related topics.

Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director

**POLYMER 796A (7 Points)**  
**POLYMER 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Polymers and Coatings Science**

Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director

To complete this course students must enrol in POLYMER 796 A and B

**Psychology**

**Stage I**

**PSYCH 108 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Psychology Part 1**

Topics covered may include: developmental and social psychology including group behaviour, the measurement of mental abilities, intelligence, models of personality, clinical and health psychology, methods of therapeutic intervention, and the psychological similarities and differences between cultures. A laboratory component in which students are required to participate as subjects forms part of the course.

*Restriction: PSYCH 128, 461.118*

**PSYCH 109 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Psychology Part 2**

Topics covered may include: the nature of sensory and perceptual processes, the cause of perceptual illusions, the structure and function of the human brain, approaches to animal and human learning, models of human language and memory, and the design of psychological experiments. A laboratory component, in which students are required to participate as subjects, forms part of the course.

*Restriction: PSYCH 129*

---

**Stage II**

**PSYCH 201 (2 Points)**  
**Perception and Cognition**

An introduction to a variety of topics in human experimental psychology. Topics covered may include: perceptual processes, attention, memory, mental imagery, language development, theory of mind, problem solving and decision making. Participation in the laboratory component of this course is compulsory.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage I Psychology*

*Restriction: PSYCH 261, 461.220*

**PSYCH 202 (2 Points)**  
**Biopsychology**

Provides a basic introduction to the structure and function of the brain, neuropsychology, and genetic and hormonal influences on behaviour. This course includes a compulsory laboratory component.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage I Psychology or BIOSCI 101 or 103*

*Restriction: 461.230*

**PSYCH 203 (2 Points)**  
**Learning and Behaviour**

A consideration of the environmental factors that control and modify animal (including human) behaviour. Generally, an experimental laboratory approach is taken, and quantitative theories are stressed. Topics include: classical and operant conditioning, theories of reinforcement, the stimulus control of operant behaviour, behavioural analyses of problem solving, concept learning and language, choice, self control, remembering and experimental design.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage I Psychology or BIOSCI 101 or 103*

*Restriction: 461.250*

**PSYCH 204 (2 Points)**  
**Social Psychology**

Focuses on humans as social beings. Covers topics such as social cognition, attitudes, group processes, interpersonal relationships and language communication, and introduces the area of 'critical' social psychology.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage I Psychology*

*Restriction: PSYCH 263, 461.240*

**PSYCH 206 (2 Points)**

**Abnormal Psychology**

The major theories and paradigms concerned with abnormal behaviour are presented in their historical context and by discussing the major contributors to their development. Mental health problems commonly encountered by clinical psychologists are defined and described. The ways the various theories and paradigms are employed to assist understanding of causation will be the major focus of the course. Particular attention will be given to the Aotearoa New Zealand context.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage I Psychology*

*Restriction: 461.205*

**PSYCH 262 (2 Points)**

**Psychological Methods**

A broadly-based introductory treatment of methodologies widely used in both experimental and applied psychological research. Topics include: non-experimental and experimental design, data analysis, single-subject techniques, observational techniques, and qualitative methods.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage I Psychology*

**PSYCH 263 (2 Points)**

**Social and Organizational Psychology**

Provides a broad introduction to the social psychology of group and interpersonal behaviour and some of its applications to educational health, and work contexts. Topics include: the self, interpersonal relationships, gender, learned helplessness, motivation, social influence, groups and organizations, leadership, performance and productivity, communication in groups and other topics in applied social psychology.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage I Psychology*

*Restriction: PSYCH 204 and 461.240*

---

**Stage III**

**PSYCH 301 (2 Points)**

**Psychology of Individual Differences**

A study of individual differences and their measurement, and the purpose, construction, use and implications of psychometric tests. Issues in personality measurement will be covered, and the cognitive assessment of special conditions like head injury and epilepsy. Also includes practical training in the use and interpretation of psychometric tests.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 303 (2 Points)**

**Cognitive Science**

Provides an introduction to cognitive science and cognitive neuroscience. Topics covered include: visual and auditory perception, attention, memory, thinking and problem-solving. Participation in the laboratory component of this course is compulsory.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 305 (2 Points)**

**Human Neuroscience**

Covers material relating to the neural basis of cognitive processes, including perception, attention, memory and language. Students will be introduced to different methods of inferring mind-brain relations in normal and neurologically-impaired individuals, and different ways of conceptualizing

mind-brain relations, such as connectionism and modularism. This course includes a non-compulsory laboratory component.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics, or 570.201 or PHYSIOL 220

**PSYCH 306A** (1 Point)  
**PSYCH 306B** (1 Point)

#### Research Methods in Psychology

Deals with principles and practices relevant to psychological research, including philosophy of science, research ethics, research design, measurement of dependent variables, describing and analysing data, and interpreting results. Students take a common core of lectures, and then choose amongst more specialized areas.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 306 A and B

**PSYCH 307** (2 Points)  
**Sensation and Perception**

Important issues in the psychology of vision, hearing and taste will be discussed with emphasis on the acquisition of information through the senses and the processing and interpretation that follows. Topics may include: applied practices in sensory evaluation, the importance of illusions in perception, relevant research-based methods and the mechanisms underlying various perceptual phenomena. Participation in the laboratory component of this course is compulsory.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

**PSYCH 308A** (1 Point)  
**PSYCH 308B** (1 Point)

#### Research Topic

A course of research supervised by a staff member and written up as a course for publication instead of a final examination. A list of available supervisors and topics is published each year in the *Psychology Department Undergraduate Handbook*.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

*Corequisite:* 8 points in Stage III Psychology plus Head of Department approval

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 308 A and B

**PSYCH 309** (2 Points)  
**Learning**

A discussion of how behaviour is controlled and modified by discriminative stimuli and by consequential reinforcers and punishers. The emphasis is on laboratory research with animals, but with some human data also considered. Topics include: choice behaviour, punishment, avoidance, psychophysics, memory, and cognition.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics or 6 points at Stage II in Biological Sciences

*Restriction:* PSYCH 362

**PSYCH 310** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Clinical Psychology**

Describes and evaluates psychological approaches to the assessment and treatment of those mental health problems, in adults and children, most commonly encountered by clinical psychologists. Consideration is given to work in mental health,

corrections, child protection and neuropsychology rehabilitation. Issues relevant to Maori mental health, gender, cross-cultural work and prevention are included.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points at Stage II in Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

*Restriction:* 461.315

**PSYCH 311** (2 Points)  
**Social and Community Psychology**

Focuses on people as social beings. Firstly, issues in social and collective behaviour will include: aggression and violence, crowd dynamics, social discontent and revolution, intergroup conflict and prejudice and the impact of culture on social behaviour. Secondly, the contribution of social context to emotions and body image, the creation of identity including gender and ethnic identity, social isolation and the philosophy and practice of community psychology will be examined. And third, social motivation and emotion will also be covered.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

**PSYCH 312** (2 Points)  
**Organizational Psychology**

Psychological aspects of organizations. The focus is on critical evaluation of theoretical approaches, their value for the international world of work, and their application in organizations. Topics covered are work motivation, work-related attitudes, turnover and absenteeism, stress, climate and culture, groups, leadership and organizational development.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 211 or 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

**PSYCH 314** (2 Points)  
**Ergonomics**

Also known as 'human factors' or 'engineering psychology', ergonomics is the multidisciplinary field concerned with improving human well-being and productivity at work by optimizing person-machine-environment systems. A laboratory component in which students are required to participate as subjects may form a compulsory part of this course.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

**PSYCH 316** (2 Points)  
**Cognitive Development in Childhood**

Addresses theoretical and applied issues in children's cognitive development. Different domains of development will be explored, and will include: language, reading acquisition, numeracy, and metabilities. The practical relevance of theories to deal with problems of atypical development, such as giftedness, dyslexia, and autism, will also be discussed.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

**PSYCH 317** (2 Points)  
**Evolution, Behaviour and Cognition**

Do other animals have language? Do they have culture? Can human behaviour be explained in evolutionary terms? This course addresses these questions and the methods that can be used to answer them.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics or 6 points at Stage II in Biological Science

Course Descriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

**PSYCH 318 (2 Points)****Cultural Psychology**

The discipline of cultural psychology looks at the ways in which the psyche and culture, subject and object, and person and world make up each other. The course examines cultural similarities and differences in mind, self, emotion, and morality with special reference to the predominant cultures represented in the society of Aotearoa New Zealand. *Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics or MAORI 230*

**PSYCH 319 (2 Points)****Psychology, Discourse and Gender**

An introduction to feminist and critical psychologies, in the context of social constructionist and postmodern moves in and around psychology. Research, theory and practices will be discussed, along with specific topics such as sexuality, gendered bodies and violence.

**PSYCH 320 (2 Points)****Special Topic****PSYCH 321 (2 Points)****Special Topic****PSYCH 361 (2 Points)****Applied Cognitive Psychology**

This course is designed to extend theoretical conceptions and models in cognitive psychology to a variety of applied settings, and to assess the extent to which such theoretical accounts can be applied. It will deal primarily with psychological analyses and appraisals of problems in perception, memory, attention, thinking, and language, as they are evident in everyday human activity.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 362 (2 Points)****Learning and Memory**

A treatment of how behaviour is controlled by prior and subsequent events, drawing on both animal and human experimental research. Topics include: quantitative models of behaviour, signal detection, stimulus control, theories of learning, memory, and behaviour modification.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

*Restriction: PSYCH 309*

**PSYCH 363 (2 Points)****Social Behaviour**

Examines issues and topics in the social psychological study of interpersonal, group and collective behaviour. Topics include: aggression and violence, interpersonal attraction, prejudice, intergroup behaviour, social conflict, crowd behaviour, culture and social behaviour, and other specialized topics.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 364 (2 Points)****Health Psychology**

An introduction to the study of links between psychological processes and health/illness. The course discusses a number of psychological issues relating to serious illnesses (cancers, coronary heart disease etc) and links to other aspects of physical well-being (eg, exercise, diet). Consideration will be given both to the theoretical models which have

been developed within health psychology and to the types of methodology used in their investigation.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

---

**Diploma Courses****PSYCH 650A (3 Points)****PSYCH 650B (3 Points)****Practicum**

This includes a practical component of up to 1,500 hours of supervised work in an approved applied psychology setting, with an emphasis on the application of research principles and designs. Evaluation is by internal assessment and assessment by field supervisors.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 650 A and B*

**PSYCH 690A (2 Points)****PSYCH 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation in Psychology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 690 A and B*

**PSYCH 691A (2 Points)****PSYCH 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation in Psychology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 691 A and B*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses****PSYCH 701A (2 Points)****PSYCH 701B (2 Points)****Health Psychology Assessment, Interventions and Applications**

The principles of psychological assessment in general, as well as areas specific to health psychology such as the assessment of quality of life and the development of specific assessment tools for use in health settings. The course covers common quantitative and qualitative research designs used in health psychology research. It reviews the application of health psychology to areas such as cardiac rehabilitation and the promotion of health-related behaviours such as health screening, diet and exercise.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 701 A and B*

**PSYCH 702A (2 Points)****PSYCH 702B (2 Points)****Organizational Psychology**

Introduces the basic concepts and methods of organizational psychology and investigates current research and practice in selected topics, such as analysis of work, performance assessment, personnel selection, employee motivation, job satisfaction, occupational stress, leadership and teamwork. Includes lectures, seminars and discussions with academic staff and industry practitioners, practical exercises and site visits. A laboratory component in which students are required to participate as subjects may form a compulsory part of the course.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 702 A and B*

**PSYCH 704A (2 Points)****PSYCH 704B (2 Points)****Sensation and Perception**

This course will discuss conceptual issues of recent work in perception and evaluate the methodological issues involved. Although theoretical issues will be emphasized, the practical project and technical aspects of perception research will be involved.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 704 A and B

**PSYCH 705 (2 Points)**  
**Applied Decision Assessment**

Focuses on the application of a prominent method, called ROC analysis, that can be used to effectively assess the degree of success of many decision-making technologies, for example: clinical diagnosis, medical imaging, aptitude testing, product assessment, polygraph lie detection, or the natural functioning of sensory systems.

Restriction: 461.730

**PSYCH 706 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Psychology: Aetiology and Assessment**

This course deals with the various theories about the causes of a range of mental health problems, and the research issues relating to those theories. In addition, some of the ways in which clinical psychologists assess clients' issues/difficulties, and their social/cultural contexts, are discussed.

**PSYCH 707 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Psychology in Forensic and Correctional Settings**

Covers psychological theories of crime and violence, empirical research relevant to the assessment and treatment of offenders, with particular emphasis on violent, sexual and mentally-disordered offenders, and the range of roles for clinical psychologists in forensic and correctional settings such as prisons, forensic psychiatric hospitals, and the courts.

**PSYCH 708A (2 Points)**

**PSYCH 708B (2 Points)**

**Clinical Neuropsychology**

Consists of: an introduction to neuroanatomy and neuropathology and general methodology, seminars on the major areas of neuropsychological dysfunction, introduction to community-used test materials and theoretical issues of neuropsychological assessment, neuropsychological dysfunction, individual assessment and individual case studies.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 708 A and B

**PSYCH 709A (2 Points)**

**PSYCH 709B (2 Points)**

**Clinical Psychology: Assessment and Formulation**

Focuses on assessment and formulation as practised by clinical psychologists. Topics include: diagnostic practices using DSM, the clinical interview, psychometric assessment, and behavioural observation. Emphasis is placed on how the psychologist's practice is informed by psychological models about disorders, a psycho-social perspective in relation to gender, culture, and economic resources, and the psychologist's personal processes.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 709 A and B

**PSYCH 711A (2 Points)**

**PSYCH 711B (2 Points)**

**Advanced Operant Behaviour**

A seminar course on advanced treatments of

learning and behaviour including both reinforcement and stimulus control. A research-oriented approach is stressed in both pure and applied areas and in the technological application of basic principles in educational and clinical procedures.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 711 A and B

**PSYCH 713A (1 Point)**

**PSYCH 713B (1 Point)**

**Advanced Child Psychology**

This course is seminar-based involving critical evaluation of research and theory in child psychology. Set readings will be discussed on topics in areas such as: early cognitive development, language and reading development, attachment and temperament, self-regulation, social competence, behavioural problems and parenting.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 713 A and B

**PSYCH 714 (2 Points)**

**Basic Neuroscience**

An advanced seminar on brain organization and function. Topics include: neuronal signalling, principles of cerebral organization, brain development, mechanisms of plasticity, cerebral rhythms, and high-level neuronal integration. Emphasis will be placed on current developments relevant to the understanding of human psychological processes.

Restriction: 461.724

**PSYCH 716 (2 Points)**

**Social Psychology**

Key empirical and theoretical areas in modern social psychology form the basis of this seminar-based course. Topics will include: social cognition, attitudes, group processes, intergroup relations, and close personal relationships. Other topics may be introduced after class consultation.

Restriction: 461.712

**PSYCH 717 (2 Points)**

**Community Psychology**

This course is about the application of psychological knowledge and research skills to issues faced by communities. Students will design an intervention and evaluation relevant to a community issue. Theoretical approaches to working in community settings and the practical challenges involved will be discussed.

Restriction: 461.728

**PSYCH 720A (2 Points)**

**PSYCH 720B (2 Points)**

**Research Topic in Psychology**

A research topic undertaken under the direct supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation, instead of a final examination paper. A list of staff available for supervision, and their areas of interest and expertise, is published each year in the *Psychology Department Postgraduate Handbook*.

Restriction: 461.728

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 720 A and B

**PSYCH 721 (2 Points)**

**Consciousness and Cognition**

Discusses recent research on consciousness from the perspective of cognitive neuroscience. Topics

covered may include: implicit learning, implicit memory, blindsight, the split-brain syndrome, amnesia and hemineglect.

*Restriction: 461.724*

**PSYCH 725 (2 Points)**  
**Evolutionary Psychology**

Covers evolutionary concepts as they apply to psychological issues. Specific topics may include: the evolution of tool use, language, cerebral asymmetry, theory of mind, culture and the sociobiology/evolutionary psychology debates.

**PSYCH 731 (2 Points)**  
**Group Processes and Social Behaviour**

Focuses on the application of social psychological knowledge and theory to the understanding of broad social and cultural processes and phenomena, such as violence, prejudice, group behaviour and conflict, intergroup dynamics, collective behaviour, social beliefs, cultural differentiation and contact.

*Restriction: 461.728*

**PSYCH 732 (4 Points)**  
**Advanced Cultural Psychology**

Current issues where the cultural component has significant bearing on how people perceive themselves and others in various social contexts. General topics will include the following: culture and imperialism, culture and identity, culture and conflict, and culture and language.

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 318*

**PSYCH 737 (2 Points)**  
**Human Factors 1**

Human factors, otherwise known as 'ergonomics' or 'engineering psychology', is the multidisciplinary study of human-machine environment systems. Using lectures, seminars, practical projects, and field studies, this course reviews basic concepts and methods, identifies key factors, and examines current research in the field. A laboratory component in which students are required to participate as subjects may form a compulsory part of the course.

*Restriction: 461.726*

**PSYCH 738 (2 Points)**  
**Human Factors 2**

A continuing investigation of current research in selected topics in general and organizational ergonomics, such as safety management, fatigue, stress, navigation in real and virtual environments, decision making and human-computer interactions. A laboratory component in which students are required to participate as subjects may form a compulsory part of the course.

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 737*

*Restriction: 461.726*

**PSYCH 739 (2 Points)**  
**Reading Acquisition**

Reading is a developmental milestone. How children learn to read, why they fail, and the cognitive processes underlying reading are the main issues addressed in this course. Adult models of reading and acquired dyslexia will also be considered, as they relate to developmental models.

**PSYCH 740 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**PSYCH 743 (2 Points)**  
**Critical Qualitative Research**

An in-depth focus on critical and discursive approaches to psychological research will be provided in this seminar-based course. Content will include examination of key theoretical underpinnings of critical qualitative research, as well as the practical application of such approaches.

**PSYCH 744 (2 Points)**  
**Experimental Design and Quantitative Methods for Psychology**

Covers applications of the general linear model to research design and analysis. Topics include: univariate techniques (analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, regression) and multivariate techniques (multivariate analysis of variance, discriminant analysis, multivariate regression, and factor analysis).

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 306 or consent of Department*

**PSYCH 745 (2 Points)**  
**The Psychology of Death and Dying**

Introduction to psychological aspects of death and dying. There will be a brief introduction to psychological models and demography. Death rituals and culture, communication, timeliness of death, palliative care and end of life decision making will also be discussed.

*Restriction: PSYCH 734*

**PSYCH 746 (2 Points)**  
**Perception, Cognition, Action**

Seminar-based introduction to theories and models linking (human, animal and machine) perception, cognition and action, with emphasis on competing approaches to perceptual-motor control and learning, using evidence from classic and contemporary research in experimental psychology and cognitive neuroscience.

*Restriction: PSYCH 735*

**PSYCH 750A (2 Points)**  
**PSYCH 750B (2 Points)**

**Applied Behaviour Analysis: Methods**

A study of the principles and issues involved with the observation, measurement, and functional analysis of an individual human or animal's behaviour in some applied setting. Particular emphasis will be placed on the rationale behind single-subject research designs, and their application to the validation of interventions aimed at modifying behaviour.

*Restriction: PSYCH 703*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 750 A and B*

**PSYCH 751A (2 Points)**  
**PSYCH 751B (2 Points)**

**Applied Behaviour Analysis: Behaviour Modification**

A study of the techniques and issues involved with modifying an individual human or animal's behaviour in some applied setting. Appropriate and effective applications of scientific principles of learning will be taught, as will pertinent topics researched in the Experimental Analysis of Behaviour. Topics will include the application of research into associative learning, reinforcement, punishment, extinction, avoidance, stimulus control and choice.

*Restriction: PSYCH 703*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 751 A and B*

**PSYCH 752A** (2 Points)

**PSYCH 752B** (2 Points)

**Developmental Disorders and Learning Disabilities**

A study of the behavioural effects, aetiologies and therapeutic interventions proposed for those disorders that are typically diagnosed during a person's childhood and involve some reduced ability to learn. Examples will include, but not be limited to, autistic spectrum disorders, Down's syndrome, foetal-alcohol syndrome and attention-deficit-hyperactivity disorder.

*Restriction: 32.422*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 752 A and B*

**PSYCH 753A** (2 Points)

**PSYCH 753B** (2 Points)

**Professional Practice in Applied Behaviour Analysis**

Advanced education and training in applied behaviour analysis (ABA) in preparation for a professional career. Topics will include ethical, professional and practical issues confronting behaviour analysts in employment; recent research in ABA and other sciences with respect to clinical, educational and other populations with whom behaviour analysts typically work.

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 750 and 751*

*Corequisite: PSYCH 650*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 753 A and B*

**PSYCH 755** (2 Points)

**Gender, Power and Sexuality**

This seminar-based course will allow students to explore a broad range of topics such as: sexual coercion, prostitution, rape, pornography, safer sex, lesbian and gay sexuality, heterosexuality, bisexuality, sexology, sex therapy, intersex, transgender, sexuality and culture. The emphasis will be on looking at questions from the perspective of theoretical approaches such as Foucault's work on sexuality and feminist theories.

**PSYCH 771A** (3 Points)

**PSYCH 771B** (3 Points)

**Clinical Practice 1 and Professional Issues**

Consists of two parts: First, psychological assessment and therapy for diverse clinical populations, including adult, and child and family. Cognitive behaviour therapy and family therapy are central, but other models are included. Consideration of psychotherapy research and practical exercises are incorporated. Secondly, ethics, bicultural and cross-cultural practice, and other professional issues relevant to the practice of clinical psychology are covered. Evaluation is by internal assessment.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 771A and B*

**PSYCH 772A** (4 Points)

**PSYCH 772B** (4 Points)

**Clinical Practice 2**

Advanced psychological assessment and therapy for diverse clinical populations, including adult, and child and family. Cognitive behaviour therapy, narrative therapy, psychodynamic therapy, and the trauma model are emphasized. Includes two, 200 hour placements, one in an adult mental health setting and one in a child and family mental health

setting. Evaluation is by internal assessment, including assessment by field supervisors.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 772 A and B*

**PSYCH 773A** (7 Points)

**PSYCH 773B** (7 Points)

**Clinical Internship**

Includes a practical component of supervised clinical work of not less than 1500 hours in an approved health setting. Emphasis is placed on the application of research principles and designs in routing clinical practice. A university-based seminar series that covers topics relevant to advanced, intern-level practice is included. Evaluation is by internal assessment, and assessment by field supervisors.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 773A and B*

**PSYCH 789A** (2 Points)

**PSYCH 789B** (2 Points)

**Honours Dissertation in Psychology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 789 A and B*

**PSYCH 796A** (7 Points)

**PSYCH 796B** (7 Points)

**Master's Thesis in Psychology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 796 A and B*

---

**Doctoral Level**

**PSYCH 801** (3 Points)

**Scientist-practitioner Model 1**

Research based psychological assessment and therapy skills for diverse clinical populations, including adult, child and family. Cognitive-behaviour therapy and family therapy are central, but other models are included. Advanced clinical research design, ethics, bicultural and cross-cultural practice, supervision practice, and other professional issues relevant to the practice of clinical psychology are covered. Evaluation is by internal assessment. Includes one 200-hour placement in either an adult or a child and family setting. Evaluation is by internal assessment, including assessment by field supervisors.

*Restriction: PSYCH 811. 812*

**PSYCH 802** (4 Points)

**Scientist-practitioner Model 2**

Advanced psychological assessment and therapy skills for diverse clinical populations, including adult, and child and family. Cognitive-behaviour therapy, family therapy, narrative therapy, psychodynamic therapy, and the trauma model are emphasized. Includes two 200-hour placements, in either an adult setting or child and family setting. One of these may, depending on staff availability, be in a specialist setting. Options may include: clinical neuropsychology, forensic psychology, assessment and psychological treatment of psychoses, child and adolescent clinical psychology, drug and alcohol addiction, and others. Evaluation is by internal assessment, including assessment by field supervisors.

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 801*

*Restriction: PSYCH 813. 814*

Course Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 267. For course availability refer to page 604.

**PSYCH 803 (6 Points)****Internship**

This includes a practical component of supervised clinical work of not less than 1,500 hours in an approved setting. Emphasis is placed on the application of research principles and designs in routine psychological clinical practice. A university-based seminar course that covers topics relevant to advanced, intern-level practice is included. Evaluation is by internal assessment, and assessment by field supervisors.

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 801 and 802*

*Restriction: PSYCH 821*

**PSYCH 897 (11 Points)****Portfolio of Clinical Research**

Five original research projects demonstrating appropriate use of the scientist-practitioner model (single case design, programme evaluation or group research may be included). One project will be conducted within each of the three placements associated with the courses PSYCH 801 and 802, and two within the Internship, PSYCH 803. At least one project should be related to research with an adult population, and at least one with a child and family population. The Portfolio will be examined by two internal academic psychologists and assessed by the two external Thesis examiners.

*Restriction: PSYCH 894, 895*

**PSYCH 899 (18 Points)****Thesis**

An original research dissertation completed over the three years of the degree (8 points in year 1, 6 points in year 2, and 4 points in year 3). The research may be basic or applied, but must be relevant to some area of clinical psychology and represent a significant contribution to knowledge in the field.

*Restriction: PSYCH 896*

**Science: General****Stage I****SCIGEN 100 (2 Points)****Introductory Science for Teaching**

This course is intended to provide an introduction to the nature and practice of physics, chemistry, biology and geology together with a working knowledge of some of the basic principles. Some laboratory experiences will be included. Available only to BEd(Tchg) students who enrolled under regulations prior to 1 January 2003.

**SCIGEN 101 (2 Points)****Science Communication**

Focuses students' skills on communicating science effectively using oral, written, visual and electronic communication. Course modules give the student an understanding of the nature and methods of both science and communication, types of scientific audiences and how to analyse them, and ways of managing and presenting statistical data. Students also gain practical experience in scientific writing, scientific poster design and seminar presentation.

**Stage II****SCIGEN 201 (2 Points)****Managing Science and Technology**

An interdisciplinary examination of issues relating

to the management of science and technology. At a policy level, topics include the international context for science and technology, the role of business and research organizations, and policies for emerging technologies. At an organizational level, issues range from strategic analysis of the business environment to planning a corporate response. At project level, topics include the management of specialist staff and resources, and implementation of research strategies.

**Speech Science****Honours and Master's Courses****SPCHSCI 711 (2 Points)****Speech Language Therapy 1**

Typical and atypical language development. Language disorders – the assessment and treatment of language disorders; this will include causes for delayed language development, specific language impairment, congenital syndromes and learning disabilities. Motor speech disorders (paediatric and adult) – introduction to brain mechanisms and disorders of neurogenic origin. Augmentative communication – introduction to management of clients with complex communication disabilities who require an augmentative communication system in order to facilitate speech.

**SPCHSCI 712 (2 Points)****Linguistics for Speech Language Therapy**

The study of acoustic and articulatory phonetics, phonemic transcription using the International Phonetic Alphabet, and the relationship between articulatory phonetics, acoustic phonetics and speech perception. An examination of normal speech sound acquisition, phonological development, and the assessment and treatment of articulation and phonological disorder. Additional language analysis covering phonology, syntax, semantics and pragmatics.

**SPCHSCI 713 (2 Points)****Anatomy and Physiology of the Speech and Hearing Systems**

Study of the anatomy and physiology of the speech and hearing mechanisms including human development with specific attention to the respiratory, phonatory and other nervous systems. Neurocognition of language – the representation of linguistic systems in the brain.

**SPCHSCI 714 (2 Points)****Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum 1**

Clinical observation under supervisor guidance in a variety of settings, establishing links between theory and practice. This course is supported by weekly tutorial sessions.

**SPCHSCI 721 (2 Points)****Speech Language Therapy 2**

Aphasia and related disorders – assessment and management of clients with acquired communication disorders. Dysphagia diagnosis (paediatric and adult) – assessment of clients with dysphagia. Dysphagia management (paediatric and adult) – management of clients with dysphagia.

**SPCHSCI 722 (2 Points)****Psychology and Education in Speech-language Therapy**

Child development and learning - the study of normal child development and patterns of learning. Language acquisition and the development of Literacy - the study of the normal acquisition of literacy skills with specific reference to the school curriculum. Communication and mental health - communication and counselling skills required in order to work effectively with clients and their families.

**SPCHSCI 724 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum 2**

Clinical observation and practice in a variety of settings, enabling students to work with clients under supervision. This course is supported by weekly tutorials.

**SPCHSCI 731 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy 3**

Voice science and disorders - study of the voice, and the assessment and management of voice disorders. Fluency - assessment and management of clients with dysfluency disorders (adult and paediatric). Study of causative factors and differing approaches in dysfluency treatment.

**SPCHSCI 733 (2 Points)**

**Audiology for Speech Language Therapy**

Study of types of hearing impairment, pathologies of the hearing mechanism, tests and clinical procedures used in audiological evaluations and hearing instrumentation.

*Restriction: SPCHSCI 732*

**SPCHSCI 734 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum 3**

Clinical practice in a variety of settings with students taking responsibility for the assessment and management of cases with supervisor guidance. Weekly tutorials support the course.

**SPCHSCI 741 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Professional Practice**

Professional and organizational skills relevant to current speech language therapy practice. Legal and ethical issues, best practice, professional development and multi-disciplinary team work, evidence-based practice, and implications for SLT practice in a bi-cultural and multi-cultural environment.

**SPCHSCI 742 (2 Points)**

**SPCHSCI 742A (1 Point)**

**SPCHSCI 742B (1 Point)**

**Speech Language Therapy Project**

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPCHSCI 742 A and B or SPCHSCI 742*

**SPCHSCI 743 (2 Points)**

**Phonological Processing and Communication**

Speech language therapy for hearing-impaired adults and children. Auditory processing and speech and language disorders. Assessment and management of auditory and phonological processing disorders.

*Restriction: SPCHSCI 732*

**SPCHSCI 744 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum 4**

Clinical practice in a variety of settings with the student demonstrating independent practice and problem solving skills. Supervisory guidance will be given and the course will be supported by weekly tutorials.

**SPCHSCI 751 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**SPCHSCI 752 (2 Points)**

**Research Project**

**SPCHSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**SPCHSCI 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Speech Science**

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPCHSCI 796 A and B*

---

**Sport and Exercise Science**

---

**Stage I**

**SPORTSCI 102 (2 Points)**

**Sport and Society**

An introduction to the sociology of sport. Sport and social theories. Sport and New Zealand culture. Gender, race and class issues in sport. Sport and the media, nationalism, Olympism, commercialism and globalization. Future trends.

**SPORTSCI 103 (2 Points)**

**Human Anatomy**

The study of the gross anatomical organization of the neural, muscular and skeletal systems, with particular reference to the neck, limbs, back and abdominal wall. Practical work includes gross anatomy laboratories and CD-ROM study.

*Restriction: 470.101*

**SPORTSCI 104 (2 Points)**

**Functional Human Anatomy**

Assessment of static and dynamic posture and balance, flexibility, strength and power, body composition, proportionality, and qualitative analysis of locomotion. Practical work will include techniques for measuring the variables noted above, including their use in current human performance assessment.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 103*

**SPORTSCI 105 (2 Points)**

**Exercise Prescription**

An introduction to the risks and benefits of exercise, exercise policy and safety, physical fitness testing, guidelines for exercise test administration, principles of exercise prescription, cardiorespiratory and neuromuscular training.

*Restriction: SPORTSCI 205*

---

**Stage II**

**SPORTSCI 201 (2 Points)**

**Sport and Exercise Physiology 1**

The biology and physiology of skeletal muscle, including its metabolism, energetics, activation and control. Training and assessment of neuromuscular strength, power and endurance. Physiological measurement of short-term power and aerobic metabolism.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104, or 470.101 and 470.202*

**SPORTSCI 202 (2 Points)**

**Mechanics of Injury**

Incidence, severity and mechanisms of sports injuries. Pathology/histology of tissue response to injury. Biomechanical principles useful in understanding musculoskeletal dysfunction from injury. Strategies for prevention of sports injuries. Methods of recovery from sport injuries.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104*

**SPORTSCI 203 (2 Points)****Introductory Biomechanics**

Mechanical analysis of human movement, using qualitative, quantitative and predictive techniques. The focus is on sports techniques, musculoskeletal stress and locomotion.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104*

**SPORTSCI 204 (2 Points)****Psychology of Physical Activity**

An introduction to the study of psychology as it relates to sport, exercise, health and rehabilitation.

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 108 or 109 or 128 or 129*

**SPORTSCI 206 (2 Points)****Exercise Nutrition**

A cross-disciplinary focus on nutrition, examining nutritional enhancement of sports performance, diet and physiological function, eating disorders, energy balance, body composition and the role of diet in growth and exercise.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104*

**Stage III****SPORTSCI 301 (2 Points)****Sport and Exercise Physiology 2**

Cardiopulmonary, endocrine and immune systems and their responses and adaptations to exercise and training. Physiological aspects of exercise and adaptation under different environmental conditions. Training and evaluation of anaerobic and aerobic power and endurance.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 201*

**SPORTSCI 302 (2 Points)****Sport and Exercise Physiology for Special Populations**

Examination of the role of exercise for special populations. Physiological responses and adaptations to exercise and training, and exercise and training recommendations for selected medical and athletic populations. Evaluation of cardiovascular, pulmonary, metabolic and neuromuscular function.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 301*

**SPORTSCI 303 (2 Points)****Physical Ergonomics and Rehabilitation**

Evaluation of musculoskeletal stresses in industry. The role of quantitative analysis in the identification, assessment and control of workplace risks. Qualitative and quantitative assessment of locomotion and posture. Rehabilitation in gait problems.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 203*

**SPORTSCI 304 (2 Points)****Sport Psychology**

Examination of psychological factors affecting behaviour and performance in exercise and sport. The individual performer is the major consideration, but group influences on individual performance are also considered.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 204, or 6 points at Stage II in Psychology with a B- average grade*

**SPORTSCI 305 (2 Points)****Motor Control and Learning**

An examination of the mechanisms by which movements are controlled and motor skills are acquired. Neuro-physiological, cognitive and

dynamical aspects of motor control and the plasticity of systems with learning.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104, or 470.101 and 470.202, and SPORTSCI 204*

**SPORTSCI 306 (2 Points)****Technique Assessment in Sport**

An overview of current biomechanics methodology for assessing movement in sport, with emphasis on image analysis, force measurement techniques and electromyography. A technique-assessment project is completed.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 203*

**SPORTSCI 307 (2 Points)****Sporting Bodies**

An examination of topical issues in sport and physical activity based in sociological theory. Includes an introduction to qualitative research methods and analysis. Specific topics follow student interests.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 102 and 204*

**SPORTSCI 308 (2 Points)****Management of Sport and Recreation**

Business aspects of sport and recreation; national and local sports funding and organizations; management planning, organizing, leadership and control in a sport and recreation context; marketing sport and recreation; leadership and human resource management; managing voluntary organizations; managing sports projects and events.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 102 and 204*

**SPORTSCI 309A (1 Point)****SPORTSCI 309B (1 Point)****Practicum in Sport and Exercise Science**

This practicum provides an opportunity to combine theoretical knowledge with practical skills in exercise rehabilitation, physical/cognitive ergonomics, or sport science settings.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department, and three of SPORTSCI 201, 202, 203 and 204*

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 309 A and B*

**Diploma Courses****SPORTSCI 690A (2 Points)****SPORTSCI 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Sport and Exercise Science)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 690 A and B*

**SPORTSCI 691A (2 Points)****SPORTSCI 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Sport and Exercise Science)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses****SPORTSCI 701 (2 Points)****Age and Human Performance**

The effects of ageing on human performance with respect to physiological, psychological, biomechanical and skill development factors.

**SPORTSCI 702 (2 Points)****Project in Sport and Exercise Science**

Provides students with an opportunity to collect data in an area of interest, with the aim of validating an area of study towards their theses.

- SPORTSCI 703** (2 Points)  
**Cardiac Rehabilitation**  
The role of the exercise scientist in cardiac rehabilitation. Topics include electrocardiography, exercise testing and exercise prescription. The course combines theory and laboratory/clinical study of these topics.
- SPORTSCI 704** (2 Points)  
**Human Performance in Industry**  
An examination of techniques for the development of strategies to maximize human performance in industry. It uses approaches and techniques from cognitive and physical ergonomics to evaluate task demands and human capabilities in the workplace.
- SPORTSCI 705** (2 Points)  
**Seminar in Sport and Exercise Science**  
The role of science in sport – current developments and future needs. Practical seminar and research skills. Meta-analysis and critiquing of journal articles. Development and presentation of literature reviews.
- SPORTSCI 706** (2 Points)  
**Physiology of Exercise and Rest**  
Recent advances in understanding human physiological responses and adaptations to physical activity, including maximal exertion, occasional and habitual exercise, exercise under special conditions (heat and cold stress, alterations in oxygen supply), and the effects of prolonged inactivity.  
*Restriction: PHYSIOL 706*
- SPORTSCI 707** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Seminar in Biomechanics**  
A seminar and laboratory-based course which examines theoretical and practical concerns in quantitative biomechanical data collection and analysis. Topics include: signal processing methods, 2-D and 3-D video analysis, human body modelling.
- SPORTSCI 708** (2 Points)  
**Contemporary Topics in Human Motor Control**  
A theoretical and practical study of contemporary topics in human motor control. The multidisciplinary approach of this course examines the mechanisms, laws and principles which govern the coordination and control of movement.
- SPORTSCI 709** (2 Points)  
**Group Dynamics**  
A seminar-based course covering the following topics relative to sport, exercise, business and industry groups – group environment, structure, processes, cohesion and development.
- SPORTSCI 710** (2 Points)  
**Exercise Rehabilitation**  
The role of exercise in a multi-component approach to rehabilitation. Risks and benefits of exercise, particularly with respect to sedentary individuals and/or those with medical considerations. Exercise test administration. Exercise prescription and monitoring, physical and functional assessment of performance.
- SPORTSCI 711** (2 Points)  
**Exercise Psychology**  
Exercise adherence/compliance behaviour in both clinical and non-clinical populations is examined. In addition, the psychological benefits and costs associated with acute and chronic involvement in exercise will be reviewed. Finally, the strength of any field is intimately linked to the quality of its assessment tools. Hence, quantitative and qualitative self-report, behavioural and physiological measures of exercise, as well as measures of suspected consequences of exercise, are described and critiqued.
- SPORTSCI 789A** (2 Points)  
**SPORTSCI 789B** (2 Points)  
**BSc(Hons) Dissertation in Sport and Exercise Science**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 789 A and B*
- SPORTSCI 791A** (2 Points)  
**SPORTSCI 791B** (2 Points)  
**Dissertation in Exercise Rehabilitation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 791 A and B*
- SPORTSCI 796A** (7 Points)  
**SPORTSCI 796B** (7 Points)  
**MSc Thesis in Sport and Exercise Science**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 796 A and B*
- SPORTSCI 797A** (7 Points)  
**SPORTSCI 797B** (7 Points)  
**MSc Thesis in Exercise Rehabilitation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 797 A and B*
- 
- Statistics**
- Stage 1**
- STATS 101** (2 Points)  
**STATS 101A** (1 Point)  
**STATS 101B** (1 Point)  
**Introduction to Statistics**  
Statistics and the process of investigation, types of statistical study, tools for exploring and summarizing data, probability and distributions, estimation, confidence intervals to convey uncertainty, statistical significance (includes t-tests and p-values), quantitative variables and comparing groups (includes one-way analysis of variance), nonparametric methods, qualitative variables and tables of counts (includes chi-square test), relationships between quantitative variables (includes simple linear regression and correlation).  
*Restriction: STATS 102, 107, 108, 191*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 101 A and B, or STATS 101*
- STATS 102** (2 Points)  
**Statistics for Social Science**  
This is the standard Stage 1 Statistics course for the Faculty of Arts. Its syllabus is as for STATS 101, but it places more emphasis on examples from social science.  
*Restriction: STATS 101, 107, 108, 191*
- STATS 107** (2 Points)  
**Statistics for Science and Technology**  
This is the standard Stage 1 Statistics course for all students at the Tamaki Campus, except those in the Faculty of Business and Economics. Its syllabus is as for STATS 101, but it places more emphasis on examples from science.  
*Restriction: STATS 101, 102, 108, 191*

**STATS 108 (2 Points)****Statistics for Commerce**

This is the standard Stage I Statistics course for the Faculty of Business and Economics or for Arts students taking Economics courses. Its syllabus is as for STATS 101, but it places more emphasis on examples from commerce.

*Restriction: STATS 101, 102, 107, 191*

**STATS 125 (2 Points)****Probability and its Applications**

Probability, conditional probability, Bayes theorem, random walks, branching processes, Markov chains, probability models. Illustrations will be drawn from a wide variety of applications including finance and economics; genetics, bioinformatics and other areas of biology; telecommunications, networks; games, gambling and risk.

*Prerequisite: 65 or more in Bursary Mathematics with Statistics or Bursary Mathematics with Calculus*

**STATS 150 (2 Points)****Lies, Damned Lies, and Statistics**

Examines the uses, limitations and abuses of statistical information in a variety of activities such as polling, public health, sport, law, marketing and the environment. The statistical concepts and thinking underlying data-based arguments will be explored. Emphasizes the interpretation and critical evaluation of statistically based reports as well as the construction of statistically sound arguments and reports. Some course material will be drawn from topics currently in the news.

**STATS 191 (2 Points)****Quantitative Methods For Business**

Statistics and the process of investigation, types of statistical inquiry, tools for exploring and summarizing data, probability and distributions. This includes estimation of confidence intervals and statistical significance, the comparison of groups (including one-way analysis of variance), nonparametric methods and assessment of qualitative variables. The relationships between quantitative variables (including simple linear regression and correlation), and the use of computers for statistical analysis.

*Restriction: STATS 101, 102, 107, 108*

**Stage II****STATS 201 (2 Points)****Data Analysis**

Time series and index numbers. Exploratory data analysis, introduction to analysis of variance and experimental design, regression techniques, contingency tables, goodness of fit. The emphasis is on data analysis using computers which are provided in the departmental computing laboratory.

*Prerequisite: 2 points in Stage I Statistics excluding STATS 150*

*Restriction: STATS 208*

**STATS 208 (2 Points)****Data Analysis for Commerce**

Time series and index numbers. Exploratory data analysis, introduction to analysis of variance and experimental design, regression techniques, contingency tables, goodness of fit. The emphasis is on data analysis using computers which are provided in the departmental computing laboratory.

*Prerequisite: 2 points in Stage I Statistics excluding STATS 150*

*Restriction: STATS 201*

**STATS 210 (2 Points)****Statistical Theory**

Probability axioms, discrete and continuous distributions, multivariate distributions, moment generating functions, sampling theory for the normal distribution. This course is a prerequisite for the more theoretical Stage III Statistics course and for the BSc(Hons) and Master's degree in Statistics.

*Corequisite: 2 points at Stage II in Mathematics (MATHS 208 or 253 is recommended)*

**STATS 220 (2 Points)****Data Technologies**

Explores the processes of data acquisition, storage and analysis using current technologies. Students will gain experience and understanding of the processes of data acquisition, storage, retrieval, manipulation, management and analysis, and how the technologies that perform these processes connect and interact with statistical packages, users and each other.

*Prerequisite: One Stage I course in Computer Science or Statistics.*

**STATS 255 (2 Points)****Introduction to Operations Research**

Emphasizes the relationship between business and industrial applications and their associated operations research models. Software packages will be used to solve practical problems. Topics such as linear programming, transportation and assignment models, network algorithms, queues, Markov chains, inventory models, and simulation will be considered.

*Prerequisite: 2 points in Stage I Statistics or Mathematics*

*Restriction: ENGSCI 255, 311*

**Stage III****STATS 301 (2 Points)****Statistical Programming and Data Mining**

Introduction to the SAS statistical software with emphasis on using SAS as a programming language for purposes of database manipulation, simulation and other computer-intensive methods. Introduction to data mining, decision trees, and other techniques for working with extremely large databases.

*Prerequisite: STATS 201 or 208 or 210 or BIOSCI 209*

**STATS 302 (2 Points)****Applied Multivariate Analysis**

Covers the exploratory analysis of multivariate data, with emphasis on the use of statistical software and reporting of results. Topics covered include: techniques for data display, dimension reduction and ordination, discrimination and tree-based methods. Some additional topics such as time series and computer intensive methods may also be covered.

*Prerequisite: STATS 201 or 208 or 210*

**STATS 310 (2 Points)****Advanced Statistical Theory**

Estimation, likelihood methods, hypothesis testing, linear models, decision theory.

*Prerequisite: STATS 210 and MATHS 253*

**STATS 320 (2 Points)****Applied Stochastic Modelling**

Introduction to stochastic modelling, with an emphasis on queues. Application areas include: biology, inventory control, scheduling of manufacturing processes. Some computer simulation will be required. Estimation and variance reduction.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Stage I Statistics, and 2 points from STATS 210 or MATHS 208 or 230 or 250 or 253, and MATHS 162 or COMPSCI 101 or suitable computing experience

*Restriction:* OPSRES 385

**STATS 325 (2 Points)****Stochastic Processes**

Introduction to stochastic processes, generating functions, recurrent event theory; Markov chains including applications to random walks and discrete branching processes; Poisson processes, birth and death processes including applications to queuing processes; miscellaneous topics.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 210 with at least B-, or STATS 320 with at least B+

**STATS 330 (2 Points)****Advanced Statistical Modelling**

Application of the generalized linear model to fit data arising from a range of sources including multiple regression models, logistic regression models, and log-linear models. The graphical exploration of data. The S-plus computer package will be used.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 201 or 208 or 210

*Restriction:* ECON 321

**STATS 340 (2 Points)****Design of Experiments and Surveys**

Survey methods including stratified, multistage and cluster sampling; experimental designs including incomplete block, Latin square, split plot, factorial and fractional designs.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 201 or 208 or 210

**STATS 370 (2 Points)****Financial Mathematics**

Mean-variance portfolio theory; options, arbitrage and put-call relationships; introduction of binomial and Black-Scholes option pricing models; compound interest, annuities, capital redemption policies, valuation of securities, sinking funds; varying rates of interest, taxation; duration and immunization; introduction to life annuities and life insurance mathematics.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Stage II Statistics and 2 points in Stage II Mathematics

**STATS 390 (2 Points)****Topics in Statistics**

*Prerequisite:* STATS 210, and MATHS 253 or equivalent

**STATS 391 (2 Points)****Optimization in Operations Research**

Linear programming, the revised simplex method and its computational aspects, duality and the dual simplex method, sensitivity and post-optimal analysis. Network optimization models, transportation and flow problems, the network simplex method, integer programming, branch and bound.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from 445.207 or 445.208 or 445.230 or 445.231 or 445.251 or MATHS 208 or 230 or 250 or 253, and COMPSCI 101 or MATHS 162

*Restriction:* OPSRES 392

**Diploma Courses****STATS 690A (2 Points)****STATS 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Statistics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 690 A and B

**STATS 691A (2 Points)****STATS 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Statistics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 691 A and B

**STATS 692A (1 Point)****STATS 692B (1 Point)****Graduate Diploma Project (Statistics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 692 A and B

**STATS 693A (1 Point)****STATS 693B (1 Point)****PG Diploma Project (Statistics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 693 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses****STATS 708 (2 Points)****Topics in Statistical Education**

Covers a wide range of research in statistics education at the school and tertiary level. There will be a consideration of, and an examination of, the issues involved in statistics education in the curriculum, teaching, learning, technology and assessment areas.

**STATS 710 (2 Points)****Probability Theory**

Covers some of the most fundamental ideas in probability theory and statistical inference including: probability spaces, distribution theory, characteristic functions, limit theorems, the likelihood principle, point and interval estimation, testing statistical hypotheses.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 210

**STATS 720 (2 Points)****Stochastic Processes**

Continuous-time jump Markov processes. A selection of topics from: point processes, renewal theory, martingales, Brownian motion, Gaussian processes, and inference for stochastic processes.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 325

**STATS 723 (2 Points)****Stochastic Methods in Finance**

Basic theory of finance, interest, risk, simulation, variance reduction, sensitivity analysis, continuous time models in finance, option pricing.

**STATS 724 (2 Points)****Operations Research****STATS 725 (2 Points)****Topics in Operations Research****STATS 726 (2 Points)****Time Series**

Stationary processes, moving average and autoregressive (ARIMA) models, modelling and estimation in the time domain, seasonal models, forecasting, spectral analysis and bivariate processes.

- STATS 730** (2 Points)  
**Statistical Inference**  
 Sufficiency and ancillarity, exponential families, likelihood and information. General theories of inference including Bayesian, Fisherian and Neyman-Pearsonian. Decision theory. Sequential analysis.
- STATS 731** (2 Points)  
**Bayesian Inference**  
 A course in practical Bayesian statistical inference covering: the Bayesian approach specification of prior distributions, decision-theoretic foundations, the likelihood principle, asymptotic approximations, simulation methods, Markov Chain Monte Carlo methods, the BUGS and CODA software, model assessment, hierarchical models, application in data analysis.
- STATS 732** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Statistical Inference**
- STATS 740** (2 Points)  
**Sample Surveys**  
 Simple random sampling: basic theory for means and proportions. Finite population central limit theorem. Estimates for subclasses. Stratification: proportional and optional allocation, post-stratification. Ratio and regression estimators. Multi-stage sampling: cluster-sampling, systematic sampling, two-stage sampling. Sampling with probability proportional to size. Horvitz-Thompson estimates. Variance estimation for complex designs; linearization. Randomization and super-population theories of inference. Adjusting for non-response. Repeated surveys. Methods for the analysis of survey data. Further topics.
- STATS 747** (2 Points)  
**Statistical Methods in Marketing**  
 Stochastic models of brand choice, applications of General Linear Models in marketing, conjoint analysis, advertising media models and marketing response models.
- STATS 750** (2 Points)  
**Experimental Design**  
 The design and analysis of data from experiments involving factorial and related designs and designs which have the property known as general balance (this includes most of the standard designs), and more general designs with blocking and replication. Response surface methodology. Sequential experimentation.
- STATS 760** (2 Points)  
**Regression Modelling**  
 Linear and generalized linear models. Extensions selected from the topics nonlinear regression, estimating equation methods, nonparametric regression and robust methods; general strategies for modelling. Applications to the analysis of data on continuous, ordinal and categorical response variables.  
*Prerequisite: STATS 310*
- STATS 761** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Regression Modelling**
- STATS 764** (2 Points)  
**Analysis of Failure Time Data**  
 Topics in the theory and analysis of survival data.
- Survival data arises both in the Health Sciences and in industrial testing. Such data is often subject to censoring and truncated data. Both parametric and nonparametric methods, such as Kaplan-Meier estimates, will be covered. Other topics may include: proportional hazards regression, censored data and reliability.
- STATS 766** (2 Points)  
**Multivariate Analysis**  
 Selection of topics from multivariate inference (one and two samples, multivariate regression and analysis of variance), dimension reducing techniques (including principal components, factor analysis and multidimensional scaling), discriminant analysis and cluster analysis.  
*Prerequisite: STATS 310*
- STATS 767** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Multivariate Analysis**
- STATS 770** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Medical Statistics**  
 An introduction to ideas of importance in medical statistics, such as measures of risk, basic types of medical study, causation, ethical issues and censoring, together with a review of common methodologies.
- STATS 771** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Biostatistics 1**
- STATS 772** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Biostatistics 2**
- STATS 773** (2 Points)  
**Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials**  
 The theory and practice of clinical trials, including: design issues, data management, common analysis methodologies, intention to treat, compliance, interim analyses and ethical considerations.
- STATS 775** (2 Points)  
**Design of Ecological Experiments**  
 Factorial designs, nested hierarchies and mixed models; variance components and expected mean squares; precision and power analysis; multivariate analysis in ecology; designs to detect environmental impact; resampling methods and permutation tests for complex designs.
- STATS 776** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Environmental and Ecological Statistics**
- STATS 777** (2 Points)  
**Quantitative Fisheries Science**  
 Introduction to quantitative issues, methods and terminology of fisheries science. Stock assessment modelling, including: stock-recruit, surplus production and sequential population analysis. Introduction to recent developments in quantitative fisheries science, including: Bayesian and Markov Chain, Monte Carlo methodologies and automatic differentiation software for fitting complex models.
- STATS 780** (2 Points)  
**Statistical Consulting**  
 Training in statistical consulting, ie, applying statistical methods to practical research problems in other disciplines. Together with a member of staff of the Statistics Department, small groups of students will discuss with researchers and other clients, the design and analysis of their quantitative investigations.

<b>STATS 782</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>STATS 797A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Computing for Statisticians</b>		<b>STATS 797B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
This course, which is a compulsory course for a BSc(Hons) or Master's degree in Statistics, is an introduction to the computer as a tool for the professional statistician. Topics include: an introduction to computer operating systems, editors, text processing and typesetting. Data manipulation and programming using a statistical package.			
<b>STATS 783</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Advanced Studies in Statistics</b>	
<b>Topics in Statistical Computing</b>		An integrated combination of courses, research projects, and investigations in a selection of topics, designed to meet the requirements of each student. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 797 A and B</i>	
<b>STATS 784</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<hr/>	
<b>Statistical Data Mining</b>		<b>Wine Science</b>	
Data cleaning, missing values, data warehouses, security, fraud detection, meta-analysis, regression and decision trees, neural networks, the classification problem.			
<b>STATS 785</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<hr/>	
<b>Topics in Statistical Data Management</b>		<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>	
<b>STATS 787</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>WINESCI 701</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Topics in Computational Data Analysis and Graphics</b>		<b>Wine Production and Wine Science in New Zealand</b>	
<b>STATS 788A</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>	The principles and practices of local winemaking are reviewed and compared with international counterparts to highlight the distinctive characteristics of winemaking in New Zealand. A microvinification project is undertaken in which students begin with an allotment of grapes, monitor the fermentation using a range of analytical techniques, and make decisions which affect the style of wine they produce.	
<b>STATS 788B</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>	<b>WINESCI 702</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Dissertation in Medical Statistics</b>		<b>The Science Behind Grape Production</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 788 A and B</i>			
<b>STATS 789</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	Develops students understanding of the contemporary scientific knowledge and research that is of relevance to grape production for winemaking. The application of traditional and modern molecular methods in plant science and plant pathology will be discussed in relation to the selection, improvement and management of vines and grape attributes. Research issues of national and international relevance to viticulture will also be addressed.	
<b>STATS 789A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>WINESCI 703</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>STATS 789B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>The Science Behind Winemaking</b>	
<b>Honours Project in Statistics</b>		Follows on from 702 and focuses on the contemporary scientific knowledge and research that is of relevance to winemaking, commencing from the point of grape harvest. The application of traditional and modern methods in biochemistry and microbiology will be discussed. Research issues of national and international relevance to winemaking will also be addressed.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 789 A and B, or STATS 789</i>			
<b>STATS 790</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>WINESCI 704</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>STATS 790A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Sensory Evaluation and Statistical Methods</b>	
<b>STATS 790B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	The principles of sensory science, sensory analysis of wine, differences among wine types, regional styles and grape types will be covered. Emphasis will be placed on those components which influence sensory appeal. The application of statistical methods to wine sampling and to the design of sensory panels will be overviewed.	
<b>Master's Dissertation 1</b>		<b>WINESCI 705</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<i>Restriction: STATS 796</i>			
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 790 A and B, or STATS 790</i>			
<b>STATS 791</b>	<b>(6 Points)</b>	<b>WINESCI 705A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>STATS 791A</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>	<b>WINESCI 705B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>STATS 791B</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>	<b>Project in Wine Science</b>	
<b>Master's Dissertation 2</b>		Students will gain a thorough understanding of the current knowledge on a selected topic associated with wine science and have experience in writing a research proposal and in giving a presentation to the peer group.	
<i>Restriction: STATS 796</i>			
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 791 A and B, or STATS 791</i>			
<b>STATS 792</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in WINESCI 705 A and B, or WINESCI 705</i>	
<b>Topics in Statistics 1</b>			
<b>STATS 793</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>		
<b>Topics in Statistics 2</b>			
<b>STATS 794</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>		
<b>Topics in Statistics 3</b>			
<b>STATS 795</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>		
<b>Topics in Statistics 4</b>			
<b>STATS 796A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>		
<b>STATS 796B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>		
<b>Master's Thesis in Statistics</b>			
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 796 A and B</i>			

- WINESCI 706** (2 Points)  
**The Business of Wine Production**  
 Introduction to the economics of grape growing, winemaking, winery design and management. Distribution and marketing will be introduced. Special topics including wine law, use and negotiation of contracts small business development, stock valuation, issues of appellations, labelling and brand development will be taught. Environmental and resource management issues and health and safety regulations will be covered.
- WINESCI 707** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Wine Science**  
 Modules will be organized by the staff and invited lecturers. Students may be required to participate actively by contributing seminars. Topics may vary from vary from year to year.
- WINESCI 796A** (7 Points)  
**WINESCI 796B** (7 Points)  
**MSc Thesis in Wine Science**  
 Advanced research on an aspect of wine science. This may be undertaken with the Wine Industry CRIs and University staff.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in WINESCI 796 A and B*
- 
- BSTHEO 141** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to the New Testament**  
 Introduces students to a sensitive, critical reading of the literature that makes up the New Testament, based primarily on the approach of contemporary critical methodology.
- BSTHEO 175** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to New Testament Greek**  
 Designed to give students a basic knowledge of New Testament Greek, enabling them to use dictionaries and commentaries, and read simple texts. No prior knowledge of Greek is assumed.
- 
- Stage II**
- BSTHEO 201** (2 Points)  
**The World of the First Testament**  
 Studies the geography, ecology and socio-political organization of ancient Israel and related societies.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*
- BSTHEO 202** (2 Points)  
**Genesis**  
 Torah; an examination of this major section of the First Testament through a detailed study of Genesis, with exegesis of selected passages.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*
- BSTHEO 203** (2 Points)  
**Jeremiah**  
 A study of the history and nature of biblical prophetic movements with particular reference to the Book of Jeremiah: its history, theology, literary character, rhetorical features, with exegesis of selected passages.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*
- BSTHEO 204** (2 Points)  
**Deuteronomistic History**  
 A study of the books of Joshua, Judges, 1 and 2 Samuel and 1 and 2 Kings, in the light of their relationship to the Book of Deuteronomy.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*
- BSTHEO 205** (2 Points)  
**Hebrew Short Story**  
 A specialized study of the Hebrew short story. The book(s) studied will be determined on an annual basis.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*
- BSTHEO 206** (2 Points)  
**Daniel**  
 A study of literary, historical and theological aspects of the book of Daniel, including the deuterocanonical works and the relevant Qumranic traditions and exegesis of the book of Daniel.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*
- BSTHEO 207** (2 Points)  
**Wisdom Literature**  
 A study of First Testament wisdom literature with emphasis on Job, Proverbs, and Qoheleth. Exegesis of selected passages from these texts will be included.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*
- BSTHEO 208** (2 Points)  
**The Book of Psalms**  
 A study of literary, historical and theological aspects of the book of Psalms, with exegesis of selected passages.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

---

## School of Theology

---

### Biblical Studies

---

#### Stage I

- BSTHEO 101** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to the First Testament**  
 Indicates methods and areas of study that illuminate the background and nature of the First Testament (also known as the Old Testament or Hebrew Bible).  
*Restriction: BSTHEO 102*
- BSTHEO 102** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to First Testament Interpretation**  
 Introduction to the First Testament (Old Testament or Hebrew Bible) in the light of scholarship, with particular attention to the methodologies of reading that are applied to its interpretation, and to what is of value for theological understanding today.  
*Restriction: BSTHEO 101*
- BSTHEO 135** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Biblical Hebrew**  
 Designed to give students a basic knowledge of Biblical Hebrew, enabling them to use dictionaries and commentaries, and read simple texts.
- BSTHEO 136** (2 Points)  
**Linguistic Tools for Exegesis**  
 Designed to equip students with an understanding of the grammar and syntax of Classical Hebrew and Koine Greek, enabling them to: (i) use Biblical Hebrew and Koine Greek dictionaries, commentaries and computer bibles in biblical exegesis; and (ii) understand discussion of linguistic issues raised in journal articles, and commentaries. No prior knowledge of the languages is assumed. Students intending to read biblical languages should take BSTHEO 135 or 175.

- BSTHEO 231** (2 Points)  
**Early Post-biblical Judaism**  
 An introduction to: the history of the period from 200 BCE to 135 CE which stretches from the Seleucid domination of the region to the aftermath of the Bar Kochbar revolt; the origin and development of streams of religious thought and practice within the Judaism of this period; the influence of Hellenism and the effects of Hellenization.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*
- BSTHEO 235** (2 Points)  
**Biblical Hebrew**  
 The aim of this course is to consolidate knowledge of biblical Hebrew gained in the introductory course and to translate selected texts from the Hebrew Bible.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 135*
- BSTHEO 236** (2 Points)  
**Exegesis of the Hebrew Bible**  
 Translation and exegesis of selected texts from the Hebrew Bible. Texts specified annually.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 and 235 or equivalent*
- BSTHEO 241** (2 Points)  
**The World of the New Testament**  
 A study of the historical, political, social, economic and religious worlds that lie behind the texts of the New Testament.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*
- BSTHEO 242** (2 Points)  
**Luke's Gospel**  
 A study of Luke's Gospel as a literary text, together with an investigation of the community that lies behind the text, the teaching presented by it, its relationship to other gospels, and its link to the historical Jesus.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*
- BSTHEO 243** (2 Points)  
**Matthew's Gospel**  
 A study of Matthew's Gospel as a literary text, together with an investigation of the community that lies behind the text, the teaching presented by it, its relationship to other gospels, and its link to the historical Jesus.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*
- BSTHEO 244** (2 Points)  
**John's Gospel**  
 A study of the Gospel of John as a literary text, together with an investigation of the community that lies behind that text, and the place of John's Gospel in early Christianity.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*
- BSTHEO 247** (2 Points)  
**Mark's Gospel**  
 A study of Mark's Gospel as a literary text, together with an investigation of the community that lies behind the text, the teaching presented by it, its relationship to other gospels, and its link to the historical Jesus.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*
- BSTHEO 249** (2 Points)  
**Corinthian Correspondence**  
 A study of the history and fundamental Pauline theology in the Epistles, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*
- BSTHEO 251** (2 Points)  
**1 Thessalonians and Philippians**  
 An examination of the general issues surrounding the production of 1 Thessalonians and Philippians and an exegetical examination of their significant theological and literary characteristics.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*
- BSTHEO 252** (2 Points)  
**Colossians and Ephesians**  
 An exegetical study of the epistles of Colossians and Ephesians, with attention to issues of their interrelationship and authorship, and social and theological contexts.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*
- BSTHEO 253** (2 Points)  
**Paul and Galatians**  
 A systematic survey of the main talking points in current Pauline Studies which draws upon historical, linguistic, rhetorical, theological and biographical approaches to Paul and his world and has a bearing on what Paul has written to the churches of Galatia; and in the light of that survey to embark upon a close, chapter by chapter exegetical reading of his letter to the Galatians.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*
- BSTHEO 275** (2 Points)  
**New Testament Greek**  
 Consolidates knowledge of New Testament Greek gained in the introductory course and to translate selected texts from the Greek New Testament.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 175*
- BSTHEO 276** (2 Points)  
**Exegesis of the Greek New Testament**  
 An advanced course in the grammar of New Testament Greek, and a careful study and translation of selected texts of the Gospels of Mark and Matthew.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141 and 275 or equivalent*
- BSTHEO 281** (2 Points)  
**Bible in Literature**  
 Investigates portrayals of God, faith, liberation, journey, exile, land, evil, suffering and celebration in the Bible and in contemporary literature. The course includes exegesis of selected biblical texts.  
*Prerequisite: Either 2 points at Stage 1 in Biblical Studies or the approval of the Director of Undergraduate Studies*
- BSTHEO 282** (2 Points)  
**Bible and Mission**  
 Examines the biblical foundations of a theological understanding of mission and approaches to the use of the biblical text as a mission resource.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141 and either BSTHEO 101 or 102*
- BSTHEO 283** (2 Points)  
**Approaches to Interpreting Scripture**  
 Covers: (i) methods of exegesis; (ii) illustrations of the methods, with particular attention to selected texts from both Testaments; (iii) reflection on the implications of the method for faith communities.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102, and 141*
- 
- Stage III**
- BSTHEO 301** (2 Points)  
**Wisdom Literature - Themes and Issues**  
 An advanced study of First Testament wisdom literature. Focuses on wisdom themes in Job,

Qoheleth, the Wisdom of Solomon, and Sirach. Canonical, literary, and historical aspects of selected texts will be explored.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 302 (2 Points)**

**Patriarchs and Matriarchs in Hebrew Tradition**

A study of the literary, historical and theological aspects of the traditions concerning the patriarchs and matriarchs of Genesis, from both a Christian and Jewish perspective.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 303 (2 Points)**

**Isaiah – Themes and Issues**

A study of the historical and theological context of the Book of Isaiah with particular reference to Isaiah 40–55. Prophetic witness, forms of prophetic teaching and the role of the prophet will be examined.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 304 (2 Points)**

**Liberation and the City**

Examines missiological issues in the First Testament through consideration of the two themes of liberation and city.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 305 (2 Points)**

**First Testament Theology**

Draws on exegetical and introductory studies in order to explore overall theological structures in the First Testament.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies or Christian Thought and History

**BSTHEO 306 (2 Points)**

**Worship in Ancient Israel**

Studies the nature and origins of the rites, the seasons, the personnel and the beliefs associated with worship in ancient Israel in their socio-historic context.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 314 (2 Points)**

**Prophets and Justice**

Literary and rhetorical features of the prophetic corpus (the Book of Jeremiah) will be studied, with particular attention to the questions of oppression and justice. Issues of the process of composition of the prophetic books will be raised and selected passages examined in depth.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 329 (2 Points)**

**BSTHEO 329A (1 Point)**

**BSTHEO 329B (1 Point)**

**First Testament Research Essay**

A reading and research course catering for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of course offerings in First Testament. Intended for advanced students with at least a B average and majoring in Biblical Studies. The area of study is chosen in consultation with an Adviser

appointed by the Biblical Studies Department.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage III in First Testament and the permission of the Director of Undergraduate Studies and Head of School

To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 329 A and B, or BSTHEO 329

**BSTHEO 336 (2 Points)**

**Exegesis of the Hebrew Bible**

Translation and exegesis of selected texts in the Hebrew language. Texts specified annually.

*Prerequisite:* BSTHEO 236

**BSTHEO 341 (2 Points)**

**Passion Narratives**

A study of the passion narratives of the synoptic gospels and of John's gospel, with particular attention to historical and theological issues.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 343 (2 Points)**

**Johannine Epistles**

An examination of the situation and purpose of I, II, and III John, their relationship to the Gospel of John and their place within the development of the Johannine community.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 344 (2 Points)**

**Parables of Jesus**

A study of the parables of Jesus as a literary form, the literary and social world of the parables and an investigation of the place of the parables within individual gospels.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 345 (2 Points)**

**Resurrection Traditions in the New Testament**

A study of the resurrection traditions in the New Testament, examining the content and the development of the traditions from the perspectives of critical New Testament study. It will also look at how these traditions are interpreted by a selected group of contemporary theologians.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 347 (2 Points)**

**Romans – Themes and Issues**

This course focuses on the context, concerns and major issues of Romans, together with exegesis of the epistle.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 348 (2 Points)**

**The General Letters**

Focuses on the contexts and concerns of one or more of the following letters: Hebrews, 1 and 2 Peter, James and Jude. Themes appearing in these epistles will also be explored.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

**BSTHEO 349 (2 Points)**

**Apocalyptic and the Apocalypse**

An introduction to apocalyptic literature with particular focus on the Apocalypse.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies

- BSTHEO 350** (2 Points)  
**New Testament Eschatology**  
 An examination of the nature, types and roles of eschatology in the New Testament, with reference to selected texts.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*
- BSTHEO 351** (2 Points)  
**Corinthians and Conflict**  
 A theological study of the cultural and social issues of conflict in 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*
- BSTHEO 352** (2 Points)  
**Biblical Themes in Literature, Art and Film**  
 Identifies a variety of genres, interpretations, expositions and illustrations of biblical themes in literature, art and film with particular reference to New Zealand and the Pacific.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II Biblical Studies, or permission of the Director of Undergraduate Studies*
- BSTHEO 353** (2 Points)  
**The Pastoral Epistles**  
 An examination of the context, concerns and major issues of 1 and 2 Timothy and Titus. Investigates the situation(s) that led to the writing of these epistles, and explores their theological outlook and practical responses. Their contribution to the transmission of the Pauline tradition will be evaluated.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*
- BSTHEO 369** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 369A** (1 Point)  
**BSTHEO 369B** (1 Point)  
**New Testament Research Essay**  
 A reading and research paper catering for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of course offerings in New Testament. Intended for advanced students with at least a B average and majoring in Biblical Studies. The area of study is chosen in consultation with an Adviser appointed by the Biblical Studies Department.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage III in New Testament and the permission of the Director of Undergraduate Studies*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in *BSTHEO 369 A and B, or BSTHEO 369*
- BSTHEO 376** (2 Points)  
**Exegesis of the Greek New Testament**  
 The course will comprise the translation and exegesis of selected texts in the Greek New Testament. Texts specified annually.  
*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 276*
- BSTHEO 381** (2 Points)  
**Women of the Bible**  
 An analysis and critique of feminist literary-critical and feminist historical-critical methodologies, through an examination of selected passages from the First and New Testaments.  
*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in New Testament*
- BSTHEO 701A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 701B** (2 Points)  
**Israel's Origins**  
 Study of ancient Israel's traditions of origin in the light of contemporary archaeological and social science perspectives.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in *BSTHEO 701 A and B*
- BSTHEO 702** (4 Points)  
**BSTHEO 702A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 702B** (2 Points)  
**Exile as Catalyst**  
 Considerations of the impact of the sixth century exile on the formation of the Torah and on the Prophetic traditions of ancient Israel.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in *BSTHEO 702 A and B, or BSTHEO 702*
- BSTHEO 703** (4 Points)  
**BSTHEO 703A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 703B** (2 Points)  
**Biblical Hermeneutics**  
 A critique of interpretative methods from Midrash to reader-response theory.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in *BSTHEO 703 A and B, or BSTHEO 703*
- BSTHEO 735** (4 Points)  
**Hebrew Bible Aramaic**  
 Analysis of the text and context of Aramaic sections of selected texts.
- BSTHEO 741A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 741B** (2 Points)  
**The Search for the Historical Jesus**  
 The history of the investigation of the problem with particular attention paid to issues of method and to key figures who have joined the search.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in *BSTHEO 741 A and B*
- BSTHEO 742** (4 Points)  
**Pre-Gospel Traditions of the Sayings of Jesus**  
 The Q tradition, gnostic traditions and criteria of authenticity.
- BSTHEO 743** (4 Points)  
**Paul and Group Boundaries**  
 Getting in and staying in. Christian distinctiveness and discipline, authority and community cohesiveness; an investigation of selected themes within the Pauline corpus.
- BSTHEO 744A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 744B** (2 Points)  
**Emergence of Christianity and Rabbinic Judaism**  
 Explores the emergence of two of the world's major religions from the same cultural and religious setting and their interrelationship. Topics include: Jesus the Jew, the Pharisees, Rabbinic texts, the Interpretation of the Scripture and the Parting of the Ways.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in *BSTHEO 744 A and B*
- 236 and 275 if they intend to concentrate their study on the First Testament, or to the levels of courses BSTHEO 276 and 235 if they intend to concentrate their study on the New Testament.**  
*Requirement: 28 points in the subject Biblical Studies constituted as follows: 12 points selected from BSTHEO 701-750; 2 points from BSTHEO 781 Research Methods in Biblical Studies and 14 points from BSTHEO 798 (Thesis).*

### Honours and Master's Courses

*Prerequisite: 16 points in Biblical Studies including 6 points at Stage III. Students will be required to demonstrate knowledge of the appropriate biblical languages for exegesis, to the levels of courses BSTHEO*

- BSTHEO 745** (4 Points)  
**Paul in Focus**  
A specialized study of Paul as a New Testament personality in the context of what he wrote.
- BSTHEO 746** (4 Points)
- BSTHEO 746A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 746B** (2 Points)  
**New Testament Theology**  
The possibilities, problems and prospects for New Testament theology. The course will examine the work of some contributors to the debate, and include a representative sample of New Testament theologies.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 746 A and B, or BSTHEO 746*
- BSTHEO 747** (4 Points)
- BSTHEO 747A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 747B** (2 Points)  
**Creation in the Bible**  
An exploration of images of God as Creator, and creation themes occurring throughout the Bible.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 747 A and B, or BSTHEO 747*
- BSTHEO 750A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 750B** (2 Points)  
**The Bible and Electronic Media**  
As the codex was to the second millennium, so electronic texts will be for the next. Explores what digital literacy means in the context of Biblical Studies. Critical literacy in digital media will be encouraged through exploration of both Internet and CD resources including Bible software products as well as databases of archaeological digs, collections of images of artefacts etc. Particular attention will be paid to criteria for assessing both the scholarly and technical merits of electronic publications. Students will critique electronic resources of different genres and prepare their own hypertext presenting a biblical exegesis.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 750 A and B*
- BSTHEO 781** (2 Points)  
**Research Methods in Biblical Studies**  
Designed to help students majoring in Biblical Studies engage with some of the challenges of the discipline as currently practised and to develop research method skills specific to students' thesis topics.
- BSTHEO 798A** (7 Points)  
**BSTHEO 798B** (7 Points)  
**Thesis**  
The thesis of approximately 35,000 words should embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 798 A and B*

## Christian Thought and History

### Stage 1

- CTHTHEO 103** (2 Points)  
**A Maori Theology Perspective 1**  
An introduction to Christian theology using what are seen to be a number of Maori concepts and values, such as 'tangata', 'tika', 'pono', 'aroha', 'tapu' and 'mana'.
- CTHTHEO 106** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Theology: Traditional and Contemporary Approaches**  
Provides an introduction to systematic theology and inquiry. The course has three interconnected dimensions: (i) a study of the nature, sources and methods of theology; (ii) an introductory study of several traditional theological themes such as revelation, creation, Jesus Christ and salvation, grace and sin, Trinity and mission; (iii) participation in a process of contemporary theological reflection.  
*Restriction: 705.101, CHTHTHEO 107, 108, 109*
- CTHTHEO 107** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Theology: Thinking of God**  
An introduction to the content and methods of Christian theology, focusing on the knowledge and being of God. Drawing on different theological perspectives, the course will look at such themes as the sources of theology, revelation, language about God, philosophy and theology, faith and life, personhood, creation, the Trinity, humanity and the cosmos.  
*Restriction: 705.101, CHTHTHEO 106, 108, 109*
- CTHTHEO 109** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Theology: Evangelical and Classical Approaches**  
A study of evangelical and classical approaches to the content and method of Christian theology. Explores the role of the Bible and other resources for theological discourse and examines Christian understandings of Christ, God, Trinity and Revelation.  
*Restriction: 705.101, CHTHTHEO 106, 107, 108*
- CTHTHEO 142** (2 Points)  
**Christianity in Aotearoa New Zealand**  
The first part of this course looks at the nineteenth century in Aotearoa New Zealand: the interaction of the Gospel, missionaries and Maori; settler churches and their involvement in the land wars, with one another and with society. The second part looks at the Church in the twentieth century; from religious bigotry through prohibition, the churches at war, depression, ecumenism, the decline in church attendance, the recognition of the multi-cultural context and bicultural partnership, the contribution of women and the impact of the charismatic renewal.
- CTHTHEO 144** (2 Points)  
**Christian Missions in History and Culture**  
An introduction to the history of Christian missions from the discovery of the New World to the present day.  
*Restriction: 715.174*
- CTHTHEO 145** (2 Points)  
**The Early Church**  
Provides a broad introduction to the history of the early Church, based on a thematic approach. Including topics such as: early Christian writings, issues of authority within the Church, asceticism and the monastic movement, Church-State relationships, theological controversies, worship and sacraments, social and ethical questions, the role of women, and the interrelationship of Church and culture.  
*Restriction: 705.141*

**Stage II****CTHTHEO 201 (2 Points)**  
**Ecotheology**

Contemporary approaches to the Christian understanding of creation. This course will focus particularly on the relationship between ecology and theology, with some attention also to the origins and destiny of created reality.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109

**CTHTHEO 202 (2 Points)**  
**Theology of Church**

Explores the theology of Church, including biblical foundations, historical and contemporary models of Church and the nature of ministry. Other aspects may include sacraments, mission, eschatology and ecumenical considerations.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109

**CTHTHEO 203 (2 Points)**  
**Christology**

An introduction to the study of Christology, both historical and theological. Areas covered will include a selection of the following: the New Testament matrix, historical developments up to and including Chalcedon, Christian faith and the Jesus of history, the approach to Christology of several leading theologians of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, the place of Jesus Christ in Christian life and worship, soteriology, sin and redemption.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109

**CTHTHEO 204 (2 Points)**  
**Sacramental Theology**

A study of sacramentality in Christian thought and practice, focusing particularly on such areas as initiation, Eucharist, reconciliation, healing, marriage and ministry.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109

**CTHTHEO 205 (2 Points)**  
**Contemporary Christian Thought from a Feminist Perspective**

An exploration of contemporary Christian feminist thought in dialogue with the Christian tradition and the experience of women.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109

**CTHTHEO 208 (2 Points)**  
**A Maori Theology Perspective 2**

A continuation of the study of Christian theology using what are seen to be a number of Maori concepts and values. This course will highlight Maori revelation as a basis for Christian living.

*Prerequisite:* CTHTHEO 103

**CTHTHEO 209 (2 Points)**  
**Theology and Science**

A study of some of the interrelationships between theology and science.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109

**CTHTHEO 210 (2 Points)**  
**Theology of Mission**

An examination of the theology of mission, including the following: biblical foundations, formative thinkers of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, contemporary discussion regarding the nature of mission, approaches to living faiths and ideologies, gospel and culture.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109

**CTHTHEO 212 (2 Points)****Theology, Story and Imagination**

A study of the connections between theology, story and imagination. Topics include: spiritual autobiography, redemption novels, the holocaust, science fiction and Apocalypse.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109 or with permission of the Director of Undergraduate Studies

**CTHTHEO 222 (2 Points)****World Religions and Christian Thought**

A brief introduction to major religious traditions other than Christianity and an examination of salient issues raised by them for Christian thought.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109 or with permission of the Director of Undergraduate Studies

*Restriction:* 705.218

**CTHTHEO 244 (2 Points)****The Baptist Churches**

An introduction to the origins, growth and principles of the Baptist churches.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Christian Thought and History

**CTHTHEO 245 (2 Points)****The History of the Catholic Church in Aotearoa New Zealand and Australia**

A study of the development of the Catholic Church in Aotearoa New Zealand and/or Australia which may include a variety of specialized studies.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Christian Thought and History

**CTHTHEO 246 (2 Points)****Introduction to Anglicanism**

This course discusses the history and nature of Anglicanism, with particular attention to theology, spirituality and worship in the past and also in the Anglican Communion today.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Christian Thought and History

**CTHTHEO 247 (2 Points)****The Methodist Church: Its Ethos, History and Theology**

A study of the Methodist Church, with particular attention to its ethos, history and theology, relating them particularly to issues facing contemporary New Zealand Methodism, including Ministry in 'Cooperating Ventures'.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Christian Thought and History

**CTHTHEO 248 (2 Points)****Church and Society in the South Pacific 1**

A survey of aspects of the history of the missionary impact on the South Pacific, excluding New Zealand, up until the outbreak of the Second World War.

*Prerequisite:* 705.141 or 705.143 or CTHTHEO 142

*Restriction:* 705.341

**CTHTHEO 249 (2 Points)****Women in Christian History**

Addresses the history of women in the Church from the first to the twentieth centuries. Attention will be given to methodological issues involved in the study of 'women's history', to changes in the status and roles of women in the pre-Reformation, Catholic and Protestant Churches, and to the theological teachings and beliefs about women involved in such changes.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Christian Thought and History

*Restriction:* 705.342, 705.343

**CTHTHEO 250 (2 Points)****The Medieval Church**

A study of themes in the history of the Church from the sixth to the sixteenth century. Themes will be selected from the following: relationships between Church, State and society in Europe; the emergence of Christendom; missionary expansion; Christianity and culture; medieval spirituality; medieval monasticism; the age of cathedral building; medieval theological thought and dissent; the division of the Church between East and West; the challenge of Islam and the Crusader response; the Renaissance; the Conciliar Movement; the search for Reformation; the beginnings of Luther's reformation.

*Prerequisite:* 705.141 or 705.143 or CHTHSEO 142 or 145  
*Restriction:* 705.241, 705.243

**CHTHEO 251 (2 Points)**

**The Modern Church**

A study of the history of the Church from the sixteenth century to the present day. Focuses on issues such as: Protestant and Catholic reformations; missionary expansion; the development of religious toleration; religious movements including the Wesley revival and Modern Pentecostalism; relationships between Church and State; the Enlightenment and the challenge of modernity; revivalism and fundamentalism; the development of ecumenism; the impact of secularism; the second Vatican Council and its results; the inculturation of the Christian gospel.

*Prerequisite:* 705.141 or 705.143 or CHTHSEO 142 or 145  
*Restriction:* 705.241, 705.243

**Stage III**

**CHTHEO 302 (2 Points)**

**Current Issues in Theology**

This will be a seminar course in which students will be invited to study and then respond, through seminar presentation and written work, in a number of theological areas where transformation is taking place.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent and 2 further points in Christian Thought and History

**CHTHEO 303 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Systematic Theology**

Detailed study of a subject in systematic theology which is not covered elsewhere in the degree. The topic will be chosen annually.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent and 2 further points in Christian Thought and History

**CHTHEO 306 (2 Points)**

**Mission and the Western Mind**

The focus of this course is the missionary challenge represented by contemporary Western culture. The nature of that culture will be investigated and the implications of this for theology of mission explored. Topics include: epistemological roots of Western culture, theology and the legacy of the Enlightenment, relationship between gospel and culture, theological challenge of pluralism, theology in postmodern society, gospel as public truth.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History

**CHTHEO 307 (2 Points)**

**The Holy Spirit**

Explores the Christian understanding of the person

and work of the Holy Spirit and its relation to the Christian life. Topics include: biblical foundations for the doctrine, theology of the Pentecostal and charismatic movements, the relation of the doctrine to a wide range of key concepts and concerns in Christian life and tradition.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History  
*Restriction:* 705.301

**CHTHEO 308 (2 Points)**

**The Trinity**

An exploration of the Christian understanding of God as Trinity, and the relation of the doctrine of the Trinity to the rest of Christian theology. Topics to be studied include: the biblical foundations for the Trinitarian understanding of God as Father, Son and Holy Spirit; the historical development of the doctrine in the early centuries; the doctrine of the Trinity in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries; the implications of the doctrine of the Trinity in relation to revelation, Christology, eschatology, mission, ecclesiology and the Christian life.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History  
*Restriction:* 705.301

**CHTHEO 309 (2 Points)**

**The Eucharist**

Examines the Eucharist against the background of the Jewish Passover and will discuss the development of the eucharistic doctrine.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History

**CHTHEO 312 (2 Points)**

**Humanity and Hope**

An exploration of Christian understandings of the nature of human being and eschatology.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History

**CHTHEO 321 (2 Points)**

**Theology and Interfaith Relations**

A detailed examination of a selection of Christian responses to, and reflections on, the multi-religious context of the world with special reference to inter-religious dialogue and theologies of religion. An exploration of the encounter between Christianity and a major religion will feature as a case study. Particular attention will also be given to the work of the World Council of Churches and the Vatican in inter-religious dialogue.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent and 2 points in Christian Thought and History

*Restriction:* 705.313

**CHTHEO 329 (2 Points)**

**CHTHEO 329A (1 Point)**

**CHTHEO 329B (1 Point)**

**Systematic Research Course**

This is a reading and research course for advanced students majoring in Systematic Theology. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of unit offerings in Systematic Theology. Students will normally have already proven their competence in

the Systematic Theology Studies field by achieving at least a B average, and will also have demonstrated their ability to work independently. The area of study will usually be one of interest in recent systematic theology research and will be chosen in consultation with the Adviser appointed by the Christian Thought and History Department. The bibliography and methodology will also be determined in consultation with the Adviser.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage III in Systematic Theology or equivalent and the permission of the Director of Undergraduate Studies and Head of School  
To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 329 A and B, or CHTHSEO 329.

**CTHTHEO 334 (2 Points)**  
**Theology of Place**

Provides a contextual restatement of the Christian faith with specific reference to the relation between God and humanity, between individual persons, and between humankind and the rest of the created order, as seen through the eyes and heard through the ears of the peoples of Oceania and Aotearoa.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Systematic Theology

**CTHTHEO 345 (2 Points)**  
**The History of Christian Spirituality**

An examination of aspects of the history of Christian spirituality.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Church History or equivalent and 2 further points in Christian Thought and History

**CTHTHEO 346 (2 Points)**  
**Critical Issues in Twentieth Century Church History**

The study of selected issues of significance in the history of Christianity in the twentieth century, for example: Ecumenism, Fundamentalism, War and Peace, Totalitarianism, Feminism, and the Pentecostal and Charismatic Movements.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Church History or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History

*Restriction:* 705.344

**CTHTHEO 347 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

Detailed study of a subject in Church history which is not covered elsewhere in the degree. The topic will be chosen annually.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Church History or equivalent and 2 further points in Christian Thought and History

**CTHTHEO 348 (2 Points)**  
**The Medieval Church**

A study of themes in the history of the Church from the sixth to the sixteenth century, but with a greater emphasis on historiographical and methodological questions. Students will be expected to do research using primary documents and present a seminar based on this primary research.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Church History or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History

*Restriction:* 705.241, 705.243, CHTHSEO 250

**CTHTHEO 349 (2 Points)**  
**Church and Society in the South Pacific 2**

A study of churches in the South Pacific from the beginnings of the Second World War with particular attention to topics such as: the impact of the Second World War, new religious movements, the emergence

and independence of Island churches, ecumenical relations, ministerial training, the growth and impact of sects, the churches and social, political and economic questions; the development of Pacific Island churches in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Church History or equivalent and 2 further points in Christian Thought and History

**CTHTHEO 350 (2 Points)**  
**Women in the Churches in Aotearoa New Zealand and Oceania**

An historical study of the changing status and roles of women in the churches in Aotearoa New Zealand and Oceania in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, and of the theological issues involved in those changes. Students will be encouraged to begin independent research on specific topics.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Church History or equivalent and 2 further points in Christian Thought and History

**CTHTHEO 351 (2 Points)**  
**The Modern Church**

A study of the history of the Church from the sixteenth century to the present day, but with greater emphasis on historiographical and methodological questions. Students will be expected to do research using primary documents and present a seminar based on this primary research.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in Church History or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History

*Restriction:* 705.241, 705.243, CHTHSEO 251

**CTHTHEO 359 (2 Points)**

**CTHTHEO 359A (1 Point)**

**CTHTHEO 359B (1 Point)**

**Church History Research Course**

This is a reading and research course for advanced students majoring in Church History. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of unit offerings in Church History. Students will normally have already proven their competence in the Church History Studies field by achieving at least a B average, and will also have demonstrated their ability to work independently. The area of study will usually be one of interest in recent Church history research and will be chosen in consultation with the Adviser appointed by the Christian Thought and History Department. The bibliography and methodology will also be determined in consultation with the Adviser.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage III in Church History or equivalent and the permission of the Director of Undergraduate Studies and Head of School

To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 359 A and B, or CHTHSEO 359

**Honours and Master's Courses**

*Prerequisite:* 16 points in Christian Thought and History including 6 points at Stage III

*Requirement:* 28 points in the subject Christian Thought and History constituted as follows: 12 points selected from CHTHSEO 701-749; 2 points from CHTHSEO 781 Research Methods in Christian Thought and History and 14 points from CHTHSEO 798 (Thesis).

**CTHTHEO 701A (2 Points)**

**CTHTHEO 701B (2 Points)**

**System and Method in Theology**

The quest for theological method in contemporary theology as illustrated in the writings of selected theologians.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 701 A and B*

**CTHTHEO 702A** (2 Points)

**CTHTHEO 702B** (2 Points)

**Twentieth Century Theology**

The study of a major twentieth century theologian or theological issue.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 702 A and B*

**CTHTHEO 703** (4 Points)

**Postmodernity and Theology**

An examination of the key texts on the breakdown of 'modernity', with critical discussion of various theological responses.

**CTHTHEO 704** (4 Points)

**CTHTHEO 704A** (2 Points)

**CTHTHEO 704B** (2 Points)

**Theology in Aotearoa New Zealand**

An exploration of selected themes, issues, and methods relevant to theology in Aotearoa New Zealand.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 704 A and B, or CHTHSEO 704*

**CTHTHEO 706** (4 Points)

**CTHTHEO 706A** (2 Points)

**CTHTHEO 706B** (2 Points)

**Topics in Historical Theology**

An advanced study of selected developments in Christian theology prior to the twentieth century, in relation to their intellectual, political and/or social contexts.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 706 A and B, or CHTHSEO 706*

**CTHTHEO 707A** (2 Points)

**CTHTHEO 707B** (2 Points)

**Special Study – Theology**

A supervised reading course. The topic may be related to one of the Theology courses offered at Master's level and shall be selected in consultation with one or more lecturers and approved by the Head of Department.

*Note: Student must have permission to enter the Master's programme. Enrolment in this course is also subject to a suitable supervisor being available*

*Restriction: CHTHSEO 748*

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 707 A and B*

**CTHTHEO 741** (4 Points)

**Subordination or Equivalence? Women and Imago Dei**

Involves students in reading significant Christian writers, including Augustine, Aquinas and Luther. Critical evaluation of their understanding of gender, sex and sexuality within their own context and in the light of contemporary debates.

**CTHTHEO 743A** (2 Points)

**CTHTHEO 743B** (2 Points)

**Religious Movements in the Nineteenth Century**

A study of religious movements within the context of nineteenth century society. The topics will be chosen from: the Oxford Movement, the Scottish Disruption, Evangelicalism and Christian Socialism,

and will raise questions about their relation to New Zealand church history.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 743 A and B*

**CTHTHEO 744** (4 Points)

**Protestant Missionaries in Historical Perspective: 1790 to the Present**

Examines selected themes dealing with inter-relation between missionaries and issues to do with culture, colonialism, commerce, indigenization, and gender, with special reference to the Pacific.

**CTHTHEO 747** (4 Points)

**The Ecumenical Movement in Historical Perspective**

Studies the origins and development of the ecumenical movement, particularly in the twentieth century. Attention is given to the World Council of Churches, the Roman Catholic Church, and major ecumenical events and texts, with selected topics studied in depth.

**CTHTHEO 748A** (2 Points)

**CTHTHEO 748B** (2 Points)

**Special Study – Church History**

A supervised reading course. The topic may be related to one of the Church History courses offered at Master's level and shall be selected in consultation with one or more lecturers and approved by the Head of Department.

*Restriction: CHTHSEO 707*

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 748 A and B*

**CTHTHEO 749** (4 Points)

**God, Violence and Power: Religion and Politics in Stuart England**

An advanced study of the links between theology, repression and resistance during the period 1603–1689. Particular attention will be paid to the role of religion in the English Civil wars and in the political developments of the Restoration period.

**CTHTHEO 750A** (2 Points)

**CTHTHEO 750B** (2 Points)

**Church and Society in Twentieth-Century New Zealand**

A study of issues involving church-society interactions in historical perspective. Particular attention will be paid to the church's role either in leading and critiquing society or in mirroring society. Topics may include sexuality, war and peace, public morality, church and politics, church and social service, church and racism.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 750 A and B*

**CTHTHEO 781** (2 Points)

**Research Methods in Christian Thought and History**

Designed to help students majoring in Christian Thought and History engage with some of the challenges of the discipline as currently practised and to develop research method skills specific to students' thesis topics.

**CTHTHEO 798A** (7 Points)

**CTHTHEO 798B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

The thesis of approximately 35,000 words should embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHSEO 798 A and B*

## Moral and Practical Theology

### Stage I

#### MPTHEO 101 (2 Points) Introduction to the Pastoral Situation

Designed to develop understanding of the situations and typical problems met in ministry, to develop a caring attitude to human and spiritual growth and to provide skills needed in pastoral care. Areas covered will include a selection of the following: introduction to the principles and to the theology of pastoral care, to the role of people engaged in the caring ministry and to the attitudes which are appropriate to this ministry in the context of New Zealand society; introduction to the processes of growth, of human and spiritual development; introduction to the counselling methods that equip the pastoral carer for the task.

*Restriction: MPTHEO 103*

#### MPTHEO 102 (2 Points) Introduction to Spirituality

A study of the sources and traditions of spiritualities in Christianity and their relevance in Aotearoa New Zealand.

#### MPTHEO 103 (2 Points) Awhi Whanau: A Cultural Approach to Pastoral Theology

This foundation course will address a broad range of issues in pastoral theology and ministry. It will give particular attention to Maori, Pakeha, and Oceanic cultures, to the influence of broader socio-economic conditions, emerging cultural concerns, and their implications for pastoral ministry.

*Restriction: MPTHEO 101*

#### MPTHEO 143 (2 Points) Introduction to Christian Ethics

An introduction to the sources, methods and praxis of Christian ethics. In addition to an introduction to the subject, topics to be covered will be chosen from the nature of ethics and its relationship with systematic theology, scripture and ethics, situation ethics, natural law, utilitarianism and cultural relativism. A range of contemporary issues will be considered to demonstrate the application of the methods discussed.

#### MPTHEO 171 (2 Points) Communication Performance

An introduction to the theory and practice of communication with an emphasis on individual speaking performance in a variety of contexts.

#### MPTHEO 172 (2 Points) Maori Language 1

This is an introductory course designed to help each student acquire confidence and competence in: reading liturgical and biblical material, conversation sessions (including the writing of the same), speech-making, and waiata (sung poetry).

#### MPTHEO 173 (2 Points) Cross-cultural Studies

This course draws attention to the social knowledge and understanding of all the participants and utilises this knowledge to examine the cultural, political and social implications for contemporary New Zealand society and to develop greater awareness, sensitivity and appropriate actions

which express the demands of justice, reconciliation and human liberation.

#### MPTHEO 176 (2 Points) Liturgics

Aims to assist the student in developing an understanding of the theology and practice of Christian worship. Attention will be paid to historical, pastoral and cultural perspectives with particular reference to contemporary worship in Aotearoa New Zealand. Topics to be covered will be chosen from: nature and principles of worship; sign, symbol and ritual, sacraments, with particular reference to baptism and Eucharist; the liturgical year; time and space in worship; scripture and preaching in worship; leadership of worship; prayer in worship, liturgy and social justice.

### Stage II

#### MPTHEO 201 (2 Points) Principles and Practice of Pastoral Counselling

Aims to extend the awareness of pastoral theology and to develop the skills needed in the various aspects of pastoral care.

*Prerequisite: MPTHEO 101 or 103*

#### MPTHEO 203 (2 Points) Understanding Oneself and Others

Explores the spiritual and psychological resources which help people understand themselves and, thus, better understand others. Includes an examination of the roles of women and men in society, and self-analysis using both genograms and the Myers-Briggs Personality Inventory. Seeks to develop an understanding of holiness and dysfunction and the role of the pastor in ministry to others.

*Prerequisite: MPTHEO 101 or 102 or 103 or 173*

#### MPTHEO 204 (2 Points) Clinical Pastoral Education

An intensive course of 400 hours of supervised pastoral ministry, often undertaken in the context of a clinical setting, usually over a 10-week period.

*Prerequisite: Approval of the Clinical Pastoral Institute*

#### MPTHEO 205 (2 Points) Contemporary Christian Spirituality

An applied study of the foundations of Christian spirituality with particular emphasis on the relationship of contemporary spiritualities to traditional roots.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology*

#### MPTHEO 206 (2 Points) Cross-cultural Issues in Pastoral Care

Examines in depth the pastoral, cultural and social issues and tensions among the various ethnic groups and cultures in Aotearoa New Zealand and the South Pacific. Course contents will emphasize the role of tradition in pastoral care and its critical hermeneutical application, pastoral apologetics, conflict resolution between cultures and cross-cultural sensitivity and respect of otherness.

*Prerequisite: MPTHEO 101 or 102 or 103 or 173*

#### MPTHEO 242 (2 Points) Spirituality and Justice

A study of contemporary social issues from a Christian perspective with an emphasis on Aotearoa

New Zealand. It will explore values for developing a spirituality of justice.

*Prerequisite:* Any 2 points in *Moral and Practical Theology*

**MPTHEO 243 (2 Points)**  
**Christian Ethics 2**

A study of historical and contemporary Christian ethical thought and praxis and its relation to theology and philosophy. A special study will be made of the understanding of grace in Christian thought and its relation to ethical practice.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in *Moral and Practical Theology*

**MPTHEO 271 (2 Points)**  
**Communication Studies: Power, Myth and Symbol in Mass Media**

Explores implications of modern forms of mass media for Christian faith and mission; icon, myth and symbol in the media culture; the place of the Church in a mass media environment; an exploration of strategies for faith communities in media education and engagement.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points from the *BTheol* schedule

**MPTHEO 272 (2 Points)**  
**Maori Perspectives**

Examines Maori perspectives on Maori society in the past and today. It includes the spiritual and material concepts that underlie and support Maori history and culture, as well as Maori responses to various initiatives, including those of the Church.

**MPTHEO 273 (2 Points)**  
**Maori Language 2**

Aims at increasing the student's competence in reading, conversation, writing, speech-making and waiata.

*Prerequisite:* *MPTHEO 172*

**MPTHEO 274 (2 Points)**  
**Church and Society**

Examines biblical, historical and theological responses of the community of faith to the society which forms its context. The aim is to critically examine such responses with a view to shaping the Church's interaction with contemporary societies, with particular emphasis on New Zealand society. Some attention is given to the examination and critique of Pakeha culture.

**MPTHEO 275 (2 Points)**  
**Mission in an Urban Context**

A study of justice, politics and power, as they relate to specific issues of urban ministry.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or *CTHTHEO 106* or 107 or 108 or 109

**MPTHEO 276 (2 Points)**  
**Homiletics**

Seeks to give theoretical and practical help in the construction and presentation of sermons. Class time will be divided between lecturing on and discussing various aspects of sermon preparation, history, context, various types, illustrations, structures etc. and the practical delivery of a trial sermon.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or *CTHTHEO 106* or 107 or 108 or 109

**MPTHEO 277 (2 Points)**  
**Communication of Faith**

A study of the theology and practice of evangelism and Church planting.

*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or *CTHTHEO 106* or 107 or 108 or 109

**MPTHEO 278 (2 Points)**

**Religious Education and Adult Learning**

Aims to extend the awareness and knowledge of students in the area of adult learning, particularly as it applies to Christian religious education. Covers aspects such as: adult religious education in New Zealand and overseas in the twentieth century; theories and practices of adult Christian education in parish and other settings; and the task of the minister/priest/leader as the Christian religious educator.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in *Moral and Practical Theology*

**MPTHEO 281 (2 Points)**  
**Christian Ritual**

Explores symbol and ritual, particularly in relation to the Christian liturgies. Includes aspects of inculturation with research on and participation in rituals.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in either *Christian Thought and History* or *Moral and Practical Theology*

---

**Stage III**

**MPTHEO 301 (2 Points)**

**Pastoral Care in Human Relationships**

Examines in depth: human relationships including family systems, sexuality and marriage, focusing in particular on dysfunction problems in human interactions. It will also examine the systems and networks in the New Zealand context which could better support and enhance these relationships.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II or equivalent in *Pastoral Care*

**MPTHEO 302 (2 Points)**

**Pastoral Care and Gender Studies**

The latest development in the field of Pastoral Care and Pastoral Theology addresses the role of gender in affecting human behaviour and response. This seminar-style course will examine some of the Christian traditions concerning gender difference and human sexuality. It will concentrate on the more recent impact of women's studies, men's studies, and gay liberation theology, and the way pastors understand and provide support for those seeking pastoral care.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II or equivalent in *Pastoral Care*

**MPTHEO 306 (2 Points)**

**Human Development and Pastoral Care**

A consideration of the phases of human development and their relationship to pastoral care.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II or equivalent in *Pastoral Care*

*Restriction:* 715.202

**MPTHEO 341 (2 Points)**

**Justice in Context**

A research seminar intended to deepen student understanding of social analysis. A biblical/theological foundation for justice will be complemented with analytical method, to the end of applying Christian social analysis to specific issues in our contemporary context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in *Moral and Practical Theology*

**MPTHEO 371 (2 Points)**

**Maori Language 3**

As for Maori Language 2, but at an advanced level.

*Prerequisite: MPTHEO 273*

**MPTHEO 372 (2 Points)**

**Maori Language 4: Kauhau**

Aims to give theoretical and practical guidance from a Maori perspective in the construction and presentation of Kauhau. It is expected that students who undertake this course are fluent speakers of Maori.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology and MPTHEO 371*

**MPTHEO 383 (2 Points)**

**Moral and Practical Theology Research Course**

This is a reading and research course for advanced students majoring in Moral and Practical Theology Studies. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of course offerings in Moral and Practical Theology. Students will normally have already proven their competence in the Moral and Practical Theology Studies field by achieving at least a B average, and will also have demonstrated their ability to work independently. The area of study will usually be one of interest in recent Moral and Practical Theology research and will be chosen in consultation with the Adviser appointed by the Moral and Practical Theology Department. The bibliography and methodology will also be determined in consultation with the Adviser.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in the Department of Moral and Practical Theology and permission of the Director of Undergraduate Studies*

**MPTHEO 386 (2 Points)**

**Religious Education as Praxis**

A study of the nature and development of faith, the context, purposes and models used in Christian education, and the implications for the educator. The course involves participation in practical work, reflection and evaluation.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology*

**MPTHEO 387 (2 Points)**

**Guided Research in Moral and Practical Theology**

Provides students with experience of some of the tools and methods for practical theological research. The topics for study will be chosen to suit the research interests of participants. Students need to have the minimum of a B average in their Stage 2 courses.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology and permission of the Director of Undergraduate Studies*

**MPTHEO 388 (2 Points)**

**Moana Church Leadership in Oceania**

A sociological-theological approach to understanding the challenges of Church leadership in Oceania within its pluralistic, multi-religious, multi-ethnic, multi-cultural/bi-cultural dimensions. Engages students in theological and sociological dialogue and critical reflection concerning the contemporary leadership situation in Oceania, particularly in response to social problems such as

poverty, violence and corruption. Alternative styles and models of leadership will be explored.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 2 in Moral and Practical Theology*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

*Prerequisite: 16 points in Moral and Practical Theology including 6 points at Stage III*

*Requirement: 28 points in the subject Moral and Practical Theology constituted as follows: 12 points selected from MPTHEO 701-704; 2 points from MPTHEO 781 Research Methods in Moral and Practical Theology and 14 points from MPTHEO 798 (Thesis).*

**MPTHEO 701 (4 Points)**

**Spirituality and Counselling**

Explores the place of spirituality in formal pastoral counselling and in 'secular' counselling settings. Many traditional and non-traditional types of spirituality are investigated, including those associated with ethnicity and gender.

**MPTHEO 702 (4 Points)**

**Moral and Practical Theology 2**

A reading and research course intended to cater for specific study interests or needs. As the subject may vary from year to year, students will need to contact the staff coordinating the course.

**MPTHEO 703 (4 Points)**

**Men, Women and Bodies**

Engages in an in-depth exploration of issues relating to embodiment for men and women. The course will cover a range of subject areas: a Theology of Body, Redemption, Sin and the Body, Body as Object and Subject, Disability and the Body, Body and Woundedness, and other related pastoral theological issues.

**MPTHEO 704 (4 Points)**

**Interpersonal Issues in Pastoral Theology**

Explores the most difficult cutting-edge interpersonal issues in pastoral care and counselling, such as erotic transference, AIDS ministries, the role of narrative in changing community identity, congregational care of the marginalized, the theologies of suffering, and the brokering of power and authority. Special attention will be given to indigenous ministry issues.

**MPTHEO 781 (2 Points)**

**Research Methods in Moral and Practical Theology**

Designed to help students majoring in Moral and Practical Theology engage with some of the challenges of the discipline as currently practised and to develop research method skills specific to students' thesis topics.

**MPTHEO 798A (7 Points)**

**MPTHEO 798B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

The thesis of approximately 35,000 words should embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject. *To complete this course students must enrol in MPTHEO 798 A and B*

# 2005 COURSE AVAILABILITY

## Availability Key

<b>Semester:</b>	<b>S1 = Semester One</b>	<b>S2 = Semester Two</b>	<b>SS = Summer School</b>
	<b>T1 = Trimester One</b>	<b>T2 = Trimester Two</b>	<b>T3 = Trimester Three</b>
<b>Location:</b>	<b>B = Carey Baptist</b>	<b>C = City Campus</b>	<b>D = Distance Learning</b>
	<b>E = Auckland College of Education</b>	<b>H = Medical &amp; Health Sciences Campus</b>	<b>J = St John's</b>
	<b>K = Unspecified within New Zealand</b>	<b>L = Trinity</b>	<b>M = Manukau Institute of Technology</b>
	<b>N = Northland Polytechnic</b>	<b>O = Online Virtual Campus</b>	<b>P = Palmerston North</b>
	<b>S = North Shore Campus</b>	<b>T = Tamaki Campus</b>	<b>V = Overseas</b>
	<b>W = Te Unga Waka (Epsom)</b>	<b>X = Auckland Extramural</b>	<b>Z = Waikato</b>

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
ACCTG 101	S1	C	ANCHIST 350	S2	C	ANTHRO 319	S1	C	ARCHDES 201	S2	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 355	S1	C	ANTHRO 324	S1	C		SS	C
	SS	C	ANCHIST 706A	S1	C	ANTHRO 328	S1	C	ARCHDES 300	S1	C
ACCTG 102	S1	C	ANCHIST 706B	S2	C	ANTHRO 331	S2	C		SS	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 717	S1	C	ANTHRO 333	S1	C	ARCHDES 301	S2	C
	SS	C	ANCHIST 718	S2	C	ANTHRO 343	S1	C	ARCHDES 374	S1	C
ACCTG 191	S1	MST	ANCHIST 722A	S1	C	ANTHRO 344	S2	C	ARCHDES 375	S1	C
ACCTG 192	S2	MST	ANCHIST 722B	S2	C	ANTHRO 345	S1	C	ARCHDES 376	S2	C
ACCTG 211	S1	C	ANCHIST 742A	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHDES 377	S2	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 742B	S2	C	ANTHRO 349	S2	C	ARCHDES 400	S1	C
ACCTG 221	S1	C	ANCHIST 743A	S1	C	ANTHRO 700A	S1	C		SS	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 743B	S2	C	ANTHRO 700B	S2	C	ARCHDES 401	S2	C
	SS	C	ANCHIST 752	S2	C	ANTHRO 701A	S1	C		SS	C
ACCTG 222	S1	C	ANCHIST 775	S2	C	ANTHRO 701B	S2	C	ARCHDES 474	S1	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 780	S1	C	ANTHRO 702	S2	C	ARCHDES 475	S1	C
ACCTG 291	S1	ST	ANCHIST 790A	S1	C	ANTHRO 703A	S1	C	ARCHDES 476	S2	C
ACCTG 292	S1	ST	ANCHIST 790B	S2	C	ANTHRO 703B	S2	C	ARCHDES 477	S2	C
ACCTG 311	S1	C	ANCHIST 792A	S1	C	ANTHRO 704	S1	C	ARCHDES 502	S1	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 792B	S2	C	ANTHRO 706	S2	C	ARCHDES 503	S2	C
ACCTG 312	S1	C	ANCHIST 794A	S1	C	ANTHRO 707	S2	C	ARCHDES 574	S1	C
	S2	C		S2	C	ANTHRO 710A	S1	C	ARCHDES 575	S1	C
ACCTG 321	S1	C	ANCHIST 794B	S2	C	ANTHRO 710B	S2	C	ARCHDES 770	S1	C
ACCTG 323	S2	C	ANCHIST 797A	S1	C	ANTHRO 711A	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 331	S1	C	ANCHIST 797B	S2	C	ANTHRO 711B	S2	C	ARCHDES 770A	S1	C
ACCTG 371	S1	C	ANTHRO 100	S1	C	ANTHRO 721A	S1	C		S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	ANTHRO 721B	S2	C	ARCHDES 770B	S1	C
ACCTG 391	S1	ST	ANTHRO 101	S1	C	ANTHRO 727A	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 392	S1	ST		S2	C	ANTHRO 727B	S2	C	ARCHDES 771	S1	C
ACCTG 393	S1	T	ANTHRO 102	S2	C	ANTHRO 729	S1	C		S2	C
	S2	ST		SS	C		S2	C	ARCHDES 771A	S1	C
ACCTG 701	S1	C	ANTHRO 103	S1	C	ANTHRO 729A	S1	C		S2	C
	S2	C	ANTHRO 104	S2	C	ANTHRO 729B	S2	C	ARCHDES 771B	S1	C
ACCTG 702A	S1	C	ANTHRO 200	S1	C	ANTHRO 730A	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 702B	S2	C	ANTHRO 201	S1	C	ANTHRO 730B	S2	C	ARCHDES 772	S1	C
ACCTG 711	S1	C	ANTHRO 203	S1	C	ANTHRO 731A	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 713	S2	C	ANTHRO 204	S2	C	ANTHRO 731B	S2	C	ARCHDES 772A	S1	C
ACCTG 714	S1	C	ANTHRO 206	S1	C	ANTHRO 732	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	ANTHRO 207	S2	C	ANTHRO 736	S2	C	ARCHDES 772B	S1	C
ACCTG 721	S1	C	ANTHRO 211	S1	C	ANTHRO 736A	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 722	S2	C	ANTHRO 215	S1	C	ANTHRO 736B	S2	C	ARCHDES 773	S1	C
ACCTG 771	S2	C	ANTHRO 219	S1	C	ANTHRO 737	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 781	S2	C	ANTHRO 221	S2	C	ANTHRO 738	S1	C	ARCHDES 773A	S1	C
ACCTG 785	S2	C	ANTHRO 222	S2	C	ANTHRO 739	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 789	S1	C	ANTHRO 233	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHDES 773B	S1	C
	S2	C	ANTHRO 239	S2	C	ANTHRO 740	S2	C		S2	C
ANATOMY 201	S1	CH	ANTHRO 240	S1	C	ANTHRO 741	S2	C	ARCHDES 774	S1	C
ANATOMY 702	S1	H		S2	C	ANTHRO 742	S1	C		S2	C
ANATOMY 703	S2	H	ANTHRO 241	S1	C	ANTHRO 743	S2	C	ARCHDES 774A	S1	C
ANATOMY 704	S1	H	ANTHRO 242	S1	C	ANTHRO 780	S1	C		S2	C
ANATOMY 705	S2	H	ANTHRO 244	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHDES 774B	S1	C
ANATOMY 751	S1	H	ANTHRO 245	S2	C	ANTHRO 780A	S1	C		S2	C
ANCHIST 100	S1	C	ANTHRO 246	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHDES 775	S1	C
ANCHIST 102	S1	C	ANTHRO 300	S2	C	ANTHRO 780B	S2	C		S2	C
ANCHIST 103	S2	C	ANTHRO 302	S1	C	ANTHRO 792A	S1	C	ARCHDES 775A	S1	C
ANCHIST 210	S1	C	ANTHRO 304	S2	C	ANTHRO 792B	S2	C		S2	C
ANCHIST 220	S2	C	ANTHRO 306	S2	C	ANTHRO 797A	S1	C	ARCHDES 775B	S1	C
ANCHIST 230	S1	C	ANTHRO 307	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C
ANCHIST 250	S2	C	ANTHRO 311	S1	C	ANTHRO 797B	S1	C	ARCHDES 776	S1	C
ANCHIST 255	S1	C	ANTHRO 314	SS	C		S2	C		S2	C
ANCHIST 324	S2	C	ANTHRO 316	S1	C	ARCHDES 100	S1	C	ARCHDES 776A	S1	C
ANCHIST 330	S1	C	ANTHRO 317	S1	C	ARCHDES 101	S2	C		S2	C
ANCHIST 340	S1	C	ANTHRO 318	S2	C	ARCHDES 200	S1	C	ARCHDES 776B	S1	C

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
ARCHDES 777	S2	C	ARCHDRC 777A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 771	S2	C	ARCHPRM 772A	S1	C
	S1	C		S2	C		S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDES 777A	S1	C	ARCHDRC 777B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 771A	S2	C	ARCHPRM 772B	S1	C
	S2	C		S2	C		S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDES 777B	S1	C	ARCHGEN 400	S1	C	ARCHHTC 771B	S2	C	ARCHPRM 773	S1	C
	S2	C		S1	C		S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 100	S2	C	ARCHGEN 590	S1	C	ARCHHTC 772	S2	C	ARCHPRM 773A	S1	C
ARCHDRC 101	S1	C	ARCHGEN 591	S1	C	ARCHHTC 772A	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 200	S1	C	ARCHGEN 592	S2	C	ARCHHTC 772B	S2	C	ARCHPRM 773B	S1	C
ARCHDRC 201	S2	C	ARCHGEN 593	S2	C		S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 300	S1	C	ARCHGEN 595A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 773	S2	C	ARCHPRM 774	S1	C
ARCHDRC 303	S2	C	ARCHGEN 595B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 773A	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 304	S1	C	ARCHGEN 700	S1	C	ARCHHTC 773B	S2	C	ARCHPRM 774A	S1	C
ARCHDRC 305	S2	C	ARCHGEN 791	S1	C		S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 400	S1	C	ARCHGEN 791A	S2	C	ARCHHTC 773A	S2	C	ARCHPRM 774B	S1	C
ARCHDRC 401	S1	C	ARCHGEN 791B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 773B	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 470	S1	C	ARCHGEN 791B	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHPRM 775	S1	C
ARCHDRC 471	S1	C	ARCHGEN 792	S1	C	ARCHHTC 774	S2	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 472	S2	C	ARCHGEN 792	S2	C	ARCHHTC 774A	S1	C	ARCHPRM 775A	S1	C
ARCHDRC 473	S2	C	ARCHGEN 792A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 474	S1	C	ARCHGEN 792A	S2	C	ARCHHTC 774B	S2	C	ARCHPRM 775B	S1	C
ARCHDRC 475	S1	C	ARCHGEN 792B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 775	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 476	S2	C	ARCHGEN 793A	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHPRM 776	S1	C
ARCHDRC 477	S2	C	ARCHGEN 793B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 775A	S2	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 570	S1	C	ARCHGEN 793B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 775B	S1	C	ARCHPRM 776A	S1	C
ARCHDRC 571	S1	C	ARCHGEN 795A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 572	S2	C	ARCHGEN 795A	S2	C	ARCHHTC 776	S2	C	ARCHPRM 776B	S1	C
ARCHDRC 573	S2	C	ARCHGEN 795B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 776A	S2	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 574	S1	C	ARCHGEN 797A	S2	C		S1	C	ARCHPRM 777	S1	C
ARCHDRC 575	S1	C	ARCHGEN 797B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 776B	S2	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 576	S2	C	ARCHHTC 100	S2	C	ARCHHTC 777	S1	C	ARCHPRM 777A	S1	C
ARCHDRC 577	S2	C	ARCHHTC 101	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 770	S1	C	ARCHHTC 202	S1	C	ARCHHTC 777A	S2	C	ARCHTECH 102	S1	C
ARCHDRC 770A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 228	S2	C	ARCHHTC 777B	S1	C	ARCHTECH 103	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 302	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 104	S1	C
ARCHDRC 770B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 304	S1	C	ARCHPRM 401	S1	C	ARCHTECH 105	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 314	S2	C	ARCHPRM 402	S2	C	ARCHTECH 202	S1	C
ARCHDRC 771	S1	C	ARCHHTC 317	S2	C	ARCHPRM 423	S2	C	ARCHTECH 203	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 319	S1	C	ARCHPRM 470	S1	C	ARCHTECH 204	S1	C
ARCHDRC 771A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 328	S2	C	ARCHPRM 471	S2	C	ARCHTECH 205	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 370	S1	C	ARCHPRM 472	S1	C	ARCHTECH 306	S1	C
ARCHDRC 771B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 376	S2	C	ARCHPRM 473	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 377	S2	C	ARCHPRM 474	S1	C	ARCHTECH 308	S1	C
ARCHDRC 772	S1	C	ARCHHTC 405	S2	C	ARCHPRM 475	S2	C	ARCHTECH 309	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 408	S1	C	ARCHPRM 476	S1	C	ARCHTECH 311	S2	C
ARCHDRC 772A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 411	S2	C	ARCHPRM 477	S2	C	ARCHTECH 401	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 470	S1	C	ARCHPRM 501	S1	C	ARCHTECH 404	S1	C
ARCHDRC 772B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 471	S1	C	ARCHPRM 502	S2	C	ARCHTECH 412	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 472	S2	C	ARCHPRM 570	S1	C	ARCHTECH 414	S1	C
ARCHDRC 773	S1	C	ARCHHTC 473	S2	C	ARCHPRM 571	S2	C	ARCHTECH 419	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 476	S1	C	ARCHPRM 572	S2	C	ARCHTECH 420	S1	C
ARCHDRC 773A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 477	S1	C	ARCHPRM 573	S1	C	ARCHTECH 470	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 478	S2	C	ARCHPRM 574	S2	C	ARCHTECH 471	S1	C
ARCHDRC 773B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 479	S2	C	ARCHPRM 575	S1	C	ARCHTECH 472	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 570	S1	C	ARCHPRM 576	S2	C	ARCHTECH 473	S2	C
ARCHDRC 774	S1	C	ARCHHTC 571	S1	C	ARCHPRM 577	S1	C	ARCHTECH 474	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 572	S2	C	ARCHPRM 770	S2	C	ARCHTECH 475	S2	C
ARCHDRC 774A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 573	S2	C	ARCHPRM 770A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 476	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 574	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 477	S2	C
ARCHDRC 774B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 574	S1	C	ARCHPRM 770B	S1	C	ARCHTECH 570	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 576	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 571	S1	C
ARCHDRC 775	S1	C	ARCHHTC 578	S2	C	ARCHPRM 771	S1	C	ARCHTECH 572	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 579	S2	C	ARCHPRM 771A	S2	C	ARCHTECH 573	S2	C
ARCHDRC 775A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 700A	S1	C	ARCHPRM 771B	S1	C	ARCHTECH 574	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 700B	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 575	S1	C
ARCHDRC 775B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 770	S1	C	ARCHPRM 772	S2	C	ARCHTECH 576	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 770A	S1	C		S1	C	ARCHTECH 577	S2	C
ARCHDRC 776	S1	C	ARCHHTC 770B	S2	C	ARCHPRM 771A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 704	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 770	S1	C	ARCHPRM 771B	S2	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 776A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 770A	S1	C		S1	C	ARCHTECH 705	S2	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 770B	S2	C	ARCHPRM 771B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 770	S1	C
ARCHDRC 776B	S1	C	ARCHHTC 770B	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHPRM 772	S1	C	ARCHTECH 770A	S1	C
ARCHDRC 777	S1	C		S1	C					S2	C
	S2	C									

2005 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2005. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
ARCHTECH 770B	S1	C	ARTHIST 715	S2	C	AUDIOL 712B	S2	T	BIOSCI 733	S1	C
	S2	C	ARTHIST 716	S2	C	AUDIOL 790A	S1	T	BIOSCI 735	S2	C
ARCHTECH 771	S1	C	ARTHIST 718A	S1	C	AUDIOL 790B	S2	T	BIOSCI 736	S2	C
	S2	C	ARTHIST 718B	S2	C		S2	T	BIOSCI 739	S2	C
ARCHTECH 771A	S1	C	ARTHIST 719	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 201	S2	T	BIOSCI 741	S1	C
	S2	C	ARTHIST 720	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 202	S1	T	BIOSCI 742	S1	O
ARCHTECH 771B	S1	C	ARTHIST 721A	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 203	S2	T		S2	C
	S2	C	ARTHIST 721B	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 700A	S1	T	BIOSCI 743	S1	C
ARCHTECH 772	S1	C	ARTHIST 790A	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 700B	S2	T	BIOSCI 744	S2	C
	S2	C	ARTHIST 790B	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 710	S2	T	BIOSCI 749	S2	C
ARCHTECH 772A	S1	C	ARTHIST 792A	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 717	S1	T	BIOSCI 750	S2	C
	S2	C	ARTHIST 792B	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 721	S1	T	BIOSCI 751	S1	C
ARCHTECH 772B	S1	C	ARTHIST 793	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 722	S2	T	BIOSCI 753	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	BEHAVSCI 729	S2	T	BIOSCI 754	S2	C
ARCHTECH 773	S1	C	ARTHIST 795A	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 736A	S1	T	BIOSCI 755	S1	C
	S2	C	ARTHIST 795B	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 736B	S2	T	BIOSCI 756	S1	C
ARCHTECH 773A	S1	C	ARTSGEN 688A	S1	CT	BEHAVSCI 737	S1	T	BIOSCI 757	S2	C
	S2	C	ARTSGEN 688B	S2	CT	BEHAVSCI 738	S2	T	BIOSCI 758	S2	C
ARCHTECH 773B	S1	C	ARTSGEN 690A	S1	CT	BEHAVSCI 739	S2	T	BIOSCI 759	S1	C
	S2	C	ARTSGEN 690B	S2	CT	BEHAVSCI 758	S1	T	BIOSCI 761	S1	C
ARCHTECH 774	S1	C	ARTSGEN 740	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 759	S2	T		S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	BIOMED 790A	S1	C	BIOSCI 762	S1	C
ARCHTECH 774A	S1	C	ARTSGEN 740A	S1	C		S2	C	BIOSCI 789A	S1	CT
	S2	C	ARTSGEN 740B	S2	C	BIOMED 790B	S1	C	BIOSCI 789B	S1	C
ARCHTECH 774B	S1	C	ARTSGEN 750	SS	C		S2	C		S2	CT
	S2	C	ARTSGEN 751	SS	C	BIOSCI 91W	S1	C	BSTHEO 101	S1	C
ARCHTECH 775	S1	C	ARTSGEN 777	S1	V	BIOSCI 92W	S2	C	BSTHEO 141	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	V	BIOSCI 100	S1	C	BSTHEO 175	S1	C
ARCHTECH 775A	S1	C	ARTSGEN 778	S1	V	BIOSCI 101	S1	C	BSTHEO 202	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	V	BIOSCI 102	S2	C	BSTHEO 208	S1	C
ARCHTECH 775B	S1	C	ARTSGEN 780	S1	C	BIOSCI 103	S2	C	BSTHEO 243	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	BIOSCI 104	S1	C	BSTHEO 252	S1	J
ARCHTECH 776	S1	C	ARTSGEN 780A	S1	C	BIOSCI 106	S2	C	BSTHEO 275	S2	C
	S2	C	ARTSGEN 780B	S2	C	BIOSCI 107	S1	C	BSTHEO 301	S1	C
ARCHTECH 776A	S1	C	ARTSGEN 792	S1	C	BIOSCI 201	S1	C	BSTHEO 314	S2	C
	S2	C	ARTSGEN 792A	S1	C	BIOSCI 202	S2	C	BSTHEO 329	S2	J
ARCHTECH 776B	S1	C	ARTSGEN 792B	S2	C	BIOSCI 203	S2	C	BSTHEO 341	S2	C
	S2	C	ARTSGEN 794A	S1	C	BIOSCI 204	S1	C	BSTHEO 369	S1	J
ARCHTECH 777	S1	C	ARTSGEN 794B	S2	C	BIOSCI 205	S2	C	BSTHEO 703A	S1	C
	S2	C	ARTSGEN 797A	S1	C	BIOSCI 206	S1	C	BSTHEO 703B	S2	C
ARCHTECH 777A	S1	C	ARTSGEN 797B	S2	C	BIOSCI 207	S2	C	BSTHEO 747A	S1	C
	S2	C	ARTSMGT 702	S1	C	BIOSCI 208	S1	C	BSTHEO 747B	S2	C
ARCHTECH 777B	S1	C	ARTSMGT 703	S2	C	BIOSCI 209	S1	C	BSTHEO 781	S1	C
	S2	C	ARTSMGT 704	S2	C	BIOSCI 320	S1	T	BTECH 420	S2	C
ARTHIST 101	S2	C	ARTSMGT 705	S1	C	BIOSCI 321	S1	C	BTECH 430	S2	C
ARTHIST 102	S1	C	ARTSMGT 706	S1	C	BIOSCI 322	S1	C	BTECH 432	S2	C
ARTHIST 103	S2	C		S2	C	BIOSCI 328	S1	C	BTECH 440A	S1	T
ARTHIST 104	S1	C	ARTSMGT 706A	S1	C	BIOSCI 329	S2	C		S2	T
ARTHIST 105	S2	C		S2	C	BIOSCI 330	S1	C	BTECH 440B	S1	T
ARTHIST 108	S1	C	ARTSMGT 706B	S2	C	BIOSCI 333	S1	C		S2	T
ARTHIST 111	S1	C	ARTSMGT 791	S1	C	BIOSCI 335	S2	C	BTECH 450A	S1	T
ARTHIST 112	SS	C		S2	C	BIOSCI 337	S2	C	BTECH 450B	S2	T
ARTHIST 201	S1	C	ARTSMGT 791A	S1	C	BIOSCI 340	S2	C	BTECH 460A	S1	C
ARTHIST 203	S1	C		S2	C	BIOSCI 349	S1	C	BTECH 460B	S2	C
ARTHIST 204	S1	C	ARTSMGT 791B	S1	C	BIOSCI 350	S1	C	BTECH 470A	S1	C
ARTHIST 205	S2	C		S2	C	BIOSCI 351	S1	C	BTECH 470B	S2	C
ARTHIST 207	S2	C	ASIAN 100	S1	C	BIOSCI 352	S2	C	BUSADMIN 701	T1	COT
ARTHIST 210	S1	C	ASIAN 101	S2	C	BIOSCI 353	S2	C		T2	CS
ARTHIST 211	S2	C	ASIAN 200	S1	C	BIOSCI 354	S2	C		T3	C
ARTHIST 223	S2	C	ASIAN 201	S2	C	BIOSCI 356	S1	C	BUSADMIN 702	T1	C
ARTHIST 302	S1	C	ASIAN 302	S2	C	BIOSCI 357	S2	C		T2	C
ARTHIST 307	S1	C	ASIAN 790A	S1	C	BIOSCI 358	S2	C		T3	CO
ARTHIST 310	S1	C	ASIAN 790B	S2	C	BIOSCI 359	S2	C	BUSADMIN 705	T1	C
ARTHIST 311	S2	C	ASIAN 794A	S1	C	BIOSCI 393	S2	T		T2	C
ARTHIST 315	S1	C		S2	C	BIOSCI 394	S1	T		T3	CO
ARTHIST 318	S1	C	ASIAN 794B	S1	C	BIOSCI 395	S2	C	BUSADMIN 710	T1	CO
ARTHIST 319	S2	C		S2	C	BIOSCI 396	S1	T		T2	CT
ARTHIST 320	S2	C	ASIAN 797A	S1	C	BIOSCI 690A	S1	CT		T3	CS
ARTHIST 323	S2	C	ASIAN 797B	S2	C	BIOSCI 690B	S2	CT	BUSADMIN 711	T1	CS
ARTHIST 326	S2	C	AUDIOL 701	S1	HT	BIOSCI 691A	S1	CT		T2	CO
ARTHIST 703A	S1	C	AUDIOL 702	S1	T	BIOSCI 691B	S2	CT		T3	CT
ARTHIST 703B	S2	C	AUDIOL 703A	S1	T	BIOSCI 724	S1	C	BUSADMIN 712	T1	C
ARTHIST 704A	S1	C	AUDIOL 703B	S2	T	BIOSCI 725	S1	C		T2	C
ARTHIST 704B	S2	C	AUDIOL 704	S2	T	BIOSCI 727	S2	C		T3	C
ARTHIST 707A	S1	C	AUDIOL 705	S2	T	BIOSCI 728	S1	C	BUSADMIN 713	SS	C
ARTHIST 707B	S2	C	AUDIOL 711	S1	T	BIOSCI 729	S2	C		T1	C
ARTHIST 709	S2	C	AUDIOL 712A	S1	T	BIOSCI 730	S2	C		T2	C

Course Code	Semester	Location									
BUSADMIN 715	T3	COS	CHEMMAT 321	S1	C	CHINESE 732B	S2	C	CLASSICS 210	S1	C
BUSADMIN 716	T3	C	CHEMMAT 331A	S1	C	CHINESE 780A	S1	C	CLASSICS 240	S2	C
BUSADMIN 724	T2	C	CHEMMAT 331B	S2	C	CHINESE 780B	S2	C	CLASSICS 270	S2	C
BUSADMIN 729	T1	C	CHEMMAT 341	S1	C	CHINESE 790	S1	C	CLASSICS 310	S1	C
BUSADMIN 730	T3	C	CHEMMAT 361	S2	C		S2	C	CLASSICS 340	S2	C
BUSADMIN 731	T2	K	CHEMMAT 411	S1	C	CHINESE 790A	S1	C	CLASSICS 370	S2	C
	T3	C	CHEMMAT 421	S1	C		S2	C	COMHLTH 101	S2	T
BUSADMIN 733	T3	C	CHEMMAT 422	S1	C	CHINESE 790B	S1	C	COMHLTH 102	S1	T
BUSADMIN 751	T3	C	CHEMMAT 423	S2	C		S2	C	COMHLTH 203	S1	T
BUSADMIN 752	T3	C	CHEMMAT 424	S1	C	CHINESE 794A	S1	C	COMHLTH 204	S2	T
BUSADMIN 755	T3	C	CHEMMAT 431A	S1	C		S2	C	COMHLTH 205	S2	T
BUSADMIN 756	T2	C	CHEMMAT 431B	S2	C	CHINESE 794B	S1	C	COMHLTH 301	S1	T
BUSADMIN 757	T1	C	CHEMMAT 441A	S1	C		S2	C	COMHLTH 302	S2	H
CHEM 91W	S1	C	CHEMMAT 441B	S2	C	CHINESE 797A	S1	C	COMHLTH 303	S2	T
CHEM 92W	S2	C	CHEMMAT 463	S1	C	CHINESE 797B	S2	C	COMHLTH 701	S1	T
CHEM 100	SS	C	CHEMMAT 712	S1	C	CIVIL 201	S1	C	COMHLTH 703	S2	T
CHEM 110	S1	C	CHEMMAT 713	S1	C	CIVIL 210	S1	C	COMHLTH 704	S1	T
	S2	C	CHEMMAT 717	S2	C	CIVIL 211	S2	C	COMHLTH 705	S1	T
	S2	C	CHEMMAT 718	S2	C	CIVIL 220	S1	C		S2	Z
CHEM 120	S2	C	CHEMMAT 721	S2	C	CIVIL 221	S2	C	COMHLTH 707	S2	TZ
CHEM 150	S1	C	CHEMMAT 722	S1	C	CIVIL 230	S1	C	COMHLTH 710	S2	T
CHEM 210	S2	C		S2	C	CIVIL 250	S2	C	COMHLTH 713	S1	T
CHEM 220	S1	C	CHEMMAT 724	S1	C	CIVIL 312	S1	C	COMHLTH 714	S2	T
CHEM 230	S2	C	CHEMMAT 726	S2	C	CIVIL 313	S2	C	COMHLTH 715	S1	TZ
CHEM 240	S1	C	CHEMMAT 727	S2	C	CIVIL 322	S1	C	COMHLTH 716	S2	T
CHEM 270	S2	C	CHEMMAT 787	S1	C	CIVIL 323	S2	C	COMHLTH 717	S1	T
CHEM 310	S2	C		S2	C	CIVIL 331	S1	C	COMHLTH 718	S2	T
CHEM 320	S1	C	CHEMMAT 788A	S1	C	CIVIL 332	S2	C	COMHLTH 720	S1	T
CHEM 330	S2	C		S2	C	CIVIL 360	S1	C	COMHLTH 722	S2	T
CHEM 340	S1	C	CHEMMAT 788B	S1	C	CIVIL 361	S2	C	COMHLTH 723	S1	TZ
CHEM 350	S1	C		S2	C	CIVIL 401	S2	C	COMHLTH 725	S1	T
CHEM 350A	S1	C	CHEMMAT 789	S1	C	CIVIL 403	S1	C		S2	T
	S2	C		S2	C	CIVIL 408A	S1	C	COMHLTH 731	S2	T
CHEM 350B	S1	C	CHEMMAT 790	S1	C	CIVIL 408B	S2	C	COMHLTH 732	S2	T
	S2	C		S2	C	CIVIL 409	S2	C	COMHLTH 733	S2	T
CHEM 370	S2	C	CHINESE 100	S1	C	CIVIL 411	S1	C	COMHLTH 735	S2	T
CHEM 380	S2	C	CHINESE 101	S2	C	CIVIL 416	S1	C	COMHLTH 738	S1	T
CHEM 390	S1	C	CHINESE 130	S2	C	CIVIL 420	S1	C		S2	T
CHEM 392	S2	C	CHINESE 200	S1	C	CIVIL 451	S2	C	COMHLTH 739	S1	T
CHEM 690A	S1	CT	CHINESE 201	S2	C	CIVIL 461	S2	C	COMHLTH 741	S2	T
CHEM 690B	S2	CT	CHINESE 222	S2	C	CIVIL 482	S2	C	COMHLTH 742	S1	T
CHEM 691	S1	C	CHINESE 277	S1	V	CIVIL 660	S2	C	COMHLTH 743	S1	T
CHEM 691A	S1	CT		S2	V	CIVIL 661	S1	C		S2	T
CHEM 691B	S2	CT		SS	V	CIVIL 702	S1	C	COMHLTH 744	S1	T
CHEM 710	S2	C	CHINESE 278	S1	V	CIVIL 703	S1	C	COMHLTH 745	S2	T
CHEM 720	S1	C	CHINESE 300	S1	C	CIVIL 704	S2	C	COMHLTH 746	S2	T
CHEM 730	S1	C	CHINESE 301	S2	C	CIVIL 710	S1	C	COMHLTH 747	S1	T
CHEM 735	S2	C	CHINESE 304	S1	C	CIVIL 711	S2	C	COMHLTH 790	S1	T
CHEM 740	S2	C	CHINESE 305	S2	C	CIVIL 714	S2	C		S2	T
CHEM 750	S1	C	CHINESE 310	S2	C	CIVIL 715	S2	C	COMHLTH 790A	S1	T
	S2	C	CHINESE 377	S1	V	CIVIL 720	S1	C		S2	T
CHEM 750A	S1	C		S2	V	CIVIL 723	S1	C	COMHLTH 790B	S1	T
CHEM 750B	S1	C		SS	V	CIVIL 724	S1	C		S2	T
	S2	C	CHINESE 378	S1	V		S2	C	COMHLTH 790X	S1	H
CHEM 751	S1	C	CHINESE 700A	S1	C	CIVIL 730	S1	C		S2	H
	S2	C	CHINESE 700B	S2	C	CIVIL 751	S1	C	COMHLTH 790Y	S1	H
CHEM 751A	S1	C	CHINESE 707	S1	C		S2	C		S2	H
CHEM 751B	S2	C	CHINESE 708	S2	C	CIVIL 752	S2	C	COMLAW 101	S1	C
CHEM 770	S2	C	CHINESE 717	S1	C	CIVIL 754	S2	C		S2	C
CHEM 780	S2	C	CHINESE 719	S1	C	CIVIL 755	S1	C		SS	C
CHEM 790	S1	C	CHINESE 722	S1	C	CIVIL 761	S2	C	COMLAW 191	S1	ST
	S2	C	CHINESE 722A	S1	C	CIVIL 764	S1	C	COMLAW 201	S1	C
CHEM 792A	S1	C	CHINESE 722B	S2	C	CIVIL 765	S1	C		S2	C
CHEM 792B	S2	C	CHINESE 724A	S1	C	CIVIL 766	S2	C	COMLAW 202	S2	C
CHEMMAT 121	S2	C	CHINESE 724B	S2	C	CIVIL 767	S1	C	COMLAW 203	S1	C
	SS	C	CHINESE 725	S2	C	CIVIL 787	S1	C		S2	C
CHEMMAT 201	S1	C	CHINESE 727	S2	C		S2	C	COMLAW 204	S1	C
CHEMMAT 211	S1	C	CHINESE 728	S1	C	CIVIL 788A	S1	C	COMLAW 205	S1	C
CHEMMAT 212	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C	COMLAW 301	S1	C
CHEMMAT 213	S2	C	CHINESE 729A	S1	C	CIVIL 788B	S1	C		S2	C
CHEMMAT 221	S1	C	CHINESE 729B	S2	C		S2	C	COMLAW 303	S1	C
CHEMMAT 231	S2	C	CHINESE 730	S1	C	CIVIL 789	S1	C	COMLAW 304	S1	C
CHEMMAT 241	S1	C	CHINESE 730A	S1	C		S2	C	COMLAW 305	S2	C
CHEMMAT 311	S2	C	CHINESE 730B	S2	C	CIVIL 790	S1	C	COMLAW 311	S2	C
CHEMMAT 312	S1	C	CHINESE 731A	S1	C		S2	C	COMLAW 313	S2	C
CHEMMAT 315	S2	C	CHINESE 731B	S2	C	CLASSICS 110	S1	C	COMLAW 740A	S1	C
CHEMMAT 316	S2	C	CHINESE 732A	S1	C	CLASSICS 130	S2	C	COMLAW 740B	S2	C

2005 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2005. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
COMLAW 741A	S1	C	COMPSCI 716	S2	T	DANCE 110B	S2	C	ECON 212	S1	C
COMLAW 741B	S2	C	COMPSCI 720	S1	C	DANCE 111A	S1	C	ECON 221	S1	C
COMLAW 746	S2	C	COMPSCI 725	S2	C	DANCE 111B	S2	C		S2	C
COMLAW 747	S2	C	COMPSCI 732	S1	C	DANCE 112	S2	C	ECON 232	S2	C
COMLAW 748	S1	C	COMPSCI 734	S1	T	DANCE 201	S1	C	ECON 241	S2	C
COMLAW 749	S2	C	COMPSCI 742	S2	C	DANCE 205A	S1	C	ECON 301	S1	C
COMLAW 754	S1	C	COMPSCI 750	S2	C	DANCE 205B	S2	C	ECON 303	S2	C
COMLAW 765	S1	C	COMPSCI 755	S1	C	DANCE 206A	S1	C	ECON 304	S1	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 760	S1	C	DANCE 206B	S2	C	ECON 311	S1	C
COMLAW 792A	S1	C	COMPSCI 765	S2	C	DANCE 212	S2	C	ECON 321	S2	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 767	S1	C	DANCE 307A	S1	C	ECON 322	S1	C
COMLAW 792B	S1	C	COMPSCI 773	S1	T	DANCE 307B	S2	C	ECON 341	S1	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 775	S2	T	DANCE 308A	S1	C	ECON 342	S2	C
COMPLIT 100	S1	C	COMPSCI 777	S2	C	DANCE 308B	S2	C	ECON 343	S2	C
COMPLIT 200	S2	C	COMPSCI 780	S1	CT	DANCE 309A	S1	C	ECON 351	S1	C
COMPLIT 204	S2	C		S2	CT	DANCE 309B	S2	C	ECON 352	S2	C
COMPLIT 300	S2	C		SS	CT	DANCE 310A	S1	C	ECON 361	S1	C
COMPLIT 702	S2	C	COMPSCI 780A	S1	CT	DANCE 310B	S2	C	ECON 373	S1	C
COMPLIT 703	S1	C	COMPSCI 780B	S2	CT	DANCE 312A	S1	C	ECON 381	S2	C
COMPLIT 704	S1	C	COMPSCI 789A	S1	CT	DANCE 312B	S2	C	ECON 701	S1	C
COMPLIT 705	S1	C	COMPSCI 789B	S2	CT	DANCE 315	S2	C	ECON 702	S2	C
COMPLIT 792	S2	C	COMPSCI 790	S1	C	DANCE 350	S1	C	ECON 703	S1	C
COMPLIT 792A	S1	C	COMPSCI 797A	S1	CT	DANCE 765	S1	C	ECON 711	S2	C
COMPLIT 792B	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 765A	S1	C	ECON 712	S1	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 765B	S2	C	ECON 713	S2	C
COMPLIT 794A	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 766	S1	C	ECON 721	S1	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 767	S2	C	ECON 723	S2	C
COMPLIT 794B	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 768	S2	C	ECON 741	S1	C
COMPLIT 797A	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 770A	S1	C	ECON 742	S2	C
COMPLIT 797B	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 770B	S2	C	ECON 747	S2	C
COMPSCI 101	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 791A	S1	C	ECON 751	S1	C
	S2	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 791B	S2	C	ECON 761	S2	C
	SS	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 793	S1	C	ECON 763	S1	C
COMPSCI 105	S1	T	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 793A	S1	C	ECON 771	S1	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 793B	S2	C	ECON 772	S2	C
	SS	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 700A	S1	C	ECON 773	S1	C
COMPSCI 111	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 700B	S2	C	ECON 781	S2	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 701	S1	C	ECON 782	S2	C
COMPSCI 210	S1	T	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 702A	S1	C	ECON 789	S1	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 702B	S2	C		S2	C
COMPSCI 220	S1	T	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 706	S1	C	ECON 790A	S1	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT		S2	C		S2	C
COMPSCI 225	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 792	S1	C	ECON 790B	S1	C
	S2	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT		S2	C		S2	C
COMPSCI 230	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 792A	S1	C	ECON 792A	S1	C
	S2	T	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 792B	S2	C		S2	C
COMPSCI 280	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 797A	S1	C	ECON 792B	S1	C
	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DEVELOP 797B	S2	C		S2	C
COMPSCI 313	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 701A	S1	C	EDCURR 102	S1	C
COMPSCI 314	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 701B	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	T	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 704A	S1	C	EDCURR 103	S2	M
COMPSCI 320	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 704B	S2	C	EDCURR 104	S1	M
COMPSCI 330	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 705A	S1	C	EDCURR 106A	S1	CM
COMPSCI 334	S1	T	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 705B	S2	C	EDCURR 106B	S2	CM
COMPSCI 335	S2	T	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 720A	S1	C	EDCURR 107A	S1	CM
COMPSCI 340	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 720B	S2	C	EDCURR 107B	S2	CM
COMPSCI 345	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 721	S1	C	EDCURR 108	S2	CM
COMPSCI 350	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT		S2	C	EDCURR 202A	S1	CM
COMPSCI 366	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 790A	S1	C	EDCURR 202B	S2	CM
COMPSCI 367	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 790B	S2	C	EDCURR 203A	S1	CM
COMPSCI 372	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 794A	S1	C	EDCURR 203B	S2	CM
COMPSCI 375	S1	T	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 794B	S2	C	EDCURR 204A	S1	CM
COMPSCI 380	S1	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 797A	S1	C	EDCURR 204B	S2	CM
	S2	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DRAMA 797B	S2	C	EDCURR 206A	S1	CM
	SS	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	ECON 101	S1	C	EDCURR 206B	S2	CM
COMPSCI 380A	S1	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT		S2	C	EDCURR 209	S1	CM
COMPSCI 380B	S2	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT		SS	C	EDCURR 209A	S1	M
COMPSCI 690A	S1	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	ECON 111	S1	C	EDCURR 214A	S1	CM
COMPSCI 690B	S2	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT		S2	C	EDCURR 214B	S2	M
COMPSCI 691A	S1	CT	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT		SS	C	EDCURR 215A	S1	CM
COMPSCI 691B	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	ECON 191	S2	MST	EDCURR 215B	S2	M
	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	ECON 201	S1	C	EDCURR 216A	S1	CM
COMPSCI 702	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT		S2	C	EDCURR 216B	S2	CM
COMPSCI 703	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT		SS	C	EDCURR 601A	S1	C
COMPSCI 708	S1	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	ECON 202	S2	C	EDCURR 601B	S2	C
COMPSCI 711	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	ECON 204	S2	C	EDCURR 602A	S1	C
COMPSCI 715	S2	C	COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	ECON 211	S1	C			

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
EDCURR 602B	S2	C	EDCURR 661A	S1	C	EDPROF 691B	S1	C	EDUC 348	S1	C
EDCURR 603A	S1	C	EDCURR 661B	S2	C	EDCURR 661B	S2	C	EDUC 351	S1	C
EDCURR 603B	S2	C	EDCURR 663A	S1	C	EDPROF 692	S1	C		S2	M
EDCURR 604A	S1	C	EDCURR 663B	S2	C		S2	C	EDUC 352	S2	C
EDCURR 604B	S2	C	EDCURR 664A	S1	C	EDPROF 692A	S1	C	EDUC 380	S2	C
EDCURR 605A	S1	C	EDCURR 664B	S2	C	EDPROF 692B	S2	C	EDUC 381	S2	C
EDCURR 605B	S2	C	EDCURR 665A	S1	C	EDPROF 693	S1	C	EDUC 383	S1	M
EDCURR 606A	S1	C	EDCURR 665B	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C
EDCURR 606B	S2	C	EDCURR 666A	S1	C	EDPROF 693A	S1	C	EDUC 705	S2	C
EDCURR 607A	S1	C	EDCURR 666B	S2	C	EDPROF 693B	S2	C	EDUC 707A	S1	C
EDCURR 607B	S2	C	EDCURR 667A	S1	C	EDPROF 731A	S1	C	EDUC 707B	S2	C
EDCURR 608A	S1	C	EDCURR 667B	S2	C	EDPROF 731B	S2	C	EDUC 708	S2	C
EDCURR 608B	S2	C	EDCURR 668A	S1	C	EDPROF 733	S1	C	EDUC 717	S1	C
EDCURR 611A	S1	C	EDCURR 668B	S2	C	EDPROF 734	S2	C		S2	C
EDCURR 611B	S2	C	EDCURR 670A	S1	C	EDPROF 735A	S1	C	EDUC 717A	S1	C
EDCURR 612A	S1	C	EDCURR 670B	S2	C	EDPROF 735B	S2	C	EDUC 717B	S2	C
EDCURR 612B	S2	C	EDCURR 671A	S1	C	EDPROF 736A	S1	C	EDUC 718	S1	C
EDCURR 613A	S1	C	EDCURR 671B	S2	C	EDPROF 736B	S2	C	EDUC 723	S2	C
EDCURR 613B	S2	C	EDCURR 672A	S1	C	EDPROF 743	S2	T	EDUC 728	S2	C
EDCURR 619A	S1	C	EDCURR 672B	S2	C	EDPROF 744	S1	T	EDUC 730	S2	C
EDCURR 619B	S2	C	EDCURR 675A	S1	C		S2	T	EDUC 741	S1	C
EDCURR 620A	S1	C	EDCURR 675B	S2	C	EDPROF 745	S2	T	EDUC 742A	S1	C
EDCURR 620B	S2	C	EDCURR 676A	S1	C	EDPROF 746	S1	T	EDUC 742B	S2	C
EDCURR 622A	S1	C	EDCURR 676B	S2	C	EDPROF 747A	S1	T	EDUC 746	S1	C
EDCURR 622B	S2	C	EDCURR 677A	S1	C	EDPROF 747B	S2	T	EDUC 753	S2	C
EDCURR 623A	S1	C	EDCURR 677B	S2	C	EDPROF 749	S1	T	EDUC 761	S1	C
EDCURR 623B	S2	C	EDCURR 678A	S1	C	EDPROF 750	S2	T	EDUC 762	S2	C
EDCURR 624A	S1	C	EDCURR 678B	S2	C	EDPROF 770	S1	C	EDUC 772	S2	C
EDCURR 624B	S2	C	EDCURR 679A	S1	C	EDPROF 771	S2	C	EDUC 774	S2	C
EDCURR 625A	S1	C	EDCURR 679B	S2	C	EDPROF 772A	S1	C	EDUC 778	S1	C
EDCURR 625B	S2	C	EDCURR 680A	S1	C	EDPROF 772B	S2	C		S2	C
EDCURR 626A	S1	C	EDCURR 680B	S2	C	EDPROF 790	S1	C	EDUC 778A	S1	C
EDCURR 626B	S2	C	EDCURR 681A	S1	C		S2	C	EDUC 778B	S2	C
EDCURR 627A	S1	C	EDCURR 681B	S2	C	EDPROF 790A	S1	C	EDUC 784A	S1	C
EDCURR 627B	S2	C	EDCURR 682A	S1	C		S2	C	EDUC 784B	S2	C
EDCURR 628A	S1	C	EDCURR 682B	S2	C	EDPROF 790B	S1	C	EDUC 785	S1	C
EDCURR 628B	S2	C	EDCURR 690A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C
EDCURR 629A	S1	C	EDCURR 690B	S2	C	EDPROF 794	S1	T	EDUC 785A	S1	C
EDCURR 629B	S2	C	EDPROF 100	S2	M		S2	T	EDUC 785B	S2	C
EDCURR 630A	S1	C	EDPROF 100A	S1	M	EDPROF 794A	S2	T	EDUC 787A	S1	C
EDCURR 630B	S2	C	EDPROF 100B	S2	M		S2	T	EDUC 787B	S2	C
EDCURR 631A	S1	C	EDPROF 200A	S1	CM	EDPROF 794B	S1	T	EDUC 790	S1	C
EDCURR 631B	S2	C	EDPROF 200B	S2	CM		S2	T		S2	C
EDCURR 632A	S1	C	EDPROF 210A	S1	CM	EDUC 111	S1	M	EDUC 790A	S1	C
EDCURR 632B	S2	C	EDPROF 210B	S2	CM	EDUC 112	S2	M	EDUC 790B	S2	C
EDCURR 633A	S1	C	EDPROF 211A	S1	C	EDUC 113	S2	C	EDUC 797A	S1	C
EDCURR 633B	S2	C	EDPROF 211B	S2	C		SS	C		S2	C
EDCURR 634A	S1	C	EDPROF 300A	S1	CM	EDUC 114	S1	C	EDUC 797B	S1	C
EDCURR 634B	S2	C	EDPROF 300B	S2	CM	EDUC 115	S1	C		S2	C
EDCURR 635A	S1	C	EDPROF 601A	S1	C	EDUC 116	S1	C	ELECCOMP 692A	S1	CT
EDCURR 635B	S2	C	EDPROF 601B	S2	C	EDUC 130	S1	V	ELECCOMP 692B	S2	CT
EDCURR 636A	S1	C	EDPROF 602	S1	C	EDUC 131	S1	V	ELECTENG 101	S2	C
EDCURR 636B	S2	C	EDPROF 603A	S1	C	EDUC 132	S2	V		SS	C
EDCURR 637A	S1	C	EDPROF 603B	S2	C	EDUC 201	SS	C	ELECTENG 202	S1	C
EDCURR 637B	S2	C	EDPROF 604A	S1	C	EDUC 204	S2	C	ELECTENG 203	S1	C
EDCURR 638A	S1	C	EDPROF 604B	S2	C	EDUC 207	S2	C	ELECTENG 204	S2	C
EDCURR 638B	S2	C	EDPROF 609A	S1	C	EDUC 221	S2	C	ELECTENG 205	S2	C
EDCURR 639A	S1	C	EDPROF 609B	S2	C	EDUC 223	S1	C	ELECTENG 206	S2	C
EDCURR 639B	S2	C	EDPROF 610A	S1	C	EDUC 224	S1	C	ELECTENG 207	S1	C
EDCURR 640A	S1	C	EDPROF 610B	S2	C		S2	M	ELECTENG 208	S1	C
EDCURR 640B	S2	C	EDPROF 611A	S1	C	EDUC 225	S1	C	ELECTENG 301A	S1	C
EDCURR 641A	S1	C	EDPROF 611B	S2	C		S2	M	ELECTENG 301B	S2	C
EDCURR 641B	S2	C	EDPROF 612A	S1	C	EDUC 283	S1	CM	ELECTENG 302	S1	C
EDCURR 646A	S1	C	EDPROF 612B	S2	C		S2	C	ELECTENG 303	S2	C
EDCURR 646B	S2	C	EDPROF 614A	S1	C	EDUC 304	S2	C	ELECTENG 304	S2	C
EDCURR 647A	S1	C	EDPROF 614B	S2	C	EDUC 306	S1	C	ELECTENG 305	S2	C
EDCURR 647B	S2	C	EDPROF 622A	S1	C	EDUC 310	S2	C	ELECTENG 306	S1	C
EDCURR 648A	S1	C	EDPROF 622B	S2	C	EDUC 311	S1	M	ELECTENG 401A	S1	C
EDCURR 648B	S2	C	EDPROF 624A	S1	C	EDUC 312	SS	C	ELECTENG 401B	S2	C
EDCURR 649A	S1	C	EDPROF 624B	S2	C	EDUC 313A	S1	C	ELECTENG 411	S1	C
EDCURR 649B	S2	C	EDPROF 625A	S1	C	EDUC 313B	S2	C	ELECTENG 412	S1	C
EDCURR 650A	S1	C	EDPROF 625B	S2	C	EDUC 315A	S1	C	ELECTENG 413	S1	C
EDCURR 650B	S2	C	EDPROF 633	S1	C	EDUC 315B	S2	C	ELECTENG 414	S1	C
EDCURR 651A	S1	C	EDPROF 634	S2	C	EDUC 316	S1	C	ELECTENG 421	S2	C
EDCURR 651B	S2	C	EDPROF 691	S1	C	EDUC 317	S2	C	ELECTENG 422	S2	C
EDCURR 652A	S1	C		S2	C	EDUC 341	S1	C	ELECTENG 423	S2	C
EDCURR 652B	S2	C	EDPROF 691A	S1	C	EDUC 342	S2	C	ELECTENG 701	S1	C

2005 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2005. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
ELECTENG 703	S2	C	ENGLISH 256	S1	C	ENGSCI 332	S2	C	ENVENG 750	S1	C
ELECTENG 704	S1	C	ENGLISH 257	S2	C	ENGSCI 341	S1	C	ENVENG 751	S1	C
ELECTENG 705	S1	C	ENGLISH 314	S2	C	ENGSCI 342	S2	C	ENVENG 752	S2	C
ELECTENG 706	S1	C	ENGLISH 315	S1	C	ENGSCI 361	S2	C	ENVENG 753	S2	C
ELECTENG 709	S2	C	ENGLISH 321	S2	C	ENGSCI 371	S2	C	ENVENG 787	S1	C
ELECTENG 711	S1	C	ENGLISH 323	S1	C	ENGSCI 372	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	ENGLISH 326	S1	C	ENGSCI 391	S1	C	ENVENG 788A	S1	C
ELECTENG 712	S2	C	ENGLISH 332	S1	C	ENGSCI 400A	S1	C		S2	C
ELECTENG 713	S1	C	ENGLISH 333	S2	C	ENGSCI 400B	S2	C	ENVENG 788B	S1	C
	S2	C	ENGLISH 336	S2	C	ENGSCI 402	S1	C		S2	C
ELECTENG 714	S1	C	ENGLISH 339	S2	C	ENGSCI 403	S1	C	ENVENG 789	S1	C
ELECTENG 715	S1	C	ENGLISH 342	S1	C	ENGSCI 414	S1	C		S2	C
ELECTENG 787	S1	C	ENGLISH 343	S2	C	ENGSCI 415	S1	C	ENVENG 789X	S2	C
	S2	C	ENGLISH 344	S1	C	ENGSCI 416	S2	C	ENVENG 789Y	S2	C
ELECTENG 788A	S1	C	ENGLISH 346	S2	C	ENGSCI 440	S1	C	ENVENG 790	S1	C
	S2	C	ENGLISH 347	S2	C	ENGSCI 441	S2	C		S2	C
ELECTENG 788B	S1	C	ENGLISH 350	S2	C	ENGSCI 442	S2	C	ENVMTGT 741	S1	T
	S2	C	ENGLISH 705A	S1	C	ENGSCI 443	S2	C	ENVMTGT 742	S1	T
ELECTENG 789	S1	C	ENGLISH 705B	S2	C	ENGSCI 450	S1	C	ENVMTGT 743	S2	C
	S2	C	ENGLISH 713	S1	C	ENGSCI 451	S1	C	ENVMTGT 745	S1	T
ELECTENG 790	S1	C		S2	C	ENGSCI 452	S2	C	ENVMTGT 790	S1	T
	S2	C	ENGLISH 713A	S1	C	ENGSCI 453	S2	C		S2	T
ENGGEN 104	S1	C		S2	C	ENGSCI 460	S1	C	ENVMTGT 790A	S1	T
ENGGEN 110	S1	C	ENGLISH 713B	S1	C	ENGSCI 461	S2	C		S2	T
	S2	C		S2	C	ENGSCI 462	S2	C	ENVMTGT 790B	S1	T
ENGGEN 111	S2	C	ENGLISH 714A	S1	C	ENGSCI 463	S2	C		S2	T
ENGGEN 121	S1	C	ENGLISH 714B	S2	C	ENGSCI 464	S2	C	ENVSCI 101	S2	C
	SS	C	ENGLISH 717A	S1	C	ENGSCI 471	S1	C	ENVSCI 201	S1	C
ENGGEN 202	S2	C	ENGLISH 717B	S2	C	ENGSCI 472	S2	C	ENVSCI 301	S2	C
ENGGEN 203	S2	C	ENGLISH 730A	S1	C	ENGSCI 701	S1	C	ENVSCI 310	S2	C
ENGGEN 299	S1	C	ENGLISH 730B	S2	C		S2	C	ENVSCI 696A	S1	C
	S2	C	ENGLISH 745	S2	C	ENGSCI 711	S1	C	ENVSCI 696B	S2	C
ENGGEN 302	S1	C	ENGLISH 750A	S1	C		S2	C	ENVSCI 697	S2	C
ENGGEN 402	S1	C	ENGLISH 750B	S2	C	ENGSCI 720	S1	C	ENVSCI 697A	S1	T
ENGGEN 499	S1	C	ENGLISH 751A	S1	C	ENGSCI 721	S1	C	ENVSCI 697B	S2	T
	S2	C	ENGLISH 751B	S2	C	ENGSCI 741	S1	C	ENVSCI 701	S2	T
ENGGEN 601	S1	C	ENGLISH 753	S2	C	ENGSCI 742	S2	C	ENVSCI 702	S1	T
ENGGEN 602	S2	C	ENGLISH 756	S2	C	ENGSCI 743	S2	C	ENVSCI 703	S2	T
ENGGEN 611	S1	C	ENGLISH 758	S2	C	ENGSCI 744	S2	C	ENVSCI 710	S1	T
	S2	C	ENGLISH 759	S1	C	ENGSCI 751	S1	C	ENVSCI 711	S1	T
ENGGEN 701	S1	C	ENGLISH 761	S1	C	ENGSCI 752	S2	C	ENVSCI 713	S2	T
ENGGEN 702	S1	C	ENGLISH 762	S2	C	ENGSCI 787	S1	C	ENVSCI 714	S2	T
ENGGEN 703	S1	C	ENGLISH 763A	S1	C		S2	C	ENVSCI 715	S1	T
ENGGEN 704	S1	C	ENGLISH 763B	S2	C	ENGSCI 788A	S1	C	ENVSCI 716	S1	T
ENGGEN 705	S2	C	ENGLISH 765	S1	C		S2	C	ENVSCI 722	S1	C
ENGGEN 706	S2	C	ENGLISH 767	S1	C	ENGSCI 788B	S1	C	ENVSCI 726	S2	T
ENGGEN 707	S2	C	ENGLISH 792A	S1	C		S2	C	ENVSCI 733	S1	T
ENGGEN 708	S2	C		S2	C	ENGSCI 789	S1	C	ENVSCI 734	S2	T
ENGGEN 757A	S1	C	ENGLISH 792B	S1	C		S2	C	ENVSCI 735	S2	T
	S2	C		S2	C	ENGSCI 790	S1	C	ENVSCI 736	S2	T
ENGGEN 757B	S1	C	ENGLISH 794A	S1	C		S2	C	ENVSCI 737	S2	T
	S2	C		S2	C	ENGSCI 791	S1	C	ESOL 10W	S1	C
ENGGEN 760A	S1	C	ENGLISH 794B	S1	C	ENGSCI 792	S2	C	ESOL 20W	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	ENGWRIT 101	S1	C	ESOL 101	S1	C
ENGGEN 760B	S1	C	ENGLISH 797A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	ENGLISH 797B	S2	C		SS	C		SS	C
ENGGEN 790	S1	C	ENGSCI 111	S1	CX	ENVENG 201	S2	C	ESOL 102	S1	C
	S2	C		SS	C	ENVENG 210	S1	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 91W	S1	C	ENGSCI 131	S1	C	ENVENG 243	S2	C		SS	C
ENGLISH 92W	S2	C		S2	C	ENVENG 244	S2	C	ESOL 200	S1	C
ENGLISH 100	S2	C	ENGSCI 211	S1	C	ENVENG 324	S2	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 101	S1	C		SS	C	ENVENG 333	S1	C		SS	C
ENGLISH 103	S2	C	ENGSCI 212	S1	C	ENVENG 341	S2	C	ESOL 201	S1	C
ENGLISH 107	S1	C	ENGSCI 231	S1	C	ENVENG 342A	S1	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 109	S2	C		S2	C	ENVENG 342B	S2	C		SS	C
ENGLISH 111	S1	C	ENGSCI 232	S2	C	ENVENG 402	S1	C	ESOL 202	S1	C
ENGLISH 121	S1	C	ENGSCI 255	S1	C	ENVENG 403	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	ENGSCI 261	S1	C	ENVENG 405	S1	C	EUROPEAN 100	S2	C
ENGLISH 200	S1	C	ENGSCI 262	S2	C	ENVENG 406A	S1	C	EUROPEAN 201	SS	C
ENGLISH 202	S2	C	ENGSCI 271	S2	C	ENVENG 406B	S2	C	EUROPEAN 211	S1	C
ENGLISH 213	S2	C	ENGSCI 272	S2	C	ENVENG 407	S1	C	EUROPEAN 303	S1	C
ENGLISH 219	S1	C	ENGSCI 274	S2	C	ENVENG 441	S1	C	EUROPEAN 700	S2	C
ENGLISH 220	S1	C	ENGSCI 311	S1	C	ENVENG 701	S1	C	FINANCE 251	S1	C
ENGLISH 221	S1	C		S2	C	ENVENG 702	S1	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 230	S2	C	ENGSCI 312	S1	C	ENVENG 744	S1	C		SS	C
ENGLISH 240	S2	C	ENGSCI 321	S1	C	ENVENG 745	S1	C	FINANCE 261	S1	C
ENGLISH 255	SS	C	ENGSCI 331	S2	C	ENVENG 746	S2	C		S2	C

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
FINANCE 351	S1	C	FOODSCI 705A	S1	C	FRENCH 785B	S2	C	FTVMS 792A	S2	C
	S2	C	FOODSCI 705B	S2	C	FRENCH 790	S1	C	FTVMS 792B	S1	C
FINANCE 361	S1	C	FOODSCI 706	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	FOODSCI 707	S1	C	FRENCH 790A	S1	C		S2	C
FINANCE 362	S1	C	FOODSCI 708	S2	C	FRENCH 790B	S2	C	FTVMS 797A	S1	C
	S2	C	FOODSCI 709A	S1	C	FRENCH 792	S1	C	FTVMS 797B	S2	C
FINANCE 701	S1	C	FOODSCI 709B	S2	C		S2	C	GENPRAC 611	T3	H
	S2	C	FOODSCI 710	SS	C	FRENCH 792A	S1	C	GENPRAC 701	S1	T
FINANCE 702A	S1	C	FOODSCI 789A	S1	C	FRENCH 792B	S2	C	GENPRAC 702	S1	T
FINANCE 702B	S2	C	FOODSCI 789B	S2	C	FRENCH 794A	S1	C		S2	T
FINANCE 751	S2	C	FORENSIC 701	S2	C		S2	C	GENPRAC 703	S1	T
FINANCE 761	S1	C	FORENSIC 702	S1	C	FRENCH 794B	S2	C	GENPRAC 704	S1	K
FINANCE 762	S1	C	FORENSIC 703	S1	C	FRENCH 797A	S1	C		S2	T
FINANCE 784	S1	C	FORENSIC 704	S2	C		S2	C	GENPRAC 709	S2	T
FINANCE 785	S2	C	FORENSIC 705	S1	C	FRENCH 797B	S1	C	GENPRAC 735	S1	T
FINANCE 789	S1	C	FORENSIC 705A	S1	C		S2	C	GENPRAC 736	S2	T
	S2	C		S2	C	FTVMS 100	S1	C	GENPRAC 737	S1	T
FINEARTS 100A	S1	C	FORENSIC 705B	S1	C		SS	C	GENPRAC 739A	S1	K
FINEARTS 100B	S2	C		S2	C	FTVMS 101	S2	C	GENPRAC 739B	S2	K
FINEARTS 200A	S1	C	FORENSIC 706	S1	C		SS	C	GENPRAC 742	S2	T
FINEARTS 200B	S2	C	FRENCH 101	S1	C	FTVMS 110	SS	C	GENPRAC 749	S1	T
FINEARTS 300A	S1	C		S2	C	FTVMS 200	S2	C	GENPRAC 750	S1	T
FINEARTS 300B	S2	C		SS	C	FTVMS 201	S2	C	GENPRAC 753	S2	T
FINEARTS 301	S1	C	FRENCH 102	S1	C	FTVMS 202	S1	C	GENPRAC 754	S2	T
FINEARTS 400A	S1	C		S2	C	FTVMS 203	S2	C	GENPRAC 755	S2	K
FINEARTS 400B	S1	C	FRENCH 103	S1	C	FTVMS 204	S1	C	GENPRAC 756	S1	T
	S2	C		S2	C	FTVMS 205	S1	C	GENPRAC 760	S1	T
FINEARTS 401A	S1	C	FRENCH 129	S1	C	FTVMS 206	SS	C	GENPRAC 761	S2	T
FINEARTS 401B	S2	C	FRENCH 161	S1	K	FTVMS 211	S2	C	GENPRAC 762	S1	K
FINEARTS 651A	S1	CK	FRENCH 162	S2	K	FTVMS 300	S1	C	GENPRAC 763	S2	T
FINEARTS 651B	S2	CK	FRENCH 200	S1	C	FTVMS 301	S1	C	GENPRAC 770	S1	K
FINEARTS 652A	S1	CK		S2	C	FTVMS 302	S2	C	GENPRAC 771	S2	T
FINEARTS 652B	S2	CK	FRENCH 214	S2	C	FTVMS 303	S1	C	GENPRAC 774	S1	T
FINEARTS 690A	S1	CK	FRENCH 230	S2	C	FTVMS 311	S2	C	GENPRAC 775	S2	T
FINEARTS 690B	S2	CK	FRENCH 231	S1	C	FTVMS 312	S2	C	GENPRAC 778	S1	T
FINEARTS 753A	S1	CK	FRENCH 241	S1	C	FTVMS 313	S1	C	GENPRAC 780	S1	T
FINEARTS 753B	S2	CK	FRENCH 277	S1	V	FTVMS 320	S2	C	GENPRAC 781	S2	T
FINEARTS 754A	S1	CK		S2	V	FTVMS 321	S1	C	GENPRAC 782	S1	T
	S2	C		SS	V	FTVMS 322	S2	C	GENPRAC 783	S2	T
FINEARTS 754B	S1	C	FRENCH 278	S1	V	FTVMS 703	S1	C	GENPRAC 784A	S1	T
	S2	CK		S2	V	FTVMS 703A	S1	C	GENPRAC 784B	S2	T
FINEARTS 762A	S1	CK		SS	V	FTVMS 703B	S1	C	GENPRAC 785	S2	T
FINEARTS 762B	S2	CK	FRENCH 300	S1	C		S2	C	GENPRAC 786	S1	T
FINEARTS 763A	S1	CK		S2	C	FTVMS 705	S2	C	GENPRAC 787	S1	T
FINEARTS 763B	S1	K	FRENCH 314	S2	C	FTVMS 722	S1	C		S2	T
	S2	CK	FRENCH 320	S2	C	FTVMS 723	S2	C		SS	H
FINEARTS 764A	S1	C	FRENCH 322	S1	C	FTVMS 724	S1	C	GEOG 91W	S1	C
FINEARTS 764B	S2	C		S2	V	FTVMS 733	S1	C	GEOG 92W	S2	C
FINEARTS 791A	S1	CK	FRENCH 330	S1	C	FTVMS 735	S2	C	GEOG 101	S1	C
FINEARTS 791B	S2	CK		S2	C	FTVMS 736	S2	C		S2	C
FINEARTS 797A	S1	C		SS	C	FTVMS 737	S2	C	GEOG 102	S1	C
FINEARTS 797B	S2	C	FRENCH 341	S1	C	FTVMS 738	S1	C		S2	C
FINMGMT 701	T1	C	FRENCH 342	S2	C	FTVMS 750	S1	C	GEOG 103	SS	C
FINMGMT 702	T2	C	FRENCH 349	S1	C	FTVMS 752	S2	C	GEOG 201	S2	C
FINMGMT 703	T3	C	FRENCH 377	S1	V	FTVMS 753	S2	C	GEOG 202	S1	C
FINMGMT 712	T1	C		S2	V	FTVMS 754	S1	C	GEOG 204	S1	C
	T2	C		SS	V	FTVMS 758	S1	C	GEOG 205	S1	C
FINMGMT 713	SS	C	FRENCH 378	S1	V	FTVMS 759	S2	C		SS	C
	T1	C		S2	V	FTVMS 760A	S1	C	GEOG 207	SS	C
	T2	C		SS	V	FTVMS 760B	S2	C	GEOG 208	S2	C
	T3	C	FRENCH 700A	S1	C	FTVMS 761A	S1	C	GEOG 302	S2	C
FINMGMT 714	T1	C	FRENCH 700B	S2	C	FTVMS 761B	S2	C	GEOG 305	S2	C
	T2	C	FRENCH 701	S2	C	FTVMS 762	S1	C	GEOG 312	S1	C
	T1	C	FRENCH 710A	S1	C		S2	C	GEOG 315	S1	C
FINMGMT 715	T2	C	FRENCH 710B	S2	C	FTVMS 762A	S1	C	GEOG 317	S2	C
FOODSCI 201	S2	C	FRENCH 720	S2	C	FTVMS 762B	S2	C	GEOG 318	SS	C
FOODSCI 301	S1	C	FRENCH 725	S2	C	FTVMS 763	S1	C	GEOG 319	S1	C
FOODSCI 302	S2	C	FRENCH 741	S1	C	FTVMS 765	S1	C	GEOG 320	S2	C
FOODSCI 303	S1	C	FRENCH 749	S1	C		S2	C	GEOG 322	S1	C
FOODSCI 304	S2	C	FRENCH 750	S1	C	FTVMS 767	S1	C	GEOG 330	S2	C
FOODSCI 691	S1	C		S2	C	FTVMS 768	S2	C	GEOG 331	S1	C
FOODSCI 691A	S1	C	FRENCH 750A	S1	C	FTVMS 769	S2	C	GEOG 332	S1	C
	S2	C		S2	C	FTVMS 775A	S1	C	GEOG 351	S2	C
FOODSCI 691B	S1	C	FRENCH 750B	S2	C	FTVMS 775B	S2	C	GEOG 352	S1	C
	S2	C	FRENCH 785	S1	C	FTVMS 776A	S1	C	GEOG 690A	S1	C
FOODSCI 703	S1	C		S2	C	FTVMS 776B	S2	C	GEOG 690B	S2	C
FOODSCI 704	S2	C	FRENCH 785A	S1	C	FTVMS 792	S1	C	GEOG 691	S1	C

2005 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2005. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
GEOG 691A	S2	C	GEOPHYS 331	S1	C	GREEK 700A	S2	C	HISTORY 740	S2	C
	S1	C	GEOPHYS 690A	S1	CT	GREEK 700B	S1	C	HISTORY 741	S1	C
	S2	C	GEOPHYS 690B	S2	CT	GREEK 701A	S1	C	HISTORY 760	S2	C
GEOG 691B	S2	C	GEOPHYS 691A	S1	CT	GREEK 701B	S2	C	HISTORY 760A	S1	C
GEOG 701	S1	C	GEOPHYS 691B	S2	CT	GREEK 702A	S1	C	HISTORY 760B	S2	C
GEOG 711	S1	C	GEOPHYS 761	S1	C	GREEK 702B	S2	C	HISTORY 761A	S1	C
GEOG 718	S1	C	GEOPHYS 762	S2	C	GREEK 703A	S2	C	HISTORY 761B	S2	C
GEOG 721	S2	C	GEOPHYS 763A	S1	C	GREEK 703B	S1	C	HISTORY 780A	S1	C
GEOG 723	S1	C	GEOPHYS 763B	S2	C	GREEK 790A	S1	C	HISTORY 780B	S2	C
GEOG 724	S2	C	GERMAN 101	S1	C		S2	C	HISTORY 792A	S1	C
GEOG 725	S1	C		SS	C	GREEK 790B	S1	C	HISTORY 792B	S2	C
GEOG 726	S1	C	GERMAN 102	S2	C		S2	C	HISTORY 797A	S1	C
GEOG 732	S2	C	GERMAN 104	S1	C	GREEK 797A	S1	C	HISTORY 797B	S2	C
GEOG 742	S1	C	GERMAN 120	S1	C	GREEK 797B	S2	C	HLTHINFO 713	T2	T
GEOG 743	S1	C	GERMAN 201	S2	C	HISTORY 91W	S1	C	HLTHINFO 716	T3	T
GEOG 744	S1	C	GERMAN 211	S1	C	HISTORY 92W	S2	C	HLTHINFO 718	T2	T
GEOG 745	S2	C	GERMAN 277	S1	V	HISTORY 101	S2	C	HLTHINFO 720	T3	T
GEOG 746	S2	C		S2	V	HISTORY 102	S2	C	HLTHMGT 790A	S1	H
GEOG 747	S1	C		SS	V	HISTORY 103	S1	C		S2	H
GEOG 771	S2	C	GERMAN 278	S1	V	HISTORY 104	S1	C	HLTHMGT 790B	S1	H
GEOG 772	S1	C		S2	V	HISTORY 105	S1	C		S2	H
GEOG 773	S2	C		SS	V	HISTORY 109	S1	C	HLTHPSYC 714	S1	H
GEOG 774	S1	C	GERMAN 290	S2	C	HISTORY 122	S1	C	HLTHPSYC 715	S2	H
GEOG 789	S2	C	GERMAN 301	S1	C	HISTORY 123	S2	C	HLTHPSYC 716	S1	H
GEOG 789A	S1	C	GERMAN 302	S2	C	HISTORY 125	S2	C	HLTHPSYC 742A	S1	H
	S2	C	GERMAN 310	S2	C	HISTORY 140	S2	C	HLTHPSYC 742B	S2	H
GEOG 789B	S1	C	GERMAN 377	S1	V	HISTORY 150	S2	C	HLTHPSYC 743	S1	H
	S2	C		S2	V	HISTORY 210	SS	C	HLTHPSYC 744	S2	H
GEOLOGY 101	S2	C		SS	V	HISTORY 218	S2	C	HLTHPSYC 745A	S1	H
GEOLOGY 102	S1	C	GERMAN 378	S1	V	HISTORY 219	S1	C	HLTHPSYC 745B	S2	H
GEOLOGY 110	S2	C		S2	V	HISTORY 221	S1	C	HLTHPSYC 756	S2	H
GEOLOGY 201	S1	C		SS	V	HISTORY 222	S1	C	HLTHPSYC 757	S2	H
GEOLOGY 202	S2	C	GERMAN 390	S2	C	HISTORY 226	S2	C	HLTHSCI 790	S1	HT
GEOLOGY 203	S1	C	GERMAN 391	S2	C	HISTORY 227	S2	C		S2	HT
GEOLOGY 204	S2	C	GERMAN 392	S1	C	HISTORY 230	S1	C	HLTHSCI 790A	S1	HT
GEOLOGY 205	S2	C		S2	C	HISTORY 231	S2	C		S2	HT
GEOLOGY 301	SS	C	GERMAN 393	S1	C	HISTORY 233	S2	C	HLTHSCI 790B	S1	HT
GEOLOGY 302	S2	C		S2	C	HISTORY 235	S1	C		S2	HT
GEOLOGY 303	S1	C	GERMAN 701A	S1	C	HISTORY 240	S1	C	HLTHSCI 790X	S1	HT
GEOLOGY 304	S2	C	GERMAN 701B	S2	C	HISTORY 241	S2	C		S2	HT
GEOLOGY 305	S1	C	GERMAN 711	S1	C	HISTORY 242	S2	C	HLTHSCI 790Y	S1	HT
GEOLOGY 340	S1	C	GERMAN 714	S1	C	HISTORY 265	S1	C		S2	HT
GEOLOGY 361	S1	C		S2	C	HISTORY 266	S1	C	HRMGMGT 701	T1	C
GEOLOGY 372	S2	C	GERMAN 721	S1	C	HISTORY 300	S1	C	HRMGMGT 702	T2	C
GEOLOGY 690A	S1	C	GERMAN 724	S1	C	HISTORY 310	S1	C	HRMGMGT 703	T3	C
GEOLOGY 690B	S2	C	GERMAN 725	S1	C	HISTORY 313	S2	C	HRMGMGT 704	T1	C
GEOLOGY 691A	S1	C	GERMAN 726	S1	C	HISTORY 317	S2	C	HRMGMGT 709	T1	C
GEOLOGY 691B	S2	C	GERMAN 727	S1	C	HISTORY 320	S1	C		T2	C
GEOLOGY 693A	S1	C		S2	C	HISTORY 337	S2	C	HRMGMGT 712	T1	C
GEOLOGY 693B	S2	C	GERMAN 728	S1	C	HISTORY 340	S1	C		T2	C
GEOLOGY 701	SS	C		S2	C	HISTORY 341	S1	C	HRMGMGT 713	SS	C
GEOLOGY 703	S2	C	GERMAN 729	S1	C	HISTORY 346	S1	C		T1	C
GEOLOGY 704	S1	C		S2	C	HISTORY 347	S1	C		T3	C
GEOLOGY 705	S2	C	GERMAN 735	S2	C	HISTORY 348	S2	C	HRMGMGT 714	T2	C
GEOLOGY 708	S1	C	GERMAN 740	S2	C	HISTORY 361	S2	C	HUMANBIO 111	S1	C
GEOLOGY 709	S1	C	GERMAN 741A	S1	C	HISTORY 363	S1	C	HUMANBIO 122	S2	C
	S2	C	GERMAN 741B	S2	C	HISTORY 364	S2	C	HUMANBIO 142	S2	C
	S2	C	GERMAN 780	S1	C	HISTORY 365	S1	C	HUMANBIO 251	S1	H
GEOLOGY 712	S2	C		S2	C	HISTORY 366	S2	C	HUMANBIO 252	S2	H
GEOLOGY 721	S1	C	GERMAN 780A	S1	C	HISTORY 367	SS	C	HUMANBIO 253	S1	H
GEOLOGY 731	S1	C	GERMAN 780B	S2	C	HISTORY 705A	S1	C	HUMANBIO 254	S2	H
GEOLOGY 732	S1	C	GERMAN 792A	S1	C	HISTORY 705B	S2	C	HUMANBIO 255	S1	H
GEOLOGY 741	S1	C	GERMAN 792B	S2	C	HISTORY 709A	S1	C	HUMANBIO 256	S2	H
GEOLOGY 742	S2	C	GERMAN 794A	S1	C	HISTORY 709B	S2	C	HUMANBIO 257	S1	H
GEOLOGY 751	S1	C	GERMAN 794B	S2	C	HISTORY 710	S1	C	HUMANBIO 258	S2	H
GEOLOGY 752	S1	C	GERMAN 797A	S1	C	HISTORY 720A	S1	C	HUMANBIO 351	S1	H
GEOLOGY 753	S2	C	GERMAN 797B	S2	C	HISTORY 720B	S2	C	HUMANBIO 352	S1	H
GEOLOGY 754	S1	C		S1	C	HISTORY 725A	S1	C	HUMANBIO 353	S1	H
GEOLOGY 771	S2	C	GREEK 100	S1	C	HISTORY 725B	S2	C	HUMANBIO 354	S1	H
GEOLOGY 772	S2	C	GREEK 101	S2	C	HISTORY 734A	S1	C	HUMANBIO 355	S2	H
GEOLOGY 773	S2	C	GREEK 200	S2	C	HISTORY 734B	S2	C	HUMANBIO 356	S2	H
GEOLOGY 789	S1	C	GREEK 201	S2	C	HISTORY 736A	S1	C	HUMANBIO 357	S2	H
	S2	C	GREEK 202	S1	C	HISTORY 736B	S2	C	HUMANBIO 358	S1	H
GEOLOGY 789A	S1	C	GREEK 203	S2	C	HISTORY 737A	S1	C	HUMANBIO 359	S2	H
GEOLOGY 789B	S2	C	GREEK 204	S1	C	HISTORY 737B	S2	C	HUMANBIO 360	S2	H
GEOLOGY 795A	S1	C	GREEK 300	S1	C	HISTORY 738	S1	C	HUMANBIO 790A	S1	H
GEOLOGY 795B	S2	C	GREEK 301	S2	C	HISTORY 739	S2	C	HUMANBIO 790B	S2	H
GEOPHYS 330	S2	C	GREEK 302	S1	C						

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
INDO 277	S1	V	INFOSYS 727	S1	C	ITALIAN 232	S2	C	JAPANESE 747B	S2	C
	S2	V	INFOSYS 728	S2	C	ITALIAN 277	S1	V	JAPANESE 750	S1	C
	SS	V	INFOSYS 730	S1	C		S2	V	JAPANESE 751	S2	C
INDO 278	S1	V	INFOSYS 732	S1	C		SS	V	JAPANESE 790A	S1	C
	S2	V		S2	C	ITALIAN 278	S1	V	JAPANESE 790B	S2	C
	SS	V		SS	C		S2	V	JAPANESE 794A	S1	C
INDO 299	S1	C	INFOSYS 734	S2	C		SS	V	JAPANESE 794B	S2	C
	S2	C	INFOSYS 737	S1	C	ITALIAN 300	S1	C	JAPANESE 797A	S1	C
INDO 377	S1	V	INFOSYS 740	S2	C	ITALIAN 302	S1	C	JAPANESE 797B	S2	C
	S2	V	INFOSYS 750	S1	C	ITALIAN 331	S2	C	JAZZ 101A	S1	C
	SS	V		S2	C	ITALIAN 377	S1	V	JAZZ 101B	S2	C
INDO 378	S1	V	INFOSYS 751	S1	C		S2	V	JAZZ 103A	S1	C
	S2	V		S2	C		SS	V	JAZZ 103B	S2	C
	SS	V	INFOSYS 789	S1	C	ITALIAN 378	S1	V	JAZZ 105A	S1	C
INDO 398	S1	C		S2	C		S2	V	JAZZ 105B	S2	C
	S2	C	INTBUS 202	S1	C		SS	V	JAZZ 107A	S1	C
INDO 399	S1	C		S2	C	ITALIAN 700A	S1	C	JAZZ 107B	S2	C
	S2	C		SS	C	ITALIAN 700B	S2	C	JAZZ 109A	S1	C
INFOMGMT 191	S1	MST	INTBUS 210	S1	C	ITALIAN 702	S2	C	JAZZ 109B	S2	C
	S2	MST		S2	C	ITALIAN 709	S1	C	JAZZ 111A	S1	C
INFOMGMT 192	S1	MST		SS	C	ITALIAN 711	S1	C	JAZZ 111B	S2	C
	S2	MST	INTBUS 211	S1	C	ITALIAN 712	S2	C	JAZZ 131A	S1	C
INFOMGMT 291	S1	ST		S2	C	ITALIAN 780	S2	C	JAZZ 131B	S2	C
INFOMGMT 292	S2	ST	INTBUS 301	S2	C	ITALIAN 780A	S1	C	JAZZ 201A	S1	C
INFOMGMT 293	S2	ST	INTBUS 302	S1	C	ITALIAN 780B	S2	C	JAZZ 201B	S2	C
INFOMGMT 294	S2	ST	INTBUS 303	S2	C	ITALIAN 792A	S1	C	JAZZ 203A	S1	C
INFOMGMT 295	S2	T	INTBUS 304	S1	C	ITALIAN 792B	S2	C	JAZZ 203B	S2	C
INFOMGMT 391	S2	ST	INTBUS 310	S2	C	ITALIAN 794A	S1	C	JAZZ 205A	S1	C
INFOMGMT 392	S2	ST	INTBUS 312	S1	C	ITALIAN 794B	S2	C	JAZZ 205B	S2	C
INFOMGMT 393	S1	ST	INTBUS 701	S1	C	ITALIAN 797A	S1	C	JAZZ 206A	S1	C
INFORM 703	T1	C	INTBUS 702	S2	C	ITALIAN 797B	S2	C	JAZZ 206B	S2	C
INFORM 710	T3	C	INTBUS 703	S1	C	JAPANESE 130	S1	C	JAZZ 207A	S1	C
INFORM 711	T2	C	INTBUS 704	S2	C	JAPANESE 131	S2	C	JAZZ 207B	S2	C
INFORM 712	T1	C	INTBUS 705	S2	C	JAPANESE 150	S2	C	JAZZ 209A	S1	C
	T2	C	INTBUS 706	S1	C	JAPANESE 222A	S1	C	JAZZ 209B	S2	C
	T3	C	INTBUS 707	S1	C	JAPANESE 222B	S2	C	JAZZ 211A	S1	C
INFORM 713	T2	C	INTBUS 751	S1	C	JAPANESE 231	S1	C	JAZZ 211B	S2	C
INFORM 717	T1	C	INTBUS 752	S2	C	JAPANESE 232	S2	C	JAZZ 231A	S1	C
	T2	C	INTBUS 753	S1	C	JAPANESE 240	S2	C	JAZZ 231B	S2	C
INFOSYS 110	S1	CT	INTBUS 754	S2	C	JAPANESE 270	S1	C	JAZZ 301A	S1	C
	S2	CT	INTBUS 755	S1	C	JAPANESE 277	S1	V	JAZZ 301B	S2	C
	SS	C	INTBUS 757	S2	C		S2	V	JAZZ 306A	S1	C
INFOSYS 220	S1	C	INTBUS 765A	S1	C		SS	V	JAZZ 306B	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	JAPANESE 278	S1	V	JAZZ 307A	S1	C
INFOSYS 222	S1	C	INTBUS 765B	S1	C	JAPANESE 307	S1	C	JAZZ 307B	S2	C
	S2	CT		S2	C	JAPANESE 322	S2	C	JAZZ 309A	S1	C
	SS	C	INTBUS 766	S1	C	JAPANESE 331	S1	C	JAZZ 309B	S2	C
INFOSYS 223	S2	C		S2	C	JAPANESE 332	S2	C	JAZZ 311A	S1	C
INFOSYS 224	S1	CT	INTBUS 767A	S1	C	JAPANESE 341	S1	C	JAZZ 311B	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	JAPANESE 377	S1	V	JAZZ 331A	S1	C
INFOSYS 225	S1	C	INTBUS 767B	S1	C		S2	V	JAZZ 331B	S2	C
INFOSYS 226	S2	C		S2	C		SS	V	KOREAN 110	S1	C
INFOSYS 320	S1	C	INTBUS 768A	S1	C	JAPANESE 378	S1	V	KOREAN 111	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C		S2	V	KOREAN 120	S2	C
INFOSYS 321	S1	C	INTBUS 768B	S1	C		SS	V	KOREAN 200	S1	C
INFOSYS 323	S1	C		S2	C	JAPANESE 385	S2	C	KOREAN 201	S2	C
	S2	C	INTBUS 789	S1	C	JAPANESE 704A	S1	C	KOREAN 230	S1	C
INFOSYS 327	S2	C		S2	C	JAPANESE 704B	S2	C	KOREAN 277	S1	V
INFOSYS 328	S1	C	INTSTRAT 750	T2	C	JAPANESE 705	S2	C		S2	V
	S2	T	INTSTRAT 751	T1	C	JAPANESE 711A	S1	C		SS	V
INFOSYS 329	S1	C	INTSTRAT 755	T1	C	JAPANESE 711B	S2	C	KOREAN 278	S1	V
	S2	C		T3	C	JAPANESE 721A	S1	C		S2	V
INFOSYS 330	S1	C	INTSTRAT 756	T2	C	JAPANESE 721B	S2	C		SS	V
	S2	C	INTSTRAT 757	T3	C	JAPANESE 725A	S1	C	KOREAN 300	S1	C
INFOSYS 332	S1	C	ITALIAN 106	S1	C	JAPANESE 725B	S2	C	KOREAN 301	S2	C
	S2	C		SS	C	JAPANESE 742A	S1	C	KOREAN 377	S1	V
INFOSYS 338	S1	C	ITALIAN 107	S2	C	JAPANESE 742B	S2	C		S2	V
	SS	C	ITALIAN 111	S2	C	JAPANESE 743	S1	C		SS	V
INFOSYS 339	S1	C	ITALIAN 166	S1	K		S2	C	KOREAN 378	S1	V
INFOSYS 340A	S1	C		S2	K	JAPANESE 743A	S1	C		S2	V
INFOSYS 340B	S2	C	ITALIAN 167	S1	K	JAPANESE 743B	S2	C		SS	V
INFOSYS 341	S1	C		S2	K	JAPANESE 744A	S1	C	KOREAN 700	S1	C
INFOSYS 720	S1	C	ITALIAN 200	S1	C	JAPANESE 744B	S2	C	KOREAN 701	S2	C
	S2	C	ITALIAN 201	S2	C	JAPANESE 745	S2	C	KOREAN 708	S1	C
INFOSYS 722	S1	C	ITALIAN 202	S1	C	JAPANESE 746A	S1	C	KOREAN 709	S2	C
INFOSYS 724	S2	C	ITALIAN 203	S1	C	JAPANESE 746B	S2	C	KOREAN 710A	S1	C
INFOSYS 726	S2	C	ITALIAN 204	S2	C	JAPANESE 747A	S1	C	KOREAN 710B	S2	C

2005 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2005. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
KOREAN 730A	S1	C	LATIN 797A	S1	C	LAW 482	S2	C	LINGUIST 728	S2	C
KOREAN 730B	S2	C	LATIN 797B	S2	C	LAW 483	S1	C	LINGUIST 731	S2	C
KOREAN 797A	S1	C	LATINAM 201	S1	C	LAW 485	S2	C	LINGUIST 740	S1	C
KOREAN 797B	S2	C	LAW 101A	S1	C	LAW 486	S2	C	LINGUIST 741	S1	C
LANGLIT 797A	S1	C	LAW 101B	S2	C	LAW 487	S1	C	LINGUIST 742	S2	C
LANGLIT 797B	S2	C	LAW 201A	S1	C	LAW 488	S2	C	LINGUIST 742	S1	C
LANGTCHG 100	S1	V	LAW 201B	S2	C	LAW 499	S1	C	LINGUIST 790	S1	C
LANGTCHG 101	S2	V	LAW 211A	S1	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 790A	S1	C
LANGTCHG 102	S2	V	LAW 211B	S2	C	LAW 788	S1	C	LINGUIST 790B	S1	C
LANGTCHG 103	S1	V	LAW 221A	S1	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 797A	S1	C
LANGTCHG 104	S2	V	LAW 221B	S2	C	LAW 789	S1	C	LINGUIST 797B	S1	C
LANGTCHG 202	S1	C	LAW 231A	S1	C		S2	C	LOGICOMP 701	S1	C
	S2	C	LAW 231B	S2	C		SS	C	LOGICOMP 780	S1	C
LANGTCHG 300	S1	C	LAW 241A	S1	C	LAW 790	S1	C	LOGICOMP 780A	S2	C
	S2	C	LAW 241B	S2	C		S2	C	LOGICOMP 780B	S2	C
LANGTCHG 301	S2	C	LAW 251A	S1	C		SS	C	MANAGEMENT 704	S1	C
LANGTCHG 303	S1	C	LAW 251B	S2	C	LAW 797A	S1	C	MANAGEMENT 705	S1	C
LANGTCHG 704	S1	C	LAW 301A	S1	C		S2	C	MANAGEMENT 706	S1	C
	S2	C	LAW 301B	S2	C	LAW 797B	S1	C		S2	C
LANGTCHG 705	S2	C	LAW 306A	S1	C		S2	C	MANAGEMENT 707	S1	C
LANGTCHG 706	S1	C	LAW 306B	S2	C	LAWCOMM 705	S1	C	MANAGEMENT 708	S2	C
LANGTCHG 710	S1	C	LAW 311	S1	C	LAWCOMM 709	S1	C	MAORI 101	S2	C
LANGTCHG 713	S1	C		S2	C	LAWCOMM 713	S1	C	MAORI 103	S1	C
LANGTCHG 714	S2	C	LAW 316A	S1	C	LAWCOMM 741	S1	C	MAORI 106	S1	C
LANGTCHG 715	S2	C	LAW 316B	S2	C	LAWCOMM 742	S1	C	MAORI 107	S1	M
	SS	C	LAW 344A	S1	C	LAWCOMM 743	S1	C	MAORI 130	S1	C
LANGTCHG 720	S1	C	LAW 344B	S2	C	LAWCOMM 744	S2	C		SS	C
	S2	C	LAW 346A	S1	C	LAWCOMM 745	S2	C	MAORI 190	S1	C
LANGTCHG 721	S1	C	LAW 346B	S2	C	LAWCOMM 752	S2	C	MAORI 201	S1	C
	S2	C	LAW 361A	S1	C	LAWCOMM 754	S2	C	MAORI 203	S2	C
LANGTCHG 722	S1	C	LAW 361B	S2	C	LAWCOMM 758	S1	C	MAORI 206	S2	C
LANGTCHG 723	S1	C	LAW 368A	S1	C	LAWCOMM 760	S1	C	MAORI 230	S2	C
	S2	C	LAW 368B	S2	C	LAWCOMM 762	S1	C	MAORI 240	S1	C
LANGTCHG 724	S2	C	LAW 383A	S1	C	LAWENVIR 710	S1	C		SS	C
	SS	C	LAW 383B	S2	C	LAWENVIR 716	S2	C	MAORI 292	S2	C
LANGTCHG 727	S1	C	LAW 402	S1	C	LAWENVIR 723	S1	C	MAORI 301	S2	C
LANGTCHG 731	S1	C	LAW 406	S2	C	LAWENVIR 731	S1	C	MAORI 302	S1	C
LANGTCHG 732	S1	C	LAW 409	S2	C	LAWGENRL 711	S1	C	MAORI 310	S2	C
LANGTCHG 741	S1	O	LAW 410	S1	C	LAWPUBL 702	S1	C	MAORI 311	S1	C
LANGTCHG 742	S2	O	LAW 413	S2	C	LAWPUBL 713	S2	C	MAORI 320	S1	C
LANGTCHG 743	S1	O	LAW 415	S1	C	LAWPUBL 720	S1	C	MAORI 335	S1	C
LANGTCHG 744	S2	O		S2	C	LAWPUBL 726	S2	C	MAORI 340	S2	C
LANGTCHG 747	S1	O	LAW 417	S1	C	LAWPUBL 741	S2	C	MAORI 342	S2	C
LANGTCHG 749	S2	O		SS	C	LAWPUBL 742	S1	C	MAORI 393	S1	C
LANGTCHG 751	S1	O	LAW 419	S2	C	LAWPUBL 743	S2	C	MAORI 700	S2	C
LANGTCHG 790A	S1	C	LAW 421	S1	C	LAWPUBL 744	S1	C	MAORI 711	S2	C
	S2	C	LAW 423	S1	C	LAWPUBL 745	S2	C	MAORI 712	S2	C
LANGTCHG 790B	S1	C	LAW 425	S1	C	LINGUIST 100	S2	C	MAORI 713	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 101	S1	C	MAORI 731	S1	C
LANGTCHG 794A	S1	C	LAW 426	S1	C	LINGUIST 102	S1	C	MAORI 740A	S1	C
	S2	C	LAW 427	S1	C	LINGUIST 103	S1	C	MAORI 740B	S2	C
LANGTCHG 794B	S1	C	LAW 428	S2	C	LINGUIST 200	S1	C	MAORI 741A	S1	C
	S2	C	LAW 429	S1	C	LINGUIST 201	S2	C	MAORI 741B	S2	C
LANGTCHG 797A	S1	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 202	S2	C	MAORI 742A	S1	C
LANGTCHG 797B	S2	C	LAW 430	S1	C	LINGUIST 203	S2	C	MAORI 742B	S2	C
LATIN 100	S1	C	LAW 432	S2	C	LINGUIST 205	S1	C	MAORI 743	S1	C
LATIN 101	S2	C	LAW 435	S1	C	LINGUIST 300	S2	C	MAORI 785	S1	C
LATIN 200	S1	C	LAW 437	S1	C	LINGUIST 301	S1	C		S2	C
LATIN 201	S2	C	LAW 438	S1	C	LINGUIST 302	S1	C	MAORI 785A	S1	C
LATIN 202	S1	C	LAW 441	S1	C	LINGUIST 303	S1	C	MAORI 785B	S2	C
LATIN 203	S2	C	LAW 444	S2	C	LINGUIST 306	S2	C	MAORI 792A	S1	C
LATIN 204	S1	C	LAW 445	S2	C	LINGUIST 307	S2	C	MAORI 792B	S2	C
LATIN 300	S2	C	LAW 447	S1	C	LINGUIST 308	S2	C	MAORI 797A	S1	C
LATIN 301	S2	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 310	S1	C	MAORI 797B	S2	C
LATIN 302	S1	C	LAW 450	S1	C		S2	C			
LATIN 700A	S1	C	LAW 451	S1	C	LINGUIST 310A	S1	C			
LATIN 700B	S2	C	LAW 452	S2	C	LINGUIST 310B	S2	C			
LATIN 701A	S1	C	LAW 453	SS	C	LINGUIST 320	S2	C			
LATIN 701B	S2	C	LAW 454	S1	C	LINGUIST 708A	S1	C			
LATIN 702A	S1	C	LAW 456	S1	C	LINGUIST 708B	S2	C			
LATIN 702B	S2	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 709	S1	C			
LATIN 703A	S1	C		SS	C		S2	C			
LATIN 703B	S2	C	LAW 457	S1	C	LINGUIST 720	S1	C			
LATIN 705A	S1	C	LAW 458	S1	C	LINGUIST 721	S2	C			
LATIN 705B	S2	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 722	S2	C			
LATIN 790A	S1	C	LAW 459	S2	C	LINGUIST 724	S2	C			
LATIN 790B	S2	C	LAW 481	S2	C	LINGUIST 727	S1	C			

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
MAORIDEV 701	T1	KOT	MATHS 372A	S1	T				MEDEMS 797B	S2	C
	T2	N	MATHS 372B	S2	T	MATHS 797A	S1	CT	MEDICINE 703	S1	H
MAORIDEV 704	T2	C	MATHS 381	S1	C				MEDICINE 706	S1	T
MAORIDEV 710	T1	C	MATHS 382A	S1	C	MATHS 797B	S1	CT	MEDICINE 707	S1	T
MAORIDEV 711	T3	OT	MATHS 382B	S2	C				MEDICINE 708	S2	T
MAORIDEV 712	T2	OT	MATHS 383	S2	C	MBCHB 401A	S1	H	MEDICINE 709A	S1	T
	T3	KN	MATHS 384	S2	C	MBCHB 401B	S2	H	MEDICINE 709B	S2	T
MAORIDEV 713	SS	K	MATHS 386	S1	C	MBCHB 501A	S1	H	MEDICINE 710A	S1	T
	T3	C				MBCHB 501B	S2	H	MEDICINE 710B	S2	T
MAORIDEV 714	SS	K	MATHS 386A	S1	C	MBCHB 551A	S1	H	MEDICINE 711A	S1	T
	T3	C	MATHS 386B	S2	C	MBCHB 551B	S2	H	MEDICINE 711B	S2	T
MARINE 202	S1	C	MATHS 387	S1	C	MECHENG 211	S2	C	MEDICINE 712A	S1	T
MARINE 302	S2	C	MATHS 388	S2	C	MECHENG 222	S2	C	MEDICINE 712B	S2	T
MARINE 701	S2	C	MATHS 389	S2	C	MECHENG 223	S1	C	MEDICINE 713	S1	H
MARKET 701	T2	C	MATHS 690	S1	CT	MECHENG 232	S1	C	MEDICINE 714	S2	T
	T3	C				MECHENG 233	S2	C	MEDICINE 715	S1	T
MARKET 702	T2	C	MATHS 690A	S1	CT	MECHENG 242	S1	C	MEDICINE 716	S2	T
	T3	C	MATHS 690B	S2	CT	MECHENG 311	S2	C	MEDICINE 717A	S1	T
MARKET 703	T1	C	MATHS 691	S1	CT	MECHENG 312	S2	C	MEDICINE 717B	S2	T
	T3	C				MECHENG 313	S2	C	MEDICINE 718	S1	T
MARKET 708	T1	C	MATHS 691A	S1	CT	MECHENG 322	S1	C	MEDICINE 719A	S1	T
	T2	C	MATHS 691B	S2	CT	MECHENG 324	S1	C	MEDICINE 719B	S2	T
MARKET 713	S2	C	MATHS 692	S1	CT	MECHENG 332	S1	C	MEDICINE 720	S1	T
	SS	C				MECHENG 333	S2	C	MEDICINE 730A	S1	T
	T1	CO	MATHS 692A	S1	CT	MECHENG 341	S1	C	MEDICINE 730B	S2	T
	T2	CS	MATHS 692B	S2	CT	MECHENG 342	S2	C	MEDICINE 731	S1	T
	T3	C	MATHS 693	S1	CT	MECHENG 351	S2	C	MEDICINE 732	S2	T
MARKET 715	T1	C				MECHENG 405	S1	C	MEDICINE 733A	S1	T
MATHS 91W	S1	C	MATHS 693A	S1	CT	MECHENG 406A	S1	C	MEDICINE 733B	S2	T
	S2	C	MATHS 693B	S2	CT	MECHENG 406B	S2	C	MEDICINE 734A	S1	T
MATHS 92W	S2	C	MATHS 701	S2	C	MECHENG 407	S1	C	MEDICINE 734B	S2	T
MATHS 93W	S1	C	MATHS 705	S1	C	MECHENG 408	S2	C	MEDICINE 737	S1	T
MATHS 94W	S2	C	MATHS 706	S2	C	MECHENG 409	S2	C	MEDSC1 691A	S1	H
MATHS 101	S1	C	MATHS 707	S1	C	MECHENG 411	S2	C	MEDSC1 691B	S2	H
	S2	CM				MECHENG 412	S1	C	MEDSC1 790	S1	HT
MATHS 102	S1	C				MECHENG 413	S1	C		S2	HT
	S2	C	MATHS 708	S1	C	MECHENG 421	S1	C	MEDSC1 790A	S1	HT
	SS	C				MECHENG 423	S2	C		S2	HT
MATHS 108	S1	CT				MECHENG 425	S2	C	MEDSC1 790B	S1	HT
	S2	CT	MATHS 709	S1	C	MECHENG 431A	S1	C	MEDSC1 790X	S1	HT
	SS	C				MECHENG 431B	S2	C		S2	HT
MATHS 150	S1	C				MECHENG 441	S1	C	MEDSC1 790Y	S1	HT
	S2	C	MATHS 710	S1	C	MECHENG 443	S2	C		S2	HT
MATHS 153	S1	C				MECHENG 451	S1	C	MGCARE 611A	S1	T
MATHS 162	S1	C				MECHENG 461A	S1	C	MGCARE 611B	S2	T
	S2	CT	MATHS 711	S1	C	MECHENG 461B	S2	C	MGCARE 612A	S1	T
MATHS 202	S1	C				MECHENG 701	S1	C	MGCARE 612B	S2	T
MATHS 208	S1	CT	MATHS 711A	S1	C	MECHENG 702	S2	C	MGCARE 613A	S1	T
	S2	C	MATHS 711B	S2	C	MECHENG 711	S1	C	MGCARE 613B	S2	T
	SS	C	MATHS 712	S2	C	MECHENG 714	S1	C	MGCARE 614A	S1	T
MATHS 250	S1	C	MATHS 714	S2	C	MECHENG 716	S2	C	MGCARE 614B	S2	T
	S2	C	MATHS 715	S2	C	MECHENG 729	S1	C	MGCARE 615A	S1	T
MATHS 253	S1	C	MATHS 720	S1	C	MECHENG 732	S2	C	MGCARE 615B	S2	T
	S2	CT	MATHS 721	S2	C	MECHENG 741	S1	C	MGCARE 701A	S1	T
MATHS 255	S1	C	MATHS 730	S1	C	MECHENG 742	S2	C	MGCARE 701B	S2	T
	S2	C	MATHS 731	S2	C	MECHENG 751	S1	C	MGCARE 702A	S1	T
MATHS 260	S1	CT	MATHS 740	S1	C	MECHENG 753	S2	C	MGCARE 702B	S2	T
	S2	C	MATHS 745	S2	C	MECHENG 758	S1	C	MGCARE 703A	S1	T
MATHS 270	S1	C	MATHS 750	S1	C	MECHENG 759	S2	C	MGCARE 703B	S2	T
	S2	T	MATHS 761	S2	C	MECHENG 760	S1	C	MGCARE 704A	S1	T
MATHS 302	S1	C	MATHS 763	S1	C	MECHENG 761	S2	C	MGCARE 704B	S2	T
MATHS 307	S1	C	MATHS 770	S1	C	MECHENG 767	S1	C	MGCARE 705A	S1	T
MATHS 308	S2	C	MATHS 781	S1	C				MGCARE 705B	S2	T
MATHS 310	S2	C	MATHS 782	S1	C	MECHENG 788A	S1	C	MGCARE 706A	S1	T
MATHS 315	S2	C	MATHS 783	S2	C				MGCARE 706B	S2	T
MATHS 320	S2	C	MATHS 784	S2	C	MECHENG 788B	S1	C	MGMT 101	S1	C
MATHS 326	S1	C	MATHS 786	S1	C					S2	C
MATHS 328	S1	C	MATHS 787	S2	C	MECHENG 789	S1	C		S2	C
MATHS 332	S1	C	MATHS 788	S1	T				MGMT 191	S1	MST
MATHS 333	S2	C	MATHS 789	S2	T	MECHENG 790	S1	C		S2	MST
MATHS 340	S1	C	MATHS 791	S1	CT				MGMT 192	S1	MST
	S2	C	MATHS 792	S1	CT	MEDEMS 700	S1	C		S2	C
MATHS 347	S1	T	MATHS 793	S2	CT	MEDEMS 780	S1	C		SS	C
MATHS 353	S1	C	MATHS 794	S2	CT						
MATHS 361	S1	C	MATHS 795A	S1	CT	MEDEMS 780A	S1	C			
MATHS 362	S2	C				MEDEMS 780B	S2	C			
MATHS 363	S2	C	MATHS 795B	S1	CT	MEDEMS 797A	S1	C			

2005 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2005. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
MGMT 201	S1	C		S2	C	MUSED 160	S1	C	MUSIC 235	S2	C
MGMT 211	S1	C	MKTG 302	S2	C	MUSED 260	S2	C	MUSIC 236	S1	C
	S2	C	MKTG 303	S1	C	MUSED 360	S2	C	MUSIC 237	S2	C
	SS	C		S2	C	MUSED 366	S1	C	MUSIC 238	S1	C
MGMT 212	S1	C	MKTG 305	S1	C	MUSED 701	S1	C	MUSIC 239	S2	C
	S2	C	MKTG 306	S1	C	MUSED 702	S2	C	MUSIC 240	S1	C
MGMT 223	S1	C		S2	C	MUSED 710	S1	C	MUSIC 241	S2	C
	S2	C	MKTG 307	S2	C		S2	C	MUSIC 243	S1	C
MGMT 231	S1	C	MKTG 314	S1	C	MUSED 711	S1	C	MUSIC 247	S2	C
	S2	C	MKTG 391	S1	ST		S2	C	MUSIC 250	S2	C
MGMT 232	S2	C	MKTG 392	S1	ST	MUSEUMS 750	S1	C	MUSIC 251	S1	C
MGMT 291	S1	ST	MKTG 393	S1	T	MUSEUMS 760	S1	C	MUSIC 270	S2	C
	S2	ST		S2	ST		S2	C	MUSIC 301A	S1	C
MGMT 292	S1	T	MKTG 701	S1	C	MUSEUMS 761A	S1	C	MUSIC 301B	S2	C
MGMT 293	S1	T	MKTG 702	S2	C	MUSEUMS 761B	S2	C	MUSIC 302A	S1	C
MGMT 294	S2	T	MKTG 703	S1	C	MUSEUMS 797A	S1	C	MUSIC 302B	S2	C
MGMT 301	S1	C	MKTG 704	S2	C	MUSEUMS 797B	S2	C	MUSIC 306	S1	C
	S2	C	MKTG 705	S1	C	MUSIC 100	S1	C	MUSIC 310	S1	C
MGMT 302	S1	C	MKTG 706	S2	C		SS	C	MUSIC 311	S2	C
	S2	C	MKTG 709	S2	C	MUSIC 102A	S1	C	MUSIC 316A	S1	C
MGMT 303	S1	C	MKTG 710	S2	C	MUSIC 102B	S2	C	MUSIC 316B	S2	C
	S2	C	MKTG 789	S1	C	MUSIC 103A	S1	C	MUSIC 322A	S1	C
MGMT 310A	S1	C		S2	C	MUSIC 103B	S2	C		S2	C
MGMT 310B	S2	C	MKTG 790A	S1	C	MUSIC 106	S2	C	MUSIC 322B	S1	C
MGMT 311	S1	C		S2	C	MUSIC 109	S2	C		S2	C
MGMT 313	S2	C	MKTG 790B	S1	C	MUSIC 110A	S1	C	MUSIC 328A	S1	C
MGMT 318	S1	C		S2	C	MUSIC 110B	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	MKTG 794A	S1	C	MUSIC 122A	S1	C	MUSIC 328B	S1	C
	SS	C		S2	C		S2	C		S2	C
MGMT 321	S1	C	MKTG 794B	S1	C	MUSIC 122B	S1	C	MUSIC 329A	S1	C
MGMT 323	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C	MUSIC 329B	S2	C
	S2	C	MOLMED 201	S1	H		SS	C	MUSIC 332	S1	C
MGMT 326	S1	C	MOLMED 701	S1	H	MUSIC 128A	S1	C	MUSIC 333	S2	C
MGMT 328	S1	C	MOLMED 707	S1	H		S2	C	MUSIC 334	S1	C
MGMT 331	S2	C		S2	H	MUSIC 128B	S1	C	MUSIC 335	S2	C
MGMT 332	S2	C	MOLMED 708	S2	H		S2	C	MUSIC 336	S1	C
MGMT 335	S2	C	MOLMED 710	S2	H		SS	C	MUSIC 337	S2	C
MGMT 337	S2	C	MOLMED 711	S1	H	MUSIC 129A	S1	C	MUSIC 338	S1	C
MGMT 338	S1	C	MOLMED 712	S1	H	MUSIC 129B	S2	C	MUSIC 339	S2	C
MGMT 340	S2	C	MPHEALTH 10H	S1	H	MUSIC 132	S1	C	MUSIC 341	S2	C
MGMT 391	S1	T	MPHEALTH 11HA	S1	C	MUSIC 133	S2	C	MUSIC 343	S1	C
MGMT 392	S1	T	MPHEALTH 11HB	S2	T	MUSIC 134	S1	C	MUSIC 347	S2	C
MGMT 393	S1	T	MPHEALTH 12H	S1	H	MUSIC 135	S2	C	MUSIC 350	S1	C
	S2	T	MPHEALTH 13H	S2	T	MUSIC 136	S1	C	MUSIC 351	S1	C
MGMT 711	S2	C	MPHEALTH 14H	S2	T	MUSIC 137	S2	C	MUSIC 357	S1	C
MGMT 712	S1	C	MPHEALTH 15H	S1	C	MUSIC 144	S1	C	MUSIC 358	S2	C
MGMT 713	S1	C	MPHEALTH 16H	S2	T		S2	C	MUSIC 625A	S1	C
MGMT 714	S2	C	MPHEALTH 17H	S1	H	MUSIC 149	S1	C	MUSIC 625B	S1	C
MGMT 721	S1	C	MPHEALTH 201	S2	T		S2	C		S2	C
MGMT 722	S2	C	MPHEALTH 710	S1	T	MUSIC 154	S2	C	MUSIC 626A	S1	C
MGMT 723	S1	C	MPHEALTH 711	S2	T	MUSIC 170	S1	C	MUSIC 626B	S1	C
	S2	C	MPHEALTH 712	S1	T	MUSIC 201A	S1	C		S2	C
MGMT 724	S1	C	MPHEALTH 715	S1	T	MUSIC 201B	S2	C	MUSIC 627A	S1	C
	S2	C	MPHEALTH 718	S1	T	MUSIC 202A	S1	C	MUSIC 627B	S1	C
MGMT 731	S1	C	MPHEALTH 719	S2	T	MUSIC 202B	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	MPHEALTH 721	S2	T	MUSIC 203A	S1	C	MUSIC 701	S1	C
MGMT 733	S1	C	MPHEALTH 722	S2	T	MUSIC 203B	S2	C	MUSIC 702	S2	C
MGMT 734	S2	C	MPHEALTH 723	S2	T	MUSIC 206	S2	C	MUSIC 710A	S1	C
MGMT 735	S1	C	MPHEALTH 726	S1	T	MUSIC 210	S1	C	MUSIC 710B	S2	C
MGMT 736	S1	C	MPHEALTH 730	S1	T	MUSIC 211	S2	C	MUSIC 714A	S1	C
	S2	C	MPTHEO 102	S2	C	MUSIC 214A	S1	C	MUSIC 714B	S2	C
MGMT 737	S1	C	MPTHEO 103	S1	C	MUSIC 214B	S2	C	MUSIC 715A	S1	C
	S2	C	MPTHEO 172	S1	J	MUSIC 216A	S1	C	MUSIC 715B	S2	C
MGMT 740	S1	C	MPTHEO 203	S1	J	MUSIC 216B	S2	C	MUSIC 728A	S1	C
MGMT 741	S2	C	MPTHEO 206	S1	J	MUSIC 222A	S1	C	MUSIC 728B	S2	C
MGMT 789	S1	C	MPTHEO 242	S2	C		S2	C	MUSIC 738	S1	C
	S2	C	MPTHEO 272	S2	J	MUSIC 222B	S1	C	MUSIC 739	S2	C
MKTG 201	S1	C	MPTHEO 273	S2	J		S2	C	MUSIC 744A	S1	C
	S2	C	MPTHEO 301	S2	J	MUSIC 228A	S1	C	MUSIC 744B	S2	C
	SS	C	MPTHEO 371	S1	J		S2	C	MUSIC 745A	S1	C
MKTG 202	S1	C	MPTHEO 383	S1	C	MUSIC 228B	S1	C	MUSIC 746	S1	C
	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C	MUSIC 747	S2	C
	SS	C	MPTHEO 387	S1	C	MUSIC 229A	S1	C	MUSIC 748	S1	C
MKTG 291	S2	MST	MPTHEO 388	S2	J	MUSIC 229B	S2	C	MUSIC 750A	S1	C
MKTG 292	S1	ST	MPTHEO 701	S2	C	MUSIC 232	S1	C	MUSIC 750B	S2	C
MKTG 293	S1	ST	MPTHEO 703	S1	C	MUSIC 233	S2	C	MUSIC 751A	S1	C
MKTG 301	S1	C	MPTHEO 781	S1	C	MUSIC 234	S1	C		S2	C

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
MUSIC 751B	S1	C	NURSING 730B	S1	H				OPTOM 470B	S2	H
	S2	C		S2	HKO	OBSTGYN 717B	S1	K	OPTOM 480A	S1	H
MUSIC 752	S1	C	NURSING 731	S1	H				OPTOM 480B	S2	H
MUSIC 753	S2	C	NURSING 732A	S1	HN	OBSTGYN 721	S1	K	OPTOM 681	S1	H
MUSIC 757A	S1	C	NURSING 732B	S2	HN				OPTOM 691A	S1	H
MUSIC 757B	S2	C	NURSING 733	S1	H	OBSTGYN 722	S1	K	OPTOM 691B	S2	H
MUSIC 758	S1	C		S2	H				OPTOM 711B	S2	H
MUSIC 759	S2	C	NURSING 734	S1	H	OPSMAN 703	SS	C	OPTOM 750A	S1	H
MUSIC 789A	S1	C		S2	H		T1	CS	OPTOM 750B	S2	H
MUSIC 789B	S2	C	NURSING 735A	S1	H				OPTOM 754A	S1	H
MUSIC 792A	S1	C	NURSING 735B	S2	H				OPTOM 754B	S2	H
	S2	C	NURSING 736	S2	H	OPSMAN 705	T1	C	OPTOM 756A	S1	H
MUSIC 792B	S1	C	NURSING 750	S2	HZ				OPTOM 756B	S2	H
	S2	C	NURSING 751	S1	HZ				OPTOM 757A	S1	H
MUSIC 797A	S1	C	NURSING 752	S1	HZ	OPSMAN 713	SS	C	OPTOM 757B	S2	H
MUSIC 797B	S2	C	NURSING 753A	S1	H				OPTOM 758A	S1	H
NEWVENT 703	T1	C	NURSING 753B	S2	H	OPSMAN 714	T3	C	OPTOM 758B	S2	H
NEWVENT 704	S1	C	NURSING 754	S1	H	OPSMAN 715	T1	C	OPTOM 770A	S1	H
	T2	C	NURSING 755	S2	H				OPTOM 770B	S2	H
NEWVENT 705	SS	C	NURSING 756A	S1	H	OPSMAN 716	T1	C	PACIFIC 101	S1	C
NEWVENT 706	T3	C	NURSING 756B	S2	H	OPSMGT 255	S1	C	PACIFIC 103	S2	C
NEWVENT 709	SS	C	NURSING 757	S2	HZ				PACIFIC 110	S1	C
NURSING 101	S2	H	NURSING 758	S1	H				PACIFIC 201	S1	C
NURSING 102	S2	H		S2	H	OPSMGT 257	S1	C	PACIFIC 202	S1	C
NURSING 104	S1	H	NURSING 759	S1	H	OPSMGT 258	S1	C	PACIFIC 203	S1	C
NURSING 201	S1	H	NURSING 760	S2	H				PACIFIC 204	S2	C
NURSING 202	S2	H	NURSING 761	S1	H	OPSMGT 370	S1	C	PACIFIC 210	S2	C
NURSING 301	S1	H		S2	H				PACIFIC 211	S2	C
NURSING 302	S2	H	NURSING 762	S1	H	OPSMGT 371	S1	C	PACIFIC 300	S1	C
NURSING 701	S1	H	NURSING 795	S2	H	OPSMGT 372	S2	C	PACIFIC 301	S1	C
	S2	H	NURSING 795A	S1	H	OPSMGT 373	S2	C	PACIFIC 310	S2	C
NURSING 702A	S1	H		S2	H	OPSMGT 382	S1	C	PACIFIC 311	S1	C
NURSING 702B	S2	H	NURSING 795B	S1	H	OPSMGT 740	S1	C	PACIFIC 320	S1	C
NURSING 704	S1	O		S2	H				PACIFIC 700	S2	C
	S2	O	NURSING 795X	S1	H	OPSMGT 760	S1	C	PACIFIC 701	S1	C
NURSING 705	S1	HZ		S2	H	OPSMGT 762	S1	C	PACIFIC 702	S2	C
	S2	HMN	NURSING 795Y	S1	H	OPSMGT 764	S2	C	PACIFIC 703	S2	C
NURSING 706	S1	H		S2	C	OPSMGT 789	S1	C	PACIFIC 704	S1	C
	S2	OZ	NURSING 797A	S1	H				PACIFIC 785	S1	C
NURSING 707	S2	H		S2	H	OPSRES 385	S2	C		S2	C
NURSING 708	S1	HZ	NURSING 797B	S1	H	OPSRES 392	S1	C	PACIFIC 785A	S1	C
	S2	N		S2	H	OPSRES 784	S1	C	PACIFIC 785B	S2	C
NURSING 709	S1	H	NUTRN 700	S1	H	OPSRES 789	S1	C	PACIFIC 792A	S1	C
NURSING 710	S1	H	NUTRN 701	S2	H					S2	C
	S2	H	NUTRN 703	S2	H	OPTOM 110	S2	CH	PACIFIC 792B	S1	C
NURSING 711	S1	T	NUTRN 704	S1	H	OPTOM 151A	S1	CH		S2	C
NURSING 712	S1	T		S2	H	OPTOM 151B	S2	CH	PACIFIC 797A	S1	C
NURSING 713	S2	T	OBSTGYN 351	S1	H	OPTOM 161	S1	C		S2	C
NURSING 714	S1	H	OBSTGYN 705	S1	H	OPTOM 165	S2	C	PACIFIC 797B	S1	C
	S2	HZ		S2	H	OPTOM 170	S2	C		S2	C
NURSING 715	S1	H	OBSTGYN 706	S1	H	OPTOM 211A	S1	H	PAEDS 601A	S1	H
	S2	H	OBSTGYN 707	S2	H	OPTOM 211B	S2	H	PAEDS 601B	S2	H
NURSING 716	S1	H	OBSTGYN 712	S1	K	OPTOM 245A	S1	H	PAEDS 711A	S1	K
NURSING 718	S1	H		S2	K	OPTOM 245B	S2	H	PAEDS 711B	S2	K
NURSING 719	S1	HZ	OBSTGYN 712A	S1	K	OPTOM 251A	S1	H	PAEDS 712	S1	T
	S2	H		S2	K	OPTOM 251B	S2	H	PAEDS 713	S1	K
NURSING 720	S1	O	OBSTGYN 712B	S1	K	OPTOM 260	S2	H	PAEDS 714	S2	K
	S2	H		S2	K	OPTOM 270	S1	H	PAEDS 715	S2	K
NURSING 721	S1	H	OBSTGYN 713	S1	K	OPTOM 311A	S1	H	PAEDS 718	S2	K
	S2	H		S2	K	OPTOM 311B	S2	H	PAEDS 719	S1	K
NURSING 722	S1	O	OBSTGYN 713A	S1	K	OPTOM 330A	S1	H		S2	K
	S2	HO		S2	K	OPTOM 330B	S2	H	PAEDS 720	S2	T
NURSING 723	S2	H	OBSTGYN 713B	S1	K	OPTOM 340A	S1	H	PATHOL 251	S1	CH
NURSING 724A	S1	T		S2	K	OPTOM 340B	S2	H	PATHOL 301	S2	H
NURSING 724B	S2	T	OBSTGYN 715	S1	K	OPTOM 350A	S1	H	PATHOL 302	S2	H
NURSING 725	S1	HKM		S2	K	OPTOM 350B	S2	H	PATHOL 303	S2	H
	S2		OBSTGYN 715A	S1	K	OPTOM 355A	S1	H	PATHOL 703	S2	H
		HKMN		S2	K	OPTOM 355B	S2	H	PATHOL 704	S1	H
NURSING 726	S1	H	OBSTGYN 715B	S1	K	OPTOM 372A	S1	H	PATHOL 705	S1	H
	S2	H		S2	K	OPTOM 372B	S2	H	PERFORM 701	S2	C
NURSING 727	S1	HZ	OBSTGYN 716	S1	K	OPTOM 410A	S1	H	PHARMACY 101	S2	H
	S2	HN		S2	K	OPTOM 410B	S2	H		SS	H
NURSING 728	S1	H	OBSTGYN 716A	S1	K	OPTOM 420A	S1	H	PHARMACY 201	S2	H
	S2	H		S2	K	OPTOM 420B	S2	H	PHARMACY 202	S1	H
NURSING 729	S1	H	OBSTGYN 716B	S1	K	OPTOM 461A	S1	T	PHARMACY 301	S2	H
NURSING 730A	S1	HKO		S2	K	OPTOM 461B	S2	T	PHARMACY 302A	S1	H
	S2	H	OBSTGYN 717A	S1	K	OPTOM 470A	S1	H	PHARMACY 302B	S2	H

2005 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2005. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
PHARMACY 303	S1	H	PHIL 208	S1	C	PHIL 769	S1	C	PHYSIOL 305	S2	H
PHARMACY 401A	S1	H	PHIL 209	S1	C		S2	C	PHYSIOL 690A	S1	H
PHARMACY 401B	S2	H	PHIL 210	S2	C	PHIL 780	S1	C	PHYSIOL 690B	S2	H
PHARMACY 404	S1	H	PHIL 211	S2	C		S2	C	PHYSIOL 691A	S1	H
PHARMACY 405A	S1	H	PHIL 212	S2	C	PHIL 780A	S1	C	PHYSIOL 691B	S2	H
PHARMACY 405B	S2	H	PHIL 213	S1	C		S2	C	PHYSIOL 701	S2	H
PHARMACY 406A	S1	H	PHIL 214	S1	C	PHIL 780B	S1	C	PHYSIOL 702	S1	H
PHARMACY 406B	S2	H	PHIL 215	S2	C		S2	C	PHYSIOL 703	S1	H
PHARMACY 700	S1	T	PHIL 216	SS	C	PHIL 792	S1	C	PHYSIOL 705	S1	H
PHARMACY 712A	S1	T	PHIL 217	S2	C	PHIL 792A	S1	C	PHYSIOL 706	S2	T
PHARMACY 712B	S2	T	PHIL 220	S1	C	PHIL 792B	S2	C	PHYSIOL 707	S1	H
PHARMACY 730	S1	T	PHIL 221	S2	C	PHIL 797A	S1	C	PHYSIOL 708	S1	H
PHARMACY 732	S2	T	PHIL 222	S2	C	PHIL 797B	S2	C	PHYSIOL 789	S1	H
PHARMACY 734	S1	T	PHIL 223	S2	C	PHYSICS 91W	S1	C		S2	H
PHARMACY 735	S2	T	PHIL 250	S1	C	PHYSICS 92W	S2	C	PLANNING 100	S2	C
PHARMACY 740	S2	T	PHIL 260	S2	C	PHYSICS 102	S1	C	PLANNING 101	S1	C
PHARMACY 742	S2	T	PHIL 261	S2	C		S2	C	PLANNING 102	S1	C
PHARMACY 750	S1	H	PHIL 263	S2	C	PHYSICS 107	S2	C	PLANNING 103	S2	C
PHARMACY 751	S2	H	PHIL 264	S1	C	PHYSICS 111	S1	C	PLANNING 110	S1	C
PHARMACY 752	S1	H	PHIL 302	S1	C	PHYSICS 120	S1	C	PLANNING 111	S2	C
PHARMACY 753	S2	H	PHIL 303	S1	C		S2	T	PLANNING 120	S1	C
PHARMACY 754	S1	H	PHIL 304	S1	C	PHYSICS 130	S2	C	PLANNING 121	S2	C
	S2	H	PHIL 305	S1	C	PHYSICS 150	S1	T	PLANNING 130	S1	C
PHARMACY 792	S1	H	PHIL 306	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C
	S2	H	PHIL 308	S1	C	PHYSICS 160	S1	C	PLANNING 131	S1	C
PHARMACY 792A	S1	H	PHIL 310	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C
	S2	H	PHIL 315	S1	C	PHYSICS 210	S2	C	PLANNING 132	S1	C
PHARMACY 792B	S1	H	PHIL 317	S1	C	PHYSICS 211A	S1	C		S2	C
	S2	H	PHIL 318	S2	C	PHYSICS 211B	S2	C	PLANNING 133	S1	C
PHARMACY 792X	S1	H	PHIL 320	S1	C	PHYSICS 213	S1	C		S2	C
	S2	H	PHIL 323	S2	C	PHYSICS 219A	S1	C	PLANNING 134	S1	C
PHARMACY 792Y	S1	H	PHIL 327	S1	C	PHYSICS 219B	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	H	PHIL 328	S1	C	PHYSICS 220	S2	C	PLANNING 135	S1	C
PHARMCOL 201	S2	H	PHIL 329	S1	C	PHYSICS 230	S1	C		S2	C
PHARMCOL 301	S1	H	PHIL 332	S2	C	PHYSICS 240	S1	C	PLANNING 136	S1	C
PHARMCOL 302	S1	H	PHIL 335	S2	C	PHYSICS 243	S1	T		S2	C
PHARMCOL 303	S2	H	PHIL 337	S2	C	PHYSICS 250	S2	C	PLANNING 137	S1	C
PHARMCOL 304	S2	H	PHIL 340	S1	C	PHYSICS 270	S2	C		S2	C
PHARMCOL 305	S2	H	PHIL 341	S2	C	PHYSICS 315A	S1	C	PLANNING 138	S1	C
PHARMCOL 306	S1	H	PHIL 360	S2	C	PHYSICS 315B	S2	C		S2	C
PHARMCOL 690A	S1	H	PHIL 361	S2	C	PHYSICS 325	S1	C	PLANNING 139	S1	C
PHARMCOL 690B	S2	H	PHIL 363	S2	C	PHYSICS 326	S2	C		S2	C
PHARMCOL 691A	S1	H	PHIL 364	S1	C	PHYSICS 340	S1	C	PLANNING 200	S1	C
PHARMCOL 691B	S2	H	PHIL 607	S1	C	PHYSICS 350A	S1	C	PLANNING 201	S1	C
PHARMCOL 710	S1	H		S2	C	PHYSICS 350B	S2	C	PLANNING 202	S1	C
	S2	H	PHIL 610A	S1	C	PHYSICS 355	S2	C	PLANNING 203	S2	C
PHARMCOL 711	S1	H		S2	C	PHYSICS 390	S1	C	PLANNING 210	S2	C
PHARMCOL 712	S1	H	PHIL 610B	S2	C	PHYSICS 391	S2	C	PLANNING 220	S2	C
PHARMCOL 713	S1	H	PHIL 620	S2	C	PHYSICS 395	S1	C	PLANNING 230	S1	C
PHARMCOL 715	S1	H	PHIL 620A	S1	C		S2	C	PLANNING 231	S1	C
PHARMCOL 716	S1	H		S2	C	PHYSICS 396	S1	C	PLANNING 233	S2	C
PHARMCOL 719	S1	H	PHIL 620B	S1	C		S2	C	PLANNING 234	S1	C
PHARMCOL 721	S2	H		S2	C	PHYSICS 690A	S1	CT	PLANNING 235	S1	C
PHARMCOL 722	S2	H	PHIL 720	S1	C	PHYSICS 690B	S2	CT		S2	C
PHARMCOL 725	S2	H		S2	C	PHYSICS 691A	S1	CT	PLANNING 236	S1	C
PHARMCOL 726	S2	H	PHIL 720A	S1	C	PHYSICS 691B	S2	CT		S2	C
PHARMCOL 727	S2	H		S2	C	PHYSICS 701	S1	C	PLANNING 237	S1	C
PHARMCOL 729	S2	H	PHIL 720B	S1	C	PHYSICS 703	S1	C		S2	C
PHARMCOL 789	S2	H		S2	C	PHYSICS 705	S1	C	PLANNING 238	S1	C
PHARMCOL 789A	S1	H	PHIL 726	S1	C	PHYSICS 706	S2	C		S2	C
PHARMCOL 789B	S2	H	PHIL 728	S2	C	PHYSICS 707	S2	C	PLANNING 239	S1	C
PHIL 100	S1	C	PHIL 732	S2	C	PHYSICS 708	S1	C		S2	C
PHIL 101	S1	CT	PHIL 736	S2	C		S2	C	PLANNING 300	S2	C
	S2	CT	PHIL 737	S1	C	PHYSICS 726	S1	C	PLANNING 301	S2	C
	SS	C	PHIL 739	S2	C	PHYSICS 727	S2	C	PLANNING 302	S2	C
PHIL 102	S2	CT	PHIL 741	S2	C	PHYSICS 731	S2	C	PLANNING 303	S1	C
	SS	C	PHIL 742	S2	C	PHYSICS 732	S1	C	PLANNING 310	S1	C
PHIL 103	S1	C	PHIL 749	S1	C	PHYSICS 750	S2	C	PLANNING 320	S1	C
PHIL 105	S1	C	PHIL 752	S1	C	PHYSICS 754	S2	C	PLANNING 321	S2	C
	S2	C	PHIL 755	S1	C	PHYSICS 760	S2	C	PLANNING 330	S1	C
	SS	C	PHIL 757	S2	C	PHYSICS 792	S2	C	PLANNING 331	SS	C
PHIL 152	S2	C	PHIL 758	S1	C	PHYSIOL 210	S1	CH	PLANNING 335	S1	C
	SS	C	PHIL 759	S1	C	PHYSIOL 220	S2	CH		S2	C
PHIL 200	S1	C	PHIL 764	S2	C	PHYSIOL 301	S1	H	PLANNING 336	S1	C
PHIL 204	S2	C	PHIL 767	S1	C	PHYSIOL 302	S1	H		S2	C
PHIL 205	S1	C	PHIL 768	S1	C	PHYSIOL 303	S2	H	PLANNING 337	S1	C
PHIL 207	S1	C		S2	C	PHYSIOL 304	S2	H	PLANNING 338	S2	C

Course Code	Semester	Location									
PLANNING 339	S2	C	PLANNING 760A	S1	C	POLITICS 736B	S2	C	PROPERTY 713	S1	C
	SS	C	PLANNING 760B	S2	C	POLITICS 737A	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 400	S2	C	PLANNING 761	S1	C	POLITICS 737B	S2	C	PROPERTY 714	S1	C
PLANNING 401	S1	C	PLANNING 761A	S1	C	POLITICS 740A	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 402	S1	C	PLANNING 761B	S2	C	POLITICS 740B	S2	C	PROPERTY 723	S1	C
PLANNING 403	S1	C	PLANNING 762	S1	C	POLITICS 742	S2	C		S2	C
PLANNING 410	S1	C	PLANNING 762A	S1	C	POLITICS 743	S1	C	PROPERTY 725	S1	C
	S2	C	PLANNING 762B	S2	C	POLITICS 746	S2	C		S2	C
	SS	C	PLANNING 763	S1	C	POLITICS 748	S1	C	PROPERTY 733	S1	C
PLANNING 420	S2	C	PLANNING 764A	S1	C	POLITICS 750A	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 430	S1	C	PLANNING 764B	S2	C	POLITICS 750B	S2	C	PROPERTY 734	S1	C
PLANNING 433	S2	C	PLANNING 765A	S1	C	POLITICS 753A	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 434	S1	C	PLANNING 765B	S2	C	POLITICS 753B	S2	C	PROPERTY 743	S1	C
	S2	C	PLANNING 766A	S1	C	POLITICS 754A	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 435	S1	C	PLANNING 766B	S2	C	POLITICS 754B	S2	C	PROPERTY 753	S1	C
	S2	C	PLANNING 767A	S1	C	POLITICS 754B	S2	C		S2	C
PLANNING 436	S1	C	PLANNING 767B	S2	C	POLITICS 755	S1	C	PROPERTY 763	S1	C
	S2	C	PLANNING 768A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C
PLANNING 437	S1	C	PLANNING 768B	S2	C	POLITICS 756A	S1	C	PROPERTY 764	S1	C
	S2	C	PLANNING 769A	S1	C	POLITICS 756B	S2	C		S2	C
PLANNING 700	S2	C	PLANNING 769B	S2	C	POLITICS 758	S1	C	PROPERTY 783	S1	C
PLANNING 701	S2	C	PLANNING 770	S2	C	POLITICS 780	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 702	S1	C	PLANNING 770A	S1	C	POLITICS 780A	S1	C	PROPERTY 784	S1	C
PLANNING 703	S1	C	PLANNING 770B	S2	C	POLITICS 780B	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 704	S2	C	PLANNING 780	S1	C		S2	C	PROPERTY 785	S1	C
PLANNING 705	S2	C		S2	C	POLITICS 790A	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 706	S1	C	PLANNING 780A	S1	C	POLITICS 790B	S2	C	PROPERTY 788	S1	C
PLANNING 707	S1	C		S2	C	POLITICS 797A	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 708	S1	C	PLANNING 780B	S1	C		S2	C	PROPERTY 789	S1	C
PLANNING 709	S2	C		S2	C	POLYMER 692A	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 710	S2	C	PLANNING 797A	S1	C		S2	C	PROPERTY 792	S1	C
PLANNING 711	S1	C		S2	C	POLYMER 692B	S1	C		S2	C
PLANNING 712	S1	C	PLANNING 797B	S1	C		S2	C	PROPERTY 793A	S1	C
	S2	C		S2	C	POLYMER 701	S1	C		S2	C
	SS	C	POLISH 100	S2	C	POLYMER 702	S1	C	PROPERTY 793B	S1	C
PLANNING 720	S1	C	POLITICS 106	S1	C	POLYMER 711	S2	C		S2	C
PLANNING 721	S1	C	POLITICS 107	S1	C	POP MUS 101A	S1	C	PSYCH 108	S1	T
PLANNING 722	S2	C	POLITICS 109	S2	C	POP MUS 101B	S2	C		S2	C
PLANNING 730	S1	C	POLITICS 113	S2	C	POP MUS 102	S2	C	PSYCH 109	S1	C
PLANNING 731	S1	C	POLITICS 121	SS	C	POP MUS 103	S1	C		S2	T
PLANNING 732	S1	C	POLITICS 209	S1	C	POP MUS 106	S1	C	PSYCH 201	S2	C
	S2	C	POLITICS 215	S2	C	POP MUS 201A	S1	C	PSYCH 202	S1	C
PLANNING 733	S1	C	POLITICS 218	S1	C	POP MUS 201B	S2	C	PSYCH 203	S1	C
	S2	C	POLITICS 220	S2	C	POP MUS 202A	S1	C	PSYCH 204	S2	C
PLANNING 734	S2	C	POLITICS 221	S1	C	POP MUS 202B	S2	C	PSYCH 206	S1	C
PLANNING 735	S2	C	POLITICS 222	S2	C	POP MUS 203	S2	C	PSYCH 301	S1	C
PLANNING 736	S2	C	POLITICS 223	S2	C	POP MUS 207	S1	C	PSYCH 303	S2	C
PLANNING 737	S2	C	POLITICS 226	S1	C	POP MUS 210	S1	C	PSYCH 305	S2	C
PLANNING 738	S1	C	POLITICS 229	S1	C	POP MUS 301A	S1	C	PSYCH 306A	S1	C
	S2	C	POLITICS 231	S2	C	POP MUS 301B	S2	C	PSYCH 306B	S2	C
PLANNING 739	S2	C	POLITICS 232	S2	C	POP MUS 302	S2	C	PSYCH 307	S1	C
PLANNING 740A	S1	C	POLITICS 233	S1	C	POP MUS 303	S1	C	PSYCH 308A	S1	C
PLANNING 740B	S2	C	POLITICS 234	S2	C	POP MUS 305	S2	C	PSYCH 308B	S2	C
PLANNING 741A	S1	C	POLITICS 237	S1	C	PROPERTY 102	S1	C	PSYCH 309	S2	C
PLANNING 741B	S2	C	POLITICS 238	S2	C	PROPERTY 141	S2	C	PSYCH 310	S2	C
PLANNING 750A	S1	C	POLITICS 240	SS	C	PROPERTY 211	S1	C	PSYCH 311	S1	C
PLANNING 750B	S2	C	POLITICS 241	S2	C	PROPERTY 221	S2	C	PSYCH 312	S2	C
PLANNING 751A	S1	C	POLITICS 318	S2	C	PROPERTY 231	S2	C	PSYCH 314	S1	T
PLANNING 751B	S2	C	POLITICS 320	S2	C	PROPERTY 241	S2	C	PSYCH 316	S2	C
PLANNING 752A	S1	C	POLITICS 325	S2	C	PROPERTY 251	S1	C	PSYCH 317	S2	C
PLANNING 752B	S2	C	POLITICS 327	S2	C	PROPERTY 261	S1	C	PSYCH 319	S2	C
PLANNING 753A	S1	C	POLITICS 328	S1	C	PROPERTY 271	S1	C	PSYCH 364	S1	T
PLANNING 753B	S2	C	POLITICS 332	S1	C	PROPERTY 311	S2	C	PSYCH 650A	S1	C
PLANNING 754A	S1	C	POLITICS 336	S2	C	PROPERTY 321	S2	C	PSYCH 650B	S2	C
PLANNING 754B	S2	C	POLITICS 339	S1	C	PROPERTY 322	S2	C	PSYCH 690A	S1	CT
PLANNING 755	S2	C	POLITICS 340	S2	C	PROPERTY 331	S1	C	PSYCH 690B	S2	T
PLANNING 755A	S1	C	POLITICS 342	S1	C	PROPERTY 342	S1	C	PSYCH 691A	S1	C
PLANNING 755B	S2	C	POLITICS 344	S1	C	PROPERTY 344	S1	C	PSYCH 691B	S2	C
PLANNING 756	SS	C	POLITICS 703A	S1	C	PROPERTY 351	S2	C	PSYCH 701A	S1	T
PLANNING 756A	S1	C	POLITICS 703B	S2	C	PROPERTY 363	S2	C	PSYCH 701B	S2	T
PLANNING 756B	S2	C	POLITICS 724A	S1	C	PROPERTY 371	S1	C	PSYCH 702A	S1	C
PLANNING 757A	S1	C	POLITICS 724B	S2	C		S2	C	PSYCH 702B	S2	C
PLANNING 757B	S2	C	POLITICS 728A	S1	C	PROPERTY 372	S1	C	PSYCH 707	S2	C
PLANNING 758A	S1	C	POLITICS 728B	S2	C		S2	C	PSYCH 708A	S1	C
PLANNING 758B	S2	C	POLITICS 732A	S1	C	PROPERTY 382	S1	C	PSYCH 708B	S2	C
PLANNING 759A	S1	C	POLITICS 732B	S2	C	PROPERTY 671	S1	C	PSYCH 709A	S1	C
PLANNING 759B	S2	C	POLITICS 736A	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 709B	S2	C
						PROPERTY 691	S1	C	PSYCH 711A	S1	C

2005 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2005. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
PSYCH 711B	S2	C	RUSSIAN 390	S1	C	SOFTENG 206A	S1	C	SPANISH 750A	S1	C
PSYCH 714	S1	C		S2	C	SOFTENG 206B	S2	C	SPANISH 750B	S2	C
PSYCH 716	S1	C		SS	C	SOFTENG 211	S1	C	SPANISH 792	S1	C
PSYCH 717	S1	C	RUSSIAN 710	S1	C	SOFTENG 250	S1	C	SPANISH 792A	S1	C
PSYCH 720A	S1	CT		S2	C	SOFTENG 251	S2	C	SPANISH 792B	S2	C
	S2	C	RUSSIAN 710A	S1	C	SOFTENG 252	S1	C	SPANISH 794A	S1	C
PSYCH 720B	S2	CT	RUSSIAN 710B	S2	C	SOFTENG 253	S2	C	SPANISH 794B	S2	C
PSYCH 721	S2	C	RUSSIAN 711	S1	C	SOFTENG 306A	S1	C	SPANISH 797A	S1	C
PSYCH 725	S2	C	RUSSIAN 717	S2	C	SOFTENG 306B	S2	C	SPANISH 797B	S2	C
PSYCH 731	S2	C	RUSSIAN 722	S1	C	SOFTENG 325	S2	C	SPCHSCI 711	S1	T
PSYCH 737	S1	T	RUSSIAN 724	S1	C	SOFTENG 350	S1	C	SPCHSCI 712	S1	T
PSYCH 738	S2	T	RUSSIAN 725	S2	C	SOFTENG 363	S1	C	SPCHSCI 713	S1	HT
PSYCH 739	S1	T	RUSSIAN 726	S1	C	SOFTENG 364	S2	C	SPCHSCI 714	S1	T
PSYCH 740	S2	C		S2	C	SOFTENG 370	S2	C	SPCHSCI 721	S2	T
PSYCH 743	S1	C	RUSSIAN 732	S1	C	SOFTENG 401A	S1	C	SPCHSCI 722	S2	T
PSYCH 744	S2	C	RUSSIAN 733	S2	C	SOFTENG 401B	S2	C	SPCHSCI 724	S2	T
PSYCH 745	S2	T	RUSSIAN 790	S1	C	SOFTENG 450	S1	C	SPCHSCI 731	S1	T
PSYCH 746	S1	C		S2	C	SOFTENG 461	S1	C	SPCHSCI 732A	S1	T
PSYCH 750A	S1	T	RUSSIAN 797A	S1	C	SOFTENG 462	S2	C	SPCHSCI 732B	S2	T
PSYCH 750B	S2	T	RUSSIAN 797B	S2	C	SOFTENG 701	S1	C	SPCHSCI 734	S1	T
PSYCH 751A	S1	T	SAMOAN 101	S1	C	SOFTENG 702	S1	C	SPCHSCI 741	S2	T
PSYCH 751B	S2	T		SS	C	SOFTENG 710	S2	C	SPCHSCI 742	S1	T
PSYCH 752A	S1	T	SAMOAN 102	S2	C	SOFTENG 711	S2	C	SPCHSCI 744	S2	T
PSYCH 752B	S2	T	SAMOAN 103	S1	C	SOFTENG 790	S1	C	SPCHSCI 751	S1	T
PSYCH 753A	S1	T	SAMOAN 201	S1	C		S2	C		S2	T
PSYCH 753B	S2	T	SAMOAN 202	S2	C	SOUND 701A	S1	C	SPORTSCI 102	S2	T
PSYCH 755	S2	C	SAMOAN 301	S1	C	SOUND 701B	S2	C	SPORTSCI 103	S1	T
PSYCH 771A	S1	C	SAMOAN 302	S2	C	SOUND 702	S2	C	SPORTSCI 104	S2	T
PSYCH 771B	S2	C	SCIGEN 101	S2	C	SOUND 703	S1	C	SPORTSCI 105	S1	T
PSYCH 772A	S1	C		SS	C	SOUND 706	S2	C	SPORTSCI 201	S2	T
PSYCH 772B	S2	C	SCIGEN 201	S1	CT	SOUND 707	S1	C	SPORTSCI 202	S2	T
PSYCH 773A	S1	C	SOCIOI 100	S1	C	SOUND 709	S2	C	SPORTSCI 203	S1	T
PSYCH 773B	S1	C	SOCIOI 101	SS	C	SOUND 710A	S1	C	SPORTSCI 204	S1	T
	S2	C	SOCIOI 102	S1	C	SOUND 710B	S2	C	SPORTSCI 206	S1	T
PSYCH 789A	S1	CT	SOCIOI 103	S2	C	SOUND 711	S1	C	SPORTSCI 301	S1	T
	S2	CT	SOCIOI 105	S2	C		S2	C	SPORTSCI 302	S2	T
PSYCH 789B	S1	C	SOCIOI 106	S1	C	SOUND 715A	S1	C	SPORTSCI 303	S1	T
	S2	CT	SOCIOI 200	S2	C	SOUND 715B	S2	C	SPORTSCI 304	S1	T
PSYCHIAT 731	S1	H	SOCIOI 201	S1	C	SOUND 791A	S1	C	SPORTSCI 305	S2	T
PSYCHIAT 740	S2	K	SOCIOI 210	S1	C		S2	C	SPORTSCI 306	S2	T
PSYCHIAT 741A	S1	K	SOCIOI 211	S1	C	SOUND 791B	S1	C	SPORTSCI 307	S1	T
PSYCHIAT 741B	S2	K	SOCIOI 213	S1	C		S2	C	SPORTSCI 309A	S1	T
PSYCHIAT 742A	S1	H	SOCIOI 214	S2	C	SOUND 793	S1	C	SPORTSCI 309B	S2	T
PSYCHIAT 742B	S2	H	SOCIOI 216	SS	C		S2	C	SPORTSCI 690A	S1	T
PSYCHIAT 745	S2	H	SOCIOI 220	S2	C	SOUND 793A	S1	C	SPORTSCI 690B	S2	T
PSYCHIAT 746	S2	H	SOCIOI 221	S1	C		S2	C	SPORTSCI 691A	S1	T
PSYCHIAT 747	S1	T	SOCIOI 222	S2	C	SOUND 793B	S2	C	SPORTSCI 691B	S2	T
PSYCHIAT 748A	S1	H	SOCIOI 224	S2	C	SPANISH 103	S1	C	SPORTSCI 702	S1	T
PSYCHIAT 748B	S2	H	SOCIOI 303	S2	C	SPANISH 104	S1	C		S2	T
PSYCHIAT 749A	S1	H	SOCIOI 310	S1	C		S2	C	SPORTSCI 703	S1	T
PSYCHIAT 749B	S2	H	SOCIOI 311	S1	C		SS	C	SPORTSCI 704	S1	T
PSYCHIAT 760	S1	H	SOCIOI 317	S1	C	SPANISH 105	S2	C	SPORTSCI 705	S2	T
PSYCHIAT 761	S1	H	SOCIOI 318	S1	C	SPANISH 200	S1	C	SPORTSCI 706	S2	T
PSYCHIAT 762	S2	H	SOCIOI 323	SS	C	SPANISH 201	S2	C	SPORTSCI 707	S1	T
QUALITY 703	T2	C	SOCIOI 325	S2	C	SPANISH 204	S1	C	SPORTSCI 708	S2	T
QUALITY 713	T1	C	SOCIOI 326	S1	C	SPANISH 205	S2	C	SPORTSCI 710	S1	T
RUSSIAN 100	S1	C	SOCIOI 333	S2	C	SPANISH 277	S2	V	SPORTSCI 711	S1	T
RUSSIAN 101	S2	C	SOCIOI 700	S2	C		SS	V	SPORTSCI 789A	S1	T
RUSSIAN 200	S1	C	SOCIOI 701	S2	C	SPANISH 278	S1	V	SPORTSCI 789B	S2	T
RUSSIAN 201	S2	C	SOCIOI 712	S1	C		S2	V	SPORTSCI 791A	S1	T
RUSSIAN 250	S1	C	SOCIOI 718	S1	C		SS	V	SPORTSCI 791B	S2	T
RUSSIAN 277	S1	V	SOCIOI 728	S2	C	SPANISH 300	S1	C	SPORTSCI 797A	S1	T
	S2	V	SOCIOI 731	S1	C	SPANISH 302	S2	C	SPORTSCI 797B	S2	T
	SS	V		S2	C	SPANISH 311	S1	C	STATS 101	S1	C
RUSSIAN 278	S1	V	SOCIOI 732	S1	C	SPANISH 377	S2	V		S2	C
	S2	V	SOCIOI 733	S2	C		SS	V	STATS 102	S1	C
	SS	V	SOCIOI 735	S1	C	SPANISH 378	S1	V		S2	C
RUSSIAN 310	S1	C	SOCIOI 738	S1	C		S2	V	STATS 107	S1	T
RUSSIAN 311	S1	C		S2	C		SS	V		S2	T
RUSSIAN 312	S2	C	SOCIOI 792	S1	C	SPANISH 700A	S1	C	STATS 108	S1	CT
RUSSIAN 350	S1	C		S2	C	SPANISH 700B	S2	C		S2	CT
RUSSIAN 377	S1	V	SOCIOI 792A	S1	C	SPANISH 728	S1	C		SS	C
	S2	V	SOCIOI 792B	S2	C		S2	C	STATS 125	S1	C
	SS	V	SOCIOI 797A	S1	C	SPANISH 734	S2	C	STATS 150	S2	C
RUSSIAN 378	S1	V	SOCIOI 797B	S2	C	SPANISH 735	S1	C	STATS 191	S1	MST
	S2	V	SOCSCIPH 200	S1	T	SPANISH 750	S1	C	STATS 201	S1	CT
	SS	V	SOCSCIPH 300	S2	T		S2	C		S2	CT

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
STATS 208	S1	CT	STATS 760	S1	T	STATS 797B	S1	CT	VISARTS 270B	S2	M
	S2	CT	STATS 761	S1	C		S2	CT	VISARTS 271	S1	M
	SS	C	STATS 767	S1	C	THEATRE 202A	S1	C	VISARTS 272	S2	M
STATS 210	S1	C	STATS 770	S1	T	THEATRE 202B	S2	C	VISARTS 350A	S1	M
	S2	C	STATS 771	S2	C	THEATRE 203	S2	C	VISARTS 350B	S2	M
STATS 220	S1	C	STATS 773	S2	T	THEATRE 301	S2	C	VISARTS 360A	S1	M
STATS 255	S1	C	STATS 775	S1	T	THEATRE 701	S1	C	VISARTS 360B	S2	M
	S2	CT	STATS 780	S2	C		S2	C	VISARTS 370A	S1	M
STATS 301	S1	T	STATS 782	S1	C	THEATRE 710A	S1	C	VISARTS 370B	S2	M
	S2	C		S2	T	THEATRE 710B	S2	C	VISARTS 470A	S1	M
STATS 302	S1	C	STATS 784	S1	C	THEATRE 770A	S1	C	VISARTS 470B	S2	M
STATS 310	S1	C	STATS 785	S1	T	THEATRE 770B	S2	C	WINESCI 701	S1	T
STATS 320	S1	C		S2	C	THEATRE 791A	S1	C	WINESCI 702	S1	T
	S2	T	STATS 787	S2	C	THEATRE 791B	S2	C	WINESCI 703	S2	T
STATS 325	S2	C	STATS 788	S1	C	THEATRE 793A	S1	C	WINESCI 704	S1	T
STATS 330	S2	C		S2	C	THEATRE 793B	S2	C	WINESCI 705A	S1	T
STATS 340	S1	C	STATS 788A	S1	CT	TONGAN 101	S1	C		S2	T
	S2	T		S2	CT	TONGAN 102	S2	C	WINESCI 705B	S1	T
STATS 370	S2	C	STATS 788B	S1	CT	TONGAN 103	S1	C		S2	T
STATS 390	S1	C		S2	CT	TONGAN 201	S1	C	WINESCI 706	S2	T
	S2	C	STATS 789	S1	CT	TONGAN 202	S2	C	WOMEN 100	S1	C
STATS 391	S1	C		S2	CT	TONGAN 301	S1	C	WOMEN 101	S2	C
	S2	T		SS	C	TONGAN 302	S2	C	WOMEN 203	S2	C
STATS 690A	S1	CT	STATS 789A	S1	CT	TRANSLAT 601	S1	C	WOMEN 204	S2	C
STATS 690B	S2	CT	STATS 789B	S2	CT	TRANSLAT 602	S1	C	WOMEN 303	S1	C
STATS 691A	S1	CT	STATS 790	S1	CT	TRANSLAT 702	S1	C	WOMEN 304	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	CT	TRANSLAT 703	S2	C	WOMEN 306	S1	C
STATS 691B	S2	CT		SS	C	TRANSLAT 704	S1	C	WOMEN 704A	S1	C
STATS 692A	S1	CT	STATS 790A	S1	CT	TRANSLAT 706	S1	C	WOMEN 704B	S2	C
STATS 692B	S2	CT	STATS 790B	S1	C	TRANSLAT 710	S1	C	WOMEN 785A	S1	C
STATS 693A	S1	CT		S2	CT	TRANSLAT 722	S2	C	WOMEN 785B	S2	C
STATS 693B	S2	CT	STATS 791	S1	CT	VISARTS 150A	S1	M	WOMEN 792	S1	C
STATS 708	S1	C		S2	CT	VISARTS 150B	S2	M		S2	C
STATS 723	S1	C	STATS 791A	S1	CT	VISARTS 160A	S1	M	WOMEN 792A	S1	C
STATS 724	S2	C	STATS 791B	S2	CT	VISARTS 160B	S2	M	WOMEN 792B	S2	C
STATS 725	S1	C	STATS 792	S1	C	VISARTS 170A	S1	M	WOMEN 797A	S1	C
	S2	T	STATS 793	S2	C	VISARTS 170B	S2	M	WOMEN 797B	S1	C
STATS 726	S1	C	STATS 794	S2	C	VISARTS 250A	S1	M		S2	C
STATS 730	S2	T	STATS 795	S1	C	VISARTS 250B	S2	M		S2	C
STATS 731	S2	C		S2	T	VISARTS 260A	S1	M		S1	C
STATS 740	S2	T	STATS 797A	S1	CT	VISARTS 260B	S2	M		S1	C
STATS 747	S1	C		S2	CT	VISARTS 270A	S1	M		S2	C

2005 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2005. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva)

---

## Acts of Parliament and University Statutes

### Acts of Parliament

- 623 Education Act 1989
- 623 The University of Auckland Act 1961

### University Statutes

- 624 The Disciplinary Statute 1998
- 627 Membership of Associations of Students Referenda and Elections of Student Representatives on Council Statute 1999
- 633 Court of Convocation Register Statute 1990
- 634 The Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Statute 1990

# ACTS OF PARLIAMENT

## Education Act 1989

The University, like all tertiary education institutions, is subject to the provisions of the Education Act 1989 (as amended). This Act specifies the constitution and powers of the Council and various other matters relating to the administration of tertiary institutions. Copies of the Act are available from the Government Bookshop.

## The University of Auckland Act 1961

Analysis

### Title

- 1 Short Title and Commencement
- 2 Interpretation
- 3 Constitution of the University
- 4 University District and Court of Convocation

### Powers of the Council

- 20 Award of certificates, etc.
- 21 Lectures to members of the public

### An Act to consolidate and amend certain enactments of the General Assembly relating to The University of Auckland

Be it enacted by the General Assembly of New Zealand in Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:

#### 1 Short Title and Commencement

- (1) This Act may be cited as The University of Auckland Act 1961.
- (2) This Act shall come into force on the first day of January, nineteen hundred and sixty two.

#### 2 Interpretation

In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires:

**'the Council'** means the Council of The University of Auckland constituted in accordance with Part XV of the Education Act 1989;

**'Lecturer'** means a member of the staff of The University of Auckland who is in terms of his appointment an associate professor, a reader, a senior lecturer, or a lecturer of the University; and includes such other persons and classes of persons as the Council from time to time determines;

**'Minister'** means the Minister of the Crown for the time being responsible for the administration of this Act;

**'Professor'** means a professor of The University of Auckland; but does not include an associate professor;

**'the Registrar'** means the Registrar of The University of Auckland;

**'the University'** means The University of Auckland constituted under this Act.

#### 3 Constitution of the University

- (1) For the advancement of knowledge and the dissemination and maintenance thereof by teaching and research there shall be a University to be called The University of Auckland.

- (2) The University shall consist of the Council, the professors emeriti, the professors, lecturers, junior lecturers, Registrar and Librarian of the University for the time being in office, the graduates and undergraduates of The University of New Zealand whose names are for the time being on the register of the Court of Convocation of The University of Auckland, and such other persons and classes of persons as the Council may from time to time determine.

- (3) The University shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and a common seal, and may hold real and personal property, and sue and be sued, and do and suffer all that bodies corporate may do and suffer.

- (4) The University established under this Act is hereby declared to be the same institution as the institution of that name existing immediately before the commencement of this Act under The University of Auckland Act 1954 (as amended by The University of Auckland Amendment Act 1957), which institution was originally established under the name of the Auckland University College under the Auckland University College Act 1882.

#### 4 Court of Convocation

- (1) – repealed
- (2) – repealed
- (3) There shall be a Court of Convocation of the University.
- (4) The said Court of Convocation shall consist of the persons whose names are enrolled on a register to be kept by the Registrar.
- (5) Every person shall be entitled to have his name enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation who
  - (a) is a graduate of the University; or
  - (b) being a graduate of The University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reasons of having been admitted ad eundem gradum before the first day of January, nineteen hundred and forty-three, is not by reason of that qualification, enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for any other University, and is otherwise qualified in accordance with statutes made by the Council to be

- enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of the University; or
- (c) not being such a graduate, is a professor or graduate full-time member of the staff of the University or a graduate member, approved by the Council as being of University status, of the staff of an institution affiliated to the University; or
- (d) is otherwise entitled in accordance with statutes made by the Council to have his name enrolled on the said register.
- (6) The power of the Council under Section 194 of the Education Act 1989 to make statutes extends to making statutes for the keeping of the register of the Court of Convocation, which statutes may include provisions prescribing the persons and classes of persons who are eligible under paragraph (b) or paragraph (d) of subsection (5) of this section for membership of the said Court of Convocation and the conditions (whether as to payment of fee or otherwise) on which persons are entitled to have their names enrolled in the register of the said

Court; and, subject to this Act and to the said statutes, if any, the said Court shall have power to make such rules for the conduct of its business as it thinks fit as the Council may determine.

- (7) The said Court may make representations to the Council on any matter concerning the interests of the University.

#### Sections 5 to 19 – repealed

#### 20 Awards of Certificates, etc.

The Council shall have power, under such conditions as it thinks fit, to award certificates, fellowships, scholarships, bursaries and prizes, and to make other awards.

#### 21 Lectures to Members of the Public

The Council shall have power to provide such lectures and instruction for any persons, whether or not they are members of the University, as it thinks fit, and on such conditions as it thinks fit, and may award certificates to any of them.

#### Sections 22 to 53 – repealed

---

## UNIVERSITY STATUTES

---

### The Disciplinary Statute 1998

#### 1 Title and Commencement

This Statute may be cited as The Disciplinary Statute 1998 and comes into force on 1 March 1998.

#### 2 Interpretation

**'Appeals Committee'** means the Committee constituted by the Council with delegated authority to exercise the powers conferred on it by Statute.

**'Authorized Person'** means the Vice Chancellor, the Registrar, any Staff Member, a Warden or a member of the staff of the Students' Association.

**'Class'** means any lecture, tutorial, seminar, laboratory, or other assembly of Students at which tuition is being given and includes any lecture or address within the University at which Students are present.

**'Council'** means the Council of the University.

**'Discipline Committee'** means the committee constituted by the Council with delegated authority to exercise the powers conferred on it by Statute.

**'Enrolment'** means enrolment in a course of study or training at the University and 'enrol' has a corresponding meaning.

**'Facility'** means premises and equipment made available by the University for the recreation of Students and Staff Members as, for example:

- Common Rooms
- Physical Fitness Facilities

Playing Fields

Student Union

The Maidment Theatre.

**'Field Trip'** means a trip beyond University Premises undertaken by Students and conducted by the University for the purposes of study or research.

**'Hall'** means any hostel or hall of residence or other student accommodation under the control of the University and intended for the occupation of students.

**'Registrar'** means the person for the time being holding office as the Registrar of the University.

**'Rule'** means any rule of conduct made by the Council, the Senate, or any Authorized Person of which notice has been given:

(i) by publication in the University Calendar; or

(ii) by other means; or

(iii) to the person charged with misconduct before the alleged misconduct has occurred.

**'Senate'** means the Senate of the University.

**'Specified Statutes'** means the Examination Regulations, the Fees Regulations, the Computer System Regulations, the Library Regulations as published in the most recent University Calendar and includes any other Regulations or Statutes so published which prescribe offences for misconduct (whether or not penalties are also prescribed for those offences).

**'Staff Member'** means a member of the staff of the University.

**'Statute'** means a Statute made by the Council and includes this Statute, a Specified Statute and all Regulations of the University made before 1 January 1991 and not since revoked.

**'Student'** means a duly enrolled student of the University and includes, for the purposes of section 3 of this Statute, a person applying to enrol.

**'Students' Association'** means the Auckland University Students' Association Incorporated.

**'Student Union'** means University Premises that are for the time being administered by the Students' Association.

**'University'** means The University of Auckland.

**'University Premises'** means land and buildings owned by the University or of which the University has possession or control; and includes any Hall and (for the avoidance of doubt) the Student Union.

**'Vice Chancellor'** means the person holding office for the time being as the Chief Executive of the University; and includes any person for the time being:

- a acting in that capacity; or
- b acting as a Deputy of the Chief Executive.

**'Warden'** means the person for the time being in charge of any Hall; and includes a deputy of that person.

### Good Government and Discipline

#### 3 Observance of Statutes and Rules

- a Every Student shall observe and comply with the provisions of the Statutes and Rules of the University.
- b Students who, on Enrolment or in the course of their attendance at the University, are subject to conditions imposed on their attendance to prevent disturbance or to maintain good order and discipline shall comply with those conditions.

#### 4 Prohibitions and Directions

- a No Student or Staff Member shall:
  - (i) Wilfully act (on University Premises or elsewhere) in a manner contrary to the good government of the University or so as to bring the University into disrepute.
  - (ii) Wilfully damage, deface or destroy University Premises, any property on University Premises or any property of a Student, a Staff Member, or the Students' Association.
  - (iii) Wilfully impede the activities of the University, whether in teaching, research or otherwise.
  - (iv) Wilfully obstruct any Authorized Person in the due performance of the functions or duties of that Authorized Person.
  - (v) Wilfully create any nuisance in or on University Premises.

- (vi) Wilfully interfere with the pursuit of work or study by any Student or Staff Member or his or her proper enjoyment of the amenities of the University.
  - (vii) Be in University Premises when the Student knows or ought to know that he or she is not entitled to be there at that time.
  - (viii) Smoke in any place where smoking is prohibited in terms of the Smoke Free policy of the University for the time being.
  - (ix) Cause any unnecessary disturbance or annoyance to persons living in residential quarters on University Premises or to residents in the immediate neighbourhood of University Premises.
  - (x) Ride, drive or park a cycle or motor vehicle in the University grounds except in compliance with the directions notified from time to time regulating the entry, exit and speed of cycles and vehicles and the places where they may be parked.
  - (xi) Be accompanied by a dog (other than a guide dog) or any other pet on University Premises.
  - (xii) Refuse any reasonable request to identify himself or herself by an Authorized Person who has reason to suspect that the Student is involved in a breach of any Statute or Rule.
  - (xiii) Post notices elsewhere than on the permanent notice boards provided for the purpose and except in compliance with the conditions prescribed by the Executive of the Students' Association in that regard.
  - (xiv) Bring or consume alcoholic liquor on University Premises other than:
    - (a) on licensed premises; or
    - (b) any other premises where permission has been given to consume alcohol and then only in accordance with any conditions imposed.
  - (xv) Use the Personal Identification Card of another Student (so as to impersonate that other Student) or permit his or her Personal Identification Card to be used by another Student.
- b All Students shall comply with:
    - (i) Such directions as may reasonably be given by an Authorized Person to maintain good order and discipline.
    - (ii) (While in a Class); any requirements as to behaviour or attire made for the orderly conduct of the Class or the safety of persons or property.
    - (iii) (While using any Facility); the Rules applicable to its use and any directions by the person in charge to preserve the safety of the persons using the Facility.
    - (iv) (While resident or present in a Hall); the Rules governing the maintenance

of good order and discipline in the Hall and any directions given by the Warden of the Hall for that purpose;

- (v) (While on a Field Trip); any Rules by the person in charge of the Field Trip to preserve the safety of the persons engaged on the Field Trip or to prevent misconduct during the Field Trip.
- (vi) (While present in the Student Union); requests made by an Authorized Person to prevent unruly behaviour or to cause it to cease.

#### 5 **Members of the Security Intelligence Service**

- a No member of the Security Intelligence Service enrolled as a Student at the University shall carry out any inquiries into security matters within the University Premises.
- b The proposed attendance of a member of the Security Intelligence Service at the University shall be discussed between the Security Intelligence Service and the Registrar before his or her enrolment.
- c After those discussions have been held, the Senate shall determine each year what special conditions (if any) as to attendance at Classes shall apply to students who are members of the Security Intelligence Service in order to maintain discipline among the students of the University by preventing any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal teaching activities.
- d In this Section 5 'Member of the Security Intelligence Service' means an officer or employee engaged in the Security Intelligence Service established under the New Zealand Security Intelligence Service Act 1969.

### **Imposition of Penalties on Students**

#### 6 **Misbehaviour in Classes or Facilities**

- a Where a Student commits a breach of any Statute or Rule:
  - (i) In any Class: the person in charge of the Class; or
  - (ii) In any Facility: the person in charge of the Facility; may
    - (a) Exclude the Student from the Class (and up to 3 subsequent sessions of the Class) or the Facility (for such period as the person in charge may determine); and
    - (b) Refer the breach to the Discipline Committee.

#### 7 **Misbehaviour in Halls**

- a Where a Student commits a breach of any Statute or Rule in any Hall, the Warden of that Hall may:
  - (i) Impose a fine not exceeding \$1,000 on the Student; and/or
  - (ii) Suspend or terminate the Student's right to reside in the Hall; and/or
  - (iii) Refer the breach to the Discipline Committee.

#### 8 **Misbehaviour in the Student Union Building or its Precincts**

- a Where a Student commits a breach of any Statute or Rule in the Student Union the Executive of the Students' Association may:
  - (i) Impose a fine not exceeding \$500; and/or
  - (ii) Refer the breach to the Discipline Committee.

#### 9 **Other Penalties**

- a The Discipline Committee may of its own motion or on reference to it pursuant to:
  - (i) This Statute; or
  - (ii) Any other Statute or Rule; impose on a Student who commits a breach of any Statute or Rule, any one or more of the penalties prescribed in clauses 9b, 9c or 9d or require any such Student to pay an amount by way of restitution pursuant to clause 9e.
- b For a breach of Examination Regulations the Discipline Committee may:
  - (i) As provided in those Regulations:
    - (a) Suspend for such time as it may prescribe the release to the candidate of the results of any examination;
    - (b) Decline to credit to the candidate's course any subject or subjects;
    - (c) Cancel any pass with which that candidate may have been credited in the subject or examination in respect of which the breach occurred;
    - (d) Disqualify the candidate from sitting any examination for such period as it may prescribe;
    - (e) Impose any one or more of those penalties; and/or
  - (ii) Impose any of the penalties prescribed in clause 9d.
- c For breach of any other Specified Statute the Discipline Committee may impose:
  - (i) The penalties prescribed in that Specified Statute; and/or
  - (ii) The penalties prescribed in section 9d.
- d For a breach of any Statute (not being a Specified Statute) or any Rule, the Discipline Committee may impose:
  - (i) A fine not exceeding \$1,000.
  - (ii) A limitation or prohibition on attendance at any Class or Classes or the use and enjoyment of any of the Facilities.
  - (iii) A suspension from attendance at the University or any Class or Classes for such period as it thinks fit.
  - (iv) Cancellation of Enrolment of a Student at the University or in a course of study or training at the University.
  - (v) A penalty in the form of requiring the offender to remove any defacement to University Premises or property or to render services to the benefit of the University or its students.
  - (vi) Any one or more of those penalties.

- e In determining any allegation of a breach of paragraph (ii) of clause 4a of this Statute (damage to property) the Discipline Committee may, with or without imposing a penalty, require an offending Student to pay such amount by way of restitution as the Discipline Committee thinks fit.
- f On default of payment, within the time prescribed, of:
- (i) A fine; or
  - (ii) Any amount to be paid by way of restitution pursuant to clause 9e of this Statute;
- the Discipline Committee may suspend the Student in default from attendance at the University or any Class or Classes until that fine or that amount is paid.
- 10 **Reprimands**
- a Where the Discipline Committee has investigated a complaint that a Student has committed an offence under any Specified Statute it may:
- (i) Through its Chairperson or any Authorized Person it has nominated for the purpose; and
  - (ii) Whether or not it has imposed any penalty for the offence;
- issue a reprimand orally or in writing to the Student charged with the offence in terms that it considers appropriate in all the circumstances.
- 11 **Review of Penalties**
- a Any Student:
- (i) Upon whom a penalty is imposed under any Statute or any Rule; or
  - (ii) Who is required to pay any amount by way of restitution;
- may by giving written notice to the Registrar within 14 days of the penalty having been imposed apply to the Appeals Committee of the Council to review:
- (i) The amount of that penalty; or
  - (ii) The imposition of that penalty; or
  - (iii) Both those matters; or
  - (iv) Any amount required to be paid by way of restitution.
- b The decision of the Appeal Committee on any such review is final.
- 12 **Saving**
- a Nothing in this or any other Statute prejudices the rights and remedies of the University at law in respect of the misconduct or negligence of any Student or Staff Member.
- 13 **Transitional Provisions**
- a Notwithstanding the revocation of the Disciplinary Regulations 1972:
- (i) Proceedings may be commenced in respect of any offence under those Regulations alleged to have been committed before their revocation; and
  - (ii) Proceedings previously commenced under those Regulations may be continued;
- as if those Regulations remained in force.
- b Where any proceedings that are commenced or continued pursuant to clause 13a relate to an offence under the Examination Regulations, those Regulations will be deemed not to have been amended for the purpose of those proceedings.

## Membership of Associations of Students Referenda and Elections of Student Representatives on Council Statute 1999

### *Under Review*

#### 1 **Title and Commencement**

This Statute may be cited as the Membership of Associations of Students Referenda and Elections of Student Representatives on Council Statute 1999 and comes into force on 1 January 1999.

#### 2 **Interpretation**

'**Academic Year**' means a period of 12 months commencing on 1 January.

'**Act**' means the Education Act 1989.

'**Association of Students**' means an incorporated body of students enrolled at the University, whether membership of that association is compulsory or voluntary.

'**AUSA**' means the Auckland University Students' Association.

'**Candidate**' means a candidate for election under this Statute as a student representative on the Council.

'**Council**' means the Council of the University.

'**Election**' means an election of student representatives on the Council conducted under this Statute.

'**Ministry**' means the department of State that, with the authority of the Prime Minister, is for the time being responsible for the administration of Part XIII of the Act.

'**Nomination Day**' means the day appointed for the closing of nominations of candidates for election as student representatives on the Council.

'**Referendum**' means a vote taken in terms of section 4.

'**Student**' means a duly enrolled student of the University.

'**University**' means The University of Auckland.

'**Vice-Chancellor**' means the person holding office for the time being as the Chief Executive Officer of the University; and includes any person for the time being:

- a Acting in that capacity; or
- b Acting as a Deputy of the Chief Executive.

**Conduct of Referenda****3 Returning Officer**

- 3.1 The Council shall appoint a Returning Officer to conduct referenda under this Statute.
- 3.2 The Returning Officer for referenda conducted under this Statute shall hold office until his or her removal by the Council, or his or her resignation, incapacity or death, in any of which events the Council shall appoint a Returning Officer in his or her place.
- 3.3 Every referendum conducted under this Statute shall be conducted by the Returning Officer, but, if for any reason he or she is unable to fulfil the duties of his or her office at any referendum, the Council shall appoint a substitute, who, for the purposes of that referendum, shall be deemed to be the Returning Officer.

**4 Request for Referendum**

- 4.1 Where the membership of an Association of Students is compulsory students of the University may request the Council to conduct a vote of all students at the University on whether membership of that Association should continue to be compulsory.
- 4.2 Where membership of an Association of Students is not compulsory students of the University may request the Council to conduct a vote of all students at the University on whether membership of a specified Association of Students at the University should become compulsory.
- 4.3 A request under subsection 4.1 or subsection 4.2 is not effective unless it is accompanied by a petition requesting the vote, signed by at least 10 per cent (as calculated according to figures provided by the Ministry) of all students currently enrolled at the University.
- 4.4 Each student who makes such a request must provide sufficient details to enable the Returning Officer to determine whether he or she is so enrolled at the University.
- 4.5 No such vote may be held more than once every two years.

**5 Date of Referendum**

- 5.1 Where a request for a referendum is received by the Council and the Returning Officer has determined that the request was made by 10 per cent of Students enrolled at the University in accordance with section 4.3 above, a referendum shall be held at a time determined by the Council.
- 5.2 The Returning Officer shall give advance notice of the commencement date and closing date of a referendum by a notice in form 1, which shall be published in such University publications as the Returning Officer sees fit.

**6 Repealed****7 Referendum to be Held Over One Month Period**

- 7.1 The closing date of a referendum shall be one month from the opening date of that referendum.

**8 Students Eligible to Vote**

- 8.1 The Returning Officer shall compile a list of Students eligible to vote in a referendum, which will include all Students enrolled at the University at a date to be determined by the Returning Officer.

**9 Repealed****10 Referendum to be Conducted by Postal Vote**

- 10.1 The Returning Officer shall conduct referenda under this Statute by postal vote.

**11 Issue of Voting Slip**

- 11.1 The Returning Officer shall, not later than the date on which the referendum is to be held, forward by post an envelope addressed to each Student containing a voting slip which:
- States that the slip is a voting paper for a referendum;
  - States that the referendum is for the purpose of establishing whether membership of associations of Students at that institution is to be voluntary or compulsory;
  - Gives instructions for voting in that referendum;
  - States the commencement date and closing date of the referendum.

- 11.2 The voting slip shall be in a form prescribed by the Returning Officer.

**12 Method of Voting**

- 12.1 On receipt of the voting slip forwarded by the Returning Officer, the Student shall alone exercise his or her vote in accordance with the instructions on the voting slip.
- 12.2 Where any Student:

- Is wholly or partially blind; or
- Suffers from any other disability which makes it difficult to cast his or her vote in the prescribed manner, that Student's vote may be recorded by another person in accordance with the instructions of the Student.

- 12.3 After the Student has exercised his or her vote, the Student shall enclose the voting slip in the envelope addressed to the Returning Officer and shall by post deliver that envelope to the Returning Officer.

**13 Invalid Votes**

- 13.1 A vote shall only be valid if:
- The Student exercises his or her vote in accordance with the instructions on the voting slip;
  - The Student has not yet exercised his or her vote; and
  - The Student's voting slip is received by the Returning Officer on or after the commencement date of the referendum and on or before the closing date of the referendum.

**14 Counting of Votes**

- 14.1 Votes shall be counted by such means as are prescribed by the Returning Officer.

14.2 The Returning Officer shall make arrangements for votes to be counted as soon as reasonably practicable after the close of voting.

14.3 The Returning Officer shall appoint scrutineers if requested to by interested parties to the referenda.

#### 15 Declaration of Result

15.1 No later than one month after the closing date of the referendum, the Returning Officer shall declare, by means of notices in such University publications as the Returning Officer sees fit:

- a The number of votes in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary;
- b The number of votes in favour of membership of an Association of Students being compulsory; and
- c Whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory.

#### 16 Recount

16.1 Where any Student, officer of an Association of Students or member of the Council has reason to believe that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory is incorrect, and that on a recount thereof the result of the referendum, namely whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory, might be found to be different, he or she may within seven days after the declaration, apply to the Returning Officer for a recount of the votes.

16.2 Every application for a recount in accordance with section 16.1 above shall:

- a Be accompanied by a deposit of \$100, which shall be refunded if, following a recount of the votes, the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory proves to be incorrect;
- b State the grounds upon which the applicant believes that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory is incorrect, and that on a recount thereof the result of the referendum, namely whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory, might be found to be different; and
- c State the name of the applicant and whether he or she is a Student, officer of an Association of Students or member of the Council.

16.3 If the Returning Officer is satisfied that an applicant for a recount has reasonable cause to believe that the Returning Officer's declaration of the number of votes in favour of

membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory is incorrect and that on a recount the result of the referendum, namely whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory, might be found to be different, the Returning Officer shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after receiving the application and deposit as aforesaid, arrange for a recount of the votes to be made by such means as he or she thinks fit.

16.4 Where the Returning Officer arranges for a recount of the votes in accordance with section 16.3 above, he or she shall:

- a Notify the applicant in writing of the result of the recount; and
- b Where the result of a recount is that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory is incorrect, declare, by means of notices in such University publications as he or she sees fit:
  - (i) That upon a recount of the votes, the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or the number of votes in favour of membership of an Association of Students being compulsory was found to be incorrect; and
  - (ii) The number of votes in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary;
  - (iii) The number of votes in favour of membership of an Association of Students being compulsory; and
  - (iv) Whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of Students being voluntary or compulsory.

#### 17 Destruction of Votes

17.1 The Returning Officer shall, no earlier than one month after the declaration of the result of a referendum, and if an application for a recount is made, not before the declaration of the result of the recount, arrange for all records of Students' votes to be destroyed.

#### 18 Repealed

#### 19 Recognition of Associations of Students

19.1 Where the result of a referendum is that membership of associations of Students is to be voluntary, the Council may decide whether it wishes to recognize one or more associations of Students and if so, what form that recognition will take.

#### The Election of Student Representatives on the Council

#### 20 Student Representatives on the Council

20.1 Student representatives serving as members of the Council at the time of a referendum in 1999 shall remain on the Council until the

completion of their term of membership.

- 20.2 Where the result of a referendum is that membership of associations of Students is to be voluntary, the Council shall conduct an Election in accordance with this Statute and the Constitution of the Council, subject to section 20.1 above.

## Conduct of Elections

### 21 Returning Officer

- 21.1 The Council shall appoint a Returning Officer to conduct Elections under this Statute.
- 21.2 The Returning Officer for Elections conducted under this Statute shall hold office until his or her removal by the Council, or his or her resignation, incapacity or death, in any of which events the Council shall appoint a Returning Officer in his or her place.
- 21.3 Every Election conducted under this Statute shall be conducted by the Returning Officer, but, if for any reason he or she is unable to fulfil the duties of his or her office at any referendum, the Council shall appoint a substitute, who, for the purposes of that referendum, shall be deemed to be the Returning Officer.

### 22 Date of Election and Term of Office

- 22.1 Elections conducted under this Statute shall be held at a time in the second semester in each Academic Year determined by the Returning Officer.
- 22.2 Successful Candidates shall hold office during the Academic Year immediately following their Election.

### 23 Students Eligible to Vote

- 23.1 The Returning Officer shall compile a list of Students eligible to vote in an Election, which will include all Students enrolled in the University at a date to be determined by the Returning Officer.

### 24 Notice of Election, Nomination of Candidates, and Closing Date for Nominations

- 24.1 No less than 30 days and no more than 60 days before the day or days fixed by the Returning Officer for an Election, the Returning Officer shall give advance notice thereof in such University publications as he or she sees fit and shall in that notice state the number of positions to be filled on the Council and request the nomination of Candidates in writing and a closing date for the receipt of such nominations.

### 25 Nomination of Candidates

- 25.1 To be eligible for Election a nominee must:
- be enrolled as a Student at the time when nominations close; save that a nominee who is a sitting Student member seeking re-election need not be enrolled as a Student at that time; and
  - neither be employed for a continuous period of more than six months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time

employment set by the University nor have been so employed at any time during the two years preceding the date of the Election.

- 25.2 Nomination of Candidates for Election under this Statute must:

- be in the form scheduled to this Statute; and
- be signed by not less than two Students as the nominators; and
- carry the written consent of the nominee and a declaration of eligibility; and
- contain a declaration by the nominee as to whether the nominee has or has not ever been employed (as described in sub-section 25.1b) by the University and an undertaking to include such information in all material circulated in connection with the nominee's nomination.

- 25.3 Every nomination paper shall be lodged with or given to the Returning Officer not later than noon on Nomination Day. The Returning Officer shall acknowledge receipt of every nomination paper on that nomination paper.

- 25.4 Every Candidate shall be nominated by a separate nomination paper.

### 26 Rejection of Nominations

- 26.1 The Returning Officer shall reject the nomination of a nominee who does not qualify for Election under sub-section 25.1
- 26.2 Where a nomination is rejected the Returning Officer will notify the nominee in writing giving the reasons for the rejection.

### 27 Withdrawal of Nomination

- 27.1 Any Candidate may withdraw his or her nomination at any time before noon on Nomination Day, by notice in writing to the Returning Officer, signed by him or her.

### 28 Death of Candidate Before Close of Nominations

- 28.1 Where before the close of nominations the Returning Officer receives advice that a Candidate who has been nominated and has not withdrawn his or her nomination has died or has become incapable of holding the position for which he or she is a Candidate, his or her nomination shall be treated as if it had not been made.

### 29 If Number of Candidates does not Exceed Number of Vacancies, Candidates to be Declared Elected

- 29.1 If the number of the Candidates does not exceed the number of vacancies to be filled, the Returning Officer shall, as soon as practicable after the close of nominations, by notice in such University publications as he or she sees fit, declare the Candidate or Candidates so nominated to be duly elected to the Council.

### 30 Notice of Nominations and Election

- 30.1 If the number of Candidates exceeds the number of positions on the Council to be filled, the Returning Officer shall, as soon as practicable after the close of nominations, give

notice in such University publications as he or she sees fit of the day or days on which the Election is to be held and of the names of the Candidates.

### 31 **Candidate May Retire**

31.1 A Candidate at an Election may retire after the close of nominations at any time before a declaration has been made pursuant to section 29 of this Statute, or, where an Election is required to be held, at any time before the day or days of the Election, by notice in writing to the Returning Officer, signed by that Candidate.

31.2 Where the Returning Officer receives notice pursuant to section 31.1 above:

- a Where practicable, the Returning Officer shall before the day or days of the Election give notice of the retirement in such University publications as he or she sees fit;
- b If a Candidate retires after the voting slips have been printed, the Returning Officer shall take such steps as are practicable to strike out the name of the retiring Candidate from the voting slips;
- c Any vote cast for that Candidate shall be void.

31.3 If, by the retirement of a Candidate in accordance with section 31.1 above the number of Candidates is reduced to or below the number of positions to be filled on the Council:

- a The Returning Officer shall, by notice in such University publications as he or she sees fit, before the day or days of the Election, declare the remaining Candidates to be duly elected; or
- b If the Candidate retires at such a time that it is not possible to give such a notice before the day or days of the Election, the Election shall not be held and the declaration shall be made on the day or days of the Election or as soon thereafter as possible.

### 32 **Death or Incapacity of Candidate After Close of Nominations**

32.1 Where:

- a After the close of nominations and before the day or days of the Election, any Candidate dies or becomes incapable of holding the position for which he or she is a Candidate; or
- b Any such Candidate dies or becomes incapable as aforesaid before the close of nominations but advice of his or her death or incapacity is received by the Returning Officer after the close of nominations, the provisions of section 31 of this Statute, so far as they are applicable and with the necessary modifications, shall apply as if the deceased or incapacitated Candidate had retired on the date of his or her death or incapacity, or, as the case may be, on the date on which advice of his or her death or incapacity is received by the Returning Officer.

### 33 **Election to be Conducted by Telephone Vote**

33.1 Unless sections 29.1 or 31.3 of this Statute apply, the Returning Officer shall conduct an

Election by means of a telephone voting system.

### 34 **Issue of Voting Slip**

34.1 The Returning Officer shall, not later than the day or days on which the Election is to be held, forward by post addressed to each Student, a voting slip which:

- a States that the slip is a voting paper for an Election of Student representatives on the Council;
- b Gives instructions for voting in that Election;
- c States the day or days of the Election;
- d States the name of the Candidates for the Election; and
- e States the number of Student representative positions on the Council.

### 35 **Method of Voting:**

35.1 On receipt of the voting slip forwarded by the Returning Officer, the Student shall alone exercise his or her vote by telephone in accordance with the instructions on the voting slip.

35.2 Where any Student:

- a Is wholly or partially blind; or
- b Is wholly or partially deaf; or
- c Suffers from any other disability which makes it difficult to cast his or her vote in the prescribed manner, that Student's vote may be recorded by another person in accordance with the instructions of the Student.

### 36 **Invalid Votes**

36.1 A vote shall only be valid if:

- a The Student's identification number is entered into the telephone voting system;
- b The Student's duly chosen pin number is entered into the telephone voting system;
- c The Student has not yet recorded his or her vote; and
- d The Student's vote is recorded on the day or days of the Election.

### 37 **Counting of Votes**

37.1 Votes shall be counted by such means as are prescribed by the Returning Officer.

37.2 The Returning Officer shall make arrangements for votes to be counted as soon as reasonably practicable after the close of voting.

### 38 **Declaration of Result**

38.1 No later than one month after all the votes have been counted, the Returning Officer shall declare, by means of notices in such University publications as the Returning Officer sees fit, the result of the Election, being the name or names of the Candidates elected as Student representatives on the Council.

### 39 **Recount**

39.1 Where any Student or member of the Council has reason to believe that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the Election is incorrect, and that on a recount thereof the result of the Election might be found to be different, he or she may within seven days after the declaration, apply to the

- Returning Officer for a recount of the votes.
- 39.2 Every application for a recount in accordance with section 39.1 above shall:
- a Be accompanied by a deposit of \$100, which shall be refunded if, following a recount of the votes, the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the Election proves to be incorrect;
  - b State the grounds upon which the applicant believes that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the Election is incorrect, and that on a recount thereof the result of the Election might be found to be different; and
  - c State the name of the applicant and whether he or she is a Student or member of the Council.
- 39.3 If the Returning Officer is satisfied that an applicant for a recount has reasonable cause to believe that the Returning Officer's declaration of the result of the Election is incorrect and that on a recount the result of the Election might be found to be different, the Returning Officer shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after receiving the application and deposit as aforesaid, arrange for a recount of the votes to be made by such means as he or she thinks fit.
- 39.4 Where the Returning Officer arranges for a recount of the votes in accordance with section 39.3 above, he or she shall:
- a Notify the applicant in writing of the result of the recount; and
  - b Where the result of a recount is that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the Election is incorrect, declare, by means of notices in such University publications as he or she sees fit:
    - (i) That upon a recount of the votes, the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the Election was found to be incorrect; and
    - (ii) The Candidates elected as Student representatives on the Council.
- 40 **Destruction of Votes**
- 40.1 The Returning Officer shall, no earlier than one month after the declaration of the result of an Election, and if an application for a recount is made, not before the declaration of the result of the Election, arrange for all records of Students' votes to be destroyed.
- 41 **Vacation of Office**
- 41.1 A member of the Council elected under this Statute ceases to hold office as a member if that member becomes employed for a continuous period of more than 6 months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University. The casual vacancy occurring for that reason shall be filled in accordance with section 176 of the Act
- 42 **Casual Vacancies**
- 42.1 A casual vacancy arises in the office of a Student Representative on the Council during his or her term if he or she:
- a Dies; or
  - b Becomes disqualified to hold office under this Statute; or

- c Is declared bankrupt; or
  - d Becomes mentally disordered within the meaning of the Mental Health (Compulsory Assessment and Treatment) Act 1992; or
  - e Resigns office by notice in writing to the Chancellor; or
  - f Is convicted of an offence and sentenced to imprisonment; or
  - g Is absent without leave from three consecutive meetings of the Council.
- 42.2 A Casual Vacancy that occurs within [three] months of the end of a term of office of a Student Representative need not be filled.
- 42.3 Where a Casual Vacancy occurs any earlier in the term of office of a Student Representative it shall be filled for the remainder of the term:
- a By whichever of the unsuccessful candidates at the election of that Student Representative (ranked if more than one in descending order of the number of votes they obtained) agrees to fill the vacancy; or
  - b Where the Casual Vacancy is not so filled, by a fresh election.

**The Schedule Nomination Form  
University of Auckland**

Election to be held on the ... day of .....20.....  
of two Members of the Council by the Students of  
The University of Auckland.  
The successful candidates will hold office during the  
following Academic Year.

We .....  
and .....  
(print names in full)  
being duly enrolled Students of the University  
nominate:  
.....  
(print name in full)  
for election to the Council  
Dated .....day of .....20.....

**Signatures of Nominees**

---

As the above-named nominee I consent to this nomination and declare that:

- (a) either
  - I am duly enrolled as a Student of the University (or will be so enrolled before nominations close) or
  - I am a sitting member of the Council elected by the Students and seek re-election and
- (b) I am not now employed for a continuous period of more than six months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University and have not been so employed at any time during the two years preceding the date of the elections.

I further

- (a) declare that I have/have not ever been employed for a continuous period of more than 6 months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University
- (b) Undertake to include such declaration in all material circulated about me in connection with my nomination

---

**Signature of Nominee**

## Court of Convocation Register Statute 1990

### *Under Review*

Pursuant to section 4 of The University of Auckland Act 1961 as amended by the Education Act 1989.

- 1 This Statute may be cited as the Court of Convocation Register Statute 1990.
- 2 The Registrar of the University shall prepare and maintain a register to be known as the Register of the Court of Convocation for The University of Auckland and shall (subject to section 5) enter on the register the names and addresses (so far as such addresses are known) of all persons entitled to be enrolled under section 4 of The University of Auckland Act and under section 3 of this Statute.
- 3 Under and for the purposes of subsection 5 of section 4 of The University of Auckland Act each person shall be entitled to have his or her name enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation (without fee) who being a graduate of The University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reason of having been admitted *ad eundem gradum* before the 1st day of January, 1943, is not by reason of that qualification enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation for any other University in New Zealand, and
  - (i) under section 23A of the New Zealand University Act 1908 was enrolled or entitled to be enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of The University of Auckland at the 31st day of December, 1961, or
  - (ii) was an undergraduate member of The University of Auckland at the 31st day of December, 1961, and became a graduate of The University of New Zealand after that date, or
  - (iii) at a date after the 31st day of December, 1961, and immediately before had resided in the Auckland University District for a period of not less than three calendar months.
- 4 Except as provided in section 5 of this Statute it shall not be necessary for any person entitled to be so enrolled on the register to apply for enrolment.
- 5 Every person who is entitled to be enrolled on the register under paragraph (iii) of section 3 of this Statute may apply to the Registrar for enrolment and upon making that application and producing such evidence of the facts and matters entitling him or her to enrolment as the Registrar may reasonably require shall be enrolled on the register.
- 6 A member of the Court may, by notifying the Registrar in writing, elect not to receive voting papers for the purpose of conducting elections to the Council by the Court, but may at any subsequent time advise the Registrar by notice under his or her hand that they wish to receive voting papers for an election.
- 7 Any enrolled member of the Court may, by notice under his or her hand delivered to the Registrar, object to the register on the grounds that any person whose name is on the register does not possess the necessary qualifications.
- 8 The Registrar shall enquire into and decide whether to uphold or dismiss any such objection forthwith after receiving it.
- 9 Any person aggrieved by any decision or act of the Registrar relating to the register may appeal therefrom to the Council by notice under his or her hand, addressed to the Chancellor, and delivered at the University not later than five o'clock on the afternoon of the seventh day after the day on which the register is to be closed for the purposes of an impending election.
- 10 Every such appeal shall be heard and determined by the Council or a Committee appointed by the Council and the Registrar shall amend the register in such manner as the Council or the Committee when deciding the appeal directs.
- 11
  - (a) Any member of the Court having changed his or her address shown on the register may request the Registrar to amend the register in respect of that address and the Registrar shall make such amendment accordingly.
  - (b) The Registrar being satisfied (otherwise than under the preceding paragraph (a) of this section) that the address of a member of the Court has been changed may amend the register in respect of that address provided that the Registrar shall forthwith post notices of that amendment to the member at both the old and the new address.
- 12 The Registrar shall expunge from the register the name of any person who has died or has ceased to be entitled to be enrolled thereon, and shall be entitled to make on request any amendment of name made necessary by marriage, deed poll or other lawful reason.
- 13 The Court of Convocation Statute 1962 is hereby repealed.

## The Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Statute 1990

Pursuant to section 4 of The University of Auckland Act 1961 as amended by the Education Act 1989:

- 1 This Statute may be cited as the Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Statute 1990.
- 2 For the purpose of conducting the elections to the Council by the Court of Convocation an electoral roll containing the names of those members of the Court who are eligible to vote shall be prepared and revised from time to time in accordance with this Statute.
- 3 The members of the Court who are eligible to vote at an election by the Court are those members (but no other members) who:
  - a voted at the last two preceding elections
  - b (having had their names entered on the Court register since the penultimate election) voted at the last preceding election
  - c have had their name entered on the Court register since the last preceding election
  - d (not being in any of the foregoing categories) apply for a voting paper by letter delivered or posted to the Returning Officer so as to be received by that officer on or before five o'clock in the afternoon of the twenty-first day preceding the day on which the election is to be held.
- 4 In this Statute and the forms contained herein:
 

**'the Act'** means the Education Act 1989

**'the roll'** means the electoral roll prepared in accordance with this Statute

**'elector'** and **'voter'** respectively refer to those members of the Court whose names are for the time being entered on the electoral roll

**'the Returning Officer'** shall be the Registrar of the University.
- 5 The date of election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported to the Council.
- 6 Whenever any election is to be held the Returning Officer shall (not less than 35 days before the election) by notice in at least two newspapers, published in the City of Auckland, call for nominations of Candidates to be lodged with the Returning Officer on or before a day, to be fixed by the Returning Officer, being not less than 10 days from the date of the first advertisement, which notice shall be in the following form (or form to the like effect):

### The University of Auckland

Election of Member(s) of the Council by the Court of Convocation for The University of Auckland.

An election of member(s) will be held at 5.00 pm. on the ..... day of .....20..... at the office of the Registrar of the University, Princes Street, in the City of Auckland.

No person shall be recognized as a candidate at this election unless he or she shall have been previously nominated in a document signed by two electors, and unless such nomination paper shall have been delivered to the Returning Officer by postal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm. on the .....day of ..... 20.....

The roll of electors will remain open for inspection and additions until 5.00 pm. on the twenty-first day before the election and will then be closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer will issue the voting paper to such voters as are shown on the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge).

..... Returning Officer

- 7 The roll shall be closed at five o'clock in the afternoon of the twenty-first day immediately preceding the day on which an election is to be held and shall continue to be closed until the election is completed; and no name shall be entered on the roll while it is closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer shall issue the voting papers simultaneously to such voters as are shown in the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge); nor shall any voting paper be sent to any person whose address is not within New Zealand.
- 8 Notwithstanding anything above set out, the Returning Officer shall issue a voting paper to any elector whose name appears on the roll and who shall apply in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his or her voting paper has been issued to that elector.
- 9 The votes shall be given by sealed voting papers issued by the Returning Officer in the form prescribed by this Statute, delivered to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or posted to the Returning Officer in a sealed envelope on or before that day.
- 10.1 To be eligible for election and to remain in office if elected, a nominee must:
  - a Be enrolled as a member of the Court of Convocation or be entitled to be and become enrolled as a member; and
  - b Neither be employed for a continuous period of more than six months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University nor have been so employed at anytime during the five years preceding the date of the election; and

- c Not be enrolled as a full-time student (as the term applies under current University enrolment policies).
- 10.2 The Returning Officer shall reject the nomination of a nominee who:
  - a Does not qualify for election under sub-section 10.1; or
  - b Not being enrolled as a member of the Court of Convocation does not become enrolled within the time notified to the nominee by the Returning Officer.
- 10.3 Where a nomination is rejected the Returning Officer will notify the nominee in writing giving the reasons for the rejection.
- 10.4 A member of the Council elected under this Statute ceases to hold office as a member if that member ceases to be eligible for election in terms of sub-section 10.1. The casual vacancy occurring for that reason shall be filled in accordance with section 176 of the Act.
- 10.5 Nomination of Candidates for election under this Statute must:
  - a Be in the form prescribed in section 11; and
  - b Be signed by 2 persons eligible to vote in terms of section 3 as the nominators; and
  - c Carry the written consent of the nominee and a statement of eligibility.
- 11 Nominations shall be in the following form or a form to the like effect:

- 12 Each Candidate for election may submit to the Registrar with his or her nomination papers a short statement about the candidate:
  - (i) The statement shall not exceed 250 words.
  - (ii) The statement shall include the name, occupation, residence, degrees, academic posts held, publications and any other relevant information about the candidate.
  - (iii) The Returning Officer shall ensure that the information in each statement is forwarded to each elector with the voting paper.
- 13 If the nominations received do not exceed the number of vacancies, the Returning Officer shall declare the candidate(s) duly elected.
- 14 Every voting paper shall be in the form following or to the like effect, that is to say:

**Voting Paper**  
**Council of The University of Auckland**  
**Election of Members**  
 By The Court of Convocation  
 for The University of Auckland

**Directions**

There are.....vacancies. The voter may vote for any number of candidates up to the maximum number of candidates to be elected.  
 The voter is to put a cross (x) in the square beside the name of each candidate for whom he or she desires to vote.

**The University of Auckland**

Election to be held on the ... day of .....20.....  
 of Members of the Council by the Court of Convocation for The University of Auckland.  
 We .....  
 and .....  
 (print full names)  
 being duly qualified voters, hereby nominate  
 .....  
 (print full names)  
 for election to the Council by the Court of Convocation for The University of Auckland.  
 Dated .....day of .....20.....

**Signatures of Nominators**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

As nominee I consent to this nomination and declare that:

(a) either  
 I am enrolled as a member of the Court of Convocation:  
 or  
 I am entitled to be enrolled as a member of that court and will become so enrolled before the Election Date (failing which my candidacy will be deemed to be withdrawn)  
 and

(b) I am not now employed for a continuous period of more than 6 months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University and have not been so employed at any time during the 5 years preceding the date of the election;  
 and

(c) I am not enrolled as a full-time student of the University

\_\_\_\_\_

**Signature of Nominee**

- 15 Every voting paper shall be forwarded to the voter accompanied by an envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer. The voter must complete the panel on the back of envelope:

**The Voter must sign his/her name and complete the address panel below.**

I .....  
 (Full name in block letters)  
 declare that I am not, by reason of my being a graduate of The University of New Zealand (either by examination at any time or by admission ad eundem gradum before 1 January, 1943), enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of any University in New Zealand other than The University of Auckland.  
 Signature of Voter .....  
 Address .....  
 (I request the Registrar to record my address on the roll as above.)  
 If recorded on University records under another name, e.g. maiden name, please state  
 .....

- 16 The poll shall close at five o'clock on the afternoon of the day of the election; but all voting papers shall be included and counted which are received by the Returning Officer in due course by post before the close of the sixth day after the day of the election, provided the Returning Officer is satisfied that the paper was posted in accordance with the provisions of section 9. On the seventh day after the day of the election the Returning Officer shall open and count the votes. As soon as the voting papers have been checked with the Roll the name and address shall be removed from each voting paper before the votes are counted.

- 17 Each candidate shall be entitled to nominate a scrutineer, who shall have the same rights and duties as those vested at the date of the poll in a scrutineer at any poll of the Auckland City Council.
- 18 Upon completion of the counting of votes, the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll.
- 19 The Returning Officer shall, subject to the provisions herein contained, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning the election.
- 20 The Returning Officer is authorized to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the official announcement of the result.
- 21 The Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Regulations are hereby repealed.

---

## Scholarships and Prizes

National Scholarships (NZVCC) 2004	638
The University of Auckland Scholarships, 2004	638
The University of Auckland Prizes, 2003	646

---

## SCHOLARSHIPS AND PRIZES

---

### National Scholarships (NZVCC) 2004

**Bank of New Zealand Graduate Scholarship**  
Min Teo

**Bank of New Zealand Undergraduate Scholarship**  
Pei-Hua Tsai

**Commonwealth Scholarship to United Kingdom - Masters**  
Margo Baars  
Philip Collard  
Paul Newfield

**Commonwealth Scholarship to United Kingdom - PhD**  
Timothy Fountaine  
Hyun Jin Kim  
Karl Steven

**New Zealand Association of Economists and Treasury Maori Scholarship**  
Daniel Bidois

**New Zealand Law Foundation Ethel Benjamin Prize for Women**  
Jessica Rickett

**Patricia Pratt Scholarship in Musical Performance**  
Simeon Broom  
Andrew Conley

**Rhodes Scholarship**  
Jonathan Good

**Sasakawa Fellowship Fund for Japanese Language Education**  
I-Jen Wang

**Sullivan Scholarship**  
Ricardo D'Souza

**William Georgetti Scholarship - Masters**  
Steven Niederer

**Woolf Fisher Scholarship**  
Rohan King

---

### The University of Auckland Scholarships, 2004

**A G Davis Scholarship in Law**  
Alexander Robb

**ABN AMRO Scholarship in Finance**  
Buffy Gill  
Elizabeth Griffiths

**Actronic Scholarship in Electronic Engineering (2003 Winner)**  
Desmond Chik

**Alma Logan Scholarship in Italian Language**  
Julie Fleming

**ALSTOM Scholarships (2003 Winners)**  
Jim Fowler  
Daniel Tombleson

**AmTrust Pacific Ltd Scholarship**  
Kelly Voigt

**Anne Bellam Scholarship**  
Julia Dibley  
Simone Roggen

**Anne Reid Memorial Trust Scholarship**  
Cushla Donaldson

**Anthony Jennings Memorial Scholarship**  
Yong Kim

**Arthur Thomas Paterson Scholarship in Ophthalmology**  
Adam Watson

**ASB Bank Scholarships in Information Technology**  
Daryl Buchanan  
Luka Milisa

**Auckland Centennial Music Festival Scholarship**  
Joy Liu

**Auckland Chinese Medical Association Elective Scholarship**  
Jackie Chau  
Pui Choy

**Auckland City Council 1990 Commemoration Scholarships for Maori Students**  
Eddie Bluegum  
Leon Busby  
Christina Moreau  
Katerina Nathan  
Tamsin Parsons  
Mark Rouse  
Ngaroma Tahana  
Hayley Tangaroa  
Marama Wallace

**Auckland City Council Queen Elizabeth II Scholarships**  
Joachim Amos  
Helen Liavaa  
Loretta Mamea  
Melanie Meredith  
Niava Pili-Tavita  
Susanaivanu Talagi  
Melenaita Taumoepeau  
Olive Viliamu

**Auckland City Scholarship in Public Sector Studies**  
Lisa Roberts

**Auckland EYE Summer Scholarship**  
Lynell Keung

**Bates Scholarship in Computer Forensics (2003 Winner)**  
Matthew Barrett

**Beca Engineering in Society Scholarships**  
Holly Corbett

- Josephine McVitty  
Bowen Pan  
Craig Petersen  
David Van Berkel
- Beca Engineering Scholarships**  
Richard Beal  
Nicola Haszard  
Sarah Kirkpatrick  
Manu Sharma
- Bishop Music Scholarships (Junior)**  
Robert Ellis
- Bishop Music Scholarships (Senior)**  
Alison Grant
- Broadcast Communications Ltd (BCL) Scholarships in Communications Engineering**  
Ljiljana Simic
- Brookfields Lawyers Scholarship**  
Vicki McCall
- Charlotte Emily Lubeck Scholarship**  
Rebecca Mace
- Comalco Undergraduate Bursaries in Chemical & Materials Engineering (2003 Winners)**  
Richard Beal  
Hui Lim  
Scott Powell
- Constance Herbert Memorial Music Scholarship**  
Vanessa Tam
- Covec Economics Scholarships**  
Cliff Kurniawan  
Yue Wang
- Covec Economics Scholarships (2003 Winner)**  
Hae Min Kim
- David R Mummery Memorial Scholarship in Law**  
Nirupum Ravaji  
Sehj Vather
- Denise Gerard Scholarships**  
Zhi Gong
- Deutsche Bank Financial Markets & Investment Banking Scholarships**  
Mark Freestone  
Nicholas Moller
- Dr Newton Wickham CBE Elective Scholarship in Pacific Health**  
Mamaeroa David
- Duffus Lubecki Scholarship**  
Gary Fleming
- Dulcie Bowman Memorial Scholarship**  
Sue Williams
- Dulcie Bowman Memorial Scholarship (2003 Winner)**  
Vanessa Newton-Wade
- Elam Art Scholarship**  
Ceili Murphy
- Electricity Engineers' Association Scholarship**  
Rajesh Bhana  
Robert Orange
- Energy and Fuels Research Unit (EFRU) Scholarships**  
Haile-Michael Getu
- Europlan Industries Limited Scholarship in Engineering**  
Rochelle Mangan
- Europlan Industries Limited Scholarship in Engineering (2003 Winner)**  
Cameron Henderson
- Evan Gibb Hudson Scholarship in Engineering**  
Andrew-John Spicer
- Evelyn M Harrison Scholarship**  
Paul Erbs  
Philippa Walden
- Faculty of Arts Masters/Honours Scholarship**  
Dominic Andrae  
Paul Bowker  
Genevieve de Pont  
Kirsten Gustafsson  
Tobias Haque  
Navid Hosseini-Sianaki  
Lucy Husbands  
Amy Robinson  
Emily Rose  
Emily Smith
- Flying Officer Alfred P Fogerty Memorial Scholarship**  
Lisa Stewart
- Frances Briggs Memorial Bursaries in Plant Sciences Junior**  
Sarah Hoffmann  
Ottillie Kawabe
- Frances Briggs Memorial Bursaries in Plant Sciences Senior**  
Ottillie Kawabe
- Geology Centennial Award**  
Christy Boyd  
Edward Corkery  
Angela Doherty
- George Turner Wilson Music Trust Scholarships - Senior Award**  
Jennifer Hsu  
Sarah McDowall
- George Turner Wilson Music Trust Scholarships - Junior Award**  
Marlena Devoe  
Chelsea Dolman  
Brooke Miller
- George Turner Wilson Music Trust Scholarships - Junior Award (2003 Winners)**  
Jessie Cassin  
Bradley Christiansen  
Uliana Krivenko  
Bonaventure Moetaua
- GHD Achievement Scholarship**  
Cheng-Yen Kuo
- Gillies Scholarship**  
Rhys Dowler
- Goodfellow Masters Scholarship in Medicine and Health Science**  
Renee Gordon
- Grace Kay Awards**  
Rebecca Goldsmith  
Alicia Leitch

Sarah Root  
Georgina Sumpter

**Grace Phillips Memorial Bursary (2003 Winner)**  
Thomas Cotter

**Greta Ostova Violincello Scholarship**  
Sarah McDowall

**Health Research Council Summer Studentships**  
Graeme Carrick-Ranson  
Therese Harper  
Sharra Martin  
Paul McAlpine

**Hollinrake Memorial Scholarship**  
Leith Macfarlane

**HOPE Foundation Scholarships in Ageing Research**  
Elizabeth Kiata-Holland  
Kathryn Peri  
Rana Sobh

**Human Resources Institute of New Zealand Scholarship**  
Rochelle Scanlon

**ING (NZ) Limited Scholarship in Property**  
Yingxin Bi

**Isabella Siteman Scholarship**  
Kailin Lee

**IPENZ Craven Scholarship for Postgraduate Research in Engineering (2003 Winner)**  
Megha Punreddy

**James G Goodfellow Memorial Scholarship (2003 Winners)**  
Stuart Donovan  
Andrew Parsons  
Melanie Parsons  
Ivana Stankovic

**Janet Bain MacKay Memorial Scholarship in Plant Sciences**  
Jessica Hayward

**Janet Bain MacKay Memorial Scholarship in Plant Sciences (2003 Winner)**  
Zhiwei Luo

**Joe Raynes Scholarship**  
Soo-Ra Lee

**John Baros Scholarship in Music**  
Sarah McDowall

**John Court Scholarship**  
Benjamin Stevens

**Kathleen Mary Reardon Memorial Music Scholarship**  
Malavika Gopal

**Kathleen Mary Reardon Travelling Scholarship in Music**  
Julia Broom

**Kelly Doctoral Scholarships**  
Catherine Bentham

**Kelly Postgraduate Scholarships**  
Anna Cleaver

**Kelly Research Scholarships**  
Renee Fehsenfeld

**Kelly Undergraduate Scholarships**  
Daniel Bidois

Christopher FAMILTON  
Saahil Juvale

**Kiwiplan Scholarship**  
Caraliza Fonseca  
Serguei Shorin  
Jagannath Vilas Shekhar Bangalore

**Kiwiplan Scholarship (2003 Winner)**  
Timothy Walker

**Les and Sonia Andrews Scholarship**  
Liam Mallett

**Linguistics Master of Arts Research Scholarship**  
Anna Coddington

**Lissie Rathbone Additional Scholarship**  
Elizabeth Caughley

**Mainzeal Property & Construction Scholarship in Civil Construction Management (2003 Winners)**

Jason Chow  
Matthew Gabriel

**Marie D'Albini Scholarship**  
Joanna Foote

**Martyn Finlay Memorial Scholarship (2003 Winner)**  
Ken Ginn

**Marylyn Eve Mayo Endowment Scholarship**  
Sangwook Han

**Maurice & Phyllis Paykel Trust Research Scholarship**  
Urwashi Bava  
Renee Gordon  
Enid Lam

**Maurice Paykel Undergraduate Scholarships (2003 Winners)**  
Todd Gisby  
Daniel McLean  
Mythreyi Ragavan  
Annaclaire Richards  
Manu Sharma  
Timothy Stoddard

**Maxwell Walker Memorial Scholarships**  
Kathryn Johnston

**Mervin Walter Stoddart Scholarship in Electrical & Electronic Engineering (2003 Winner)**  
Ljiljana Simic

**Michael Joseph Savage Memorial Scholarship**  
Julia Shaw

**Microsoft New Zealand .NET Research Scholarship**  
Raimund Eimann

**MSC Consulting Group Scholarship**  
Hayley Wood

**Natasha Divich Memorial Award**  
Christopher Hughes

**New Zealand Association of Rationalists & Humanists Scholarship**  
Lyn Collie

**Norman Thom Award**  
Jessica Pacalioga

**NZSTI Scholarships**  
Elizabeth Kinnell

**Pears-Britten Scholarship in Singing**

Philippa Walden

**Peter John Butler Memorial Awards (2003 Winners)**Laura Crone  
Olivia Leckie**Professor Sally Harvey Memorial Scholarship in Spanish**

Paul Bowker

**R J Mowatt Memorial Scholarship in Geology**

Melanie Campbell

**Realcold Group Scholarship**

Sue McLean

**Reardon Postgraduate/Honours Scholarship in Music**John Chen  
Naomi Dekker**Rebecca Roberts Scholarship**Vivien Atkins  
Margaret Colligan**Rive Memorial Scholarship**

Alison Grant

**Rive Memorial Scholarship (2003 Winner)**

Anna Griffiths

**Robert Horton Engineering Scholarship (2003 Winner)**

David Cumin

**Sagar Scholarship for String Players**

Xinyue Hu

**Sanders Memorial Scholarship**

Bridget Rule

**School of European Languages & Literatures Scholarships**

Maria Ureta Soto

**Sebastian Black Scholarship in English**Rachel Bryden  
Sophie Klinger  
Kirsty Macdonald  
Rachel O'Neill**Senior Scholarships****Accounting**

Jesse Colquhoun

**Ancient History**

Julia Hsieh

**Anthropology**

Margo Baars

**Applied Mathematics**

Tiangang Cui

**Architecture**Solim Choi  
Kuan-Ting Lin**Art History**

Annie Stockman

**Biblical Studies**

Andrew Picard

**Bioinformatics**

Robyn Scott

**Biological Sciences**Robin Gee  
Roseanna Sprague**Chemical and Materials Engineering**

Kimberly Nicklin

**Chemistry**Wen-Tau Chang  
Cheryl Koit**Chinese**

Jennifer Puah

**Civil Engineering**

Clinton Every

**Classical Studies**

Kelly Williams

**Commercial Law**

Anna Webb

**Computer Science**Nathan Holmberg  
Daniel Wichmann**Computer Systems Engineering**

Octavian Cheng

**Economics**

Cliff Kurniawan

**Electrical and Electronic Engineering**

Joseph Lin

**Engineering Science**

Richard Kramer

**English**

Bevan Lye

**Environmental Engineering**

Celeste Morgan

**Environmental Science**Edward Steane  
Kieran Whelan**Film, TV and Media Studies**

Graham Panther

**Finance**

Andrea Debenham

**Fine Arts**

Jason Lindsay

**Food Science**

Kelly Bullock

**French**

Robin Smith

**Geography**Susan Fairgray  
Jason Myers**Geology**

Richard King

**History**

Genevieve de Pont

**Human Biology**Misty Curry  
Suzanne Faville  
Chien-Hui Wen**Industrial Mathematics**

Iain Murphy

**Information Systems**Michael Drawbridge  
Luka Milisa**Information Technology**

Timothy Walker

**International Business**

Ana Maria Wight

**Italian**

Ljubica Vojinovic

**Japanese**

Robert Buchanan

**Korean**

Yoshiko Wintle

**Latin**

Howard Ho

**Law**

Jason Goodall

Nina Khouri

Katherine Sanders

Craig Ulyatt

**Linguistics**

Kirsten Gustafsson

**Logic and Computation**

Conrad Asmus

**Management & Employment Relations**

Bree Wilkins

**Maori Studies**

Stephanie Martin

**Marine Science**

Jennifer Marshall

**Marketing**

Xialin Lee

**Mathematics**

Timothy Sutherland

**Mechanical Engineering**

Caleb Noonan

**Medicinal Chemistry**

Sarah Carley

**Music**

Fei Ren

**Operations Management**

Sarah Kirkpatrick

**Operations Research**

Charlotte Ockleston

**Optometry**

Divya Perumal

**Pacific Studies**

MacBond Strickland

**Pharmacology**

Renee Gordon

**Philosophy**

Aaron Erb

Paul Kirkham

**Physics**

Mile Gu

**Physics**

Karl Wette

**Physiology**

Stephen Lu

**Planning**

Anna Scott

**Political Studies**

Paul Paterson

**Property**

Ann Allison

**Psychology**

Barbara Ring

**Russian**

Matthew Metcalfe

**Sociology**

Nathalie Boutros

**Software Engineering**

Chaitanya Yaramada

**Spanish**

Deborah Tipping

**Sport and Exercise Science**

Lisa Gillanders

**Statistics**

Wenxia Wei

**Teaching**

Rachel McClue

Lisa White

**Theology**

Perry King

**Visual Arts**

Peter Hopcroft

**Shirley Barker Calderwood Memorial Scholarship**

Jesse Colquhoun

**Siemens Audiology Scholarship**

Gavin Coad

**Sinclair Scholarship**

Kelsey Serjeant

**Sir Alexander Johnstone Scholarship in Law**

Nicholas Sage

**Sir Robert Jones Scholarship in Philosophy**

Thomas Harvey

Kate Mills

Peter Mullins

Stephen Parry

Nicholas Taylor

**Society of Petroleum Engineers (SPE) Scholarship**

James Donald

**Spring Scholarship for String Players**

Malavika Gopal

**Stella Baron Awards**

James Schimanski

Cheryl Thorn

**Steve Britton Scholarship**

Amy Lomax

**Swedlund Music Bursary**

John-Paul Muir

**T R Johnston Scholarship**

Chun Kit Fung

**The Ardmore Fund Undergraduate Scholarship (2003 Winners)**

Ashley Gray

Carl Peterken

**The Balmoral Asset Management Scholarship**

Michael Albert

**The Canterbury Architects' Scholarship**

Rory Kofoed

**The Hiway Stabilizers Undergraduate Scholarship in Pavement Engineering**

William Brown

**The Kate Edger Doctoral Scholarship in Literacy Studies**

Jennifer Glenn

**The Kitchener Group Property Investment Scholarship**

Nigel Tucker

**The Redwood Group Property Development Scholarship**

Nigel Tucker

**The University of Auckland Alumni Association Scholarships**

Irina Boiarkina  
 Rukshan De Silva  
 Richard Easton  
 Rachael Giles  
 Sarah Hudson  
 Winsome Ly  
 Heather Mitcheson  
 Cheryl Pook  
 Anja Profozic  
 Clinton Rule  
 Shaneel Sharma  
 Justin Smith  
 Vidya Venugopalan  
 Xiaobo Xi  
 Kent Yap

**The University of Auckland Chancellor's Awards for Top Scholars**

Tupelu Aukuso  
 Samantha Barriball  
 Eloise Buurman  
 Natalie Cosgrove  
 Coralie Dargaville  
 Riaia Donald  
 Helena Dunn  
 Sheldon Eden-Whaitiri  
 Sine Foulger  
 Andrew Greatbatch  
 Ben Harawira  
 Benjamin Harsant  
 Courtney Hayhow  
 Jamie Himiona  
 Jana Hitchcock  
 Nicholas Hohaia  
 Jerome Humphrey  
 James Ioelu  
 Citizen Iosefa Tamatimu  
 Wellington Iosefa Tamatimu  
 Sebastian Karalus  
 J'Aime Laursen  
 Daniel Lemanu  
 Tony Luisi  
 Leata Mafuao  
 Serah Matchaere  
 Winston McCarthy  
 Hinetamatea Mikaere  
 George Mita  
 David Natapu  
 Elizabeth Nathan  
 Kristina Neria

Ihipera Painting  
 Alistair Papali'i-Curtin  
 Serratinna Patuki  
 Nalei Paul  
 Maxcine Pereira  
 Teokotai Ruland-Marsters  
 Raymond Schultz  
 Turuki Tahuri  
 Liana Tufuga-Mika  
 Mele Tuitahi  
 Tyla Vacau  
 Kristy Windelborn  
 Penisoni Wolfgramm  
 Lorena Wright  
 Melissa Zoing

**The University of Auckland Doctoral Scholarship**

Zhivan Alach  
 Michael Anderson  
 Joshua Arulanandham  
 Kathryn Askelund  
 Simon Backhouse  
 Kriselle Baker  
 Meagan Barclay  
 Zeev Berkowitz  
 John Bevan-Smith  
 Anna Boswell  
 Judith Buckley  
 Andreea Calude  
 Sarah Carne  
 Jung-Hsuan Chen  
 Ia Chevyreva  
 James Coxon  
 Rachelle Douglas  
 Campbell Ewing  
 Stephen Faulknor  
 Bronwyn Fletcher  
 Janice Fraser  
 Peter Freestone  
 Lynelle Gillard  
 David Griffiths  
 Marjolijn Guicherit  
 Penelope Hacker  
 Samantha Haines  
 Judith Hammond  
 Rene Harrison  
 Erin Higgins  
 Katharine Huggard  
 David Iverson  
 Aaron Jarden  
 Xiaoping Jiang  
 Zita Joyce  
 Hae Kang  
 Hyun Kim  
 Jessie Kitchen  
 Ute Knoch  
 Ee Lau  
 Tet Lee  
 Marcia Leenen  
 Kelly LeFevre  
 Patricia Loft  
 Amanda Lorier  
 Rosemary Lyons  
 Andrew McAlister  
 Fiona McBryde  
 Celeste McCracken

Branka Milivojevic  
 Steven Miller  
 Janet Murray  
 Alissa Nana  
 Mitra Nataraj  
 Mary O'Keeffe  
 Kevin Parker  
 Joanne Peace  
 Ann Pistacchi  
 Himani Ranasinghe  
 Matthew Rayner  
 Douglas Reid  
 Joanne Richdale  
 Seabourne Rust  
 Michael Scott  
 Boaz Shulruf  
 Kim Simperingham  
 Emma Sinclair  
 Darryl Singh  
 Dean Singleton  
 Roopak Sinha  
 Peter Skilling  
 Heather Straka  
 Daniela Sutcliffe  
 Rama Talluri  
 Beverley Trowbridge  
 San Kiu Tsoi  
 Ekant Veer  
 Stuart Vogel  
 Robert Wallace  
 Kevin I-Kai Wang  
 Regan Watts  
 Shane Windsor  
 Jill Wrapson  
 Yinling Wu  
 Shaoyuan Xiong

**The University of Auckland Doctoral  
 Scholarship (2003 Winners)**

Simon Hope  
 Hamish McCracken  
 Kiran McKinnon  
 Gail Pacheco

**The University of Auckland Health Research  
 Doctoral Scholarships**

Kenny Chung  
 Rachelle Douglas  
 Angela Wagner

**The University of Auckland Health Research  
 Doctoral Scholarships (2003 Winners)**

Jagpal Benipal  
 Monica Kam

**The University of Auckland International  
 Doctoral Scholarships**

Amy Dougherty  
 Richard Misk  
 Nirendra Mustafi  
 Herman Salton  
 Lucy Saunders  
 Au Truong  
 Micah Van Der Ryn  
 Lei Zhang

**The University of Auckland Maori & Polynesian  
 Graduate Scholarship - Masters**

Katene Eruera  
 Graham Fletcher

Joseph Halapua  
 Loretta Mamea  
 Bradley Mark  
 Tiopira McDowell  
 Peter McGlashan  
 Gary Swain  
 Rosina Taniwha  
 Whanaupani Thompson  
 Kim Tinker  
 Krushil Watene

**The University of Auckland Maori & Polynesian  
 Graduate Scholarship - PhD**

Joanne Mane  
 Charise Schwalger  
 Karen Young

**The University of Auckland Masters/Honours  
 Scholarship**

Kirsten Abbott  
 Ann Allison  
 Matthew Auger  
 Margo Baars  
 Gregory Bennett  
 Daryl Buchanan  
 Joanna Chang  
 Hannah Chen  
 Ka Choi  
 Jesse Colquhoun  
 Matthew Comeskey  
 Emma Daniel  
 Sarah Devaliant  
 Lisa Fong  
 Robin Gee  
 Renee Gordon  
 Joanna Greenland  
 Mile Gu  
 Anne Guan  
 Annette Hamilton  
 Tobias Harper  
 Ingrid Harris  
 Richard Hart  
 Aimee Hegan  
 Peter Henning  
 John Holmes  
 Amy James  
 Carlton Johnstone  
 Hyun Kim  
 Richard King  
 Cliff Kurniawan  
 Enid Lam  
 Royan Lee  
 Stephen Lu  
 Bevan Lye  
 Timothy Mackenzie  
 Anne McKenzie  
 Hayley Mercer  
 Lydia Milsom  
 Jennifer Morgan  
 Kara Morrison  
 Steven Niederer  
 Jane Norton  
 Lydia Philpott  
 Serguei Shorin  
 Lisa Stewart  
 Elizabeth Treep  
 Jagannath Vilas Shekhar Bangalore  
 Kevin I-Kai Wang  
 Kimberley Webb

Karl Wette  
Charlotte Wickham  
Daniel Young

**The University of Auckland Scholarships**

Sanka Bambarawana Liyanage  
Michele Bannister  
Rosie Baysting  
Stephen Bier  
Jared Britton  
Holly Corbett  
Ricardo D'Souza  
Joanna Fitch  
Matthew Flinn  
Kate Frankish  
Hester Goodwin  
Desley Horton  
Mark Huggins  
In Kyung Hwang  
Sumana Islam  
Bruce John  
Samuel Keller  
Hei Kong  
Susanne Krueger  
Marcellina Liu  
Andrew McDaid  
Anita McKenzie  
Cameron McLachlan  
Josephine McVitty  
Muhammad Mowjood  
Bridget Myers  
Cliff Pennalligen  
James Rae  
Debra Roy  
Kelsey Serjeant  
Ichhya Shrestha  
William Thompson  
David Tong  
Julia Toomey  
Richard Yu  
Tzu-Ying Yu

**The University of Auckland School of Engineering Masters Scholarships**

Haile-Michael Getu  
Kenneth Sun

**The University of Auckland School of Engineering Masters Scholarships (2003 Winner)**

James Allard

**The University of Auckland School of Engineering Undergraduate Scholarships**

Robert Bowmaker  
Rahul Mehta  
John O'Hagan  
Addie Pujji  
Priyanka Shekar

**The University of Auckland Senior Health Research Scholarships**

Vanessa Blair  
Anne Jaquier  
Andrew Jull

**The University of Auckland Study Abroad Scholarships**

Mark Guthrie  
Bryony Kayes  
Helen Powell  
Lauren Tooker

Frances Ure  
Ljubica Vojnovic

**The University of Auckland Study Abroad Scholarship (2003 Winners)**

Belle Barber  
Claudia Collinson  
Alexandra Dalzell  
Amelia Funaki  
Grant Hore  
Kathryn Johnston  
Timothy Mackenzie  
Tamsin O'Neale  
Claire Paterson

**The University of Auckland Talent Fund Award**

Fung Kwok

**The William Chick Masters Scholarship in Architecture**

Shang Chung  
James Daulton  
Hsin-Hsuan Lin

**The William Chick Doctoral Scholarship in Architecture (2003 Winners)**

Ya-Ping Fu  
Frederick Pooley  
Carolyn Savage

**Town Planning Silver Jubilee Scholarship**

Andrea Nelson

**Uniservices Doctoral Scholarships**

Natasha Willoughby

**Vista Linda Graduate Scholarship**

Ashraf Anwar

**W W Phillipps Awards in Medicine (2003 Winners)**

Jane Allison  
Jane Brown  
Jennifer Clare  
Sarah Clarke  
Melanie England  
Darren Hooks  
Kuang-Chih Hsiao  
Amy Kempthorne  
Tien Lim  
Anu Mathew  
Genevieve Matthews  
Fiona Noovao  
Jacqueline Swan  
Loana Tanielu  
Tapukitea Taumoepeau

**Walter Kirby Singing Scholarship**

Chelsey Mayes

**Westpac Institutional Bank Scholarship**

Ya-Qun Xie

**Wilhelm Penseler Scholarship in Music**

Sung Hur  
Fei Ren

**Winifred Gimblett Scholarship**

Karolina Stasiak

**Winifred Stiles Viola Scholarship**

Xinyue Hu

**Woolworths (NZ) Ltd Scholarships in Management & Employment Relations**

Emma Dawson

## The University of Auckland Prizes, 2003

### A J Park Intellectual Property Law Prize

Karl Adam

### AIBF Prize in Financial Management

Mitchell Turner

### AIBF Prize in Financial Management (2002 Winner)

Guy Gardiner

### Alan W Mewett Memorial Prize in Evidence

Nina Khouri  
Teresa Volante

### Alcon Prize in Optometry

Kimberley Taylor

### Alice Bush Memorial Prize

Tien Lim

### Anne Webb Prize in Contract Law

Rachel Mason

### Anne Webb Prize in Contract Law (2002 Winner)

Arlette Galich

### Arnold Lillie Prize in Geology

Joanna Graaf

### Asian History Award

Graham Panther

### Auckland Brick Manufacturers Prize

Solim Choi  
To Chan

### Auckland Classical Association Prize (Classical Studies)

James Townshend

### Auckland Classical Association Prize (Greek)

Daniel Harris

### Auckland Classical Association Prize (Latin)

David Guilbert

### Auckland District Law Society's Prize

Nina Khouri

### Auckland Pushkin Society Prize in the Russian Language

Nicholas Allen

### Baldwin Shelston Waters Law and Information Technology Prize

Anita Kundu

### Baldwin Shelston Waters Law and Information Technology Prize (2002 Winner)

Cristin Jamieson

### Bartrum Memorial Prize in Geology

### (Masters/Honours)

Jennifer Eccles

### Bartrum Memorial Prize in Geology (Stage III)

Richard King

### BDO Spicers Prize in Business Communication (2002 Winner)

Deborah Berkers

### Brooker's Employment Law Prize

Clive Lansink

### Brooker's Prize for Civil Procedure

Rohan Havelock

### Butland Prize (2002 Winner)

Tania Lee

### Calvin Ring Prize for Clinical Ophthalmology

Shenton Chew

### Carl and Alberta Rosenfeldt Prize in Chamber Music

Naomi Dekker  
Jennifer Hsu  
Joy Liu  
Bridget Lynd  
Fei Ren  
Katherine Spencer

### Carrick Robertson Prize in Surgery

Ngozi Everts

### Chisholm Memorial Prize

Kirsten Nicol

### Christine Roigard Memorial Prize

Timothy Mackenzie

### CIMA Prize in Management Accounting

Jesse Colquhoun

### CIMA Prize in Management Accounting (2002 Winner)

Aaron Perrett

### Clarkson Measured Drawing Prize

Scott Jury

### Community Health Prize in Public Health

Alexandra Macmillan

### Concrete Prize (Architecture)

Sara Wiechmann  
Hannah Woon

### Concrete Prize (Engineering)

John Bolland

### D W Pullar Prize

Purwa Joshi

### Davies-Sproule Memorial Prize

Kirsten Martelli

### Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Prize in Advanced Financial Accounting

Joseph Halapua  
Daniel McCallum

### Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Prize in Advanced Financial Accounting (2002 Winners)

Jong Park  
Diane So

### Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Prize in Taxation

Victoria Hyde

### Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Prize in Taxation (2002 Winner)

Mei Chen

### Dennis Brown Prize for Experimental Physics

Ssu-Yin Chen

### Desmond Lewis Memorial Prize in International Law

Katherine Sanders

### Dorothy Gronwall Memorial Prize in Clinical Neuropsychology

Samantha Haines

### Douglas Mews Composition Prize

Robin Toan

**Douglas Pharmaceuticals Prize in Clinical Communication Skills**

Jacqueline Swan

**Douglas Robb Prize**

Joanna Lawrence

**Dr R G McElroy Prize in Administrative Law**

Kim Laurenson

**Eric Hector Goodfellow Memorial Prize**

Suzanne Faville

**Ernst & Young Prize in Cost and Management Accounting**

Chia- Liu

**Ernst & Young Prize in Cost and Management Accounting (2002 Winner)**

Wei Ting

**Ernst & Young Prize in Financial Accounting**

Jayesh Patel

**Ernst & Young Prize in Financial Accounting (2002 Winner)**

Jesse Colquhoun

**Ernst & Young Property Project Award**

Sina Parseth

**ESR Prize**

Christopher Crone

**European Union Prize**

Vanessa Ziea

**F A de la Mare Memorial Prize**

Vicki McCall

**F E R Noble Memorial Prize**

Nayan Billimoria

**Flora Smith Prize in Pathology**

Tien Lim

**Fowlds Memorial Prize - Arts**Julia Dibley  
Russell Prince**Fowlds Memorial Prize - Business & Economics**

Duncan Orr

**Fowlds Memorial Prize - Law**

David Griffiths

**Fowlds Memorial Prize - Science**

Hsin Wu

**Gary Davies Memorial Prize**Isaac Hikaka  
Jesse Wilson**Gaze Burt Prize for Master of Commercial Law**

Mary Hill

**Gaze Burt Prize in Franchise Law**

Ricky Hargreaves

**Geoffery Powell Prize**Rebecca Curnow  
Isaac Hikaka**George Hopkins Prize**

Warwick Robinson

**Graham Ford Dawson Prize**

Danni Tan

**Habens Prize**

Maria Heron

**Hahnemuhle Printmaking Prize**

Suzanne Dee

**Harrison and Grierson Prize for Technological Advances in the Water Industry**

Dale Donovan

**Hawkins Construction Limited Construction Management Prize**

Andrew Parsons

**Haydon Prize**

Isaac Davison

**IEE Prize (Mechanical)**Simon Freeman  
Nathan Williams**Iford Photography Prize**

Jennifer Mason

**Institute of Chartered Accountants of New Zealand Prize**Jesse Colquhoun  
Lei Fu  
Man Ho  
Hye Kwon  
Jayesh Patel  
Wen Yu  
Xueqi Zhao**Institute of Chartered Secretaries and Administrators' Prize**

Kelly Winter

**Institute of Chartered Secretaries and Administrators' Prize (2002 Winner)**

Shanel Winning

**IRHACE Undergraduate Prize**

Leyton Chan

**J D K North Prize in Clinical Medicine**

Joanna Lawrence

**J P Campbell Prize**

Katherine Sanders

**J S Werry Prize in Psychiatry**

Timothy Fountaine

**James Gordon Goodfellow Memorial Prize**

Richard Kramer

**Janetta McStay Prize for Pianists**

John Chen

**John Asher Prize in German Literature (Stage I)**

Daniel Harris

**John Asher Prize in German Literature (Stage II)**

Timothy Mackenzie

**John McLeod Prize in Public Health**

Kumanan Rasanathan

**John Mulgan Memorial Prize**Jessica Priestley  
Simon Oswald**John Tinline Prize in English**

Bevan Lye

**KPMG Prize in Auditing**Joanna Chang  
Ruth Wang**KPMG Prize in Auditing (2002 Winners)**Dave Navarro  
Anna Shadbolt**L H Briggs Memorial Prize**

Geoffrey Waterhouse

**Lamson Prize in Child Language and Literacy**

Michelle Tam

**Laserframe Timber Architecture Prize**

Andrew Brangwin

**LEADR Prize in Negotiation, Mediation and Dispute Resolution**

Megan O'Callaghan

**Les and Sonia Andrews Woodwind Prize**

Naomi Dekker

**Leukaemia and Blood Foundation Prize in Molecular Medicine**

Sarah Corbett

**Llewelyn Jones Prize in Music for Piano**

John Chen

Andrew Cochrane

Rohan King

**Lowndes Jordan Prize in Corporate Legal Studies**

Nicola Raffills

**Main Art Award (2002 Winner)**

Seung Oh

**MinterEllisonRuddWatts & Stone Prize in Contract Law**

Alexander Robb

**Montgomery Memorial Prize**

Conrad Asmus

**New Zealand Aluminium Smelters Prize in Statistics**

Jeremy Houghton

**New Zealand Aluminium Smelters Undergraduate Prizes in Engineering**

Ram Somaraju

**New Zealand Aluminium Smelters Undergraduate Prizes in Engineering**

Benjamin Gin

Christopher Quill

**New Zealand Association of Optometrists Undergraduate Awards**

Nicola Boyce

Karlee Foley

Reuben Gordon

Niti Kathnaur

Sae Shin

Kate Vanweerd

Elkie Wong

**New Zealand Association of Optometrists Undergraduate Awards (2002 Winners)**

Sarah Bibby

Melanie Blundell

Karlee Foley

Erin Maslin

Elkie Wong

**New Zealand Automobile Association Prize in Transportation Engineering**

Jason Brewerton

**New Zealand Institute of Chemistry Prize (Auckland Branch)**

Kim Meyer

**New Zealand Property Institute Student of the Year Award**

Ann Allison

**New Zealand Solar Action Prize**

Lucy Gauntlett

**New Zealand Steel Prize (Civil)**

Andrew Clarke

**New Zealand Steel Prize (Mechanical)**

Nathan Williams

**Nicholas Tarling Prize in History**

Alisha Keam

**Norman Thom Prize for Environmental Management**

Rebecca Macky

**Novartis Prize in Applied Pharmacology and Therapeutics**

Tien Lim

**NZIOB Mechanical Engineering Prize**

Haile-Michael Getu

**NZIOB Structural Engineering Prize**

Craig Pijnenburg

**Paramount Services Limited Award in Property Management**

Yingxin Bi

**Paul Turtill Memorial Awards in Geology**

Rhiannon Daymond-King

John Sparrow

**Peg Wood Award**

Tingkhram Soukhaphanh

**Philip Sidney Arden Memorial Prize**

Louise Mountfort

**Phillip Graham Crabbe Memorial Prize**

Timothy Olsen

**Potter Interior Systems Ltd Prize in Architecture (BArch Part I)**

Paul Arrasco Paz

**Potter Interior Systems Ltd Prize in Architecture (BAS Part III)**

Ted Chen

**Practitioner Development Prize**

Jillian Lee

**Pre-Clinical Prize in Medical Humanities**

Timothy Wilson

**PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Accounting Concepts**

Man Ho

**PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Accounting Information**

Wen Yu

**PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Accounting Information Systems**

Lei Fu

**PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Financial Management**

Buffy Gill

**PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Accounting Concepts (2002 Winner)**

Mark Freestone

**PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Accounting Information Systems (2002 Winner)**

Ben Yi

**PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Financial Management (2002 Winners)**

Elizabeth Griffiths

Kimberley Webb

**R Morrison Cassie Memorial Prize**

Chuan-Ching Lan

**R S Components Prize (Electrical & Electronic)**

Joseph Lin

**R S Components Prize (Mechanical)**

Leyton Chan

**Rachael Award**

Clare Edgar

**Raymond Harry Hawkins Prize in Undergraduate Optometry Research**

Simon Backhouse

**Real Estate Institute of New Zealand Prize**

Kelly Beckett

**Richards Prize in Primary Health Care**

John Langham

**Robert Chapman Prize in Political Studies**

Michelle Findlay

**Roger Oppenheim Memorial Prize in Sociological Research**

Gerda Roelwink

**Roger Oppenheim Memorial Prize in Sociological Research (2002 Winner)**

Gerda Roelwink

**Roland Marleyn Prize in German Literature**

Jolene Abrahamson

**Rosemary Grice Memorial Prize**

Yoon Joo Kim

**Royal New Zealand College of General Practitioners' 5th Year General Practice Prize**

Naera Waters

**Royal New Zealand College of General Practitioners' Prize**

Gina Irwin

**Royal New Zealand College of General Practitioners' 4th Year General Practice Prize**

Karina McHardy

**Schmincke Painting Prize**

Naomi Clements

**Scott Ellery Medal**

Lauren Proud

**Seichi Waki Prize in Physics (2002 Winner)**

Douglas Reid

**Squire Speedy Prize in Property**

Nigel Tucker

**Statistics New Zealand Prize**

Charlotte Wickham

**Swann Group Awards (2002 Winners)**

Shane Ball

Richard Davis

**T L Lancaster Memorial Prize in Botany**

Catia Delmiglio

**Te Ahorangi Matauranga Prize**

Margaret Stewart-Harawira

**Te Pae o te Rangi Prize**

Teresa Shilton

**Teloman Award**

Rosita Rawnsley-Mason

Elizabeth Young

**The Hiway Stabilizers Prize in Pavement Engineering**

Rick Van Ballegooy

**The Margaret Morton Memorial Prize**

Shan-I Lee

**The Mathematics Education Technology Prize**

Garry Nathan

**The Rotary Club of Auckland Prize for the Most Distinguished Medical Graduate of the Year**

Timothy Fountaine

**Tonkin & Taylor Prize in Geomechanics**

Clinton Every

**Tony Cotton Memorial Prize (Graduate)**

Jeremiah Rankin

**Tony Cotton Memorial Prize (Undergraduate)**

Sandra Riley

Eloise Young

**Traffic Design Group Prize in Traffic Engineering**

Matthew Wansbone

**Traffic Design Group Prize in Transportation Engineering**

Matthew Gabriel

Rick Van Ballegooy

**Vernon Brown Memorial Award**

Nathaniel Cheshire

**Vibrations Association of New Zealand Prize**

Tony Carr

Edward Firth

**Vice-Chancellor's Prize for the Best Doctoral Thesis in Each Faculty***(Arts)*

Rosemary Erlam

*(Arts)*

Matthew Felgate

*(Engineering)*

Nadhem Hamadi

*(APPPFA)*

Amanda Hyde

*(Medical & Health Sciences)*

Maggie Kalev-Zylinska

*(Medical & Health Sciences)*

Patricia Lawlor

*(Engineering)*

Keri Moyle

*(Science)*

Yu Wang

*(Science)*

William Wright

**W D Wilson Prize**

Ted Chen

**W E Henley Prize in Clinical Medicine**

Tiffany Shaw

**William Jebson Memorial Award**

Carl Chenery

**Works Infrastructure Limited Prize in Construction Administration**

Kris Willering

**Yvonne Sogno Prize in Finance (600.251)**

Buffy Gill

**Yvonne Sogno Prize in Finance (600.361)**

Andrea Debenham

**Yvonne Sogno Prize in Finance (600.251) (2002 Winner)**

Elizabeth Griffiths

**Yvonne Sogno Prize in Finance (600.361) (2002 Winner)**

Daniel Meikle

---

## Staff and Student Information

- 651 Accommodation and Conferencing Services
- 651 Campus Recreation
- 652 Careers and Employment Office
- 654 Chaplaincy
- 653 Childcare
- 653 The English Language Self Access Centre (ELSAC) (University Library)
- 653 Information Commons Services (University Library)
- 653 International Student Support Officer
- 653 Maidment Theatre
- 654 Parking
- 654 The Research Office
- 654 Rest Spaces
- 654 Room Bookings
- 654 Student Counselling
- 654 Student Learning Centre
- 655 Student Loans and Allowances
- 655 University Health Service
- 655 The University Library
- 655 Associations
- 655 The New Zealand University Students' Association
- 656 Auckland University Students' Association
- 656 University Policy
- 656 Anti-Harassment Policy and Procedures
- 657 Equal Opportunity Programme
- 657 Intellectual Property Including Inventions and Patents
- 661 Public Correspondence and Media Statements
- 661 Smoke Free Policy
- 662 Student Learning and Research Grievances

---

## STAFF AND STUDENT INFORMATION

---

### Accommodation and Conferencing Services

The Accommodation Service offers a wide range of accommodation options. These are:

- Halls of Residence
- The Railway Campus
- Self-catering Residences
- Homestay
- Flating and Private Sector Accommodation

Applications for accommodation are made on-line and are accepted from the start of August each year. For full details about all Accommodation options available contact Accommodation Services, Level 3, Student Commons, 2 Alfred Street, City Campus.

Telephone: +64 (9) 373-7599 ext. 87691

Email: [acom@uckland.ac.nz](mailto:acom@uckland.ac.nz)

<http://www.uckland.ac.nz/accommodation>

Detailed information on Homestay, Flating and Private accommodation is also available from the above website. Noticeboards within the Accommodation Office are also maintained giving details of accommodation available within private flats and houses.

### Halls of Residence

Grafton Hall, International House and O'Rorke Hall offer a fully catered environment, with a strong emphasis on organized activities and a Residential Life programme. This is provided through a team of residential management and by emphasizing community involvement through a structured events programme. The halls of residence are most suitable for first year or first time university students.

### The Railway Campus

A successful conversion of the historic landmark Auckland Railway Station into a residence for 426 students. The Campus offers a greater level of independence via studio, two and three bedroom self contained apartments, with kitchenette facilities. A residential life programme is provided by residential management personnel. Students are responsible for their own cooking, utilising well equipped central kitchen facilities. Meal plans are also available.

### Self-Catering Residences

The self-catering residences, comprising Number Fourteen Whitaker Place, Parnell Student Village, Domain Drive, Park Road Student Flats, and The Royal, are available to post-graduate students and more mature students wishing to have a flating experience. These properties are less suitable for School leaving students. This type of accommodation offers the greatest level of independence and a reduced level of pastoral care.

### Homestay

Homestay offers independence and time for study along with family living. Homestay hosts like to include their adopted students in family activities and to take an interest in their interests and studies.

The University uses a professional placement service to match students with the homestay situation that best suits their needs. For foreign students, homestay accommodation can provide more personal help and practice with English and learning about New Zealand culture.

### Private Sector Accommodation

On-line search facilities for people wishing to go private boarding, flating or apartment living are available through the Accommodation website. There are links provided to the New Zealand Herald Netclassified property listings, and to [www.nzflatmates.co.nz](http://www.nzflatmates.co.nz), a New Zealand-wide property database that profiles applicants to ensure the best fit for a flat. Advice on the Residential Tenancies Act and assistance with flating/apartment searches and application are also offered.

### Conferencing on Campus

The University can offer a variety of different venues from small meeting rooms through to large tiered lecture theatres depending on the time of year of the event. More spaces are available during the University Holiday periods so please contact Conferencing on Campus with the intended conference dates.

The Conference Centre is available all year round at 22 Symonds Street, adjacent to the School of Architecture. It comprises a single tiered lecture theatre with seating for up to 180 people. The Conference Centre is equipped with the latest audio-visual equipment which is included in the price of the venue. On-site or out-catering available.

Conferencing on Campus offers quality service, full catering and accommodation options year-round to ensure that training sessions, conferences, or presentations run smoothly and successfully.

For further information contact the Manager, Conferencing on Campus.

Telephone: +64 (9) 373-7064

Email: [conferencing@uckland.ac.nz](mailto:conferencing@uckland.ac.nz)

[www.uckland.ac.nz/conferencing](http://www.uckland.ac.nz/conferencing)

---

## Campus Recreation

### City Campus

The University of Auckland Recreation Centre at 17 Symonds Street is a five level building (two levels are below ground) that meets a broad range of recreational, health, fitness and sporting needs.

**Facilities and services include:**

- Health & Fitness Studio (comprehensive range of top quality strength machines and free weights)
- Cardio theatre (computerized treadmills, crosstrainers, steppers, cycles and rowing machines)
- Express exercise studio (a self-contained area containing deluxe strength training equipment)
- Personal training and fitness instruction and assessment services run by qualified staff who will design personalized exercise programmes
- Sports hall (indoor soccer, basketball, badminton, volleyball, etc)
- Aerobics studio (offering a diverse range of classes, eg, Step, High Energy, Pump)
- Dance studio
- Two squash courts
- State-of-the-art climbing wall
- Boxing studio.

Each semester the Centre runs a Recreation Programme that offers classes and tuition in a host of different activities, including: dance classes, racquet sports, yoga, pilates, tai chi and meditation. Social and competitive team sports leagues are also run on a semester basis and provide opportunities for participation in sports such as indoor soccer, basketball, netball and touch rugby.

The Centre is open seven days a week.

Centre Hours are:

Monday – Thursday	6.00am–10.00pm
Friday	6.00am–9.00pm
Saturday	9.00am–6.00pm
Sunday	9.00am–7.00pm

For further information visit the Centre at 17 Symonds Street, or phone 09 373 7599 ext. 84788, or visit the Recreation Centre website at <http://www.auckland.ac.nz/recreation>

**Tamaki Campus****Tamaki Recreation Centre**

The Tamaki Recreation Centre has health and fitness equipment and court space for basketball, badminton etc. It is located in Building 714 on the eastern side of Morrin Road. Membership of the Recreation Centre on the City Campus gives access to both sites and the use of the associated equipment and services.

Hours: 11.00am–6.00pm

(Monday–Friday during semesters)

Telephone: 09 373 7599 ext. 86889

**UniSports**

The UniSports Training Centre is a facility of UniSports Centre for Sports Performance located in Colin Maiden Park on the western side of Morrin Road. It is a venue for testing and training athletes, and for teaching and research. However, it is also open for some student and public use. The centre's facilities include fitness equipment and a main hall with a state-of-the-art sprung wooden floor.

It also has highly qualified staff who provide training advice and conduct fitness assessments. Membership is available on a yearly, six-monthly or three-monthly basis and casual workouts are also available.

Hours: 6am–9pm (Monday–Thursday)

6am–8pm (Fridays)

9am–1pm (Weekends)

Telephone: 09 373 7599 ext. 82541

**Sports Fields & Facilities**

There are high quality cricket, rugby and soccer fields in Colin Maiden Park on the western side of Morrin Road. Members of staff and students may use them subject to availability and weather conditions.

Telephone: 09 373 7599 ext. 83942 or (025) 293 7960.

Adjacent to the Campus is Adidas Tennis Centre which offers discounted rates to University staff to use indoor and outdoor tennis facilities.

**Careers and Employment Office**

The Careers and Employment Office offers advice and information to assist currently enrolled students to plan and achieve their career and employment goals. The services include: information resources, CV appraisal, advice about interview and job-seeking strategies, computer-based guidance, interview preparation and job-seeking workshops, as well as CV preparation seminars. These services are free to currently enrolled students of the University, and for six months after the conclusion of your final enrolment. Information resources and web access may be used by any Alumni of the University.

Students can book an initial interview with a Careers Advisor by calling 09 373 7599 ext. 88727, or by coming to the office between 8.30am and 5.00pm Monday–Friday.

Careers and Employment Offices are located at the City Campus and the Tamaki Campus. The City Campus office is in the ClockTower, phone 09 373 7599 ext. 88727. The Tamaki Campus office is in the Student Centre, phone 09 373 7599 ext. 87748.

**Jobs4grads.net**

[www.jobs4grads.net](http://www.jobs4grads.net) is the official Graduate Recruitment website for the University. Updated daily and operating all year, this site provides ready access to a wide range of career opportunities. Jobs4grads.net also runs a series of Career Fairs and arranges on-campus employer presentations.

**Chaplaincy**

There is a team of chaplains who work together within the University providing pastoral care and support for students and staff.

**Chaplains**

The Catholic Chaplains can be contacted through Newman Hall, and the Maclaurin Chaplains through Maclaurin Chapel.

### Newman Hall

Newman Hall is the centre for Catholic Chaplaincy and is situated at 16 Waterloo Quadrant. Mass is celebrated each weekday in the Newman Hall Chapel and the sacrament of reconciliation is available on request. Newman Hall is also a place for prayer, recreation, study and activities organized by the Catholic Students Society (Cathsoc).

### Maclaurin Chapel

Maclaurin Chapel complex is situated on the corner of Princes Street and Waterloo Quadrant and consists of a Chapel, study hall and offices. The Chapel is open 8.30am-4.30pm weekdays and may be used as a place of prayer for students and staff. The hall may be used by students for study and relaxation. A theological library is situated in the hall and books may be borrowed. The Chapel complex may be used by student and staff groups and hired for meetings or services of worship.

### Childcare

The University operates five early childhood centres for children of students and staff. There are two centres on the City Campus – Alten Road that caters for children from birth to 3 years of age and Symonds Street that caters for children from 3-5 years of age. The hours of operation for these Centres are 7.45am-5.15pm, Monday-Friday.

Hinetaiwa Te Kohanga Reo also offers full-time care within a Maori immersion programme. Te Kohanga Reo is situated behind the Maori Studies Department and the Marae. It is open from 8.30am-5.00pm, Monday-Friday.

At the Grafton Campus there are two centres – Park Avenue Infant and Toddler Centre catering for children from birth to 2.5 years of age and Park Avenue Early Childhood Centre which caters for children from 2-5 years of age. These centres open from 7.30am-5.15pm, Monday-Friday. Children can attend any of the above centres for a minimum of four hours per day. The six hour sessions are very popular and full day care caters for the staff of the University.

All of the centres are licensed and chartered by the Ministry of Education. The University policy is to employ trained and experienced early childhood educators. Early enrolment for places at all of the centres is advised.

For further information please phone 09 373 7599 ext. 87755.

### The English Language Self Access Centre (ELSAC) (University Library)

The English Language Self Access Centre (ELSAC) is located on Level 1 of the Kate Edger Information Commons on the City Campus and is a service that is available to all students at the University of Auckland who want to develop their academic English skills. ELSAC provides teacher support, hundreds of language learning materials, language

learning activities and assistance with academic writing, listening skills, pronunciation and all other aspects of university English. ELSAC is open 7 days per week and is free to all enrolled students. More information can be found on the website at [www.elsac.auckland.ac.nz](http://www.elsac.auckland.ac.nz)

### Information Commons Services (University Library)

The Kate Edger Information Commons on the City Campus and the Grafton Information Campus on the Medical and Health Sciences Campus provide a learning environment with a variety of group and individual study spaces, multi-purpose computers and easy access to core information resources and technologies for all students. Students are able to retrieve information from the library databases, e-journals and e-books, access course work through Cecil, the University's e-learning system, send email and browse the Internet, use MS Office and other specialist programs – all on the same computer.

The Kate Edger Information Commons has 1200 study and casual seats, including around 500 multi-purpose computers and also houses the Short Loan collection for Arts, Business, Science and Engineering. The smaller Grafton Information Campus has over 100 multi-purpose computers and a number of group study seats. Students also have access to printers, scanners, photocopiers and wireless networking technology in both locations.

The Information Commons facilities and services offer opportunities to develop IT, information literacy, English language and learning skills in a supportive environment. The IC Help Desk is the main student IT help desk and provides walk-in, roaming, email and telephone support with all aspects of student computing resources and services including NetID and Net password, email, Cecil, Library resources, and using Information Commons computers. The IC Help Desk operates in both Information Commons locations.

More information, including hours of opening and other operational details, can be found on the Information Commons website at: [www.information-commons.auckland.ac.nz](http://www.information-commons.auckland.ac.nz)

### International Student Support Officer

The International Student Support Officer is available to assist students on a wide range of personal and academic matters and is situated on Level 3 of the Student Commons building in Alfred Street. Phone 09 373 7599 ext. 88961. E-mail [b.lythe@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:b.lythe@auckland.ac.nz)

### Maidment Theatre

The Maidment Theatre, opposite the University Library, Alfred Street, provides a venue for University and community performance events. The mainstage auditorium seats 450 and the Studio theatre 104.

Tickets for Maidment performances are available from the foyer Box Office: Monday–Friday 10.00am–6.00pm, Saturday 1.00pm–6.00pm and one hour before each performance. Student and staff concessions are offered. Bookings: phone 09 308 2383 or 09 373 7599 ext. 84183.

---

## Parking

Street parking is available for two-wheel vehicles in Symonds Street between Alfred and Wellesley Streets, in Alfred Street, in Princes Street outside the Maidment Arts Centre, in Park Road outside the Grafton Campus, in Charles Nalden Lane between the Human Sciences Building and Music and at the Law School.

Provision has been made for bicycles in the following areas: Alfred Street – Concourse, Library; Princes Street – Physics Building; Symonds Street – departments of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts and Faculty of Engineering (Goods Entrance), and Lower Lecture Theatre, Thomas Building, UniServices, 58 Symonds Street, City Campus, Upper and Lower Concourses, Recreation Centre; Park Road – Grafton Campus. The above space allocation for bicycles may vary from time to time as various major projects are initiated.

The Grafton interchange project is due for completion in July 2004 and parking around this area remains restricted or not available. Car parking after hours is available to students behind the Schools of Engineering and Architecture from 6.00pm weekdays and during weekends. Owing to the construction activity on the east side of Wynyard Street, parking will be virtually non-existent in this area from September 2003. However, by 2006 the University will have established a multi-level carpark for students, staff and visitors below the proposed School of Business and Economics.

---

## The Research Office

The Research Office provides information and services in support of public domain research carried out within the University. The objective of the Office is to assist the University community in gaining and managing research grants, including University and externally sponsored research grants. The Office provides secretariat services, and support for the University of Auckland Research Committee (UARC), the Human Participants Ethics Committee (UAHPEC), and the Biological Safety Committee (UABSC).

University sponsored research funds are allocated by UARC and are administered by the Research Office. UARC also supports the work of the University's Research Units, Centres and Institutes. All policies relating to research are to be found in the Research Policy Manual. The Manual and other research information is available from the Research Website ([www.researchinfo.auckland.ac.nz](http://www.researchinfo.auckland.ac.nz)).

The Research Office is located on the second floor of 76 Symonds St, phone ext. 87956 and is open Monday–Friday from 8.30am–5.00pm.

---

## Rest Spaces

The University has a number of rest spaces which students and staff with disabilities are welcome to use. Inquiries should be made in the first instance to the Disability Coordinator.

---

## Room Bookings

University pool lecture theatres may be booked by departments, AUSA clubs and by outside organizations, on a casual or regular basis. Rooms are allocated according to the Lecture Theatre Management Unit's room booking policy. See the website for details ([www.auckland.ac.nz/timetable](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/timetable)). All bookings must be made via email. For bookings contact [roombookings@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:roombookings@auckland.ac.nz)

Booking for outside organizations will only be confirmed once the organization has accepted the standard University conditions for booking pool rooms (including costs, where applicable).

Bookings for the University Conference Centre in the School of Architecture are taken on 09 373 7599 ext. 84064.

---

## Student Counselling

Student Counselling is a free service that provides counselling on a wide range of issues including: stress, anxiety, depression, relationship issues, and the impact of personal difficulties on academic performance. The service also provides students and staff with support in the event of an emergency on campus.

The members of the team are all well-qualified, experienced counsellors and psychologists. Where possible, culturally or gender appropriate counsellors are available.

All new clients are seen for an initial half-hour session, after which further counselling is arranged as required. These sessions can either be booked ahead or may be available on the day.

If you need to be seen urgently, it is important to let reception know.

Location: Level 3, Student Commons Building, 2 Alfred Street, phone 09 373 7599 ext. 87895/87681.

Hours: Monday–Friday 9.00am–5.00pm (and some evenings). Hours are available at the Grafton Campus on Tuesday and Thursday.

---

## Student Learning Centre

The Student Learning Centre (SLC) is staffed by academic tutors who provide professional development instruction and support to students of the University. Students at all levels, from first year undergraduate to PhD, are catered for.

A wide range of topics are dealt with including time management and study organization, writing skills, test and exam skills, reading and note-taking,

critical thinking, memory and concentration, and motivation. Maths and statistics workshops are offered for students who have not studied these subjects for some years or who do not have the assumed background for first year courses in these subjects.

The Centre caters for the academic needs of Maori students through its Te Puni Wananga Programme, and for the needs of Pacific Islands students through the Fale Pasifika Programme.

The Centre has a comprehensive postgraduate skills development programme offering courses on topics such as thesis writing, research design and data analysis. The Computer Skills Development programme provides courses and one-to-one tutorials to upskill students on computer and software use at all levels.

The SLC's R.EAL (Results for English as an Additional Language students) programme is focused on providing advice and upskilling to EAL students. It deals with a wide range of topics from writing good sentences and academic expectations to critical thinking and oral presentation skills. The Language Exchange Programme assists students to help each other with their language learning. In addition, a number of tutors at the Centre can evaluate the needs of students who may experience specific learning difficulties.

The SLC offers individual consultations by appointment, skills development courses, and daily drop-in times (Monday–Friday 11.00am–2.00pm) for urgent problems and quick questions.

The Centre office is Room 320 on Level 3 of the Information Commons building on 9 Symonds Street; it can also be found in the Student Resource Centre, Room 710.108, at the Tamaki Campus. There is a small registration fee for use of the Centre. Visit the SLC website at [www.slc.auckland.ac.nz](http://www.slc.auckland.ac.nz)

---

## Student Loans and Allowances

Student allowances and student loans are administered by StudyLink, a service of the Ministry of Social Development.

For information and publications, or to apply for a student loan, student allowance or bursary payments, call StudyLink on 0800 889900, or apply on-line at [www.studylink.govt.nz](http://www.studylink.govt.nz)

---

## University Health Service

The University Health Service offers General Practice together with specialized advice for family planning, psychiatric and psychological problems, S.T.D., gynaecology, immunization and travel advice, and minor surgery.

The staff consists of five General Practitioners available for general and urgent consultations throughout the day, four Nurse Practitioners and administrative staff.

**City Campus:** Level 3, Student Commons Building, 2 Alfred Street. Phone 09 373 7599 ext. 87681/87682. Open Monday–Thursday 8.00am–6.30pm; Friday 8.00am–5.00pm.

**Tamaki Campus:** Building 701.5 (located alongside Cafeteria). Open Monday/Wednesday/Friday 10.30am–1.30pm (semester 1 and 2 only).

**Grafton Campus:** 'Pink Cottage', 107 Park Road, Grafton. Open Monday and Friday 9.00am–3.00pm, Tuesday–Thursday 11.00am–3.00pm.

---

## The University Library

The University Library system consists of the General Library, on the corner of Princes and Alfred Streets, together with eleven specialist libraries: Architecture, Audio-Visual, Education Resources, Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Leigh Laboratory, Medical and Health Sciences, Music, North Shore (Business & Economics) and Tamaki (Business & Economics, Science and Population Health). The prime focus of the General Library is to serve the needs of the staff and students of the faculties of Arts, Science and Business and Economics; it also houses Special Collections and central infrastructural services for the Library system.

The Library manages three Information Commons facilities: the Kate Edger Information Commons and the Te Hukatai facility for Maori students on the City Campus, and the Grafton Information Commons on the Medical and Health Sciences Campus. Access to the Voyager catalogue and other electronic resources is available at all times via the Library's electronic resource network, LEARN - [www.library.auckland.ac.nz](http://www.library.auckland.ac.nz). Hours of opening for all libraries are available in the printed guides or via LEARN. Hours of opening for the Kate Edger Information Commons and the Grafton Information Commons, together with other operational details, are available at [www.information-commons.auckland.ac.nz](http://www.information-commons.auckland.ac.nz)

---

# ASSOCIATIONS

## The New Zealand University Students' Association

NZUSA is a federation of five of the eight university students' associations (Auckland, Massey Palmerston North, Massey Albany, Victoria and Lincoln). In partnership with Te Mana Akonga, the national Maori university students' association,

NZUSA represents university students nationally.

NZUSA has an office in Wellington which houses the two full-time Co-Presidents, a Research Officer and the NZUSA Women's Network Coordinator, in conjunction with Te Mana Akonga, the Aotearoa Polytechnics Students' Union and Student Job Search, with whom the building is shared.

NZUSA was established to represent the common and collective concerns of students. It is a political body, which works for change for students. Government, media and other national bodies look to NZUSA as the voice for students. As such, NZUSA gives Auckland University Students Association political clout, as well as providing a vehicle for student unity.

---

## Auckland University Students' Association

The Association is an Incorporated Society which was founded in 1891. For more than 100 years the Students' Association (AUSA) has acted for the benefit of Auckland students both within and outside the University. The student body is an integral part of the University community and the members of AUSA are involved not only in the control of the University but also in fostering social, political, cultural and sporting activities within the University. AUSA is a society that is concerned with the problems and needs of students in their widest context.

In 1999, a referendum was held and voluntary membership of Associations of Students was adopted. Membership of AUSA is currently free to all enrolled students of the University.

### Activities

There are over 100 clubs and societies affiliated to the Association covering many spheres of student interest. The sports clubs cater for a range of sporting interests and most participate in the local Auckland inter-club competitions and in national tournaments. The cultural societies cater for a wide range of religious, academic, social, cultural and political interests.

### Administration

The control of AUSA's business and affairs lies with the Executive Committee which is elected annually.

It comprises a full-time President, four part-time Officers and 13 portfolio holders.

### Advocacy and Representation Services (WAVE)

AUSA also provides representation and advocacy services to support students in the form of the Welfare Advocacy Voice and Education (WAVE) service. Through this service, AUSA administers the Class Representative System, Student Committee Representatives (Class Representatives, who are elected to sit on central University committees), the Student Advocacy Network (skilled student volunteers who can help with problems), Student Law (free legal advice), and a Student Parent Resource Officer (SPRO) who assists parents on campus. WAVE is located in the AUSA and can be contacted by phone on 09 309 0789 ext. 238, or via email at [wave@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:wave@auckland.ac.nz)

### Cafeterias and Tavern

AUSA operates seven campus cafeterias (Main Cafe, Engineering, HSB, Law School, Medical School and Tamaki Cafeterias, and the 'Jakarta Lounge' coffee bar), as well as the City Campus tavern 'Shadows', 'Bar None' licensed cafe and the 'Cap and Gown' functions lounge.

### Campus Radio 95bFM

Campus Radio 95bFM provides an alternative-programme radio station on campus, based in the Student Union.

### University Book Shop

AUSA has a half interest in the University Book Shop which stocks university texts and other books, stationery, Alumni memorabilia, etc. AUSA members are entitled to a 10 per cent discount.

For further information contact AUSA Reception, AUSA House, 4 Alfred St. Phone 09 309 0789, email [ausa@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:ausa@auckland.ac.nz) or visit the website at [www.ausa.auckland.ac.nz](http://www.ausa.auckland.ac.nz)

---

## UNIVERSITY POLICY

### Anti-Harassment Policy and Procedures

The University is committed to providing an environment within the University and all its facilities which is free from harassment and discrimination.

Harassment may be offensive behaviour or unwanted attention. It may involve an abuse of power to disadvantage, dominate, discriminate or insult. Whatever kind of harassment – sexual, racial, academic, religious or on other discriminatory grounds – it is totally unacceptable. The University's Council endorsed the above policy in 1984.

The University has set in place:

- procedures to investigate and/or resolve

harassment complaints

- programmes to prevent the occurrence of harassment.

Procedures available for the *informal, confidential and expeditious* resolution of harassment complaints involve:

- The Resolve Network, drawn from staff and students throughout the University to listen to and discuss options for dealing with the harassment. Lists of Resolve Network members are available from all Departmental Offices or from posters on public noticeboards and on the University website.
- Mediation is also a part of the informal procedures. The Mediators Office is presently under active review with a view to establishing a new Mediation Service by early 2005.

## Equal Opportunity Programme

The University of Auckland is committed to maintaining a diverse, collegial, scholarly community in which individuals are valued, respected, and provided with equal opportunities. Its status as a university of international standing, recognized for excellence in teaching and research, and its service to local, national and international communities, requires an academic environment in which talented staff and students from a wide range of backgrounds can flourish.

The University's EO Programme is conducted in compliance with statutory obligations under the State Sector Amendment Act 1989 and the Education Act 1990. It also acknowledges our special responsibilities under the Treaty of Waitangi. The University's academic and cultural life benefits from a strong core of Maori students and staff, and the contributions they make to Maori intellectual and social advancement. The production of high quality research on Maori issues, and of Maori staff and students with advanced academic and professional qualifications are a significant aspect of our service to New Zealand.

The EO Programme also aims to deliver equal opportunities to Pacific Islands people and other ethnic minorities, to those from low socio-economic backgrounds, to those with disabilities, to women in areas where they are under-represented, and to general staff.

A university serving a small country must draw upon the widest possible pool of gifted people for its students and staff, in order to fulfil its academic potential. A diverse and high calibre student body contributes to a rich teaching and research environment, producing leaders for all sectors of New Zealand society. A diverse and high calibre staff can best cater for an increasingly cosmopolitan, multi-ethnic student body, linking the University with its regional and global communities.

The University opposes unfair discrimination on the grounds of gender, race or colour, ethnic or national origins, employment status, disability, family status, marital status, sexual orientation, gender identity, age, religious or ethical belief, political opinion, or any other grounds. The EO Programme thus requires that all selection, appointment, promotion and evaluation processes should be based on impartial assessment of merit and the definition of merit is inclusive of diverse skills and contributions. Where necessary, procedures will be reviewed, training provided and assistance given in achieving the successful delivery of equal opportunities.

The development and monitoring of the EO Programme (see the EO Triennial Strategic Plan 2003–2005) are the responsibility of the Pro Vice Chancellor (EO), together with the EO Office and the EO Committee. Faculty EO committees and a university-wide EO network also contribute to EO planning, reporting and consultation. Responsibility for disseminating and implementing the programme is widely shared i.e. among Council, Senate, and

their committees, and the Vice-Chancellor, Registrar, Deans and heads of departments. The EO Office provides advice on all EO issues.

## Intellectual Property Including Inventions and Patents

### 1 Introduction and Objectives

1.1 This policy seeks to establish a framework for managing the intellectual property created by staff and students within the University.

1.2 The objectives of this policy are to:

- a Preserve and enhance a climate of creativity, innovation and inventiveness among staff and students.
- b State clearly the respective ownership rights of the University and its members in relation to intellectual property.
- c Foster an awareness of the importance of intellectual property among staff and students.
- d Assist in establishing appropriate mechanisms for the more effective commercial exploitation of intellectual property for the benefit of the University and its members.

1.3 In giving effect to this policy the University acknowledges the need to be guided by the aims laid down in its mission statement and its obligations under the Education Act 1989. Particular regard shall be had to:

- a The University's role as a critic and conscience of society.
- b The maintenance of international standards of research and teaching.
- c The freedom of academic staff and students within the law to:
  - (i) question and test received wisdom;
  - (ii) put forward new ideas; and
  - (iii) state controversial or unpopular opinions.
- d The freedom of academic staff to engage in research.
- e The University's obligations in respect of the Treaty of Waitangi.

1.4 Except as it may affect the rights and obligations of staff and students this policy is not intended to govern dealings between the University and third parties concerning intellectual property.

1.5 The University reserves the right to enter into express agreements with individual staff or students relating to intellectual property. Such agreements may be at variance with this Policy.

1.6 This Policy is to be administered and interpreted in accordance with the objectives and obligations set out in §1.2 and §1.3.

### 2 Definitions

For the purposes of this policy:

'Academic institution' means any public or private sector organisation whether inside or

outside New Zealand engaged in the provision or delivery of tertiary education and includes tertiary institutions established under the Education Act 1989.

**'Academic staff member'** means a staff member appointed by the University to undertake teaching or research.

**'Artistic work'** means an artistic work as defined by the Copyright Act 1994.

**'Building'** means a building as defined by the Copyright Act 1994.

**'Book'** includes sections in books.

**'Collective copyright licence'** means a licensing scheme covering the work of more than one author but does not include those schemes referred to in section 147(1)(a) and (b) of the Copyright Act 1994.

**'Copying'** means copying as defined in the Copyright Act 1994.

**'Copyright work'** means those original works referred to in section 14 of the Copyright Act 1994 and further defined in section 2 of that statute or their equivalents under other applicable law and includes a work of joint authorship.

**'Creator'** means any person who produces, invents, discovers, originates, develops or puts into practice any intellectual property and 'create', 'created' and 'creating' have corresponding meanings.

**'Dramatic work'** means a dramatic work as defined by the Copyright Act 1994.

**'Excluded copyright work'** means:

- a monograph, journal article, book or conference paper whether first published in hard copy or in some other format; and
- b Except where expressly and separately commissioned by the University independently of any employment agreement,
  - (i) A dramatic work
  - (ii) The words of a song
  - (iii) A musical work
  - (iv) A work of fine art
  - (v) Instructional material

**'Instructional material'** means any copyright work prepared specifically for the purpose of assisting teaching and learning.

**'Intellectual Property'** means any discovery, innovation, invention, form, shape, sound, image, expression, technique or process which is the product of skill, effort or intellect and includes:

- a Copyright works and performances
- b Patentable and potentially patentable subject matter and associated know how.
- c Plant varieties and invented life forms.
- d Designs, registrable or otherwise.
- e Databases and other valuable or potentially valuable information, including research outcomes and records.

f Material subject to an obligation of confidence.

g Layout designs for integrated circuits.

h Signs or insignia of origin, quality, reputation, or commercial connection.

i Registered and unregistered trade marks and business names.

j Instructional material.

**'Intellectual property right'** or **'right to intellectual property'** means any claim, right or interest in intellectual property which is enforceable under the law of New Zealand or any other country, whether by contract or direct operation of law.

**'Layout design'** means a layout design as defined in the Layout Designs Act 1994.

**'Licensing scheme'** means a licensing scheme as defined in the Copyright Act 1994.

**'Member of the University'** includes staff, students, and officers of the University.

**'Moral rights'** are the rights conferred on authors and others under Part IV of the Copyright Act 1994 or equivalent provisions under the law of the place where such rights are sought to be enforced.

**'Musical work'** means a musical work as defined in the Copyright Act 1994.

**'Performance'** means a performance as defined in section 169 of the Copyright Act 1994 or other applicable law.

**'Plant variety'** means a plant variety as defined in the Plant Variety Rights Act 1987.

**'Prescribed copying limit'** means the terms and conditions on which a copyright work may be copied or accessed under a collective licensing agreement or where no such terms and conditions currently apply to the work, those laid down in Part III of the Copyright Act 1994.

**'Research outcome'** means the results and conclusions arrived at as the result of particular research activities and includes products, processes, experimental methods and supporting data.

**'Research record'** means any information concerning particular research activities recorded in a form capable of reproduction and includes notes, designs, drawings, memoranda and other writings.

**'Sign'** means sign as defined in the Trade Marks Act 1953.

**'Staff member'** means a person engaged by the University under a contract of employment.

**'Student'** means any person other than a staff member enrolled for any course or qualification offered by or on behalf of the University.

**'Third party'** means any person or organisation other than The University of Auckland or its members.

**'Trade mark'** means a trade mark as defined in the Trade Marks Act 1953.

**'University'** means The University of Auckland and includes:

- a Auckland UniServices Limited
- b Such other person or organisation as may be specified from time to time by the Vice Chancellor as being affiliated to the University for the purposes of this policy.

**'University resources'** means money or property owned, provided or obtained by the University and includes:

- a Pre-existing intellectual property rights vested in the University
- b Funds obtained by or through the University

**'Work of fine art'**

- a Means an artistic work originally produced in single or limited editions and not intended for industrial application or use; but
- b Does not include:
  - (i) a work of architecture being a building or a model or plan for a building; or
  - (ii) a means of storing, accessing or arranging an artistic work.

**'Work of joint authorship'** means a work of joint authorship as defined in section 6 of the Copyright Act 1994.

### 3 **Ownership issues - Staff**

- 3.1 Where staff members create any form of intellectual property other than an excluded copyright work
  - a in the course of their employment, or
  - b using University resources all rights to that intellectual property are to vest in the University.
- 3.2 The University shall also retain ownership of any physical object or tangible material embodying or incorporating its intellectual property.
- 3.3 Subject to the conditions set out in §3.4 and §3.5 the University agrees that copyright in an excluded copyright work belongs in the first instance to the staff member or members who create it.
- 3.4 Where an excluded copyright work is produced in whole or in part in the course of a staff member's employment or using University resources, the University shall have a non exclusive, royalty free, worldwide and irrevocable licence to exploit or use that work either itself or through other academic institutions provided that such exploitation or use
  - a is confined to the delivery of courses or programmes offered by the University and
  - b complies with the prescribed copying limit.

- 3.5 Staff wishing to enter into an agreement of assignment or licence with a third party in relation to any excluded copyright work are to notify the third party of the existence and extent of the University's licence under §3.4.

### 4 **Ownership issues - Students**

- 4.1 Students do not relinquish their intellectual property rights by enrolling in a course of study offered by or on behalf of the University.
- 4.2 The University may require students to assign their intellectual property rights to itself or a third party as a condition of participation in a particular research project or exercise. In such cases the student shall be given an explanation of the need for such assignment and an opportunity to seek independent legal advice.
- 4.3 The University agrees that students are to be the first owners of copyright in their theses, dissertations and other assessable work.
- 5 **Moral Rights**
  - 5.1 The University undertakes to respect and protect the moral rights which the law confers on staff and students.
  - 5.2 The University accepts that the creators of excluded copyright works are to have their full moral rights as first owners of copyright in such works.
  - 5.3 The University will not require staff or students to waive their moral rights as a condition of employment or funding.

### 6 **Identification and Notification**

- 6.1 When staff or students create intellectual property to which the University might have a claim in terms of this policy and which in the creators' view offers possibilities for commercial exploitation the creators shall promptly make that fact known to the University.
- 6.2 Whenever disclosure is made under §6.1, the University may require the staff or students concerned to provide further details of the intellectual property in question including:
  - a the date upon which the intellectual property was created;
  - b the identity of any person or persons who contributed to the creation of the intellectual property;
  - c the details of any pre-existing intellectual property which was used in creating the intellectual property;
  - d whether any person other than the creator claims any entitlement or interest in the intellectual property;
  - e the details of any University facilities or resources used to create the intellectual property;
  - f the details of any likely existing or potential use for, or commercial exploitation of, the intellectual property.
- 6.3 Disclosure under §6.1 and §6.2 must be made to:

- a the relevant Dean, or head of department;  
or
  - b The Intellectual Property Manager, Auckland UniServices Limited; or
  - c Any other person appointed by the Vice Chancellor for the purpose.
- 6.4 Within 90 days of first being notified of the existence of intellectual property, or within 90 days of receiving any additional information requested under the provisions of section 6.2, whichever is the later, the University shall:
- a make a decision as to whether it may wish to exploit the intellectual property; and
  - b communicate that decision to the creator of the intellectual property.
- 6.5 Failure to decide and notify in terms of §6.4 shall be treated as an abandonment by the University of its rights in the intellectual property in question.
- 6.6 The University will set up mechanisms at School and Faculty level for providing guidance and advice as to how intellectual property might best be notified and exploited.
- 6.7 Staff and students shall disclose to the University any financial or other interest in a third party which might affect the commercial exploitation of the University's intellectual property.
- 7 Commercialization and Protection**
- 7.1 The decision whether or not to exploit its intellectual property lies with the University, not individual staff or students. The University undertakes to consult with creators as to the appropriate mode of commercialization.
- 7.2 The commercialization of intellectual property may be carried out by Auckland UniServices Limited or other organisation or person appointed for the purpose.
- 7.3 Staff and students must not do any of the following things in relation to the University's intellectual property:
- a Apply for the grant of a patent or other registrable intellectual property right; or
  - b Enter into any contracts, discussions, or negotiations with third parties without the permission of the University; or
  - c Knowingly act in any way which is inconsistent with the University's intellectual property rights or which diminishes or lessens the value of those rights.
- 7.4 Staff or students who create intellectual property to which §6.1 relates shall provide the University with all reasonable assistance in its exploitation or development including:
- a Providing information when required.
  - b Executing specified documents.
  - c Entering into agreements to undertake particular research or produce other stated outcomes.
  - d Participating in appropriate marketing or promotional activities.
- 7.5 Where staff or students are unwilling or unable to execute documents as provided in §7.4 above, the University shall be deemed to have an irrevocable authority to execute on their behalf any document which is consistent with the objectives of this policy.
- 7.6 The University will share the benefits of commercialization with the creator on an agreed case by case basis.
- 8 Publication and Information Exchange**
- 8.1 In accordance with its obligation to protect and enhance academic freedom, the University acknowledges the right of staff and students to:
- a Exchange information with colleagues in other academic and research institutions;
  - b Present and publish the results of their research and scholarly endeavours in a full and timely way.
- 8.2 In order to protect its intellectual property against the effects of premature disclosure, the University may in particular cases, and for a limited period, require staff and students to:
- a Inform the recipients of information relating to the University Intellectual Property or the physical material embodying it that they:
    - (i) may only use the information or material for stated purposes.
    - (ii) may not further disclose the information (or transmit the material) without the consent of the University.
  - b Suspend publication or presentation of all or part of particular research outcomes for as long as may be reasonably necessary for the University to complete the successful commercialization of those outcomes or comply with the University's pre-existing obligations to third parties. In normal circumstances such a period would not be expected to exceed twelve months and staff and students would usually be informed of the need to restrict publication or disclosure before they embark on the research in question. Agreements with third parties containing such restrictions must first be submitted to the Deputy Vice Chancellor Research for approval.
- 8.3 The University shall take all steps necessary so as to ensure that the protection and/or commercialization of Intellectual Property consistent with the provisions of §8.2 does not unreasonably delay the conferment of a degree or other academic qualification on the creator of the intellectual property.
- 9 Administration and Legal Effect**
- 9.1 While it is the University's intention to incorporate this Policy in collective and individual employment agreements with staff, such agreements will prevail over the Policy where there is any inconsistency between the two.

- 9.2 The University is free to waive or relinquish its intellectual property rights whether by agreement, contract or otherwise as circumstances may dictate.
- 9.3 This Policy only relates to intellectual property which comes into existence after 30th December 2000.
- 9.4 The University acknowledges that disputes arising from the interpretation or application of this Policy should as far as possible be settled without resort to litigation or other legal process. The University will consult with all interested parties as to how this may be achieved.

where they are commenting in their private capacity, rather than commenting as a member of the University on a subject in which they have special expertise, competence or responsibility.

When acting in their private capacity, staff should not use University letterhead paper or envelopes as the recipient might otherwise believe that the individual is writing on behalf of the University. Equally, when using email, and particularly the University e-mail address, for private purposes, staff should make it clear that they are expressing a personal view and should not use their University title as this could imply they are speaking for the University. Students at all times communicate in a private capacity.

---

## Public Correspondence and Media Statements

### Responding to Media Inquiries:

Staff may make statements to the media on a subject in which they have special expertise, competence or responsibility. Before making such statements, staff must ensure that their views are within the law and that they do not use their association with the University to imply they are speaking for the University, or that all staff of the University necessarily support their views. This is to ensure that the University maintains the 'highest ethical standards' in accordance with the accountability requirements in the Education Act 1989. Advice on handling media inquiries is available from External Relations (09 373 7599 ext. 87698).

If staff are asked to comment on any other matters, before responding they should take advice from External Relations, their line manager and/or head of department. In particular, inquirers asking about individual departments, centres or other units, should in the first instance be referred to the head of the department or centre concerned. Staff should also ensure the head of that department or centre is made aware of the enquiry.

Normally all requests from the news media to comment on University policies, procedures or management should be referred to the Vice-Chancellor or his/her nominee responsible for the area concerned.

### Use of University Title

Staff must ensure that, in communicating with the media or the public, their University title or association is used only when they are providing information about, or commenting on, a subject in which they have special expertise, competence or responsibility and when no commercial or legal implications arise. On other subjects, members of the University should not normally use their University title as they will be writing or speaking in their private capacity.

### Use of University Letterhead/Logo/E-mail

As outlined above, staff communicating or corresponding with the media or members of the public must clearly distinguish between situations

---

## Smoke Free Policy

### Introduction

The University of Auckland has adopted a 'smoke free' policy, in accordance with the provisions of the Smoke Free Environments Act 1990, for the following reasons:

- research indicates tobacco smoke affects an individual's well being and health;
- everyone is entitled to a smoke free environment in all public areas and their place of study or work.

The University recognizes that the implementation of the 'smoke free' policy requires the cooperation of all members of the University and visitors.

### Policy

- 1 Smoking is not permitted in any building controlled by the University Council. This includes personal offices, public areas, lifts and stairways.
- 2 Smoking is not permitted in any vehicle controlled by the University Council at any time.
- 3 Smoking is not permitted in designated areas around air conditioning or ventilation system intakes. Such areas will be clearly marked.
- 4 Staff who wish to smoke should try to do so only during lunch or tea breaks and out of doors.
- 5 The international no smoking symbol will be displayed in all university controlled buildings, vehicles and other designated areas to remind University members and visitors of the 'smoke free' policy.
- 6 Members may complain to their supervisor or Head of Department if a person continues to smoke in any designated 'smoke free' area. The supervisor or Head of Department shall, within twenty days of the receipt of the complaint, investigate that complaint and, if it appears a contravention has occurred, shall try to resolve the complaint. In the event that a member of the University will not give an assurance that there will be no repetition of

the cause of the complaint the University will notify the Director General of Health at the Ministry of Health who is responsible for enforcing the provisions of the Smoke Free Environments Act.

- 7 At its first meeting each year the University Council shall review the 'smoke free' policy and shall, before making changes to the policy in accordance with the provision of the Smoke Free Environments Act 1990, consider any submissions received from members of the University or their representatives by the Registrar during the previous year.
- 8 Copies of the 'smoke free' policy are available from the Registrar on request and reminders

will be printed in *Next Week* at the commencement of each semester and from time to time in other University publications.

---

## Student Learning and Research Grievances

The University has put in place guidelines to address policy and procedures to resolve learning and research grievances as they may affect students.

The policy and procedures document is available from the ClockTower Student Information Centre. Alternatively, students can contact an AUSA Student Advocate for information.

## University Personnel

Officers of the University	664
The Council of the University	664
The Senate of the University	664
Deans	665
Tamaki Campus	666
New Zealand Asia Institute	666
Honorary Graduates	666
Honorary Fellows	666
The University of Auckland Distinguished Alumni Awards	666
Professores Emeriti	667
Faculty of Arts	669
Faculty of Business and Economics	674
Faculty of Creative Arts and Industries	678
Faculty of Education	679
Faculty of Engineering	682
Faculty of Law	686
Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences	686
Faculty of Science	703
School of Theology	711
Auckland UniServices Limited	712
Centre for Continuing Education	712
Centre for Flexible and Distance Learning	712
Centre for Professional Development	712
Equal Opportunities	712
External Relations and Development	713
Financial Services Department	713
Foundation Studies Programme	713
Human Resources Registry	713
Information Technology Systems and Services	713
International	713
International Office	714
Office of the Vice-Chancellor	714
Property Services	714
Schools Partnership Office	715
Student Administration	715
Student Learning Centre	715
University Library	715

---

## UNIVERSITY PERSONNEL

---

### Officers of the University

#### Chancellor

...

#### Pro-Chancellor

Hugh A. Fletcher, MBA *Stanford*, BSc, MCom  
(Term ends 20.10.04)

#### Vice-Chancellor

Stuart N. McCutcheon, BAgSc(Hons) PhD *Massey*

#### Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic)

Raewyn Dalziel, ONZM, BA PhD *Well.*

#### Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research)

Thomas H. Barnes, MSc, PhD *UMIST*, FRSNZ

#### Registrar and Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor

Timothy P. Greville, LLB

#### Director of Administration

Jonathan W. Blakeman, MPP *Well.*, BCom, DipLGA,  
FNZIM, CA

---

### The Council of the University

#### Ex officio

#### Vice-Chancellor

Stuart N. McCutcheon, BAgSc(Hons) PhD *Massey*

#### Appointed by the Minister of Education

Hugh A. Fletcher, MBA *Stanford*, BSc, MCom  
(Term ends 31.1.07)

D. John Graham, MA (Term ends 31.12.05)

G. Gregory Taylor, MA (Term ends 1.2.05)

... (Term ends 17.08.07)

#### Court of Convocation

... (Term ends 20.10.05)

John Morris, MA (Term ends 18.7.07)

Lynton L. Stevens, QC, BCL *Oxf.*, BA, LLB

(Term ends 18.7.07)

#### Appointed by Council

G. Roger W. France, BCom, CA (Term ends 19.8.05)

Jennifer B. Gibbs, MA (Term ends 14.12.07)

Peter F. Menzies, ME (Term ends 22.6.07)

#### Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic)

Raewyn Dalziel, ONZM, BA PhD *Well.* (Term ends  
19.7.05)

#### Elected by Students

...

...

#### Elected by Academic Staff

Richard L. M. Faull, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, PhD,  
DSc, FRSNZ (Term ends 31.3.05)

#### Elected by General Staff

Janet Copsey, BA DipNZLS *Well.*, DipBus, FNZLIA  
(Term ends 31.3.07)

#### Elected by Lecturers

Kenneth J. Larsen, PhL, STL *Rome*, MA PhD *Camb.*  
(Term ends 31.3.07)

#### Professor Elected by Senate

Dianne McCarthy, BA, MSc, PhD (Term ends  
31.3.05)

### The Senate of the University

Chairman: The Vice-Chancellor

Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic)

Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research)

Pro Vice-Chancellor (Equal Opportunities)

Pro Vice-Chancellor (International)

Pro Vice-Chancellor (Maori)

Pro Vice-Chancellor (Tamaki)

All Professors (*and their equivalents*)

Heads of Departments and Acting Heads of  
Departments (*Sub-professorial*)

Deans (*not being members of the Professorial staff*)

Librarian

Elected Members of the Sub-professorial Staff (*four from the Faculty of Arts; two from the Faculty of Creative Arts and Industries; two from the Faculty of Science; one each from the Faculties of Business and Economics, Engineering, Law, Medical and Health Sciences; and six from the Sub-professorial staff at large*)

#### Faculty of Arts

Mercedes Maroto Camino (*Retires 31.1.06*)

Franco Manai (*Retires 31.1.05*)

Claudia Marquis (*Retires 31.1.06*)

David Wright (*Retires 31.1.05*)

#### Faculty of Business and Economics

Susan Laurenson (*Retires 31.1.06*)

#### Faculty of Creative Arts and Industries

Nuala Gregory (*Retires 31.1.05*)

Hayden Willey (*Retires 31.1.05*)

#### Faculty of Engineering

John Butterworth (*Retires 31.1.06*)

#### Faculty of Law

Rosemary Tobin (*Retires 31.1.05*)

#### Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences

Bridie Kent (*Retires 31.1.06*)

#### Faculty of Science

Eamonn O'Brien (*Retires 31.1.05*)

Chris Triggs (*31.1.06*)

#### Sub-professorial Staff at Large

Penny Brothers (*Retires 31.1.06*)

Noel Dawson (*Retires 31.1.06*)

Margaret Goldstone (*Retires 31.1.05*)

Jason M. Ingham (*Retires 31.1.05*)

Emmanuel Manalo (*Retires 31.1.05*)

Michael Townsend (*Retires 31.1.06*)

#### President, Auckland University Students' Association

Five Student Members (*nominated by Auckland University Students' Association*)

#### Chief Executive Officer, Manukau Institute of Technology

Vice-Chancellor, Auckland University of Technology

## Deans

### Faculty of Arts

#### Dean

John Morrow, MA *Cant.*, PhD *York(Can.)*

#### Associate Deans

Matthew Allen, BA PhD *Syd.*

W. R. Barnes, BA *Syd.*, MA PhD *Camb.*

Bruce Curtis, BA BCom PhD *Cant.*, DipTchg

Rod Ellis, MA *Leeds*, MEd *Bris.*, PhD *Lond.*

Tracey McIntosh, MA, PhD

Jim Miller, MA PhD DipGenLing *Edin.*

#### Assistant Deans

Lynette Carter, MA

Simon Holdaway, MA *Otago*, PhD *Penn.*

John Hope, MA DipTchg

### Faculty of Business and Economics

#### Dean

Barry H. Spicer, BCom *Qld.*, PhD *Wash.*

#### Deputy Dean

Michael Powell, PhD *Chic.*, MA

#### Associate Dean (Undergraduate Programmes)

Susan S. Laurenson, MCom, MA

#### Associate Dean (Postgraduate and Research)

Michael Myers, MA, PhD

#### Associate Dean (Development)

Geoffrey Lorigan, MSc *Lond.Bus.*, PhD *Cal.Coast*,  
MBA

#### Associate Dean (Maori and Pacific)

Manuka A. Henare, BA PhD *Well.*

#### Assistant Deans

Kathryn Caird, BSc *Otago*, BCom

Philip A. Cook, BA, LLB, MPhil

Meryle Hawkins, MA

Biljana Juric, MS *Northwestern*, MS PhD *Sarajevo*

Gabrielle Peko, MCom

#### Executive Director (Executive Programmes)

...

#### Director, Bachelor of Business & Information Management (BBIM)

Douglas G. Carrie, BCom *Br.Col.*, MBA  
*Thunderbird*, PhD *Lond.*

### Faculty of Creative Arts and Industries

#### Dean

Sharman Pretty, BMus(Hons) *Adel.*, Reifeprüfung  
*Freiburg-im-Breisgau*

#### Associate Dean Teaching and Learning

Nuala Gregory, BAFA PGDipFA *Ulster*, MFA

### Faculty of Engineering

#### Dean

Peter W. Brothers, PhD *Colo. State*, BSc, BE,  
MASME, MASHRAE, FIPENZ

#### Deputy Dean

David M. Ryan, MSc *Otago*, PhD *ANU*, FRSNZ,  
FIPENZ

#### Associate Dean (Undergraduate)

J. Elizabeth Godfrey, PhD *Curtin*, MSc, CIPENZ

#### Associate Dean (Postgraduate)

...

#### Associate Dean (Research)

Geoffrey G. Duffy, ASTC, BSc NSW, PhD DEng,  
FRSNZ, FICHEM, CEEng

#### Associate Dean (Maori)

Te Kipa Kapa Brian Morgan, BE, GradDipMgmt,  
MBA *Deakin*, MIPENZ

#### Associate Dean (International)

Wei Gao, BE *NE Univ. China*, ME BCRI (*China*),  
DPhil *Oxf.*, MIPENZ, MASN, MAIME, MTMS,  
MMRS, MACA

### Faculty of Law

#### Dean

Julie K. Maxton, LLB(Hons) *Lond.*, LLM *Cant.*, PhD

#### Deputy Dean

P. G. Watts, LLB(Hons) *Cant.*, LLM *Camb.*

#### Director of Postgraduate Studies

P. T. Rishworth, LLB(Hons), MJur

#### Associate Dean

Stephen F. Penk, MA PGDA *Otago*, BA, LLB(Hons)

#### Associate Dean (Research)

David V. Williams, BA LLB *Well.*, BCL DipTheol  
*Oxf.*, PhD *Dar.*

#### Dean of Students

Rosemary Tobin, DipEd *Massey*, BA, LLB(Hons),  
MJur, PhD

### Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences

#### Dean

Peter J. Smith, RFD (*Aust.*), BSc MBBS MD *Qld.*  
FRACP, FRCPA

#### Deputy Dean

Robert R. Kydd, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRANZCP

#### Director of Administration and Finance

Richard Swain, BCom, CA

#### Tumuaki

Colin D. Mantell, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, PhD,  
DipObst, FRANZCOG, FRCOG

#### Associate Dean (Academic)

Noel J. Dawson, BSc PhD *NE*

#### Associate Dean (Education)

...

#### Associate Dean (Research)

Louise F. B. Nicholson, MSc, PhD, DipTchg

#### Associate Dean (International)

Samson Tse, MSc, PhD *Otago*

#### Associate Dean (Medical Programme)

Phillippa Poole BSc, MBChB, FRACP

### Faculty of Science

#### Dean

A. Richard Bellamy, BSc NZ, MSc, PhD, FRSNZ

#### Associate Dean (IT)

Paul Bonnington, BSc PhD *Massey*

#### Associate Dean (Academic Programmes)

Margaret Goldstone, MSc, DipBus, DipTchg *ACE*

#### Associate Dean (Planning & Finance)

Peter L. Hosking, BA NZ, MA *Cant.*, PhD *S.III*

**Associate Dean (Research)**Michael Kalloniatis, MSc *Melb.*, PhD *Houston***Associate Dean (Postgraduate)**Corinne A. Locke, BSc PhD *Liv.*, FGS**Associate Dean (Tamaki)**

Christopher M. Triggs, MSc, PhD

**School of Theology****Head of School**Elaine M. Wainwright, BSS *Pontifical Biblical Commission, Rome, MA(Theol) Catholic Theological Union Chic.*, Èlève Diplômée *École Biblique, Jerusalem, BA PhD Qld.*

---

**Tamaki Campus****Pro Vice-Chancellor (Tamaki)**Ralph P. Cooney, BSc PhD DSc *Qld.*, FRSNZ, FRACI, FNZIC**Director, Tamaki Campus**

Brendan Mosely, MA

**Registrar**

Philip N. Rama, MA

**Faculty of Business & Economics****Head of UABS Tamaki Division**Kambiz E. Maani, MSc *Teheran, PhD Ill.***Faculty of Engineering****Centre for Advanced Composite Materials****Director**Debes Bhattacharyya, ME *Calc.*, PhD *Jad.*, FIPENZ, FRSNZ, MASME, MASM**Faculty of Medical & Health Sciences****School of Population Health****Head of School**Alistair Woodward, MMedSci *Nott.*, MBBS PhD *Adel.*, FAFPHM**Faculty of Science****Associate Dean**

Christopher M. Triggs, MSc, PhD

---

**New Zealand Asia Institute****Director**

...

**Acting Director**Barry S. Gustafson, ONZM, MA *NZ*, DipEd *Massey*, DipSovStud *Glas.*, PhD**Manager External Relations**Pradeep C. Kanthan, BA *Saug.***Fellow and Emeritus Professor**Peter Nicholas Tarling, MNZM, MA PhD LittD *Camb.*, HonLittD, FRAS, FRHistS**Fellow**Bryce Harland, MA *NZ***Research Fellow and Programme Officer**2002 Xin Chen, MA *Peking*, PhD *Hawaii***China Studies Centre****Director**Paul Clark, MA, AM PhD *Harv.***Japan Studies Centre****Director**Reiko Aoki, BS *Tokyo*, MA *Tsukuba*, MS, PhD *Stan.***Korea Studies Centre****Director**Young-Hee Lee, MA PhD *Hawaii*

---

**Honorary Graduates**

Sir Ian Barker	LLD	1999
Edward George Bollard	DSc	1983
Judge Michael John Albert Brown	LLD	1992
John Ridley Cameron	MProp	2004
Sir Ron Carter	DEng	2001
Sir Graeme Davies	DEng	2002
The Rt Hon Dame Sian Elias	LLD	1999
Richard Henry Lindo Ferguson	LLD	1986
David Fulton Fowlds	ME	1987
Maurice Gee	DLitt	2004
Douglas Goodfellow	LLD	1999
Andrew Gurr	DLitt	2004
Paakariki Harrison	DLitt	1991
John Antony Hood	LLD	2004
Vaughan Frederick Randal Jones	DSc	1992
Dame Kiri Te Kanawa	MusD	1983
The Rt Hon Sir Kenneth Keith	LLD	2001
Sir Donald McIntyre	MusD	1992
Janetta Mary McStay	MusD	1992
Sir Colin Maiden	LLD	1994
Dame Joan Metge	DLitt	2001
Warwick Burns Nicoll	MCom	2004
Sadako Ogata	LLD	1996
Dame Bridget Margaret Ogilvie	DSC	1998
Merimeri Penfold	DLitt	1999
Walter Scheel	LLD	1978
Thomas W. Schnackenberg	DEng	2001
Maurice Francis Richard Shadbolt	DLitt	1997
Elizabeth Smither	DLitt	2004
Sir Graham Davis Speight	LLD	1983
Peter Nicholas Tarling	DLitt	1996
Harold M. Titter	D(UoA)	2001
Dame Catherine Tizard	LLD	1992
Sir Miles Warren	D(UoA)	2001
Takutai (Doc) Wikiriwhi	D(UoA)	1999
Lorna Alva Wilson	MA	1995
Dame Dorothy Gertrude Winstone	LLD	1983
Leslie Colin Woods	DSc	1983

---

**Honorary Fellows**

Jennifer Barbara Gibbs	1995
Gaewyn Elizabeth Griffiths	2001
Sir John Ingram	1997
Brian Hall Picot	1998
Ian Brampton Reynolds	1995

---

**The University of Auckland****Distinguished Alumni Awards**

Gretchen Albrecht	1999
Ian Athfield	1997
Dr Allan Badley	2003
Emeritus Professor Bruce Biggs	2001

Dr Alan Bollard	1998	Richard Conrad Cambie, MSc PhD NZ, DPhil <i>Oxf.</i> , DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC (Chemistry) (Retired 1996)
Judge Mick Brown	2002	John B. Carman, BMedSc MBChB NZ, DPhil <i>Oxf.</i> (Anatomy) (Retired 1998)
Dorothy Butler	2001	Allan John Lewis Catt, MCom NZ (Economics) (Retired 1990)
Niki Caro	2004	Dame Marie Mildred Clay, DBE, MA DipEd PhD NZ, HonLittD (Ed) <i>Lond.</i> , EdD <i>Purdue</i> , HonDHL <i>Ohio State</i> , <i>Lesley, Texas Woman's</i> , FRSNZ, FNZPsS, HonFNZEL (Education) (Retired 1990)
Len Castle	2004	David Simpson Cole, CBE, BMedSc MBChB NZ, FRCS, FRACS (Medicine) (Retired 1989)
Vincent Cheng	2002	Edwin Richard Collins, OBE, MSc NZ, PhD <i>Birm.</i> , FIP, FRSNZ (Physics) (Retired 1982)
Philip [Pip] Cheshire	2003	Brian Coote, CBE, LLM NZ, PhD <i>Camb.</i> (Law) (Retired 1994)
Dame Marie Clay	2004	Kenneth Brailey Cumberland, CBE, MA <i>Lond.</i> , DSc NZ, FRSNZ (Geography) (Retired 1980)
Dr Penelope Brook Cowen	1998	Brian Reeve Davis, MSc PhD NZ, DPhil <i>Oxf.</i> , DSc, FNZIC (Chemistry) (Retired 1995)
The Rt Hon Dame Sian Elias	2001	John S. Deeks, MA <i>Camb.</i> DipPM LSE (MER) (Retired 2002)
Cyril Firth	1998	Justo A. Diaz, BSc <i>Ott.</i> , PhD <i>U.C. Berk.</i> (MSIS) (Retired 2002)
Hugh Fletcher	1996	Robert W. Doran, BSc <i>Cant.</i> , MSc <i>Stan.</i> , FNZCS (Computer Science) (Retired 1998)
Raoul Franklin	2004	John Charles Dower, AB MD <i>Johns H.</i> , FRACP (Paediatrics) (Retired 1987)
Emeritus Professor Sidney (Ben) Gascoigne	2002	John L. Duncan, BMedEng <i>Melb.</i> , MSc PhD <i>Manc.</i> , FASM, FIDENZ (Mechanical Engineering) (Retired 1998)
Maurice Gee	1998	Robert B. Elliott, MBBS MD <i>Adel.</i> , FRACP (Paediatrics) (Retired 1999)
John Hagen	2003	Robert Ellis, ARCA, RBA, MFIM, FRSA, MDINZ (Fine Arts), ONZM (Retired 1994)
Bruce Harland	2000	Leon G. Garner, BAppSc <i>Melb.</i> , PhD <i>City</i> , DipEd <i>Melb.</i> , LOSC, DCLP, FBCO, FAAO (Optometry and Vision Science) (Retired 2003)
Dr Ruth Harley	2002	John B. Gavin, BDS NZ, PhD DDS DSc <i>Otago</i> , FRCPath, FRCPA, FFOP (Pathology) (Retired 2001)
Michael Jones	1997	Peter David Hensman Godfrey, CBE, MA MusB <i>Camb.</i> , HonFRSCM, FRCO, ARCM (Music) (Retired 1983)
John La Roche	1999	A. S. G. Green, MA <i>Camb.</i> , PhD <i>Edin.</i> , DipHistArt <i>Lond.</i> (Art History) (Retired 1997)
Chris Liddell	2003	Roger Curtis Green, BA BSc <i>New Mexico</i> , PhD <i>Harv.</i> , FRSNZ, MANAS (Anthropology) (Retired 1991)
Emeritus Professor Sir Graham Liggins	1998	Barry S. Gustafson, ONZM, MA NZ, DipEd <i>Massey</i> , DipSovStud <i>Gasl.</i> , PhD (Political Studies) (Retired 2004)
Elsie Locke	1996	David Hall, MSc PhD NZ, DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Chemistry) (Retired 1984)
Dr Sidney Mead	1999	Stuart W. Heap, MBBS <i>Lond.</i> , FRACP, FRCR (Anatomy with Radiology) (Retired 2001)
Rosemary Nalden	2003	Brian Dutton Henshall, BSc PhD DSc <i>Brist.</i> , CEng, FRAeS, FNZIM (Management Studies) (Retired 1987)
Rosslyn Noonan	2002	Peter Barrie Herdson, BMedSc MBChB NZ, PhD <i>Northwestern</i> , FRCPA (Pathology) (Retired 1986)
Dr Claudia Orange	1997	Graham L. Hill, MBChM <i>Otago</i> , MD <i>Leeds</i> , FRACS, FRCS, FACS (Surgery) (Retired 2000)
Rt Rev. John Paterson	2004	George William Hinde, LLM NZ, LLD (Law) (Retired 1987)
Brian Peace	2001	Anthony B. Hooper, MA NZ, PhD <i>Harv.</i> (Anthropology) (Retired 1992)
Hon. Justice Judith Potter	1997	
Trevor Richards	1996	
Mary Schnackenberg	1996	
Thomas [Tom] Schnackenberg	2003	
Marie Shroff	2004	
George E. Smith	2000	
Alan Smythe	1999	
Dame Cheryl Sotheran	1999	
Sir Laurence Stevens	2001	
Dr James Watson	2001	
Sir Wilson Whineray	1997	
Richard Yan	1996	
Arthur Young	2002	

## Professores Emeriti

Colin James Alexander, MBChB NZ, MD <i>Otago</i> , HonFRCR, FRACR, HonFACR (Anatomy) (Retired 1986)	
Peter Bartlett, BArch NZ, PhD, RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA (Architecture) (Retired 1993)	
Dame Patricia R. Bergquist, DBE, MSc PhD NZ, DSc, FRSNZ (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1999)	
Peter L. Bergquist, MSc PhD NZ, DSc, FRSNZ (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1994)	
Judith M. C. Binney, FRSNZ, CNZOM, BA NZ, MA (History) (Retired 2003)	
Conrad Blyth, MA NZ, PhD <i>Camb.</i> (Economics) (Retired 1995)	
Archibald Gordon Bogle, BE NZ, DPhil <i>Oxf.</i> , CEng, FIEE, FIPENZ (Electrical Engineering) (Retired 1978)	
Geoffrey Peter Braae, MCom NZ, DPhil <i>Oxf.</i> (Economics) (Retired 1987)	
Frederic Morris Brookfield, BA LLB NZ, DPhil <i>Oxf.</i> (Law) (Retired 1996)	
Stanley Bullivant, PhD DSc <i>Lond.</i> , FRSNZ, FAAAS (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1993)	
John C. Butcher, MSc NZ, PhD DSc <i>Syd.</i> , FRSNZ, CMath, FIMA (Mathematics) (Retired 1999)	

- David John Hooton, MSc NZ, PhD *Edin.*, FInstP, FNZIP, CPhys (Physics) (*Retired 1987*)
- Henry Kaye Ibbertson, MBChB NZ, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) (*Retired 1991*)
- R. J. Irwin, MA NZ, PhD *Tufts.*, FAPS, FNZPsS (Psychology) (*Retired 1999*)
- M. P. Jackson, MA NZ, BLitt *Oxf.*, (English) (*Retired 2004*)
- John Kalman, MA NZ, AM PhD *Harv.* (Mathematics) (*Retired 1993*)
- Sir Hugh Kawharu, Kt, ONZ, BSc NZ, MA *Camb.*, MLitt DPhil *Oxf.*, FRSNZ (Maori Studies) (*Retired 1993*)
- Alick Charles Kibblewhite, MSc NZ, DIC PhD *Lond.*, FInstP *Lond.*, FNZIP, FASA, CPhys (Physics) (*Retired 1989*)
- Alan Kirkness, BA NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA (Applied Language Studies and Linguistics) (*Retired 2004*)
- Walter Kirkpatrick Lacey, MA *Camb.* (Classics and Ancient History) (*Retired 1987*)
- Sir Graham Collingwood Liggins, CBE, KB, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRCS *Edin.*, FRACS, FRCOG, FRNZCOG, FRS, FRSNZ (Obstetrics and Gynaecology) (*Retired 1987*)
- Peter J. Lorimer, MSc NZ, PhD *McG.*, FRSNZ (Mathematics) (*Retired 1998*)
- Peter H. Lovell, BSc PhD *Sheff.* (Biological Sciences) (*Retired 1999*)
- Peter G. Lowe, BE NZ, MA *Camb.*, MEngSc *Syd.*, PhD *Lond.*, CEng, FIPENZ, MICE, FIEAust (Civil and Resource Engineering) (*Retired 2001*)
- Alastair MacCormick, MA PhD *Yale*, BSc MCom (Business and Economics) (*Retired 2002*)
- John Marbrook, MSc PhD (Molecular Medicine) (*Retired 1996*)
- Arthur Harold Marshall, BArch BSc NZ, PhD *Stanton.*, FNZIA, FRAIA, FASA (Architecture) (*Retired 1996*)
- James D. Marshall, BA PhD *Brist.* (School of Education) (*Retired 2003*)
- Raymond Francis Meyer, BE NZ, PhD *Manc.*, FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ, FRAeS (Mechanical Engineering) (*Retired 1996*)
- Warren Moran, MA NZ, PhD, FRSNZ (Geography and Environmental Science) (*Retired 2003*)
- John Edward Morton, QSO, MSc NZ, PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRSNZ, HonFLS (Zoology) (*Retired 1989*)
- John Derek Kingsley North, CBE, MBChB NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) (*Retired 1991*)
- David Murray Paton, MBChB *Cape Town*, MD DSc *Witw.*, FRCPCan, FRACP, CBiol, FIBiol (Pharmacology) (*Retired 1988*)
- Alan R. Poletti, MSc NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, FInstP, FAPS, FNZIP, FRSNZ, CPhys (Physics) (*Retired 1999*)
- Raymond K. Ralph, MSc NZ, PhD DSc *NSW* (Biological Sciences) (*Retired 1993*)
- Arved Jaan Raudkivi, DipIng (Civil) *Tallinn & T.H. Braunschweig*, DRingEh *Braunschweig*, PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ (Civil Engineering) (*Retired 1986*)
- Alistair G. C. Renwick, MA, MD, PhD, CChem, FRSC, FRCPath, FRCPE (Biological Sciences) (*Retired 1993*)
- D. E. Richmond, MBChB NZ, MD *Otago*, MHPEd *NSW*, DipABIM, DipABNeph, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) (*Retired 1998*)
- Robert B. Riddell, MA *Camb.*, PhD *Newcastle(UK)*, DipTP NZ, ARICS, MNZPI, MNZIS (Planning) (*Retired 2000*)
- John F. Rimmer, BA NZ, MusD *Tor.*, MA (Music) (*Retired 1999*)
- W. R. Roper, MSc NZ, PhD Hon. DSc *Cant.*, FRS, FRSNZ, FNZIC (Chemistry) (*Retired 1999*)
- Jolyon D. Saunders, DipFA NZ, DipIndDes, NDD, FDINZ (Fine Arts) (*Retired 1997*)
- Forrest Smyth Scott, MA MLitt *Camb.* (English) (*Retired 1985*)
- Sir John Scott, KBE, BMedSc MBChB NZ, MD *Birm.*, FRSNZ, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) (*Retired 1996*)
- George A. F. Seber, MSc NZ, PhD *Manc.* (Statistics) (*Retired 1999*)
- K. Krister Segerberg, BA *Col.*, Fil Dok *Uppsala*, PhD *Stan.* (Philosophy) (*Retired 1992*)
- D. Norman Sharpe, ONZM, MBChB MD *Otago*, DipABIM, DipABCVDIS, FRACP, FACC (Medicine) (*Retired 2002*)
- John Desmond Sinclair, MD, BMedSc, FRACP (Physiology) (*Retired 1993*)
- D. I. B. Smith, MA NZ, DPhil *Oxf.* (English) (*Retired 2000*)
- M. P. K. Sorrenson, MA NZ, DPhil *Oxf.* (History) (*Retired 1996*)
- Christian Karlson Stead, CBE, MA NZ, PhD, Hon LittD *Brist.*, LittD, FRSL (English) (*Retired 1986*)
- Russell Cyril James Stone, ONZM, MA NZ, PhD (History) (*Retired 1989*)
- James Bruce Tabb, BCom NZ, PhD *Sheff.*, MCom, FCA, (Accounting and Finance) (*Retired 1990*)
- Peter Nicholas Tarling, MNZM MA PhD LittD *Camb.*, HonLittD, FRAS, FRHistS (History) (*Retired 1996*)
- Peter Whitaker Taylor, BSc BE NZ, PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ, FASCE (Civil Engineering) (*Retired 1986*)
- Gillian M. Turner, MBBS *Lond.*, FRCOG, FRNZCOG (Obstetrics and Gynaecology) (*Retired 1999*)
- R. J. I. Walker, MA PhD (Maori Studies) (*Retired 1998*)
- Thomas Neil Morris Waters, MSc PhD NZ, DSc, FNZIC, FANZAAS (Chemistry) (*Retired 1983*)
- Philip Richard Hylton Webb, MA LLB *Camb.*, LLD (Law) (*Retired 1987*)
- Barry J. Welch, MSc NZ, PhD, DSc, FRSNZ, FICHEM, FRACI, FNZIC, MNorskATS, MAIME, CEng, CChem (Chemical and Materials Engineering) (*Retired 1998*)
- John Scott Werry, BMedSc MBChB NZ MD *Otago*, DipPsych *McG.*, FRCPCan, FRANZCP (Psychiatry and Behavioural Science) (*Retired 1991*)
- Henry Arthur Whale, MSc NZ, PhD *Camb.*, FIP, Sen.Mem.IEEE (Electrical Engineering) (*Retired 1986*)
- Allan A. Wild, BArch NZ, RIBA, Life Member NZIA, FRSA (Architecture) (*Retired 1993*)
- Jack Lionel Woodward, BE NZ MAsc *Tor.*, CEng, FIEE, FIEAust, FIPENZ (Electrical and Electronic Engineering) (*Retired 1991*)
- Euan C. Young, MSc NZ, DIC PhD *Lond.* (Biological Sciences) (*Retired 1995*)

## UNIVERSITY STAFF

*Dates given are dates of taking up full-time employment. Where degrees and Diplomas are shown without the name of the awarding university, the university is Auckland. ✦ Denotes a part-time, permanent appointment.*

### Faculty of Arts

#### Dean

John Morrow, MA *Cant.*, PhD *York(Can.)*

#### Associate Deans

Matthew Allen, BA PhD *Syd.*

W. R. Barnes, BA *Syd.*, MA PhD *Camb.*

Bruce Curtis, BA BCom PhD *Cant.*, DipTchg

Rod Ellis, MA *Leeds*, MEd *Bris.*, PhD *Lond.*

Tracey McIntosh, MA, PhD

Jim Miller, MA PhD DipGenLing *Edin.*

#### Assistant Deans

Lynette Carter, MA

Simon Holdaway, MA *Otago*, PhD *Penn.*

John Hope, MA DipTchg

#### Faculty Registrar

Joanna Browne, MA *Cant.*

### RESEARCH UNITS, CENTRES AND INSTITUTES

#### Assessment Tools for Teaching and Learning (asTTle)

##### Director

John A. Hattie, MA DipEd PGDipArts *Otago*, PhD *Tor.*, DipTchg

#### Centre for Archaeological Research

##### Director

Douglas G. Sutton, MA PhD *Otago*

#### International Research Institute for Maori and Indigenous Education

##### Director

Leonie Pihama, MA PhD

#### Medieval and Early Modern European Studies, The Centre for (MEDEMS)

##### Director

Stephanie J. Hollis, BA *Adel.*, PhD *ANU*

#### Honorary Research Fellow

Michael J. Wright, MA *Oxf.*, PhD *N.E.*

#### The New Zealand Centre for Latin American Studies

##### Director

Matthew O'Meagher, BA *Otago*, PhD *Duke*

#### Ngā Pae o te Māramatanga (The National Institute of Research Excellence for Maori Development and Advancement)

##### Co-directors

Linda T. Smith, MA, PhD

Michael M. Walker, MSc PhD *Hawaii*

##### Executive Research Officer

Clive Aspin, MA *Well.*, PhD *Otago*, MA

#### Pacific French Research Unit

##### Director

Raylene Ramsay, MA *Otago*, DU *Poitiers*, DipLing *Camb.*

### Peace Studies

#### Director

Robert E. White, PhD, DSc

### Principals Centre

#### Director

Dawn Jones, OBE, MA DipEd DipTchg

### Professional Ethics

#### Directors

Jan Crosthwaite, MA *La Trobe*, PhD *Melb.*

Tim Dare, PhD *Alta.*, BA, LLB, MJur

#### Research Centre for Germanic Connections with New Zealand and the Pacific

##### Director

James J. D. N. Bade, MA *Well.*, DrPhil *Zürich*

#### Research Centre for Interventions in Teaching and Learning

##### Director

Richard Hamilton, MA PhD *Chic.*

#### Research Unit for Pacific Education (RUPE)

##### Director

Eve I. Coxon, MA, PhD, DipTchg

### ANTHROPOLOGY

#### Head of Department

Peter J. Sheppard, BA *Wat.*, MA PhD *Tor.*

#### University Distinguished Professor

1973 Anne Salmond, DBE, CBE, PhD *Penn.*, MA, FRSNZ

#### Professors of Archaeology

1975 Geoffrey J. Irwin, PhD *ANU*, MA, FRSNZ

1982 Douglas G. Sutton, MA PhD *Otago*

#### Professor of Social Anthropology

2003 Cris N. Shore, BA *Oxf.Brookes*, PhD *Sus.*

#### Professor of Women's Studies

1993 Maureen A. Molloy, BEd MA *Br.Col.*, PhD

#### Museum Adjunct Professor in Anthropology

Roger Neich, BSc MA *Well.*, PhD *Berk.*

#### Associate Professor in Ethnomusicology

1989 Richard M. Moyle, MA, PhD, LTCL

#### Associate Professors in Archaeology

1973 Harry R. Allen, BA *Syd.*, PhD *ANU*

1991 Peter J. Sheppard, BA *Wat.*, MA PhD *Tor.*

#### Associate Professor in Social Anthropology

1993 Juliet K. Park, MA PhD *Otago*

#### Museum Adjunct Senior Lecturer in Anthropology

Paul Tapsell, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA

#### Senior Lecturers in Archaeology

1996 Melinda S. Allen, BA *Ariz.*, MA *Hawaii*, PhD *Wash.*

1999 Simon Holdaway, MA *Otago*, PhD *Penn.*

1993 Thegn N. Ladefoged, MA PhD *Hawaii*

**Senior Lecturers in Biological Anthropology**

- 1998 Judith H. Littleton, MA PhD *ANU*  
 1998 Elizabeth A. Matisoo-Smith, BA *Berk.*, PhD

**Senior Lecturer in Ethnomusicology**

- 1993 Gregory D. Booth, BMusEd *Temple*, MMus  
 PhD *Kent St.*

**Senior Lecturer in Social Anthropology**

- 1995 Christine Dureau, MA *Monash*, PhD *Macq.*

**Senior Lecturer in Women's Studies**

- Phyllis Herda, BA *Ariz.*, PhD *ANU*, MA

**Lecturer in Biological Anthropology**

- 2000 Bruce Floyd, MA *San Francisco State*, PhD  
*Oregon*

**Lecturer in Ethnomusicology**

- 2000 Kirsten Zemke-White, MA, PhD

**Lecturers in Social Anthropology**

- 2002 Mark Busse, MA *Chic.*, PhD *Calif.*  
 1994 Okusitino Mahina, MA PhD *ANU*  
 2003 Susanna Trnka, BA *Berk.*, PhD *Prin.*

**Research Fellows**

- 2001 Shankar Aswani, MA PhD *Hawaii*  
 2001 Hans Dieter Bader, PhD *Phillips*  
 2001 Stuart Bedford, MA, PhD *ANU*  
 2000 Simon Best, MA, PhD  
 2000 Matthew Campbell, MA *Otago*, PhD *Syd.*  
 1999 Ann Chowning, MA PhD *Penn.*  
 2004 Matthew Felgate, MA PhD  
 2002 Louise Furey, MA  
 2002 Claudia Gross, MA *Berlin*, PhD *Manc.*  
 2004 Martin Jones, MA, PhD  
 2000 Joan Metge, MA *NZ*, PhD *Lond.*  
 2001 Max Rimoldi, BA DipAnth *Syd.*, PhD *ANU*  
 2000 Vince Sarich, BSc PhD *Berk.*  
 1999 Steve Webster, MA PhD *Wash.*

**Senior Research Fellow Conservation**

- Dilys A. Johns, MA

**Allan Wilson Centre, Research Fellow**

- Judith H. Robins, MSc *Dall.*

**Emeritus Professor of Prehistory**

- 1961-66, 1973 Roger C. Green, BA BSc *New Mexico*, PhD *Harv.*, FRSNZ, MANAS

**Honorary Professorial Research Fellow**

- Judith W. Huntsman, ABPnd *Bryn Mawr.*, MA  
*Brown*

**APPLIED LANGUAGE STUDIES AND LINGUISTICS****Head of Department**

- Gary Barkhuizen, BA HDE *Rhodes*, MA *Essex*, EdD  
*Col.*

**Professor of Applied Language Studies**

- 1998 Rod Ellis, MA *Leeds*, MEd *Brist.*, PhD *Lond.*

**Associate Professor in Applied Language Studies**

- 2004 Michael Barlow, BSc *Liv.*, MSc *Salf.*, PhD  
*Stan.* Cert.TEFL *Royal Society of Arts Sheff.*

**Senior Lecturers in Applied Language Studies**

- 2001 Gary Barkhuizen, BA HDE *Rhodes*, MA  
*Essex*, EdD *Col.*  
 1998 Helen Basturkmen, BA *Lond.*, MSc *Metu*, Dip  
 Tefla PhD *Aston*  
 2003 Rob Batstone, MA *Oxf.*, PhD *Lond.*, Dip.TEO,  
 PGCE *Manc.*

**Lecturers in Applied Language Studies**

- 2004 Rosemary Erlam, MA PhD DipTchg  
 2002 Shawn Loewen, BA *Ill.*, MA *Temple*, PhD  
 2003 Jenefer Philp, BA *Syd.*, MPhil *Syd.*, PhD  
*Tas.*, DipEd *Syd Inst. of Ed.*  
 2004 Tan Bee Tin, MA *Lond.*, PhD *Chichester*

**Senior Tutors in Applied Language Studies**

- 1987 Jackie Greenwood, MA, DipTchg  
 2001 John Tomlins, BA *SW England*, MEd *Manc.*  
 2000 Rosemary Wette, DipTchg DipSLT *Massey*,  
 MA

**Senior Tutor in ESOL**

- 1999 Martin White, MEd *Temple*, PGDipTESOL

**Professor of Linguistics**

- 2003 Jim Miller, MA PhD DipGenLing *Edin.*

**Senior Lecturers in Linguistics**

- 1973 D. Ross Clark, BA *Br.Col.*, PhD *Calif.*  
 1980 Frank Lichtenberk, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Hawaii*  
 1992 Donna Starks, BA MPhil *Nfld.*, PhD *Manit.*  
 1991 Fay Wouk, MA *Mich.*, PhD CPhil *UCLA*

**Lecturer in Linguistics**

- 2000 Elaine Ballard, MA *Prin.*, PhD *Cornell*

**Senior Tutor in Linguistics**

- 1997 A. Helen Charters, MA DipLing *ANU*

**Emeritus Professor of Applied Language Studies**

- Alan Kirkness, BA *NZ*, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA

**Honorary Research Fellows**

- Catherine Elder, MA *Melb.*, PhD  
 Liliya Goroleva, MA *Novosibirsk*, PhD *Moscow Inst.*  
 Marilyn Lewis, Lic.es Lettres *Besançon*, MA *Melb.*,  
 DipTchg

**ART HISTORY****Head of Department**

- Leonard B. Bell, DipArtHist *Edin.*, BA, PhD

**Professor of Art History**

- 1998 Elizabeth A. Rankin, BA PhD HDipLib *Witw.*

**Associate Professors**

- 1973 Leonard B. Bell, DipArtHist *Edin.*, BA, PhD  
 1974 Iain B. Buchanan, BA *Manc.*, MA *Essex*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1969-71, 1975 Elizabeth E. Eastmond, MA *Edin.*  
 1992 Francis N. Pound, MFA, PhD  
 1977 Robin L. Woodward, PhD *Edin.*, MA  
 1971 Alan J. Wright, MA *Edin.*

**Lecturers**

- 1997 Ngarino Ellis, MA, LLB  
 2002 Erin Griffey, MA PhD *Courtauld Inst.*  
 1997 Rangihiroa Panoho, MA, PhD  
 1997 Caroline Vercoe, MA

**Senior Tutor**

- 1985 Donald J. D. Bassett, PhD *Edin.*, MA,  
 DipNZLS

**ASIAN STUDIES, SCHOOL OF****Head of School**

- Yongjin Zhang, MPhil DPhil, *Oxf.*

**Professor of Chinese**

- 1993 Paul Clark, AM PhD *Harv.*, MA

**Professor of Japanese**

...

**Associate Professors**

- 1994 Matthew Allen, BA PhD *Syd.*  
 1994 Greg Bankoff, BA *Portsmouth*, PhD DipEd  
*Murd.*  
 1984 Manying Ip, BA *HK*, MA PhD  
 1993 Yongjin Zhang, MPhil DPhil *Oxf.*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1994 Tim Behrend, BA *Brigham Young*, MA *Wis.*,  
 PhD *ANU*  
 1987 Wayne P. Lawrence, MA *Tokyo UFS*, PhD  
*Tsukuba*  
 1996 Young Hee Lee, MA PhD *Hawaii*  
 1976 Richard T. Phillips, MA PhD *Camb.*  
 2004 Robert Sanders, MA *Hawaii*, PhD *Calif.*  
 1998 Rumi Sakamoto, MA PhD *Essex*  
 1989 Inshil Choe Yoon, MA *Seoul National U.*, PhD

**Lecturers**

- 1999 Hilary Chung, MA *Camb.*, MA PhD *Dur.*  
 2004 Barbara Hartley, BA BedSt, PhD *Qld.*  
 2001 Harumi Moore, BA *Tsuda*, MA PhD *ANU*  
 2002 Ellen Nakamura, BA *ANU*, MEd *Tokyo*  
*Gakugei U.*, PhD *ANU*  
 1993 Tomoko Shimoda, BA *MA Syd.*, PhD  
 2002 Changzoo Song, BA *Kookmin U.*, MA *Hankuk*  
*UFS*, PhD *Hawaii*

**Senior Tutors**

- 1992 Chako Amano, BA *Waseda*  
 1988 Nora Yao Xu, BA *Shanghai*, MA

**Postdoctoral Research Fellow**

- 2003 Tsukasa Takamine, B.Law *Ryukyus*, PhD  
*Murd.*

**Honorary Research Fellow**

- Eric O. van Reijn, Drs *Ley.*

**CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY****Head of Department**

- E. A. Mackay, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Well.*

**Professors**

- 1974 Vivienne J. Gray, PhD *Camb.*, MA  
 1981 A. J. Spalinger, BA *CUNY*, MPhil PhD *Yale*

**Associate Professor**

- 2001 E. A. Mackay, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Well.*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1971 W. R. Barnes, BA *Syd.*, MA PhD *Camb.*  
 1990 D. J. Blyth, BA *Otago*, PhD *Northwestern*,  
 MA  
 1991 P. R. McKechnie, MA *Camb.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1987 Marcus J. Wilson, BA LLB *Tas.*, MA *Tor.*, PhD  
*Monash*

**Lecturers**

- 2004 L. K. Bailey, PhD *Prin.*, MA  
 2003 B. A. Buxton, MA *Well.*, PhD *Berk.*  
 2003 J. Hellum, MA PhD *Tor.*

**Honorary Research Fellow**

- W. F. Richardson, MA *Camb.*, BA *Otago*, PhD

**DEVELOPMENT STUDIES, Centre for****Director**

- Kenneth E. Jackson, BA PhD *Kent*

**Associate Professor in Development Studies**

- 1972 Kenneth E. Jackson, BA PhD *Kent*

**Lecturer in Development Studies**

- 2004 Yvonne J. Underhill-Sem, MA *Hawaii*, PhD  
*Waik.*

**Honorary Professor**

- Frederic C. Deyo, BA *Yale*, MA *Calif.*, PhD *Chic.*

**ENGLISH****Head of Department**

- Peter Simpson, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Tor.*

**University Distinguished Professor**

- 1980 Brian D. Boyd, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Tor.*

**Professors**

- 1970 W. T. L. Curnow, BA *NZ*, PhD *Penn.*, MA  
 1972 Stephanie J. Hollis, BA *Adel.*, PhD *ANU*  
 1993 Witi Ihimaera, DCNZM, QSM, BA *Well.*  
 1964 M. P. Jackson, BLitt *Oxf.*, MA *NZ*  
 1967 M. A. F. Neill, MA *Otago*, PhD *Camb.*  
 1980 T. L. Sturm, CBE, PhD *Leeds*, MA  
 1988 Albert Wendt, CNZOM, MA *Well.*, Hon.Doct  
*Dijon*

**Associate Professors**

- 1973 K. J. Larsen, PhL, STL *Rome*, MA PhD *Camb.*  
 ♦ 1991 Michelle Leggott, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Br.Col.*  
 1987 Joanne C. Wilkes, BA *Syd.*, DPhil *Oxf.*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1988 A. J. Calder, MA PhD  
 1991 Murray Edmond, BA PhD  
 1968 Aorewa P. McLeod, MA *Well.*, BPhil *Oxf.*, BA  
 1977 R. H. Nicholson, MA *Well.*  
 1996 Lee Wallace, BA *Well.*, MA *S'ton*, PhD  
 1979 D. G. Wright, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Tor.*  
 1993 Stuart B. Young, MA *Well.*, PhD *Camb.*

**Lecturers**

- 1994 Rose Lovell-Smith, BPhil *Oxf.*, MA *Penn.* &  
*Cant.*, PhD *Well.*  
 1994 Eluned Summers-Bremner, BA *Waik.*, MA  
*Otago*, PhD *Cant.*  
 1991 Sophie E. Tomlinson, BA *Well.*, PhD *Camb.*  
 2003 Stephen Turner, PhD *Cornell*, MA

**Senior Tutors**

- 1991 Claudia Marquis, BA *Ley.*, MA *McM.*  
 1991 Reina Whaitiri, MA  
 1991 Elizabeth Wilson, MA

**Distinguished Creative Fellow in Maori Literature**

- 1993 Witi Ihimaera, DCNZM, QSM, BA *Well.*

**Honorary Research Fellows**

- Margaret A. Edgcumbe, MA  
 Riemke Ensing, MA  
 I. A. Gordon, CBE, MA PhD *Edin.*, LLD *Brist.*, DLitt  
*NZ, DUniv Stir.*  
 Robin E. Hooper, MA, PhD  
 F. S. Scott, MA MLitt *Camb.*

**EUROPEAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES,  
School of****Head of School**

- James J. D. N. Bade, MA *Well.*, DrPhil *Zürich*

**Adjunct Professor in European Literatures and International Relations**

- 2000 Moshé Liba, LLD *Paris*

**Comparative Literature****Coordinator**

- 1974 Michael D. Hanne, BA *Oxf.*

**Honorary Research Fellow**

Tarik Bary, PhD *Ain-Shams.*, MA

**French****Head of Department**

Raylene Ramsay, MA *Otago*, DU *Poitiers*, DipLing  
*Camb.*

**Professor**

1994 Raylene Ramsay, MA *Otago*, DU *Poitiers*,  
DipLing *Camb.*

**Senior Lecturer**

1992 R. Arnoux, DU *Paris*, MA, DipHons, DipTchg

**Lecturers**

2001 T. M. Adams, BA *Minn.*, MA *Texas*, PhD  
*Johns H.*

2004 Kevin Mendousse, DEUG LCE MSE DEA  
DNR *Sorbonne*

2002 D. Walker, DU *Paris VIII*, MA, PhD

**Honorary Tutors/Lectrices**

Isabelle Masson, Licence d'Anglais, Licence FLE  
*Bourgogne*

Claire Meynard, Licence d'Anglais, Licence FLE  
*Sorbonne*

**Honorary Research Fellows**

J. Grant, MA *NZ*, PhD *Tor.*, LLB Dipd'EtSup *Paris*,  
DipTchg, DipELT

B. D. McKay, DU *Paris*, MA, DipTchg

**Germanic Languages and Literature and Slavonic Studies****Head of Department**

Friedrich Voit, DrPhil *Saarbrücken*, DrPhil habil  
*Siegen*

**Associate Professors of German**

1976 James J. D. N. Bade, MA *Well.*, Dr Phil *Zürich*

1978 Friedrich Voit, DrPhil *Saarbrücken*, DrPhil  
habil *Siegen*

**Associate Professor of Russian**

1975 Ian K. Lilly, MA *Cant. & Monash*, PhD *Wash.*

**DAAD Lecturer in German**

2001 Sabine Fischer-Kania, MA DrPhil *Münster*

**Lecturer in German**

2002 Stephen Newton, MA *Mich.*, PhD *Berk.*

**Polish Heritage Trust Lecturer**

1997 Sarah Cozens, MA, PhD

**Lecturer in Russian**

1997 Mark S. Swift, BA *Iowa*, MA PhD *Bryn Mawr*

**Senior Tutor in Russian**

1981 Hannah Brodsky-Pevsner, DipPhil *Latvian St.*

**Honorary Research Fellows**

James Braund, MA, PhD

Jurgen Lieskounig, DrPhil *Salzburg*

Kathryn Smits, MA *NZ*, DrPhil *Freiburg*

Hans-Peter Stoffel, DrPhil *Zürich*.

Livia K. Wittman, DPhil *Budapest*

**ITALIAN****Head of Department**

Bernadette Luciano, MA *Stan.*, PhD *Col.*

**Associate Professor.**

1990 Bruno G. R. Ferraro, BA *Syd.*, PhD *Flin.*,  
DipScStLettIt *Urbino*

**Senior Lecturers**

1997 Daniela Cavallaro, Laurea *Rome*, DipFilHis  
*Salamanca*, MA *Ohio*, PhD *Northwestern*

1994 Bernadette Luciano, MA *Stan.*, PhD *Col.*

1993 Franco C. A. Manai, Laurea *Pisa*, PhD *Brown*

**Senior Tutor**

1993 Gabriella Brussino, MA

**Honorary Research Fellow**

Manuela Marchesini, Laurea *Bologna*, PhD *Stan.*

**Latin American Studies Programme****Programme Coordinator**

Matthew O'Meagher BA *Otago*, PhD *Duke*

**Spanish****Head of Department**

Christine R. Arkininstall, MA *Oviedo*, BA, PhD

**Prince of Asturias Professor**

...

**Associate Professors**

1987 Christine R. Arkininstall, MA *Oviedo*, BA, PhD

1997 Roberto J. Gonzalez-Casanovas, MA *MTS*  
PhD *Harv.*

**Senior Lecturers**

1994 Kathryn Lehman, BA *Ill.*, PhD *Pitt.*

1995 Mercedes Maroto Camino, MA PhD

1996 Walescka Pino-Ojeda, Lic. *Pedagogia*

*Universidad Austral de Chile*, MA PhD *Wash.*

1994 Wendy-Llyn Zaza, MA, PhD

**Honorary Lecturer**

Elena Garcia Torres, MA *Granada*, *Granada*,  
*Valencia*, UNED *Spain*

**Honorary Tutor/Lectora**

Clara Pallejá López, BA *Madrid*

**Translation Studies****Director**

...

**FILM, TELEVISION, AND MEDIA STUDIES****Head of Department**

Duncan Petrie, MA PhD *Edin.*

**Professors**

1999 Nick Perry, BScSoc *Lon.*, BA *Strath.*

2004 Duncan Petrie, MA PhD *Edin.*

**Associate Professors**

1993 Annie Goldson, BA *Otago*, MFA *NY.*

2003 Annamarie Jagose, MA PhD *Well.*

1992 Laurence Simmons, MA PhD *Well.*

**Senior Lecturers**

2001 Mischa Kavka, BA *Prin.*, MA *Sus.*, PhD  
*Cornell*

1997 Nabeel Zuberi, BA *Nott.*, MA *Mich.*, PhD  
*Texas*

**Lecturers**

2001 Luke Goode, BA PhD *Nott. Trent*

1998 Shuchi Kothari, MA *Pune*, PhD *Texas*

2001 Sarina Pearson, BA *Calif.*, MAVA *S.Calif.*,  
PhD

2003 Jo Smith, BA PhD *Otago*, PGDipArts

2003 Xuelin Zhou, MA *Guangzhou*, MA *Warwick*,  
PhD

**Senior Tutors**

1995 Margaret Henley, MA, DipBrC, DipTchg  
2001 Brenda Allen, BA(Hons) PhD *Cant.*

**Emeritus Professor**

Roger Horrocks, BA NZ, MA, PhD

**HISTORY****Head of Department**

James C. Belich, MA *Well.*, DPhil *Oxf.*

**Keith Sinclair Chair in History**

James C. Belich, MA *Well.*, DPhil *Oxf.*

**Professors**

1997 James C. Belich, MA *Well.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
1982 Barry G. Reay, BA *Adel.*, DPhil *Oxf.*

**Associate Professors**

1993 Ruth Barton, MSc *Well.*, PhD *Penn.*  
1988 Linda Bryder, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA  
1970 H. M. Laracy, SIM, MA *Well.*, PhD *ANU*  
1997 Christian M. Leitz, BA *W.England*, DPhil *Oxf.*

**Senior Lecturers**

1974 Judith O. Bassett, QSO, LLB, MA  
1992 Malcolm Campbell, BA PhD *NSW*  
1993 Caroline Daley, BA PhD *Well.*  
1994 Deborah Montgomerie, PhD *Duke*, MA  
1993 Matthew O'Meagher, BA *Otago*, PhD *Duke*  
1997 Kim Phillips, BA *Melb.*, DPhil *York(UK)*  
1999 Paul Taillon, BA *Northwestern*, PhD *Wis.*  
1999 Joseph Zizek, BSc *BA Alta.*, MA CPhil PhD *Berk.*

**Lecturers**

2003 Maartje M. Abbenhuis-Ash, BA PhD *Cant.*  
2003 Jennifer Frost, BA *Calif.*, MA *Davis*, PhD *Wisconsin-Madison*

**MAORI AND PACIFIC MUSIC, Archive of****Director**

Richard M. Moyle, MA, PhD, LTCL

**MAORI STUDIES****Head of Department**

Margaret S. Mutu, BSc, MPhil, PhD

**Professor**

1988 Margaret S. Mutu, BSc, MPhil, PhD

**Associate Professor**

Ann Sullivan, MSocSc DPhil *Waik.*

**Senior Lecturers**

1994 Maureen Lander, BA, MFA, DocFA  
2003 Hone Sadler, MMM *Raukawa*

**Lecturers**

2002 Lynette Carter, MA  
1995 Hineira Woodward, MA

**Senior Tutors**

1999 Dante Bonica  
1998 Deanne Wilson, MA

**PACIFIC STUDIES, Centre for****Director**

Melani Anae, MA, PhD

**Lecturer, Cook Islands Maori**

...

**Senior Lecturer, Pacific Studies**

2000 Melani Anae, MA, PhD

**Lecturer, Samoan Language**

...

**Senior Lecturer, Tongan Language**

1996 Melenaita Taumoeoflou, BA GCEd *S.Pac.*, MA *Wales*, PhD

**Senior Tutor, Samoan Language**

1995 Vavao Fetui, MA Dip TESL *Well.*

**Senior Research Fellow**

2002 Tupeni Baba, BA DipEd *NE*, MEd *Syd.*, PhD *Macq.*

**PHILOSOPHY****Head of Department**

Rosalind Hursthouse, BPhil DPhil *Oxf.*, MA

**Professors**

1981 John C. Bishop, BA *ANU*, PhD *Camb.*  
2004 Max J. Cresswell, MA *NZ*, PhD *Manc.*, LitD *Well.*  
2002 Rosalind Hursthouse, BPhil DPhil *Oxf.* MA  
1969 Robert Nola, BSc *NZ*, PhD *ANU*, MA, MSc  
1971 Julian P. Young, MA *Camb.* & *Wayne State*, PhD *Pitt.*

**Associate Professors**

1989 Jan Crosthwaite, MA *La Trobe*, PhD *Melb.*  
1983 Stephen J. Davies, MA *Monash*, PhD *Lond.*  
1994 Roderic A. Girle, MA Dip.Div. *Qld*, PhD *St And.*  
1974 Frederick W. Kroon, MA *Prin.* & *Auck.*, PhD *Prin.*  
1994 Christopher J. Martin, MA *Sus.*, PhD *Prin.*

**Senior Lecturers**

1993 Gillian Brock, BSc *BA Cape Town*, MA PhD *Duke*  
1993 Tim Dare, PhD *Alta.*, BA, LLB, MJur  
1999 Timothy P. Mulgan, BA *Otago*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
1985 Denis J. Robinson, BA *Melb.*, BPhil *Oxf.*, PhD *Monash*  
1999 Jeremy M. Seligman, BA *Oxf.*, PhD *Edin.*  
1978 Christine H. M. Swanton, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA  
1995 Robert L. Wicks, BA *Mich.*, MA PhD *Wis.*

**Lecturers**

2000 Stefano Franchi, Laurea in Filosofia *Bologna*, PhD *Stan.*  
2003 Lisa Guenther, BA *Bishop's*, PhD *Tor.*  
2002 Jonathan McKeown-Green, PhD *Prin.*, BMus, MA

**Honorary Research Fellows**

Hinne Hetteema, MSc *MA Groningen*, PhD *Nijmegen*  
Jeffrey M. Masson, BA PhD *Harv.*  
Liberato Santoro-Brienza, MPsychSci *U.C.D.*, MPhil  
PhD *Gregoriana*, DottFil *Universita degli Studi, Urbino*, DipPsychother *St Vincent's Hospital, Dublin*  
Stanislaw J. Surma, MSc PhD DSc, *Jagiellonian Univ., Cracow, Poland*

**POLITICAL STUDIES****Head of Department**

Jack Vowles, MA PhD *Br.Col.*

**Professors**

2002 John Morrow, MA *Cant.*, PhD *York(Can.)*  
1971 R. Andrew Sharp, BA *NZ*, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Camb.*  
2002 Jack Vowles, MA PhD *Br.Col.*

**Associate Professors**

- 1972 J. Stephen Hoadley, BSc *Purdue*, MA *Calif. State*, PhD *Calif.*  
 2002 Michael Mintrom, MA *Cant.*, MA PhD *NY State*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1979 Joseph B. Atkinson, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Yale*  
 1994 Rouben M. Azizian, MA *Moscow Institute of International Relations*, PhD *Diplomatic Academy Moscow*  
 1997 Paul G. Buchanan, BA *St Michael's*, MA *Georgetown*, PhD *Chic.*  
 1990 Helena D. Catt, MA *Edin.*, PhD *Lond.*  
 1984 Raymond K. Miller, BA *McM.*, MA, PhD, DipEd  
 1997 Timothy G. T. Tenbense, BA(Hons) PhD *ANU*  
 2002 Jacqui True, MA *Ariz.*, PhD *York(Can.)*

**Lecturers**

- 2002 Geoffrey Kemp, MA MPhil PhD *Camb.*  
 2004 Katherine Smits, BA(Hons) BJur *W.Aust.*, MPhil *Camb.*, PhD *Cornell*  
 1999 Jian Yang, BA *Luoyang*, MA *Henan*, MA PhD *ANU*

**Visiting Lecturer**

- 1997 Alan R. Cocker, MA, PhD

**Honorary Research Fellows**

- Graham W. A. Bush, MA *NZ*, PhD *Brist.*, DipEd  
 Elizabeth Rata, MA PhD DipEd *Massey*, DipTchg

**SOCIOLOGY****Head of Department**

- Peter B. Davis, BA *S'ton*, MSc *Lond.*, PhD

**Professors**

- 1998 Maureen Baker, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Alta.*  
 1982 Ian R. Carter, BSc *Bath*, MA *Essex*, PhD *Aberd.*  
 2004 Peter B. Davis, BA *S'ton*, MSc *Lond.*, PhD (jointly with *School of Population Health*)

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1972 David R. Bedgood, MA *Cant.*, DPhil *Waik.*  
 1986 Claudia Bell, BA *Massey*, MA, PhD  
 2000 David Craig, MA PhD *ANU*  
 1998 Bruce Curtis, BCom BA PhD *Cant.*, DipTchg  
 2000 Vivienne Elizabeth, BA PhD *Cant.*  
 1997 Wendy Lerner, BSocSci *Waik.*, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Car.*  
 1999 Tracey McIntosh, MA, PhD  
 1980-82, 1984 Lane Catherine West-Newman, MA *Lond. & Auck.*, PhD

**Lecturers**

- 2000 Steve Matthewman, MA, PhD  
 2004 Tamasailau Sua'il'i-Sauni, LLB MA

**Research Fellows**

- 2004 Roy Lay-Yee, MA (jointly with *School of Population Health*)  
 2003 Stephen McTaggart, MA (jointly with *Statistics*)  
 2002 Andrew Sporle, MA *Massey*, PGDipPH *Otago* (jointly with *Statistics*)

**Honorary Research Fellows**

- Kitsiri Malalgoda, BA *Ceylon*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 David Tippin, MSc *LSE*, BA PhD *Tor.*

**Faculty of Business and Economics****Dean**

- Barry H. Spicer, BCom *Qld.*, PhD *Wash.*

**Deputy Dean**

- Michael Powell, PhD *Chic.*, MA

**Associate Dean (Undergraduate Programmes)**

- Susan S. Laursen, MCom, MA

**Associate Dean (Postgraduate and Research)**

- Michael Myers, MA, PhD

**Associate Dean (Development)**

- Geoffrey Lorigan, MSc *Lond.Bus.*, PhD *Cal.Coast*, MBA

**Associate Dean (Maori and Pacific)**

- Manuka A. Henare, BA PhD *Well.*

**Assistant Deans**

- Kathryn Caird, BSc *Otago*, BCom  
 Philip A. Cook, BA, LLB, MPhil  
 Meryle Hawkins, MA  
 Biljana Juric, MS *Northwestern*, MS PhD  
 Gabrielle Peko, MCom

**Head, Graduate School of Enterprise**

- Professor Wendell E. Dunn III, BA *Johns H.*, MBA *S.Calif.*, PhD *Mich.*

**Deputy Head, Graduate School of Enterprise**

- Lawrence Johnstone BA *Strath.*, MBA *Manc.*, MCT(UK)

**Director, Bachelor of Business & Information Management (BBIM)**

- Douglas G. Carrie, BCom *Br.Col.*, MBA *Thunderbird*, PhD *Lond.*

**Foundation Chair in Entrepreneurship**

- Professor Wendell E. Dunn III, BA *Johns H.*, MBA *S.Calif.*, PhD *Mich.*

**Emeritus Professor**

- Alastair MacCormick, MA PhD *Yale*, BSc, MCom

**ACCOUNTING AND FINANCE****Head of Department**

- Jilnaught Wong, MCom, PhD, CA

**Departmental Administrator**

- Herena Newall, GradDipBus(Admin)

**Professors**

- 2004 Steven Cahan, BA *Vanderbilt*, MBA *Kansas*, PhD *Colorado*, ACA  
 1968-71, 1975 David M. Emanuel, MCom, PhD, FCA  
 1989 Barry H. Spicer, BCom *Qld.*, PhD *Wash.*  
 1981-88, 1992 Jilnaught Wong, MCom, PhD, CA

**Professors of Finance**

- 1987 R. G. Bowman, BA *Pomona*, MS *San Diego State*, PhD *Stan.*, CPA *Calif.*  
 2004 Janice How, BCom(Hons) PhD *UWA*

**Associate Professor**

- 1993 Farshid Navissi, BA *Teheran*, MCom *OSU*, PhD

**Research Professors of Accounting**

- 1999 Dan Dhaliwal, MS, MA, PhD *Ariz.*  
 1999 W. Robert Knechel, BS, PhD *N. Carolina*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1989 Lloyd M. M. Austin, MCom, CA

**ECONOMICS****Head of Department**

...

**Departmental Administrator**

Trish Marsters, GradDipBus

**Alumnus Distinguished Professor**

1992 Peter C. B. Phillips, HonMA Yale, PhD Lond., MA

**Professors**

1992 Tim Hazledine, MA Cant. &amp; Otago, PhD Warw.

1996 Bryce Hool, BSc(Hons) MCom Cant., PhD UC Berk.

**Associate Professors**

1983 Anthony M. Endres, MSocSc Waik., PhD W'gong.

1997 John Hillas, BA BEcon(Hons) Qld., PhD Stan.

1999 Ian P. King, BA(Hons) C'dia., MA PhD Qu.

1984 Sholeh A. Maani, MS PhD Ill.

1991 Tim Maloney, BA MS PhD Wis.

1979 Robert D. J. Scollay, MA Camb. &amp; Well., BCom

1990 Basil M. H. Sharp, BAgCom Cant., MS PhD Wis., DipAg DipVFM Lincoln

**Senior Lecturers**

1997 Reiko Aoki, BS Tokyo, MA Tsukuba, MS PhD Stan.

1993 Debasis Bandyopadhyay, BSc(Hons) Calc., MA Flor., PhD Minn.

1999 Kathrin M. Boardman, BSc MCom Cant.

2003 Ananish Chaudhuri, BSc(Hons) Calc., MA J. Nehru U., MA PhD Rutgers

1988 Mia Mikic, MS St.M., BS PhD Zagreb

1986 Alan J. Rogers, AM PhD Prin., MA

2002 Matthew J. Ryan, BA BCA(Hons) Well., MA PhD Yale

1994 John P. Small, BSc BA(Hons) PhD Cant.

1981 Susan M. St John, BSc, MA, PhD

2000 Donggyu Sul, BS Korea, PhD Ohio State

**Lecturers**

2004 Tatyana Chesnokova, DiplApplMaths Moscow State, MA New Economics School, Moscow, PhD Penn. State

2003 Horag Choi, MA Chung-Ang, MA PhD Ohio State

2002 Begoña Dominguez Manzano, BA Salamanca, MEA PhD Universidad Autonoma de Barcelona

2002 Heiko A. Gerlach, MP ME PhD Mannheim &amp; Toulouse

2004 Dmitriy Kvasov, Diploma Experimental &amp; Theoretical Physics Moscow State Engineering Physics Institute, MA New Economics School, Moscow, PhD Penn. State

2004 Erwann Sbai, BSc Marne-la-Vallee, MEcon PhD Toulouse

2002 Rhema Vaithianathan, MCom, PhD

**Senior Tutor**

1991 Michael D. G. Anstis, BA

**GRADUATE SCHOOL OF ENTERPRISE****Head, Graduate School of Enterprise**

Professor Wendell E. Dunn III, BA Johns H., MBA S.Calif., PhD Mich.

- 1995 Graeme C. Camp, MCom, PhD  
 2000 Joe Cheung, BA, MSc Missouri  
 1987 Cheryl Cliffe, BA, MCom Cant, PhD, CA  
 2000 David Hay, BCom Otago, MCM Lincoln(NZ) PhD, CA  
 1984 Michael G. Keenan, PhD St. And., BCom, MA, DipVal  
 1988 William A. A. Maguire, BCom Natal, CA MBL S.Af., PhD Cape Town  
 1991 Alastair D. E. Marsden, MCom, PhD, CA  
 2002 Russell Poskitt, BSc(Hons), MCom Cant., PhD  
 1987 A. P. B. Rouse, MCom, PhD, CA  
 1985 Alan M. Teixeira, MCom, PhD, CA  
 2003 Madhu Veeraraghavan, BCom, MBA, PhD  
 2004 Peter Verhoeven, BSc(Hons) PhD UWA  
 1996 Robert L. Wilton, BCom NSW, MCom, CA  
 1992 Norman Wong, MCom, PhD  
 2002 Shlomi Zilca, MA PhD Tel Aviv

**Lecturers**

- 2000 Chris Akroyd, MCom NSW, MCom Kobe  
 1997 Jennifer McCartney, BSc, MCom  
 2000 Winnie O'Grady, MCom  
 2001 Glenn Rechtschaffen, MA Virg.Poly, JD UCLA  
 1984 Derek M. Speer, MCom, CA  
 2000 V. G. (Sridar) Sridharan, BCom, ACA, AICWA, Lic.CS India

**Senior Tutors**

- 1979 Kathryn Caird, BSc Otago, BCom  
 1989 Anne R. Davy, MCom, CA, ACIS  
 2004 Johan J. Grobbelaar, HonsBCom NTSD (Commerce) S.Af.  
 2002 Caroline Wilberfoss, BSc Leic.

**COMMERCIAL LAW****Head of Department**

Michael Gedye, BCom, LLB, MComLaw

**Departmental Administrator**

Vonne Carmichael, BA, DipArtsAdmin

**Professor**

1971 Ian G. Eagles, BA LLB Qld., LLM PhD Camb.

**Associate Professor**

1991 Michael Gedye, BCom, LLB, MComLaw

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1985 M. Louise Longdin, BA, LLB, MJur  
 2000 Alexandra Sims, LLB Otago, MComLaw  
 1987 Kerrin Vautier, CMG, BA Well.  
 1991 Susan M. Watson, LLB, MJur

**Lecturers**

- 2003 Michael Josling, BCom, LLB, MComLaw  
 1995 Mark R. Keating, LLM Cornell, LLB, MTaxS  
 2003 Leigh Miller BA, LLM, MPhil  
 1999 Christopher Noonan, LLB

**Senior Tutors**

- 1995 Philip Cook, BA LLB MPhil  
 1999 Christopher Cornwell, LLB, MComLaw  
 2002 Bruna Jackson-Hope, LLB Marilla, LLM Sao Paulo, MComLaw  
 1992 Madeleine McFadden, LLB  
 1992 R. Marnie Prasad, LLB  
 1990 Barbara Rainsford, BA, LLB, MComLaw  
 2000 Audrey Sharp, MA, MTaxS  
 1995 Paul Shenkin, LLM Lond.  
 2002 Chris Spells, BSc MA Lond.  
 2001 Alan Toy, LLM

**Deputy Head, Graduate School of Enterprise**

Lawrence Johnstone BA *Strath.*, MBA *Manc.*,  
MCT(UK)

**Director, Executive Development**

Michael C. Groves, MA *Otago*, MPhil

**Director, Graduate Programmes**

Garry Clayton, MA DPhil DipTchg *Waik.*, PGDipPP  
*Well.*

**Director, Master of Business Administration Programme**

Geoffrey Lorigan, MSc *Lond.Bus.*, PhD *Cal. Coast*,  
MBA

### INFORMATION SYSTEMS AND OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

**City Campus****Head of Department**

Ananth Srinivasan BS *Madr.*, MBA *Illinois State*,  
PhD *Pitt.*

**Departmental Administrator**

Gabrielle Murphy, BA

**Professors**

1989 Michael Myers, MA, PhD  
1992 Ananth Srinivasan, BEng *Madr.*, MBA *Illinois State*, PhD *Pitt.*

**Associate Professors**

2001 Tiru Arthanari, MStat DipOR PhD *I.Stat.I.*  
*Cal.*  
1986 Lech J. Janczewski, MAsc *Tor.*, DEng  
*Warsaw*  
2000 Anthony C. Norris, MSc *Hull*, PhD *DIC*  
*Imperial FRSC*, CChem, FIMA, CMath, CSci  
1993 Victor M. Portougal, MSc *Gorky*, PhD *USSR*  
*Acad. Sciences, Moscow*, DEcon *Ukrainian*  
*Acad. Sciences, Kiev*  
1994 David J. Robb, MBA PhD *Calg.*, BE  
1996 Jayaram K. Sankaran, BTech *IIT Madr.*, MS  
*Iowa*, PhD *Chic.*  
1995 Donald Sheridan, BA *MEd Sask.*, PhD *Alta*.  
1996 Dan Trietsch, BSME *Technion, Haifa*, MBA  
PhD *Tel Aviv*

**Senior Lecturers**

2004 Fernando Beltran, BE *Universidad de los*  
*Andes, Bogota*, MS PhD *SUNY, Stony Brook*  
1996 Lesley A. Gardner, MSc PhD *LSE*  
2001 Marcia de Pavia Bastos Gottgroy, MSc DSc  
*Fed. U. Rio de Janeiro*  
1995 Jairo Gutierrez, BE *Universidad de los*  
*Andes, Bogota*, MS *Texas A&M*, PhD  
1991 John Paynter, BCom, MSc  
1982 James Sheffield, MBA *Wis. PhD Ariz.*, MSc  
1996 David M. Sundaram, BE PGDipE *Madr.*, PhD  
2001 Cathy Urquhart, PhD *Tas.*,  
AdvDipCompStuds *HND H-W*  
2004 Elke Wolf, MSc *Cologne*

**Lecturers**

2000 Gay Costain, BSc, MPhil  
1996 William English, BA *Wash.*, MMSc *Waik.*  
1992 David Gardiner, BSc *Cant.*, DipBIA  
2004 Jiunn C. Lee, BSc, MCom, PhD  
2001 Qiang Lu, ME *Tsinghua*, MBA *Hull*, PhD  
1999 Leith Oliver, MBA, MPhil  
1998 Gabrielle Peko, MCom  
2001 Koro Tawa, BCom

2002 Daryl Webb, MSc, MBA  
1989 David White, BE *Cant.*

**Senior Tutors**

1985 Moeroa Butland, BCom, GDipArts  
2001 Josephine Lee, BSc *NSW*, MCom PGDipCom  
2001 Angela Liew, BSc MCom DipCom PGDipCom  
1999 Amitha Peiris, BSc *Sur.*, MPhil  
2004 Nour Sabri, BSc PGDipCom  
2002 Doug Taylor, MCom

**Emeritus Professor**

Justo A. Diaz, BSc *Ott.*, PhD *U.C. Berk.*

**Visiting Professor**

1991 Brent Gallupe, BMath *Wat.*, MBA *Tor.*, PhD  
*Minn.*, ISP, CMA, FLMI

**Honorary Senior Lecturer**

Susan Byrne, BSc *Well.*, PhD *Lond.*

### INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

**Head of Department**

Doren D. Chadee, BA MSc PhD *Manit.*

**Master of International Business Programme****Director**

Stephen Rawlinson, BEd *Nott.*, MEd *Qu.*, MA *Webster*

**Departmental Administrator**

Marianne Hill

**MIB Programme Administrator**

Barbara Bradbury

**Placement Coordinator**

Bridget Egan, BA, MIntBus

**Professor**

1986 R. Wayne Cartwright, MAgSc *Massey*,  
PhD *Purdue*

**Associate Professor**

1993 Doren D. Chadee, BA MSc PhD *Manit.*

**Senior Lecturers**

2003 Siah Hwee Ang, BBA(Hons), PhD *NU*  
*Singapore*  
1994 Heather Wilson, BA(Hons) PhD *H-W*

**Lecturers**

1994 Maureen Benson-Rea, BA(Hons) *Lanc.*,  
MBA *Brun.*  
1992 Brent Burmester, MCom, LLB  
1994 Mark Domney, BA, MBA, MCom  
2002 Stephen Rawlinson, BEd *Nott.*, MEd *Qu.*,  
MA *Webster*  
1998 Christina Stringer, MSc *Brigham Young*, PhD  
2004 Rizwan Tahir, BCom *Punjab (Lahore,*  
*Pakistan)*, MBA *Asian Inst. Technol.*, Lic.Sc.,  
PhD *Univ of Vaasa, Finland*

### MANAGEMENT AND EMPLOYMENT RELATIONS

**Head of Department**

Peter F. Boxall, PhD *Monash*, MCom

**Departmental Administrator**

Judy Bonny, DipTchg

**Professors**

1987 Peter F. Boxall, PhD *Monash*, MCom  
1988 Nigel A. F. Haworth BA BPhil PhD *Liv.*

**Professor of Health Management**

1988 Michael Powell, PhD *Chic.*, MA

**Adjunct Professor of Psychometrics and Performance Measurement**2003 Paul T. Barrett, BSc(Hons) PhD *Exeter***Associate Professors**

1992 Catherine J. Casey, MA *Waik.*, PhD *Roch.*  
 2000 Suchi Mouly, MA PhD *IISc.*  
 1991 Marie G. Wilson, MS *Fla. St.*, JD PhD *Ariz.*

**Senior Lecturers**

1996 Manuka A. Henare, BA PhD *Well.*  
 1992 Darl G. Kolb, MA *Colorado*, PhD *Cornell.*  
 1990 Felicity Lamm, PhD *NSW*, BA MPhil  
 2002 William Low, MA *Br.Col.*, PhD *Lond.*  
 1996 Ross A. McDonald, BSc *Stir.*, MA PhD *Nebraska*  
 1973 Judith C. I. McMorland, BA *Leeds*, MA  
 DipEd *Massey*, DipYthWk *Manc.*, PhD  
 2004 Marc Orlitzky, BS *BA American*, PhD *Iowa*  
 1999 Polly Parker, DipPE *Otago*, MPhil, PhD  
 1990 Judith Pringle, BSc PhD *Otago*  
 1993 Erling J. Rasmussen, Cand Mag *Odense*,  
 PhD *EUI Florence*  
 1999 Deborah M. Shepherd, BA *Otago*, MA, PhD

**Lecturers**

2000 Brigid J. Carroll, MBA *Fordham*, MA, PhD  
 1999 Liliانا Erakovic, MSc *Zagreb*, PhD  
 2001 Ian C. Hunter, MCom  
 1998 Peter Smith, MBA  
 2000 Rachel M. Wolgramm, MCom  
 2000 Christine R. Woods, MA, PhD

**Senior Tutors**

2001 Joseph M. Beer, MCom  
 1999 Meryle Hawkins, MA

**Emeritus Professor**John S. Deeks, MA *Camb.*, DipPM *LSE***MARKETING****Head of Department**Peter J. Danaher, MS *Purdue*, PhD *Flor. State*, BSc(Hons)**Department Administrator**

Cathy Lan, GradDipBus

**Professors**

1988 Roderick, J. Brodie, BSc PhD *Cant.*, MA  
*Otago*  
 2002 Nicole E. Coviello, BCom(Hons) MSc *Sask.*,  
 PhD  
 1993 Peter J. Danaher, MS *Purdue*, PhD *Flor.*  
*State*, BSc(Hons)

**Associate Professors**

1988 Richard Brookes, BCA *Well.*, MSc *Lond.*  
 2004 David Griffith, BS *Southeastern Oklahoma*  
*State*, MBA *Oklahoma*, PhD *Texas*  
 1998 Brett Martin, PhD *Otago*, MCom

**Senior Lecturers**

2000 Tom Agee, BA *Virginia*, MPhil  
 1995 Margo Buchanan-Oliver, MA, PhD  
 1999 Denise Conroy, MSc, PhD  
 2001 Karen Fernandez, BCom *Melb.*, MBA  
*Pittsburg State*, PhD *Kansas*  
 2003 Sara Jaeger, MSc *Denmark TU & Strathclyde*,  
 PhD *Reading*  
 2001 Biljana Juric, MS *Northwestern*, MS PhD  
*Sarajevo*  
 1990 Christina Lee, MCom, PhD

1993 Andrew Parsons, MCom PhD  
 1995 Richard Starr, BA *Roch.*, MBA *Col.*  
 1997 Ann Stewart, MBA, MSc, PhD

**Lecturers**

2002 Paul Ballantine, MCom PhD *Cant.*  
 2002 Greg Brush, MCM *Lincoln (NZ)*, PhD *W.Aust.*  
 1993 Victoria J. Little, BCom MBA *Otago*

**PROPERTY****Head of Department**Laurence Murphy, BA PhD *Dublin***Departmental Administrator**Myriam Benito, BSc *St Louis*, MM *Philippines***Professor**

...

**Senior Lecturers**

2003 Fred A. Forgey, BBA *Texas - Arlington*, MBA  
*North Texas*, PhD *Texas Tech U.*  
 1986 Deborah S. Levy, BLE *Aberd.*, MPA, MRICS,  
 FPI(NZ)

**TAMAKI DIVISION****Head of Division**Kambiz E. Maani, MSc *Teheran*, MS PhD *Ill.***Director, Bachelor of Business and Information Management (BBIM)**Douglas G. Carrie, BCom *Br.Col.*, MBA  
*Thunderbird*, PhD *Lond.***Coordinator, Bachelor of Business and Information Management (BBIM)**Alison Mayson, BCom, MBS *Massey***Divisional Administrator**

Noeline Sheldon

**Associate Professors**

2001 Stephen Chu, BAppSc *La Trobe*, MB *RMIT*,  
 PhD *Monash*, FACS  
 2002 Shantha Liyanage, BSc *Colombo*, PhD *W'gong*  
 1984 Kambiz E. Maani, MSc *Teheran*, MS PhD *Ill.*

**Senior Lecturers**

1995 Douglas G. Carrie, BCom *Br.Col.*, MBA  
*Thunderbird*, PhD *Lond.*  
 2002 Robert Davis, MPhil, PhD  
 1992 Desmond J. A. Heath, BSc *Rhodes*, MBA  
*Pret.*, HonsBCompt *S.Af.*, CA

**Lecturers**

2001 Peter Haynes, BCom, MPhil  
 2001 Julie Harrison, MCom, MTaxS, CA  
 2003 Trevor Morrison, BE *Cant.*, MA *Colorado*  
*Christian University*  
 2002 Karin Olesen, GradDipTchg *Auck.UT*, MCom

**Senior Tutors**

2002 Deborah Alexander, BCom(Hons)  
 GradDipCom *Natal*  
 2002 Maria Avdjieva, ME *Sofia*, MEMgt  
 2003 Steven Barnett, BSc, MEd, DipTchg  
 2002 Lisa Callagher, MCom  
 2001 Johnny Chan, BCom(Hons), BSc  
 2002 Christine Clarke, BCom, CA  
 2002 Andrew Eberhard, BCom DipCom PGDipCom  
 1991 Lynne Lindberg, MA, DipEd, DipTchg

**UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMMES****Associate Dean (Undergraduate Programmes)**

1987 Susan S. Laurenson, MCom, MA

**Faculty of Creative Arts and Industries****Dean**Sharman Pretty, BMus(Hons) *Adel.*, Reifeprüfung  
*Freiburg-im-Breisgau***Associate Dean Teaching and Learning**Nuala Gregory, BAFA PGDipFA *Ulster*, MFA**Faculty Manager**Prue Castleden, BSc *NE*, DipEd *C.Sturt*,  
GradDipLabRelationsLaw *Syd.***Senior Lecturers**2002 Timothy Gordon, ARAD, Dip.Dance,  
Prof.Dip.SVLAT-STAT-Alexander Technique  
2003 Marianne Schultz, BAPA *Middx.*  
1997 Tara Werner, BA BMus *Well.*, DipBus**ARCHITECTURE****Head of School**Errol J. Haarhoff, BArch PhD *Natal*, MSc *H-W*,  
SAIA, NZIA**School Manager**Martine Davis, BTEC, NatDiplBusFin *Mid Kent Coll.***Professors**1979 John G. Hunt, BArch *NZ*, PhD, FNZIA  
1996 Brenda A. Vale, MA DipArch *Camb.*, PhD  
*Sheff.***Associate Professors**1979 Clinton A. Bird, MA DipUD *Oxf.Brookes*,  
BArch, Colleague NZIA  
2003 Robert J. D. Vale, MA DipArch *Camb.*, PhD  
*Nott.*  
1979 Hayden B. Willey, MA PhD *Camb.*, BArch,  
MSc, MIES (Aust&NZ)**Adjunct Professors**2003 Philip Cheshire, BA *Cant.*, BArch, FNZIA  
2003 Rewi Thompson, BArch, ANZIA, AERB**Senior Lecturers**1994 Diane J. Brand, MAUD *Harv.*, PhD, RAIA,  
ANZIA  
2004 Deidre Brown, MArch, PhD  
1995 John B. Chapman, BE, DipEd, MIPENZ  
1974 George Dodd, BSc *R'dg.*, MSc PhD DipAud  
*S'ton*  
2003 Grant Harris, BArch, ANZIA  
1981 Ross Jenner, BA(Hons) *Otago*, MSc *U. of*  
*Penn.*, BArch  
1979 Michael P. T. Linzey, BE *Cant.*, PhD *Melb.*, ME  
1995 Jules C. Moloney, BArch MA *Westminster*  
1993 Koung Nyunt, BArch *Rangoon*, ME DEng  
*Kyoto*  
2003 Graham F. Strez, DipArch, DipUrbVal,  
FNZIA, RIBA  
1993 Brian Taggart, DipArch *Liv.*, ANZIA  
2004 Rosangela Tenorio, BArch *Brazil*, PhD *Qld.*,  
RegArch (Br)  
1991 Garrick M. Tonks, BArch, PhD, ANZIA  
1981 Sarah Treadwell, BArch, PhD  
1995 Charles Walker, BArch PGDipArch *H-W*, MSc  
*Strath.*, ARIAS**Lecturers**1992 P. Michael Milojevic, BArch *Tor.*, MArch *Ill.*  
2002 Nalanie Mithraratne, BSc *S.Lanka*, MA  
DipArch *Sheff.*, PhD, RIBA, AIA (SL)**Senior Tutor**

1998 Judy Cockeram, BArch

**Research Fellow**2003 Kumar Mithraratne, BSc(Eng) *S.Lanka*, MSc  
*Lond.*, PhD *NUS***FINE ARTS****Head of School**

Derrick Cherrie, MFA

**School Manager**Gita Prasad, BA PGDipBA MBA *Fiji***Professors**1979 Michael R. Dunn, MA *Melb.*, DipFA *Cant.*,  
*Auck.*, PhD  
1989 Carole M. Shephard, MPhil DipFA, DipTchg**Senior Lecturers**1997 Derrick Cherrie, MFA  
1980 Bret G. de Thier, DipFA *Cant.*, MDINZ  
1990 John Fairclough, MA *Middx. P.*, Dip AD  
PGDipAT *Liv.*  
1995 Rodney Fumpston, ASP *Lond.*, MFA  
1997 Brett D. Graham, MFA *Hawaii*  
1997 Nuala Gregory, BAFA PGDipFA *Ulster*, MFA  
2002 Robyn Hughes, MFA  
1985 Megan L. Jenkinson, BFA  
2003 Sean Kerr, MFA  
1994 John Nicol, MA, DipFA  
1998 Michael Parekowhai, BFA, DipTchg  
1994 Peter Shand, MA LLM *Lond.*, PhD  
2002 Allan Smith BFA, MA, DipTchg  
1994 Julainne Sumich, BA, MPhilFA, DipTchg  
1971 John B. Turner  
1980 Denys C. Watkins, DipFA *RCA Lond.***Lecturers**2002 Lisa Crowley, MFA  
2001 Luise Fong, BFA  
2003 Peter Gibson Smith, BFA  
2002 Gail Haffern, DFA  
1997 Judy Millar, MFA  
2002 Merylyn Tweedie, MFA, DipFA, DipTchg  
1999 Haru Sameshima, MFA  
2002 Tara Winters, MFA**MUSIC****Head of School**Eric Hollis, MA *City(UK)*, FGSM, ARCM**Deputy Head of School**G. Warren J. Drake, BA *NZ*, PhD *Ill.*, MA**School Manager**

...

**Professor**1983 Heath Lees, BMus MA *Glas.*, FTCL, HonFTCL**Associate Professors**1977 G. Warren J. Drake, BA *NZ*, PhD *Ill.*, MA  
1984 John A. Elmsly, BMus BSc *Well.*, 1<sup>st</sup> Prix  
(Comp) *Brussels*, LTCL  
1990 Uwe A. Grodd, MMus *Mainz*  
1991 Karen Grylls, ONZM, BA *Otago*, MM PhD  
*Wash.*, MMus, LRSM, LTCL  
1983 Tamas Vesmas

**Senior Lecturers**

- 2000 Glenese Blake  
 1995 Eve K. de Castro-Robinson, DMus  
 2001 Larry Elliot  
 1999 David Lines, BMus *Well.*, MEd PhD *Massey*,  
 DipTchg  
 1980 Fiona E. C. McAlpine, MA *Well.*, DèS *L Paris*  
 1974 David Nalden, BA NZ, 1er Prix (Violin) 1<sup>er</sup> Prix  
 (Musique de Chambre) *Brussels*  
 2003 Ron Samsom, MMus *McGill*  
 2000 James Tibbles, MMus

**Lecturers**

- 1999 Christopher Naughton, LRAM, GBSM,  
 DipMusEd, MA York  
 2002 Stephen Small, MA *Otago*, AGSM *London*,  
 ATCL

**Senior Tutor**

- 2003 Stephen Matthews, BMus, ATCL

**PLANNING****Head of Department**

...

**Departmental Manager**

- Frances Fernandez, BA *Bombay*

**Professor**

- 2000 Jennifer E. Dixon, MSc *Cant.*, DPhil *Waik.*,  
 MNZPI

**Associate Professor**

- 1993 Thomas W. Fookes, MA *Cant.*, DPhil *Waik.*,  
 DipTP, MNZPI  
 1965 Michael H. Pritchard, BSc *Wales*, DipTP,  
 MNZPI

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1987 Patricia M. Austin, BSc *Sus.*, BPhil  
*Newcastle(UK)*  
 1994 R. J. Michael Gunder, MA *Br.Col.*, PhD,  
 MCIP, MNZPI, MPlA  
 1994 Bruce Hucker, BD *Otago*, PhD *Princeton*  
*Theological Seminary*, MA  
 1995 Prudence Taylor, LLM *Well.*, LLM *Tulane*  
 1995 Majorie van Roon, MSc, MRSNZ

**Lecturers**

- 2000 Hugh Lusk, BHortSci *Massey*, DipLA  
*Lincoln(NZ)*, ANZILA  
 1999 Craig Whitehead, BSc(Hons) *E.Anglia*, FRGS

**Senior Tutors**

- 1997 Elizabeth Aitken Rose, BA *Well.*, MTP, MNZPI  
 2002 Emilia Kabzamalova, DipArch *Sofia*,  
 MPlanPrac  
 1998 Colleen H. Prendergast, BTP

**Faculty of Education****Dean**

- John Langley, MEd PhD *Cant.*, AdvDipTchg  
 DipTchg(End.) *CCE*

**Executive Assistant to the Dean**

- Lisa Martens, BA

**Academic Services**

- Stuart Windross, MA DipTchg

**Corporate Services**

- Bruce Carlsson, GradDipProfAcc, CA

**Information Services**

- Anne Buzeika, MEd GradDipBus DipMathEd

**International Relations**

- Sue Jury, GradDipBus AdvDipTchg DipTchg

**Contract Management Services**

- Sandie Gusscott, DipSciEd

**Educational Design and Development**

- Alan Cutting, BE *Cant.*, DipTchg *CCE*

**Applied Social Sciences****Head**

- Liz Beddoe, MA (Applied) Social Work *Well.*, BA,  
 MANZASW

*Centre for Social Work***Programme Leaders**

- Sue Foster, BA *Cant.*, MSW *Massey*, DipSW  
 DipTchg DipSocWk *Well.*, MANZASW  
 Hanuere Tofi, BSW(Hons) PGDipBusAdmin *Massey*

**Senior Lecturers**

- Judith Ackroyd, BA *Cant.*, MA *Well.*, MANZASW  
 Allyson Davys, BSocStud *Syd.*, MSW *Massey*,  
 MANZASW

Kim Elliott, MA

Sue Hanna, MA *Well.*, DipTESSOL, MANZASWPhil Harington, MSocSci *Waik.*Milton Kayes, MSW *Qld.*, DipSocSci *Well.*,DipTertEd *NE*, BA**Lecturers**

- Allen Bartley, BA(Hons) PhD *Massey*  
 Shirley Ann Chinnery, MSW *Massey*  
 Vicki Hirst, MCom  
 James Papali'i, PGDipSocPol *Massey*, BA  
 Vaiolesi Passells, BSW(Hons) *Massey*, MANZASW  
 Adrienne Taungapeau, MA *Well.*  
 Fa'amalua Tipi BEd *ACE*, DipTchg *Massey*

*Centre for Special Education***Head**

- Dennis Rose, BA *Otago*, PhD *Cant.*, PGDipArts  
*Otago*, AdvDipTchg DipEdPsych

**Principal Lecturer**

- Debbie Espiner, MA HDipTchg DipEHC *ACE*

**Senior Lecturers**

- Maureen Corby, MHSAdvKTchg *CCE*, DipEHC  
*ACE*  
 Nan Gardner, DipEd DipTOD AdvDipTchg  
 AdvDipEd *ACE*, MA  
 Margaret McLean, AdvDipTchg DipEHC DipESVI  
*ACE*, MA  
 Kathy Martindale, BSocSci *ACE*, MSocSci *Waik.*  
 Julie Senescall, BA *Massey*, MEd  
 Rod Wills, BSocSci *ACE*, MA *Massey*,  
 DipAppSocStud TCollDip *ACE*

**Lecturers**

- Tina Kennewell, BTchLn AdvDipTchg DipSTN *ACE*  
 Theresa Phelan, BSocSci *ACE*  
 Sue Spooner, BEd *Massey*, DipESVI *ACE*

*Performance Improvement Centre (PIC)***Director**

- Tom Short *Hudd.*, MA DipMgt *UK*

**Education and Business Development****General Manager**

- Nicola Jamieson, BA MBA DipBus HDipTchg

*TEAM Solutions Northland***Manager**

- Norman Pratt, BA(Hons) DipTchg *Well.*

*TEAM Solutions Auckland***Managers**

Gayle McIlraith, AdvDipTchg ACE  
 Karl Mutch, DipTchg ACE, MA  
 Martin Turner, AdvDipTchg Massey  
 Barbara Wilson, BTLn CCE, AdvDipTchg ACE

*National Reading Recovery***Head of Centre**

Christine Boocock, DipEd Massey, DipTchg PNTC,  
 MA

**Pasifika****General Manager**

Airini, BA MEd Cant. MBA Massey PhD Br.Col.,  
 DipTchg CCE

**Pasifika Student Services**

Pale Sauni, DipSW ACE

*Centre for Pacific Islands Early Childhood Education  
(PIECE)***Director**

Afamasaga Telesia Alipia, MEd Massey  
 DipEdAdmin S.Pac.

**Programme Leader**

Jessie Fuamatu, BEd DipTchg ACE

**Senior Lecturers**

Lisa Fuemana-Foa'i, AdvDipEd DipFKA  
 GDipEd(Dance&Drama) ACE  
 Seiuli Luama Suani, PGDipEd ACE, BEd  
 Patisepa Tuafuti, MA Waik., DipTESSOL DipSTN  
 DipTchg AdvDipTchg ACE

**Lecturers**

Manutai Leapepe, BEd Massey DipTchg  
 NZTert.Coll., PIECCADip ACE  
 Vaitulu Pua, BEd DipTchg ACE  
 Luama Sauni, BEd PGDipEd  
 Susana Smith, DipTchg  
 Meripa Toso, BEd ACE, DipTchg

*Centre for Pasifika Education Studies (PES)***Programme Co-ordinator**

Tose Tuhipa

**Senior Lecturer**

Taonefoou Falesima, BEd Massey DipTchg

**Lecturer**

Tanya Wendt-Samu, DipTchg ACE, BA MEd

**Postgraduate Studies and Research****Head**

...

**Principal Lecturers**

Vicki Compton BSc MEd PhD DipTchg  
 Helen Dixon, BEd MEdAdmin AdvDipTchg DipEHC  
 DipTchg  
 Eleanor Hawe, MEd PhD DipTchg  
 Elizabeth Rata, BA MEd PhD DipEd DipTchg  
 Margaret Turnbull, PhD Curtin, MEd, FTCL

**Lecturer**

Avril Thesing, DipTchg DipTchg(ECE) ACE, MA

*Centre for Research Development***Director**

Joce Jesson, MA PhD DipGuid DipHSc DipTchg

*Centre for Professional Studies***Director**

Linda Selby, BA Massey, PhD Curtin, PGDipEd  
 Massey

**Senior Lecturers**

Lynn Chatfield, BEd MLibSc  
 Susan Gray, MA Well., BA DipELT DipTchg

**Lecturers**

Helen Hunter, BEd ACE, DipTL  
 Maree Jeurissen, BEd Waik., DipTESSOL  
 HDipTchg ACE  
 Margaret Kitchen, MA DipTchg DipELT DipKorean  
 Liz Probert, DipTL DipTchg ACE, BA  
 Robyn Vine, MEd AdvDipTchg DipIS DipTchg ACE  
 Brian Waddell, AdvDipTchg DipTL

**School of Education****Head of School**

Viviane M. J. Robinson, PhD Harv., MA

**Deputy Heads of School**

Graeme Aitken, MA, DipTchg  
 Richard Hamilton, MA PhD Chic.

**Programme Coordinator, Primary Teacher Education**

Christine Davis-Rubie, MEd PhD DipTchg

**Programme Coordinator, Secondary Teacher Education**

Ngairie Hoben, MEdAdmin, MA, DipTchg

**Professors**

1989 I. Roger Dale, BA Leeds, PhD Brist., PGCE  
 Lond.  
 1998 John A. Hattie, MA Otago, PhD Tor., DipEd  
 PGDipArts Otago, DipTchg  
 1976 Stuart S. McNaughton, MA, PhD  
 1990 Tom Nicholson, MA Syd., PhD Minn.  
 1976 Viviane M. J. Robinson, PhD Harv., MA  
 1988 Graham H. Smith, MA, PhD  
 1988 Linda T. Smith, MA, PhD  
 2003 Trish Stoddart, BA Leeds, Postgrad.Dipl.  
 Birm., PhD Berk.

**Associate Professors**

1987 Alison Jones, BSc Massey, MPhil, PhD  
 1995 Peter Roberts, MA DPhil Waik.  
 2003 Robin Small, BSc MA Cant., PhD ANU  
 1981 Michael A. R. Townsend, MA Cant., PhD Ill.

**Senior Lecturers**

1996 Graeme V. Aitken, MA, DipTchg  
 1995 John Benseman, MEd Massey, PhD UTS,  
 DipTchg  
 1991 Eve I. Coxon, MA PhD DipTchg  
 2002 Christine Davis-Rubie, MEd PhD DipTchg  
 1971 Johannes F. Everts, MA DipClinPsych Cant.,  
 PhD, DipEdPsych  
 1996 Richard Hamilton, MA PhD Chic.  
 2002 Ngairie Hoben, MEdAdmin MA DipTchg  
 1992 Margie K. Hohepa, MA, PhD  
 1991 Judith M. Parr, BSc PhD ANU, MA  
 2002 Maxine Stephenson, MA, PhD  
 1997 Helen S. Timperley, MA, PhD, DipEdPsych,  
 DipTchg

**Lecturers**

1990 Margaret N. Agee, MA PhD DipGuid  
 2003 Te Kawehau Hoskins, MA  
 2002 Louise J. Keown, MA PhD  
 2000 Jenny Lee, MA

2003 Pamela Millward, BEd, MEdMgt, Dip  
Information Studies

1997 Leonie Pihama, MA PhD

#### Senior Tutors

1998 Carolyn Barr, BSc MEd DipTchg

1998 Silvia Insley, PGDipSLT Massey, MA MEd  
DipTchg

#### Emeritus Professor

James D. Marshall, BA PhD *Brist.*

#### Honorary Research Fellow

Roger A. Peddie, MA Dipd'EtSup *Poiters*, PhD,  
DipTchg

#### Postdoctoral Research Fellows

Louisa Allen, MA, PhD *Camb.*

Elizabeth Peterson, MSc PhD *Edin.*

### Teacher Education

#### Head

Lexie Grudnoff, MA HDipTchg DipEd DipEHC  
DipMan *Henley*

#### Directors

Barbara Backshall, MEd *S.Aust.*, DipTchg DipScEd

Frances Langdon, BA *Massey*, MEd MEDStud  
*S.Aust.*

Gillian Ward, BSc MEdAdmin DipTchg

#### Programme Leaders

Wayne Smith, MEd *Deakin*, DipPE DipTchg

Ruth Williams, MA AdvDipTchg DipTchg DipEHC

#### Centre for the Arts

#### Head

Lola MacKinnon, BA *Massey*, MMed *S.Aust.*,  
HDipTchg *ACE*

#### Principal Lecturers

Jill Smith, MEd *S.Aust.*, DipTchg *ACE*, DipFA

Trevor Thwaites, DipTchg *ACE*, BMus MEd

#### Senior Lecturers

Elizabeth Anderson, BA *Cant.*, MEd DipEd *Massey*

Martyn Heath, MMus

Robert Hoerberigs, DipTchg *ACE*, BFA

Carole Johnston, MMed *S.Aust.*, AdvDipTchg  
DipVisualArts *ACE*

Robyn Trinick, BA *Massey*, AdvDipTchg *ACE*

#### Lecturers

Sally Kjestrup, DipFKA *Hamilton*

Helen Langford, MA *UCLA*, DipPE *Otago*, DipTchg  
*ACE*

#### Centre for Education

#### Head

Mary Hill, MEd PhD *Waik.*, DipTchg *WCE*

#### Principal Lecturers

Vicki Carpenter, MEd PhD DipTchg

#### Senior Lecturers

Jenny Harnett, MEd *Massey*, DipTchg

Heather Jenkins, BA MEd *Massey*, DipTchg

Lyn McDonald, BEd MEdAdmin *Massey*, DipTchg

Catherine Rawlinson, MA PhD DipTchg

Jean Rockel, MEd *Massey*, DipEd DipTchg

Sue Sutherland, BA DipTchg

Pat Tetley, BA MGuidCouns *Massey*, DipTchg

#### Lecturers

Gay Gallagher, BEd(Tchg) *ACE*

Lynda Garrett, BA *Otago*, DipTchg

Pare Manuel-Belz, DipTchg DipEdStudies

#### Centre for Health and Physical Education

#### Head

Margaret Sinkinson, BA *Massey*, MEd MEDStud  
*S.Aust.*, DipSpecEd HDipTchg

#### Principal Lecturers

Kevin Moran, BA(Hons) *Birm.*, MEd

Bruce Ross, MA *Iowa*, MSc *Br.Col.*, PhD DipPE  
DipTchg

#### Senior Lecturers

Anna Greenwood, BEd *Massey*, MEd *S.Aust.*

Dianne Hughes, MEd *S.Aust.*, DipEdStudies  
AdvDipTchg

Maureen Legge, MEd *Deakin*, DipPE DipEd  
DipTchg

Lesley Lyons, MEd *S.Aust.*, DipTchg HDipTchg  
DipEI

Rosalie Mitchell, DipPE DipTchg

Alan Ovens, MEd *Deakin*, PhD *Qld.*, DipPE  
DipTchg

Ros Sullivan, MEd MEDStud *S.Aust.*, BA DipTchg

Mike Truman, PGDipSportMgt

#### Lecturers

Margot Bowes, DipPE DipTchg

Bindy Chambers, BEd DipTchg

#### Centre for Language and Languages

#### Head

Libby Limbrick, DipTchg *ACE*, MA PhD

#### Principal Lecturers

Jill Holt, AdvDipTchg *ACE*, MA PhD

Judine Ladbroke, BA(Hons) DipEd PGDipSLT  
DipTchg *Massey*

#### Senior Lecturers

Margaret Aikman, DipTchg *Massey*, MEd

Pauline Buchanan, DipTchg *ACE*, MA

Trevor Dobbin, DipTchg *ACE*, MA

Marineke Goodwin, PGDipEd, AdvDipEd,  
DipTESSOL *ACE*, DipEdStudies

Nola Harvey, DipTchg *NSIT*, DipTchg(ECE) *ACE*,  
BA

Barbara Matthews, BA(Hons) *Massey*, MA *Waik.*,  
DipTchg *WCE*, DipSLT *Massey*

John McCaffery, BA(Hons), DipTESSOL *Well.*,  
DipTchg *WCE*

Wayne Mills, MEd *Waik.*, DipTchg *Massey*

Helen Villers, MEd DipEd DipTchg *Waik.*

#### Centre for Mathematics Education

#### Head

Gregor Lomas, MSc DipTchg

#### Principal Lecturers

Murray Britt, BSc

Peter Hughes, MSc DipTchg

#### Senior Lecturers

Peter Nicholas, BA DipTchg

Brian Storey, BA DipTchg

Margaret Thomson, MEdAdmin DipTchg  
DipMathEd

#### Lecturers

Shiree Babbington, BEd(Tchg) DipTchg DipMathEd

Gillian Frankcom-Burgess, BA(Hons)

Pamela Perger, DipMathEd

#### Centre for Practicum

#### Head

Mavis Haigh, PhD *Waik.*, BA BSc DipTchg

**Principal Lecturers**

Jenni Jongejan, DipPE *Otago*, DipTchg  
Heather Pinder, BTchLn *CCE*, HDipTchg

**Senior Lecturer**

Helen Hedges, BA(Hons) *Well.*, MEd *Massey*,  
DipTchg

*Centre for Professional Inquiry***Head**

Robyn Fox, MEdAdmin *Massey*, DipMathEd  
AdvDipTchg

**Senior Lecturers**

Lynne Anderson, MEd *S.Aust.*, HDipTchg *ACE*,  
DipTchg *AKC*, FTCL

Lynne Ashman, BSc(Hons) *Leeds*

Paul Heyward, DipTchg PGDipTchg *ACE*, BA

Diti Hill, DipTchg *ATC*, MA

Jeanne Sheehan, MEd *Massey*, DipTchg

Anne Sinclair, MEdAdmin *Massey*, AdvDipEd

**Lecturers**

Lauri Begg, MEd BA DipTchg

Maree Davies, BA PGDipEd DipTchg DipMathEd

Esther Fitzpatrick, BEd

Robyn Reid, BSc(Hons) *Well.*, DipEd

Melinda Webber, BEd DipTchg

*Centre for Science Education***Head**

Bev France, MSc *Surrey*, PhD *Waik.*, DipTchg

**Senior Lecturers**

Sally Birdsall, BA PGDipEd DipTchg

Denis Burchill, BA BSc DipTchg

Dawn Garbett, MSc *Curtin*, DipTchg

Ian Milne, MEd DipMathEd AdvDipTchg

**Lecturer**

Rena Heap, BSc DipTchg

*Centre for Social Science***Head**

Isabel Browne, BEd *Massey*, DipTchg AdvDipEd

**Senior Lecturers**

Colleen Fleming, BEd *Massey*, DipTchg

AdvDipTchg DipEdMgmt

Jill Murray, BEd *Massey*, DipTchg

Alexis Siteine, BA *Brigham Young*, DipTchg

PGDipEd

**Lecturers**

Sandra Chandler, BA DipTchg

Debra Lee, MMed *S.Aust.*, DipTchg HDipTchg

DipEI

*Centre for Technology***Head**

Kerry Lee, BSc *Massey*, MEd DipTchg *ACE*

**Principal Lecturer**

Brent Mawson, MA *Cant.*, PGDipTechEd *Massey*,  
DipTchg *CCE*

**Senior Lecturers**

Tony Hunt, MEd *Massey*, DipTchg *ACE*, DipEdTech  
*Lond.*, BSc

Ann McGlashan, BArt&Design *Auck.UT*, DipTchg  
*ACE*

Moira Patterson, BEd *Massey*, DipTchg *ACE*

John Roder, HDipTchg *ACE*

Bruce Sandford, AdvDipTchg *CCE*

Val Savidan, AdvDipTchg AdvComDipTchg

PGDipEd *ACE*

Alastair Wells, MA *Auck.UT*, DipDeaf&SpecEd *CCE*

**Lecturer**

Paul Neveltsen, DipTchg

**Te Kura Akoranga O Te Tai Tokerau (Northland Campus)****Director**

Heather Peters, MA DipTchg

**Principal Lecturer**

Vicki Compton, BSc MEd PhD *Waik.*, DipTchg

**Senior Lecturers**

Rhona Leonard, BA MEd *Deakin*, DipTchg

Murray Lints, MA DipTchg

**Lecturers**

Jan Pirihī, BTchLn *CCE*, MEd *Deakin*

Graeme Severinsen, HDipTchg

Tony Taylor, BA MEdAdmin

Wallace Wihongi, DipTchg

**Te Puna Wananga****Head**

Tony Trinick, HDipTchg *PNTC*, MA DipMathsEd

**Academic Support Co-ordinator**

Kimai Tocker, DipTchg *ACE*, MEd

*Huarahi Maori*

**Director**

Hemi Dale, DipTchg *ACE*, BA PGDipArts

**Principal Lecturer**

Colleen McMurchy-Pilkington, DipEd *Massey*,  
DipTchg *ACE*, MA MEd PhD EdD

**Senior Lecturers**

Sharyn Heaton, BA *Massey*, PGDipEd *ACE*,

DipBilTchg *Waik.*, DipTchg *WCE*

Tauwehe Tamati, BEd *ACE*, PGDipInt&Trans

*Waik.*, DipTchg

**Lecturers**

Ana Pipi, BEd DipTchg *ACE*

Te Rongopai Morehu, DipTchg

*Auraki – Maori in Mainstream*

**Director**

Angeline Hamiora, BTchLn *CCE*, AdvDipTchg

DipEdStudies DipTESSOL *ACE*, MEd

**Senior Lecturer**

Terehia Brock, BTchLn *CCE*, PGDipTchg *ACE*,

HDipBilEd *Waik.*

**Faculty of Engineering****Dean**

Peter W. Brothers, PhD *Colo. State*, BSc, BE,  
MASME, MASHRAE, FIPENZ

**Associate Dean (Academic)**

...

**Deputy Dean**

David M. Ryan, MSc *Otago*, PhD *ANU*, FIPENZ,  
FRSNZ

**Associate Dean (Undergraduate)**

J. Elizabeth Godfrey, PhD *Curtin*, MSc, CIPENZ

**Associate Dean (Postgraduate)**

...

**Associate Dean (Research)**

Geoffrey G. Duffy, ASTC, BSc NSW, PhD DEng,  
FRSNZ, FICHEM, CEng

**Associate Dean (Maori)**

Te Kipa Kapa Brian Morgan, BE, GradDipMgt, MBA  
*Deakin*, MIPENZ

**Associate Dean (International)**

Wei Gao, BE *NE Univ. China*, ME BCRI (*China*),  
DPhil *Oxf.*, MIPENZ, MASN, MAIME, MTMS,  
MMRS, MACA

**Faculty Registrar**

Keith M. Willson

**BIOENGINEERING INSTITUTE****Director**

Peter J. Hunter, DPhil *Oxf.*, ME, FRSNZ

**Institute Administrator**

Maria Fung, MCom, PGDipCom

**Deputy Director**

Bruce H. Smail, BE BSc DIC PhD *Lond.* (*jointly with Physiology*)

**Professor**

1978 Peter J. Hunter, DPhil *Oxf.*, ME, FRSNZ

**Associate Professors**

1977 Bruce H. Smail, BE BSc DIC PhD *Lond.*  
(*jointly with Physiology*)

1982 Gordon D. Mallinson, BSc *Well.*, PhD *NSW*,  
MIE *Aust.*, CPEng (*jointly with Mechanical Engineering*)

1996 Simon C. Malpas, BSc *Well.*, PhD *Otago*,  
(*jointly with Physiology*)

1990 Andrew J. Pullan, BSc, PhD (*jointly with Engineering Science*)

**Senior Lecturers**

2000 Iain A. Anderson, ME, PhD (*jointly with Engineering Science*)

1995 Ian J. LeGrice, BE, DipTP, MBChB, PhD  
(*jointly with Physiology*)

1982 Denis S. Loiselle, MSc *Alta.*, PhD *Dal.*,  
DipPhEd *Otago* (*jointly with Physiology*)

2003 Martyn P. Nash, BE, PhD (*jointly with Engineering Science*)

1993 Poul M. Nielsen, BE, BSc, PhD (*jointly with Engineering Science*)

2002 Nicolas P. Smith, BE, PhD (*jointly with Engineering Science*)

2003 William Thorpe, BE PhD *Cant.*

1996 Alistair A. Young, MSc, PhD (*jointly with Anatomy with Radiology*)

**Lecturer**

2001 Mark L. Trew, BE, PhD

**Research Fellows**

2002 Alona Ben-Tal, BSc(Hons) MSc *Israel*, PhD

1998 Shane A. Blackett, BE(Hons) ME(Dist.)

2001 David M. Budgett, BE(Hons) *Cant.*, PhD  
*Lond.*

2001 David P. Bullivant, MSc, PhD

2003 Leo K. Cheng, BE(Hons), PhD

2004 Edmund J. Crampin, BSc(Hons) *Lond.*, DPhil  
*Oxf.*

2003 Matthew D. B. Halstead, MSc, PhD

2001 Paul T. O'Callaghan, BSc(Hons) MSc PhD  
*Wales*

1999 Greg B. Sands, BE(Hons), PhD

2004 Merryn H. Tawhai, ME, PhD

2003 Karl A. Tomlinson, BE(Hons), PhD

2004 Sujeewa Hettiwatte, BSc ME *S.Lanka*, PhD  
*Manc.*

2003 Yongping Zhang, MSc PhD *China*

**CHEMICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERING****Head of Department**

W. George Ferguson, BSc BE *NZ*, PhD, CEng,  
MIPENZ, FIEAust, FIM

**Departmental Manager**

...

**Professors**

1984 John J. J. Chen, BE PhD, FRSNZ, CEng,  
FICHEM, FIPENZ

1993 Xiao Dong Chen, BE *Tsinghua*, PhD *Cant.*,  
FRSNZ, MAIE

1969 Geoffrey G. Duffy, ASTC, BSc NSW, PhD  
DEng, FRSNZ, FICHEM, CEng

1998 Mohammed M. Farid, BSc *Baghdad*, MSc  
PhD *Wales*

1968 W. George Ferguson, BSc BE *NZ*, PhD, CEng,  
MIPENZ, FIEAust, FIM

1992 Wei Gao, BE *NE Univ. China*, ME BCRI  
(*China*), DPhil *Oxf.*, MIPENZ, MASM, MAIME,  
MTMS, MMRS, MACA

**Associate Professor**

1994 Neil D. Broom, BE *Melb.*, PhD

**Senior Lecturer**

2003 Md. Monwar Hossain, BSc *B'desh.Engin.*,  
MSc PhD *Qld.*

**Comalco Senior Lecturer in Materials Science and Engineering**

1991 Margaret M. Hyland, BSc *Guelph*, PhD  
*W.Ont.*, MAIME, MRSNZ, MMRS

**Lecturers**

1993 Michael A. Hodgson, BE, PhD

1998 Bryony J. James, BEng *Bath*, PhD

2001 Simon Oakley, BE

2004 M. Su-Ling Law, BTech *Massey*, PhD *Camb.*

**Research Fellows**

2002 Abdulghani Abdul, GAA MSc, *Baghdad*, PhD

2004 B. Bansal, BE *Panjab*

2004 N. Hamadi, BE *Kuwait Univ.*, ME *Basrah*,  
*Iraq*, PhD

2001 Zhengwei Li, BE PhD *USTB China*

2003 Jiang Liang, BE *University of Science and Technology, Beijing*, ME *Tianjin*, PhD

2004 Celina Anna Pezowicz, MSc PhD *Wroclaw Univ. of Technol, Poland*

2004 Frank Qin, BE PhD *S.China*

2004 Juhyun Yoo, ME *Yonsei*, PhD

**Honorary Professor**

Peter A. Munro, BE PhD *Lond.*, FRSNZ, FICHEM,  
CEng

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

Zhan Wen Chen, BE *CSUT China*, ME, PhD,  
MIMEA

Andrew B. Russell, BTech *Massey*, PhD *Lond.*,  
CEng, MICHemE

Mark Taylor, BE PhD, MICHemE, CEng

**Honorary Research Fellow**

Vladimir Ivanov, DipKandidat Nauk USSR

**CIVIL AND ENVIRONMENTAL ENGINEERING****Head of Department**

Bruce W. Melville, BE, PhD, FIPENZ, MASCE, MIAHR

**Departmental Manager**

Magdalene Woo

**Deputy Head of Department**

John W. Butterworth, BE PhD Sur., FIPENZ

**Professor of Civil Engineering**

1980 Bruce W. Melville, BE, PhD, FIPENZ, MASCE, MIAHR

**Professor of Geotechnical Engineering**

1977 Michael J. Pender, BE PhD Cant., FIPENZ, MASCE

**Associate Professor**

1972 Roger C. M. Dunn, BE NZ, BSc Well., MEngSc NSW, DipTP, FITE, FIHT, FIPENZ

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1996 Carol A. Boyle, BSc ME *Des Calg.*, PhD McM., CEng, MIPENZ
- 1980 John W. Butterworth, BE PhD Sur., FIPENZ
- 1993 Stephen E. Coleman, BE, PhD, MIPENZ, MIAHR
- 1979 Barry J. Davidson, BE, PhD, FIPENZ
- 1999 Takis Elefsiniotis, BE *National Technical Univ. Athens*, MAsc *Tor.*, PhD *Br.Col.* PEng
- 1995 Jason M. Ingham, PhD *Calif.*, ME, GradDipBus, MIPENZ, MASCE, CPEng
- 1980 Thomas J. Larkin, BE, PhD
- 1986 Leslie M. Megget, ME *Cant.*, DipIIESE *Tokyo*, FIPENZ
- 2000 Te Kipa Kapa Brian Morgan, BE GradDipMgt *MBA Deakin*, MIPENZ
- 1977 John D. St George, BSc *Lon.*, MSc *Newcastle (UK)*, PhD, CEng, ARSM, MIMMM, FAusIMM
- 2005 Asaad Y. Shamseldin, BSc *Sudan*, MSc PhD *Ireland*
- 1996 Naresh Singhal, BTech *IIT Bombay*, MS *Louisiana St.*, MA PhD *Prin.* MRSNZ
- 1996 Suzanne J. Wilkinson, BEng PhD *Oxf.Brookes*

**Lecturers**

- 2002 Seosamh B. Costello, BE *NUI*, MSc PhD *Birm.*, CEng, MIEI
- 2004 Elizabeth A. Fassman, BSE *Duke*, MS PhD *Virginia*
- 2003 Piotr Omenzetter, MSc *Gdansk University of Technology, Poland*, PhD *Tokyo*, JSCE, PTMTS
- 2004 Judith Y. T. Wang, BA *CityHK*, MSc(Eng) *Leeds*, PhD *HKUST*, CMILT
- 2005 Daniel H. Whang, BSc MS *UCLA*, PhD *Berk.*
- 2000 Douglas J. Wilson, NZCE, BE, REAAA, MIPENZ, PIARC

**Senior Tutor**

1989 Hugh W. Morris, ME

**UARC Postdoctoral Fellow**

2003 Edward Schlicke BSc, MSc *York (UK)*, PhD *Edin.*

**Honorary Research Fellows**

Ian W. Gunn, BE NZ, DipPHE *Newcastle(UK)*, CEng, MICE, FIPENZ, FIWEM

Philip Warbrick, BSc, ME, MIPENZ

**Honorary Visiting Academic**

Richard C. Fenwick, BE NZ, PhD *Cant.*, FIPENZ

**Emeritus Professor**

Peter G. Lowe, BE NZ, MA *Camb.*, MEngSc *Syd.*, PhD *Lon.*, CEng, FIPENZ, MICE, FIEAust

**Designer in Residence**

2004 Colin J. Nicholas, ME, MICE, MStructE, FIPENZ, CPEng

**ELECTRICAL AND COMPUTER ENGINEERING****Head of Department**

Allan G. Williamson, BE, PhD, CEng *UK*, FIEE, FIERE, Sen.Mem.IEEE, FIPENZ

**Departmental Manager**

Lynda Jones, BA *Lon.*, PGDipMarketing *Lon.Guild*

**Deputy Head of Department (Academic)**

Gerard B. Rowe, ME, PhD, Mem.IEEE, MIPENZ

**Deputy Head of Department (Research)**

Zoran A. Salcic, ME PhD *Sarajevo*, Sen.Mem IEEE

**Professor of Electronics**

1977 John T. Boys, ME, PhD, FRSNZ, FIPENZ

**Professor of Telecommunications**

1975 Allan G. Williamson, BE, PhD, CEng *UK*, FIEE, FIERE, Sen.Mem IEEE, FIPENZ

**Professor of Computer Systems**

1994 Zoran Salcic, ME PhD *Sarajevo*, Sen.Mem IEEE

**Professor of Software Engineering**

1999 John Grundy, MSc, PhD (*jointly with Computer Science*)

**Associate Professors**

- 2002 John Morris, PhD *Syd.*, BSc (*jointly with Computer Science*)
- 1990 Kevin W. Sowerby, BE, PhD, Mem.IEE

**Senior Lecturers**

- 2002 Waleed Abdulla, MSc, PhD
- 1990 Mark Andrews, BE, PhD, Mem.IEEE
- 1986 Lawrence J. Carter, BSc *Kent*, MPhil *PNGTech*, CEng *UK*, MIEE
- 1987 George G. Coghill, BSc *H-W*, BA *Open(UK)*, PhD *Kent*, CEng *UK*, MIEE, Mem.IEEE
- 1992 Grant Covic, BE, PhD, Mem.IEEE
- 1985 Bernard J. Guillemain, NZCS, BE, PhD
- 2002 Nihal Kularatna, BSc EngHons, CEng *UK*, FIEE, Sen.Mem.IEEE
- 1995 Bruce MacDonald, BE PhD *Cant.*, Mem.IEEE
- 2004 Nirmal Nair, BE *Baroda*, ME *IISc*, PhD *Texas*
- 1995 Michael Neve, BE, PhD, Mem.IEEE, AMIEE
- 1995 Sing Kiong Nguang, BE PhD *Newcastle(NSW)*, Sen.Mem.IEEE
- 2001 Parth S. Roop, BE, MTech, PhD, Mem.IEEE
- 1984 Gerard B. Rowe, ME, PhD, Mem.IEEE, MIPENZ
- 2002 Akshya Swain, MSc *Samb.*, PhD *Sheff.*, Mem.IEEE, FIETE (*India*)
- 2004 Valery Vyatkin, PhD DSc *Taganrog (Russia)*, DrEng *Nagoya Institute of Technology, Japan*, Dipl.Eng *Taganrog*

**Lecturers**

- 1994 Stevan Berber, ME *Belgrade*, PhD  
 2000 Abbas Bigdeli, BE, PhD, Mem.IEEE  
 2001 Morteza Biglari-Abhari, MSc PhD *Adel.*,  
 Mem.IEEE  
 1999 Paul Calverley, BE  
 2000 Aiguo (Patrick) Hu, BE, PhD, Mem.IEEE  
 2001 Mariusz Kacprzak, MSc PhD *Kanazawa*  
 1996 Udaya Madawala, BSc *S.Lanka*, PhD  
 1990 Nitish Patel, BE *M'lore*  
 2004 Oliver Sinnen, Diplom *Aachen*, PhD *IST*  
*Lisbon*  
 2002 Charles Unsworth, MSc, PhD *Edin.* (*jointly*  
*with Engineering Science*)  
 2003 Catherine Watson, BE PhD *Cant.*

**Senior Tutors**

- 2000 Colin Cogill, BSc  
 2002 Chris Small, Dip Tchg, BA, BSc  
 2001 Su Tang, ME *UESTC*

**ENGINEERING SCIENCE****Head of Department**

Andrew B. Philpott, BA BSc *Well.*, MPhil PhD  
*Camb.*

**Departmental Manager**

Nicola Kovacevich, BArch

**Professors**

- 1969 Michael J. O'Sullivan, BE NZ, PhD *Cal.Tech.*,  
 BSc, ME, FIPENZ  
 1986 Andrew B. Philpott BA BSc *Well.*, MPhil PhD  
*Camb.*

**Professor of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics**

1981 Ian F. Collins, MA PhD *Camb.*, FIMA, CMath,  
 FIPENZ, MASME, MASCE

**Professor of Operations Research**

1975 David M. Ryan, MSc *Otago*, PhD *ANU*,  
 FRNSZ, FIPENZ

**Associate Professors**

- 2000 Matthias Ehrgott, MSc PhD Dr.habil  
*Kaiserslautern*  
 ♦ 1962 Donald A. Nield, MA *Camb.*, MSc NZ, BD  
*Otago*, PhD, CMath, FIMA  
 1990 Andrew J. Pullan, BSc PhD

**Senior Lecturers**

- 2000 Iain A. Anderson, ME, PhD  
 1999 Piaras A. Kelly, BSc *UCD*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1992 Andrew J. Mason, PhD *Camb.*, BE  
 2002 Martyn Nash, BE, PhD  
 1993 Poul Nielsen, BE, BSc, PhD  
 2002 Nicolas Smith, BE, PhD  
 2000 Golbon Zakeri, BSc *Iowa*, PhD *Wisconsin-*  
*Madison*

**Lecturers**

- 2002 Rosalind Archer, PhD *Stan.*  
 2001 Michael O'Sullivan, PhD *Stan.*, MPhil  
 2002 Charles P. Unsworth, MSc, PhD *Edin.* (*jointly*  
*with Electrical and Computer Engineering*)  
 1999 Cameron G. Walker, MA MOR PhD

**Senior Tutors**

- 2004 David Godfrey, BEd *Massey*, MEd *Deakin*  
 1991 James B. Greenslade, BSc *Cant.*, NZCE, REA

**MECHANICAL ENGINEERING****Head of Department**

Gordon D. Mallinson, BSc *Well.*, PhD *NSW*,  
 Mem.IEEE

**Departmental Manager**

Edith Sharp

**Professors**

- 1981 Debes Bhattacharyya, ME *Calc.*, PhD *Jad.*,  
 FRNSZ, FIPENZ, MASME  
 1984 Richard G. J. Flay, BE PhD *Cant.*, CEng,  
 FIMechE, MASME, MSNAME, FIPENZ

**Associate Professors**

- 1988 Pradeep K. Bansal, MSc *Roor.*, PhD *I.I.T.*  
*Delhi*, MIIR, MASHRAE, FIRHACE  
 1995 Vojislav Kecman, Dip.Ing, MSc PhD *Zagreb*  
 1982 Gordon D. Mallinson, BSc *Well.*, PhD *NSW*,  
 Mem.IEEE  
 1977 Robert R. Raine, BSc PhD *S'ton.*, MSAE,  
 MASME  
 1981 Peter J. Richards, BSc *Reading*, PhD *CNAA*,  
 AMRAeS  
 1975 J. Des Tedford, BSc PhD *Belf.*, CEng (*UK*),  
 MIEE

**Senior Lecturers**

- 2004 Kean C. Aw, CEI (*UK*), MSc *Brun.*, PhD  
*Sci.U.Malaysia*, MIEE, MIEEE  
 1999 Simon Bickerton, BE PhD *Delaware*  
 1988 Joseph Deans, BSc PhD *Strath.*, CEng,  
 FIMechE, FIPENZ  
 1998 C. Roger Halkyard, BSc, BE, PhD  
 1994 Enrico Hämmerle, Dipl.-Ing (FH) *Offenburg*,  
 Dipl.-Ing *Bochum*, Dr.-Ing *Bremen*, VDI  
*Germany*  
 1995 Krishnan Jayaraman, BE *Madr.*, ME *Howard*,  
 PhD *VPI & SU*  
 1973 George Moltschanivskyj, MSc *Lond.*  
 1986 Rainer H. A. Seidel, Dipl.-Wirtsch.-Ing  
*Karlsruhe*, PhD  
 1992 Heather Silyn-Roberts, BSc *Wales*, PhD  
 2002 Alexander Steinwolf, MSc PhD *Kharkov*,  
 MASME, MIEST  
 1996 Xun Xu, BSc *Shenyang*, MSc *Dalian*, PhD  
*UMIST*

**Lecturers**

- 2001 Rajnish Sharma, BE PhD  
 2004 Karl Stol, BE *Cant.*, PhD *Colorado*  
 2003 Shane Xie, BE MSc PhD *Huazhong*, PhD  
*Cant.*

**Senior Tutor**

2001 Martin McCarthy, MEngMgt

**FRST Research Fellows**

- 1999 Richard J. T. Lin, ME *Nat. Sun Yat-Sen*, PhD  
 2003 Xiaowen Yuan, BE *Tongji Univ.*, ME *NPU*  
*China*, PhD

**Research Fellows**

- 1997 Rene Flachsmann, ME, PhD  
 2004 Stuart Norris, PhD *Syd.*, ME

**Honorary Research Fellow**

Shamil Galiyev, MSc *Kezan*, PhD *Leningrad*, DSc  
*Kiev*

## GEOHERMAL INSTITUTE, WITHIN THE FACULTY OF ENGINEERING

### Geothermal Institute

#### Director of Geothermal Institute

S. F. Simmons, BA *Macalester*, MS PhD *Minn.*  
(jointly with *Geology*)

#### Associate Professor

1991 S. F. Simmons, BA *Macalester*, MS PhD *Minn.*  
(jointly with *Geology*)

## Faculty of Law

### Dean

Julie K. Maxton, LLB(Hons) *Lond.*, LLM *Cant.*, PhD

### Deputy Dean

P. G. Watts, LLB(Hons) *Cant.*, LLM *Camb.*

### Director of Postgraduate Studies

P. T. Rishworth, LLB(Hons), MJur

### Associate Dean

Stephen F. Penk, MA PGDA *Otago*, BA LLB(Hons)

### Associate Dean (Research)

David V. Williams, BA LLB *Well.*, BCL DipTheol  
*Oxf.*, PhD *Dar.*

### Dean of Students

Rosemary Tobin, DipEd *Massey*, BA, LLB(Hons),  
MJur, PhD

### Faculty Registrar

Ada Marama, BA MBS PGDipBusAdmin *Massey*

## LAW

### Head of Department

Julie K. Maxton, LLB(Hons) *Lond.*, LLM *Cant.*, PhD

### Professors

- 1995 R. A. Bigwood, PhD *ANU*, LLB(Hons)  
1971 Ian G. Eagles, BA LLB *Qld.*, PhD *Camb.*, LLM  
1969 P. J. Evans, BA LLB(Hons) *Otago*, PhD  
*Camb.*, LLM  
1994 Bruce V. Harris, LLB(Hons) *Otago*, LLM *Harv.*  
1979 Jane Kelsey, LLB(Hons) *Well.*, BCL *Oxf.*,  
MPhil *Camb.*, PhD  
1985 Julie K. Maxton, LLB(Hons) *Lond.*, LLM  
*Cant.*, PhD  
1987 P. T. Rishworth, LLB(Hons), MJur  
1982 M. B. Taggart, LLM *Harv.*, LLB(Hons)  
1985 P. G. Watts, LLB(Hons) *Cant.*, LLM *Camb.*

### Associate Professors

- 1988 K. Bosselmann, DrIur *FU Berlin*  
1983 W. J. Brookbanks, LLM  
1991 D. P. Grinlinton, BA *Massey*, LLM *W.Aust.*,  
LLB(Hons)  
1972 W. C. Hodge, AB *Harv.*, JD *Stan.*  
1999 J. M. McLean, LLB(Hons) *Well.*, LLM *Mich.*  
1969 K. A. Palmer, LLM *Harv.* & *Auck.*, SJD  
*Virginia*  
1974 Pauline Tapp, LLB(Hons), MJur  
1991 Rosemary Tobin, DipEd *Massey*, BA,  
LLB(Hons), MJur, PhD  
1974 David V. Williams, BA LLB *Well.*, BCL  
DipTheol *Oxf.*, PhD *Dar.*

### Senior Lecturers

1995 Neil Campbell, LLM *Camb.*, BCom LLB(Hons)

- 1992 P. Devonshire, LLB(Hons) *Birm.*, LLM *Alta.*,  
PhD  
1999 Treasa Dunworth, LLM *Harv.*, LLB(Hons)  
2003 Michael Littlewood, PhD *HK*, BA LLB(Hons)  
1986 Joanna M. Manning, LLM *George Wash.*, BA  
LLB(Hons)  
1980 T. J. McBride, LLB(Hons) *Well.*, LLM *Dal.*  
2001 Georgos Mousourakis, LLB *Athens*, MSc  
*Manc.*, PhD *Edin.*  
1995 Paul A. Myburgh, BA(Hons) BLC LLM *Pret.*  
1992 S. L. Optican, BA *Calif.*, MPhil *Camb.*, JD  
*Harv.*  
2002 Elsabe Schoeman, BLC *Pret.*, LLB LLD *S.Af.*  
2002 Paul Sumpter, LLM *Lond.*, LLB MA  
1999 Julia R. Tolmie, LLM *Harv.*, LLB(Hons)  
1992 V. C. Tomas, BA LLB(Hons)

### Lecturers

- 2000 Allan Beever, MSc *Tor.*, PhD  
✦ 1962-65, 1969 B. J. Brown, ONZM, LLB(Hons)  
*Leeds*, LLM *Sing.*  
2000 Kate Buchanan, BCom, LLM  
✦ 2003 Brian Carter, BA LLB(Hons)  
✦ 2000 Margaret Casey, LLM *Lond.*, BA LLB  
✦ 1995 D. Clapshaw, BA(Hons) *Otago*, LLM  
*Camb.*, LLB(Hons)  
✦ 2003 Donald Dugdale, BA LLB NZ  
2003 Caroline Foster, BA LLB(Hons) *Cant.*, LLM  
*Camb.*  
✦ 1993 R. P. G. Haines, QC, BA LLB  
✦ 2000 Judge David Harvey, LLB(Hons) MJur *Waik.*  
2002 Kerensa Johnston, BA LLB(Hons) *Well.*, LLM  
✦ 1994 Judge R. Joyce, QC, LLB *Cant.*  
✦ 1968 D. W. McMorland, PhD *Camb.*, LLM  
✦ 2001 Simon Mount, LLM *Col.*, LLM  
1997 Khylee E. Quince, BA, LLB(Hons)  
2001 Peter Sankoff, BA *Concordia Alta.*, JD *Tor.*  
2004 Hanna Wilberg, BA LLB(Hons) *Otago*, BCL  
MPhil *Oxon.*  
1983 G. L. Williams, BCom, LLM, ACA

### Senior Tutor

1977 Stephen F. Penk, MA PGDA *Otago*, BA,  
LLB(Hons)

## Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences

### Dean

Peter J. Smith, RFD (*Aust.*), BSc MBBS MD *Qld.*  
FRACP, FRCPA

### Executive Assistant to the Dean

Moana Maddever

### Deputy Dean

Robert R. Kydd, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRANZCP

### Director of Administration and Finance

Richard Swain, BCom, CA

### Tumuaki

Colin D. Mantell, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, PhD,  
DipObst, FRANZCOG, FRCOG

### Associate Dean (Academic)

Noel J. Dawson, BSc PhD *NE*

### Associate Dean (Education)

...

### Associate Dean (Research)

Louise F. B. Nicholson, MSc, PhD, DipTchg

**Associate Dean (International)**Samson Tse, MSc, PhD *Otago***Associate Dean (Medical Programme)**

Phillippa Poole BSc, MBChB, FRACP

**SCHOOL OF MEDICINE****Head of School of Medicine**Iain G. Martin, MEd MD *Leeds*, FRCS, FRACS**Manager**

Joan Ready

**CENTRAL AUCKLAND CLINICAL SCHOOL****Head of Central Auckland Clinical School**Ian Simpson, MBChB *Otago*, MD, FRACP**ANAESTHESIOLOGY****Head**Alan F. Merry, MBChB *Z'bwé*, MRCS DipObst,  
FANZCA, FFPMANZCA**Administrator**

Diana Grieve, MA

**Professor**2002 Alan F. Merry, MBChB *Z'bwé*, MRC DipObst,  
FANZCA, FFPMANZCA**Senior Lecturers**2000 Doug Campbell, BM *S'ton*, FRCA, FANZCA  
2004 Jennifer Weller MBBS *Adel.*, MClined NSW,  
FRCA, FANZCA**Clinical Associate Professors**Brian Anderson, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, DipObst,  
FANZCA, FJFICMMichael J. Harrison, MBBS *Newcastle(UK)*,  
FANZCA, FRCA**Clinical Senior Lecturers**Charles Bradfield, MBCh *Witw.*, DipAnaes SA  
*Coll. Medicine*, FANZCA

Jeremy Cooper, MBChB, FANZCA

Malcolm E. Futter, BSc MBBS *Lond.*, FFARCS,  
FANZCAB. P. Hodgkinson, BSc MBBS *Newcastle(UK)*, FRCA,  
FANZCAHilmy Ismail MD *Colombo*, FRCA, FANZCAJames Judson, MBChB *Otago*, FANZCA, FJFICM,  
FFICANZCAMichal Kluger, MBChB *Edin.*, DA UK, DipDHM,  
FRCA, FANZCA

Charles McFarlan, BSc, MBBS, DA, FANZCA

Darcy Price, BSc, MBChB, FANZCA

Tim Skinner, MBChB, DipIMC RCSE, FRCA

Jane Thomas, MBChB *Otago*, FANZCA

Jane Torrie, MBChB, FANZCA

J. G. Walker, MBChB *Otago*, FANZCA, FFARCSI

Tim Willcox, NZCS, CCP, MAPS

James Woodfine, MBChB DipObst, FANZCA,  
FAFOM, DA UK

Yatin Young, MBBS, MRCP UK, FANZCA, FRCA

**Clinical Senior Tutor**

Billy Doyle, RN, EMT-P

**Research Fellow**

Guy Warman, MSc, PhD

**Honorary Professor**Stephan A. Schug, MD *Cologne*, FANZCA,  
FFPMANZCA**Honorary Clinical Professors**Robert A. Boas, MBChB *Otago*, FANZCA, FRCADavid Sage, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FANZCATimothy Short, MBChB MD *Otago*, FANZCA**Honorary Clinical Senior Tutor**

Dean Bunbury, BSc

**HEALTH PSYCHOLOGY****Head**Keith Petrie, MA *Calif.*, PhD *Massey*, DipClinPsych**Administrator**

Elizabeth Petrie, BSc

**Professor**1990 Keith J. Petrie, MA *Calif.*, PhD *Massey*,  
DipClinPsych**Associate Professor**1984 Roger J. Booth, MSc, PhD (*jointly with*  
*Molecular Medicine and Pathology*)**Senior Lecturers**

1980 Valerie J. Grant, MA, PhD

1994 Susan J. Hawken, MBChB, DipObst,  
FRNZCGP2001 Malcolm Johnson, MA, DipClinPsych,  
MNZCCP

1993 Rona Moss-Morris, MHSc, PhD

2003 Liz Painter, MA *Keele*, MSc *Sur.*, MNZCCP2001 Geoffrey V. Ruthe, MA *Keele*, DipClinPsych  
*Massey*, MNZCCP**Lecturers**2003 Bridget Mintoft, MSocSci DipClinPsych *Waik.*,  
PGDipMultimedia *Auck.UT.*, DipBus

1990 Trecia Wouldes, MA, PhD

**Research Fellows**2003 Judith McCool, BA *Cant.*, MPH *Otago*, PhD2003 Rachael Powell, BSc, PhD *St And.***Honorary Senior Lecturer**Linda D. Cameron, BSc *Calif.*, PhD *Wis.***Honorary Lecturer**Jane E. Magnusson, BSc *Tor.*, MS PhD *New*  
*Orleans***Honorary Clinical Lecturers**Yvonne Carleton, BA PhD DipClinPsych *Massey*,  
MNZCCPMeagan Spence, MA DipClinPsych *Cant.*, MNZCCP**MEDICINE****Head of Department**

Ian R. Reid, BSc, MBChB, MD, FRACP, FRSNZ

**Departmental Secretary**

Virginia Hand, BA

**Freemasons Professor of Geriatric Medicine**

...

**Professors**1997 Craig S. Anderson, BMedSci MBBS *Tas.*, PhD  
*W.Aust.*, FAFPHM, FRACP1993 Garth J. S. Cooper, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc, MBChB,  
DipObst, FRCPA, FRSNZ (*jointly with*  
*Biological Sciences*)1988 Timothy F. Cundy, MA MBChir MD *Camb.*,  
FRCP UK, FRACP1987 Ian R. Reid, BSc, MBChB, MD, FRACP,  
FRSNZ1978 Ian J. Simpson, MBChB *Otago*, MD, FRACP

**Associate Professors**

- 1994 Geoffrey D. Braatvedt, MBChB *Cape Town*, MD *Brist.*, MRCP UK, FRACP  
 1990 Peter N. Black, MBChB, FRACP  
 1984 Jillian Cornish, MSc PhD *Calg.*  
 1996 Robert Doughty, MBBS MRCP UK, MD, FRACP  
 1992 Alan G. Fraser, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACP  
 2001 Andrew B. Grey, MBChB *Otago*, MD, FRACP  
 1987 John Kolbe, MBBS *Gld*, FRACP  
 1994 Phillippa Poole, BSc, MBChB, FRACP

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1996 Warwick Bagg, MB BCh *Witw.*, MD, FRACP  
 2002 P. Alan Barber, MBChB *Otago.*, PhD *Melb.*, FRACP  
 1996 Christopher J. Ellis, BM *S'ton.*, MRCP UK, FRACP  
 2003 Sally Roberts, MBChB, FRACP  
 2004 Ralph Stewart, MBChB, FRACP  
 1996 Robert P. Young, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*, DPhil *Oxon.*, FHKCP, FRACP, FRCP UK  
 2004 Simon C. J. Young, MBChB, FRACP

**Lecturer**

- 2004 Heather Gardner, MBChB

**Research Fellows**

- 2003 Mark J. Bolland, MBChB  
 2001 Karen Callon, BSc  
 1996 Brett Cowan, BE, MBChB  
 1995 Gregory D. Gamble, MSc  
 1999 Dorit Naot, MSc *Hebrew Univ. Jerusalem*, PhD *Weizmann Inst.*, *Israel*  
 1991 Anthony Rodgers, MBChB *Bristol*, DPH, PhD, FAFPHM  
 1986 Susan Sharpe, MSc  
 2003 Cara Wasywich, MBChB  
 1997 Gillian A. Whalley, BAppSci, MHS

**Clinical Professor**

- Harvey D. White, MBChB DSc *Otago*, FRACP, FACC, FESC, FAHA, MRSNZ

**Clinical Associate Professors**

- John F. Collins, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Michael S. Croxson, BA *Massey*, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 James S. Davidson, BSc *Natal*, MA *Camb.*, MBChB PhD *Cape Town*, MRCPATH UK, FUCT *Cape Town*, FCPATH S.A., FRCPATH UK  
 Paul L. Drury, MA MB BChir FRCP *Lond.*, FRACP  
 Richard W. Frith, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
 Edward J. Gane, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACP  
 John W. Henley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Mark R. Lane, BSc MBChB FRACP  
 Peter N. Ruygrok, BSc MBChB MD, FRACP, FESC  
 Warren M. Smith, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Barry J. Snow, MBChB, FRACP, FRCP(C) (*jointly with Molecular Medicine and Pathology*)  
 Mark Webster, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Margaret L. Wilsher, MBChB, MD *Otago*, FRACP  
 Kenneth F. Whyte, MBChB MD MRCP UK, FRCP *Glas.*, FRACP

**Clinical Readers**

- Jonathon J. Baskett, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Ernest W. Willoughby, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

- Peter S. Bergin, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACP  
 Hilary P. Birch, MBChB *Sheff.*, MRCP UK, FRACP

- Suzanne Busch, MBChB, FRACP  
 Michael J. Butler, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRCP, FRACP, FFPMANZCA  
 Stephen Chalcraft, MBChB, FRACP  
 Alison Charleston, MBChB, FRACP  
 Stephen Child, MD, FRACP FRCPCan  
 Timothy I. Christmas, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACP  
 H. Arthur Coverdale, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Richard G. Cutfield, MBChB, FRACP  
 J. Graham Davison, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Tam E. Eaton, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Paul D. Frankish, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
 Sally C. Greaves, MBChB MMedSci, FRACP  
 Deborah E. Greig, BSc MBChB MMedSci MBA DipOccMed, FRACP  
 Roger G. Harris, MBChB, MBA, DipObst, FRACP  
 Adrian C. Harrison, MBBS *Adel.*, FRACP  
 Hamish H. Hart BSc, MBChB *Witw.*, FCP S.Af., MRCP(UK), FRACP, ECFMG  
 David O. Hutchinson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Joan Ingram, MBChB DTM&H UK, FRACP  
 Malcolm E. Legget, MBChB, FRACP, FACC  
 Jennifer A. Lucas, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
 David L. McAuley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Catherine McNamara, MBBS MD *Lond.*, MRCP FRCP UK  
 Geetha Mylvaganam, MD *Bergin*, DipHSc MRCP UK, FRACP  
 Jeff C. Okpala, MBBS PNG., MRCP  
 G. Fergus Oliver, MBChB, FRACP  
 Paul H. Owen, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Denesh C. Patel, MBChB, FRACP  
 Helen L. Pilmore, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACP  
 Max D. J. Robertson, MBChB, FRCP, FRACP  
 Richard Roxburgh, BSc *Cant.*, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Marilyn A. Scott, MBChB, FRACP  
 John Shepherd, MBChB, FRACP  
 G. P. Singh, MBChB *Natal*, FRACP  
 Vinod K. Singh, DSM *Fiji*, FRACP  
 David A. Spriggs, BSc *St And.*, MBChB *Manc.*, MD *Newcastle(UK)*, MRCP UK, FRACP  
 Toni Staykova, Dipl.Med *Berlin*, FRACP  
 James T. Stewart, MBChB MD *Otago*, MRCP UK, FESC, FRC  
 Maree Todd, MBChB, DipProfEthics, FRACP  
 Walter M. Van der Merwe, MBChB *Cape Town*, FRACP  
 Elizabeth Walker, MBBS *Tas.*, FRACP  
 Ian Wallace, MBChB *Witw.*, FCP S.Af, FRACP  
 Russell S. Walmsley, MBChB MD *Bristol*, MRCP  
 Jill Waters, MBChB, FRACP  
 Lucille M. Wilkinson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Laurie C. Williams, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 John M. Wishart, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Philip Y. N. Wong, MBChB FRACP  
 Phil Wood, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

**Honorary Professors**

- Ian M. Holdaway, BMedSci MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACP  
 Stephen MacMahon, BSc MA *Cant.*, MPH *Syd.*, PhD NSW, FACC  
 D. Norman Sharpe, ONZM, MBChB MD *Otago*, DipABIM, DipABCVD, FRACP, FACC

**Honorary Senior Lecturer**

- Sally D. Poppitt, BSc *Newcastle(UK)*, PhD *Aberd.*

**Honorary Senior Research Fellow**

Thomas E. Miller, PhD, DSc

**Honorary Research Fellow**

Susan P. Wright, MBChB, MMedSci, PhD

*Occupational Medicine***Head**

Des F. Gorman, PhD *Syd.*, BSc, MBChB, FAFOM, DipDHM

**Administrator**

Debbie Beaumont

**Professor**

1995 Des F. Gorman, PhD *Syd.*, BSc, MBChB, FAFOM, DipDHM

**Associate Professor**

2004 F. Michael Davis, MA *Cant.*, MB BCHIR DipDHM MD *Otago* FRCA(Eng) FANZCA

**Senior Lecturers**

1996 David Black, MBChB DIH *Otago*, FAFOM, MARPS

2004 Kathleen Callaghan, DipAvMed *Otago*, MBChB MSc DipOccMed, FAFOM

1996 Alison Drewry, MBChB DIH *Otago*, GCM *Qld.*, FAFOM

1996 John R. Monigatti, BSc MBChB, MFOM MRCP UK

1996 Peter H. Robinson, LVO MBChB *Otago*, MSc *Lond.*, DipDHM, FAFPHM (RACP), MCCM, AFOM (RCP)

**Lecturer**

2003 Vicki Currie, MHSc, DipH, NZRGON

**Research Fellow**

1998 Yilin Huang, BMed MMedSc *China*

**Honorary Associate Professor**

Graham Hukins, BSc MB ChB M.Prax Med *Pret.*, MMed *Witw.*, MCom, DOH, DPH, DTM&H

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

David Doolette, BSc(Hons) PhD *Adel.*

Evan W. Dryson, MBChB DIH *Otago*, FAFOM FAFPHM MFOM UK

John Faris, BA, BSc, MBChB, DipObst, DAvMed, FAFOM, FFOM, FANZCA

Courtenay T. C. Kenny, BSc MBChB Dip DHM *Adel.*, MRNZCGP AFOM UK, FAFOM

Terry Moore, BSW *Massey*, MS RhD *SIU*, AFACHSE

Jan Reeves, MBChB, FRANZCP

Dougal Watson, MB BS BScMed DAvMed *Lond.*, DAvMed *Otago*, DOccMed, MRAeS

**Honorary Lecturers**

Ralph Schnabel, DipClinPsych, MNZPsS, M1, MNZCCP

Sarah Travaglia, DipH(CM), DipMgmtStudies, NZRCN

*OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY***Head of Department**

Peter R. Stone, MD *Bristol*, BSc, MBChB, DipObst, FRANZCOG, FRCOG, DDU, CMFM

**Administrator**

Michelle Carvalho

**Postgraduate Professor of Obstetrics and Gynaecology**

1989 Cindy M. Farquhar, MBChB, MD, DipObst, MRCOG, FRANZCOG, CREI, MPH

**Professors**

1999 Jane E. Harding, ONZM, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc, MBChB, FRACP (*jointly with Paediatrics and Liggins*)

1973 Colin D. Mantell, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, PhD, DipObst, FRCOG, FRANZCOG (*jointly with Maori & Pacific Health*)

1998 Peter R. Stone, MD *Bristol*, BSc, MBChB, DipObst, FRANZCOG, FRCOG, DDU, CMFM

**Associate Professors**

1987 Lesley M. E. McCowan, BSc, MBChB, DipObst, FRCOG, FRANZCOG, CMFM

1991 Robyn A. North, PhD *Melb.*, BSc, MBChB, FRACP

1994 Jenny Westgate, MBChB, MD, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

**Senior Lecturers**

1997 Malcolm Battin, MBChB *Liv.*, MRCP, FRCPCH, FRACP (*jointly with Paediatrics*)

2001 Vijay Bhoola, MBBS *M'Lore.*, FCOGASA, FRANZCOG

2002 Frank Bloomfield, BSc MBChB *Manc.*, PhD, MRCP UK, FRACP (*jointly with Paediatrics*)

2003 Karen L. Buckingham, MBChB, DRCOG, DFFP, FRANZCOG

1995 Larry Chamley, MSc, PhD

1999 Neil Johnson, MBBS BMedSci *Newcastle(UK)*, DCH, FRANZCOG, MRCPG, MRCOG

2001 Emma Parry, MBBS *Lond.*, MRANZCOG, MRCOG

1991 Helen Roberts, BA BAO MBChB DipObst *Dublin*, MPH *Yale*

1995 Andrew N. Shelling, BPhEd, BSc, PhD (*jointly with Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre*)

2003 Martin Sowter, BSc MBChB MD *Birm.*, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

**Senior Tutor in Ultrasound**

Jenny Mitchell, MSc

**Research Fellow**

Lynn Sadler, MPH *Yale*, MBChB, FRANZCOG

**Clinical Professor**

Ron Jones, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

David A. Ansell, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCOG, FRCOG

Sue L. Belgrave, MBChB *Otago*, MRCOG

Renuka Bhat, MBBS, MD, FRANZCOG

Arthur Brooks, MBChB, FRANZCOG

Marion E. Carter, MBChB, MRCOG

Ken F. Clark, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCOG

Phillipa Cuttance, BSc, MBChB, FRANZCOG

P. J. Dempsey, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCOG, FRCOG

Rose E. Elder, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRANZCOG

William G. L. Ferguson, MBChB, DipObst

Guy S. Gudex, MBChB, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

W. Hadden, MBChB, FRANZCR

Mahesh Harilall, MBChB, FRANZCOG

Ruth Harkett, MBChB, FRANZCOG

S. J. Hastie, MBChB DipObst DipChHealth *Otago*, MRCOG, MRANZCOG

L. Hayward, BSc, MBChB, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

K. W. Hill, MBChB *Otago*, MRCOG

Valeria Ivanova, DipEndocrinology, FRANZCOG  
 Peter N. Jennings, MBChB *Otago*, FRCOG,  
 FRANZCOG  
 Yvonne Lake, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCOG  
 Paul M. Macpherson, MBChB *Otago*, MRNZCOG  
 Jenny McDougall, MBChB, FRANZCOG  
 Jeremy Meates, MBChB, FRANZCOG  
 Analisa Meyer, BSc, MBChB, DipObst, MRCOG,  
 FRCSC  
 Ray Naden, MBChB, DipObst, FRACP  
 Kara Okesene-Gafa, MBChB, FRANZCOG  
 Deryk Pilkington, MBChB, FRANZCOG  
 Sunil Pillay, DSM *S.Pac.*, DipObst, MRCOG,  
 FRANZCOG  
 R. Reid, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCOG, FRANZCOG  
 Bill Ridley, MBChB, FRANZCOG  
 Darion Rowan, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FACD  
 Dereck Souter, MBChB, FRANZCOG, DDU  
 Ailing Tan, MBChB, FRANZCOG  
 Nerida Titchiner, MBChB, FRANZCOG  
 Wally S. J. Tongue, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst,  
 FRCOG, FRANZCOG  
 John R. Whittaker, MBChB *Otago*, MRCOG,  
 FRANZCOG  
 Lucille Wilkinson, MBChB, FRACP

**Clinical Tutor**

Marcia Roberts, BN, RGON, RM

**Emeritus Professor**

Sir Graham Collingwood Liggins, CBE KB MBChB  
*Otago*, PhD FRCS *Edin.*, FRACS, FRCOG,  
 FRNZCOG, FRS, FRSNZ

**Director, Research Centre in Reproductive Medicine**

Peter R. Stone, MD *Bristol*, BSc, MBChB, DipObst,  
 FRANZCOG, FRCOG, DDU, CMFM

**Honorary Senior Lecturer in Andrology**

Patrick J. Casey, BVSc *Massey*, PhD *Calif.*

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

Claire McLintock, MBChB *Edin.*, FRACP, FRCPA  
 Stellar R. Milsom, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Janet Rowan, MBChB *Liv.*, DipObst, FRACP  
 Dianne Webster, PhD *Lond.*, DipHSM *Massey*, MSc,  
 FHGSA

**OPHTHALMOLOGY****Head**

Charles N. J. McGhee, MBChB BSc *Glas.*, PhD  
*Dund.*, FRCS *Glas.*, FRCOphth *UK*,  
 FRANZCO, FRSA

**Department Secretary**

Hutokshi Chinoy

**The Maurice Paykel Foundation Professor in Ophthalmology,  
Head of Department**

1999 Charles N. J. McGhee, MBChB BSc *Glas.*,  
 PhD *Dund.*, FRCS *Glas.*, FRCOphth *UK*,  
 FRANZCO, FRSA

**Desmond Hadden Chair of Ophthalmology (Laboratory  
Sciences)**

...

**Sir William and Lady Stevenson Associate Professor in  
Ophthalmology**

2000 Helen V. Danesh-Meyer, MBChB *Otago*,  
 FRANZCO

**Associate Professor in Ophthalmology (Honorary)**

Paul G. McMenamin, MSc *Glas.*, PhD

**Desmond Hadden Senior Lecturer in Ophthalmology**

1999 Jennifer P. Craig, BSc PhD *Glas.*, MCOptom  
*UK*, FAAO USA

**Senior Lecturers**

2003 Susan E. Ormonde, MBChB *Bristol*,  
 FRCOphth *UK*  
 1998 Trevor Sherwin, BSc PhD *Kent*  
 2003 Andrea Vincent, MBChB, FRANZCO

**Honorary Senior Lecturer**

Christina N. Grupcheva, MD *Varna*, DO *Sofia*, PhD

**Desmond Hadden Research Fellow**

Andreas Müller, PhD *Glas.*

**Maurice and Phyllis Paykel Research Fellow**

...

**Clinical Research Fellows**

Jagjit Singh Kilhotra, MBBS *Syd.*, MMed *Syd.*,  
 FRANZCO  
 Richard Johnson, BOptom, MCOptom *UK*, FAAO  
 USA  
 Wilda Laux, BSc, PhD  
 Dipika Patel, MA *Camb.*, BMBCh *Oxf.*, MRCOphth  
*UK*  
 Krista Scott, MD *Br.Col.*, FRCSC(*Can*)  
 Thomas H. Stumpf, BSc BM *S'ton.*, PhD *Bristol*,  
 FRCOphth *UK*  
 Hirut F. von Lany, MD *Addis Ababa*, DO *Hebrew*  
*Univ. Jerusalem*, FRCOphth *UK*

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Rachel Barnes, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Stephen Best, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCO  
 Mark Donaldson, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Michael Fisk, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Trevor Gray, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Peter Hadden, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCO  
 Richard Hart, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Carolyn Hope, MBChB *Dund.*, FRANZCO  
 Tahira Malik, MBChB *St And.*, FRCOphth *UK*  
 Nick Mantell, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Justin Mora, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Stephen Ng, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCO  
 David Pendergrast, MBChB, FRACS, FRANZCO  
 Philip Polkinghorne, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCO  
 Paul Rosser, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Dianne Sharp, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCO  
 Brian Sloan, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 C. Straker, MBChB *Witw.*, FCS *S.Af.*, FRCSEd.,  
 FRANZCO

**PAEDIATRICS****Head of Department**

M. Innes Asher, ONZM, BSc, MBChB, FRACP

**Personal Assistant to the Head of Department**

Va Strong

**Professors**

1981 M. Innes Asher, ONZM, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
 1989 Jane E. Harding, ONZM, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc,  
 MBChB, FRACP (*jointly with Obstetrics &*  
*Gynaecology and Liggins*)

**Professor of Child Health Research**

1984 Edwin A. Mitchell, BSc MBBS *Lond.*, DCH,  
 DSc, FRACP, FRCPC

**Associate Professors**

- 1991 Wayne S. Cutfield, MBChB DCH *Otago* MD, FRACP  
 1993 Cameron C. Grant, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRACP, FAAP

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1997 Malcolm Battin, MBChB *Liv.*, MRCP, FRCPC, FRACP (*jointly with Obstetrics & Gynaecology*)  
 2002 Frank Bloomfield, BSc MBChB *Manc.*, PhD MRCP UK, FRACP  
 1997 Catherine A. Byrnes, MBChB, MRCAP  
 1998 Phillipa M. Clark, BM DM DCH *S'ton.*, MRCP *Lond.*, MRCPCH, FRACP  
 2003 Elizabeth Edwards, MBChB *Leeds*, DCH *Otago*, PhD, FRACP  
 1997 Paul Hofman, MBChB, DipObst, FRACP, RNZCOG, FMGEMS US  
 1999 Alison M. Leversha, MBChB, DipObst, FRACP, MPH  
 1976 Maxwell C. Morris, MBChB *Otago* FRACP, FRCP *Can.*

**Senior Lecturer in Paediatric Surgery**

- 1993 R. Stuart Ferguson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

**Senior Research Fellows**

- 1982 Shiva Reddy, DipSc MSc *Otago*, PhD (*jointly with Biological Sciences*)  
 1995 John M. D. Thompson, MSc, PhD

**Research Fellows**

- 2003 Shannon Brothers, MBChB *Witw.*  
 2002 Florina Chan-Mow, MBChB DCH *Otago*, DPH  
 2003 Diane Emery, BSc, BHB, MSc, MBChB, FRACP  
 2003 Catherine Jackson, MBChB, DipPaeds  
 2003 David McNamara, MBChB, DipObst  
 2003 Harriet Miles, BSc MBBS *Nott.*, MRCPCH UK  
 2002 Sharon Wong, MBChB, DipPaeds

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

- Richard P. Aickin, BMedSc MBChB DCH *Otago*, FRACP  
 Colin S. Barber, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 David M. J. Barry, MBChB *Otago*, DCH MRCP UK, FRCP, FRACP  
 Satvinder S. Bhatia, BM *S'ton.*, FRACP  
 Catherine Bremner, MBChB, FRACP  
 Simon E. Chin, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, DCH, FRACP  
 I. D. Tony De Sylva, MBBS *S.Lanka*, DCH MRCP *Lond.*  
 John G. Fleming, MBChB *Edin.*, DCH *Glas.*, FRCP *Lond.*, FRACP, FRCPC  
 Raewyn M. Gavin, MBChB, FRACP  
 Thomas L. Gentles, MBChB DipCH *Otago*, FRACP  
 Simon Hoare, MBChB *Liv.*, MRCP, FRCPC  
 Timothy S. Hornung, BA, MB BChir *Camb.*, MRCP  
 David L. Jamison, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Niall Patrick Kelly, BHB BD *Melb.*, MBChB DCH *Otago*, DipObst, FRACP  
 Graham H. Lear, BSc MBBS MRCP *Lond.*, FRACP, FRCPC  
 John B. Malcolm, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, DCH *RCH Glas.*, MRCPUK, FRACP  
 Rosemary E. Marks, BSc MBChB *Brist.*, DRCOG, FRACP

- Shuman Mitic, MD *Belgrade*, FRACP  
 David Montgomery, MBChB  
 Christopher D. Moyes, BA BChir MA MB *Cant.*, MRCP MD *Camb.*, FRCPC UK, FRACP  
 John Newman, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Wayne D. Nicholls, MBChB DCH *Otago*, DipObst, FRACP  
 Gillian M. Nixon, MBChB DCH *Otago*, FRACP MD *Melb.*  
 Clare P. O'Donnell, MBChB, DipObst *Otago*, DipPaeds, MSc *Well.*  
 Alan C. Parsons, MBChB *Brist.*, DipObst RCOG, DCH MRCP *Lond.*, FRCPC UK  
 Rakesh Patel, MBChB, DipPaeds, FRACP  
 Ralph E. K. Pinnock, BSc MBChB *Cape Town*, DCH *S.Af.*, FRACP  
 Marlon J. Radcliffe, MBChB *Witw.*, DCH FCP(Paeds) *S.Af.*  
 Susan R. Rudge, MBBS *Lond.*, DipObst RCOG, MRCP UK, DM *Nott.*, FRCP  
 Udaya Samarakkody, MS MB *Col.*, FRACS FRCS *Edin.*, DCH  
 Elizabeth R. Segedin, MBChB, FRACP  
 Alan Simpson, MBChB, DipPaeds, MSc, FRACP  
 Jan P. Sinclair, MBChB, FRACP  
 Jonathan R. Skinner, MBChB MD *Leic.*, MRCP UK, DCHRCP *Lond.*  
 Bobby Tsang, MBChB, FRACP  
 Vipul Upadhyay, MBBS *Ahmedabad*, MS, FRACS  
 Alison M. Vogel, MBChB DipObst DCH *Otago*, FRACP, MPH, MD  
 Lesley M. Voss, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Alison W. Wesley, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, DCH, FRACP  
 Callum J. Wilson, MBChB *Otago*, DipPaeds, DipObst, FRACP  
 Elizabeth Wilson, BSc MBBS *Lond.*, MRCP UK  
 Nigel J. Wilson, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst DCH MRCP *Lond.*  
 William Wong, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

**Clinical Senior Lecturers in Neonatology**

- David Bouchier, MBChB, MRCP UK, FRACP  
 David B. Knight, BA *Cant.*, BM BCh *Oxf.*, MRCP *Lond.*, FRACP  
 Carl A. Kuschel, MBChB, FRACP  
 Michael P. Meyer, MBChB *Rhodesia*, DCH, MRCP, MD  
 Lindsay Mildenhall, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
 Peter T. Nobbs, BSc MBChB FRCP *Ott.*  
 Harshad Patel, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
 R. Simon H. Rowley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Maisie C. Wong, MBChB MRCP *Lond.*, FRACP

**Clinical Lecturer**

- Terry Fleming, MHS, PGDipHSc

**Emeritus Professor**

- Robert B. Elliott, MBBS MD *Adel.*, FRACP

**PSYCHIATRY****Acting Head of Department**

- Simon Hatcher, BSc MBBS *Lond.*, MMedSc MRCPsych. MD *Leeds*, FRANZCP

**Administrator**

....

**Professors**

Robert R. Kydd, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRANZCP

**Senior Lecturers**

- 2001 Leah Andrews, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 2003 Ceri L. Evans, MBChB *Otago*, MRCPsych, MA  
*Oxf.*, MSc *Lond.*, DipForenMH *Lond.*  
 2001 Anthony T. Fernando III, BS, MD *Phil.*, ABPN  
 2002 Simon Hatcher, BSc MBBS *Lond.*, MMedSc  
 MRCPsych MD *Leeds*, FRANZCP  
 1987 Sally N. Merry, MBChB *Rhodesia*, FRANZCP  
 1988 M. L. Webster, MBChB, FRACP, FRANZCP

**Lecturers**

- 2001 Tania Cargo, BHB, PGDipClinPsych, MED  
 1989 Linda Chard, BA MSc *Calg.*  
 1991 Heather McDowell, MA, PGDipClinPsych,  
 PhD

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

- Margaret L. Aimer, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Deborah Antcliffe, MBChB *Otago*, MRCPsych,  
 FRANZCP  
 Katherine Appleton, MBChB *Leeds*, MRCPsych  
 Nick Argyle, MA MBBS *Camb.*, MRCPsych *Lond.*,  
 FRANZCP  
 Ming K. Au, MBBS *HK*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP  
 N. Baba-Milkic, MS MD *Nis. Yugoslavia*  
 Meryl Bacon, MBBS, MRCPsych *UK*, FRANZCP  
 R. Butler, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCPsych  
 J. Casey, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Clyde G. Cumming, MBChB *Otago*, MRCPsych,  
 FRANZCP  
 Susan Duff, MBChB *Liv.*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP  
 Prami Fernandez, MBBS *Madr.*, FRANZCP  
 Greg Finucane, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Allan R. Fraser, MBChB MPM *Otago*, MRCPsych,  
 FRANZCP  
 Chris Gale, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Ian Goodwin, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP  
 Michael Gudex, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Catherine Hapgood, MBBS, FRANZCP  
 Stefan Heed, MedLic *Goteborg*, Steg-I-Komp  
 psterapi, Led SyPsyk foren *Sweden*  
 Shailesh Kumar, MBBS *India*, MRCPsych MPhil  
*Lond.*, DPM  
 P. McColl, MBChB *Sheff.*, MRCPsych  
 Bede McIvor, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 R. Mendel, MBChB MD *Brazil*  
 Laurie-Jo J. Moore, AB *Calif.*, MD *Oregon*, ABPN  
 E. Nikolou MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP  
 Gavin Pilkington, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Gail Robinson, MBBCh *Witw.*, FFPsych *S.Af.*  
 O. Rooke, BM, MSc, MRCPsych, MRCGP  
 H. Sayer, MBChB *Otago*, RANZCP, FRCPCan  
 Tom Rudegair, MD, PhD  
 S. Sembhi, BM *S'ton.*, MSc *Lond.*, MRCPsych  
 Himandri Seth, MBBCh *Aberd.*, MRCPsych DipFM  
*Glas.*, DipObsMedGyn  
 Robert Shieff, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 J. Szelenbaum, MBChB MD *Warsaw*, FFPsych *S.Af.*  
 Rees Tapsell, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP  
 T. van Kralingen, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP  
 Mila G. Vukov, MSc PhD *Belgrade*  
 Z. Vuletic-Korac, PhD *Belgrade*  
 Sara Weeks, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Sai Wong, MBBS *HK*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP  
 Richard Worrall, MBChB, FRANZCP

**Clinical Lecturers**

- V. Ajello, MSc *Z'bwé*.  
 Andrew Cox, MBChB, DipObst, MRNZCGP  
 Craig Immelman, MBChB  
 Margaret Mitchell-Lowe, MBChB

**Honorary Professors**

- Ian R. H. Falloon, MBChB DSc *Otago*, DPM *Lond.*,  
 MRCPsych  
 James J. Wright, MBChB *Otago*, MRCPsych,  
 FRANZCP

**Honorary Associate Professors**

- Brian Barraclough, DM *Otago*, FRACP FRCPsych  
 FRCP DPM *Lond.*  
 David Chaplow, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP  
 John H. Coverdale, BSc MBChB *Otago*, DipObst,  
 ABPN FRANZCP  
 Robert G. Large, MBChB DPM *Cape Town*, PhD  
 FFPsych *S.Af.*, FRANZCP  
 S. Wayne Miles, MBChB MD *Otago*, DipPsych,  
 FRANZCP  
 G. John Turbott, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS, FRANZCP

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

- Melanie Abas, MBChB *Birm.*, MPhil MSc *Lond.*,  
 MRCPsych *UK*  
 Marie Israel, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Pamela S. Melding, MBChB *Liv.*, DipHSM *Massey*,  
 FFARCS, FRANZCP  
 Felicity Plunkett, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP  
 Alexander I. F. Simpson, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*,  
 FRANZCP

*Werry Centre for Child and Adolescent Mental Health*

**Director**

Sally N. Merry, MBChB *Rhodesia*, FRANZCP

**Associate Director**

S. Treanor, MA, DipClinPsych, RP

**Manager**

Amanda Bleckmann, BBS *Massey*, PGDipPsych

**SURGERY****Head of Department**

...

**Administrator**

Sally Adams

**Professors**

- 1995 Bryan R. Parry, MD *Otago*, FRCSEd, FRACS  
 1998 John A. Windsor, BSc *Otago*, MBChB, MD,  
 DipObst, FACS, FRACS

**Associate Professor**

1997 Susan Stott, PhD *Calif.*, MBChB, FRACS

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1998 Ian Bissett, MBChB MD, FRACS  
 1996 David Theobald, MBBS *Lond.*, FRCS, FRACS,  
 FAMS

**Senior Research Fellows**

- 1997 Anthony Phillips, MBChB  
 1989 Lindsay Plank, DPhil *Waik.*, MSc

**Research Fellow**

2002 Richard S. Flint, MBChB

**Clinical Professors**

- Stephen Munn, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS, FACS  
 James H. F. Shaw, BMedSc MD DSc *Otago*, FRACS

**Clinical Associate Professors**

✿Patrick G. Alley, MBChB *Otago*, DipProfEthics, FRACS  
 Jonathan Koea, MHB MBChB, MD, FRACS  
 John L. McCall, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACS  
 Stephen Streat, MBChB, FRACP

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Peter Christie, MBChB MD, FRACS  
 Ian D. S. Civil MBE, ED, BSc, MBChB, FRACS  
 Arend E. H. Merrie, MBChB *Leeds*, PhD *Otago*, FRACS  
 John Tuckey, MBChB MMedSc, FRACS

**Emeritus Professor**

Graham L. Hill, MD, ChM, FRCS, FRACS, FACS

**Honorary Professor**

Erik Heineman, MD *Groningen*, PhD *Rotterdam*

**SOUTH AUCKLAND CLINICAL SCHOOL****Head of South Auckland Clinical School**

Graham Mellsop, MBChB *Otago*, DPM MD *Melb.*, FRANZCP, MRCPsych

**Manager**

Peter Slocum, BA *ANU*

**ANAESTHESIOLOGY****Senior Lecturer**

2003 Craig Birch, MBChB DA *S.Af.*

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Denholm Crone, OstJ, MBChB *Liv.*, FANZCA, FFICANZCA, FJFICM  
 A. H. Mark, MBChB, FANZCA  
 Alan McLintic, MBChB *Glas.* MRCP *UK*, FANZCA, FRCA  
 S. A. Walker, MBChB, FANZCA  
 Tony Williams, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*

**MEDICINE****Professor**

1996 Harold H. Rea, MBChB *Edin.*, MD, FRACP, FRCPE

**Senior Lecturers**

1995 Briar Peat, MSc *Lond.*, DTM&H, RCP *UK* MBChB, FRACP  
 1999 Yogini R. Ratnasabapathy, MBBS *Madr.*, FRACP

**Research Fellow**

1998 Pathmanathan Sivakumaran, MBBS *S.Lanka*, MRCP *UK*, FRACP

**Clinical Associate Professors**

John Baker, MBChB, BSc, FRCPA, FRACP  
 Anthony Doyle, MBChB *Otago*, Amer B Cert Radiology, BSc, FRANCCP  
 Jeffrey Garrett, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Peter Gow, MBChB, BMedSci, FAFRM, FRACP  
 Johan B. Rosman, MD PhD *Heidelberg*, FRACP

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Bob Eason, MB BChir *Camb.*, DipObst, FRACP  
 Stephen Gerred, MBBS, FRACP  
 Geoff M. Green, MBChB, FRACP  
 John Griffiths, MBChB, FRACP  
 Wayne Hazell, MBBS *Monash*, DipObst, FRACEM  
 David Heaven, MBChB, FRACP

Andrew Kerr, MA, MBChB, FRACP

Albert Ko, MBBS, FRACP  
 Sunil Kumar, MBBS, FRACP  
 Dinesh Lal, MBBS, FRACP  
 Mayanna Lund, MBChB, FRACP  
 Harinder Malhotra, MBBS, MD, DM  
 Mark Marshall, MBChB, FRACP  
 Tony McClelland, MBChB, FCP, FRACP  
 Dave Nicholls, MBChB, FRACP, DSMSA  
 Ravinder Ogra, MBBS, MD, FRACP  
 Jeff Okpala, MBBS PNG, FRACP, FRCP  
 Brandon Orr-Walker, MHB, MBChB, FRACP  
 Susan Parry, MBChB, FRACP  
 Sunita Paul, MBBS *India*, FRACP  
 Steve Persson, MBBS, FRACP  
 Sharad Ratanjee, MBChB, FCP, FRACP  
 Roger M. Reynolds, BSc MBChB, *Otago*, FRACP  
 Toby Rose, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Darion Rowan, MBChB, FACP  
 Shankar K. Sankaran, BSc MBBS *India*, FRACP  
 Douglas Scott, MBChM *Otago*, FRACP  
 John D. R. Scott, MBChB, FRACP  
 Mary Seddon, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, MPH, FAFPHM  
 Pathmanathan Sivakumaran, MBBS *S.Lanka*, MRCP *UK*, FRACP  
 Jackie Smalldridge, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCP, FRANZCOG  
 Timothy Sutton, BSc, MBChB, MRCP *UK*, FRACP  
 Andrew B. Veale, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, DipDHHMed  
 David Voss, MBBS MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Anthony Williams, BMedSc, MBChB, FANZCA, FFICANZCA  
 Conroy Wong, MBChB DipObs *Otago*, FRACP CCST *UK*  
 Selwyn Wong, MBChB, FRACP

**OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY****Senior Lecturers**

1996 Alec Ekeroma, MBBS PNG, MBA, DipObst, FRANZCOG, MRCP  
 2004 Tal Jacobson, MA, MBBS, MRCP

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Keith Allenby, MBBS DRCP MRCP *Dund.*  
 Jyoti Kathuria, MBBS *India*, MD, MRCP, FRANZCOG  
 E. Ozumba, MBChB *Nigeria*, MObstetGynae *Liv.*, MRCP, FRANZCOG  
 Ravindra Raj, DSM *Fiji*, DipObst, FRANZCOG  
 Jackie Smalldridge, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCP, FRANZCOG

**PAEDIATRICS****Professor**

1977 Diana R. Lennon, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

**Senior Lecturer**

1996 Peter Watson, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst&Gyn, FRACP

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Simon Denny, MBChB, FRACP  
 John Newman, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

**Clinical Lecturer**

Theresa Fleming, BA, DipSocWork, MHS

## PSYCHIATRY

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Verity Humberstone, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Marie Israel, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 Reginald Marsh, MA PhD *Vict.*  
 Sylvia van Altvorst, MBChB, FRANZCP

## SURGERY

**Head of Department**

...

**Manager**

Visha Samy

**Professor**

2000 Iain G. Martin, MEd MD *Leeds*, FRCS,  
 FRACS

**Associate Professor**

2001 Rocco Paolo Pitto, MD *Erlangen-Nuremberg*,  
*Rome*, PhD *Nuremberg*

**Senior Lecturer**

2002 Andrew Hill, MBChB, MD, FRACS

**Lecturer**

2002 Vanessa Blair, MBChB

**Clinical Professor**

Randall Morton, MBBS FRACS MSc *S.Af.*

**Clinical Senior Lecturer**

Matthew Clark, MBChB, MD, FRACS

**Honorary Clinical Senior Lecturer**

Garnett Tregonning, MBChB, FRACS, FRCS

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

David Adams, MBChB, FRACS  
 Hesham Mehanna, BMed  
 Matthew Tomlinson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

## WAIKATO CLINICAL SCHOOL

**Head of Waikato Clinical School**

Jack H. Havill, BSc, MBChB *Otago*, FANZCA,  
 FJFICM

**Manager**

Raewyn Wooderson

## ANAESTHESIOLOGY

**Professor**

2001 James Sleigh, MBChB *Cape Town*,  
 DipAppStat *Massey*, MD, FANZCA, FJFICM,  
 FRCA

**Senior Lecturers**

2002 J. Barnard, MBChB, FANZCA  
 2002 H. Douglas, MBChB, ANZCA

**Research Fellow**

2002 Logan Voss, BSc *Well.*, PhD *Otago*

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Cameron Buchanan, MBChB *Otago*, DipObs,  
 FANZCA  
 A. Hatfield, MBChB, FANZCA  
 M. Thomas, MBChB *Leeds*, FRCA *UK*  
 Tom Watson, MBChB *Cape Town*, DipMgt(Health),  
 FANZCA, FFARCS  
 Murray Williams MBChB *Otago*, FANZCA

## GENERAL PRACTICE AND PRIMARY HEALTHCARE

**Senior Lecturer**

S. Lillis, MBChB, FRNZCGP, MGP

## MEDICINE

**Professor**

2003 David Simmons, MA MD *Camb.*, MRCPI,  
 FRACP, FRGS

**Associate Professors**

1990 John V. Conaglen, MBChB MD *Otago*,  
 FRACP  
 1999 Peter Jones, BMedSci, MBChB, PhD, MRCP,  
 FRACP

**Senior Lecturers**

1997 Gerry Devlin, MBChB, FRACP  
 1990 B. Hochstein, MBChB, FRACP

**Senior Research Fellow**

2003 Jarrod Haar, MMS PhD PGDipStratMgt  
 PGDipOrgBeh *Waik.*

**Clinical Associate Professors**

Amanda Oakley, MBChB, FRACP  
 Marius Rademaker, BM DM MRCP FRCP *Edin.*,  
 FRACP  
 R. Ramanathan, MBBS *Pondicherry*, DPM MD

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

D. Balog, MBBS *NSW*, FRACP  
 Giles Chanwai, MBChB, FACEM  
 N. Crook, MBChB *Aberd.*, MRCP *UK*  
 A. Doube, MBChB, FRACP  
 M. B. Duffill, MBChB DipDerm *Lond.* FRCP(Ed)  
 MRCP  
 R. Fisher, MBChB, FRACP  
 G. Hunt, MBChB, FRACP  
 Michael Jameson, MBChB MRCP *UK*, FRACP  
 N. C. Karalus, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
 I. Kennedy, MBChB, MD, FRACP  
 J. Long, MBChB FCP *S.Af.*, FRACP  
 F. Mayall, MBChB, MD, MRCPath  
 J. McLachlan, MBChB *Cape Town*, FCP *S.Af.*,  
 FRACP  
 Tonia Nicholson, MBChB, FACEM  
 Shameem Safih, MBChB, FACEM  
 Peter Stokes, MBChB, MD, FRACP  
 L. Wolmarans, MBChB UOFS, FCP *S.Af.*

**Clinical Lecturers**

Mazen Shasha MBChB MSc *Univ. of Basrah, Iraq*  
 R. Subramaniam, MBBS BMedSc *Melb.*, MD *Sri*  
*Lanka*

## NURSING

**Senior Lecturer**

Mark Smith, MSc, BHSc, PGDip Psych, RPN

**Lecturer**

Kathy Shaw, RCpN *Wairakei Institute of Technology*

## OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY

**Senior Lecturer**

2002 Nilaofer Meher-Homji, MBBS MD *India*,  
 MRCOG, FRANZCOG, DDU (*jointly with*  
*Psychiatry*)

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Alison Barrett, BSc MD FRCS *Can.*, FRANZCOG  
 (*jointly with Psychiatry*)

A. J. Haslam, MBChB *Otago*, FRCOG, MRCOG, FRANZCOG  
 D. Pilkington, MBChB *Cape Town*, FRANZCOG  
 S. Waymouth, MBChB, FRANZCOG

**Clinical Lecturer**

Corli Roodt, B.Cur *P.Elizabeth*

**OPHTHALMOLOGY****Clinical Senior Lecturer**

C. Straker, MBChB *Witw. FCS S.Af.*, FRCSEd., FRANZCO

**PAEDIATRICS****Senior Lecturers**

2000 Noel Manikkam, BSc *Durb.*, MBChB *Cape Town*, MMed, FRACP

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

D. Bouchier, MBChB MRCP *UK*, FRACP  
 Stephen Bradley, MBChB, DipObst, FRACP  
 David Graham, MBChB, DCH, FRACP  
 Fraser Maxwell, MBChB, DCH, FRACP  
 J. Morreau, MBChB, FRACP

**PSYCHIATRY****Clinical Senior Lecturers**

P. Daborn, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCPsych.  
 S. Kumar, MBBS MRCPsych MPhil *Lond.*, DPM  
 K. Majeed, MBChB, MRCPsych., FRANZCP  
 J. Meher-Homji, MBBS, DPM, MD, MRCPsych.  
 J. Strachan, MBChB *Edin.*, MRCPsych., FRANZCP

**SURGERY****Senior Lecturers**

2001 I. Campbell, MBChB, FRACS  
 2003 T. Vasudevan, MBBS *India*, FRACS *Vasc.*,  
 General, FRCS *Glas.*

**Clinical Associate Professor**

T. Gregor, MBChB, FRCS FACS *Edin.*, PhD *S.Af.*

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

D. Clews, MBChB, FRACS  
 U. Samarakkody, FRACS FRCS *Edin.*, DCH, MS,  
 MBBS *Colombo*  
 D. Vernon, MBChB, FRACS

**FACULTY EDUCATION UNIT****Director**

...

**Administrator**

Dulcie Brake, MA

**Senior Lecturer**

2003 Sally Clarke, BSc PhD *W.Aust.*

**LEARNING TECHNOLOGY UNIT****Director**

Iain Doherty, BA(Hons) MLitt *Newcastle(UK)*, PhD  
*Edin.*

**Administrator**

Helena Mill

**Senior Tutor**

2004 Adam Blake, BCom, LLB

**CLINICAL SKILLS RESOURCE CENTRE****Director**

Andrew Wearn, MBChB MMedSc *Birm.*, MRCP

**LIGGINS INSTITUTE****Director**

Peter D. Gluckman CNZM, MBChB *Otago*,  
 MMedSc, DSc, FRACP, FRCPC, FRS,  
 FRSNZ

**Deputy Director**

Jane E. Harding ONZM, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc, MBChB,  
 FRACP, FRSNZ (*jointly with Obstetrics &  
 Gynaecology and Paediatrics*)

**Associate Directors**

Bernhard H. Breier, DipIng *Gott.*, PhD  
 Wayne Cutfield, DCH *Otago*, MBChB, MD, FRACP  
 (*jointly with Paediatrics*)

Peter E. Lobie, BMedSci MBBS *Qld.*, PhD *Sweden*  
 Murray D. Mitchell, DPhil *Oxf.*, DSc *Liv.*, CChem,  
 FRSC, FRSNZ

**Manager**

Mark S. E. Shepherd, BSc *Buckingham*, DEUG *Aix-  
 Marseilles*

**University Distinguished Professor**

1980 Peter D. Gluckman, CNZM MBChB *Otago*,  
 MMedSc, DSc, FRACP, FRCPC, FRS,  
 FRSNZ

**Professors**

1996 R. Stewart Gilmour, BSc PhD *Glas.*  
 1995 Des F. Gorman, PhD *Syd.*, BSc, MBChB,  
 FAFOM, DipDHM (*jointly with Medicine and  
 Occupational Medicine*)  
 1986 Dianne C. McCarthy, BA, MSc, PhD (*jointly  
 with Psychology*)  
 1994 Murray D. Mitchell, DPhil *Oxf.*, DSc *Liv.*,  
 CChem, FRSC, FRSNZ

**Associate Professors**

1987 Bernhard H. Breier, DipIng *Gott.*, PhD  
 1990 Wayne Cutfield, DCH *Otago*, MBChB, MD,  
 FRACP (*jointly with Paediatrics*)  
 2003 Peter E. Lobie, BMedSci MBBS *Qld.*, PhD  
*Sweden*  
 1994 Jenny A. Westgate, MBChB, MD, MRCOG,  
 FRANZCOG (*jointly with Paediatrics*)  
 1984 Chris Williams, MSc *Waik.*, PhD

**Senior Lecturers**

2002 Frank Bloomfield, BSc, MBChB *Manc.*, PhD,  
 MRCP *UK*, FRACP (*jointly with Obstetrics &  
 Gynaecology and Paediatrics*)  
 1997 Paul Hofman, MBChB, DipObst, FRACP  
 (*jointly with Paediatrics*)  
 1995 Jeffrey A. Keelan, BSc *Liv.*, PhD (*jointly with  
 Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology*)  
 2003 Susan Morton, PhD DipPHTM *Lond.*,  
 BSc(Hons) MBChB DipTchg (*jointly with  
 Epidemiology and Biostatistics*)

**Senior Research Fellows**

2000 Mhoyra Fraser, BSc, MPhil, PhD  
 1990 Jian Guan, MBChB *China*, PhD  
 1998 Yilin Huang, MBChB MMedSc *China*  
 2004 Dongxu Liu, MSc, PhD  
 1995 Mark Oliver, MSc *Waik.*, PhD

**Research Fellows**

- 2004 Alex Buckley, BSc(Hons), PhD  
 2004 Starling Emerald, MSc, MPhil  
 2004 Shirley George, MSc, PhD  
 2001 Andrea Graves, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 2004 Mark Green, MSc  
 2004 Craig Jefferies, BHB, MBChB, DipPaeds, FRACP  
 2004 Jason Londen, MSc, PhD  
 2003 Harriet Miles, BMedSci BMBS Nott., MRCPCH (*jointly with Paediatrics*)  
 2000 Catherine Pinal, BA UCSC, PhD UCLA  
 2004 Arjan Scheepens, BSc(Hons), PhD  
 2004 Farhad Shafei, MSc  
 1995 Mark Vickers, MSc, PhD

**Postdoctoral Research Fellows**

- 2003 Nichola Thompson, BSc PhD *Card.*

**Clinical Research Fellow**

- Dyanne Wilson, MBChB, DCH

**Honorary Research Fellows**

- John Bass, BSc PhD *Lond.*, FRSNZ  
 Malcolm Battin, MBChB *Liv.*, MRCP, FRCPCH, FRACP  
 Terrie Inder, MD, FRACP, MBChB  
 Shlomo Shapira, MD *Israel*  
 Frank Sieg, MSc *Berlin*, PhD  
 Ernest Sirimanne, BVSc AH *G.B.Pant University*, MPhil  
 Gregory Thomas, BScAgric, PhD *W.Aust.*  
 James Wright, MD, FRACP, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

**Honorary Visiting Professor**

- Mark Hanson MA, DPhil, FRCOG

**SCHOOL OF MEDICAL SCIENCES****Head of School**

- John Fraser, BSc *Well.*, PhD

**Manager**

- Stuart Glasson, NZCE NZTC *Auck.UT.*

**ANATOMY WITH RADIOLOGY****Head of Department**

- Cynthia G. Jensen, AB *Brown*, PhD *Minn.*

**Administrator**

- Valerie McMurtry

**Professors of Anatomy**

- 1978 Richard L. M. Faull, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, PhD DSc, FRSNZ  
 1993 Colin R. Green, MSc, PhD, DSc

**Professor of Radiology**

...

**Associate Professors in Anatomy**

- 1973 Cynthia G. Jensen, AB *Brown*, PhD *Minn.*  
 1976 Mervyn J. Merrilees, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Tor.*, DSc *Otago*  
 1989 Louise F. B. Nicholson, MSc, PhD  
 1991 C. Anthony Poole, BSc PhD *Otago*  
 1984 J. Martin Wild, MA *Cant.*, PhD

**Senior Lecturer in Anatomy**

- 1995 Saad Y. Al-Ali, MBChB *Mosul.*, PhD *Lond.*

**Senior Lecturer in Radiology**

...

**Senior Lecturer in Biomedical Imaging**

- 1996 Alistair A. Young, BE, ME, PhD (*jointly with Physiology*)

**Lecturer in Anatomy**

- 2001 Phil Blyth, BHB, MBChB

**Senior Tutors**

- 1982 Colin G. Quilter, PhD *Otago*, BSc  
 2000 Peter Riordan, BSc, MSc *Waik.*

**Research Fellows**

- 2001 Henry J. Waldvogel, MSc, PhD  
 1998 Matthew Williams, MSc, PhD

**Postdoctoral Research Fellows**

- 1999 Rachel Helliwell, BSc(Hons) *Hull.*, PhD *Aberd.*  
 2002 M. Fabiana Kubke, Lic *Buenos Aires*, MSc PhD *Conn.*  
 2002 Susan McGlashan, BSc *Leeds*, PhD *Lond.*  
 2003 Shamim Shaikh, MSc PhD *Mumbai*  
 2004 Willeke M.C. van Roon-Mom, MSc *Groningen*, PhD

**Clinical Senior Lecturers in Radiology**

- Colleen J. Bergin, BSc, MBChB, FRACR  
 Mary Louise Herdson, MBChB, FRACR  
 Barbara S. Hochstein, BSc, MBChB, FRACR

**Emeritus Professors**

- Colin J. Alexander, MBChB NZ, MD *Otago*, HonFRCR, FRACR, HonFACR  
 John B. Carman, BMedSc MBChB NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 Stuart W. Heap, MBBS *Lond.*, FRACR, FRCR

**Honorary Professors**

- Patricia R. Bergquist DBE, MSc PhD NZ, DSc, FRSNZ  
 Rita L. Teele, BA MD *Boselen*

**Honorary Associate Professor**

- Brenda V. Dawson, BA *Keele*, MD *Arizona*, FASCP, FCAP

**AUCKLAND CANCER SOCIETY RESEARCH CENTRE****Director**

- William A. Denny, ONZM, MSc, PhD, DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC

**Co-director**

- Bruce C. Baguley, ONZM, BSc, PhD, FRSNZ

**Administrator**

- Leigh-Anne Wadley

**Professors**

- 1968 Bruce C. Baguley, ONZM, BSc, PhD, FRSNZ  
 1972 William A. Denny, ONZM, MSc, PhD, DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC  
 1988 Lynnette R. Ferguson, DPhil *Oxf.*, MSc, DSc  
 1980 William R. Wilson, BSc *Well.*, PhD

**Associate Professors**

- 1993 Robert F. Anderson, MSc, PhD, CChem, FRSC  
 1987 Lai-Ming Ching, MSc, PhD  
 1984 Brian D. Palmer, DIC *Lond.*, PhD  
 1980 Gordon W. Rewcastle, MSc, PhD, FNZIC

**Senior Lecturer**

- 1988 Nuala Helsby, BSc(Hons) *Staff.*, PhD *Liv.*

**Senior Research Fellows**

- 1963 Graham J. Atwell, MSc  
 1986 Maruta Boyd, BSc *W.Ont.*, PhD *McM.*

- 1991 Michael P. Hay, BSc(Hons) PhD *Cant.*  
 1987 Philip Kestell, BSc *Herts.*, PhD *Birm.*  
 1987 Ho H. Lee, BSc *Sing.*, MSc *Waik.*, PhD  
 1994 Jeffrey B. Smaill, BSc(Hons) PhD *Otago*  
 1995 Julie A. Spicer, PhD *Massey*  
 1991 Moana Tercei, PhD *Camb.*, MSc  
 1991 Andrew M. Thompson, BSc(Hons) PhD *Cant.*  
 1988 David C. Ware, BS *Berk.*, PhD *Stan.*

**Research Fellows**

- 2002 Adrian Blaser, MSc, PhD *Bern.*  
 2002 David J. A. Bridewell, MSc, PhD  
 2003 Darby G. Brooke, MSc, PhD *Cant.*  
 1992 Swarna A. Gamage, BSc *Kelaniya*, PhD  
*Otago*  
 2003 Catherine Gilchrist, BSc(Hons) PhD *ANU*  
 1999 Kevin O. Hicks, BSc BVSc *Massey*, PhD  
 2003 Jackie D. Kendall, MSc PhD *Nott.*  
 2004 Guo Liang-Lu, MSc *Hebei Normal University*,  
 PhD *Nankai*  
 2002 Brent S. Lindsay, MSc, PhD  
 2002 Stephanie M. Nelson, BSc *Colo. State*, PhD  
*Tufts*  
 2001 Adam V. Patterson, MA *Oxf.*, PhD  
*Oxf. Brookes*  
 2004 Victoria Phillips, BSc(Hons) *Birm.*  
 2000 Martin Philpott, MSc, PhD  
 1992 Frederik Pruijn, MSc, PhD *VU Amsterdam*  
 2003 Christopher Richardson, BSc(Hons) PhD  
*Cant.*  
 2003 Freddy Rivault, DEA PhD *Poitiers*  
 2001 Sujata S. Shinde, BSc PhD *Pune*  
 2000 Ralph J. Stevenson, MSc PhD  
 2001 Hamish S. Sutherland, MSc, PhD  
 2001 Claudette A. Weir, BSc(Hons), PhD  
 1988 See-Tarn Woon, BSc *Waik.*, PhD *UAF*  
 1998 Shangjin Yang, MSc *East China*, PhD *Graz*  
*TU*  
 2004 Liangli Zhao, MSc *Chongqing*, PhD

**Honorary Professor**

- Michael P. Findlay, MBChB, MD *Otago*, FRACP

**Honorary Associate Professors**

- Mark J. McKeage, MBChB *Otago*, PhD *Lond.*,  
 MMedSc, FRACP  
 James W. Paxton, BSc PhD *Glas.*

**Honorary Senior Research Fellows**

- Graeme J. Finlay, BTh MSc *S.Af.*  
 Andrew N. Shelling, BPhEd., PhD

**Honorary Research Fellow**

- Bronwyn Siim, MSc PhD

**MOLECULAR MEDICINE AND PATHOLOGY****Head of Department**

- Peter J. Browett, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*, FRACP,  
 FRCPA

**Senior Department Secretary**

- Mahazarin Mirza

**Professors**

- 1989 Peter J. Browett, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*,  
 FRACP, FRCPA  
 1991 Kathryn E. Crosier, MBChB *Otago*, PhD,  
 FRACP, FRCPA  
 1988 Mike Dragunow, MSc PhD *Otago* (jointly with  
*Pharmacology*)  
 1996 Matthew J. During, BSc, MBChB, DSc,  
 FRACP, FACP

- 2002 Michael Findlay, MBChB, MD, FRACP  
 1989 John D. Fraser, BSc(Hons) *Well.*, PhD  
 2004 Peter Shepherd BSc PhD

**Associate Professors**

- 1984 Roger J. Booth, MSc, PhD (jointly with *Health*  
*Psychology*)  
 1987 Philip S. Crosier, PhD *Otago*, MSc  
 1988 Geoffrey W. Krissansen, BSc(Hons) PhD  
*Otago*  
 1992 Fiona M. McQueen, MBChB *Otago*, MD,  
 FRACP  
 1988 Mark G. Thomas, MBChB, MD, DipObst,  
 FRACP

**Senior Lecturers**

- 2003 Leanne C. Berkahn, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP,  
 FRCPA  
 2003 Marianne B. Empson, MMed *Syd.*, MBChB,  
 FRACP, FRCPA  
 2001 Graeme J. Finlay, BTh MSc PhD *S.Af.*  
 1988 Nuala Helsby, BSc(Hons) *Staff.*, PhD *Liv.*  
 1998 David J. Holland, PhD *Syd.*, MBChB, MHB,  
 FRACP, FRCPA  
 1995 Andrew N. Shelling, BPhEd, PhD (jointly with  
*Obstetrics and Gynaecology*)  
 1996 Bronwyn G. Siim, MSc PhD  
 2001 Simon Swift, BSc(Hons) PhD *Nott.*  
 2003 Helen Withers, BSc DipSc *Massey*, PhD  
*Camb.*

**Senior Research Fellows**

- 1997 Jagat Kanwar, BSc *Shimla*, MSc *Ludhiana*,  
 PhD *Chandigarh*  
 1995 Euphemia Leung, MSc *Western Kentucky*,  
 PhD  
 1993 Kathleen G. Mountjoy, BSc *Massey*, PhD  
 (jointly with *Physiology*)  
 1995 Thomas K. Proft, MSc PhD *Heidel.*  
 1997 Debbie Young, MSc *Otago*, PhD

**Research Fellows**

- 1999 Ji Zhong Bai, BSc *Shanxi*, PhD, DipBiochem  
*Wuhan*  
 2003 Indira Basu, MSc PhD *Calc.*  
 2000 Maria Vega Flores, BSc(Hons) *Philippines*,  
 PhD *NSW*  
 2003 Scott Graham, BSc(Hons) *Strath.*, PhD  
*Aberd.*  
 1999 Julia A. Horsfield, BSc(Hons) *Well.*, PhD  
*Otago*, DipAppSci *Well.*  
 2003 Maggie Kalev, MBChB, PhD, FRCPA  
 1998 Rupinder K. Kanwar, BSc *Punjab*, MSc  
*Ludhiana*, PhD *Chandigarh*  
 2000 Matthias Klugmann, Dipl.MSc, PhD *Heidel.*  
 1991 Patricia A. Lawlor, MSc PhD  
 2003 Ronald Scott Mead, MBChB, PhD  
 1997 Alexandre I. Muravlev, BSc PhD *Novosibirsk*  
 2004 Sushil Pandey, MSc, PhD  
 2002 Birgit Schrage, DipBioL PhD *Stuttgart*  
 2004 Lian Wu, MSc, PhD

**Clinical Associate Professors**

- Rohan Ameratunga, MBChB, PhD  
 Hilary A. Blacklock, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA  
 Rod B. Ellis-Pegler, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA  
 DTM&H *Lond.*  
 John K. French, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*, MSc  
*Lond.*, PhD *Adel.*, FRACP, FESC (jointly with  
*Medicine*)  
 Paul A. Ockelford, BSc, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

Barry J. Snow, MBChB, FRACP, FRCP(C) (*jointly with Medicine*)

D. Graeme Woodfield, MBChB NZ, PhD *Edin.*,  
FRCP, FRCPA

#### Clinical Senior Lecturers

C. S. Benjamin, MD *Madr.*, FRACR

Judith Baranyai, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPATH

George T. C. Chan, MBChB, FRCP, FRCPA, FHKCP

K. Y. Chau, MBBS *HK*, MRCPATH

John W. Childs, MBChB, FRACP, FRACR

Mary L. Christie, MBChB, FRCPA

Alison D. Cluroe, BMedSc BMBS *Nott.*, FRCPA

M. C. (Kitty) Crosson, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPA

Peter Flannagan, BMBS, *Nott.*, FRCP, FRCPATH,  
FRCPA

Rick A. Franklin, MBChB *Otago*, Dip Venereology  
*Lond.*, BSc, DipObst, FACSHP

Paul L. Harper, MD *Sheff.*, MRCPATH, FRCP, FRACP

Tim E. Hawkins, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

Ross Henderson, MBChB, PhD, FRACP, FRCPA

Sharon R. Jackson, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

C. Jose, MD *Madr.*, FRACR

Alan R. King, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPA

Jim Kirker, BSc, MBChB, FRCPA

Campbell V. Kyle, PhD *Utah*, MBChB, MMedSci,  
DipObst, FRACP

Selwyn D. R. Lang, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA

Andrew McCann, MBChB, FRACR

Mary V. Miller, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRCPA

Arthur J. Morris, BSc MBChB *Otago*, MD,  
DipABMM, FRCPA

Dave Nicholls, MBChB, DipSportsMed, FRACP

Stephen J. Palmer, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

Murray R. Reid, DipObst DCH Dip Venereology  
*Lond.*, MPH, FACSHP

Sally Roberts, BSc, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

Gordon A. Royle, MBChB, MMedSc, FMGEMS,  
FRCPA

David R. Simpson, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

Simon R. Stables, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPA

Pennie J. Symmans, MBChB, FRCPA

Beth J. L. Synek, MBChB, FRCPA

Susan L. Taylor, MBChB, FRCPA

Edward P. Theakston, MBChB, FRCPA

Paul Thompson, BHB NZ, MBChB, MD, FRACP  
MD, FRACP

A. Rae Varcoe, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA

Jane C. Vuletic, MBChB, FRACS, FRCPA

Andrew Woodhouse, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*,  
FRACP DTM&H *Lond.*

Leon Jonathan Zwi, BSc MBBCh *Wits.*, PhD,  
FRCPA

#### Emeritus Professor of Experimental Pathology

John Gavin, BDS NZ, DDS BSc(Hons) PhD, DSc  
*Otago*, FRCPATH, FRCPA, FFOP

#### Honorary Professors of Molecular Medicine

Peter L. Bergquist, MSc NZ, PhD, DSc, FRSNZ

Kennedy F. Shortridge, BSc *Qu.*, PhD *Lond.*

#### Honorary Associate Professor of Forensic Medicine

Tim Koelmeyer, MBBS *Ceyl.*, FRACS, FRCPA

#### Honorary Associate Professors of Pathology

Barry D. Evans, MD *Lond.*, MRCP, FRACP

Vernon J. Harvey, MD *Lond.*, MRCP, FRACP

#### Honorary Senior Research Fellows in Molecular Medicine and Pathology

William G. H. Abbott, MBChB, PhD, FRACP

Lois C. Armiger, BSc NZ, MSc, PhD

Mark Rees, BSc(Hons) PhD *Cardiff*, MRCPATH *Lond.*

Frank H. Sims, MSc MD *Otago*, PhD *Edin.*, FRCPA,  
FAACB

Russell G. Snell, MSc *Otago*, PhD *Cardiff* (*jointly with Anatomy*)

Neil S. Van de Water, BSc *Massey*, PhD *Lond.*,  
DipSc *Massey*

#### PHARMACOLOGY AND CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY

##### Head of Department

James Paxton, BSc PhD *Glas.*

##### Administrator

Kavita Hussein

##### Professor

1988 Michael Dragunow, MSc PhD *Otago*

##### Associate Professors

1983 Nicholas H. G. Holford, MSc MBChB *Manc.*,  
MRCP, FRACP

1996 Mark J. McKeage, MBChB *Otago*, PhD *Lond.*,  
MMedSc, FRACP

1976 James W. Paxton, BSc PhD *Glas.*

##### Senior Lecturers in Pharmacology

2000 Bronwen Connor, BSc PhD

2000 Michelle Glass, BSc PhD

1995 Jeffrey A. Keelan, BSc *Liv.*, MSc, PhD

##### Senior Lecturer in Toxicology

1997 Malcolm Tingle, BSc PhD *Liv.*

##### Senior Tutors

2001 Liam Anderson, BTech, PGDipForensic

1994 Julene Payne, MSc

##### Research Fellows

2002 Carol Gray, BA *Trin. Col. Dublin*, PhD  
*National University of Ireland, Galway*

2004 Scott Graham, BSc(Hons) *Strath.*, PhD *Aberd.*

2000 Jeffrey Greenwood, BTech *Massey*, PhD *UBC*

2003 Stephanie Hughes, BSc(Hons) PhD *Well.*

##### Honorary Associate Professor

Richard Milne, MSc *Cant.*, PhD *Otago*

##### Nutrition

##### Head

Lynnette R. Ferguson, DPhil *Oxf.*, DSc

##### Research Fellows

2001 Nishi Karunasinghe, BSc MPhil PhD *Macq.*

2001 Martin Philpott, MSc, PhD

#### PHYSIOLOGY

##### Head of Department

Gary Housley, MSc, PhD

##### Administrator

Purisima Dungca, BSc *UNueva Caceres*

##### Professor of Neurophysiology

1986 Janusz Lipski, MD PhD DSc *Warsaw*

##### Professor

1998 Mark Cannell, BSc PhD *Lond.*

##### Associate Professors

1994 Alistair Gunn, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRACP

1989 Gary Housley, MSc, PhD

1996 Simon Malpas, BSc *Well.*, PhD *Otago*

1977 Bruce Smaill, BE BSc *Cant.*, DIC PhD *Lond.*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1972 Noel J. Dawson, BSc PhD *NE*  
 1990 Paul Donaldson, BSc PhD *Otago*  
 1995 Ian LeGrice, BE, DipTP, MBChB, PhD  
 1982 Denis Loiselle, MSc *Alta.*, PhD *Dal.*, DipPhEd  
*Otago*  
 1996 A. A. Young, ME, PhD (*jointly with Anatomy  
 with Radiology*)

**Lecturers**

- 1995 Kim Dirks, BSc *McG.*, MSc, PhD  
 1998 Christian Soeller, DipPhys PhD *Goettingen*

**Senior Tutors**

- 1998 Nicole Hodgetts, MSc  
 1994 Marie Ward, MSc, PhD

**Tutor**

- 2001 David Newstead, BSc

**Senior Research Fellows**

- 1996 Laura Bennet, MA, PhD  
 1987 Denis de Castro, MBChB, MD  
 1993 Kathleen Mountjoy, BSc *Massey*, PhD  
 2003 Michelle Tatnell, PhD *Lond.*

**Research Fellows**

- 2002 Sheryl George, MSc PhD *Calicut*  
 2002 Sarah-Jane Guild, ME PhD  
 1999 Marc Jacobs, MS *Stan.*, PhD *Camb.*  
 2001 Paul O'Callaghan, MSc PhD *Card.*  
 1994 Srdjan Vlajkovic, MD MSc PhD *Belgrade*

**Postdoctoral Research Fellows**

- 1999 Carolyn J. Barret, BSc DipSc PhD *Otago*  
 2004 Noriyuki Hoya, MD PhD *Keio*  
 2004 David Wu, MD *Shanghai*, MHSc, PhD

**SCHOOL OF NURSING****Head of School**

- Judy Kilpatrick, CNZM, BA, FCNA(NZ), RGON

**Manager**

- Melody Urlich

**Associate Professors**

- 1993 Robyn Dixon, MA PhD  
 2003 Mary Finlayson, BSocSci PhD *Waik.*, RCpN,  
 MCNA  
 1999 Margaret P. Horsburgh, EdD *C.Sturt.*, MA  
 DipEd, FCNA(NZ), RGON, RM  
 1999 Judy A. Kilpatrick, CNZM, BA, FCNA(NZ),  
 RGON  
 2002 Nicola North, MA PhD *Massey*, FCNA(NZ),  
 A/FACHSE, RM, RGON

**Senior Lecturers**

- 2000 Heather Baker, BA PGDipSocSci *Massey*,  
 MA, RGON, RM  
 2004 Fiona Brewin-Brown, MCN MBA  
 1999 Lyn Dyson, MA *Massey*, RGON  
 2001 Helen Hamer, MN *Massey*, RPN, RGN  
 2004 Joyce Hendricks, BN BSocSci *Curtin*, MNS  
*Deakin*, PhD *Syd.*  
 2001 Michelle Honey, BASocSci MPhil *Massey*,  
 RGON  
 2002 Bridie Kent, BSc *Epsom*, PhD *Wales*, FRSH,  
 RGON  
 2002 Katrina Lenzie-Smith, MA *Keele*, RPN  
 2002 A. Gigi Lim, BScN *Phillipines*, DipSocSci  
*Massey*, MHSc, RCpN  
 2002 Di Marshall, BASocSci MA *Massey*, RGON  
 2002 Brian McKenna, BA MHSc, RCpN

- 2002 Ann McKillop, MA *Massey*, RGON

- 2001 Jan Nichols, MPH, RGON

- 1997 Anthony O'Brien, MPhil *Massey*, RGN, RPN

- 2000 Matthew Parsons, PhD *Lond.*, RGN

- 1999 Nicolette Sheridan, MPH *Massey*, DipOHP  
*Otago*, RGON

- 2002 Susan Waterworth, MSc MNurs *DANS Manc.*,  
 RGN

**Lecturers**

- 2001 Jagpal Benipal, BHSc MBS *Massey*,  
 A/FACHSE, RCpN

- 2001 Barbara Daly, BSc, MHSc, RCpN

- 2003 Maria Lobo, MSc PhD *Born*, PGDipEdMgt

- 2003 Duncan Milne, BHSc *Auck.UT*, PGDipHSc,  
 RCpN

- 2003 Kathi Peri, MHSc *Otago*, RGON

- 2002 Paula Renouf, BA *Otago*, MS UCSF, RCpN,  
 FCNA

**Senior Tutors**

- 2004 Jane Clarke, BHSc *NSW*, MNursing *Flin*.  
 2003 Helen Malcolm, BN MN *Otago*, RGON  
 2003 Heather Park, BN BA *Otago*, RCpN  
 2003 Reena Patel, BHSc *Auck.UT*, PGDipHI *Otago*

**Research Fellows**

- 2004 Patrick Firkin, BA(Hons) *Massey*  
 2003 Hugh Senior, MSc, DPH

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

- Jane Bebbington, MHSc *Auck.UT*, RCpN  
 Margareth Broodkorn, BHSc PGDipHSc, RGON  
 Taima Campbell, BN *Waik.*, RGON  
 Sid J. Cuthbertson, MHSc DipATE *Auck.UT*, RGON  
 Merian Litchfield, BA *Well.*, MS PhD *Minn.*  
 Mary MacManus, MA, RGON, FCNA(NZ)  
 Jean Ross, BA *Massey*, MA *Well.*, RGON  
 Mark Smith, BHSc *Auck.UT*, PGDipPsych *Melb.*,  
 MSc *Liv.*, RPN (*jointly with Waikato Clinical  
 School*)

**Clinical Lecturers**

- Jane Brosnahan, BN, MA, RCpN, MCNA  
 Pip Brown, MA, RGON  
 Cheyne Chalmers, BHSc *MIT*, PGDip *Massey*,  
 RCpN  
 Jane Clarke, BHSc *NSW*  
 Lesley Doughty, BHSc  
 Sarah Grayson, BHSc *Auck.UT*, MA, RGON  
 Marion Hamer, BHSc  
 Bronwyn Hedgecock, MHSc, RGON  
 Judy Hylton, MA *Massey*, RGON  
 Megan Jones, DipN, PGDipHSc  
 Catherine Lambe, RCpN  
 Rose Lightfoot, MPH, RGON  
 Sue Mann, MBus *Massey*, RGON  
 Elaine McCall, BA *Edin.*, MN *Massey*, RCpN  
 Bev McClelland, MHSc, RNRMN(SA)  
 J. Moselen, BHSc *MIT*, RCpN  
 L. Powell, BHSc *Auck.UT*, RGON  
 Di Roud, BHSc *Auck.UT*, RGON  
 Karen Scott, BHSc *Auck.UT*, PGDipNurs, RCpN  
 Kathy Shaw, RCpN, BN (*jointly with Waikato  
 Clinical School*)  
 Denise Singer, RCpN  
 Victoria Smith, BN *Syd.*, DipPH MNS *Deakin*,  
 FCNA(NZ), RCpN  
 Deb Sommerville, MNurs  
 Karen Stevens, RN, RPN  
 Catherine A. Tracy, BN PGradDipN *Massey*, RGON

Bronwyn G Ward, BHSc *Auck.UT*, RGON  
 Kathy Wright, BHSc *MIT*, RGON  
 Karen Young  
 Nicola Young, MPH, RCpN  
**Honorary Associate Professor**  
 Mia Carroll, BA *Massey*, DPH, FCNA(NZ), RGON

### SCHOOL OF PHARMACY

#### Head

John P. Shaw, BSc PhD *Brighton*, DipClinPharm  
*Aston*, FNZCP, FRPharmS, FPS

#### Administrator

Anna Evans

#### Professor of Pharmacy

2000 John P. Shaw, BSc PhD *Brighton*,  
 DipClinPharm *Aston*, FNZCP, FRPharmS,  
 MPS

#### Associate Professors

2001 Patrick A. Ball, BSc *Aston*, MSc *Birm.*, PhD  
*Wales*, FNZCP, MRPharmS, MPS, MCPP  
 2003 Sanjay Garg, BPharm MBA *Delhi*, PhD *NIL*  
*India*  
 2002 Janie L. Sheridan, BPharm *Bath*, BA *Midddx.*  
 PhD *Lond.*, MRPharmS, MPS

#### Senior Lecturers

2001 Raid Alany, BPharm MSc *Baghdad*, PhD  
*Otago*, FNZCP, MPS  
 2000 Douglas Hancox, BPharm *Lond.*, DipEdStud  
*Well.*, MRPharmS, MPS  
 2004 Jeff Harrison, BSc *Aston*, DipClin Pharm  
*Bath*, PhD *Bristol*, MRPharmS, MPS, BCPS  
 1998 Simon S. Hurley, BSc *Brighton*, MSc *Aberd.*,  
 DipPH *Otago*, MPS, MRPharmS  
 2002 Carole Malcomson, DipPharm CIT(NZ), MSc  
 PhD *Lond.* MBA *Brun.*, MPS, MRPharmS  
 2004 Nicola Tyers, BSc *Brighton*, PhD *Otago*,  
 ANZCP, MRPharmS, MPS

#### Lecturers

2002 Therèse E. Kairuz, MPharm DipPharm  
*Potchefstroom*, PhD *P.Elizabeth*, MPS  
 2003 Monica Zolessi, BPharm *Peru*, MSc *Edmonton*

#### Clinical Lecturers

William Allan, BPharm *Otago*, MSc *Lond.*, MED  
*Leeds*, MPS, MRPharmS  
 Lejla Brkic, BPharm *Belgrade*, MPS  
 Elizabeth Brookbanks, DipPharm *CIT*, MClinPharm  
*Otago*, MPS, MRPharmS  
 Christopher Carswell BSc *Sund.*, MSc *Belf.*,  
 MRPharmS, MPS  
 Marilyn Crawley, MClinPharm, *Otago*, MPS  
 Keith Crump, DipPharm CIT(NZ), PGDipPharm  
*Otago*, MPS  
 Sarah Fitt, BPharm *Lond.*, DMS *UK*, MRPharmS,  
 MPS  
 Derryn Gargiulo, MPharm *Otago*, MPS  
 Bruce Hastie, BPharm *Otago*, FNZCP, MPS  
 Maree-Ann Jensen, DipPharm CIT(NZ),  
 PGDipPharm *Otago*  
 Suzanne Sullivan, BPharm *Nott.*, PGDipHospPharm  
*De Montfort*, MPS, MRPharmS  
 Amanda Wheeler, BSc BPharm *Otago*,  
 PGDipClinPsychPharm *De Montfort*, MPS,  
 MRPharmS

### SCHOOL OF POPULATION HEALTH

#### Head of School

Alistair Woodward, MMedSci *Nott.*, MBBS PhD  
*Adel.*, FAFPHM

#### School Manager

Peggy McQuinn

### AUDIOLOGY

#### Head

Peter Thorne, BSc DipSc *Otago*, PhD

#### Administrator

Priscilla Philip

#### Associate Professor

1990 Peter Thorne, BSc DipSc *Otago*, PhD

#### Lecturers

2000 Andrea Kelly, BSc, MAud, PhD  
 2000 Grant Searchfield, BSc, MAud

#### Research Fellows

1995 Chris Jerram, MSc  
 1986 David Munoz, BSc MBChB MD *San Andrés*,  
*Bolivia*  
 2003 Michael Sanders, BSc, MAud

#### Clinical Lecturers

Louise Dickinson, MA, MAud  
 Julie Hill, BA, MHSc  
 Oriole Wilson, MAud *Melb.*

#### Senior Clinical Tutor

Sharon Mein Smith, BSc *Massey*, DipAud *Melb.*

#### Clinical Audiologists

Maree Harper, BSc MAud GradDipBus, MNZAS  
 Kim Wise, BSc MAud

### CLINICAL TRIALS RESEARCH UNIT

#### Director

Anthony Rodgers, MBChB *Bristol*, PhD DPH  
 FAFPHM

#### Administrator

Sheila Fisher

#### Senior Research Fellows

2003 Chris R. Bullen, DObst DCH *Otago*, BHB  
 MBChB MPH, FAFPHM, MACTM  
 2000 Jennie L. Connor, MBChB MPH *Otago*, BSc  
 PhD DipObst, FAFPHM  
 1999 Valery Feigin, MD PhD *Moscow*  
 1999 Carlene Lawes, MBChB *Otago*, MPH, PhD,  
 FAFPHM  
 1998 Cliona Ni Mhurchu, BSc *Trinity(Dub.)*, PhD  
*Ston.*  
 1991 Anthony Rodgers, MBChB *Bristol*, DPH, PhD,  
 FAFPHM

#### Research Fellows

2002 Kristie N. Carter, BA, MSc, DipSci  
 1999 Maree Hackett, MA  
 2002 Andrew Jull, DipBusStudies *Massey*, MA  
*Well.* RCpN  
 2004 Bridget Kool, BHSc, MPH, RGON, FCNA  
 2003 Hugh Senior, MSc, DPH  
 2004 Stephen Vander Hoorn, MSc  
 1995 Natalie Walker, MSc *Well.*, DPH *Otago*, PhD

**EPIDEMIOLOGY & BIOSTATISTICS****Head**

Rodney T. Jackson, DipComH *Otago*, BSc, MBChB, MMedSc, PhD, DipObst, FAFPHM

**Administrator**

Sioban Hinson

**Professor**

1990 Rodney T. Jackson, DipComH *Otago*, BSc, MBChB, MMedSc, PhD, DipObst, FAFPHM

**Associate Professors**

2002 John Buchanan, BMedSc MBChB MA *Mich. State*, FRACP FRCP *Edin.*, FRCPA FRCP Path *Lond.*

1999 Richard Milne, MSc *Cant.*, PhD *Otago*

1983 Robert K. R. Scragg, MBBS *Adel.*, PhD *Flin.*, FAFPHM

**Senior Lecturers**

1999 Shanthi Ameratunga, MBChB, DipObst, MPH *Johns Hopkins*, FRACP

2001 Dale Bramley, BHB, MBChB, MPH, FAFPHM

2000 Jennie L. Connor, MBChB MPH *Otago*, BSc PhD DipObst, FAFPHM

1992 Virginia Hope, MBChB DipComH *Otago*, FAFPHM

1986 Roger J. Marshall, MSc *S'ton.*, PhD *Bristol*

1996 Patricia A. Metcalf, MSc, PhD (*jointly with Statistics*)

2003 Susan Morton, PhD DipPHTM *Lond.*, BSc(Hons) MBChB DipTchg (*jointly with Liggins Institute*)

2003 Allan R. Pelkowitz, BSc, MBChB, GradDipBus

2003 Patricia Priest MBChB *Otago*, MPH, DPhil *Oxf.*, FAFPHM

2003 Mary Seddon, MBChB *Otago*, MPH, FAFPHM, FRACP

2003 Susan Wells, MBChB, Dip Obst., FRNZCGP., MPH, FAFPHM

**Senior Tutors**

2003 Sue Furness, BA, DipPH

2003 Bridgit Kool, BHSc, MPH, RGON, FCNA

2003 Anne Lethaby, MA DipSocSci. *Massey*, DipTchg

2003 Gillian Robb, DipPhysio *Otago*, PGDip Ergonomics *Massey*, MPH

**Senior Research Fellow**

1980 Alistair W. Stewart, BSc DipSc *Otago*

**Research Fellows**

1988 Joanna B. Broad, BA, MPH

2000 M. Ekramul Hoque, MBBS MPH PhD

2002 Mark Lyne, DipEnvHASW *Lond.*, FIMLS

2001 Karen L. Moy, MSc

2003 Tania Riddell, BSc BHB MBChB MPH DipObst, FAFPHM

2003 Gillian Robb, MPH, DipPhysio, DipErg

2002 Elizabeth Robinson, MSc

2003 Lynn Sadler, MPH *Yale*, MBChB, FRANZCOG

1996 David Schaaf, MSc, DPH

1980 Alistair W. Stewart, BSc DipSc *Otago*

2002 Joanna Stewart, MSc

2004 Jennifer Utter, MPH *Minn.*, RD

**Honorary Professor of Epidemiology**

Robyn Norton, MA *Cant.*, MPH PhD *Syd*

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

Chris R. Bullen, DObst DCH *Otago*, BHB MBChB MPH, FAFPHM, MACTM

Martin Orr, MBChB, BAO *Belf.*, MBA *S.Cross*, FRANZCP

**GENERAL PRACTICE AND PRIMARY HEALTH CARE****Head**

Gregor Coster, MSc *Well.*, MBChB *Otago*, FRNZCGP

**Administrator**

Diane Nicholson

**Elaine Gurr Professor of General Practice**

1995 Gregor Coster, MSc *Well.*, MBChB *Otago*, FRNZCGP

**Associate Professors of General Practice**

1991 Bruce Arroll, MHSc *Br.Col.*, BSc, MBChB, PhD, DipObst, FAFPHM, FRNZCGP

1999 Ngaire Kerse, MBChB *Otago*, PhD *Melb.*, FRACGP, FRNZCGP

**Senior Lecturer in Women's Health**

1991 Helen Roberts, BA BAO MBChB DipObst *Dublin*, MPH *Yale* (*jointly with Obstetrics & Gynaecology*)

**Senior Lecturers**

1999 Allan Adair, MBChB *Otago*, FRNZCGP

1997 Henry Doerr, MD *Minn.*, DipObst, DHSM, FRNZCGP

2003 Tana Fishman, DO *Philadelphia*, MS *Frostburg*

2000 Felicity Goodyear-Smith, MBChB DipObst MGP *Otago*, FRNZCGP

1990 David Hoadley, BSc, MBChB, DRCOG, MRCP, FRNZCGP

2002 Jim Lello, MBChB DipPaed, FRNZCGP

2002 Steven Lillis, MBChB DipSportsMed MGP *Otago*, FRNZCGP

**Senior Research Fellow**

1999 Stephen Buetow, MA, PhD

**Research Fellow**

1994 Ann Pearl, MBChB, MA, DipTchg, DipObst

**Clinical Associate Professor**

Thomas Marshall, OBE, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Melanie Abernethy BSc MBChB *Otago*, DipObst FRNZCGP

Prakash Appanna, MBChB *Natal*

Paul Beveridge, BSc MBChB DipComHlth, MCCM(NZ), FAFPHM, FRNZCGP

Tony Birch, MBChB, DipObst, RCOG, FRNZCGP

Heather Burns, MBChB BAO *Ireland*, DRGOG MRCP DipFamPlan *Lond.*, FRNZCGP

John Burton, MBChB, FRNZCGP

John Carter, MBChB, FRNZCGP

Richard Coleman, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP

Ivan Connell, MBChB, FRNZCGP

John Corboy, BMedSc, MBChB, DipAvMed, MRNZCGP

Christopher Dickey, MBChB, DipObst, MRCP

William Ferguson, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP

Jonathan Fox, MBBS LRCP *Lond.*, MCS Eng., FRNZCGP

Judith Fox, BM *S'ton*, DRCOG, FRNZCGP

David Henry, MBChB, FRNZCGP

Harry Hillebrand, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP  
 Eric Horne, MBChB *Glas.*, FRNZCGP  
 Brett Hyland, MBChB DipObst FRNZCGP  
 Michael Karetai, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP  
 Alistair Leggat, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP  
 Ian MacLean, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP  
 Richard Mercer, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP  
 Jeff Miller, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRNZCGP  
 Warwick Palmer, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP  
 Ashwin Patel, MBChB, FRNZCGP  
 Neil Roblin, MBBS *Lond.*, FRNZCGP  
 Eileen Sables, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCGP, FRNZCGP  
 Charles Sanders, MBChB *S.Af.*  
 Joseph Scott-Jones, BMBS *Sheff.*, DipGeriatricMed  
*UK*, DipObst, DipSportsMed, MRCGP,  
 FRNZCGP

Richard Selkon, MBChB *Cape Town*  
 Devarani Sritharan, BMMS *Ceylon*, DipObst,  
 MMedSci FRNZCGP

Kenneth Tong, MBBS *Tas.*, FRNZCGP  
 John Tseung, MBBS *HK*, FRNZCGP  
 Peter Vincent, MBChB  
 James Te Whare, MBChB, DipObst  
 Anton Wiles, MBChB, DipObst, RCOG, FRNZCGP  
 Chris Wong, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst DipMSM,  
 FRNZCGP  
 Peter Woodward, BSc MBChB DipObst, DipPaeds,  
 FRNZCGP  
 Andrew Woollons, BSc MBChB *Otago*, LTCL *Lond.*,  
 PGDipCEM, FAMPA

#### Honorary Associate Professor in General Practice

Jocelyn Tracey, MBChB, MMedSc, DipObst, PhD,  
 FRNZCGP

#### Honorary Senior Research Fellow

Barry Gribben, BA, MBChB, MMedSci

#### Honorary Research Fellows

Jonathan Simon, BSc *Brist.*, BMBS *Oxf.*, DRCOG  
 DCH DA DMJ(Clin) *Lond.*, FRNZCGP, FRCGP  
 Dale Speedy, MBChB *MSc Ireland*, MD, FRNZCGP

#### Honorary Senior Lecturers

Derek Dow, MA DipEd PhD *Edin.*  
 Dene Egglestone, MSc MBChB MGP *Otago*,  
 FRNZCGP  
 Sean Sullivan, LLB, MA, PhD

### GOODFELLOW UNIT

#### Director

Ross McCormick, MBChB, MSc, PhD, FRNZCGP,  
 FACHAM

#### Administrator

Irene Chaudhari, BA LLB *Bom.*, DipPersonnel  
 Mngment, DipExePA

#### Goodfellow Postgraduate Chair in General Practice

1994 Ross McCormick, MBChB, MSc, PhD,  
 FRNZCGP, FACHAM

#### Senior Lecturers

✦2001 Stephen Adams, MBChB DipAnaes *UK*,  
 DipEmergMed, FAMPA  
 ✦1993 Anthony Edwards, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst  
 DipSportsMed *Lond.*, FACSP  
 ✦1997 Christopher Hanna, MBChB, DipSportsMed  
 2002 Peter Huggard, MPH, MEd, ACIS  
 1999 T. Kenealy, MBChB DipObst *Otago*,  
 FRNZCGP

2002 John Kennelly, MBChB *DAVMed Otago*, LLB,  
 DipOccMed, FRNZCGP, FACLM  
 ✦2001 Willie Landman, MBChB *Pret.*, MFGP *S.Af.*,  
 FRNZCGP, FACHPM  
 2002 Anne-Thea McGill, BSc MBChB, FRNZCGP  
 ✦2000 Mary Tucker, MBBS *Lond.*, DipObst RCOG,  
 DCH *Lond.*, DipGeriatricMed, LRCP, MRCS  
*Eng*  
 1995 Nicola Turner, MBChB DipObst *DCH Lond.*,  
 FRNZCGP  
 2000 Phil Wood, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

#### Senior Tutors

Yvonne Bray, BHSc  
 Barbara Docherty, RGON, MCNA(NZ), PGDipHSc

### HEALTH SYSTEMS

#### Head

Paul Brown, MSc PhD *Wis.*

#### Administrator

Sioban Hinson

#### Coordinator for Bachelor of Health Science

Carol Cameron, MFA *Oregon*

#### Associate Professor

1992 Toni Ashton, MA, PhD

#### Senior Lecturers

1999 Paul Brown, MSc PhD *Wis.*  
 1995 Rod Perkins, BDS *Otago*, MHA *Georgia State*,  
 PhD *NSW*  
 2003 Martin Wilkinson, MA *DPhil Oxon.*

#### Lecturer

2003 Jeanne Reeve, BSc *W.England*, PhD

#### Honorary Professor of Health Management

Michael Powell, MA PhD DipTchg *Chic.*

#### Honorary Professor of Population Health and Statistics

Peter Davis, MSc *LSE*, PhD

#### Centre for Health Services Research and Policy Manager

Daniel Patrick, MHSc

#### Research Associates

1996 Rob McNeill, MA *Cant.*  
 2004 Laura Meyers, MSc *LSE*  
 2002 Janet Pearson, MSc

#### Honorary Research Fellows

David King, BA *Exon*  
 Roy Lay-Yee, MA  
 Pat Neuwelt, MD *McM.*

### MAORI AND PACIFIC HEALTH

#### Head of Department

Colin D. Mantell, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, PhD,  
 DipObst, FRCOG, FRANZCOG

#### Administrator

...

#### Head of Maori Health Discipline

Suzanne M. Crengle, MBChB, MPH, FRNZCGP,  
 FAFPHM

#### Head of Pacific Health Discipline

Malakai 'Ofanoa, ADHE *Ibandan*, DLSHTM  
*Canberra*, MSCHPS *Lond.*

#### Professor of Maori Health

1981 Colin D. Mantell, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*,  
 PhD, DipObst, FRCOG, FRANZCOG (*jointly*  
*with Obstetrics & Gynaecology and South*  
*Auckland Clinical School*)

**Associate Professor**

◆2001 Jane McKendrick, MBBS DPM MD *Melb.*

**Senior Lecturers in Maori Health**

◆2001 Pamela Bennett, BSc *Otago*, MBChB, BSc, FRANZCP

1997 Suzanne M. Crengle, MBChB, MPH, FRNZCGP, FAFPHM

◆1998 Lorna C. Dyall, MSocSci *Waik.*, MPP *Well.*, DipComH *Otago* (*jointly with Social and Community Health*)

**Senior Lecturers in Pacific Health**

...

**Lecturers**

◆2002 David Jansen, BA *Waik.*, MBChB, DipTchg, GCertClinTch

◆2001 Wiremu W. L. Manaia, Dip Tchg, MSocSci *Waik.*

1999 Robyn Manuel, MSc, PhD

1999 Malakai Ofanoa, ADHE *Ivandan*, DLSHTM *Canberra*, MScHPS *Lond.*

**Research Fellows**

2002 John T. Huakau, MSc, PhD

◆2002 Rhys Jones, MBChB, MPH

◆2002 Vili H. Nosa, MA

◆2002 Tania Riddell, MPH *Otago*, BSc, MBChB, DipObstGyn

2001 David Schaaf, MSc

**SOCIAL AND COMMUNITY HEALTH****Head**

Peter Adams, MA, PhD, DipClinPsych

**Administrator**

Amor Hirao, MA *Philippines*

**Director, Health Research Advisory Sector & Survey****Research Unit**

David R. Thomas, MA, PhD, FNZPSS

**Director, Centre for Gambling Studies**

Joel Porter, Psy.D *Argosy University, Atlanta*

**Director, Centre for Asian Health Research and Evaluation**

Samson Tse, MSc PhD *Otago*

**Associate Professor**

1972 John M. Raeburn, MA PhD *Qu.*

**Professor**

1997 David R. Thomas, MA PhD, FNZPSS

**Senior Lecturers**

1991 Peter J. Adams, MA, PhD, DipClinPsych

◆1998 Jennifer E. Hand, BA *Well.*, PhD *New School for Social Research (NY)*

2002 Samson Tse, MSc PhD *Otago*

◆1999 Helen Warren, PhD *Massey*, MA, RCN

**Senior Lecturer in Public Health**

1997 Lorna Dyall, MSocSci *Waik.*, MPP *Well.*, DipComH *Otago* (*jointly with Maori & Pacific Health*)

**Senior Tutors**

1969 Raymond Nairn, MSc

◆2001 Bernd Strüder, DipPsych *Munich*

**Senior Research Fellow**

◆1990 Janet Fanslow, BS *Iowa State*, MSc *Otago*, PhD

**Research Fellow**

1999 Kim McGregor, BA MEd PhD

**Hohua Tutengaehe Postdoctorate Research Fellow**

2000 Marewa Glover, BA NSW, MASocSci DipPsych *Waik.*, PhD

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

Francis Agnew, MSc *Well.*, MBChB, FRANZCP

Lynne Lane, MMChB DComH *Otago*, MA *Well.*, FRACP

Gail Robinson, MBBCh *Witw.*, GradDipBus, FCPsych *S.Af.*, FRANZCP

**Honorary Research Associates**

Robert Brown, MA, PhD, DipClinPsych

Ian Hodges, MA PhD *Otago*

Malcolm W. Stewart, BSc *Well.*, PhD DipSc DipClinPsych *Otago*, DipMgt

*Injury Prevention Research Centre*

**Director**

Carol Coggan, MA, PhD, DipTchg

**Associate Director**

Sara Bennett, MA, DPH, PhD

**Senior Maori Researcher and Evaluator**

1998 Marilyn Brewin, MA, PhD

---

**Faculty of Science****City Campus****Dean**

A. Richard Bellamy, BSc NZ, MSc, PhD, FRSNZ

**Associate Dean (IT)**

Paul Bonnington, BSc PhD *Massey*

**Associate Dean (Academic Programmes)**

Margaret Goldstone, MSc, DipBus, DipTchg *ACE*

**Associate Dean (Planning & Finance)**

Peter L. Hosking, BA NZ, MA *Cant.*, PhD *S.Ill.*

**Associate Dean (Research)**

Michael Kalloniatis, MSc *Melb.*, PhD *Houston*

**Associate Dean (Postgraduate)**

Corinne A. Locke, BSc PhD *Liv.*, FGS

**Associate Dean (Tamaki)**

Christopher M. Triggs, MSc, PhD

**Maori in Science Lecturer**

Jason Turuwhenua, MSc PhD *Waik.*

**Faculty Manager**

Jillian M. Reid, BA, LLB, DipCrim, DipTchg *ACE*

---

**RESEARCH UNITS, CENTRES AND INSTITUTES****Bioinformatics Institute****Director**

Allen G. Rodrigo, BSc PhD *Cant.*

**Lecturer**

1987 Howard Ross, BSc *York(Can.)*, MSc *Brock*, PhD *Dal.*

**Bioinformatics Institute Research Fellow**

2003 Stéphane Guindon, MSc *Claude Bernard Lyon 1*, PhD *Montpellier*

**Research Fellow**

2003 Stephen Rice, BSc PhD *Otago*

**Research Manager**

Stephanie Plön

**Centre for Molecular Biodiscovery****Director**

Edward N. Baker, MSc, PhD, FRNSZ, FNZIC

**Deputy Director**

John Fraser, BSc Well., PhD

**Research Manager**Rochelle Ramsay, BSc(Hons) Otago,  
PGDipBusAdmin Massey**Light Metals Research Centre****Director**

Mark Taylor, BE PhD, MIChemE, CEng, MTMS

**Associate Director**

James B. Metson, BSc PhD Well., FNZIC, MTMS

**New Zealand Institute of Mathematics and its Applications (NZIMA)****Co-Directors**Marston D. E. Conder, MSocSc Waik., MSc DPhil  
DSc Oxf., FNZMS, FRNSZ♦Vaughan F. R. Jones, DesSc Geneva, DSc Wales  
& Auck., FRS, FRNSZ**Executive Administrator**

Margaret Woolgrove, MA St And.

**Wine Research Institute Industry****Director**

Nick Lewis, BCom MA PhD

**BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES****City Campus****Director**

Joerg Kistler, DipNat ETHZür., PhD Basle, FRNSZ

**Deputy Director (Academic)**

Judith A. O'Brien, BSc Otago, MSc, PhD

**Deputy Director (Research)**

Richard C. Gardner, BA, MSc, PhD, DSc, FRNSZ

**Director, First Year Teaching**

Amanda A. Harper, DipTchg ASTC, MSc

**School Registrar**

Sandra Jones, BA Qld., DipBusStuds Massey

**University Distinguished Professor**1997 Edward N. Baker, MSc, PhD, FNZIC, FRNSZ  
(jointly with Department of Chemistry)**Professors**1993 Michael N. Clout, BSc(Hons) Edin., PhD  
(jointly with School of Geography and  
Environmental Science)1993 Garth J. S. Cooper, DPhil Oxf., BSc, MBChB,  
DipObst, FRCPA, FRNSZ (jointly with Faculty  
of Medical and Health Sciences)1985 Richard C. Gardner, BA, MSc, PhD, DSc,  
FRNSZ1983 Joerg Kistler, DipNat ETHZür., PhD Basle,  
FRNSZ1978 John C. Montgomery, BSc(Hons) Otago, PhD  
DSc Brist., FRNSZ (jointly with Leigh Marine  
Laboratory)

2003 Paul B. Rainey, MSc, PhD Cant.

1990 Allen G. Rodrigo, BSc PhD Cant.

1976 Rufus M. G. Wells, PhD DSc Lond., MSc,  
FRNSZ**Associate Professors**

1993 C. Scott Baker, BA S.Fla., PhD Hawaii

1991 Nigel P. Birch, BSc Massey, MSc, PhD

1977 Thomas Brittain, BSc(Hons) PhD ScD  
E.Anglia, FRSCHEM, FNZIC, CChem

1982 David L. Christie, MSc, PhD

2002 P. Roderick Dunbar, MBChB, PhD Otago

2001 Marie Dziadek, BSc(Hons) Flin., DPhil Oxf.

1987 Clive W. Evans, BSc, PhD

1988 Kevin S. Gould, BSc(Hons) Bath, PhD Manc.

1987 Phillip J. Harris, MA PhD Camb.

1991 Gillian Lewis, BSc(Hons) PhD Otago

1993 Donald R. Love, BSc(Hons) PhD Adel.

1998 Peter Metcalf, BSc Cant., PhD

2002 Alok K. Mitra, MSc Delhi, PhD IISc.

1984 Brian G. Murray, BSc(Hons) PhD Reading,  
FLS1969 Anthony M. Robertson, BSc(Hons) Otago,  
DPhil Oxf.

1990 Michael M. Walker, MSc PhD Hawaii, FRNSZ

**Senior Lecturers**

1974 Peter M. Barling, BA Oxf., PhD Lond.

1995 Kendall D. Clements, BSc Well., PhD James  
Cook, MSc

1991 Kerry Loomes, BSc PhD Massey

1972 John A. Macdonald, AB Stan., PhD Texas

1981 Judith A. O'Brien BSc Otago, MSc, PhD

2001 Stuart Parsons, BSc(Hons) PhD Otago

1983 Michael N. Pearson, BSc(Hons) CNA, PhD  
Exe.1995 Kim M. Plummer, BSc(Hons) DipEd NE, PhD  
Melb.

1994 Joanna J. Putterill, MSc, PhD

1984, 1987 David J. Saul, BSc PhD Sheff.

1976 G. Kenneth Scott, BSc(Hons) Manc., PhD  
Edin.

1999 Mary A. Sewell, PhD Alta., MSc

1999 John A. Taylor, BSc Aberd., PhD Edin.

1996 Susan J. Turner, BSc Massey, PhD

**AgResearch Senior Lecturer in Structural Biology**

1998 Vickery L. Arcus, MSc Waik., PhD Camb.

**Horton Senior Lecturer in Plant Biogeography**

1993 Shane D. T. Wright, BSc Cant., PhD

**Lecturers**

2003 Jacqueline R. Beggs, PhD Otago, MSc

2004 Matthew R. Goddard, BSc(Hons) B'lore, PhD  
Imperial College of Science, Technology and  
Medicine, UK, PGDip Leic.2004 Mark E. Hauber, BSc(Hons) Yale, PhD  
Cornell

2000 Shane Lavery, MSc PhD Qld.

2004 Fiona E. Leahy, BSc(Hons) Ulster, PhD  
Camb. (jointly with Faculty of Medical and  
Health Sciences)

1999 J. Shaun Lott, BSc(Hons) Sur., PhD Leeds

1993 Craig D. Millar, MSc, PhD

2003 David Raubenheimer, MSc Cape Town, DPhil  
Oxf.1987 Howard A. Ross, BSc York(Can.), MSc Brock.,  
PhD Dal.**Senior Tutors**

1994 Amanda A. Harper, DipTchg ASTC, MSc

1987 Elizabeth Hitchings, BSc

2003 Alexander Lautensach, BEd Tor., MSc Guelph,  
MScT McM., PhD Otago, DipNat Munich

✦2002 Selvan G. Reddy, BSc *Durban*, MSc *Witw.*  
2003 Fritha Stalker, MSc

#### Senior Research Fellows

✦2000 Bryan F. Anderson, BSc *NZ*, PhD  
1997 Heather M. Baker, MPhil *Massey*, BSc  
1999 Shiva Reddy, MSc DipSc *Otago*, PhD DipTchg  
2003 Xue Xian Zhang, BSc *Beijing Ag. U.*, PhD  
*Huazhong Ag. U.*

#### Research and Postdoctoral Fellows

2003 Catherine E. Angel, BSc *Leeds*, MSc PhD  
*Aberd.*  
2002 Matthias Baake, Diplom PhD *Goettingen*  
2004 Hubertus J. E. Beaumont, MS *Vrije*  
2002 Melony Black, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Purdue*  
1988 Marion Blumenstein, MSc *Bremen*, Dr. rer.  
nat. *Hamburg*  
2004 Fasseli Coulibaly, MSc *W.England*, MSc PhD  
*Paris XI*  
2003 Tim F. Cooper, BSc PhD *Cant.*  
2003 Roberta Donadini, BSc PhD *Syd.*  
2003 Silke Huber, MSc *Köln*, PhD *Max-Planck*  
*Institute of Molecular Physiology*  
✦2002 Lorna Johnstone, BSc *Glas.*, PhD *Camb.*  
2003 Nikki Moreland, BSc *Waik.*, PhD  
2003 Stephen Rice, BSc PhD *Otago*  
2003 Yu Wang, MB *Anhui Medical Univ.*, MSc, PhD  
2002 Harriet A. Watkins, BSc *E.England*, PhD *Warw.*  
✦1999 Aimin Xu, BMed *Anhui*, MBIomedSci *Third*  
*Military U.*, PhD  
2004 Paul G. Young, BSc *Massey*, MSc PhD

#### Assistant Research Fellows

1991 Leigh C. Coates, BSc(Hons) *Cant.*, PhD  
2004 Jodie Johnston, MSc  
2004 Parmjeet Kaur Parmar, MSc *Poona*  
2004 Susan Ravelich, MSc

#### Honorary Associate Professors

✦John Richard Baker, BSc(Hons) MBChB *Otago*,  
FRCPA, FRACP  
Jean-Claude Schellenberg, DM *Lausanne*, PhD,  
FRACOG

#### Honorary Lecturers

Dianne M. Gleeson, PhD *ANU*, BSc  
Richard D. Newcomb, PhD *ANU*, MSc  
Margaret Stanley, BSc(Hons) *Otago*, PhD *Monash*

#### Honorary Research Fellows

Jacqueline F. Aitken, MSc, PhD *Texas*  
John E. Braggins, MSc *Well.*, PhD  
Christina M. Buchanan, MSc *Waik.*, PhD  
Ramesh R. Chavan, MSc *B'lore*, PhD *S.P.*  
Yee Soon Choong, MSc PhD *Otago*  
David Crossman, BSc *Otago*, PhD  
Suzanne M. D'Arth, MSc *Cant.*, PhD *Massey*  
James M. J. Dickson, BSc *Massey*  
Lena G. Fraser, MSc PhD  
Deming Gong, MSc PhD *Fujian Agricultural &*  
*Forestry University*, PhD *Massey*  
Deborah L. Hay, BSc(Hons) *Sheff.*, PhD *Lond.*  
Anthony J. Hickey, MSc  
Andrew G. Jeffs, MSc PhD  
Lawrence C. W. Jensen, AB *Brown*, MSc PhD *Minn.*  
Nicole Kerlero de Rosbo, BSc(Hons) PhD *La Trobe*  
Gina M. Lento, BA *UCSD.*, PhD *Well.*  
Bridget L. Leonard, BSc(Hons) *Otago*, PhD  
Robert D. Lewis, BSc PhD *Wales*  
Jun Lu, BSc *East China Normal University*, MSc

George Mason, MSc *NZ*, DPhil *UC at Davis*  
Michael C. Miller, BSc PhD *Liv.*  
Nathalie J. Patenaude, BSc *Montr.*, MSc *McM.*, PhD  
Anthony R. J. Phillips, BSc *Well.*, MBChB *Otago*  
Franz B. Pichler, BSc, PhD  
Sally D. Poppitt, BSc *Newcastle(UK)*, PhD *Aberd.*  
John A. Rattenbury, MA *Br.Col.*, PhD *Calif.*  
Sarah J. Schönberger, BTech, PhD  
Christopher Squire, MSc, PhD  
Mirjana Stojkovic, MSc *Belgrade*, PhD  
Rebecca Stott, BSc *Sheff.*, PhD *Leeds*  
Ji Weihong, BSc *Lanzhou*, MSc *Northwestern*, PhD  
✦A. Peter Wysocki, MBChB *Qld*  
Shaoping Zhang, MSc *Jinan*, PhD *Stockholm*

## CHEMISTRY

#### Head of Department

Graham A. Bowmaker, BSc PhD *Syd.*, FRSNZ,  
FNZIC, FRACI, CChem, FRSC

#### Departmental Manager

Catherine E. Comber, BCom *Rhodes*

#### University Distinguished Professor

1997 Edward N. Baker, MSc, PhD, FRSNZ, FNZIC  
(jointly with School of Biological Sciences)

#### Professors

1968 Graham A. Bowmaker, BSc PhD *Syd.*,  
FRSNZ, FNZIC, FRACI, CChem, FRSC  
1998 Margaret A. Brimble, MNZM, MSc PhD *S'ton.*,  
FRSNZ, FRACI, FNZIC, MRSC, CChem  
1970 George R. Clark, PhD, DSc, FNZIC  
✦1958 Charmian J. O'Connor, CBE, JP, MSc *NZ*,  
PhD, DSc, FRSNZ, CChem FRSC, FNZIC  
✦1966 Warren R. Roper, MSc *NZ*, PhD *HonDSc*  
*Cant.*, FNZIC, FRS, FRSNZ  
1994 Douglas K. Russell, MA *Camb.*, PhD *S'ton.*,  
FNZIC, CChem, FRSC

#### Associate Professors

1978 Peter D. W. Boyd, BSc *Tas.*, PhD *Monash*,  
FNZIC, MRACI  
1988 Penelope J. Brothers, PhD *Stan.*, MSc, FNZIC  
1966 Allan J. Easteal, MSc *NZ*, PhD *Tas.*, MNZIC  
1995 Hicham Idriss, PhD *Habil Strasbourg*  
1985 James B. Metson, BSc PhD *Well.*, FNZIC,  
MTMS  
1984 L. James Wright, MSc, PhD, FNZIC, MACS

#### Senior Lecturers

1993 Brent R. Copp, BSc PhD *Cant.* MNZIC  
1997 Paul A. Kilmartin, BA BSc *Well.*, STB *Rome*,  
MTh *Syd.*, PhD, MNZIC, MNZIFST  
1995 Gordon M. Miskelly, BSc PhD *Otago*, MACS,  
MNZIC, ANZFSS

#### Lecturers

2004 David Barker, BSc PhD *Syd.*, CChem, MRSC  
2003 Vittorio Caprio, BSc PhD *R'dg.* CChem,  
MRSC  
2003 Laura Pripis-Nicolau, BAgSci *Bucharest*, MSc  
PhD *Bordeaux*  
2004 Tilo Söhnel, DiplChem PhD *Dresden*  
2002 Jadranka Travas-Sejdic, MSc *Zagreb*, PhD  
2003 Michael Trzoss, DiplChem *Humboldt, Berlin*,  
PhD *Zürich*,

#### Senior Tutors

1982 Judith M. Brittain, BSc PhD *E.England*, MNZIC  
2004 Rehana Karim, BSc(Hons) *Hudds*, MRES  
*S'ton.*, PhD *Lough*.

1997 David Salter, MSc, PhD, PGDipEd, MNZIC  
1982 Sheila D. Woodgate, BS *Arizona*, PhD *Stan.*

#### Postdoctoral Fellows

2003 Kai Meilert, ChemDip *Lausanne*, PhD *EPFL, Switzerland*  
2004 Victoria Muir, BSc(Hons) PhD *Otago*  
2002 A. Norrie Pearce, MSc, PhD  
2003 Hui Peng, MSc *Xiantan*, PhD *Hunan*  
2004 Deborah Tonei, MSc PhD  
2004 Stephanie Verdier, MSc *Nancy*, PhD *Grenoble*

#### Marsden Postdoctoral Fellow

2004 David Rennison, BSc(Hons) PhD *UMIST*

#### Honorary Professor

William A. Denny, PhD, DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC

#### Honorary Senior Research Fellows

Robert F. Anderson, MSc, PhD, CChem, FRSC  
Bruce A. Grigor, MSc NZ, PhD *Leic.*  
Paul Harris, MSc, PhD  
Cliff E. F. Rickard, BSc NZ, MSc, PhD, FNZIC  
Michael J. Taylor, MA DPhil *Oxf.*, FNZIC, FRSC, CChem  
David C. Ware, BS *Berk.*, PhD *Stan.*, MNZIC  
Graham A. Wright, MSc NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, FNZIC  
Paul D. Woodgate, PhD, DSc, FNZIC

#### Honorary Research Fellows

Diana C. W. Lim, MSc, PhD  
Kathrin Wichmann, DiplChem PhD *Dresden*

### Food Science

#### Director

Laurence D. Melton, PhD *S.Fraser*, MSc, CChem, FRSC, FAIC, FNZIFST, FNZIC

#### Senior Lecturer

1997 Paul A. Kilmartin, BA BSc *Well.*, STB *Rome*, MTh *Syd.*, PhD, MNZIC, MNZIFST

#### Lecturers

2004 Siew-Young Quek, BSc *NU Malaysia*, PhD *Birm.(UK)*  
1997 Bronwen G. Smith, MSc, PhD, MNZIFST

#### Research Fellow

2003 Peter Swedlund, MSc PhD

#### Honorary Senior Lecturer

Robert F. Anderson, MSc, PhD, CChem, FRSC

#### Honorary Lecturers

Graham C. Fletcher, BSc, BCom, MNZMS, MNZIFST  
Norman Lodge, MSc, FNZIFST  
Grant A. MacDonald, MTech *Massey*, PhD *N.Carolina*, FZNIFST  
Roger A. Stanley, BSc *Cant.*, PhD  
Ralph J. Stevenson, MSc, PhD  
Ronald J. Wong, MSc, PhD, MNZIC, MNZIFST

### Forensic Science

#### Director

Douglas Elliot, BSc *Edin.*, PhD *Lond.*, ANZFSS

#### Deputy Director

Gordon M. Miskelly, BSc PhD *Otago*, MACS, MNZIC, ANZFSS

#### Honorary Lecturers

Sally Coulson, BSc, PhD, ANZFSS  
Anne Coxon, BSc *Sund.*, MSc PhD *Strath.*, MRPharmS, ANZFSS  
Sally Ann Harbison, BSc PhD *Liv.*, ANZFSS

### Polymers and Coatings

#### Director

Neil Edmonds, MSc NZ, MNZIC

### Wine Science

#### Director

Paul A. Kilmartin, BA BSc *Well.*, STB *Rome*, MTh *Syd.*, PhD, MNZIC, MNZIFST

#### Lecturer

2003 Laura Pripis-Nicolau, BAGSc *Bucharest*, MSc PhD *Bordeaux*

#### Honorary Lecturers

Andrew Friend, BHortSci(Hons) *Lincoln(NZ)*  
Nick Lewis, BCom MA, PhD  
Andrew Yap, BSc *Malaya*, MAGSc *Adel.*

### COMPUTER SCIENCE

#### City Campus

#### Head of Department

John G. Hosking, BSc PhD, Mem.IEEE

#### Deputy Heads of Department

Georgy Gimel'farb, MSc PhD *Kiev*, ScD *Moscow*  
Hans W. Guesgen, Dipl.-Inform. *Bonn*, Dr. rer. nat *Kaiserslautern*, Dr.habil. *Hamburg*  
Bakhadyr M. Khoussainov, PhD DipMaths *Novosibirsk*

#### Departmental Manager

Linda Thompson, BA *Otago*, PGDipBA *Massey*, DipTchg *ACE*

#### Computer Manager

Rob Burrowes, BSc

#### Professors

1992 Cristian S. Calude, BSc PhD *Bucharest*  
✦1982 Robert W. Doran, BSc *Cant.*, MS *Stan.*, FNZCS  
2002 James R. Goodman, BS *Northwestern*, MS *Texas*, PhD *Berk.*  
1999 John Grundy, MSc, PhD (*jointly with Electrical and Computer Engineering*)  
1985 John G. Hosking, BSc, PhD, Mem.IEEE  
1996 Bakhadyr M. Khoussainov, DipMaths PhD *Novosibirsk*  
1996 Clark Thomborson, BS MS/ME *Stan.*, PhD *Carnegie-Mellon*, MACM, Sen.Mem.IEEE, MRSNZ

#### Associate Professors

2000 Robert W. Amor, MSc *Well.*, PhD, Mem.IEEE, MACM, MNZCS  
2004 J. Nevil Brownlee, MSc, PhD, Mem.IEEE, MNZIP (*jointly with ITSS*)  
2001 Gillian Dobbie, MTech *Massey*, PhD *Melb.*  
1980 Peter B. Gibbons, MSc *Massey*, PhD *Tor.*, FTICA  
1992 Hans W. Guesgen, Dipl.Inform. *Bonn*, Dr. rer. nat *Kaiserslautern*, Dr.habil. *Hamburg*  
1972 Peter M. Fenwick, MSc, PhD, Mem.IEEE  
1984 Warwick B. Muiridge, BA BSc *Massey*, MSc, PhD, Mem.IEEE, MACM  
2002 Ewan Tempero, BSc *Otago*, MSc PhD *Wash.*, MACM, MIEEE  
2000 Ian Watson, MSc *Essex*, MPhil *Plym.*, PhD *Liv.*, Mem.IEEE

#### Senior Lecturers

1996 Michael J. Dinneen, BSc *Idaho*, MSc PhD *Vic.(BC)*

- 1985 Jennifer A. Lennon, MSc, PhD  
 1999 Emilia Mendes, BSc *Cath. U. Rio de Janeiro*,  
 MSc *Fed. U. Rio de Janeiro*, PhD *S'ton*  
 2002 André O. Nies, Dip.Math *Freiburg*, Dr. rer.  
 nat, Dr.habil *Heidelberg*  
 2001 Kevin Novins, AB *Harv.*, MSc PhD *Cornell*  
 1996 Patricia J. Riddle, BS *Penn.*, PhD *Rutgers*  
 2001 Mark C. Wilson, BSc *Cant.*, PhD *UW Mad.*  
 1992 Xinfeng Ye, BSc Hua *Qiao*, MSc PhD *Manc.*

**Lecturers**

- 1996 Michael W. Barley, BA *UCSD*, MSc *Brun.*,  
 PhD *Rutgers*  
 1990 John Hamer, BSc *Well.*, PhD, MACM, MNZCS  
 1981 Bruce Hutton, PhD *Warw.*, MSc  
 2001 Ute W. Loerch, Diplom Mathematikerin  
*Stuttgart*  
 2003 Beryl Plimmer, BCom, DipATchg, MSc  
 2003 Jing Sun, BSc *Nanjing*  
 2004 Ian Warren, CILTHE *Lancaster*, BSc, PhD  
 2003 Gerald Weber, Dip Dr. rer. nat, *FU Berlin*,  
 MBCS  
 2001 Burkhard Wuensche, BSc *Kaiserslautern*, MSc

**Senior Tutors**

- 1999 Paul Denny, MSc  
 1993 Adriana Ferraro, BA, DipEd, DipCompSci *NE*  
 1995 Andrew Luxton, BSc MA  
 1988 Robert Sheehan, BA, DipCompSci, DipTchg,  
 MACM  
 2002 Santokh Singh, BE(Hons) *Malaya*, LLB(Hons)  
*Lond.*, PGDipComSci

**Honorary Visiting Professor**

Hermann Maurer, DrPhil *Vienna*, DrTech h.c.  
*St.Petersburg*

**Honorary Research Fellows**

G. Alan Creak, BA *Camb.*, PhD *Leeds*  
 Peter Guttman, MSc, PhD

**Tamaki Campus****Deputy Head of Department**

Georgy Gimel'farb, MSc PhD *Kiev*, ScD *Moscow*

**Computer Manager**

James Harper, BSc

**Professor of Information Technology**

1996 Reinhard Klette, DipMaths Dr. rer. nat, Dr.  
 sc. nat *Jena*

**Associate Professor**

2002 John Morris, BSc PhD *Syd.* (jointly with  
*Electrical and Computer Engineering*)

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1994 S. Manoharan, BTech *I.I.T.*, PhD *Edin.*  
 1994 Radu Nicolescu, PhD *Bucharest*, MACM,  
 MemIEEE  
 1993 Mark Titchener, BSc PhD MS *Arizona*

**Lecturers**

- 2002 Chia-Yen Chen, BSc, MSc  
 2001 Patrice J. Delmas, MSc, PhD *INP (France)*  
 2000 Ulrich Spiedel, MSc, PhD, Mem.IEEE

**Senior Tutor**

1999 Angela Chang, MSc

**Honorary Research Fellow**

Gisela Klette, MMaths *Jena*

**GEOGRAPHY AND ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE****Director of School**

William Smith, MA *Aberd.*, MSc PhD *McG.*

**School Manager**

Ross McCallum, BSc, DipBus

**Professors**

- 2004 Gary Brierly, MSc PhD *S.Fraser*  
 1993 Michael N. Clout, BSc *Edin.*, PhD (jointly with  
*School of Biological Sciences*)  
 1976 John L. Craig, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Massey*  
 1995 Philip C. Forer, MA *Oxf.*, PhD *Brist.*  
 1994 Richard B. Le Heron, MA *Massey*, PhD *Wash.*  
 1972 Paul W. Williams, BA *Durh.*, MA *Dublin*, PhD  
 ScD *Camb.*

**Associate Professors**

- 1977 Christopher de Freitas, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Qld.*  
 1989 Robin A. Kearns, PhD *McM.*, MA  
 1979 John Ogden, MSc PhD DSc *Wales*  
 1976 Hong-Key Yoon, BA *Seoul*, MS *Brigham*  
 Young, PhD *Berk.*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1995 Paul Augustinus, BSc *Melb. & Tas.*, DPhil  
*Waik.* (jointly with *Geology*)  
 2003 Ian Boothroyd, BSc(Hons) *Manc.*, MSc *Wales*,  
 DPhil *Waik.*, MBA  
 1993 Anthony M. Fowler, MA, PhD  
 1991 Wardlow D. Friesen, BA *Calg.* and *Car.*, PhD  
 1992 Jay Gao, BE *Wuhan*, MSc *Tor.*, PhD *Georgia*  
 1992 David J. Hayward, BA *Lanc.*, MSc PhD *Penn.*  
 2002 Paul Kench, MA, PhD *NSW*  
 1977 Neil D. Mitchell, MA *Oxf.*, MSc *Wales*, PhD  
*Newcastle(UK)*  
 1993 Scott L. Nicol, BA *ANU*, PhD *Syd.*  
 2004 David O'Sullivan, BA *Camb.*, MSc *Glas.*, PhD  
*Univ. Coll., London*  
 2004 George Perry, MSc *Cant.*, PhD *Melb.*, PGCap  
*Lond.*  
 1969 David Shooter, MSc, PhD, MNZIC  
 1993 William Smith, MA *Aberd.*, MSc PhD *McG.*  
 1997 Jenny Webster-Brown, BSc *Otago*, PhD  
*W.Aust.*  
 1995 Gordon M. Winder, PhD *Tor.*, MA

**Lecturers**

- 1999 Brad Coombes, BA PhD *Otago*  
 1997 Judith K. Haschenburger, BS *Nebraska*, MA  
*Arizona*, PhD *Br.Col.*

**Senior Tutors**

- 1991 Lyndsay Blue, BSc *Cant.*, MSc *Lond.*, MPhil  
 1992 Marie McEntee, LTCL *Lond.*, MA  
 1994 Melanie A. Milicich, MA  
 2004 Joanne O'Callaghan, BSc *Flin.*  
 2004 Melanie Wall, MA

**Senior Research Fellow**

2001 Norman Thom, BSc, DipHealthAdmin  
*Massey*, FNZIC, MIPENZ

**Postdoctoral Research Fellows**

- 1999 Gretel Boswijk, PhD *Sheff.*  
 2001 Nick Lewis, BCom, MA, PhD

**Emeritus Professor**

Warren Moran, MA *NZ*, PhD, FRSNZ

**Honorary Professor**

Terry Hume, MSc, PhD *Waik.*

**Honorary Associate Professors**

Warwick Neville, MA DipEd NZ, PhD *Lond.*  
 Jim Salinger, BSc PhD *Well.*, MPhil

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

Harvey Brookes, MA  
 Peter Hosking, MA *Cant.*, PhD *S.Ill.*  
 J. Morgan Williams, MSc *Cant.*, PhD *Bath*

**Honorary Lecturers**

Carol Stewart, BSc PhD *Cant.*  
 Graham Ussher, MSc, PhD

**GEOLOGY****Head of Department**

P. R. L. Browne, BSc *Cape Town*, MSc *Leeds*, PhD  
*Well.*, FMSAm, FRSNZ

**Departmental Manager**

Suman Nath

**Professor**

1970 Philippa M. Black, BSc NZ, MSc, PhD,  
 FMSAm, FRSNZ

**Associate Professors**

1978 P. R. L. Browne, BSc *Cape Town*, MSc *Leeds*,  
 PhD *Well.*, FMSAm, FRSNZ  
 ♦1988 Corinne A. Locke, BSc PhD *Liv.*, FGS  
 1991 S. F. Simmons, BA *Macalester*, MSc PhD  
*Minn.*  
 1980 I. E. M. Smith, BSc *Well.*, PhD *ANU*

**Senior Lecturers**

1995 Paul Augustinus, BSc *Melb. & Tas.*, DPhil,  
*Waik. (jointly with Geography and*  
*Environmental Science)*  
 1997 Kathleen A. Campbell, BSc *Calif.*, MSc *Wash.*,  
 PhD *S. Calif.*  
 ♦1981 John Cassidy, BSc PhD *Liv.*  
 1993 Jeffrey L. Mauk, BSc *N.Carolina*, MSc  
*Montana*, PhD *Mich.*, SEG, AUSIMM  
 1975 Warwick M. Prebble, MSc *Well.*, PhD  
 ♦2001 Brian D. Ricketts, MSc PhD *Car.*, SEPM  
 2000 Phil Shane, MSc PhD *Well.*

**Lecturer**

2002 J. Rowland, PhD *Otago*, DipTchg TTC, BSc

**Senior Tutor**

2004 Barry O'Connor, MSc PhD

**Honorary Visiting Professor**

J. Malpas, MA *Oxf.*, MSc PhD *Nfld.*, FGSAm, FGSC,  
 FGSL

**Honorary Senior Lecturer**

J. S. Buckeridge, BSc *Cant.*, MSc, PhD

**LEIGH LABORATORY****Director**

John C. Montgomery, BSc(Hons) *Otago*, PhD DSc  
*Bristol*, FRSNZ

**Business & Operations Manager**

Arthur Cozens, DipAgr DipBusStuds *Massey*,  
 DipBus

**Senior Lecturer**

1987 T. Alwyn V. Rees, BSc(Hons) *Liv.*, PhD *Wales*,  
 MIBiol  
 2002 Richard B. Taylor, MSc PhD

**Lecturers**

2004 Mark J. Costello, BSc(Hons) *Univ. Coll.*  
*(Galway)*, PhD *Univ. Coll. (Cork)*  
 2003 A. Guy-Carton, MSc, PhD

**MATHEMATICS****City Campus****Head of Department**

David B. Gauld, PhD *Calif.*, MSc, FNZMS

**Deputy Head of Department**

David P. Alcorn, BSc NZ

**Departmental Manager**

Daniela Rovere, BSc *Z'bwé*

**Alumni Distinguished Professor**

♦1992 Vaughan F. R. Jones, DesSc *Geneva*, DSc  
*Wales & Auck.*, FRS, FRSNZ

**Professors**

1983 Marston D. E. Conder, MSocSc *Waik.*, MSc  
 DPhil DSc *Oxf.*, FNZMS, FRSNZ  
 1969 David B. Gauld, PhD *Calif.*, MSc, FNZMS  
 1988 Gaven J. Martin, PhD *Mich.*, MSc, FRSNZ  
 1994 Boris Pavlov, PhD DSc *Leningrad*  
 1970 Ivan L. Reilly, BA MSc DSc *Well.*, AM PhD *Ill.*,  
 CMATH, FIMA  
 2002 James Sneyd, BSc *Otago*, MS PhD NYU  
*(Head of Applied Mathematics Unit)*

**Associate Professors**

1992 Jianbei An, BSc *Harbin*, PhD *Ill.*  
 1993 William (Bill) D. Barton, MPhil *Massey*, MSc,  
 PhD, DipTchg *(Head of Mathematics*  
*Education Unit)*  
 1971 Bruce D. Calvert, MS PhD *Chic.*, BSc  
 1997 Eamonn A. O'Brien, BSc *NUI (Galway)*, PhD  
*ANU*  
 2004 Jozef Širán, RNDr CSc *Bratislava*, DrSc  
*Slovak Academy of Sciences and Comenius*  
*University*  
 1993 Michael O. J. Thomas, MSc PhD *Warw.*,  
 C.Math, FIMA

**Senior Lecturers**

1969 David P. Alcorn, BSc NZ  
 1994 C. Paul Bonnington, BSc PhD *Massey*  
 1990 Colin Fox, PhD *Camb.*, MSc  
 1999 A. Rod Gover, MSc *Cant.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1970 Paul R. Hafner, DiplMath DrPhil *Zürich*.  
 1969 Christopher C. King, MSc *Well. & Warw.*  
 1995 Geoffrey K. Nicholls, BSc *Cant.*, PhD *Camb.*  
 1994 Maxine J. Pfannkuch, MSc, PhD, DipTchg  
*(jointly with Statistics)*  
 1971 Joel L. Schiff, AM PhD *Calif.*  
 1993 Philip W. Sharp, BSc PhD *Cant.*  
 1993 Arkadii M. Slinko, MA *Novosibirsk*, PhD DSc  
*USSR Academy of Sciences*  
 1970 David J. Smith, BA *Portland St.*, MA PhD  
*Wash.*  
 1997 Shayne F. D. Waldron, BSc *Cant.*, MA PhD  
*Wis.*

**Lecturers**

2003 Hannah Bartholomew, BSc *Brist.*, MSc  
*Manc./Bordeaux*, PhD *Lond.*  
 2002 Anthony Blaom, BE *Melb.*, MSc DPhil  
*California Institute of Technology*  
 2004 Sina R. Greenwood, MSc, PhD  
 1992 Vivien Kirk, PhD *Camb.*, MSc  
 1993 David W. McIntyre, BA DPhil *Oxf.*  
 2003 Michael Meylan, BSc PhD *Otago*  
 2003 Warren Moors, PhD *Newcastle(NSW)*, MSc  
 1997 Judy Paterson, BSc MEd *Cape Town (jointly*  
*with Education)*  
 1986 Wiremu Solomon, PhD *Wis.*, MSc *(jointly with*  
*Statistics)*

**Senior Tutors**

- 1993 Allison Heard, MSc, PhD  
 2002 Viliami Finau Latu, BSc, DipTchg (*jointly with Statistics*)  
 2005 Helen J. McKenzie, BSc MEd DipTchg  
 2000 Barbara Miller-Reilly, BSc Well., MS Ill.  
 2002 Garry Nathan, BA DipTchg (*jointly with Statistics*)  
 ♦1999 Gregory N. Oates, BSc, MEd, DipTchg  
 2003 Sheena Parnell, BSc, DipTchg  
 1990 Moira Statham, BSc, PGDipSc, DipTchg  
 1996 Wendy Stratton, BA MSc Cant.  
 1969 R. E. Swenson, MSc  
 2000 David B. Thomson, DipPsychother Auck.UT, MSc, DipTchg

**Research Fellows**

- 2002 Jiling Cao, MSc *Tanjin*, PhD  
 2003 Richard A. Evans, PhD *Mich.*, MSc  
 2003 Mark Harmer, MSc *Natal*, PhD  
 2004 John H. Holt, PhD *Mich.*, MSc  
 2004 Bart E. Oldeman, MSc *Groningen*, PhD *Bristol*  
 2004 Primo Potocnik, MSc, PhD *Ljubljana*  
 2004 Jana Šiagiova, MSc, RNDr *Comenius University (Slovakia)*, PhD *Slovak Univ. Technol.*

**Honorary Research Professor**

- John C. Butcher, MSc NZ, PhD DSc *Syd.*, FNZMS, FRNSZ

**Honorary Associate Professor**

- Mavina K. Vamanamurthy, MSc *Mys.*, MS PhD *Mich.*, FNZMS

**Honorary Research Fellows**

- Ganesh D. Dixit, BA *Agra*, MA DPhil *Alld.*  
 Garry J. Tee, MSc NZ, CMath, FIMA

**Tamaki Campus****Senior Lecturers**

- 1980 Robert P. K. Chan, MSc, PhD  
 1994 Stephen W. Taylor, PhD *Minnesota*, MSc

**Lecturer**

- 2003 Shixiao Wang, MSc *Northwestern Polytechnic Institute*, PhD *Paris VI*

**Senior Tutor**

- 1992 Alastair McNaughton, BA *Otago*, MSc PhD *DipEd Massey*

**OPTOMETRY AND VISION SCIENCE****Head of Department**

- Robert J. Jacobs, MSc PhD *Melb.*, LOsc, GradDipBus, FAAO

**Department Administrator**

- Christine Calvelo, BA BSC *De La Salle, Philippines*

**Clinic Director**

- Geraint Phillips, BSc, MCOptom, DCLP, OD

**Clinic Manager**

- Carolyn Jones

**Professor**

- 1978 Leon F. Garner, BAppSc *Melb.*, PhD *City*, DipEd *Melb.*, LOsc, DCLP, FBCO, FAAO

**Leitl Professor**

- 2001 Michael Kalloniatis, MSc *Melb.*, PhD *Houston*

**Associate Professor**

- 1984 Robert J. Jacobs, MSc PhD *Melb.*, GradDipBus LOsc, FAAO

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1998 Helen Owens, MSc *Cardiff*, PhD *Aston*, MCOptom  
 1998 John Phillips, MSc, PhD, MCOptom, FAAO  
 2001 Ivan Wood, BSc *Brad.*, MSc *Aston*, PhD *UMIST*, MCOptom, FAAO

**Lecturers**

- 2003 Keely Bumsted-O'Brien, BS PhD *Washington*  
 2004 Brendan O'Brien BA, PhD *Wash.*

**Senior Tutors**

- 1998 Andrew Collins, MSc, BOptom  
 1999 Geraint Phillips, BSc *City*, OD *Waterloo*, MCOptom, DCLP

**Honorary Research Fellow**

- Grant Watters, DipOpt, DCLP

**PHYSICS****City Campus****Head of Department**

- C. T. Tindle, PhD *Br.Col.*, MSc, FNZIP, FASA

**Departmental Manager**

- Francie Norman

**Professors**

- 1991 G. L. Austin, BA *Camb.*, MSc PhD *Cant.*, FNZIP, FRNSZ  
 1991 T. H. Barnes, MSc PhD *UMIST*, MSPIE, MJpnSocAppPhys  
 1975 John D. Harvey, PhD *Sur.*, MSc, Mem.IEEE, FNZIP

**Dan Walls Professor of Theoretical Physics**

- 2002 H. J. Carmichael, PhD *Waik.*, MSc, MInstP, MAAPT, FAPS, FOSA

**Associate Professors**

- 1971 Paul H. Barker, BA *Oxf.*, PhD *Manc.*  
 1982 Stuart G. Bradley, MSc PhD MInst *Lond.*, MNZIP, FRMetS, CPhys  
 1989 M. J. Collett, MSc *Waik.*, PhD *Essex*, MNZIP  
 1991 Rainer Leonhardt, DipPhys, Dr. rer. nat *Munich*  
 1972 C. T. Tindle, PhD *Br.Col.*, MSc, FNZIP, FASA  
 1981 Peter R. Wills, BSc, PhD

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1970 Gary E. J. Bold, BSc NZ, MSc, PhD, MNZIP, Life Mem.IEEE, MASA  
 1979 Barry J. Brennan, BSc, PhD, MNZIP  
 2002 M. D. Hoogerland, MSc *Leiden*, PhD, *Eindhoven UT*, MAOS  
 1996 Scott Parkins, MSc DPhil PhD *Waik.*  
 1971 Graeme D. Putt, BSc PhD *Melb.*, FAIP, FNZIP, MAAPT  
 1996 Lionel R. Watkins, BSc(Eng) MSc *Cape Town*, PhD *Wales*, MInstP, CPhys, MOSA

**Lecturers**

- 2003 Stuart Murdoch, MSc PhD  
 2003 Stephane Coen, EngPhys PhD *Brussels*

**Senior Tutors**

- 2001 Mark Conway, MSc  
 1992 Bera A. E. MacClement, MA *Camb.*, MSc *Guelph* PhD *W.Ont.*

**Postdoctoral Research Fellows**

- Vladimir I. Kruglov, BSc, *Moscow*, PhD DSc *Belarus Academy of Sciences*

Robert Kruhlaak, MSc PhD *Wash. St. U.*

David Mechin, MSc PhD *Saint-Etienne*

#### Honorary Research Fellows

Ross Garrett, BA MSc NZ, PhD, MNZIP

Elodie le Gren, MSc PhD *Rennes*

R. F. Keam, BA *Camb.*, MSc DipHons NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*

Hyunchul Nha, MSc PhD *Seoul National Univ.*

Sue Pockett, MSc, PhD *Otago*

Alan P. Stamp, MSc NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, FNZIP

J. R. Storey, MSc PhD NZ, MNZIP, Mem.IEEE, MAAFT

John E. Titheridge, MSc DipHons NZ, PhD *Camb.*, Sen.Mem.IEEE, CPhys, FInstP *Lond.*, FNZIP, FRSNZ

Frederick Vanholsbeeck, Lic Phys, PhD *Libre de Bruxelles*

Robert E. White, MSc PhD NZ, DSc

#### Tamaki Campus

##### Associate Professor

1993 Malcolm Grimson, BSc *E.Anglia*, PhD *Kent*, MInstP *Lond.*, CPhys

##### Senior Lecturer

1995 David Krofcheck, BSc *Carnegie Mellon*, MSc PhD *Ohio State*, APS-DNP, AAAS

## PSYCHOLOGY

#### City Campus

##### Head of Department

Frederick W. Seymour, BA *Well.*, MA *W.Aust.*, PhD

##### Departmental Manager

Jane Buckman, DipBus *Massey*

##### Professors

1978 Michael C. Corballis, BA, MSc NZ, PhD *McG.*, Hon LLD *Wat.*, MA, FAAAS, FAPA, FAPS, FNZPsS, FRSNZ, ONZM

1969 Michael C. Davison, BSc *Bristol*, PhD *Otago*, DSc, FRSNZ

1986 Dianne C. McCarthy, BA, MSc, PhD

##### Associate Professors

1994 John Duckitt, BA *Cape Town*, MA *Natal*, PhD *Witw.*

1993 Russell D. Gray, BSc, PhD

1986 Jennifer A. Ogden, BSc *Massey*, DipSocSc *NE*, MSc, PhD, DipClinPsych, FRSNZ

1988 Frederick W. Seymour, BA *Well.*, MA *W.Aust.*, PhD

##### Senior Lecturers

1999 Suzanne Barker-Collo, HBA *Manit.*, MA PhD *Lake*

1990 Douglas Elliffe, BSc, PhD

1991 Nicola J. Gavey, MA, PhD, DipClinPsych

1997 Nicole Harré, MA, PhD

1994 Michael J. Hautus, MSc, PhD

1996 Blake Johnson, BSc *Alta*, MA PhD *S.Fraser*

1999 Ian Kirk, BSc PhD *Otago*

1988 Anthony J. Lambert, BSc *Sheff.*, PhD *Leic.*

1999 Ian D. Lambie, BA *Otago*, PhD, PGDipClinPsy

1994 John Read, BA *Wales*, MA PhD *Ohio*

1994 Lynette J. Tippett, MSc, PhD, DipClinPsych

2000 Karen E. Waldie, BSc *Vic.(BC)*, MSc PhD *Calg.*

#### Lecturers

2000 Virginia Braun, MA, PhD *Lough.*

2004 Trevor Case, BSc(Hons) *NSW*, PhD *Macq.*

2003 Helena Cooper-Thomas, BSc *Durh.*, MA *Sask.*, PhD *Lond.*

1993 Barry Hughes, DipPE *Otago*, MSc PhD *Wis.*

1999 Andrew Moskowitz, BA *Temple*, DFP *Mass.*, MA PhD *Boston*

2000 Gina Priestley, BA, PhD, DipClinPsy *Otago*

1999 Jackie Summers, BA *UVa.*, PhD MPH *Berk.*, MSW, FSU

#### Senior Tutors

2002 M. Burstall, MA, PGDipForensicSci

1999 Sue J. Cowie, MSc DipClinPsy *Otago*

1993 Fiona M. Howard, MA, DipClinPsych

#### Research Fellow

2000 Gavin R. Hunt, BSc *Cant.*, PhD *Massey*

#### Honorary Professors

William M. Baum, MA, PhD *Harv.*

Steven Pinker, BA, McG., PhD *Harv.*

#### Honorary Senior Lecturer

Harry Prapavesis, MA HBA *W.Ont.*, PhD *W.Aust.*

#### Tamaki Campus

##### Professor

1995 Glynn Owens, BTech *Brun.*, DipPsych BPS, DPhil *Oxf.*, AFBPsS

##### Senior Lecturers

1997 Linda D. Cameron, BSc *Calif.*, MSc PhD *Wis.*

1992 Claire M. Fletcher-Flinn, BPsych *W.Aust.*, PhD *La Trobe*

1993 Brent M. Jones, MSocSci *Waik.*, PhD *Otago*

##### Lecturers

2003 Claire Cartwright, BA *Qld.*, MA, PhD, DipClinPsych

1996 Brenda Lobb, MA, PhD

2003 Jane E. Magnusson, BSc *Tor.*, MS PhD *New Orleans*

2002 Oliver Mudford, MA *Cant.*, PhD, BCBA

## Speech Science

##### Associate Professor

2003 Suzanne C. Purdy, MSc DipAud PhD *Iowa*

##### Clinic Director

Simone Newsham, BSc *Manc.Met*

## SPORT AND EXERCISE SCIENCE

#### Tamaki Campus

##### Head of Department

...

##### Departmental Manager

Bruce Rattray, BA

##### Associate Professor

1997 Winston D. J. Byblow, MSc PhD *S.Fraser*, BHK *Windsor*

##### Senior Lecturers

1998 Bernadette A. Murphy, BA *Qu.*, DC *Nfld.*, MSc, PhD

1995 Harry Prapavessis, MA HBA *W.Ont.*, PhD *W.Aust.*

1996 Heather Smith, MA *McG.*, BPHE PhD *Tor.*

- 2003 Drew Smith, BPE McM., MHK Windsor, MED  
*HK Poly.*, PhD *Wat.*  
1997 Shona Thompson, BPE MA *Alta.*, PhD *Murd.*

**Lecturers**

- 1998 James C. Baldi, MSc *Ithaca*, PhD *Ohio State*  
2001 Uwe Kersting, DipTchg, PhD *Cologne*  
2004 Ben Miller, MSc *Wis.*, PhD *Berk.*  
1998 Sharon Walt, MAsc PhD *Wat.*

**Senior Tutor**

- 2003 Natalie Mrachacz-Kersting, BSc MED *W.Aust.*

**Research Fellow**

- 2003 Vanessa Lim, PhD *Melb.*, MSc (*jointly with*  
*Psychology*)

**STATISTICS****City Campus****Head of Department**

- Christopher J. Wild, PhD *Wat.*, MSc

**Departmental Manager**

- Sharon Walker, BTech(Hons) *Brunel*

**Professor**

- 1979 Christopher J. Wild, PhD *Wat.*, MSc

**Associate Professors**

- 1999 Brian McArdle, BSc *Bristol*, DPhil *York(UK)*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1991 Ross Ihaka, PhD *Calif.*, MSc  
1994 Renate Meyer, DipMaths PhD *RWTH Aachen*  
1999 Paul Murrell, MSc, PhD  
1994 Maxine J. Pfannkuch, MSc, PhD, DipTchg  
(*jointly with Mathematics*)  
1997 Geoffrey Pritchard, BSc, PhD *Wis.*  
1992 Ilze B. Ziedins, BA *Waik.*, PhD *Camb.*

**Lecturers**

- 2002 Michael A. Black, BSc *Cant.*, PhD *Purdue*  
2002 Rachel M. Fewster, MA *Camb.*, PhD *St. And.*  
1993 Arden E. Miller, BSc *Vic.(B.C.)*, MMaths PhD  
*Wat.*  
1986 Wiremu Solomon, PhD *Wis.*, MSc (*jointly with*  
*Mathematics*)  
2003 Yong Wang, MEng *Huazhong*, PhD *Waik.*

**Senior Tutors**

- 1993 Andrew Balemi, MSc PhD  
1997 Stephanie Budgett, BSc(Hons) PhD *Glas.*  
1996 Joss Cumming, DipTchg *ACE*, BA, PGDipSci  
2000 Rachel Cunliffe, BSc(Hons)  
1998 Christine Miller, BCom  
1992 Matthew Regan, DipTchg *ASTC*, BSc,  
DipStats  
1990 David Smith, BSc, DipStats, DipCompSci

**Emeritus Professor**

- 1965-71, 1973 George A. F. Seber, MSc *NZ*, PhD  
*Manc.*, DipCouns *Bible College (NZ)*, FRSNZ

**Postdoctoral Fellow**

- 2002 Sam Ferreira, MSc PhD *Pret.*

**Tamaki Campus****Professors**

- 2004 Peter B. Davis, BA *S'ton*, MSc *Lond.*, PhD  
(*jointly with Sociology and School of*  
*Population Health*)  
1972 Alastair J. Scott, MSc *NZ*, PhD *Chic.*, FRSNZ

**Associate Professors**

- 1974 Alan J. Lee, PhD *N.Carolina*, MA  
1996 Russell B. Millar, MSc PhD *Wash.*  
1995 David J. Scott, BA PhD *ANU*, DipCompSci *La*  
*Trobe*  
1990 Christopher M. Triggs, MSc, PhD

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1999 Marti J. Anderson, MA PhD *Syd.*, BA,  
GradDipSci  
1994 Patricia A. Metcalf, MSc PhD (*jointly with*  
*Community Health*)  
◆1985 Peter Mullins, MSc  
1997 Thomas W. Yee, MSc, PhD

**Senior Tutors**

- 1999 Mike Forster, BA, BCom, PGDipSci  
1998 Ross Parsonage, DipTchg *ASTC*, MSc

**Research Fellows**

- 2003 Stephen McTaggart, MA (*jointly with*  
*Sociology*)  
2002 Andrew Sporle, MA *Massey*, PGDipPH *Otago*  
(*jointly with Sociology*)

---

**School of Theology****Head of School of Theology**

- Elaine M. Wainwright, BSS *Pontifical Biblical*  
*Commission, Rome*, MA(Theol) *Catholic Theological*  
*Union Chic.*, Éleve Diplômée *École Biblique,*  
*Jerusalem*, BA PhD *Qld.*

**Professor**

- 2003 Elaine M. Wainwright, BSS *Pontifical Biblical*  
*Commisssion, Rome*, MA(Theol) *Catholic Theological*  
*Union Chic.*, Éleve Diplômée *École Biblique,*  
*Jerusalem*, BA PhD *Qld.*

**School Registrar**

- Peter G. Dormon, FCA *Eng. & Wales*, CA

**Lecturers**

- H. F. Bergin, MA *Well.*, BTheol *Otago*, STL STD  
*CUA*  
S. G. T. Bulkeley, BSc *Leic.*, BA *Oxf.*, PhD *Glas.*  
M. Callaghan, BTheol, MA *GTU Berkeley*  
M. E. Caygill, DipSocialWork *Well.*, LTh DMin *S.F.*  
*Theo. Sem.*  
P. L. Culbertson, BMus *Washington St. Louis*, MDiv  
*General Theological Seminary NY*, PhD *NYU*  
N. P. Darragh, STL *Urban*, MA PhD *Otago*  
A. K. Davidson, BD MA *Otago*, PhD *Aberd.*  
J. Dunn, STL *Urban*, PhD *CUA*  
A. L. Gilroy, MA MA(Theol) *Boston College*, PhD  
*Camb.*  
L. D. Guy, MTh ACT, LLB, MA, PhD  
W. Halapua, MA PhD *S.Pac.*  
V. Mocaraka, MA  
A. M. Sinnott, MTSBiblicalStudies *Catholic*  
*Theological Union Chic.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA,  
DipTchg  
S. E. Smith, BA *Cant.*, DipHabTheol *Pontificium*  
*Inst. 'Regina Mundi' Coniunctum Pontificiae*  
*Univ. Gregoriana*, MTh *Maryknoll NY*, PhD  
M. P. Sutherland, BA BTheol PhD *Cant.*  
H. Tate  
D. M. H. Tovey, MA *Cant.*, BD *Otago*, MA PhD  
*Durh.*

I. S. Tuwere, BD *Pacific Theological College, LTh*  
 Theol.M DTheol MCD  
 L. J. Wall, BA *Cant.*, BD *Otago*, PhD *Birm.*

---

## Auckland UniServices Limited

### Chief Executive Officer

John A. Kernohan, PhD *Boston*, MSc

### General Manager, Technology Development

Gregory R. Pullen, PhD *Monash*, MBA

### General Manager, Research

Mark P. D. Burgess, MSc *Well.*

### General Manager, Contract Education

Jenny A. Alford, BA *Otago*, DipBusStuds *Massey*

### Chief Financial Officer

Craig A. Brown, BCA *Well.*

### Manager, Intellectual Property

Johanna Stapelberg, MSc *Bloemfontein*

### Acting Business Manager, Arts

Jenny A. Alford, BA *Otago*, DipBusStuds *Massey*

### Business Manager, Biotechnology

Erin Wansborough, MSc *Massey*, DipBusAdmin

### Business Manager, Business and Economics

Owen Morgan, BA BEdStud LLB(Hons) MJur *Qld.*  
 SJD *Melb.*

### Business Manager, Engineering

Keith Jones, MSc *Cran.*

### Business Manager, Health

Billie Harbidge, BA *Waikato*, MBA, DipTchg

### Business Manager, Medical

James K. Chal, BSc *Wales*, MHealthMgt

### Business Manager, Science

Gary Putt, BSc *Massey*, DipTech

### Management Accountant

Sandra Hopping, BMS *Waik.*, CA

### Financial Accountant

Daniella Pearce, BMS *Waik.*, CA

---

## Centre for Continuing Education

### Director

Susan Geertshuis, BA *Wales*, PhD *Nott.*, CPsych,  
 AFBPS, ILT

### Deputy Director

Lynn Lander, MBS *Massey*, BA

### Professor, Lifelong Learning

Susan Geertshuis, BA *Wales*, PhD *Nott.*, CPsych,  
 AFBPS, ILT

### Business Development Manager

Arjun Singh, MBA *Waik.*

### Programme Managers Community Education

Jo Davies, BSocSci *Waik.*, DipTchg  
 Libby Passau, BA, DipTchg

### Conference Manager

Lynda Booth

### Programme Coordinator International

Hana Colmar, BA

---

## Centre for Flexible and Distance Learning

### Director

Wayne G. Mackintosh, BCom MEd HED *Pretoria*

### Advisory Board Secretary, PA & CFDL Administrator

Kaye Hodge

### Project Manager

Adrianne Paranihi, GradDipBus

### Learning Designers

Cathy Kell, BArch MPhil *Cape Town*  
 Fiona Spence, MEd *S. Qld*

### Multimedia Learning Designer

Liz Ramsay, BA DipBusAdmin DipTchg

### Television Producer/Director

Richard Smith, BA, DipDrama

---

## Centre for Professional Development

### Director

Lorraine Stefani, BSc PhD DipHERD UC *Lond.*,  
 FSEDA *UK*

### Deputy Director

Kim Hope, MEd, AdvDipTchg

### Departmental Manager

Anne Lee

### Senior Lecturer

1995 Cathy Gunn, MSc PhD *H-W*, DipCP *Edin.TC.*,  
 DipIndAdmin *Napier*

### Lecturers

2004 Paula Hodgson, BPhil *Newcastle(UK)*,  
 MSc *Manc.*

2004 Helen Sword, MA *Ind.*, PhD *Prin.*

### Senior Tutors

1990 Ernie Barrington, BSc *Cant.*, BA, DipTchg  
 1989 Barbara M. Grant, MA, TTC

### Evaluations Manager

Jenny Brown, MA, DipKTU

### Staff Development Officer

Roseta Jacobs, BA PGHDipEd *W.Cape*

### Kaitautoko Coordinator

Mere Forbes

### Computer Courses Coordinator

Lyn Hood, NZDipBus TertTC *Auck.UT*

---

## Equal Opportunities

### Pro Vice-Chancellor (Equal Opportunities)

Distinguished Professor Dame Anne Salmond,  
 DBE, CBE, MA, PhD *Penn.*, FRSNZ

### Deputy Pro Vice-Chancellor (Equal Opportunities)

Alison Jones, BSc *Massey*, MPhil, PhD

### Executive Assistant

Te Kororia Netana

### Equal Employment Opportunities (EEO) Manager

Prue Toft, MA

### Equal Employment Opportunities (EEO) Office Manager

Margaret Freeman

### Equal Educational Opportunities (EEO) Manager

Lorraine Evening, BSc, MPhil, DipTchg,  
 PGDipDevStud

**EEdO Office Administrator**

...

**Equal Educational Opportunities (EEdO) Projects Manager**

Lee Cooper, GradDipBusMaoriDev

**Māori Equity Advisor**

Margaret Taurere, BA, MEd

**Pacific Equity Advisor**

Aaron Marsters, MA, DipTchg

**Women in Science and Engineering Equity Advisor**

Heather Goodey, BSc

**Disability Services Manager**

Lynne Crabb, BSocSci(HS) ACE

---

**External Relations and Development****Director, External Relations and Development**John Taylor, MA *Well.***Director, University of Auckland Developments**Geoff Whitcher, BCom *Well.***Advancement Manager**Richard Sorrenson, MA MSc PhD *Prin.***Public Relations Officer**Bill Williams, LLB *Well.*, DipJ *Cant.***Alumni Relations Manager**

...

**Executive Officer, University of Auckland Society**

Judith Grey, GradDipArtsMgt

**Trust Administrator/Accountant**

Martin Cox, BCom, CA

**Marketing and Recruitment Manager**

Amy Malcolm, BA

---

**Financial Services Department****Director of Finance**

Marin Matulovic, BCom, CTP, CA

**Group Financial Controller**

...

**Senior Financial Analyst**

Robert Taylor, BCom, CA

**Manager, Financial Information Systems**

Sarah Vaughan, BCom, GDipBus, CA

**Business Services Manager**

Lee Merwood, BA

**Treasurer**

Katrina Twigden, BCom, CA

---

**Foundation Studies Programme****New Start****Group Manager New Start Programmes**

Cath Henderson, BA, DipCounsTheory

**Administrative Assistant**

Jan Edmonds, BA

**Pacific Island Programme Manager**

Maria Meredith, BA

**Programme Manager New Start**

Kahu Pou, BA, DipBus

**University of Auckland Tertiary Foundation Certificate****Acting Programme Coordinator**

Stephanie Wyatt, MA, DipTchg

**Programme Coordinator**

Reina Whaitiri, MA, DipTchg

**Programme Secretary**

Gill Stringer

**Assistant Coordinator**

Moira Statham, BSc, PGDipSci, DipTchg

---

**Human Resources Registry****Director of Human Resources**

Kath Clarke, BA

**Human Resources Managers**

Sue Cathersides, BA, DipBus

Perry Skilton, BSc *Well.***Organizational Development Manager**

Sarah Schulz, DipBus, DipTchg

**Payroll Manager**

Brenda Davis

---

**Information Technology Systems and Services****Director, Information Technology Systems and Services**

Stephen Whiteside

**Chief Technology Officer**

Steve Saunders

**Group Manager Applications**

...

**Infrastructure Manager**

Russell Smith

**Customer Services Manager**

Janene Markwick

**Project Office Manager**

Alan Longmire, BA, DipMgt

**Architecture Manager**

Tim Chaffe

**Information Security Manager**Stephen Taylor, BSc *Wales*, Dip.Surv. *Lond.*,  
MRICS**Accountant**

Shyam Agarwal

**IT Procurement Manager**

Ann Thomson

**Lecture Theatre Manager**

...

---

**International****Pro Vice-Chancellor (International)**Christopher Tremewan, PhD *Cant.* MPA *Harv.*, MA**Senior Policy Adviser and Special Projects**Erik Lithander, Cand *Bruxelles*, BSc *Lond.*, MPhil,  
PhD *Camb.*

**Executive Assistant to the Pro Vice-Chancellor  
(International)**

Caroline Locke

**International Relations Officer**

Vikash Naidoo, BCom

---

**International Office****Director**Andrew Holloway, BA DipEd *W.Aust.***Manager, Finance and Operations**Rick Mason, HND *South Thames College, London***Manager, International Recruitment and Promotions**

Lindsay Spedding, BA

**Manager, International Admission and Student Services**Anne Henwood, HND *Ulster***Manager, Study Abroad**

Joyce Cameron, BA DipTchg

**Marketing Manager, Auckland Abroad**Lynda Bavin, BCom *Murd.***Student Manager, Auckland Abroad**Ross Crosson, BA *Cant.*

---

**Office of the Vice-Chancellor****Vice-Chancellor**Stuart N. McCutcheon, BAgSc(Hons) PhD *Massey***Executive Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor**

Gillian Wilson

**Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic)**Raewyn Dalziel, ONZM, BA PhD *Well.***Executive Assistant to the Deputy Vice-Chancellor****(Academic)**

Iris Greenland

**Assistant to the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic)**Penelope J. Brothers, PhD *Stan.*, MSc, FNZIC**Deputy Vice Chancellor (Research)**Thomas H. Barnes, MSc, PhD *UMIST*, FRSNZ**Executive Assistant to the Deputy Vice-Chancellor****(Research)**

Lily Jeevaratnam

**Associate Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research)**Philippa M. Black, BSc *NZ*, MSc, PhD, FMSAm,  
FRSNZ**Director, Research Advancement**Ellen C. Förch, BSc PhD *Well.*, DipMusStuds  
*Massey***Manager, Research Office**

Lyn Clark, DipMgt

**Pro Vice-Chancellor (Equal Opportunities)**Distinguished Professor Dame Anne Salmond,  
DBE, CBE, MA, PhD *Penn.*, FRSNZ**Pro Vice-Chancellor (International)**Christopher C. Tremewan, PhD *Cant.*, MPA *Harv.*,  
MA**Director, International**Andrew Holloway, BA DipEd *W.Aust***Special Advisor to the Vice-Chancellor and  
Pro Vice-Chancellor (Maori)**

Michael J. A. Brown CNZM, Hon. LLD

**The James Henare Maori Research Centre, Director**

...

**Pro Vice-Chancellor (Tamaki)**Ralph P. Cooney, BSc PhD DSc *Qld.*, FRSNZ,  
FRACI, FNZIC**Postgraduate Dean**

...

**Registrar and Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor**

Timothy P. Greville, LLB

**Executive Assistant to Registrar and the Assistant to the  
Vice-Chancellor**

Joyce E. Jörgensen, DipBAdmin

**Director, Administration**Jonathan W. Blakeman, MPP *Well.*, BCom DipLGA,  
FNZIM, CA**Executive Assistant to the Director, Administration**

Iris Greenland

**Executive Officer**Grant Wills, BSc(Hons) *Cant.***Director, Planning**Pamela Moss, BHSc *Otago***Quality Coordinator**David Tippin, MSc *LSE*, BA PhD *Tor.***Director, Auckland University Press**Elizabeth P. Caffin, MA *Cant.*, MS *Georgetown***Mediator**

...

**Accountant**

Ian Johnson, BCom, CA

---

**Property Services****Administration Planning & Development****Director**M. B. Matthewson, BE *NZ***Planning Manager**

T. G. Young, BE

**Property Manager**

W. A. Anderson

**Development Manager**J. C. Lander, BE *Cant.***Project Managers**S. M. Bajallan, MArch MScArch *Baghdad*

C. B. Buller, BE, DBA

I. B. Houston

J. F. Light, MSc *Lough.*

S. J. Saw, BE, DipBusStuds

**Business Services Manager**

C. B. M. Jackson, BA, DipLGA

**Information Technology Engineer**

K. G. Prisk, ME

**Management Accountant**Delwyn J. Arthur, BBS *Massey*, CA

## Facilities Management

### Facilities Manager

G. R. Simpson, BE, MBA

### Maintenance Manager

E. J. Mackle, GDipBus

### Energy Manager

D. R. Agate

### Plant and Systems Manager

P. M. A. Duval, MEM *Cant.*

### Custodial Services Manager

E. H. Wyatt

### Unisafe Manager

Chris Doary, BA *Car.*, MA *RMC*

### Grounds Superintendent – City & Grafton

A. D. Palmer

### Superintendent – Tamaki

R. Koosache

---

## Schools Partnership Office

### Director

Colin Prentice, MA

### Manager, Student Recruitment and Course Advice

Heather McAllister, MA

### MATES Mentoring Project Leader

Tanya Heti, BA(Hons) GradDipArts

---

## Student Administration

### Director Student Administration

Wayne Clark, BA *S.Af.*, MEd PhD *Pret.*,  
HDipEd *Witw.*

### Finance & Operations Manager

Kate Warner-Hay, CA

### Manager Directorate Services

Gretchen Lutz-Spalinger, BA *Calif.*

### Group Manager Academic Administration

Gay Brennan

### Calendar & Regulations Manager

Glenda Haines, MA

### Examinations Coordinator

Robin Bruce

### Graduate Centre Manager

Anna Rees, GradDipBus

### Graduation Coordinator

Kathy Mathers

### Student Records Manager

Dianne Howard

### Group Manager Accommodation & Conference Services

Raymond Wilde, BBS *Massey*, Dip H&CA

### Group Manager Student Services

Michael Richardson, BCA *Well.*

### Admissions Manager

Kevin Neal, BA

### Scholarships Manager

Marcella McCarthy

### Student Financials Manager

Fathi El-Qada, MBA GDipComm GCertMgmt  
*W'gong.*

### Group Manager Student Management Systems

Lilianne Cotty, BA BSc *Cape Town*

### Group Manager Student Support

Bill Crome, DipPE, DipTchg

### Careers & Employment Manager

Anthony Crane, MA

### Head GP, Health & Counselling Service

Patricia Mauger, MBBS *Lond.*, LRCP, MRCS,  
MRNZCGP

### Head Counsellor, Health & Counselling Service

Lesley McKay, MA

### Advisor to International Students

Brian R. Lythe, MA

### Recreation Services Manager

Greg Tollan, BA, DipTchg

### Maclaurin Chaplain to the University

Rev. Uesifili Sefe Tuala Unasa, BD *Otago*, MA

### Roman Catholic Chaplain

Fr Peter Murnane, O.P. BA

### Maidment Theatre Director

Paul Minifie

---

## Student Learning Centre

### Director

Emmanuel Manalo, PhD *Massey*, MSc

### Deputy Director

Ema Wolfgramm-Foliaki, MA

### Departmental Manager

Lynette Herrero-Torres, BA *Puerto Rico*

### Lecturer

✦2002 Frances Kelly, MA, PhD

### Senior Tutors

2004 Susan Carter, PhD *Tor.*, MA

✦2003 Laurence William (Bill) Flinn, PhD *Warw.*,  
MSc

1997 Myrna O'Shea, MA, DipTchg

2000 Matthew Tarawa, BA

1999 Julie Trafford, MSc

1994 Josta van Rij-Heyligers, DipTeach *Delft*, MA

2002 William Barry White, BEd MA PhD *Natal*

✦1995 Glenis Wong-Toi, MA, PGDipAppPsych

### Tutors

✦1999 Jenny Buxton, MA

✦2001 Nisarg Dey, BA

✦1998 Jennifer Fan, MA

✦2000 Fiona Gregory, MA

2001 Andrew Lavery

✦2004 Debbie Leader, MSc

✦2000 Helen McKenzie, BSc MEd, DipTchg

✦2002 Stephanie Mason, MA *Dal.*

✦2003 Stephen Reed

---

## University Library

### University Librarian

Janet Copsey, BA DipNZLS *Well.*, DipBus, FNZLIA

### Te Kaiwhakahaere Maori, Library Manager, Maori Services

Jenny Barnett, BA *Waik.*, MLIS *Well.*

**Associate University Librarian – Access Services**Christine I. Wilson, BA DipNZLS *Well.*, FNZLIA**Collection Services Manager**Alison Grant, BA DipNZLS *Well.*, ANZLA,  
DipBusStuds**Acquisitions Librarian**Linzi Edwards, BSc DipLibr *Well.***Cataloguing Librarian**Ksenija Obradovic, MA HigherDipLib *Novi Sad,*  
*Yugostavia***Serials Librarian**Neil Heinz, MA DipNZLS *Well.***Digital Services Manager**Brian Flaherty, BA DipTchg DipLibr *Well.*, ALIANZA**InterLibrary Services Manager**

Jillian Irwin, BA

**Lending Services Manager**Elizabeth McKenzie, BA DipLibr *Well.***Associate University Librarian – Arts, Business & Science**Helen Renwick, BA DipTchg DipNZLS *Well.*,  
FLIANZA**Arts Information Services Manager**Shelley Taylor, MA DipLibr *Well.***Asian Languages Librarian**Kaaren Hiyama, MA MLIS *Well.***Special Collections Librarian**R. Stephen Innes, BA PGDA *Otago,* DipLibr *Well.*,  
ALIANZA**Business & Economics Information Services Manager**Shari Hearne, BA H.DipLibr *Natal***Science Information Services Manager**

Sonya Donoghue, FLIANZA

**North Shore Campus Librarian**Lynne Mitchell, BA *Cant.*, DipTchg DipLibr *Well.***Tamaki Library Manager**Hayley Schnell, MA HigherDipLibrSci *Natal***Library Manager, Education**Peter Hughes, MA DipNZLS *Well.*, Dip Tchg,  
FLIANZA**Library Manager, Law**Mary-Rose Russell, LLB *Cant.*, LLB *Z'bwé,* BBibl.  
*S.Af.***Library Manager, Learning Services**Hester Mountifield, MA DipHigherEd *S.Af.***Information Skills Librarian**Li Wang, BE DipElectronics *Dalian Marine Institute*  
*(China),* MLIS *Well.***Course Collections Manager**Jennifer J. Hart, MA DipNZLS *Well.*, ANZLA**English Language Self-Access Centre Manager (ELSAC)**Hayo Reinders, MA *Groningen***Library Manager, Medical and Health Sciences**Eileen Tollan, BA DipLibr *Well.***Library Manager, Symonds Street Group (Engineering,  
Architecture, Fine Arts and Music)**Jane Wild, BA DipLibr *Well.*, ALIANZA**Architecture Librarian**Wendy S. Garvey, BA DipNZLS *Well.***Engineering Librarian**Patricia D. Hulse, BA DipNZLS *Well.*, ANZLA,  
LRSM, LTCL**Fine Arts Librarian**

Gail Keefe, BA

**Music Librarian**Phillippa McKeown-Green, BA MPhil DipLibr *Well.*

## GLOSSARY OF TERMINOLOGY

*Note: The descriptions below are not intended to be legal definitions. The Regulations in the Calendar should also be referred to when interpreting these terms.*

**Ad Eundem Statum:** A means of admission to the University on the basis of a qualification awarded by a body other than the New Zealand Qualifications Authority or The University of Auckland.

**Admission:** The process by which a student applies, and is approved, for entry to the University and to a University qualification.

**Bachelor's degree:** A first degree.

**Campus:** A geographical location where University of Auckland qualifications are taught, eg, City Campus, Tamaki, Grafton.

**Certificate:** A coherent programme of one or two semesters.

**Class:** A component of a course, eg, a lecture stream.

**Completing student:** A student whose current enrolment is designed to complete a certificate, diploma or degree.

**Corequisite course:** A course which should be taken in the same semester as another unless it has previously been satisfactorily completed.

**Course:** The basic component of all academic programmes. A course is normally taught and assessed over one semester. A double-semester course is taught over the consecutive semesters of the same academic year.

**Course schedule:** A list of the courses prescribed for a programme which forms part of the regulations.

**Coursework:** Assessable work produced by students, normally submitted during teaching weeks, eg, essays, assignments, reports, tests, and practical, tutorial and seminar work.

**Current enrolment:** Courses or other work taken by a student in a particular academic year or semester.

**Degree:** Principal qualification awarded by The University of Auckland, ie, Bachelor's, Master's and doctoral degrees.

**Diploma:** A University qualification, generally awarded at graduate level.

**Direct entry:** Entry into a higher level of a subject or later part of a degree without the prerequisites.

**Dissertation:** A written research component of a degree or diploma worth between 4 and 9 points.

**Distance education:** Courses or programmes of study which provide content and support services to students who rarely, if ever, attend for face-to-face or for on-campus access to educational facilities.

**Doctoral degree:** A qualification at an advanced level requiring original contribution to knowledge.

**Electives:** A defined set of courses for a diploma or degree from which a student may make a choice.

**End of lectures:** The final day of the final teaching week of a semester. The final lecture for a particular course might occur before this day.

**Enrolment:** The process by which a student, having gained admission to the University and to a qualification, selects and gains entry to courses and classes.

**Examination:** Formal assessment under supervision occurring after the teaching in a course has been completed.

**Extramural students:** Students who have exemption from receiving instruction on campus.

**Flexible learning:** Courses characterized by a mixed mode of delivery and assessment of instructional material.

**Grade Point Average (GPA):** A means of measuring a student's performance at this University. The average grade achieved in the equivalent of a minimum full-time enrolment (12 points) is expressed numerically on a scale between 0 (no passes) and 9 (A+ Average).

**Grade Point Equivalent (GPE):** A means of measuring a student's performance. Grades or marks achieved in various institutions and/or examinations (such as NZUEBS) are translated as being equivalent to a Grade Point Average on the scale 0-9.

**Graduand:** A person who has completed the requirements for a degree or diploma but has not yet had the degree or diploma conferred.

**Graduate:** A person who has had a degree conferred.

**Honours:** Degrees, in some cases completed within prescribed time limits, may be awarded with honours which signify advanced or distinguished study.

**Laboratory:** A teaching session of a practical nature.

**Lecture:** A basic unit of instruction.

**Limited entry:** Applied to a course or programme for which the number of students that can be accepted is limited because of constraints on staffing, space or equipment.

**Major:** A required component of a degree, including a specified number of points in a subject at the most advanced level.

**Master's degree:** A degree programme at a higher level than a Bachelor's degree.

**Maximum full-time study:** A student workload of 9 points per semester or 4 points in Summer School.

**Minimum full-time study:** A student workload of 6 points per semester.

**Minor:** A component of a degree including a specified number of points above Stage I in a subject.

**Normal full-time study:** A student workload of 14 points in one year.

**Part:** A defined subdivision specified in the regulations of some degrees.

**Plussage:** A method of calculating the final result a student has gained in a course by counting either the final examination grade or a combination of final examination grade plus coursework, whichever is to the student's advantage.

**Point(s):** A value assigned to a course or other work to indicate its weighting within The University of Auckland's certificates, diplomas and degrees.

**Postgraduate programme:** A programme at a higher level than a Bachelor's degree.

**Prerequisite course:** A requirement that must be met before commencement of study for a particular course or programme.

**Prescribed texts:** Textbooks which are considered essential to a course.

**Programme:** A prescribed set of one or more courses or other work which on satisfactory completion leads to the award of a University of Auckland certificate, diploma or degree.

**Project:** A piece of investigative written work on a topic approved by the relevant Head of Department and supervisor.

**Reassigned course:** A course satisfactorily completed for one programme which may be transferred to another programme.

**Recognition of Prior Academic Study (ROPAS):** A means of assessment of previous study for students from another institution for admission or credit to the University.

**Regulation:** A rule set down by the University.

**Research essay:** A research-based essay on a topic approved by the relevant Head of Department and supervisor.

**Research portfolio:** A coherent, integrated programme of research-based work.

**Restriction (restricted course):** A course in which the learning objectives, content and/or assessment are so similar to a second course that a student cannot be credited with both towards a certificate, diploma or degree. In some cases a restricted course may be taken and credited as Certificate of Proficiency.

**Schedule:** University lists of courses, credits or limitations, often in tabular form.

**Course prescriptions:** A list of courses including course code, title, points value, description of content, prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions.

**Semester:** A period of about 15 weeks which includes about 12 teaching weeks and about three weeks for study and examinations. In addition there is a mid-semester break of up to two weeks.

**Specialization:** A coherent group of related courses from different subjects.

**Stage:** The academic level of study in a subject.

**Subject:** An area of learning which may be provided by a school or a department, or by departments offering related courses.

**Summer School:** A six-week period during which a select range of courses is taught and assessed.

**Thesis:** A written research component of a postgraduate programme having a value of 10 or more points.

**Trimester:** A 12-week period specified for instruction for Executive Programmes students only for study on a part-time basis.

**Tutorial:** A small group-learning session.

**Undergraduate:** A person studying towards a first degree.

# DIRECTORY

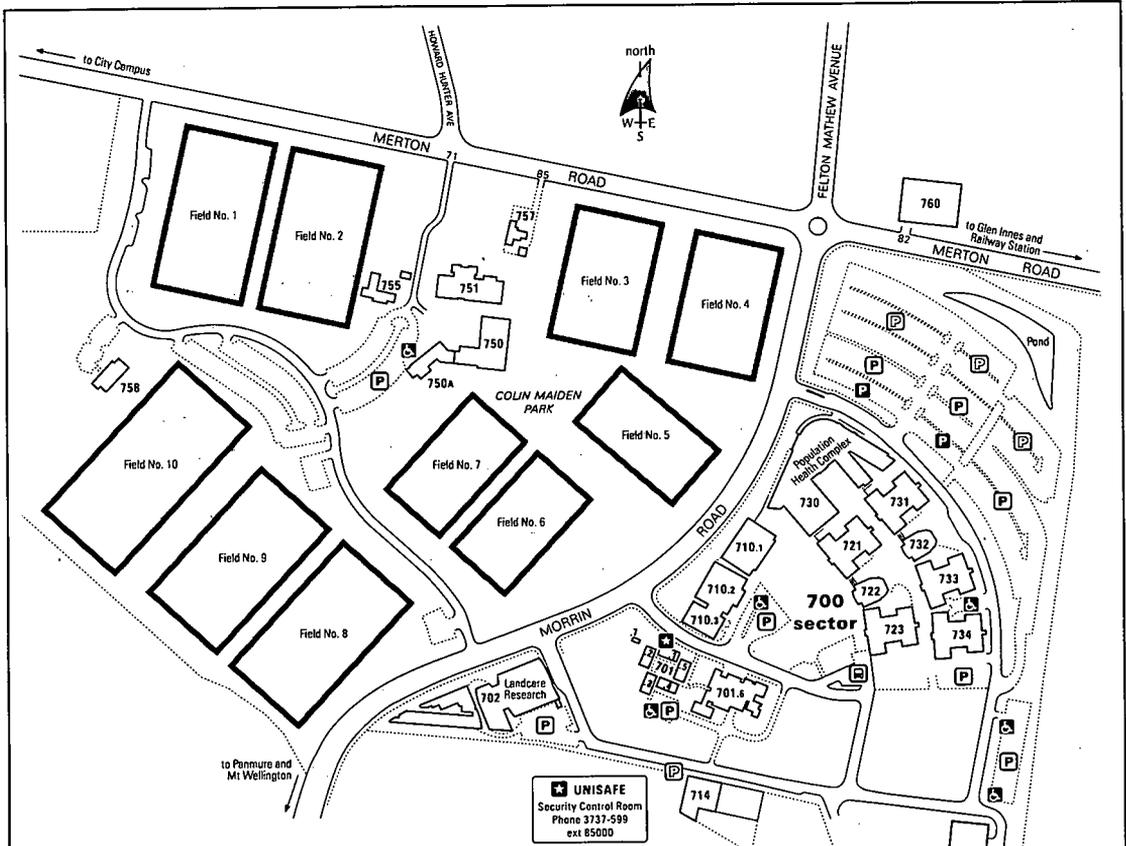
The postal address for all departments is The University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland.

Department/Faculty	Building	Street Address
Accommodation and Conference Centre Office	Student Commons	2 Alfred Street
Accounting & Finance	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 721	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Adidas Sports Medicine	Tamaki Campus, Building 750A	71 Merton Road, St Johns
Alten Road Childcare Centre		3 Alten Road
Acoustics Research & Testing Service		7 Grafton Road
Alumni Association – refer External Relations and Development		
Anaesthesiology	Mercy Hospital	98 Mountain Road, Epsom
Anatomy with Radiology	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Ancient History – refer Classics		
Anthropology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Applied Behavioural Science	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Applied Language Studies and Linguistics		18 Waterloo Quadrant
Architecture	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Art History		58 Symonds Street
Arts Faculty Office	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Asian Languages and Literatures		58 Symonds Street
Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Auckland Cardiac Rehabilitation Clinic	Tamaki Campus, Building 750A	71 Merton Road, St Johns
Auckland Consortium for Theological Education – refer Theology		
Auckland Gait Analysis & Biomedical Laboratory	Tamaki Campus, Building 750A	71 Merton Road, St Johns
Auckland UniServices Ltd.	UniServices House	70 Symonds Street
Auckland University Press		1-11 Short Street
Audiology	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
AUSA – Administration	AUSA House	4 Alfred Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 701-6	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Biological Sciences	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Biological Sciences Student Resource Centre	Biology Building	5 Symonds Street
Business and Information Management	North Shore Campus	132 Hurstmere Road, Takapuna
	Tamaki Campus, Building 723	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Cafeteria	Student Union Building	34 Princes Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 701-6	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Café Europa	Tamaki Campus, Building 733	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Careers Advisory Service	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Cashier	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Catholic Chaplain	Newman Hall	16 Waterloo Quadrant
Central Auckland Clinical School	Auckland City Hospital	Park Road
Centre for Entrepreneurship	The Ice House Textile Centre	117 St Georges Bay Road
Centre for Health Services Research & Policy (CHSRP)		
	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Centre for Flexible and Distance Learning		18 Waterloo Quadrant
Centre for Pacific Studies	Fale Pasifika	24 Wynyard St
Centre for Professional Development		76 Symonds Street
Chapel and Chaplain	Maclaurin Chapel	18 Princes Street
Chemistry	Science Building 301	23 Symonds Street
Chemistry – deliveries	Science Building 301 Gate 40	40 Wellesley Street E.
Chinese		58 Symonds Street
Classics & Ancient History		1-3 Wynyard Street
Clinical Trials Research Unit	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
ClockTower Student Information Centre	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Colin Maiden Park	Tamaki Campus, Building 750	71 Merton Road, St Johns
Commerce Faculty Office	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Commerce Student Resource Centre	Commerce B Building	5 Symonds Street
Commercial Law		1-11 Short Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 723	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Community Health	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Computer Science	Science Building 303 South	38 Princes Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 731	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Conference Centre		22 Symonds Street
Creative Arts and Industries	Conference Centre	22 Symonds Street
Disability Coordinators	ClockTower Building, East Wing	22 Princes Street
Drama Theatre	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
Economics	Commerce A Building	3A Symonds Street
Educational Media Centre		58 Symonds Street
Engineering	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Engineering – deliveries	Engineering Building	3 Grafton Road

Engineering Centre for Advanced Composite Materials (CACM)	Tamaki Campus, Building 740	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
English	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
English Language Self Access Centre	Kate Edger Information Commons	9 Symonds Street
Environmental Science	Tamaki Campus, Building 733	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Equal Opportunities Office	ClockTower Building, East Wing	22 Princes Street
European Languages	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
Executive Programmes		1-11 Short Street
External Relations and Development	University House	19A Princes Street
Fale Pasifika	Building 273	24 Wynyard Street
Federation of Graduate Women	Old Government House	3A Symonds Street
Finance Registry	UniServices House	70 Symonds Street
Fine Arts	Fine Arts Building	20 Whitaker Place
French – refer European Languages		
General Practice and Primary Health Care	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Geography	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Geology	Science Building 301	23 Symonds Street
Germanic and Slavonic Languages	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
Goodfellow Unit	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Graduate Centre	ClockTower Building, East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Grafton Hall		40 Seafield View Road
Greek – refer Classics		
Grounds – refer Property Services		
Gymnasium	Recreation Centre	17 Symonds Street
Health and Counselling – refer Student Health		
Health Psychology	Auckland City Hospital, Level 12	Park Road
History	History Building	5-7 Wynyard Street
Human Resources Registry	Alfred Nathan House	24 Princes Street
Human Sciences Building		10 Symonds Street
Immunisation Advisory Centre	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Indonesian		58 Symonds Street
Information Systems and Operations Management	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 723	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Information Technology Systems and Services (ITSS)	Information Technology Centre	24 Symonds Street
Inquiries	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 721	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
International Business		1-11 Short Street
International House		27 Whitaker Place
International Research Institute for Maori and Indigenous Education		16 Wynyard Street
International Student Advisor	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Italian – refer European Languages		
Japanese		58 Symonds Street
Kate Edger Information Commons		9 Symonds Street
Kohanga Reo		23 Alten Road
Korean		58 Symonds Street
Landcare Research (NZ)	Tamaki Campus, Building 702	231 Morrin Road, St Johns
Language Laboratories Tape Library	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Language Laboratory 2		8 Grafton Road
Language Laboratories 3, 4 and 5	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
Latin – refer Classics		
Law	Law Buildings	9-17 Eden Crescent
Lecture Theatre Management Unit	Upper & Lower Lecture Theatre	3a Symonds Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 701-4	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Lecture Theatres and Rooms:		
Architecture (ALR)	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Biology (BLT)	Biology Building	5 Symonds Street
Cell Biology (CMBioLT)	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Chemistry (Chem)	Science Building 301	23 Symonds Street
Conference Centre		22 Symonds Street
Engineering (Eng)	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Human Sciences (HSB)	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Library (Lib)	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Mathematics & Statistics (MLT)	Science Building 303	38 Princes Street
Medicine	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Newman Hall (NH)		16 Waterloo Quadrant
ClockTower (ClockT)	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Old Choral Hall (OCH)	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Old Government House (OGHLecTh)		3A Symonds Street
Physics (PLT)	Science Building 303 South	38 Princes Street
Upper and Lower (ULT & LLT)		3A Symonds Street
Tamaki Campus	721-201	261 Morrin Road, St Johns

.....	722-201	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
.....	723-201	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
.....	731-201	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
.....	732-201	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
.....	733-201	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
.....	734-201	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Leigh Laboratory	Goat Island Bay Road, Leigh	North Auckland
	PO Box 349, Warkworth (Phone Warkworth 09 422 6111)	
Liaison Office – refer Student Administration		
Library:		
University Bindery	Tamaki Campus, Building 760	82 Merton Road, St Johns
General	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
General – deliveries	Library Building	26 Princes Street
Architecture	Conference Centre	22 Symonds Street
Asian Languages	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Audio Visual	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
Biological Sciences	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Commerce	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Community Education	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Engineering	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Fine Arts	Fine Arts Building	20 Whitaker Place
Geography	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Law	Law Buildings	15 Eden Crescent
Maori Studies (Te Hukatai)	Rehutai	16 Wynyard Street
Medicine (Philson Library)	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Music	Music Building	6 Symonds Street
Science	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Tamaki	Tamaki Campus, Building 710-2	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Liggins Institute		2-6 Park Avenue
Maidment Theatre	Maidment Arts Centre	8 Alfred Street
Maintenance – refer Property Services		
Management Studies and Employment Relations	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
.....	Tamaki Campus, Building 723	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Maori Studies	Whare Kura: Academic Block	16 Wynyard Street
.....	Whare Whakaira: Meeting House	16 Wynyard Street
Maori and Pacific Health	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Marae		16 Wynyard Street
Marketing	Commerce B Building	5 Symonds Street
Mathematics	Science Building 303	38 Princes Street
.....	Tamaki Campus, Building 721	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Medical Sciences	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Medicine	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Ministry of Education Group Special Education	Tamaki Campus, Building 740	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Molecular Medicine and Pathology	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Music	Music Building	6 Symonds Street
.....		16 Waterloo Quadrant
Newman Hall		22 Princes Street
New Start	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
New Zealand Academy of Sport North	Tamaki Campus, Building 750A	71 Merton Road, St Johns
.....		58 Symonds Street
New Zealand Asia Institute		58 Symonds Street
New Zealand Drug Agency	Tamaki Campus, Building 750A	71 Merton Road, St Johns
'Number 14' Student Flats		14 Whitaker Place
Nursing	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
.....	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Obstetrics and Gynaecology	National Women's Hospital	Claude Road, Epsom
Occupational Medicine	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Old Choral Hall		7 Symonds Street
Ophthalmology	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Optometry	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
.....	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
O'Rorke Hall		16 Mount Street
Paediatrics		89-91 Grafton Road
Park Avenue Childcare Centre		28 Park Avenue
Park Road Student Flats		41 Park Road
Pharmacology	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Pharmacy	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Pharmacy and Post Office Agency	Kate Edger Information Commons	9 Symonds Street
Philosophy		18 Waterloo Quadrant
Photographer – refer Educational Media Centre		
Physico-Chemistry	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Physics	Science Building 303	38 Princes Street
.....	Tamaki Campus, Building 731	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Physics – deliveries	Science Building 303	40 Wellesley Street E.

Physiology	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Planning	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Political Studies		12-16 Symonds Street
Population Health	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Property	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Property Services:		
Administration and Planning	UniServices House	70 Symonds Street
Facilities Management	Human Sciences Building	11 Wynyard Street
Grounds Depot	Tamaki Campus, Building 755	71 Merton Road, St Johns
Psychiatry	Auckland City Hospital, Level 12	Park Road
Psychology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 734	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Clinic	Tamaki Campus, Building 731	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Public Relations – refer External Relations and Development		
Recreation Centre	City Campus	17 Symonds Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 741	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Registry	Alfred Nathan House	24 Princes Street
Research Office	Building 438	76 Symonds Street
Scholarships and Financial Support	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Schools Partnership Office	ClockTower Building, East Wing	22 Princes Street
Science Faculty Office	Science Building 301	23 Symonds Street
Security – refer Property Services		
Staff Common Room	Old Government House	3A Symonds Street
Sociology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
South Auckland Clinical School	Middlemore Hospital	Hospital Road, Otahuhu
Spanish – refer European Languages		
Speech Language Therapy	Tamaki Campus, Building 730	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Sport and Exercise Science	Tamaki Campus, Building 734	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Statistics	Science Building 303	38 Princes Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 721	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Student Accommodation	Student Commons	2 Alfred Street
Student Administration	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Student Cafeteria	Student Union Building	34 Princes Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 701-6	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Student Counsellors	Student Commons	2 Alfred Street
Student Health	Student Commons	2 Alfred Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 701-5	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Student Information Centre	Kate Edger Information Commons	9 Symonds Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 710-1	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Student Learning Centre	Kate Edger Information Commons	9 Symonds Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 710-1	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Student Recruitment and Course Advice	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Surgery	Auckland City Hospital	Park Road
Surgical Skills Training Unit	Mercy Hospital	98 Mountain Road, Epsom
Symonds Street Childcare Centre		26 Symonds Street
Tamaki Campus Administration	Tamaki Campus, Building 721	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Tertiary Foundation Certificate	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
Theology		18 Waterloo Quadrant
Thomas Building		3A Symonds Street
Thomas Building – deliveries		3 Symonds Street
Unisat (Satellite Receiving Station)	Tamaki Campus, Building 701-3	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
University Book Shop	Kate Edger Information Commons	9 Symonds Street
	Tamaki Campus, Building 701-6	261 Morrin Road, St Johns
Vice-Chancellor's Office	Alfred Nathan House	24 Princes Street
Waikato Clinical School	Peter Rothwell Academic Centre, Waikato Hospital	Pembroke Street, Hamilton
Women's Studies	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street



**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
TAMAKI CAMPUS**

**Directory**

- 750A Adidas Sports Medicine
- 701.2 Alternative Print Service
- 750A Auckland Cardiac Rehabilitation Clinic
- 750A Auckland Gait Analysis & Biomechanics Lab
- 757 Auckland Radiology Group
- 758 Auckland University Rugby Football Club
- 730 Audiology
- 723 BBIM
- 733 Biological Sciences
- 723 BioWiz Project
- 723 Business & Economics
- 723 Business School Short Courses
- 730 Café Aurora
- 701.5 Café Comet
- 733 Café Europa
- 701.6 Cafeteria
- 710.1 Careers & Employment
- 740 Centre for Advanced Composite Materials, CACM
- 730 Centre for Health Services Research & Policy, CHSRP
- 731 Centre for Image Technology & Robotics, CTR
- 730 Clinical Trials Research Unit
- 750 Colin Maiden Park Clubrooms
- 731 Computer Science
- 733 Ecology Laboratory
- 740 Education
- 701.7 Environmental Research Facility
- 730 Epidemiology & Biostatistics
- 734 Exercise & Physiology & Motor Control
- 710.1 Expo Digital Copying Centre
- 730 General Practice & Primary Health Care
- 733 Geography & Environmental Science, School of
- 730 Goodfellow Unit
- 723 Health Informatics
- 730 Health Services
- 723 Health Systems Management
- 730 Hearing & Tinnitus Clinics (Audiology)

- 733 Information Technology Systems & Services, ITSS
- 731 Intelligent Active Vision Laboratory
- 733 IUCN Invasive Species Specialist Group
- 702 Landcare Research NZ Ltd
- 701.4 Lecture Theatre Management Unit
- 721 - 723, 731-734 Lecture Theatres
- 710.2 Library
- 760 Library Off-Campus Storage
- 730 Maori & Pacific Health
- 721 Mathematics
- 740 Mechanical Engineering
- 702 Ministry of Agriculture & Forestry - Biosecurity
- 740 Ministry of Education - Group Specie: Education
- 750A New Zealand Academy of Sport North
- 750A New Zealand Sports Drug Agency
- 730 Nursing
- 730 Occupational: Medicine & Clinics
- 721 Office of the Pro Vice-Chancellor
- 730 Optometry & Clinics
- 710.1 Parent Space
- 757 Peter Snel: Institute of Sport
- 730 Pharmacy
- 730 Phonak
- 731 Physics
- 730 Population Health, School of
- 701.1 Property Services
- 755 Property Services Grounds Depot
- 734 Psychology
- 731 Psychology Clinic
- 714 Recreation Centre
- 721 Registry, Campus Reception
- 701.6 Retail Precinct
- 710.1 Security
- 730 Social & Community Health
- 731 Speech Language Therapy
- 730 Speech Language Therapy Clinics
- 734, 750A Sport & Exercise Science, Department of
- 721 Statistics
- 710.1 Student Administration
- 710.2, 721, 723 Student Computer Laboratories
- 710.1, 721 Student Learning Centre
- 710.1 Student Lounge
- 710.1 Student Resource Centre

**UNISAFE**  
Security Control Room  
Phone 3337-599  
ext 85000

- City-Tamaki Bus Stop
- Visitor Parking
- Access Parking
- Staff Parking
- Student Parking

0 SCALE 200m

Geo-graphics Unit, School of Geography & Environmental Science  
© The University of Auckland, August 2004

- 710.1 Tamaki Students' Association
- 701.1 Unisafe
- 701.3 UniSat (Satellite Receiving Station)
- 750A UniSports Centre for Sports Performance
- 751 UniSports Training Centre
- 760 University Bindery
- 701.6 University Bookshop
- 701.5 University Health
- 730 Well: Health
- 761 Wind Tunnel; 3 Hannigan Dr (outside map coverage)
- 740 Wine Science
- 761 Yacht Research Unit, 3 Hannigan Dr (outside map coverage)



**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
CITY CAMPUS**

**Directory**

- 315 Accommodation & Conference Services
- 207 Accounting & Finance, Dept of
- 422 Acoustics Research & Testing Service
- 105 Admission & Enrolment
- 135 Advancement Office
- 103 Alfred Nathan House
- 135 Alumni Relations
- 201, 408 Anthropology, Dept of
- 810 APEC Study Centre
- 804 Applied Language Studies & Linguistics, Dept of
- 408 Archaeological Research
- 421 Architecture, School of
- 435 Art History, Dept of
- 206 Arts 1 Building
- 435 Asian Studies, School of
- 439 Auckland UniServices Ltd
- 810 Auckland University Press
- 322 Auckland University Students' Association, AUSA
- 439 Biengineering Institute
- 106, 110, 118 Biological Sciences, School of
- 106 Biological Sciences Student Resource Centre
- 106 Biology Building
- 104, 113, 114, 207, 810 Business, School of
- 801 Business Law, Research Centre for
- 201 Business School Computer Laboratories
- 201, 312, 315, 401, 801, 810 Cafeterias, cafes
- 105 Cell Centre
- 409 Campus IT
- 105 Careers & Employment
- 105 Cashiers
- 438 Centre for Professional Development, CPD
- 401 Chemical & Materials Engineering, Dept of
- 301 Chemistry, Dept of
- 401 Civil & Resource Engineering, Dept of
- 240, 246 Classics and Ancient History, Dept of
- 114 Commerce A
- 113 Commerce B
- 207 Commerce C
- 810 Commercial Law, Dept of
- 303 Computer Science, Dept of
- 423 Conference Centre
- 105 Continuing Education
- 315 Counselling
- 423 Creative Arts & Industries, National Institute of
- 241 Creche, Alten Road
- 410 Creche, Symonds Street
- 201 Custodial Services
- 804 OEINA
- 201 Development Studies, Centre for
- 105 Disability Services
- 205 Drama Theatre
- 114 Economics, Dept of
- 804, 815 Education, Faculty of
- 417, 418, 431-434, 610 Elem School of Fine Arts
- 401 Electrical & Computer Engineering, Dept of

- 109, 201, 206, 219 Language Laboratories
- 801-803 Law, School of
- 115 Lecture Theatre Management Unit
- 109 Library, General Library
- 118 Lippincott Cottage
- 123 Lodge, Old Government House
- 107 Maclaurin Chapel & Chaplains
- 313 Maidment Theatre, Studio
- 201 Maintenance Workshops
- 207 Management & Employment Relations, Dept of
- 253 Maori & Indigenous Education, International Research Institute for
- 226 Maori Material Culture Workshop
- 226, 253 Maori Studies, Dept of
- 251, 252 Marae
- 113 Marketing, Dept of
- 303 Mathematics, Dept of
- 401 Mechanical Engineering, Dept of
- 117, 250 Music, School of
- 805 Newman Hall Catholic Tertiary Centre
- 105 New Start
- 435 New Zealand Asia Institute
- 436 'Number 14' Student Flats
- 104 Old Choral Hall
- 102 Old Government House
- 614 O'Rorke Hall
- 220 Pacific Studies, Centre for
- 315 Pharmacy
- 804 Philosophy, Dept of
- 435 Photographers
- 303 Physics, Dept of
- 421 Planning, Dept of
- 212, 215, 216, 220 Political Studies, Dept of
- 315 Post Office Agency
- 815 Principals Centre
- 421 Property, Dept of
- 439 Property Services
- 201 Psychology, Dept of
- 314 Recreation Centre
- 438 Research Office
- 315 Retail Facilities
- 103 Safety Officer
- 105 Scholarships & Financial Support
- 119 Schools Partnership Office
- 301, 303 Science Centre
- 201 Security
- 201 Sociology, Dept of
- 206 Spanish, Dept of
- 102 Staff Common Room
- 303 Statistics, Dept of
- 315 strata, Postgraduate Commons
- 105 Student Administration
- 315 Student Commons
- 311, 312 Student Union
- 105 Student Financial Support
- 315 Student Health & Counselling
- 105 Student Information Centre
- 315 Student Learning Centre
- 105 Student Records & Graduation
- 119 Student Recruitment & Course Advice
- 322 Students' Association, AUSA

**Faculty Offices and Student Centres**

- 105, 201 Arts
- 113, 207 Business and Economics
- 423 Creative Arts and Industries
- 804 Education
- 402 Engineering
- 801 Law
- 502 Medical and Health Sciences
- 301, 303 Science
- 804 Theology (School of)

**Libraries**

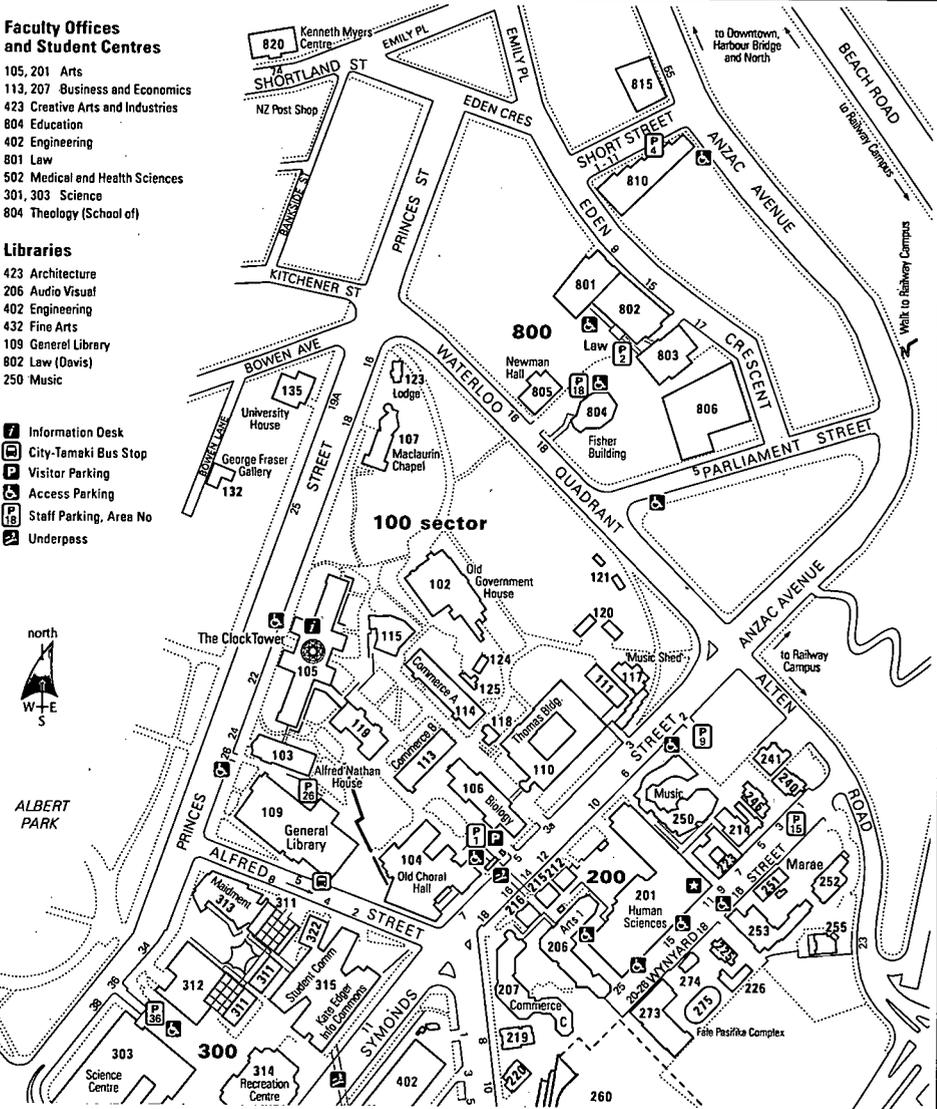
- 423 Architecture
- 206 Audio Visual
- 402 Engineering
- 432 Fine Arts
- 109 General Library
- 802 Law (Davis)
- 250 Music

- Information Desk
- City-Tamaki Bus Stop
- Visitor Parking
- Access Parking
- Staff Parking, Area No
- Underpass



ALBERT PARK

to Queen Street, Harbour Bridge and North



to Downtown, Harbour Bridge and North

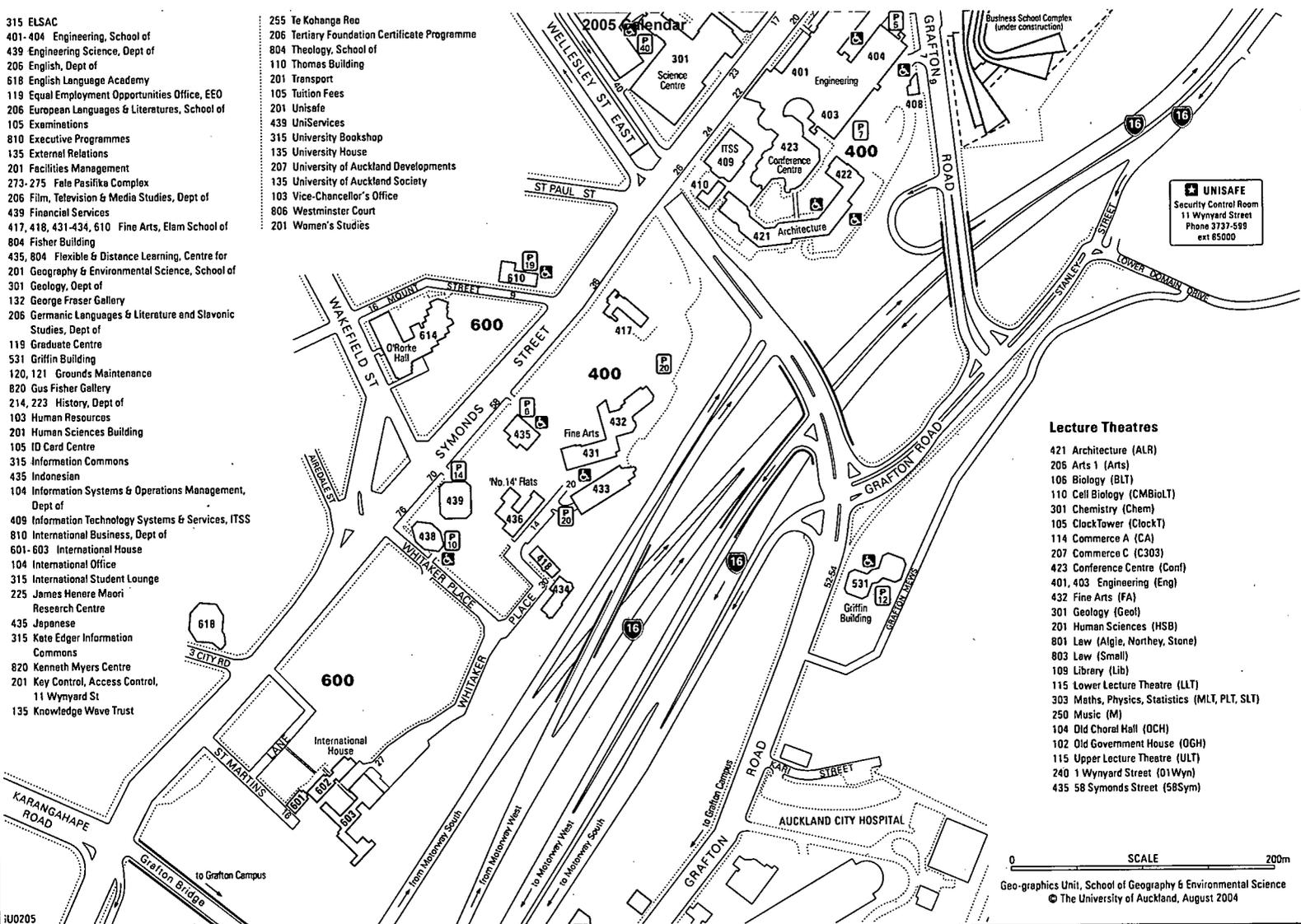
to Railway Campus

to Railway Campus

to Railway Campus

- 315 ELSAC
- 401-404 Engineering, School of
- 439 Engineering Science, Dept of
- 206 English, Dept of
- 618 English Language Academy
- 119 Equal Employment Opportunities Office, EEO
- 206 European Languages & Literatures, School of
- 105 Examinations
- 810 Executive Programmes
- 135 External Relations
- 201 Facilities Management
- 273-275 Fale Pasifika Complex
- 206 Film, Television & Media Studies, Dept of
- 439 Financial Services
- 417, 418, 431-434, 610 Fine Arts, Elam School of
- 804 Fisher Building
- 435, 804 Flexible & Distance Learning, Centre for
- 201 Geography & Environmental Science, School of
- 301 Geology, Dept of
- 132 George Fraser Gallery
- 206 Germanic Languages & Literature and Slavonic Studies, Dept of
- 119 Graduate Centre
- 531 Griffin Building
- 120, 121 Grounds Maintenance
- 820 Gus Fisher Gallery
- 214, 223 History, Dept of
- 103 Human Resources
- 201 Human Sciences Building
- 105 ID Card Centre
- 315 Information Commons
- 435 Indonesian
- 104 Information Systems & Operations Management, Dept of
- 409 Information Technology Systems & Services, ITSS
- 810 International Business, Dept of
- 601-603 International House
- 104 International Office
- 315 International Student Lounge
- 225 James Heneere Maori Research Centre
- 435 Japanese
- 315 Kate Edger Information Commons
- 820 Kenneth Myers Centre
- 201 Key Control, Access Control, 11 Wynyard St
- 135 Knowledge Wave Trust

- 255 Te Kohanga Roa
- 206 Tertiary Foundation Certificate Programme
- 804 Theology, School of
- 110 Thomas Building
- 201 Transport
- 105 Tuition Fees
- 201 Unisafe
- 439 UniServices
- 315 University Bookshop
- 135 University House
- 207 University of Auckland Developments
- 135 University of Auckland Society
- 103 Vice-Chancellor's Office
- 806 Westminster Court
- 201 Women's Studies



**UNISAFE**  
Security Control Room  
11 Wynyard Street  
Phone 3737-589  
ext 85000

**Lecture Theatres**

- 421 Architecture (ALR)
- 206 Arts 1 (Arts)
- 106 Biology (BLT)
- 110 Cell Biology (CMBiolT)
- 301 Chemistry (Chem)
- 105 ClockTower (ClockT)
- 114 Commerce A (CA)
- 207 Commerce C (C303)
- 423 Conference Centre (Conf)
- 401, 403 Engineering (Eng)
- 432 Fine Arts (FA)
- 301 Geology (Geo)
- 201 Human Sciences (HSB)
- 801 Law (Algie, Northey, Stone)
- 803 Law (Small)
- 109 Library (Lib)
- 115 Lower Lecture Theatre (LLT)
- 303 Maths, Physics, Statistics (MLT, PLT, SLT)
- 250 Music (M)
- 104 Old Choral Hall (OCH)
- 102 Old Government House (OGH)
- 115 Upper Lecture Theatre (ULT)
- 240 1 Wynyard Street (01Wyn)
- 435 58 Symonds Street (58Sym)

0 SCALE 200m

Geo-graphics Unit, School of Geography & Environmental Science  
© The University of Auckland, August 2004



**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
GRAFTON CAMPUS**

**Directory**

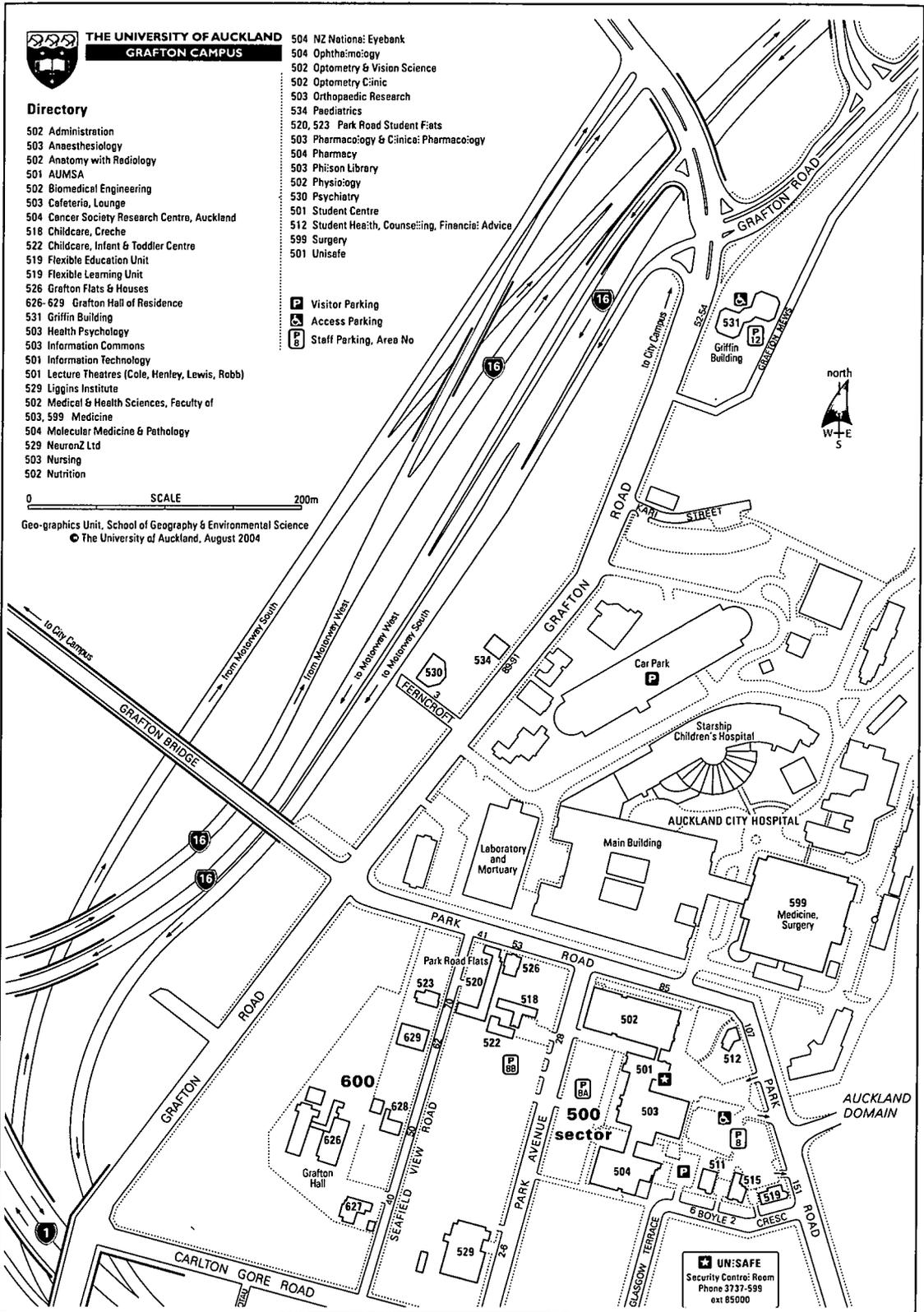
- 502 Administration
- 503 Anaesthesiology
- 502 Anatomy with Radiology
- 501 AUMSA
- 502 Biomedical Engineering
- 503 Cafeteria, Lounge
- 504 Cancer Society Research Centre, Auckland
- 518 Childcare, Creche
- 522 Childcare, Infant & Toddler Centre
- 519 Flexible Education Unit
- 519 Flexible Learning Unit
- 526 Grafton Flats & Houses
- 626-629 Grafton Hall of Residence
- 531 Griffin Building
- 503 Health Psychology
- 503 Information Commons
- 501 Information Technology
- 501 Lecture Theatres (Cole, Henley, Lewis, Robb)
- 529 Liggins Institute
- 502 Medical & Health Sciences, Faculty of
- 503, 599 Medicine
- 504 Molecular Medicine & Pathology
- 529 Neuron2 Ltd
- 503 Nursing
- 502 Nutrition

- 504 NZ Nations: Eyebank
- 504 Ophthalmology
- 502 Optometry & Vision Science
- 502 Optometry Clinic
- 503 Orthopaedic Research
- 534 Paediatrics
- 520, 523 Park Road Student Flats
- 503 Pharmacology & Clinical: Pharmacology
- 504 Pharmacy
- 503 Physics Library
- 502 Physiology
- 530 Psychiatry
- 501 Student Centre
- 512 Student Health, Counselling, Financial Advice
- 599 Surgery
- 501 Unisafe

- Visitor Parking
- Access Parking
- Staff Parking, Area No

0 SCALE 200m

Geo-graphics Unit, School of Geography & Environmental Science  
© The University of Auckland, August 2004

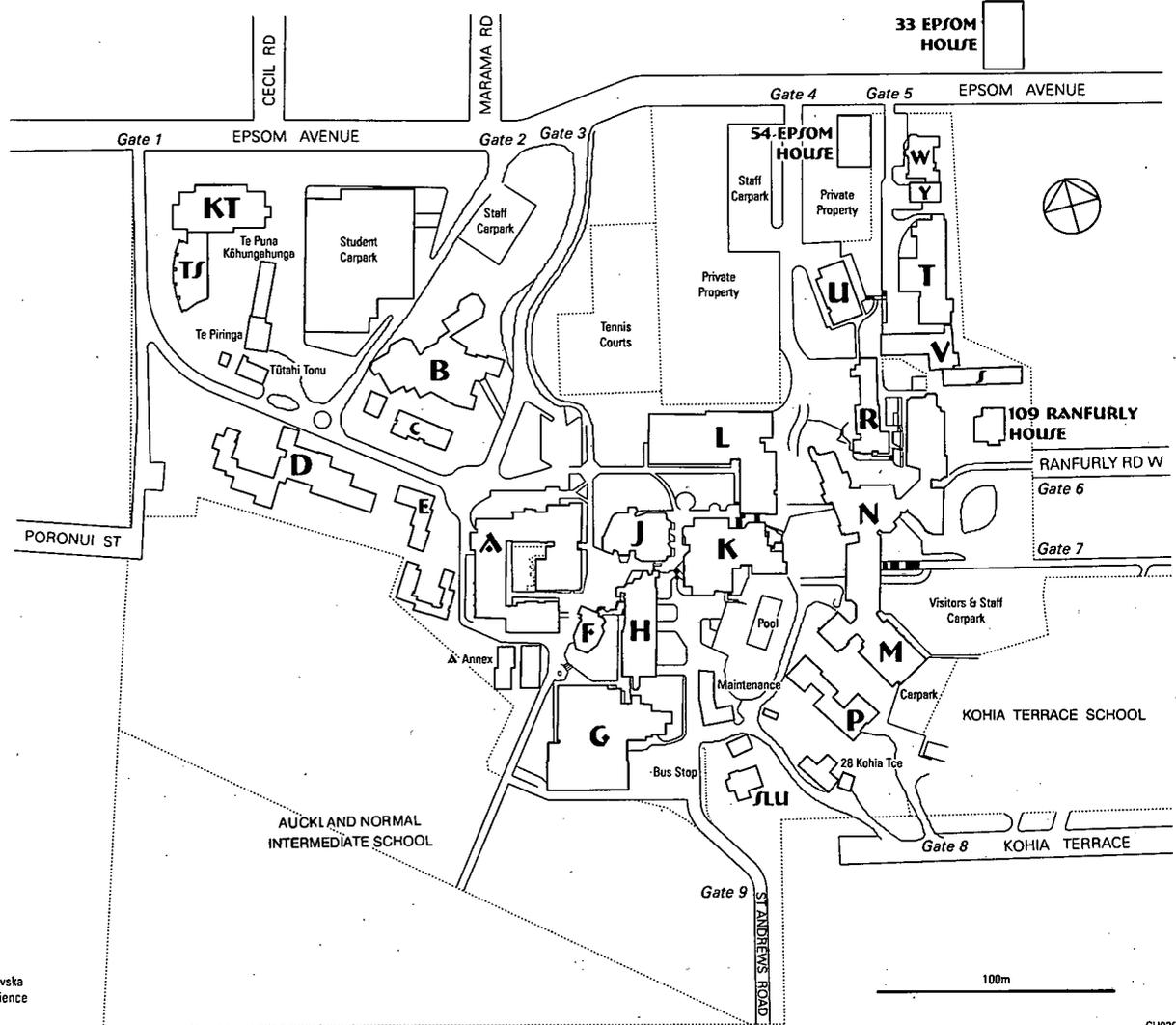




**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**  
**EPSOM CAMPUS**

**Directory**

- A** Reception, Administration, Human Resources, Finance, Arts, Languages, Science, Reading Recovery & International
- B** Music, Disability Support Office
- C** Pasifika
- D** Te Puna Wānanga, Marae, Maori Studies, Te Puna Kāhungahunga
- E** Special Education
- F** Lecture Theatres
- G** Gym & Dance Rooms
- H** Health & PE, Contracts & Counselling Services
- J** Duncan McGhie Lecture Theatre
- K** Student Centre, Drama Centre
- L** Sylvia Ashton-Warner Library, Internet Room
- M** Gym & Dance Room
- N** Contact Centre, CEDD, Computer Rooms, Information Technology Services, Lecture Theatres, Owen Gilmore Theatre, Teaching Resources Centre, Professional Inquiry, Practicum, Social Sciences, Marketing, Mathematics, Information Studies & Social Work
- P** Social Work
- R** Postgraduate Studies & Research, Health Centre, Conference Rooms
- S** Technology & PIECE
- T** Technology
- U** PIECE
- V** Technology & CODE
- WY** Performance Improvement Centre
- KT** Kohia Teachers Centre
- TS** Team Solutions
- SLU** Student Learning Unit
- 33 EP/OM HOUSE** Crèche
- 54 EP/OM HOUSE** Research
- 109 RANFURLY HOUSE** Contracts



Plan adapted from the original ACE Site Plan by Elena Janevska  
Geo-graphics Unit, School of Geography & Environmental Science  
© The University of Auckland, August 2004

100m

**A**

Academic Calendar 16  
 Academic Dress 42  
   Availability of 44  
 Academic Progress 19  
 Academic Qualifications, Conferment of 42  
 Academic Statutes and Regulations 12  
 Academic Year 1  
 Accommodation and Conferencing Services 651  
 Accounting 77, 79, 81, 84, 85, 371  
 Accounting and Finance 674  
 Acts of Parliament and University Statutes 622  
 Addition of Courses 18  
 Administration 93  
 Admission 1, 13  
   Admission and Enrolment 1, 13  
   Application for 14  
   Closing Dates 13  
   Discretionary Entrance 15  
   English Language Competence 16  
   International Students 32  
   Prerequisites and Conditions 14  
   Provisional Entrance 14  
   Regulations 14  
   Requirements for Entrance to a University in New Zealand 14  
   Special Admission 14  
   Students Enrolled at Another Educational Institution 16  
 Admission *ex eundem statum* 15  
 Admission at Entrance Level or with Credit 15  
 Advanced Interpreting, Postgraduate Certificate in 74  
 Alcohol and Drug Studies 186  
 Alliances with other Tertiary Institutions 7  
 Alumni Awards 666  
 Anaesthesiology:  
   Central Auckland Medical School 687  
   South Auckland Medical School 693  
   Waikato Clinical School 694  
 Anatomy 199  
 Anatomy with Radiology 172, 176, 506, 696  
 Ancient History 52, 59, 63, 270  
 Anthropology 52, 59, 63, 199, 273, 669  
 Anti-Harassment Policy and Procedures 656  
 Applied Geology 204, 208  
 Applied Language Studies and Linguistics 670  
 Applied Mathematics 199, 204, 208  
 Applied Psychology, Postgraduate Diploma in 213  
 Architectural Design 408  
 Architectural Drawing and Computing 409  
 Architectural History, Theory and Criticism 413  
 Architectural Practice and Management 417  
 Architectural Studies:  
   Bachelor of 99  
   Master of 101  
 Architectural Technology 419  
 Architecture 678  
   Bachelor of 100  
   Master of 102  
   Regulations 99  
 Architecture: General 411  
 Arms of The University of Auckland 2  
 Art History 53, 59, 63, 281, 670  
 Arts:  
   Bachelor of 52  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 58

  Certificate in 74  
   Graduate Diploma in 71  
   Master of 62  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 71  
   Prescriptions 270  
   Regulations 51  
   Staff 669  
 Arts - General 285  
 Arts Management 123, 423  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 92, 106, 234  
 Asian Business Studies 77  
 Asian Studies 53, 63, 285  
 Asian Studies, School of 670  
 Associations:  
   Auckland University Students' Association 656  
   New Zealand University Students' Association 655  
 Auckland College of Education 7, 130  
 Auckland UniServices Limited 7, 712  
 Auckland University of Technology 7  
 Auckland University Students' Association 656  
 Audiology 172, 507, 700  
   Master of 169

**B**

Bachelor of: 100  
   Architectural Studies 99  
   Architecture 100  
   Arts 52  
   Arts (Honours) 58  
   Business and Information Management 78  
   Commerce 76  
   Commerce (Honours) 80  
   Education (Teaching) 131  
   Education (Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages) 132  
   Engineering 144  
   Fine Arts 106  
   Health Sciences 164  
   Laws 157  
   Laws (Honours) 158  
   Medicine and Surgery 164  
   Music 112  
   Music (Honours) 113  
   Music Education 114  
   Nursing 166  
   Nursing (Honours) 168  
   Optometry 205  
   Performing Arts 123  
   Pharmacy 168  
   Planning 125  
   Property 79  
   Property (Honours) 82  
   Science 199  
   Science (Honours) 202  
   Technology 148, 206, 224  
   Theology 220  
   Visual Arts 107  
 Behavioural Science 172, 176, 182, 507  
 bFM 656  
 Biblical Studies 592  
 Bioengineering Institute 683  
 Bioinformatics 201, 204, 538  
 Biological Sciences 57, 172, 176, 199, 201, 204, 208, 538, 704  
 Biomedical Engineering 144  
 Biomedical Science 57, 201, 204, 544  
 Biotechnology 225  
 BTech Projects 545

Building Science:  
   Master of 104  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 105  
 Business Administration 374  
   Master of 85  
 Business and Economics:  
   Prescriptions 371  
   Regulations 75  
   Staff 674  
 Business and Information Management, Bachelor of 78  
 Business Taxation 93  
 Business:  
   Postgraduate Certificate in 96  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 92

**C**

Cafeterias and Tavern 656  
 Calendar Year 8  
 Campus:  
   City 5  
   Grafton 6  
   North Shore 6  
   Recreation 651  
   Tamaki 5  
 Campus Radio 95bFM 656  
 Careers and Employment Office 652  
 Central Administration 5  
 Centre for Continuing Education 252, 712  
 Centre for Flexible and Distance Learning 712  
 Centre for Professional Development 712  
 Certificate in:  
   Arts 74  
   Foundation Studies 251  
   Health Sciences 197  
   Ocular Pharmacology 218  
 Certificate of Proficiency 249  
 Changes to Current Enrolment 18  
   Additions and Deletions 18  
   Deadlines for Additions and Deletions 18  
   Refund of Fees 19  
   Substitutions 18  
   Withdrawals 19  
 Chaplaincy 652  
 Chemical and Materials Engineering 145, 466, 683  
 Chemistry 200, 201, 204, 208, 545, 705  
 Childcare 653  
 Chinese 53, 59, 63, 286  
 Christian Thought and History 596  
 City Campus 5, 651  
 Civil and Environmental Engineering 200, 684  
 Civil Engineering 145, 469  
 Classical Studies 53, 290  
 Classics and Ancient History 671  
 Clinical Psychology:  
   Doctor of 215  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 217  
 Clinical Skills Resource Centre 695  
 Closing Dates 13  
 Commerce:  
   Bachelor of 76  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 80  
   Graduate Diploma in 91  
   Master of 83  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 95  
 Commercial Law 77, 79, 87, 160, 375, 499, 675  
   Master of 87, 499

Community Emergency Medicine:  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 186  
 Community Health 172, 176, 182, 509  
 Comparative Literature 57, 59, 64, 291  
 Computer Science 57, 77, 200, 201, 204, 208, 548, 706  
 Computer Systems Engineering 145, 473  
 Conceded Passes 37  
 Conjoint Degrees:  
   BA/BCom 238  
   BA/BE 238  
   BA/BEd(Tchg) 239  
   BA/BFA 239  
   BA/BHSc 239  
   BA/BMus 239  
   BA/BProp 240  
   BA/BSc 240  
   BA/BTheol 240  
   BA/LLB 241  
   BA/LLB(Hons) 241  
   BCom/BE 241  
   BCom/BHSc 241  
   BCom/BMus 242  
   BCom/BProp 242  
   BCom/BSc 242  
   BCom/LLB 243  
   BCom/LLB(Hons) 243  
   BE/BProp 244  
   BE/BSc 244  
   BE/LLB 244  
   BE/LLB(Hons) 244  
   BEd(Tchg)/BSc 244  
   BHSc/LLB 245  
   BHSc/LLB(Hons) 245  
   BMus/BSc 245  
   BMus/BTheol 245  
   BProp/BSc 246  
   BProp/LLB 246  
   BProp/LLB(Hons) 246  
   BSc/BTheol 247  
   BSc/LLB 247  
   BSc/LLB(Hons) 247  
   Regulations 236  
 Continuing Education 252  
 Cook Islands Maori 57, 292  
 Copyright 50  
 Counselling, Graduate Diploma in 136  
 Council 5, 664  
 Course Availability 604  
 Creative and Performing Arts, Master of 123  
 Creative Arts and Industries:  
   Prescriptions 408  
   Regulations 98  
   Staff 678  
 Credit Regulations 24  
 Croatian 57, 293

**D**

Dance 57, 123  
 Dance Studies 124, 423  
 Deans 665  
 Deletion of Courses 18  
 Development Studies 64  
 Development Studies, Centre for 293, 671  
 Diploma in:  
   Mathematics Education 136, 211, 232  
   Paediatrics 184  
   Professional Ethics 70  
   Science Education 136, 211, 233

Diplomas and Certificates, Regulations 21  
 Directory 719  
 Disciplinary Statute 624  
 Discretionary Entrance 15  
 Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees 252  
 Doctor of:

Clinical Psychology 215  
 Education 135  
 Engineering 265  
 Fine Arts 109  
 Laws 264  
 Literature 263  
 Medicine 182  
 Music 117  
 Musical Arts 119  
 Pharmacy 183  
 Philosophy 254  
 Science 263

Drama Studies 59, 64, 294

## E

Economics 53, 59, 64, 77, 79, 81, 84, 85, 379, 675

Education 53, 59, 64, 172, 460

Bachelor of (Teaching) 131  
 Bachelor of (Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages) 132  
 Doctor of 135  
 Graduate Diploma in 138  
 Master of 133  
 Postgraduate Diploma in 141  
 Prescriptions 447  
 Regulations 130  
 School of 680  
 Staff 679

Education Act 623

Education Curriculum 447

Educational (Professional) 455

Educational Management, Master of 86, 227

Educational Psychology, Postgraduate Diploma in 142

Electrical and Computer Engineering 684

Electrical and Electronic Engineering 146, 474

Electronic Commerce 77

Electronics and Computing 202, 552

Employment Relations and Organization Studies 53, 59, 64, 294

Energy Technology 482

Engineering:

Bachelor of 144  
 Doctor of 265  
 Graduate Diploma in 153  
 Master of 148  
 Prescriptions 466  
 Regulations 143  
 Staff 682

Engineering, General 477

Engineering Management 93, 383

Master of 86, 150, 227

Engineering Science 146, 478, 685

Engineering Studies, Master of 151

Engineering (Transportation), Graduate Diploma in 154

English 53, 59, 64, 294, 671

English as a Second Language 57, 251, 302

English Language Acquisition and Linguistics 53

English Language Acquisition and Literature in English 53

English Language Competence 16

English Language Self Access Centre (ELSAC) 653

English Writing 57, 303

Enrolment 1, 16

Academic Calendar 16

Addition of Courses 18

Admission and Enrolment 1

Changes to Current Enrolment 18

Enrolment 18

Enrolment and Programme Regulations 16

General Programme Provisions 17

Limitations 26

Not-for-Credit Courses 18

Points 17

Restrictions 17

Entrance Requirements 14

Environmental Engineering 146, 483

Environmental Law 160, 502

Environmental Legal Studies, Master of 160

Environmental Management 208, 553

Environmental Science 200, 202, 208, 553

Epidemiology & Biostatistics 701

Equal Opportunities 712

Equal Opportunity Programme 657

Ergonomics 208, 555

Ethics 54, 303

Ethnomusicology 57, 303

European Languages and Literatures 58, 303

School of 671

European Studies 54

Examinations:

Aegrotat and Compassionate Consideration 35

Conceded Passes 37

Deferred Results 39

Grades and Marks 37

Higher Degrees 265

Materials 34

Misconduct 34

Regulations 33

Exercise Rehabilitation 208

External Relations and Development 713

## F

Faculties 5

Faculty of:

Arts 51, 268, 270, 669

Business & Economics 75, 268, 371, 674

Creative Arts and Industries 98, 268, 408, 678

Education 130, 269, 447, 679

Engineering 143, 269, 466, 682

Law 156, 269, 490, 686

Medical and Health Sciences 163, 269, 506, 686

Science 198, 269, 538, 703

Faculty Education Unit 695

Fees 29

Additional Fees/Charges 30

General 29

Non-attendance 30

Non-payment 30

Payment of Fees and Charges 30

Refunds 30

Revocation 30

Schedules 31

Statute 29

Tuition 29

Film and Television Production 124

Film, Television and Media Studies 54, 60, 65, 307, 672

Finance 77, 81, 84, 85, 93, 384  
 Finance – Executive Programmes 385  
 Financial Services Department 713  
 Fine Arts 426, 678  
   Bachelor of 106  
   Doctor of 109  
   Master of 108  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 111  
   Regulations 106  
 Food Science 201, 204, 208, 555, 706  
 Forensic Science 208, 556, 706  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 213  
 Foundation Certificate in English for Academic  
 Purposes 249  
 Foundation Studies Programme 713  
 Foundation Studies, Certificate in 251  
 French 54, 60, 65, 304, 672  
 Full-time Study 16

**G**

General Law 503  
 General Practice 512  
 General Practice and Primary Health Care 172,  
 176, 701  
 General Programme Provisions 17  
 General Regulations:  
   Diplomas and Certificates 21  
   Master's Degrees 21  
   Named Doctorates 23  
 General Science 200  
 General Statutes and Regulations 41  
 Geography 54, 60, 65, 200, 201, 204, 208, 557  
 Geography and Environmental Science 707  
 Geology 200, 201, 204, 208, 56, 561, 708  
 Geophysics 200, 202, 208, 563  
 Geothermal Energy Technology, Postgraduate  
 Certificate in 155  
 Geothermal Institute, Within the Faculty of  
 Engineering 686  
 Geriatric Medicine, Postgraduate Diploma in 187  
 German 54, 60, 65, 312  
 Glossary 717  
 Goodfellow Unit 702  
 Grades and Marks 37  
 Graduate Diploma in:  
   Arts- 71  
   Commerce 91  
   Counselling 136  
   Education 138  
   Engineering 153  
   Engineering (Transportation) 154  
   Health Sciences 185  
   Music 121  
   Operations Research 92, 155, 211, 234  
   Science 211  
   Teaching (Primary) 139  
   Teaching (Secondary) 140  
   Theology 222  
 Graduate School of Enterprise 675  
 Greek 54, 60, 65, 314  
 Groundwork 250  
 Guidelines for the Award of Honorary Degrees and  
 Fellowships 46

**H**

Halls of Residence 651  
 Health Informatics 94, 385

Health Management 94, 516  
   Master of 86, 171, 228  
 Health Promotion 186  
 Health Psychology 173, 176, 208, 516, 687  
   Master of Science in 182, 232  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 187  
 Health Sciences 516  
   Bachelor of 164  
   Certificate in 197  
   Master of 171  
   Postgraduate Certificate in 193  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 188  
 Hebrew 58  
 History 54, 60, 65, 200, 315, 673  
 History and Philosophy of Science and Technology  
 55, 200, 322  
 Honorary Fellows 666  
 Honorary Graduates 666  
 Homestay 651  
 Human Biology 200, 517  
 Human Resource Management 85, 94, 386  
 Human Resources Registry 713

**I**

Index of Subjects and Programmes 268  
 Indonesian 55, 322  
 Industrial Mathematics 202, 225  
 Information Commons Services 653  
 Information Management 79, 386  
 Information Systems 77, 81, 84, 85, 94, 200, 202,  
 387  
 Information Systems and Operations Management  
 676  
 Information Technology 225  
 Information Technology Systems and Services 47,  
 713  
 Injury Prevention Research Centre 703  
 Intellectual Property Including Inventions and  
 Patents 657  
 Interfaculty Degrees and Diplomas, Regulations  
 223  
 International 713  
 International Business 77, 81, 84, 85, 390, 676  
   Master of 87  
 International Office 713  
 International Strategy and Leadership 94, 393  
 International Student Support Officer 653  
 International Students 32  
 International Trade 77  
 Italian 55, 60, 65, 323, 672

**J**

Japan Studies Centre 666  
 Japanese 55, 60, 65, 326  
 Jazz 123, 428

**K**

Kate Edger Information Commons 653  
 Korea Studies Centre 666  
 Korean 55, 65, 329

**L**

Language Study Abroad 330  
 Language Teaching and Learning 58, 66, 330  
 Language Teaching, Postgraduate Diploma in 72

Languages and Literature 66, 333  
 Late Deletion 18  
 Late Enrolment 18  
 Latin 55, 60, 66, 333  
 Latin American Studies 335  
 Law 200, 490  
   Prescriptions 490  
   Regulations 156  
   Staff 686  
 Law and Economics 77  
 Laws:  
   Bachelor of 157  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 158  
   Doctor of 264  
   Master of 159  
 Legal Studies, Postgraduate Diploma in 161  
 Leigh Laboratory 708  
 Library 48, 653, 655, 715  
 Liggins Institute 695  
 Light Metals Reduction Technology, Postgraduate  
   Certificate in 155  
 Limitation of Entry Statute 26  
 Limitations Schedule 27  
 Linguistics 55, 60, 66, 200, 335  
 Linguistics and English Language Teaching 55  
 Literature:  
   Doctor of 263  
   Master of 68  
 Logic and Computation 55, 60, 66, 200, 202, 204,  
 208, 337

## M

MacLaurin Chapel 652  
 Maidment Theatre 653  
 Managed Care 173, 186, 521  
 Management and Employment Relations 77, 78,  
 79, 81, 84, 85, 396, 676  
 Management, Master of 86  
 Manukau Institute of Technology 7, 250  
 Maori and Pacific Health 173, 176, 182, 523, 702  
 Maori and Pacific Music, Archive of 673  
 Maori Development 94, 395  
 Maori Performing Arts 123  
 Maori Studies 55, 60, 66, 337, 673  
 Maps 723  
 Marine Science 200, 202, 209, 564  
 Marketing 77, 78, 79, 82, 84, 85, 94, 395, 400, 677  
 Master of Planning 442  
 Master of Planning Practice 441  
 Master of:  
   Architectural Studies 101  
   Architecture 102  
   Arts 62  
   Audiology 169  
   Business Administration 85  
   Commerce 83  
   Commercial Law 87, 499  
   Creative and Performing Arts 123  
   Education 133  
   Educational Management 86, 227  
   Engineering 148  
   Engineering Management 86, 150, 227  
   Engineering Studies 151  
   Environmental Legal Studies 160  
   Fine Arts 108  
   Health Management 86, 171, 228  
   Health Sciences 171  
   International Business 87  
   Laws 159  
   Literature 68  
   Management 86  
   Medical Science 174  
   Music 116  
   Nursing 177  
   Operations Research 88, 153, 206, 229  
   Pharmacy Practice 179  
   Planning 128  
   Planning Practice 126, 441  
   Professional Studies 69, 161, 230  
   Property 88  
   Public Health 180  
   Science 206  
   Science (Health Psychology) 182, 232  
   Speech Language Therapy Practice 210  
   Taxation Studies 90  
   Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages 69  
   Theology 220  
 Master's Degrees, Regulations 21  
 Mathematics 56, 60, 66, 77, 200, 201, 204, 209,  
 565, 708  
 Mathematics Education, Diploma in 136, 211, 232  
 MBChB 517  
 Mechanical Engineering 147, 485, 685  
 Mechatronics 147  
 Medical and Health Sciences:  
   Prescriptions 506  
   Regulations 163  
   Staff 686  
 Medical Science 209, 520  
   Master of 174  
   Postgraduate Certificate in 195  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 189  
 Medical Statistics 209  
 Medicinal Chemistry 202, 204  
 Medicine 173, 176, 519  
   Bachelor of 164  
   Central Auckland Medical School 687  
   Doctor of 182  
   South Auckland Medical School 693  
   Waikato Clinical School 694  
 Medicine and Surgery, Bachelor of 164  
 Medieval and Early Modern European Studies 57,  
 60, 67, 340, 369  
 MMgt/GradDipBus 393  
 Molecular Medicine 173, 176, 200, 522  
 Moral and Practical Theology 601  
 Multimedia and the Arts 226  
 Museums and Cultural Heritage 60, 67, 341  
 Music 56, 61, 67, 430, 678  
   Bachelor of 112  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 113  
   Doctor of 117  
   Graduate Diploma in 121  
   Master of 116  
   Regulations 112  
 Music Education 57, 437  
   Bachelor of 114  
 Musical Arts, Doctor of 119

## N

National Scholarships (NZVCC) 638  
 New Start for Adults 250  
 New Venture Management 403  
 New Ventures 94  
 New Zealand Asia Institute 666  
 New Zealand University Students' Association 655

- Newman Hall 652  
 North Shore Campus 6  
 Not-for-Credit Courses 18  
 Nursing 173, 524  
   Bachelor of 166  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 168  
   Master of 177  
   School of 699  
 Nutrition 173, 177, 182, 527, 698
- O**
- Obstetrics and Gynaecology 174, 177, 528  
   Central Auckland Medical School 689  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 190  
   South Auckland Medical School 693  
   Waikato Clinical School 694  
 Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology, Postgraduate  
   Diploma in 190  
 Occupational Medicine 689  
 Ocular Pharmacology, Certificate in 218  
 Office of the Vice-Chancellor 714  
 Officers of the University 664  
 Operations Management 77, 78, 82, 84, 85, 95,  
   403  
 Operations Management – Executive Programmes  
   403  
 Operations Research: 77, 78, 82, 84, 85, 88, 202,  
   405  
   Graduate Diploma in 92, 155, 211, 234  
   Master of 88, 153, 206, 229  
 Ophthalmology:  
   Central Auckland Medical School 690  
   Waikato Clinical School 695  
 Optoelectronics 226  
 Optometry 209  
   Bachelor of 205  
 Optometry and Vision Science 200, 571, 709  
 Organization, Culture and Business 85  
 Organizational Change and Innovation 85  
 Other Programmes, Regulations 248
- P**
- Pacific Performing Arts 123  
 Pacific Studies 56, 61, 67, 200, 341, 673  
 Pacific Studies, Centre for 673  
 Paediatrics 174, 177, 529  
   Central Auckland Medical School 690  
   Diploma in 184  
   South Auckland Medical School 693  
   Waikato Clinical School 695  
 Parking 654  
 Pathology 174, 177, 200, 530  
 Performing Arts 438  
   Bachelor of 123  
   Regulations 122  
 Pharmaceutical Science 174  
 Pharmacology 200, 201, 204, 209, 530, 573  
 Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology 174,  
   177, 698  
 Pharmacy 174, 532  
   Bachelor of 168  
   Doctor of 183  
   School of 700  
 Pharmacy Practice:  
   Master of 179  
   Postgraduate Certificate in 195  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 191  
   Philosophy 56, 61, 67, 174, 200, 342, 673  
     Doctor of 254  
   Physics 58, 200, 201, 209, 573, 709  
   Physiology 177, 200, 201, 204, 209, 535, 577,  
     698  
   Planning 439, 679  
     Bachelor of 125  
     Master of 128  
     Regulations 125  
   Planning a Programme 1  
   Planning Practice, Master of 126, 441  
   Points 1, 17  
 Policy:  
   Anti-Harassment 656  
   Equal Opportunity Programme 657  
   Intellectual Property Including Inventions and  
     Patents 657  
   Public Correspondence and Media Statements 661  
   Smoke Free 661  
   Student Learning and Research Grievances 662  
 Polish 58, 349  
 Political Studies 56, 61, 67, 350, 673  
 Polymers and Coatings Science 209, 577  
 Polymers and Coatings 706  
 Popular Music 123, 443  
 Postgraduate Certificate in:  
   Advanced Interpreting 74  
   Business 96  
   Geothermal Energy Technology 155  
   Health Sciences 193  
   Light Metals Reduction Technology 155  
   Medical Science 195  
   Pharmacy Practice 195  
   Public Health 196  
 Postgraduate Diploma in:  
   Applied Psychology 213  
   Arts 71  
   Arts Management 92, 106, 234  
   Building Science 105  
   Business 92  
   Clinical Psychology 217  
   Commerce 95  
   Community Emergency Medicine 186  
   Education 141  
   Educational Psychology 142  
   Fine Arts 111  
   Forensic Science 213  
   Geriatric Medicine 187  
   Health Psychology 187  
   Health Sciences 188  
   Language Teaching 72  
   Legal Studies 161  
   Medical Science 189  
   Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology 190  
   Pharmacy Practice 191  
   Property 95  
   Public Health 192  
   Science 214  
   Sports Medicine 193  
   Translation Studies 73  
 Prerequisites and Conditions 14  
 Prescriptions:  
   Arts 270  
   Business & Economics 371  
   Creative Arts and Industries 408  
   Education 447  
   Engineering: 466  
   Law 490  
   Medical and Health Sciences 506  
   Science 538  
   Theology 592

Private Sector Accommodation 651  
 Prizes 646  
 Professional Ethics, Diploma in 70  
 Professional Studies, Master of 69, 161, 230  
 Professores Emeriti 667  
 Progress 19  
   Academic 19  
   Requirements for Satisfactory 19  
   Unsatisfactory 20  
 Property 405, 677  
   Bachelor of 79  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 82  
   Master of 88  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 95  
 Property Services 714  
 Provisional Entrance 14  
 Psychiatry 174, 177, 536  
   Central Auckland Medical School 691  
   South Auckland Medical School 694  
   Waikato Clinical School 695  
 Psychology 56, 61, 67, 77, 200, 201, 204, 209,  
 577, 710  
 Public Correspondence and Media Statements 661  
 Public Health:  
   Master of 180  
   Postgraduate Certificate in 196  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 192  
 Public Law 160, 504

**Q**

Quality Management 95

**R**

Railway Campus 651  
 Reassignment Courses 25  
 Reassignments 22  
 Reconsideration 36  
 Recreation:  
   City Campus 651  
 Refund of Fees 19  
 Regulations:  
   Admission 14  
   Architecture 99  
   Arts 51  
   Arts Management 106  
   Business and Economics 75  
   Conjoint Degrees 236  
   Creative Arts and Industries 98  
   Credit 24  
   Diplomas and Certificates 21  
   Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees 253  
   Education 130  
   Engineering 143  
   Examinations 33  
   Fine Arts 106  
   General 41  
   Interfaculty Degrees and Diplomas 223  
   Library 48  
   Master's Degrees 21  
   Medical and Health Sciences 163  
   Music 112  
   Other Programmes 248  
   Performing Arts 122  
   Planning 125  
   Science 198  
   Theology 219  
 Research Office 654  
 Research Units, Centres and Institutes:

Arts 669  
 Science 703  
 Rest Spaces 654  
 Restrictions 17  
 Room Bookings 654  
 Russian 56, 61, 67, 356

**S**

Samoan 57, 358  
 Schedule:  
   Arts (Honours), Bachelor of 59  
   Arts, Bachelor of 52  
   Arts, Master of 63  
   Engineering, Bachelor of 144  
   Business and Information Management, Bachelor of  
   79  
   Business, Postgraduate Certificate in 97  
   Business, Postgraduate Diploma in 93  
   Commerce (Honours), Bachelor of 81  
   Commerce, Bachelor of 77  
   Commerce, Master of 84  
   Engineering, Master of 149  
   Fees 31  
   Health Sciences, Graduate Diploma in 186  
   Health Sciences, Master of 172  
   Laws, Master of 160  
   Limitations 27  
   MBChB 166  
   Medical Science, Master of 176  
   Nursing, Master of 179  
   Optometry, Bachelor of 206  
   Performing Arts, Bachelor of 123  
   Pharmacy Practice, Master of 180  
   Public Health, Master of 182  
   Science (Honours), Bachelor of 204  
   Science, Bachelor of 199  
   Science, Master of 208  
   Technology, Bachelor of 225  
 Scholarships and Prizes 637  
 School of:  
   Asian Studies 671  
   Education 130, 680  
   European Languages and Literature 671  
   Medical Sciences 696  
   Medicine 687  
   Nursing 699  
   Pharmacy 700  
   Population Health 700  
   Theology 219, 592, 711  
 Schools Partnership Office 715  
 Science:  
   Bachelor of 199  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 202  
   Doctor of 263  
   Graduate Diploma in 211  
   Master of 206  
   Master of (Health Psychology) 182, 232  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 214  
   Prescriptions 538  
   Regulations 198  
   Staff 703  
 Science Education: 200  
   Diploma in 136, 211, 233  
 Science: General 584  
 Senate 5, 664  
 Smoke Free Policy 661  
 Social and Community Health 703  
 Social Science for Public Health 56, 363  
 Sociology 56, 61, 68, 358, 674

Software Engineering 147, 489  
 Sound Recording and Design 124, 445  
 South Auckland Clinical School 693  
 Spanish 56, 61, 68, 363, 672  
 Special Admission 14  
 Speech Language Therapy Practice, Master of 210  
 Speech Science 209, 584, 710  
 Sport and Exercise Science 200, 201, 205, 209, 585, 710  
 Sports Medicine, Postgraduate Diploma in 193  
 Staff and Student Information 650  
 Statistics 56, 61, 68, 77, 79, 200, 201, 205, 209, 587, 711  
 Statutes:  
   Computer System 47  
   Conferment of Academic Qualifications and Academic Dress 42  
   Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) 1990 634  
   Court of Convocation Register 1990 633  
   Degrees and Diplomas 44  
   Disciplinary 624  
   Doctor of Philosophy 253  
   Fees 29  
   General 41  
   Honorary Degrees and Awards 46  
   Limitation of Entry 26  
   Membership of Associations of Students Referenda and Elections of Student Representatives on Council 627  
 Student Administration 715  
 Student Counselling 654  
 Student Learning and Research Grievances 662  
 Student Learning Centre 654, 715  
 Student Loans and Allowances 655  
 Study Skills Workshops 250  
 Submissions 22  
 Substitution of Courses 22  
 Substitutions 18  
 Surgery:  
   Central Auckland Medical School 692  
   South Auckland Medical School 694  
   Waikato Clinical School 695  
 Suspension 22

**T**

Takiri Te Ata 250  
 Tamaki Campus 5, 651, 666  
 Tamaki Division 666, 677  
 Taxation 78  
 Taxation Studies, Master of 90  
 Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages, Master of 69  
 Teaching (Primary), Graduate Diploma in 139  
 Teaching (Secondary), Graduate Diploma in 140  
 Technology, Bachelor of 148, 206, 224  
 Tertiary Foundation Certificate 235

Theatre Studies 56, 367  
 Theology:  
   Bachelor of 220  
   Graduate Diploma in 222  
   Master of 220  
   Prescriptions 592  
   Regulations 219  
   Staff 711  
 Tongan 58, 368  
 Transitional Certificate 249  
 Translation Studies 368  
 Translation Studies: 68, 368  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 73  
 Tuition Fees 22

## U

Uniservices 7, 712  
 Unisports 652  
 University Book Shop 656  
 University Health Service 655  
 University Library 48, 653, 655, 715  
 University of Auckland:  
   Act 623  
   Arms of The 2  
   Certificate in Foundation Studies 251  
   Council 664  
   Deans 665  
   Distinguished Alumni Awards 666  
   History 2  
   Officers 664  
   Policy 656  
   Prizes 646  
   Scholarships 638  
   Senate 664  
   Staff 663  
   Statutes 622  
   Structure of 5  
   Tertiary Foundation Certificate 235  
   Trusts and Foundations 6  
 University Personnel 663  
 University Policy 656

## V

Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers 20  
 Visual Arts 446  
   Bachelor of 107

## W

Waikato Clinical School 694  
 Welfare Advocacy and Representation Services (WAVE) 656  
 Wellesley Programme 235  
 Wine Science 210, 591, 706  
 Withdrawals 19  
 Women's Studies 57, 61, 68, 369